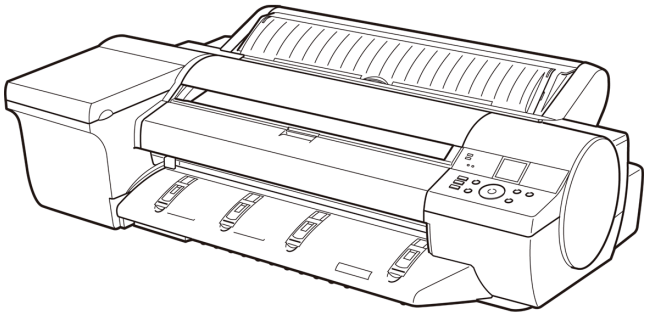
Canon

Large Format Printer

imagePROGRAF

iPF6400S

User's Guide



Basic Printing Workflow 19

Enhanced Printing Options 35

- Printing enlargements or reductions..... 65
- Printing at full size..... 77
- Borderless Printing..... 88
- Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes..... 98
- Tiling and multiple pages per sheet..... 112
- Centering originals..... 127
- and so on

Windows Software 157

- Printer Driver..... 158
- Preview..... 193
- Free Layout..... 204
- Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy..... 227
- Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional..... 238
- Layout Plug-In for Photoshop..... 298
- Print Plug-In for Office..... 303
- and so on

Mac OS Software 343

- Printer Driver..... 344
- Preview..... 364
- Free Layout..... 388
- Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy..... 414
- Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional..... 430
- Layout Plug-In for Photoshop..... 486
- and so on

Handling and Use of Paper 491

Control Panel 611

Printer Parts 649

Network Setting 667

Print Job Management 699

Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761

Color Management 779

Maintenance and Consumables 881

Troubleshooting 939

Error Message 973

Specifications 999

Appendix 1005

Manuals for this printer

- Setup Guide
- Basic Guide
- **User's Guide** Electronic manual
- Paper Reference Guide Electronic manual

ver1.10 2015-04-10 ENG

Contents

Basic Printing Workflow

Basic Printing Workflow 19

Printing procedure 20

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets 20
Turning the Printer On and Off 21
Loading and Printing on Rolls 22
Loading and Printing on Sheets 25
Printing in Windows 26
Printing from Mac OS 27

Canceling print jobs 29

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel 29
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows 30
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS 30

Pausing Printing 33

Pausing Printing 33

Enhanced Printing Options

Enhanced Printing Options 35

Choosing Paper for Printing 36

Choosing a Paper for Printing 36
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 36

Printing Photos and Office Documents 37

Printing Photos and Images 37
Printing Photos and Images (Windows) 38
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS) 39
Printing from Photoshop 42
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows) 42
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS) 45
Printing Office Documents 47
Printing Office Documents (Windows) 47
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS) 49
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals 51

Adjusting Images 53

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver 53
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) 55
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS) 57
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing 59
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) 61
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS) 63

Printing enlargements or reductions 65

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size 65
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 65
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 67
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 67
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS) 69
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value 71
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) 72
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS) 74

Printing at full size 77
Printing on Oversize Paper ... 77
Printing at Full Size (Windows) ... 78
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS) ... 79
Borderless Printing at Actual Size ... 81
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) ... 83
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS) ... 85
Borderless Printing 88
Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size ... 88
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) ... 89
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width ... 92
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) ... 93
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS) ... 95
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes 98
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) ... 98
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) ... 99
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS) ... 103
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes ... 105
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) ... 105
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS) ... 109
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet 112
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other ... 112
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) ... 113
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS) ... 115
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously ... 116
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) ... 116
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS) ... 118
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet ... 119
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) ... 120
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS) ... 122
Printing Posters in Sections ... 124
Printing Large Posters (Windows) ... 124
Centering originals 127
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls ... 127
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) ... 127
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS) ... 129
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets ... 131
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) ... 131
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS) ... 133
Conserving roll paper 136
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees ... 136
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) ... 136
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS) ... 138
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins ... 139
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) ... 140
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS) ... 142
Checking Images Before Printing 145
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing ... 145
Other useful settings 146
Printing With Watermarks ... 146
Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) ... 147
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation ... 149

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) 149
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS) 151
Using Favorites 153
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing 153
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) 153
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS) 154

Windows Software 157

Printer Driver 158

Printer Driver Settings 158
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 160
Confirming Print Settings 162
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing 162
Using Favorites 164
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications 165
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu 167
Main Sheet 168
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box 171
Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box 171
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application 173
Color Adjustment Sheet: Color 173
Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color 175
Matching Sheet 175
Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome 178
Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome 179
Gray Adjustment Sheet 180
Page Setup Sheet 181
Output Method Dialog box 183
Paper Size Options Dialog Box 184
Layout Sheet 185
Page Options Dialog Box 187
Special Settings Dialog Box 188
Favorites Sheet 189
Utility Sheet 190
Support Sheet 191
Settings Summaries Dialog Box 191
Device Settings Sheet 192

Preview 193

The Features of Preview 193
Starting Preview 193
Preview Main Window 195
Dialog Area 197
Enlarge/Reduce the screen display 198
Moving a Page 198
Using the ruler 198
Priority setting for rotating 90 degrees 199
Printing with Selecting the Layout 200
Print on the Center 202
Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom 203

Free Layout 204

The Features of Free Layout 204
Starting Free Layout 205

Free Layout Main Window 206
Detailed Settings 207
Preferences Dialog Box 208
Page Options Dialog Box 209
Zoom Dialog Box 210
Format Dialog Box 210
Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page 212
Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page 214
Selecting an Object 217
Changing the Object Size 217
Moving an Object 218
Rotating an Object 218
Laying out Objects Automatically 219
Aligning Objects 219
Changing the Object Overlapping Order 221
Pasting a Copied or Cut Object 222
Folded Duplex Window 223
Finished Size Settings Dialog Box 224
Binding Settings Dialog Box 225
Prints using Folded Duplex 226

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 227

The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 227
Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 227
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box 228
Hot Folder 229
Creating a New Hot Folder 230
Specifying an Existing Shared Folder as a Hot Folder 233
Setting the Print Parameters 236
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 236

Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional 238

Features of the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional 239
Installation Procedures 239
Uninstall Procedures 243
Starting from Photoshop 243
Starting from Digital Photo Professional 244
Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional Main Window 245
Preview Area 247
Main Sheet 249
Page Setup Sheet 252
Color Settings Sheet (Color) 254
Color Settings Sheet (Monochrome) 255
Print History Sheet 256
Support Sheet 257
Adjustment pattern setting dialog box 258
Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box 261
Set Configuration Dialog Box 263
ICC Conversion Options dialog box 264
Roll Paper Options Dialog Box 264
Size Options Dialog Box 265
Curves Dialog Box 266
Print History Details Dialog Box 267
Utilize Three Types of Previews 268
Check Image with Print Area Layout 268
Check the original image with Image 269
Check Image with Roll Paper Preview 269
Print with a Desired Picture Quality 270
Adjust the Colors and Print 271

Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color) 271
Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome) 272
Adjust the Colors by Color Matching 274
Print High-Quality Adobe RGB 16bit Images 275
Prints monochrome photographs with high quality 276
Using Adobe CMM 277
Printing an Adjustment Pattern and Selecting Adjustment Values 278
Perform Black Point Compensation 280
Perform Printing Press Simulation Print 281
Enlarge/Reduce and Print 281
Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size 282
Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper 283
Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print 284
Print with No Borders 285
Customize Media Settings 286
Utilize Print History 286
Confirm Print History Details 287
Apply Print History to an Image 288
Store Print History to Print Preferences 288
Delete Print History 290
Export Print History from Print Preferences 292
Import Print History to Print Preferences 293
Delete Print History from Print Preferences 295
Set Information to Print with Image 296

Layout Plug-In for Photoshop 298

About the Layout Plug-In 298
Layout Plug-In Main Window 298
Add Canvas Size dialog box 300
Creating and Printing a Layout Image for Mounting on a Frame 301

Print Plug-In for Office 303

Print Plug-In for Officefeatures 303
Steps to install 304
Steps to uninstall 306
When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed 307
To start from Microsoft Word 310
Print Matching Roll Width(Word) 312
Borderless Printing(Word) 314
Multi-Page Printing(Word) 316
Register the settings (Word) 318
Print Using Registered Settings(Word) 319
Portrait Orientation/Landscape Orientation(Word) 321
To start from Microsoft PowerPoint 322
Print Matching Roll Width(PowerPoint) 324
Borderless Printing(PowerPoint) 326
Multi-Page Printing(PowerPoint) 329
Register the settings (PowerPoint) 330
Print Using Registered Settings(PowerPoint) 331
Portrait Orientation/Landscape Orientation(PowerPoint) 333
To start from Microsoft Excel 334
Print Entire Sheet(Excel) 336
Print Selected Area(Excel) 338
Configuring Binding (Excel) 341
Configuring Special Settings 342

Mac OS Software 343

Printer Driver 344

Printer Driver Settings 344
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 345
Confirming Print Settings 347
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing 347
Using Favorites 348
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications 349
Main Pane 349
- Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box 352
- View set. Dialog Box for the Printing Application 354
- Matching pane 354
- Color Settings Pane: Color 357
- Object Adjustment dialog box: Color 358
- Color Settings Pane: Monochrome 358
- Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome 359
- Gray Adjustment Pane 360

Page Setup Pane 361
Additional Settings Pane 362

Preview 364

The Features of Preview 364
Starting Preview 364
Preview Main Window 365
Paper Settings Panel 368
- Easy Settings 369
- Advanced Settings 371

Output Settings Panel 372
Color Settings Panel 374
- Color Adjustment 375
- Gray Adjustment 377
- Matching 378
  - Driver Matching Mode 380
  - ICC Matching Mode 381
  - ColorSync 382

Preferences Dialog Box 382
Zoom Dialog Box 382
Go to Page Dialog Box 383
Print with No Borders 383
Print on the Center 384
Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom 384
Print Page Rotated 90 Degrees 385
Display with Fitting to the Width of the Paper 385
Display with All 386
Display with Actual Size 386
Moving a Page 387

Free Layout 388

The Features of Free Layout 388
Starting Free Layout 388
Free Layout Main Window 389
Paper Settings Panel 392
- Easy Settings 393
- Advanced Settings 395

Color Settings Panel 396
- Color Adjustment 397
- Gray Adjustment 399

Matching 400
Driver Matching Mode 402
ICC Matching Mode 403
ColorSync 404
Preferences Dialog Box 404
Page Setup Dialog Box 405
Zoom Dialog Box 406
Format Dialog Box 407
Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page 407
Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page 408
Selecting an Object 408
Changing the Object Size 409
Moving an Object 409
Rotating an Object 410
Laying out Objects Automatically 410
Aligning Objects 410
Changing the Object Overlapping Order 412
Pasting a Copied or Cut Object 413

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 414

The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 414
Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 414
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box 415
Hot Folder 415
Creating a New Hot Folder 416
Editing a Hot Folder (Setting Print Conditions) 417
Deleting a Hot Folder 419
Setting the Print Parameters 420
Paper Settings Panel 420
Easy Settings 422
Advanced Settings 423
Output Settings Panel 424
Color Settings Panel 426
Driver Matching Mode 427
ICC Matching Mode 428
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 428

Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional 430

Features of the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional 431
Installation Procedures 431
Uninstall Procedures 433
Starting from Photoshop 434
Starting from Digital Photo Professional 435
Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional Main Window 436
Preview Area 438
Main Sheet 439
Page Setup Sheet 442
Color Settings Sheet (Color) 444
Color Settings Sheet (Monochrome) 445
Print History Sheet 446
Support Sheet 447
Adjustment pattern setting dialog box 448
Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box 451
Set Configuration Dialog Box 453
ICC Conversion Options dialog box 454
Roll Paper Options Dialog Box 454
Size Options Dialog Box 455
Curves Dialog Box 456
Print History Details Dialog Box 457

Utilize Three Types of Previews 458
Check Image with Print Area Layout 458
Check the original image with Image 459
Check Image with Roll Paper Preview 459
Print with a Desired Picture Quality 460
Adjust the Colors and Print 461
Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color) 461
Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome) 462
Adjust the Colors by Color Matching 465
Print High-Quality Adobe RGB 16bit Images 466
Prints monochrome photographs with high quality 467
Using Adobe CMM 467
Printing an Adjustment Pattern and Selecting Adjustment Values 469
Perform Black Point Compensation 470
Perform Printing Press Simulation Print 471
Enlarge/Reduce and Print 471
Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size 472
Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper 472
Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print 474
Print with No Borders 474
Customize Media Settings 475
Utilize Print History 476
Confirm Print History Details 476
Apply Print History to an Image 477
Store Print History to Print Preferences 477
Delete Print History 479
Export Print History from Print Preferences 480
Import Print History to Print Preferences 481
Delete Print History from Print Preferences 483
Set Information to Print with Image 484

Layout Plug-In for Photoshop 486

About the Layout Plug-In 486
Layout Plug-In Main Window 486
Add Canvas Size dialog box 488
Creating and Printing a Layout Image for Mounting on a Frame 489

Handling and Use of Paper 491

Paper 492

Types of Paper 492
Paper Sizes 492
Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper 494
Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper Using Existing Settings 495
Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper by Adding a Media Type 496
Displaying the Paper Reference Guide 496
Updating paper information 499

Handling rolls 503

Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder 503
Loading Rolls in the Printer 505
Changing the Type of Paper 508
Specifying the Paper Length 509
Removing the Roll from the Printer 510
Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder 512
Feeding Roll Paper Manually 513
Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left 514
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls 514

Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls 516
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically 522
Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls 524
Roll Holder Set 524
Removing the Roll Feed Unit 525
Installing the Roll Feed Unit 526
Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually 527

Handling sheets 529
Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot 529
Removing Sheets 540

Output Stacker 542
Output Stacker Precautions 542
Using the Output Stacker 543

Media Configuration Tool (Windows) 546
The Features of Media Configuration Tool 546
Installation Procedures 547
Starting Method 549
Media Configuration Tool Main Window 550
Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper 551
Adding Media Types 552
Changing Media Names 555
Deleting Media Types You Have Added 557
Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide 558
Changing the Display Order of Media Types 560
Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper 561
Compatible Paper 563
Add Custom Paper 564
Delete Custom Paper 570
Edit Custom Paper 571
Export Custom Media Information 572
Import Custom Media Information 573
Create Calibration Target 574
Warnings 575
Checking the update 576

Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS) 577
The Features of Media Configuration Tool 577
Procedures for Installing 578
Starting Method 579
Media Configuration Tool Main Window 580
Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper 581
Adding Media Types 583
Changing Media Names 585
Deleting Media Types You Have Added 587
Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide 589
Changing the Display Order of Media Types 591
Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper 592
Compatible Paper 594
Add Custom Paper 595
Delete Custom Paper 602
Edit Custom Paper 602
Export Custom Media Information 603
Import Custom Media Information 604
Create Calibration Target 606
Warnings 608
Checking the update 608

Control Panel 611

Operations and Display Screen 612

Control Panel 612
Control Panel Display 614
How to View Instructions with Navigate 619
Checking Instructions During Printer Operations 621

Printer Menu 623

Printer Menu Operations 623
Menu Operations 624
Menu Structure 627
Menu Settings 632
Status Print 642
Printing Interface Setting Reports 645

Printer Parts 649

Printer parts 650

Front 650
Back 651
Top Cover (Inside) 652
Paper Feed Slots 653
Inside the Roll Feed Unit Cover 654
Carriage 654
Ink Tank Cover (Inside) 655
Vents 656

Hard Disk 657

Printer Hard Disk Operations 657
Checking the Free Hard Disk Space 658
Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk 659

Optional accessories 661

Stand 661
Stand Parts 662
Spectrophotometer Unit 662
Spectrophotometer Unit Parts - 1 664
Spectrophotometer Unit Parts - 2 665

Network Setting 667

Network Environment 668

Network Environment 668

Using RemoteUI 671

Using RemoteUI 671

Initial Settings 673

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer 673
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel 673
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands 674
Configuring TCP/IPv6 Network Settings 676
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) 676
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Mac OS) 677
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI 677

NetWare Settings 681
Configuring NetWare Network Settings 681
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type 681
Specifying NetWare Print Services 684
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings With RemoteUI 686
Mac OS Settings 689
Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks 689
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network 689
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks 689
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings 691
Other Settings 692
Specifying Printer-Related Information 692
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually 693
Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur 694
Initializing the Network Settings 694
Device Setup Utility (Windows) 695
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 695
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 695
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 695

Print Job Management 699
Status Monitor (Windows) 700
The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 700
Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 701
Printmonitor (Mac OS) 703
The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 703
Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 704
Accounting (Windows) 705
Accounting Manager 705
Launching the Accounting Manager 705
Accounting Manager Main Window 706
Job List Area 708
Accounting Manager Basic Procedures 709
Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager 710
Setting the Unit Cost for Ink 710
Setting the Unit Cost for Paper 711
Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper 713
Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager 714
Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals 714
Canceling Regular Print Job Log Acquisition 715
Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs 715
Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File 715
Displaying Job Properties or Period Properties 716
Showing, Saving and Loading Selected Unit Cost Data 717
Showing the Total Amount of Ink and Paper Consumed 717
Basic Print Job Operations 719
Using the Printer Hard Disk 719
Saving Print Jobs on the Printer Hard Disk 721
Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs) 724
Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold) 726
Printing Saved Jobs 728

Deleting Saved Jobs 732
Moving Saved Jobs 736

Advanced Print Job Operations 741
Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver 741
Printing Without Saving Jobs in the Common Box 742
Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes 743
Naming Personal Boxes 746
Displaying a List of Saved Jobs 749
Printing a List of Saved Jobs 752
Displaying Details of Saved Jobs 753
Renaming Saved Jobs 756

Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761

Adjustment for high-precision printing 762
Enhancing Printing Quality 762

Adjusting the Printhead 764
Adjusting the Printhead 764
Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors 764
Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors 766
Adjustment When Installing the Printhead 767
Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images 769

Adjusting the feed amount 770
Adjusting the Feed Amount 770
Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method 770
Automatic Banding Adjustment 771
Manual Banding Adjustment 772
Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount 774
Adjusting Line Length 775
Adjusting Color on the Trailing Edge of Sheets 776
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength 777

Color Management 779

Monitor Matching 780
Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors 780
Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Windows) 781
Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Mac OS) 783

Color Calibration 786
Managing Colors 786
Managing Colors Using Printer Sensors 792
Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor 793
Color Management Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (Optional) 795
Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) 798
Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) 799
Color Checks Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) 802
Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color 804
Adjustment Types of Color Calibration 805

Color Calibration Management Console (Windows) 809
Features of Color Calibration Management Console 809
Installation Procedure 810
Uninstallation Procedure 813
Startup 813

Main Window 814
File Menu 816
Tools Menu (When the Calibration Sheet is Displayed) 818
Tools Menu (When the Color Measurement Sheet is Displayed) 818
Help Menu 820
Printer List 820
Calibration Sheet 822
Color Measurement Sheet 823
Changing the Printers Displayed in the Printer List 825
Checking the Color Calibration Status 827
Executing Color Calibration 828
Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart 831
Executing Color Check 838
Scheduling Color Check 842
Registering Execution Logs in Favorites 843
Deleting Execution Logs From Favorites 845
Saving Execution Logs on the Computer 845
Switching Display Units 846
Getting Audio Notification of Color Calibration Finished 847

Color Calibration Management Console (Mac OS) 848

Features of Color Calibration Management Console 848
Installation Procedure 849
Uninstallation Procedure 850
Startup 850
Main Window 850
imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console Menu 853
File Menu 853
Tools Menu (When the Calibration Sheet is Displayed) 854
Tools Menu (When the Color Measurement Sheet is Displayed) 855
Printer List 856
Calibration Sheet 858
Color Measurement Sheet 859
Changing the Printers Displayed in the Printer List 860
Checking the Color Calibration Status 862
Executing Color Calibration 863
Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart 866
Executing Color Check 872
Scheduling Color Check 876
Registering Execution Logs in Favorites 877
Deleting Execution Logs From Favorites 878
Saving Execution Logs on the Computer 878
Switching Display Units 879
Getting Audio Notification of Color Calibration Finished 879

Maintenance and Consumables 881

Ink Tanks 882

Ink Tanks 882
Replacing Ink Tanks 882
Checking Ink Tank Levels 888
When to Replace Ink Tanks 888

Printheads 890

Printhead 890
Checking for Nozzle Clogging 890
Cleaning the Printhead 891
Replacing the Printhead 892

Maintenance Cartridge 899
Maintenance Cartridge ... 899
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge ... 899
Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity ... 905
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge ... 905
Cleaning the Printer 907
Cleaning the Printer Exterior ... 907
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover ... 907
Cleaning the Paper Retainer ... 910
Cleaning the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Parts ... 911
Other Maintenance 917
Carrying the Printer ... 917
Preparing to Transfer the Printer ... 923
Reinstalling the Printer ... 927
Updating the Firmware ... 930
Replacing the Spectrophotometer Sensor of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) ... 931

Troubleshooting 939
Frequently Asked Questions 940
Frequently Asked Questions ... 940
Problems Regarding Paper 942
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper ... 942
Clearing a Jammed Sheet, Fed Manually ... 945
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot) ... 948
Cut sheets cannot be pulled out from the front paper feed slot ... 950
Roll paper cannot be inserted into the paper feed slot ... 950
Cannot load sheets ... 950
Paper is not cut neatly ... 950
Paper is not cut ... 950
Depression on the leading edge is left ... 951
Margins are wide ... 951
Printing does not start 952
The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up ... 952
The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent ... 952
Ink Filling.. is displayed ... 952
The display screen indicates Agitating... ... 952
The printer stops during a print job 953
An error message is shown on the Display Screen ... 953
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper ... 953
Problems with the printing quality 954
Printing is faint ... 954
Paper rubs against the printhead ... 955
The edges of the paper are dirty ... 956
The surface of the paper is dirty ... 956
The back side of the paper is dirty ... 957
Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper ... 957
Immediately after borderless printing, the trailing edge margin is soiled during regular printing ... 957
Printed colors are inaccurate ... 957
Banding in different colors occurs ... 958
Colors in printed images are uneven ... 958
Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs ... 959

Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen 960
The contrast becomes uneven during printing 962
The length of printed images is inaccurate in the feeding direction 962
Images are printed crooked 963
Documents are printed in monochrome 963
Line thickness is not uniform 963
Lines or colors are misaligned 964
Borders appear in borderless printing 964

Spectrophotometer Trouble Shooting 965

Acquiring color measurement data takes a long time 965
Measurement results are unusual/suspect 965
You cannot execute AutoAdjst(HiPrc) from the computer 965

Cannot print over a network 966

Cannot connect the printer to the network 966
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network 966
Cannot print over a NetWare network 966
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks 967

Installation problems 968

Removing Installed Printer Drivers 968

Other problems 969

The printer does not go on 969
The printer takes time to start up 969
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound 969
Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared 970
The printer consumes a lot of ink 970
Ink Level Detection 970

Error Message 973

Error Messages 974

Messages regarding paper 976

Paper mismatch 976
MediaType Mismatch 976
The paper is too small. 977
The paper is too small. 977
PaprWidth Mismatch 978
Paper size not detected. 978
Insufficient paper for job 978
This paper cannot be used. 979
Roll printing is selected. 979
Roll printing is selected, but manual paper is loaded. 979
The roll is empty. 979
Roll feed unit error. 980
No Roll Unit. 980
Manual printing is selected. 980
Manual printing is selected, but a roll is loaded. 980
Wrong paper feed slot for manual paper. 980
Paper jam. 981
Paper loaded askew. 981
Paper not aligned with right guide. 981
Cannot detect papr 982
Cannot feed paper. 982
Cannot cut paper. 982
End of paper feed. 983

Borderless printng not possible. 983
Roll paper is not securely in contact with roll holder. 984

Messages regarding ink 985

Ink insufficient. 985
No ink left. 985
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. Check ink tank. 985
Cannot detect ink level correctly. Close tank cover. 985
Close Ink Tank Cover 986
Ink tank is empty. 986
Not much ink is left. 986
No ink tank loaded. 986
Check if ink tank is set, and its color and direction. 986
The following ink tanks cannot be recognized. 986
Do not pull out ink tank. 986

Messages regarding printing or adjustment 987

Cannot execute this command. Use other paper. 987
Cannot print as specified. 987
Cannot calibrate. 988
Excessive temperature or humidity. 988
Please execute common calibration. 988
Please commn calibrt using above paper. 988
Please calibrate using above paper. 989
Before borderless printing, move the blue platen switch. 989
Blue platen switch is dirty. 989
Move the blue platen switch No.xx to the right. (xx represents a number) 989
Cannot adjust paper feed. 989
Check printed document. 990
Spectrophotometer Unit not connected. 990
Spectrophotometer Sensor not mounted. 990
Spectrophotometer Unit Calibration white tile error. 990
Spectrophotometer Unit eject guide not mounted. 990
Spectrophotometer Unit Backing plate error. 990
Spectrophotometer Sensor Cover open. 991
Spectrophotometer Unit cover open. 991
Spectrophotometer read error. 991
Clean calibration white tile because it may be dirty. 991

Messages regarding printheads 992

Cannot adjust printhead. 992
PHeads: wrong pos. 992
Wrong x printhead. (x is L, R, or not displayed) 992
x printhead error (x is L, R, or not displayed) 992
Cannot recognize print head x. (x is L, R, or not displayed) 993
Execute printhead cleaning. 993

Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge 994

No maintenance cartridge. 994
Wrong maintenance cartridge. 994
Maint. cart. The level is low 994
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. 994
Maintenance cartridge full. 994
Maintenance cartridge problem. 994

Messages regarding the hard disk 995

Hard disk error. 995
File read error. 995
The mail box is full. 995

Mail box full. Now printing without saving data. 995
Mail box nearly full. 995
Maximum jobs stored. 995
Mail box full. Delete unwanted data 996

Other Messages 997

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 997
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 997
Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 997
Prepare for parts replacement. 998
Parts replacement time has passed. 998
Unknown file. 998
Calibration There is a problem with the multi-sensor. 998
Multi-sensor error 998

Specifications 999

Printer Specifications 1000

Specifications 1000
Print Area 1002

Spectrophotometer Unit Specifications 1004

Specifications 1004

Appendix 1005

Safety Precautions 1006

Safety Precautions 1006
Legal Notices 1008

Manuals for this printer 1010

Manuals for this printer 1010
About This User Manual 1010

Disposal of the product 1012

WEEE Directive 1013

Basic Printing Workflow

Printing procedure 20
Canceling print jobs 29
Pausing Printing 33

Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

User's Guide

Printing procedure

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets 20
Turning the Printer On and Off 21
Loading and Printing on Rolls 22
Loading and Printing on Sheets 25
→ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 160
→ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS) 345
Printing in Windows 26
Printing from Mac OS 27

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets.
This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main printing methods available. Select rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.

Note
- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, see "**Types of Paper**." →P.492
- A variety of other ways to print are available besides those introduced here. For details, see "**Enhanced Printing Options**." →P.35

Roll printing

Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media. Rolls are loaded on the Roll Holder, which are in turn loaded in the printer.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.

- Large-format printing
  Easily print vertical or horizontal banners from familiar applications such as Microsoft Office applications.
  (See "**Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)**.") →P.98
- Borderless printing
  Print without a margin (border) around posters or photos.
  (See "**Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size**.") →P.88
  (See "**Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width**.") →P.92
  (See "**Borderless Printing at Actual Size**.") →P.81
- Banner printing
  You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.
  (See "**Printing Multiple Pages Continuously**.") →P.116
- 90-degree rotation before printing
  Originals in portrait orientation are rotated 90 degrees when possible to use paper more efficiently.
  (See "**Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees**.") →P.136
- Enlarged/reduced printing
  You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.
  (See "**Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size**.") →P.65
  (See "**Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width**.") →P.67
  (See "**Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value**.") →P.71
- Free Layout (Windows) and imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Mac OS)
  Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.
  (See "**Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other**.") →P.112

Sheet printing

Sheets refer to individual sheets of paper.
Insert the sheet between the Platen and the Paper Retainer.

- Enlarged/reduced printing
  You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.
  (See "**Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size.**") ➔P.65
  (See "**Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value.**") ➔P.71
- Free Layout (Windows) and imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Mac OS)
  Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.
  (See "**Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other.**") ➔P.112

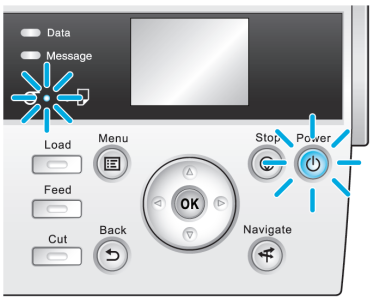
Turning the Printer On and Off

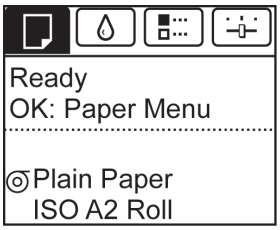
Turning the printer on

1 Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.
The printer will now start up.
After the Display Screen shows the Canon logo, "**Starting up... Please wait.**" is displayed.

2 The **Power Lamp** is lit when the printer finishes starting up, and the printer is now in **Standby**.

The printer will not go into **Standby** in the following situations. Take the appropriate action.





- The Top Cover is open
  Close the Top Cover.
- The Ink Tank Cover is open
  Close the Ink Tank Cover.
- The Printhead is not installed
  see "**Replacing the Printhead.**" ➔P.892
- An Ink Tank is not installed
  see "**Replacing Ink Tanks.**" ➔P.882
- If "**ERROR**" is shown on the Display Screen
  see "**Error Messages.**" ➔P.974

- The **Power Lamp** and **Message Lamp** are not lit (even once), and nothing appears on the Display Screen

  Make sure the printer is plugged in correctly. Check the connection at the plug and electrical outlet.

Important

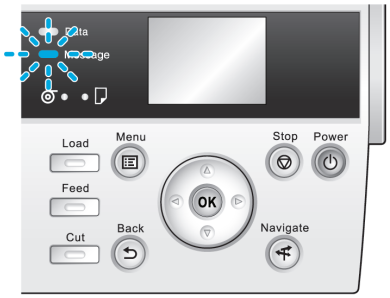
- Starting the printer when it is connected via the USB cable to a Mac OS computer that is off may cause the computer to start up at the same time. To prevent this, disconnect the USB cable before starting the printer. Connecting the printer to the computer via a USB hub may solve this issue.

Turning the printer off

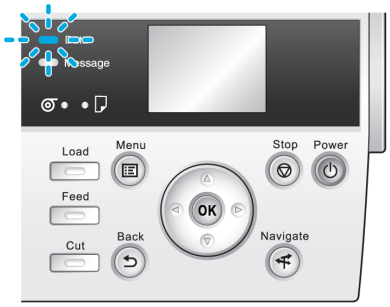
Important

- Never disconnect the printer's power supply or unplug it during a print job. This may damage the printer.

1 Make sure no print jobs are in progress.
If the **Message Lamp** is flashing, check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (See "**Error Messages.**") ➔P.974



If the **Data Lamp** is flashing, the printer is receiving a print job. Turn off the printer only after printing is finished.



2 Hold down the **Power** button for more than a second.

After "**Shut Down.. Please Wait..**" is shown on the Display Screen, the printer shuts off.

Loading and Printing on Rolls

These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls.
Follow these steps to load and print on rolls.

- If you use the optional Stand, you can store printed documents in the Output Stacker. see "**Using the Output Stacker.**" ➔P.543
- You also can install and use the printer on a table, etc., instead of using the Stand.

Important

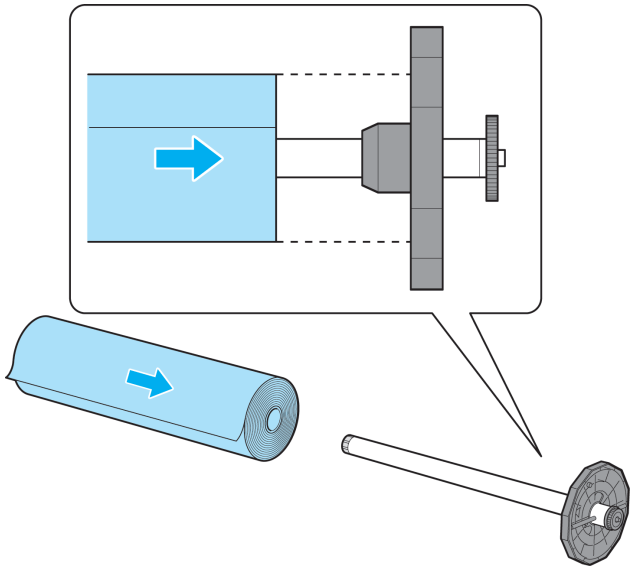
- Keeping a roll in the printer for a long time without printing on it may leave a depression on the leading edge. When printing quality is most important, we recommend setting **TrimEdge Reload** to **On** or **Automatic** so that the paper edge is automatically cut before printing.
- Before printing banners or other long documents, tap the Output Stacker. We recommend that you spread a clean cloth or paper on the floor and select **Eject** as the cutting method for rolls to prevent the printed surface from becoming dirty or scratched. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**") ➔P.516

Note

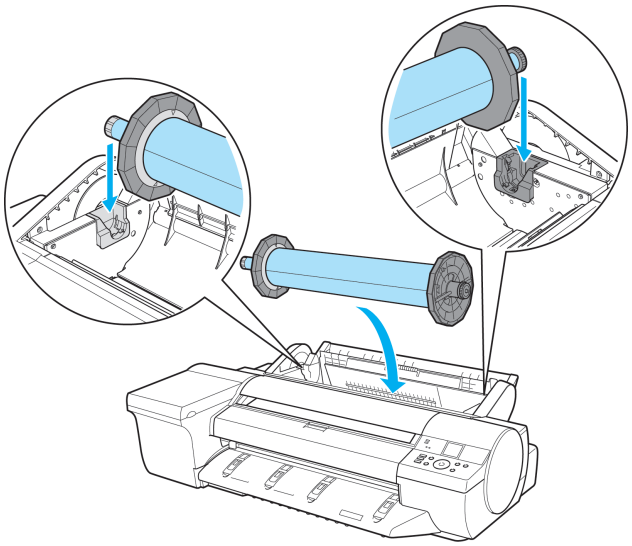
- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see **Paper Sizes** or the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Paper Sizes.**") ➔P.492 (See "**Types of Paper.**") ➔P.492
- To wait until the ink dries after printing before cutting the roll, set **Drying Time** in the printer driver. (See "**Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls.**") ➔P.514
- Once you have used all the paper on a roll, clean the platen. If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. (See "**Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.**") ➔P.907

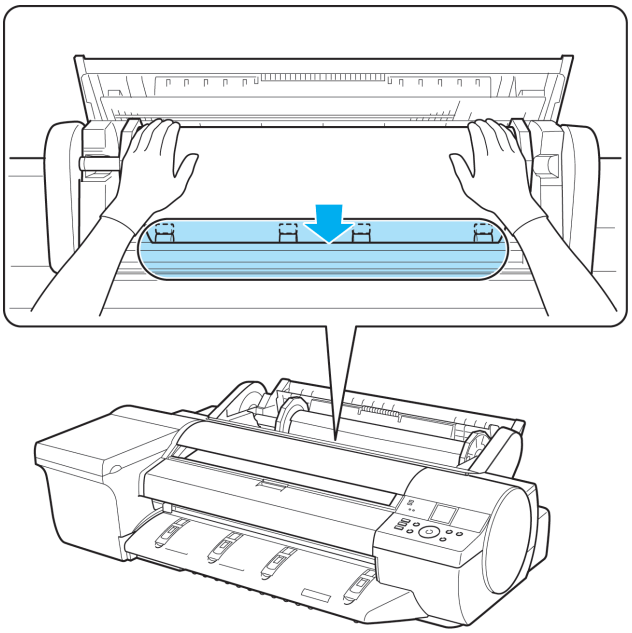
1 Turn the printer on. (See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") ➔P.21

2 Load the roll on the Roll Holder. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503



3 Load the roll in the printer. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505





Important

- When printing without borders, definitely set the blue Switch on the platen to the ● side. If the switch is set incorrectly, print quality may deteriorate. (See "**Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.**") ➔P.960

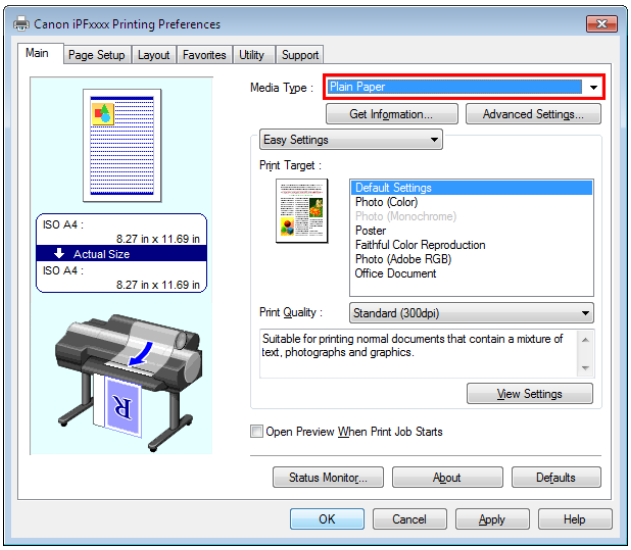
4 Select the type of paper. (See "**Changing the Type of Paper.**") ➔P.508

Note

- If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**, specify the roll length after the type of paper. (See "**Specifying the Paper Length.**") ➔P.509

5 Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- **Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)** ➔P.160
- **Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS)** ➔P.345



6 Send the print job.

- **Printing in Windows** ➔P.26
- **Printing from Mac OS** ➔P.27

The printer now starts printing the print job.

Important

- Do not forcibly pull out paper once a roll has been advanced. This will prevent further feeding. If you accidentally pull out the paper, see "**Removing the Roll from the Printer.**" ➔P.510

Loading and Printing on Sheets

These are the basic steps for loading sheets and then printing.
Follow the steps below to load and print on sheets.

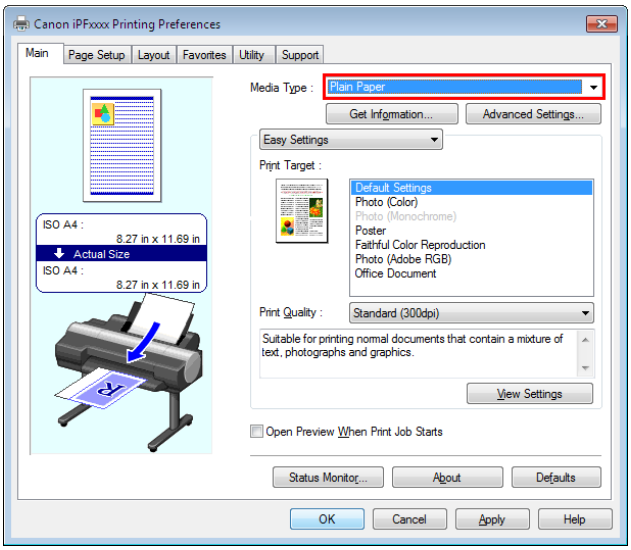
Note

- For details on supported types and sizes of paper, see **Paper Sizes** or the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Paper Sizes.**") ➔P.492 (See "**Types of Paper.**") ➔P.492
- Borderless printing is not supported on sheets. For the features and the main printing methods available for sheet printing, see "**Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets.**" ➔P.20

1 Turn the printer on. (See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") ➔P.21

2 Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- **Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)** ➔P.160
- **Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS)** ➔P.345

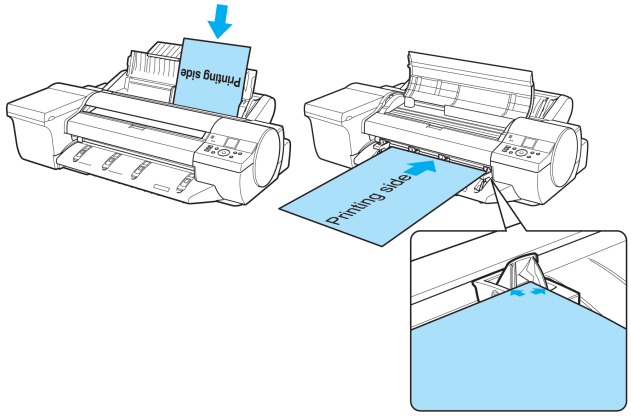


3 Send the print job.

- **Printing in Windows** ➔P.26
- **Printing from Mac OS** ➔P.27

4 Load a sheet manually. (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") ➔P.529
(Top Paper Feed Slot)
(Front Paper Feed Slot)

The printer now starts printing the print job.



Printing in Windows

Print from the application menu.

Important

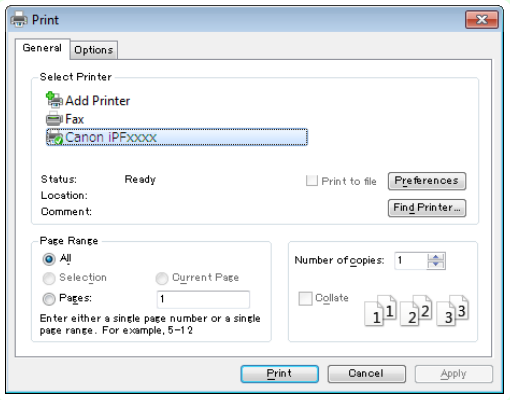
- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

1 In the source application, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

2 After confirming that the printer is selected in the dialog box, click **Print** or **OK** to start printing.

Note

- The appearance of the dialog box varies depending on the software application. In most cases, the dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.
  Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application



- If another printer is selected, select the printer you want to use under **Select Printer** or in the dialog box displayed after clicking **Printer**.

Settings for many printing methods (including enlarged or reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on) are displayed in the printer driver dialog box. There are two ways to access the printer driver dialog box, as follows.

- From the application
  (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165
- From the operating system menu
  (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu** .") ➔P.167

Printing from Mac OS

Print from the application menu after registering the printer.

Important

- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Registering the printer

Before printing, you must register the printer in **Print & Scan** in **System Preferences** (or **Print & Fax**).
For instructions on registering the printer, see "**Configuring the Printer Driver Destination** ." ➔P.677

Important

- During this setup process, the printer will not be listed among available printers if it is off or disconnected.

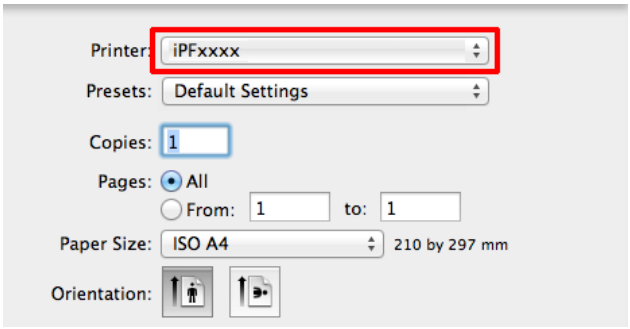
Printing from the application software

1 In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

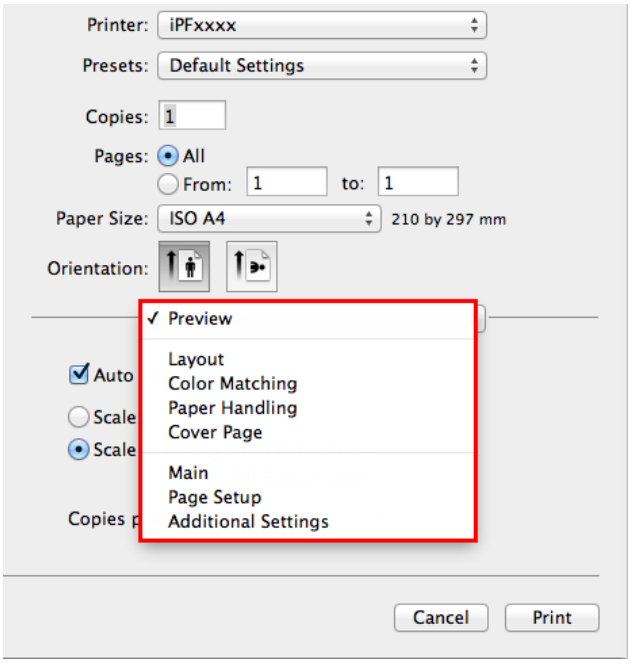
Note

- This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2 Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3 Click **Print** to start printing.
As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



Canceling print jobs

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel 29
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows 30
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS 30

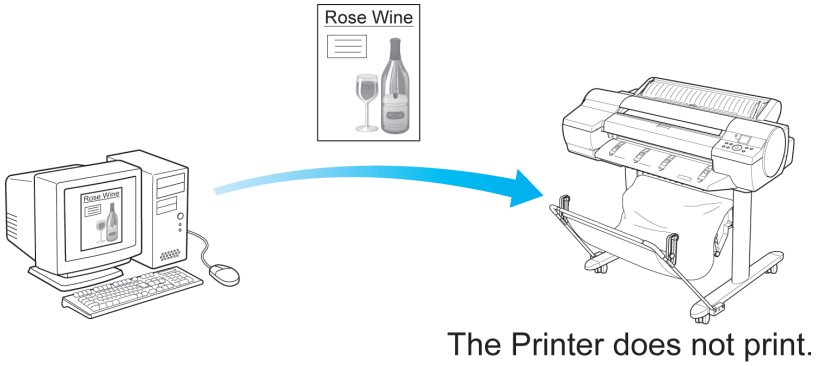
Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel

To cancel printing or reception of print jobs, press the **Stop** button on the Control Panel.

When you press the **Stop** button during printing, printer operation varies depending on the current status.

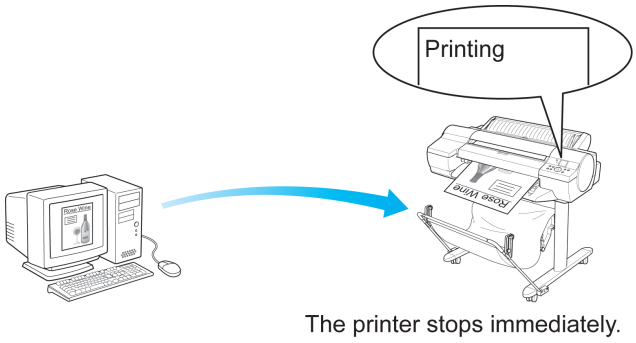
- If you press the **Stop** button before printing starts

  Pressing the **Stop** button before printing starts will display a confirmation message. To cancel the print job, select **Yes**.



- If you press the **Stop** button during printing

  Pressing the **Stop** button during printing will display a confirmation message. To cancel the print job immediately, select **Yes**.



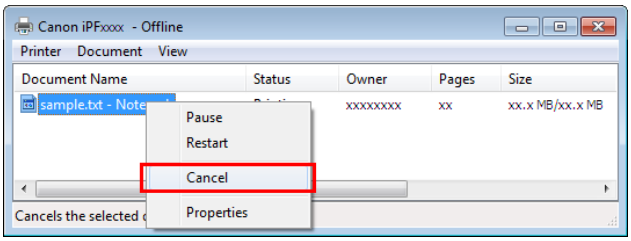
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows

In the printer window, you can cancel jobs that are being sent to the printer.
Using **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**, you can cancel print jobs that have already been received by the printer or that are currently being printed.

1 Click the printer icon in the taskbar to display the printer window.

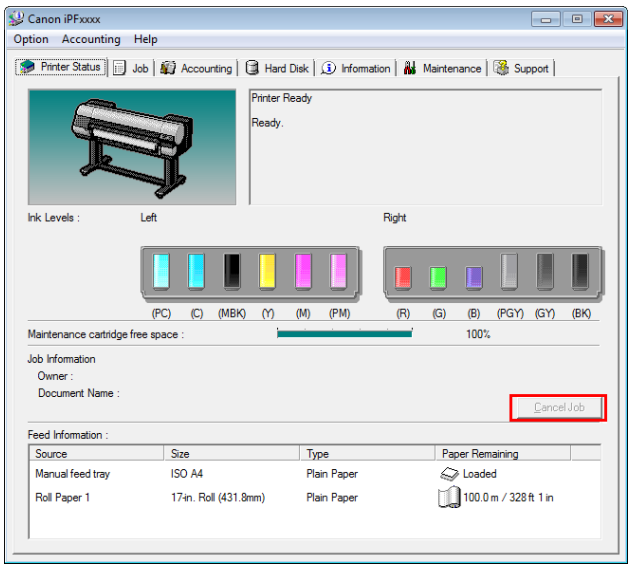
Note
- You can proceed from the folder for configuring the printer settings in the OS you are using.
  For example, in Windows 7, open the **Devices and Printers** window from the **start** menu and double-click the printer icon.

2 Right-click the job to cancel and select **Cancel**.



3 If the job to cancel is not shown in the printer window (that is, if the print data has already been received by the printer), double-click the taskbar icon to display **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**.

4 On the **Printer Status** sheet, click **Cancel Job**.



Note
- The screen may differ slightly depending on the model you are using.

Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS

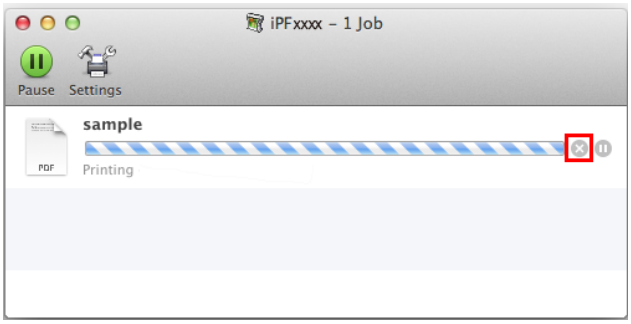
In the printer window, you can cancel jobs that are being sent to the printer.
Otherwise, you can cancel jobs from imagePROGRAF Printmonitor if they have been received by the printer or are currently being printed.

Note

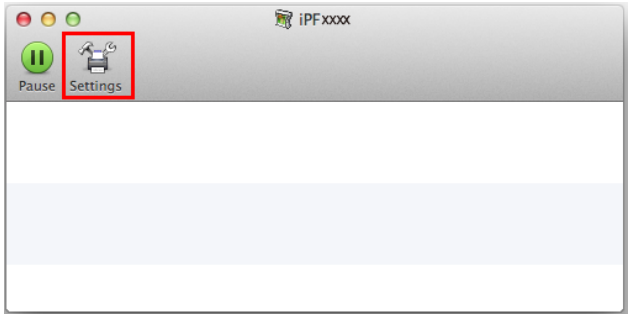
- Print jobs are shown in the printer window while they are being sent from the computer. After transmission, jobs are not displayed even during printing.
- Print jobs are displayed in the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor window from the moment the printer starts receiving the print data until the moment printing is finished. They are not displayed before print data is sent to the printer, even if the computer has started preparing the print data.

1 Click the printer icon in the **Dock** to display the printer window.

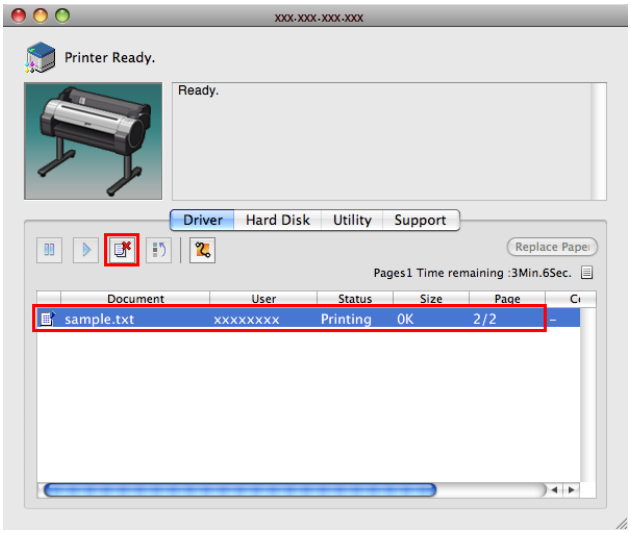
2 Either click × for the job to cancel printing or select the job to cancel printing and then click **Delete** to delete the job.



3 If there are no jobs to stop in the printer window (if sending the print data to the printer has finished), either click **Settings**, **Utility**, and then **Open Printer Utility**, or click **Utility** to open the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.



4 Select the print job to cancel and click to delete the print job.



Note

- The screen may differ slightly depending on the model you are using.

The job sent to the printer is canceled.

5 Exit imagePROGRAF Printmonitor. In the printer window, click **Resume** or **Resume Printer**.

Important

- Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs from imagePROGRAF Printmonitor. If you do not restart job processing, the next job cannot be printed.

Pausing Printing

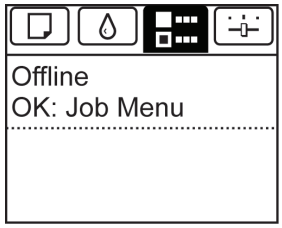
Pausing Printing

During printing, if you set **Pause Print** in the Control Panel menu to **On**, printing is stopped at that point and the printer enters a state in which printing is paused. (See "**Control Panel Display**.") ➔P.614
Printing from the job queue is not possible in this state.
To restore normal operation after this state, set **Pause Print** to **Off**.

Note

- In the following cases, the status is cleared even if you do not set **Pause Print** to **Off**, and printing from the job queue resumes.
  - When paper is advanced
  - When you execute **Chg. Paper Type** in the **Paper Menu**

1 During printing, on the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ( ).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Pause Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On** or **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

Memo

Basic Printing Workflow 19

Enhanced Printing Options

Choosing Paper for Printing 36
Printing Photos and Office Documents 37
Adjusting Images 53
Printing enlargements or reductions 65
Printing at full size 77
Borderless Printing 88
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes 98
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet 112
Centering originals 127
Conserving roll paper 136
Checking Images Before Printing 145
Other useful settings 146

Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

Choosing Paper for Printing

Choosing a Paper for Printing 36
→ Changing the Type of Paper 508

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 36
→ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 160
→ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS) 345

Choosing a Paper for Printing

Select the appropriate media type from the printer control panel or printer driver to match the paper loaded in the printer. The appropriate media type differs between the case of genuine Canon paper or Canon feed confirmed paper and the case of paper other than Canon feed confirmed paper. Select the media type by following the description below. For information on how to select the media type in the printer control panel, see **Changing the Type of Paper** →P.508 , and for information on how to select the media type in the printer driver, see **Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)** →P.160 or **Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS)** →P.345 .

Important
- If you use paper other than Canon feed confirmed paper, Canon provides absolutely no guarantees regarding print quality or paper feed properties.

Note
- Genuine Canon paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are detailed in **Paper Reference Guide**.
- An error message is displayed on the printer Control Panel if the media type specified in the printer driver does not match the media type specified in the printer. Although you can print under these conditions, the printing results may not be suitable.

- Genuine Canon paper or Canon feed confirmed paper

  For genuine Canon paper or Canon feed confirmed paper, select the settings that are optimized for that type of paper. For more information on the settings for genuine Canon paper or Canon feed confirmed paper, see **"Displaying the Paper Reference Guide."** →P.496

- Paper other than Canon feed confirmed paper

  For paper other than Canon feed confirmed paper, one method is to select from existing settings and another method is to create a new media type and add it to the printer control panel and printer driver. For details, see **"Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper."** →P.494

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you replace the paper, complete the printer driver settings for the paper type and size.
For instructions on configuring paper settings in the printer driver, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)** →P.160
- **Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS)** →P.345

Printing Photos and Office Documents

Printing Photos and Images 37
Printing Photos and Images (Windows) 38
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS) 39
Printing from Photoshop 42
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows) 42
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS) 45
Printing Office Documents 47
Printing Office Documents (Windows) 47
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS) 49
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals 51

Printing Photos and Images

By selecting the following **Print Target** from **Easy Settings** of the printer driver, you can easily configure the printing of illustrations and photos.

	Print Target	Description
	Photo (Color)	Print photographic images from digital cameras with an optimal setting.
	Photo (Monochrome)	Print monochrome photos with an optimal setting.
	Poster	An optimal setting for posters. Print in vivid colors with impact and high saturation.
	Faithful Color Reproduction	Print with minimum color difference. Suitable for printing scanner images and when print results are too vivid.
	Photo (Adobe RGB)	Setting suitable for printing images created using the color space of Adobe RGB in optimal color.

Important

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
  For details on **Advanced Settings**, see "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing." →P.59

For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Printing Photos and Images (Windows)** →P.38
- **Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS)** →P.39

Printing Photos and Images (Windows)

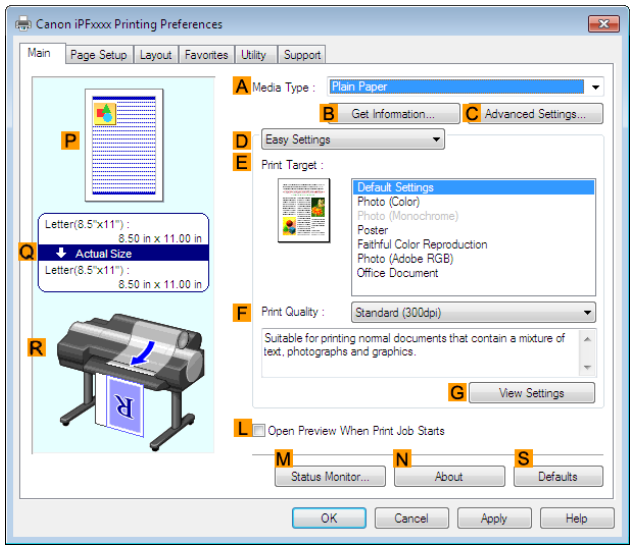
This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: **Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280**
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") →P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



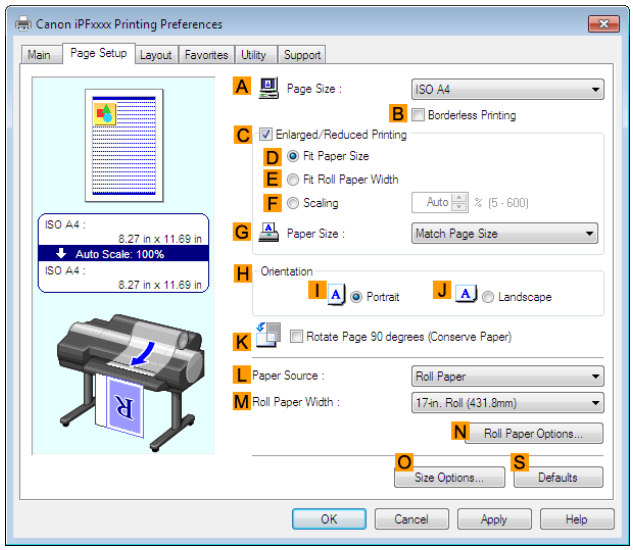
4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280**.
In the **A Media Type**, choose the type of paper used for printing, such as **Glossy Paper**, **Canon Coated Paper**, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note
- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For details, see "**Media Configuration Tool (Windows)**." →P.546

5 After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Color)** in the **E Print Target** list.

Note
- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View Settings**.

6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

8 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

9 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

10 Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "**Printer Driver Settings** ." ➔P.158

11 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." ➔P.162

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS)

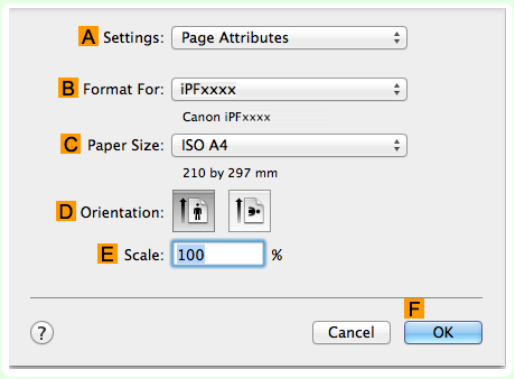
This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: **Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280**
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

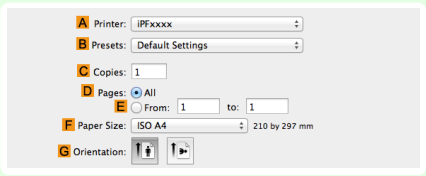
1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

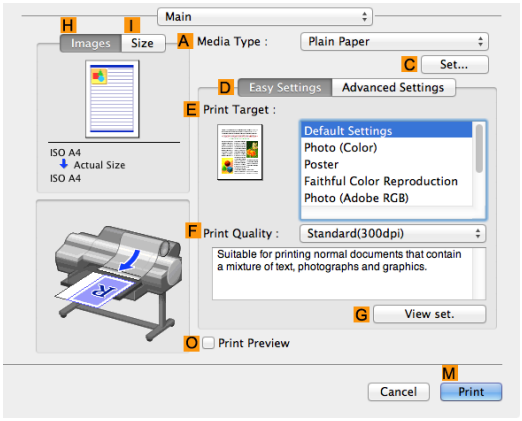


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.



6 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280**.
Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

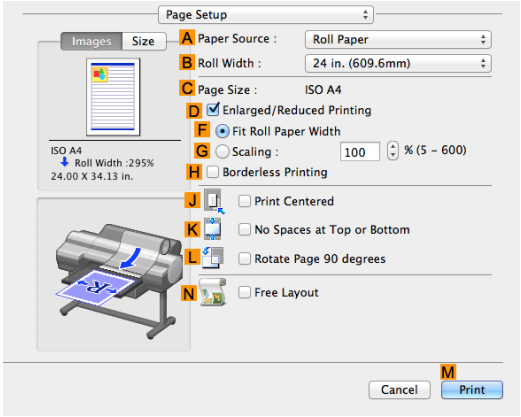
- The types of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For details, see "**Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)**." ➔P.577

7 After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Color)** in the **E Print Target** list.

Note
- For information on settings optimized for printing photos and images, see "**Printing Photos and Images.**" →P.37
- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View set.**.

8 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

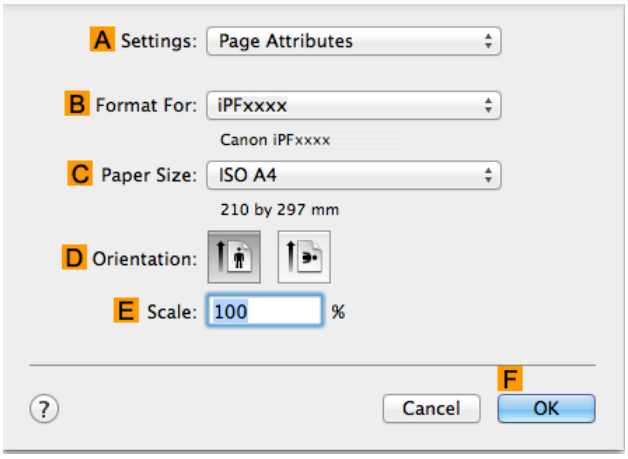
9 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

11 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)** is selected.

12 Make sure **C Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **10"x12"**.



13 Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "**Printer Driver Settings .**" →P.344

14 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.347

Printing from Photoshop

You can print images in the Adobe RGB color space that you have created in Photoshop, the Adobe Systems photo retouching application. Using the dedicated Photoshop printer driver plug-in (provided with the printer) makes it easy to print Adobe RGB images more attractively.

- Using the Plug-in to Print
  The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop is a dedicated plug-in provided with the printer that you can load in Photoshop and customize for your printing needs. By using the plug-in, you can print while preserving the 16-bit RGB data from Photoshop without losing the exceptional color gradations of original image. Some of the settings and customizations available in the plug-in are as follows.
  - Automatic detection of the color space (sRGB or Adobe RGB) for automatic selection of the optimal profile. This feature eliminates the need to complete intricate settings when printing Adobe RGB images.
  - Advanced gray adjustment, including adjustment of tone curves, in addition to an array of standard adjustments for color balance, brightness, contrast, highlight, and shadow.
  - Fine-tune color tones in Photoshop while viewing a preview that accurately reproduces printing results.
  - With print log management, you can save and load setting parameters from past print jobs.

  Note
  - imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop for Windows and Macintosh are provided with the printer.

  For instructions and details on which versions of Photoshop are compatible with the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

  - **Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional** →P.238
  - **Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional** →P.430
- Using the Printer Driver to Print
  The printer driver offers the following settings and adjustments.
  - Choose the standard sRBG color space or Adobe RGB as desired.
  - Adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray levels.

  For instructions on using the printer driver to print Adobe RGB images created in Photoshop, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

  - **Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows)** →P.42
  - **Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS)** →P.45

Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows)

This topic describes how to print Adobe RGB images based on the following example.

- Document: Adobe RGB image created in Photoshop
- Page Size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: **Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280**
- Roll Paper Width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Important
- In Photoshop, select no color-matching.
- In the printer driver settings, select **Driver Matching Mode** and choose **Adobe RGB** in **Color Space**.

1 In Photoshop, create an image in the Adobe RGB color space.

Note
- The following procedures are based on the example of Photoshop CS3/CS4/CS5.
- For instructions on creating Adobe RGB images, refer to the Photoshop documentation.

2 Choose **Print with Preview** from the **File** menu to display the **Print** dialog box.

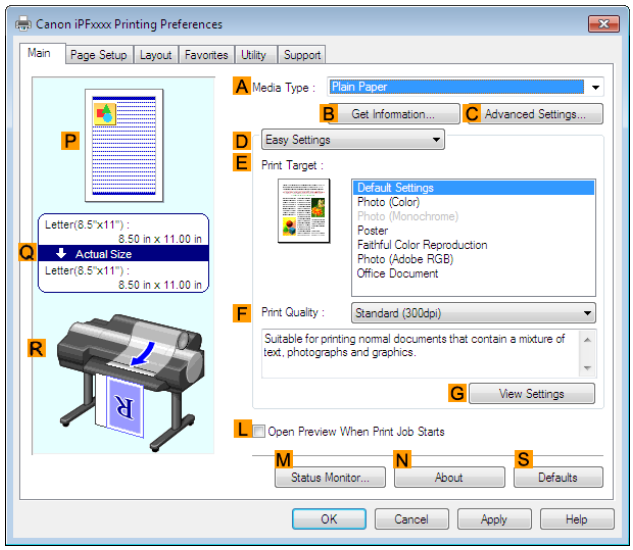
3 Make sure the setting mode is **Color Management**.

4 In the **Color Handling** list in **Options**, click **Printer Manages Colors**.

5 Click **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.

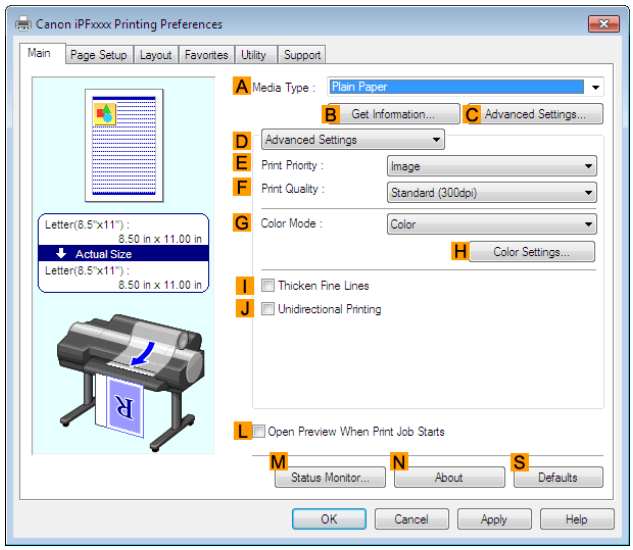
6 Select the printer and click **Properties** to display the printer driver dialog box.

7 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



8 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280**.

9 Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



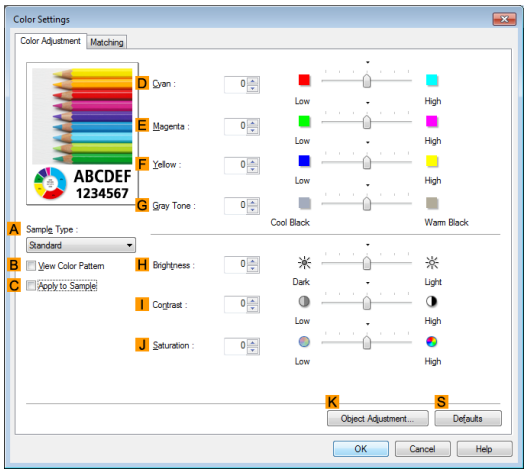
10 Click **Image** in the **E Print Priority** list.

11 Select the print quality in the **F Print Quality** list.

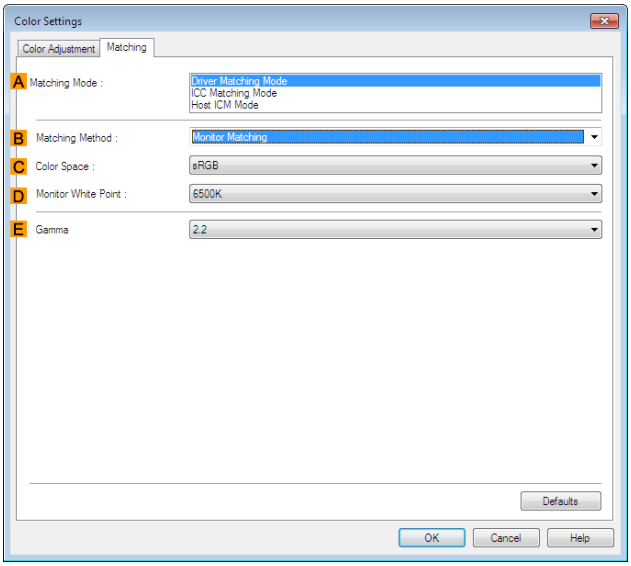
Note
- Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

12 Click **Color** in the **G Color Mode** list.

13 Click **H Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



14 Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.

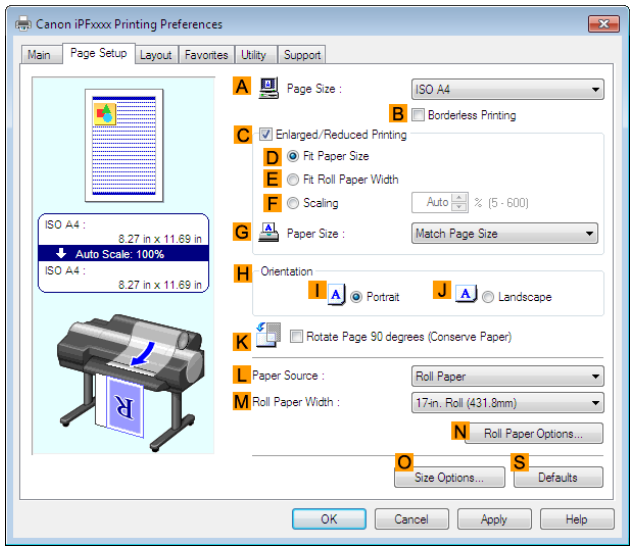


15 In **A Matching Mode**, click **Driver Matching Mode**.

16 In **C Color Space**, click **Adobe RGB**.

17 Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

18 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



19 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

20 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

21 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.

22 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to print Adobe RGB images based on the following example.

- Document: Adobe RGB image created in Photoshop
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: **Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280**
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Important
- In Photoshop, select no color-matching.
- In the printer driver settings, select **Driver Matching Mode** and choose **Adobe RGB** in **Color Space**.

1 In Photoshop, create an image in the Adobe RGB color space.

Note
- The following procedures are based on the example of Photoshop CS3/CS4/CS5.
- For instructions on creating Adobe RGB images, refer to the Photoshop documentation.

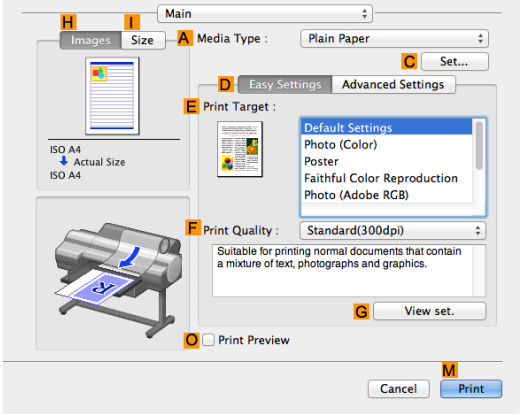
2 Choose **Print with Preview** from the Photoshop menu to display the **Print** dialog box.

3 Make sure the setting mode is **Color Management**.

4 In the **Color Handling** list, click **Printer Manages Colors**.

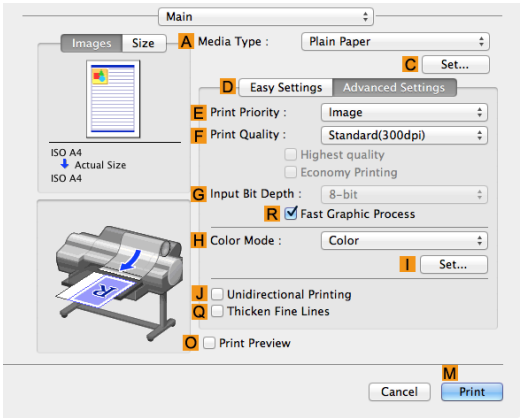
5 Click **Print**.

6 Access the **Main** pane.



7 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280**.

8 Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9 Click **Image** in the **E Print Priority** list.

10 Select the print quality in the **F Print Quality** list.

Note
- Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the type of paper.

11 Click **Color** in the **H Color Mode** list.

12 Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

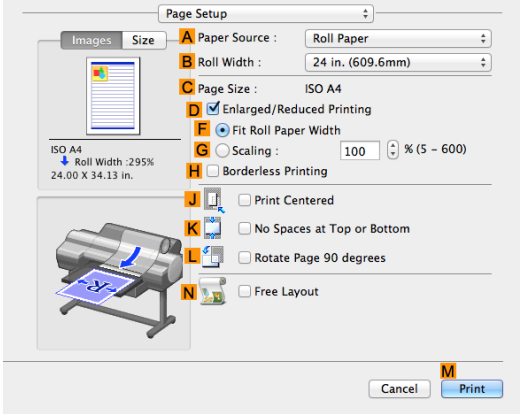
13 Click **Matching** to display the **Matching** pane.

14 In **Matching Mode**, click **Driver Matching Mode**.

15 In **Color Space**, click **Adobe RGB**.

16 Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

17 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



18 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

19 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)** is selected.

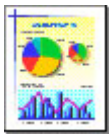
20 Make sure **C Page Size** in the **Page Setup** pane matches the size of the original as specified in Photoshop—in this case, **10"x12"**.

21 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.347

Printing Office Documents

By selecting **Office Document** from **Easy Settings** of the printer driver, you can easily configure settings for printing office documents.

	Print Target	Description
	**Office Document**	Setting optimized for printing general office documents such as materials for distribution so that they can be viewed easily.

Note
- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**" →P.59

Printing Office Documents (Windows)

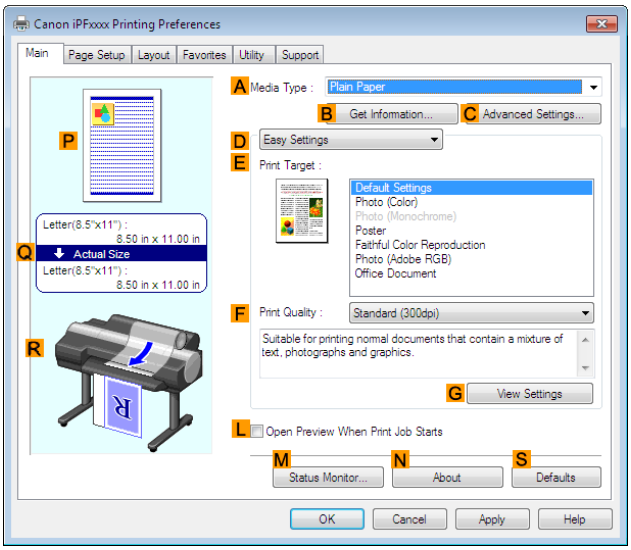
This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



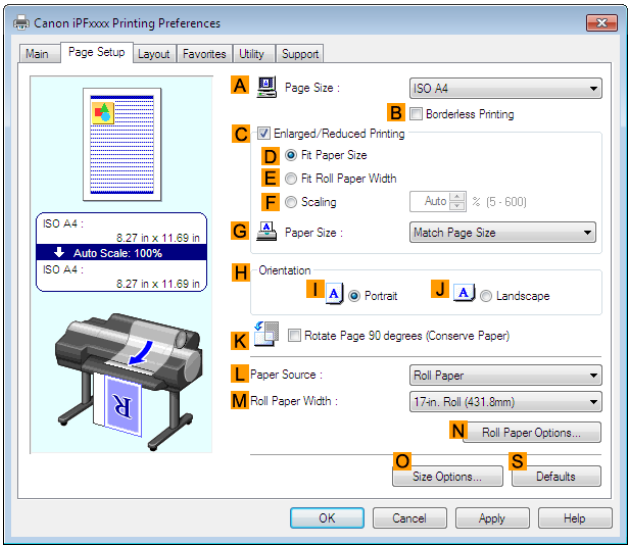
4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5 After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the **E Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View Settings**.

6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

8 Click **Manual** in the **L Paper Source** list.

9 Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "**Printer Driver Settings** ." ➔P.158

10 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

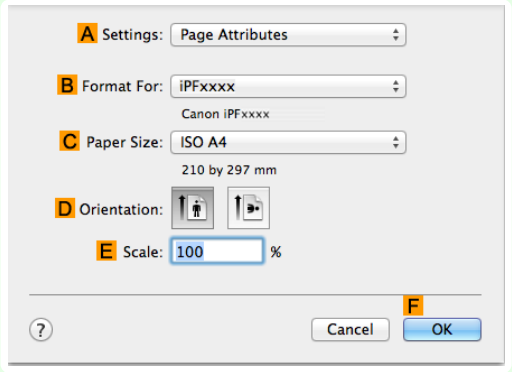
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

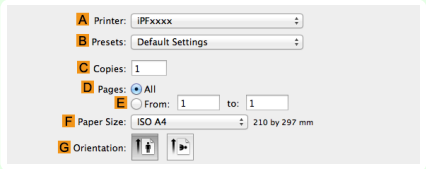
- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])

1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

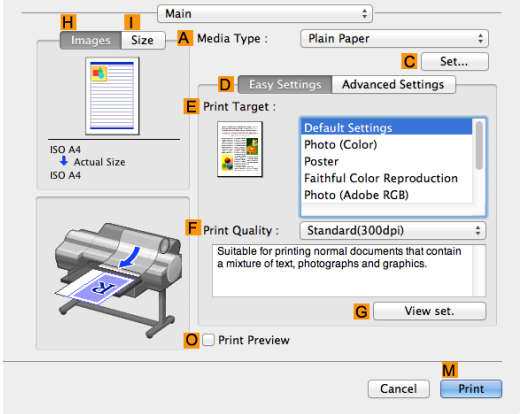


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - for Paper Tray (Large Margins)**.

4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.



6 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

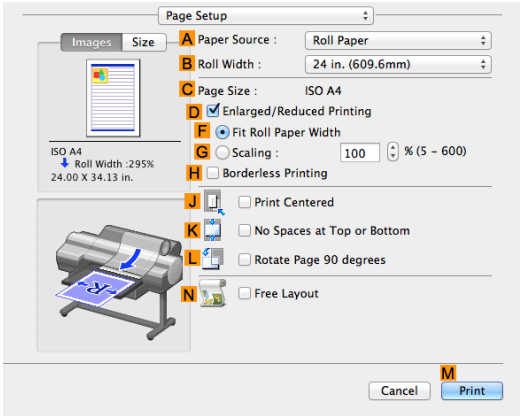
7 After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the **E Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View set.**.

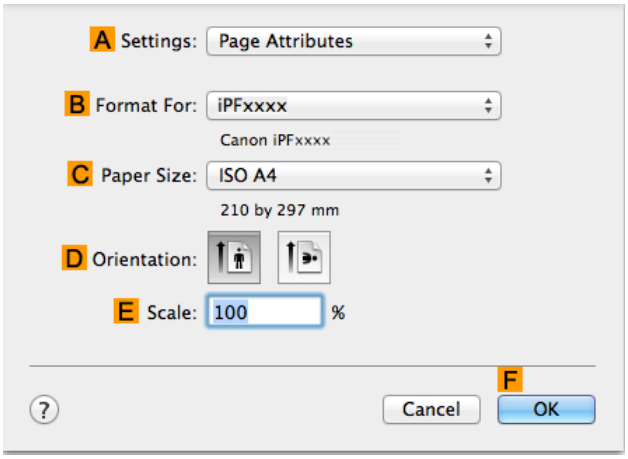
8 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10 Click **Manual** in the **A Paper Source** list.

11 Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4 - for Paper Tray (Large Margins)**.



12 Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "**Printer Driver Settings** ." ➔P.344

13 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." ➔P.347

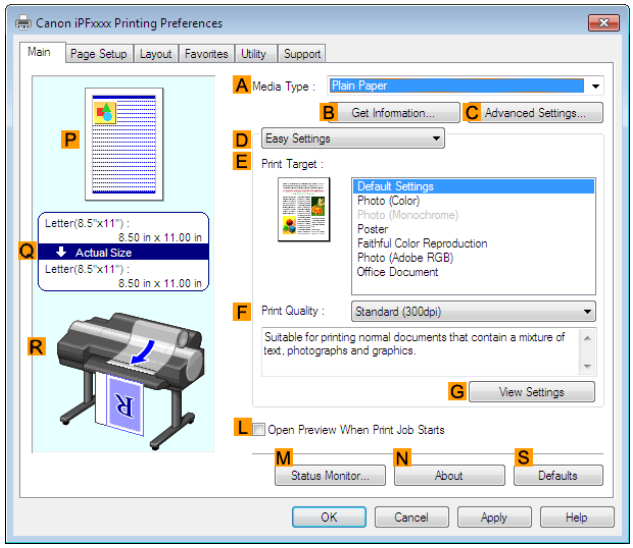
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals

You can print a variety of source documents from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or screen shots from web browsers after composing an original with them using PosterArtist.
This topic describes how to use PosterArtist to compose originals from multiple applications, creating a poster layout for printing.

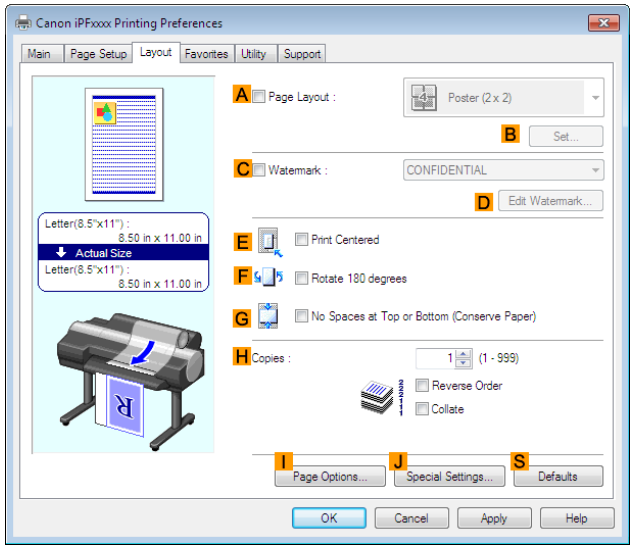
1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)**.") ➔P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.

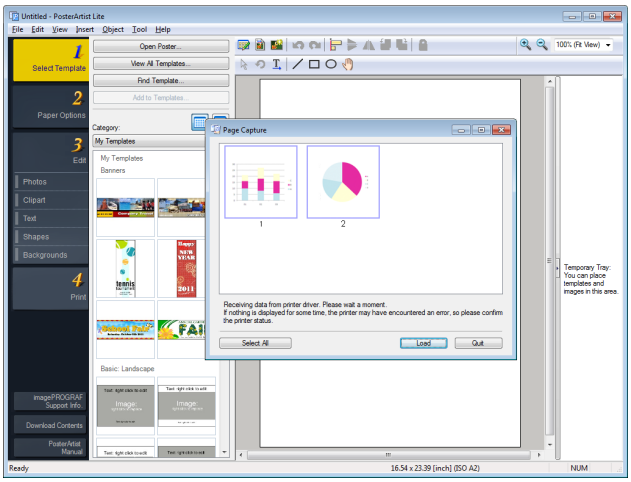


5 Select the A **Page Layout** check box.

6 Click in the **Edit Using PosterArtist** in the A **Page Layout** list.

Note
- This function cannot be used with a 64-bit version OS.

7 When you attempt to print, PosterArtist starts up and the PageCapture window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



8 Choose the page to load in PosterArtist.

9 Edit and rearrange the image in the PosterArtist window as desired.
Without closing the PosterArtist window, repeat steps 1-8 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

Note
- For details on how to edit and sort images, refer to the PosterArtist Manual.

10 Print from the PosterArtist menu.

Adjusting Images

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver 53
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) 55
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS) 57

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing 59
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) 61
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS) 63

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver

Color settings specified in the application for your documents are essentially given priority over other settings for each print job, but further color adjustment is possible in the printer driver.

• Color Mode

Choose how the printer driver processes color, as desired.

The available options vary depending on the color mode.

Color Mode	Description	Color Adjustment
Color	Print in color.	You can select the color balance and color matching functions.
Monochrome (Photo)	Grayscale printing optimized for mono-chrome photos.	You can adjust the color balance in ways tailored to monochrome photos.
Monochrome	Print in grayscale.	You can adjust the color balance.
No color correction (*1)	Prints without performing color-matching in the printer driver.	You can adjust the color balance.

*1: If **No color correction** is selected, the **Matching** sheet / **Matching** pane is not displayed.

• Color Adjustment

You can adjust colors separately for images, graphics, and text documents.

Adjustment Item	Description
Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of **Cyan**, **Magenta**, and **Yellow**.
Magenta	
Yellow	
Gray Tone	Adjust the grayscale, in a range from cool, blue tones to warm, red tones.
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

Note

- Click **Object Adjustment** to open the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from **Image**, **Graphics**, and **Text**.

• Matching

You can choose the color-matching mode and method.

By adjusting the color-matching mode and method, you can make printed colors match the colors of on-screen images more closely.

Important

- If **No color correction** is selected under **Color Mode**, the **Matching** cannot be changed.

Matching Mode	Description	Remarks
Driver Matching Mode	Enables printing of optimal color tones using a driver specific color profile.	You should normally select this mode.
ICC Matching Mode	Enables color matching using ICC profiles. Select this if you want to print by specifying the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail.	This allows you to use ICC profiles for digital cameras and scanners, ICC profiles created using the profile creation tool, etc.
Host ICM Mode	Enables color matching by the host computer using the ICM function of Windows. Select this if you want to print from an application that supports the ICM function.	Available when using Windows.
ColorSync	Enables color matching by using the ColorSync function of Mac OS. Select this if you want to perform soft proofing using ColorSync before printing.	Available when using Mac OS. To select **ColorSync**, choose **ColorSync** on the **Color Matching** panel.

Matching Method	Description	Remarks
Auto	Color-matching optimized for images, graphics, or text.	The available options and their display order vary depending on your selected color-matching mode, as well as the operating system.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.	
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.	
Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to Colorimetric. Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute colorimetric	
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.	
Monitor Matching	Suitable for optimized printing to match the appearance on the monitor. Color-matching optimized for accurately reproducing colors on the calibrated sRGB or AdobeRGB monitor.	

For instructions on color adjustment, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)** →P.55
- **Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS)** →P.57

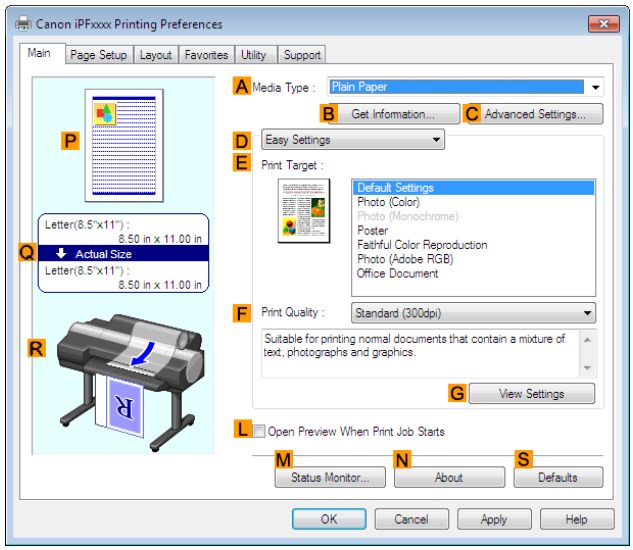
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

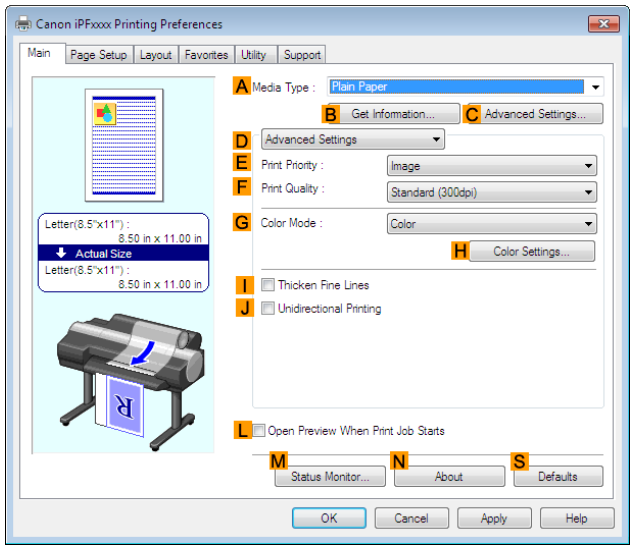
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



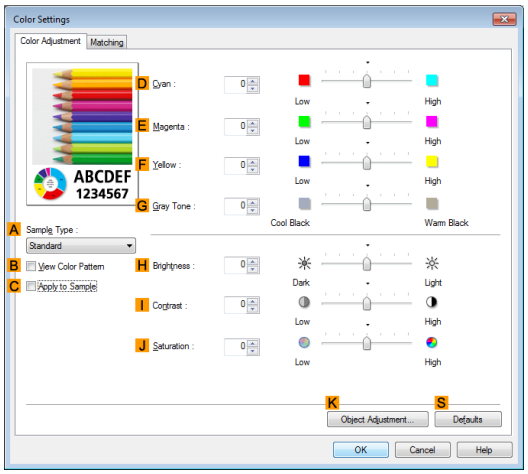
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

5. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Color** in the **G Color Mode** list.

7 Click **H Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



8 On the **Color Adjustment** sheet, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

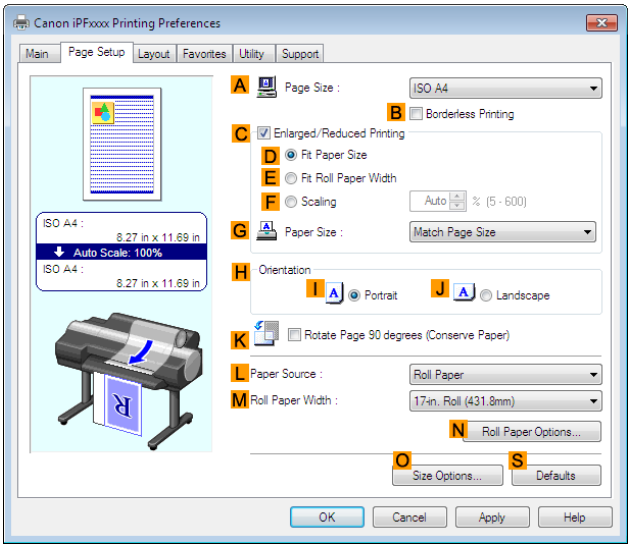
Adjustment Item	Description
D Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E Magenta	
F Yellow	
G Gray Tone	Adjust the gray tone. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on.
H Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
I Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

Note

- Click **Object Adjustment** to open the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from **Image**, **Graphics**, and **Text**.

9 Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

10 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11 Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Paper Source**, and so on.

12 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

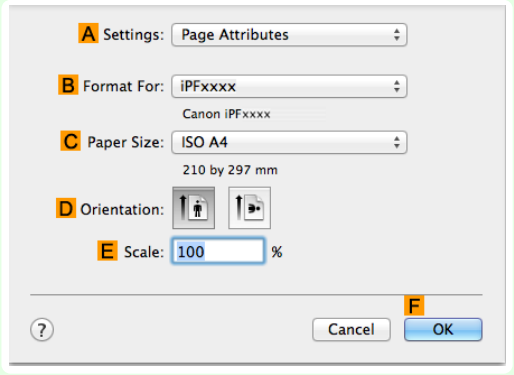
Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.162

Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS)

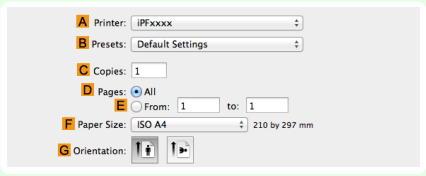
You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

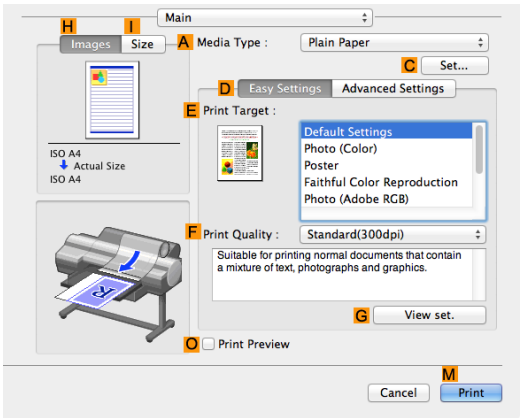


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 Choose the original size in the **F Paper Size** list.

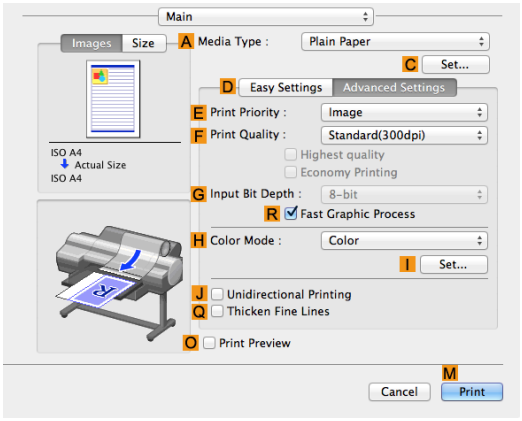
4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.



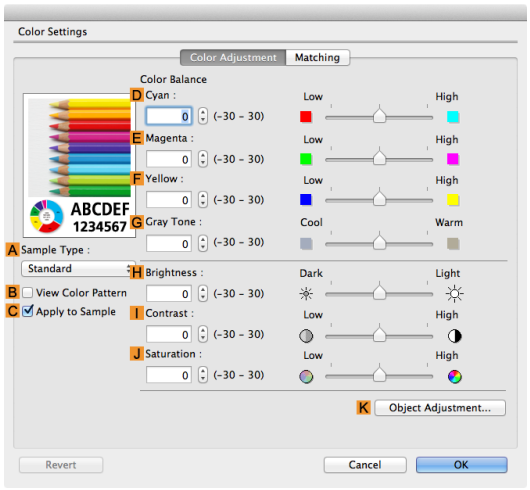
6 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

7 Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



8 Click **Color** in the **H Color Mode** list.

9 Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



10 On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

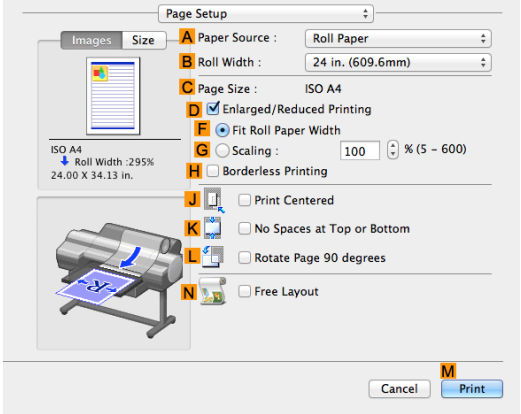
Adjustment Item	Description
D Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E Magenta	
F Yellow	
G Gray Tone	Adjust the gray tone. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on.
H Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
I Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

Note

- Click **Object Adjustment** to open the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from **Images**, **Graphics**, and **Text**.

11 Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

12 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



13 Confirm the settings of **A Paper Source** and **C Page Size**.

14 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.347

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing

You can specify detailed print settings as desired for the quality level, colors, and other criteria.

• Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

Print Priority (*1)	Description
Image	A setting for posters or other documents made up mainly of photos or images, or for emphasizing photos or images in printed documents.
Line Drawing/Text	Choose this setting for CAD drawings made up mainly of intricate lines, or to enhance the finishing of fine text. However, the quality may not be sufficient when printing photos or images that require a lot of color coverage. In this case, choose **Image** instead.
Office Document	Choose this setting for better legibility of documents combining text and graphics, such as documents and presentation material created with typical office applications.
Proof	This is a setting for enhancing the reproduction of text, illustrations, and photos on print proofs. However, this takes more time than regular printing.

*1: Options suitable for the selected type of paper are listed under Print Priority.

• Print Quality

Choose the print quality.

The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality (*1)	Description	Print Priority
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.	**Image** **Proof**
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in **Standard** or **Fast** modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text** **Proof**

Print Quality (*1)	Description	Print Priority
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in **Highest** or **High** mode.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text** **Office Document** **Proof**
Fast	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text**

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Print Quality.

- Color Settings

Setting Item	Options	Description
Color Mode (*1)	**Color** **Monochrome (Photo)** **Monochrome** **No color correction**	Choose whether to print in color or monochrome. (See "**Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver**.") →P.53
Color Adjustment (Images) **Color Adjustment** (Graphics) **Color Adjustment** (Text)	**Cyan** **Magenta** **Yellow** **Gray Tone** **Brightness** **Contrast** **Saturation**	You can adjust the levels of cyan, magenta, and yellow as well as the brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray tone separately for images, graphics, and text documents. If you choose **Monochrome** in **Color Mode** only **Brightness** and **Contrast** can be adjusted.
Gray Adjustment	**Color Balance** **Tone** **Brightness** **Contrast** **Highlight** **Shadow**	Choose the gray tone color balance (**Cool Black** or **Warm Black**) and adjust levels of brightness, the brightness of intermediate tones, contrast, highlight, and shadow as desired. These levels can be adjusted when **Monochrome (Photo)** is selected in **Color Mode**.
Color-Matching Modes	**Driver Matching Mode** **ICC Matching Mode**	Choose the color-matching mode. Other color-matching modes may be provided by the computer operating system, such as ICM and ColorSync.
Color-Matching Method (*2)	**Auto** **Perceptual** **Saturation** **Monitor Matching** **Colorimetric** other	Choose the color-matching method. The available options vary depending on your selection in **Color-Matching Mode**.
Color Space (*3)	**sRGB** **Adobe RGB**	Choose a standard color space (**sRGB**) or an expanded color space (**Adobe RGB**).
Gamma	**2.2** **1.8**	You can adjust the gradation of intermediate tones in an image. You can select only after **Driver Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

*1: Options suitable for the selected **Print Priority** and **Media Type** are listed under **Color ModePrint Priority**.
*2: The order of options displayed varies depending on the operating system.
*3: **Adobe RGB** is not available if an incompatible combination of the paper type and print quality is selected.

- Enhancing printing quality

Setting Item	Description
Highest quality	This prints at the highest resolution. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.
Thicken Fine Lines	Prints making fine lines appear thicker.
Unidirectional Printing	Prints by suppressing color variations and misaligned ruled lines. However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Economy Printing	When this mode is selected, the quality is diminished from that of regular printing, however less ink is consumed. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when printing to check drawings, for example. Depending on the **Media Type** and **Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.

Note

- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in **Print Quality**, and select the **Unidirectional Printing** check box.

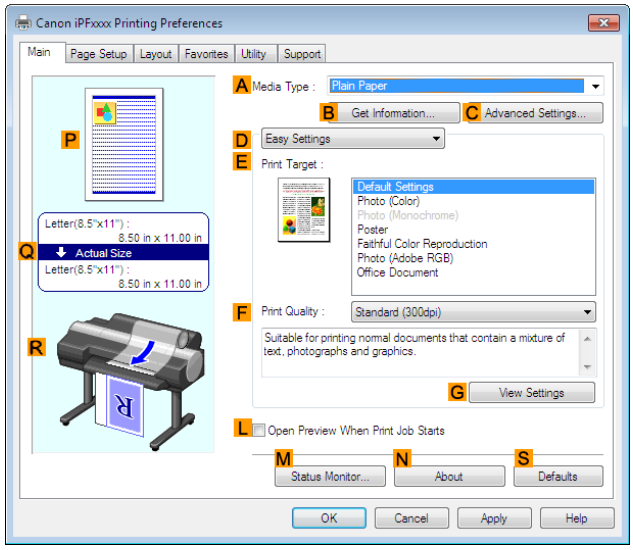
For instructions on specifying the print quality and color settings before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows)** ➔P.61
- **Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS)** ➔P.63

Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows)

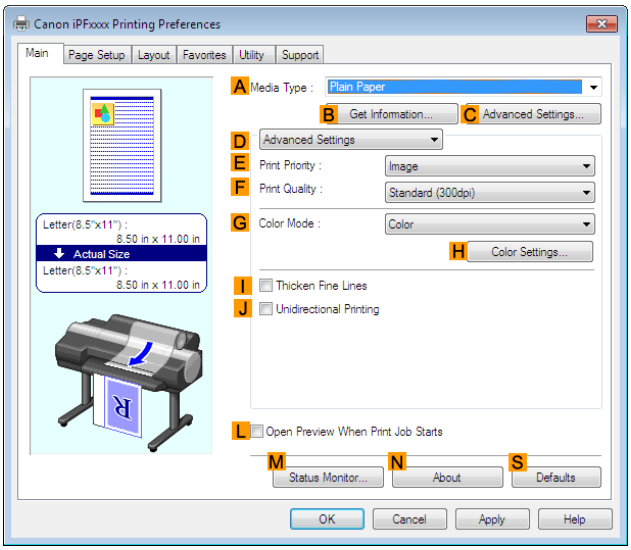
You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how print photographic images in monochrome.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

5 Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6 Click **Image** in the **E Print Priority** list.

7 Click **High (600dpi)** in the **F Print Quality** list.

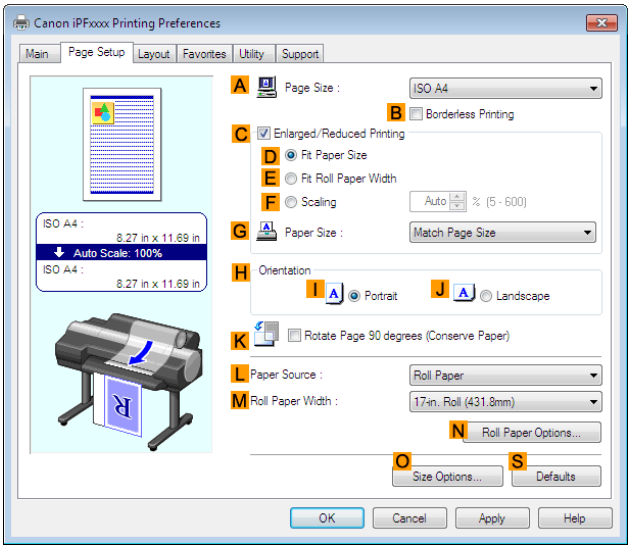
Note
- Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the type of paper.

8 Click **Monochrome** in the **G Color Mode** list.

9 To adjust the brightness and contrast, click **H Color Settings**.

Note
- For instructions on adjusting brightness and contrast, see "**Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver.**" ➔P.53

10 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11 Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Paper Source**, and so on.

12 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

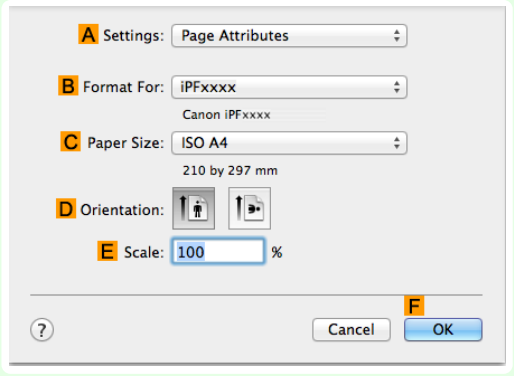
Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS)

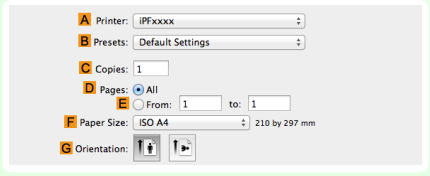
You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how print photographic images in monochrome.

1 Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

Note
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



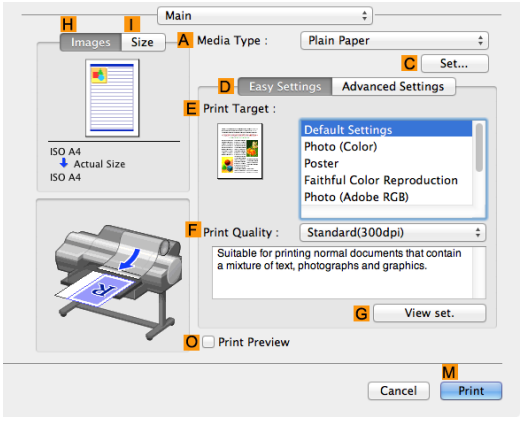
2 Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3 Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.

4 Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

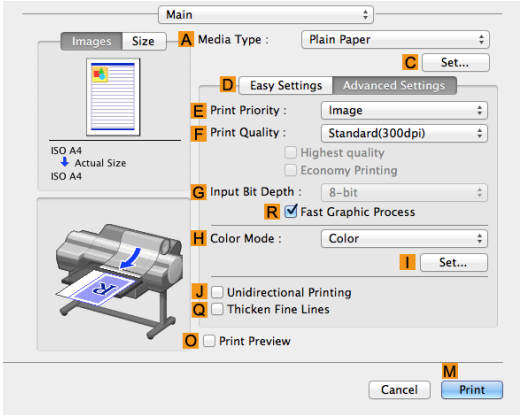
5 In the application menu, choose **Print**.

6 Access the **Main** pane.



7 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8 Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9 Click **Image** in the **E Print Priority** list.

10 Click **High (600dpi)** in the **F Print Quality** list.

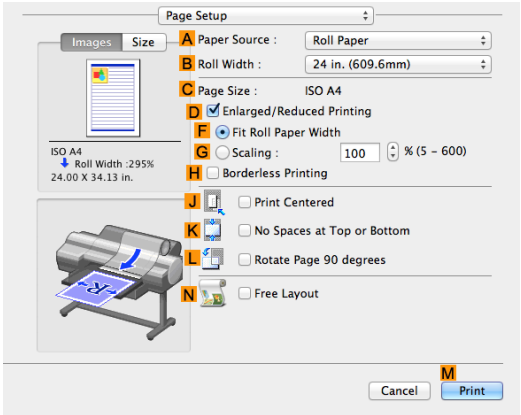
Note
- Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

11 Click **Monochrome** in the **H Color Mode** list.

12 To adjust the brightness and contrast, click **I Set**.

Note
- For instructions on adjusting brightness and contrast, see "**Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver.**" ➔P.53

13 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14 Confirm the settings of **A Paper Source** and **C Page Size**.

15 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" ➔P.347

Printing enlargements or reductions

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size 65
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 65
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 67
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 67
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS) 69
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value 71
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) 72
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS) 74

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size

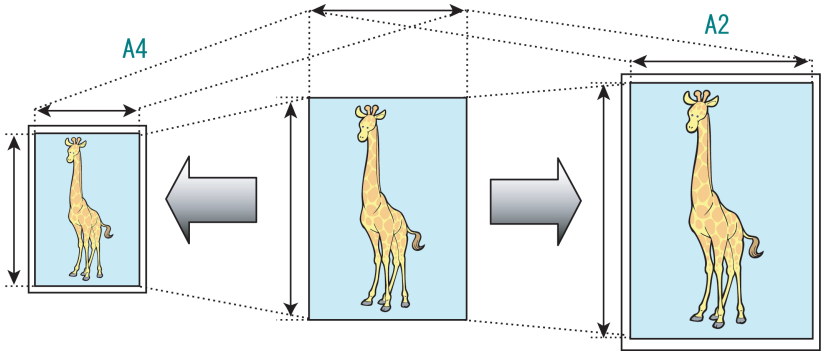
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

- **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

  Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

- **Fit Paper Size**

  Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.

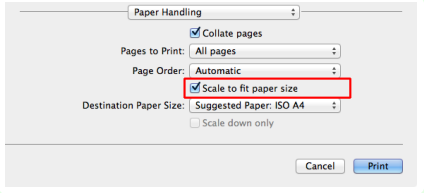


For instructions on printing with resizing to fit the paper size, refer to the following topics.

- **Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)** ➔P.65

Note

- To print with resizing to fit the paper size on Mac OS, use **Scale to fit paper size** in the **Paper Handling** panel provided by the OS.
  For more information, see the Mac OS User Manual.



- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

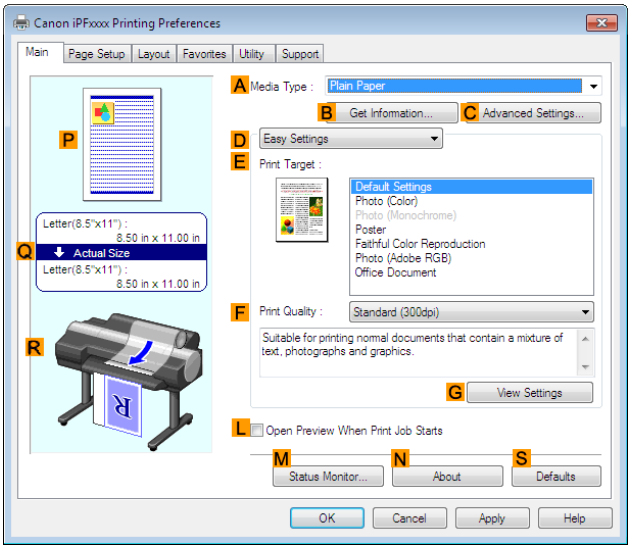
- Document: Any Type

- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

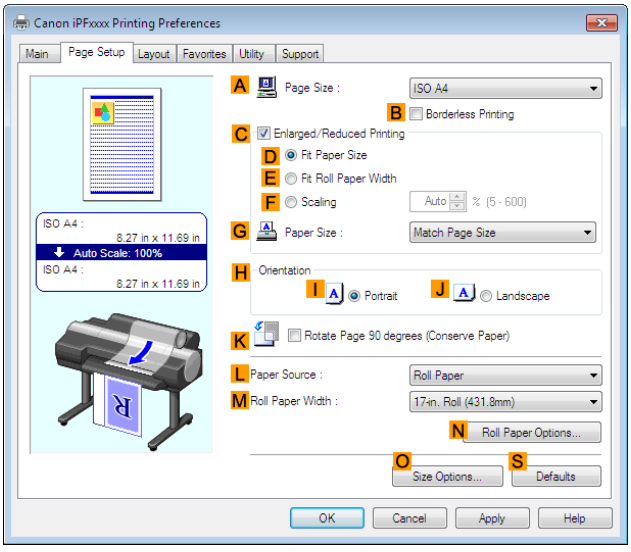
3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5 Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.

6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

8 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

9 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

10 Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

11 Select the D **Fit Paper Size** check box.

12 Click **ISO A3** in the G **Paper Size** list.

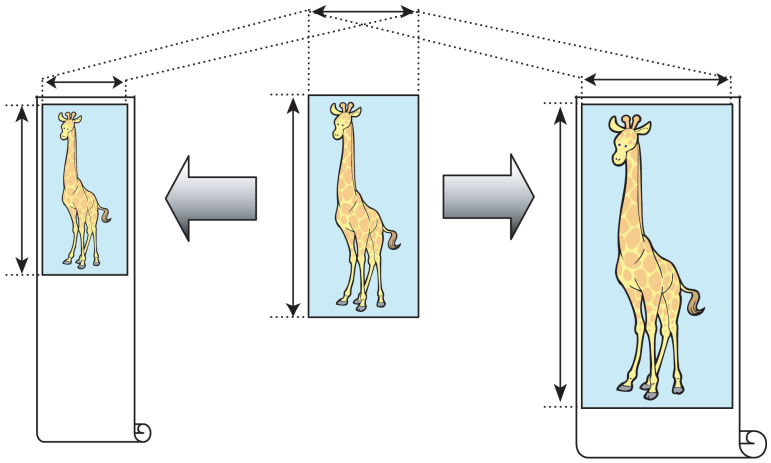
13 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

- **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**
  Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.
- **Fit Roll Paper Width**
  Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width, as desired.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)** →P.67
- **Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS)** →P.69

Note
- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

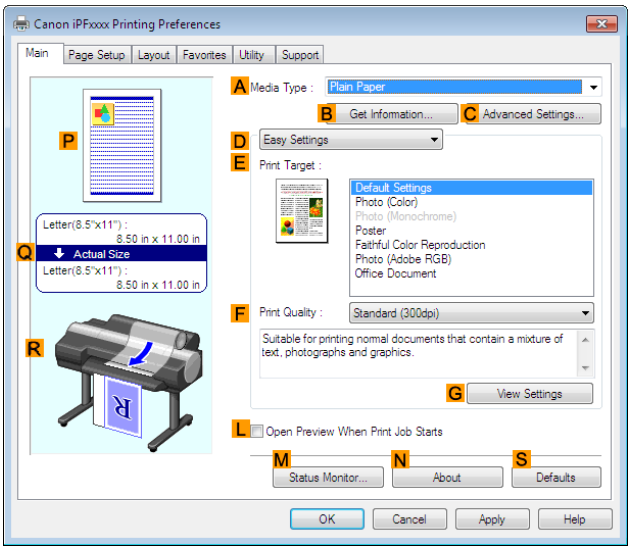
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") →P.165

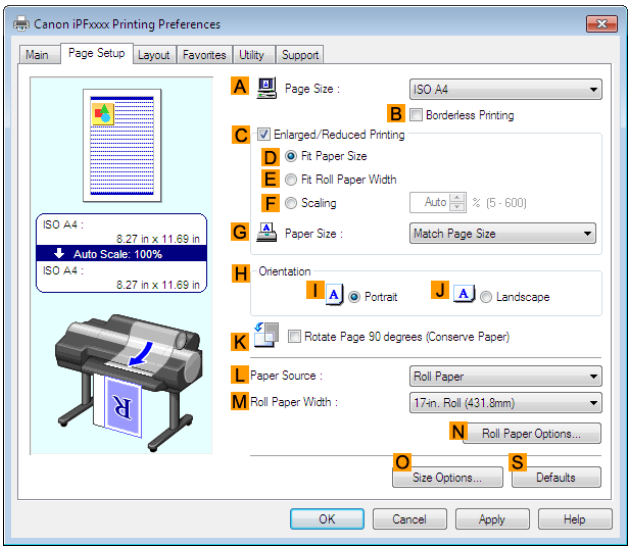
3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5 Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.

6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



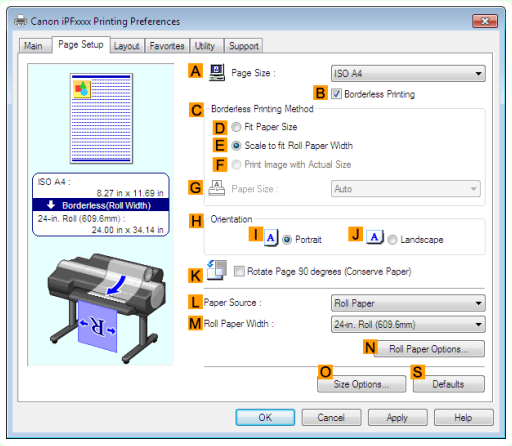
7 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

8 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

9 Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the **B Borderless Printing** check box.



10 Click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- After you click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list and click **OK**.
- Make sure the roll paper width you specify matches the width of the loaded roll.

11 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.162

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS)

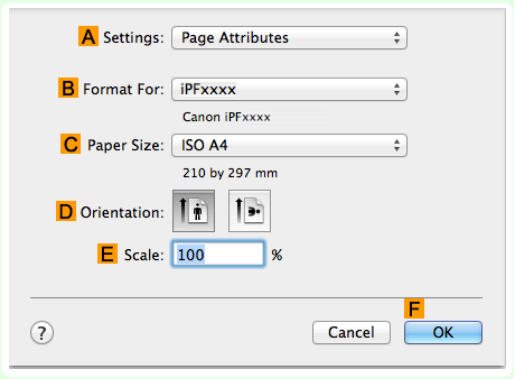
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

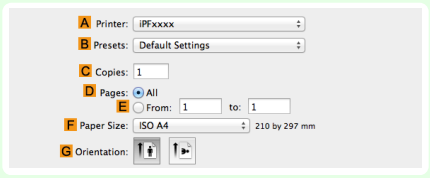
1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

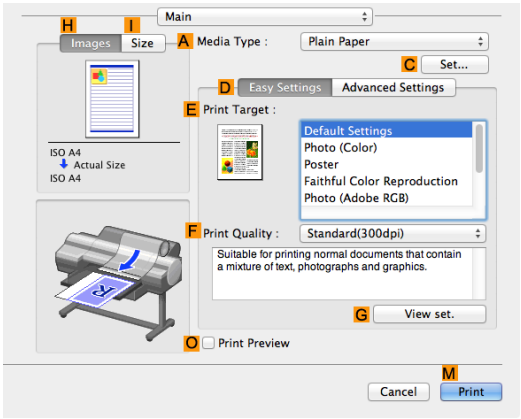


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.

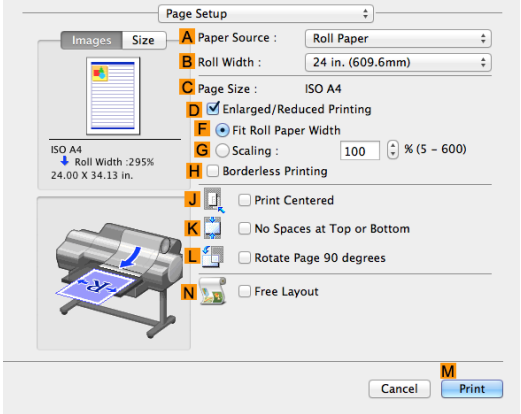


6 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

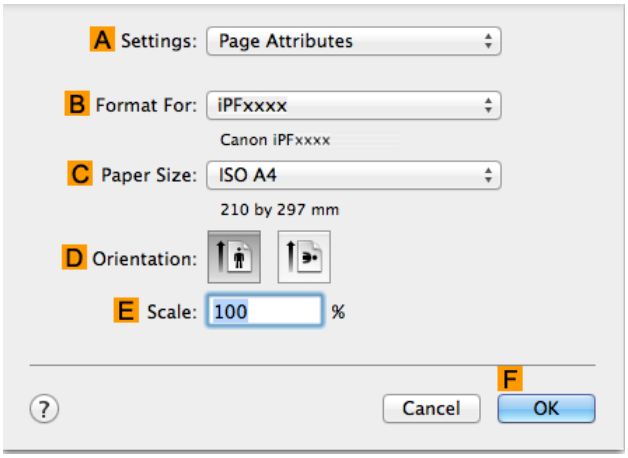
9 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

11 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)** is selected.

12 Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



13 Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14 Click **F Fit Roll Paper Width**.

15 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.347

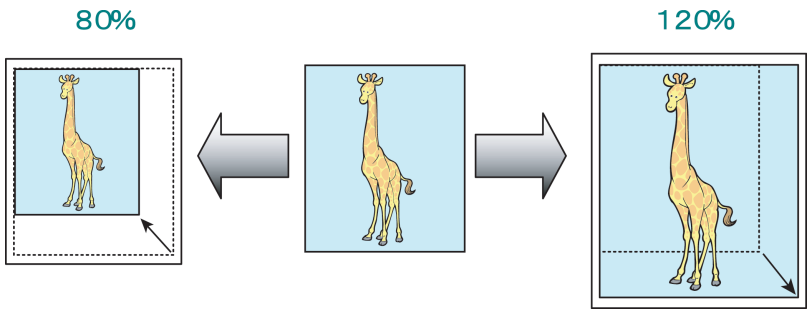
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value

You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

- **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**
  Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

- **Scaling**

  Enlarge or reduce originals by a particular amount, as desired.



For instructions on entering a scaling value to resize originals, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)** ➔P.72
- **Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS)** ➔P.74

Note
- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)

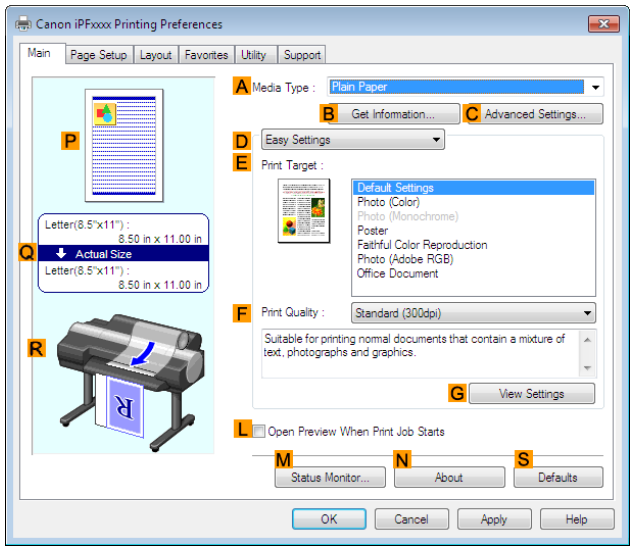
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

Important
- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

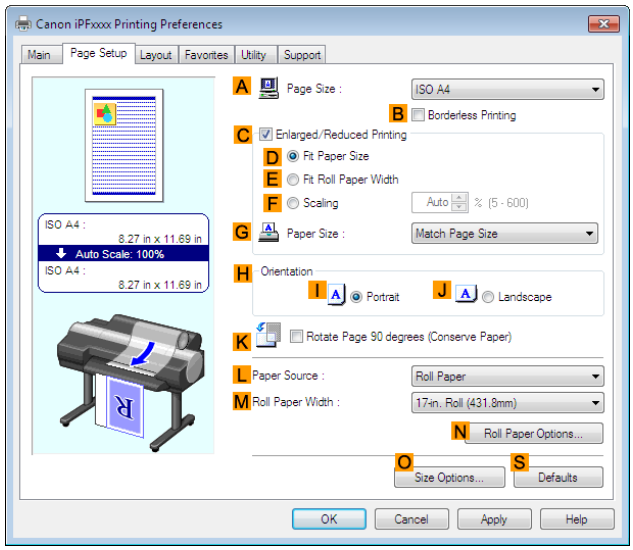
3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5 Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.

6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

8 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

9 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

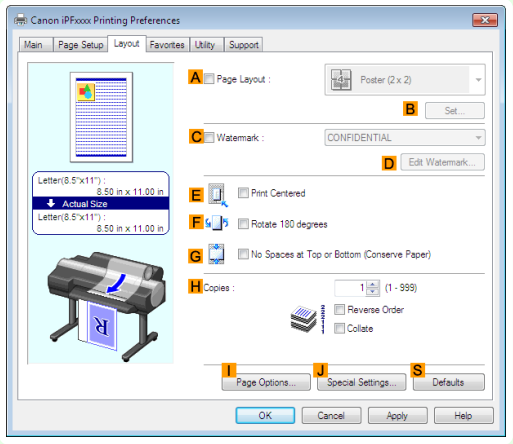
10 Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

11 Click **ISO A4** in the **G Paper Size** list.

12 Click **F Scaling** and enter **120**.

Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portions off the bottom and right edges of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting **E Print Centered** on the **Layout** sheet.



13 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.162

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS)

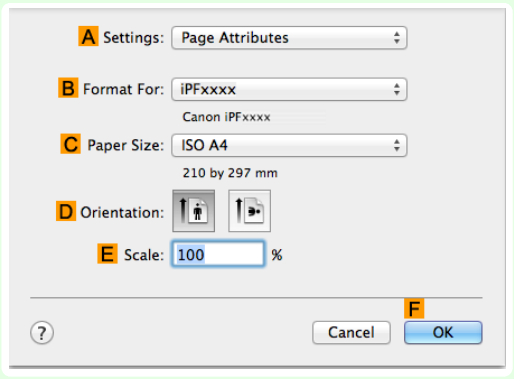
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

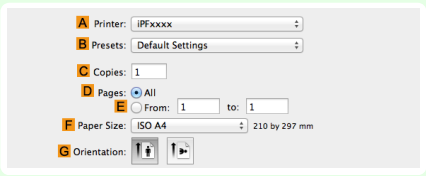
1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

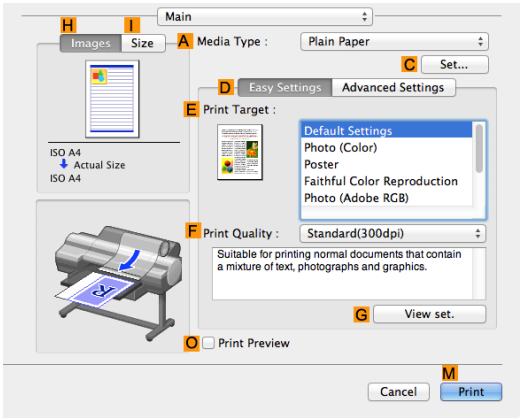


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.

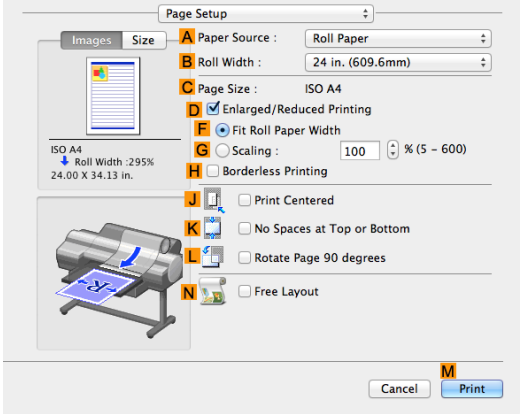


6 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

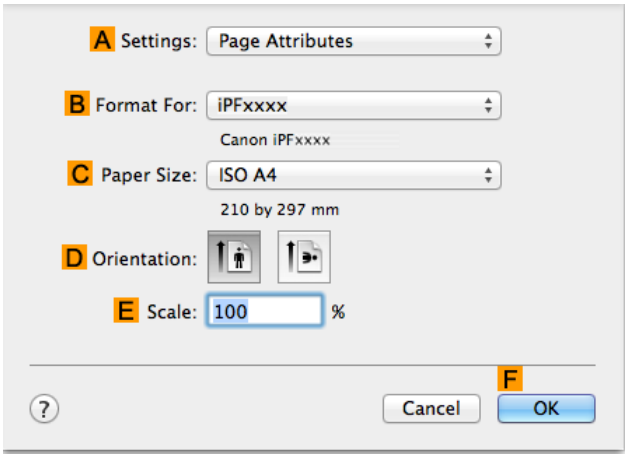
9 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

11 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)** is selected.

12 Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



13 Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14 Click **G Scaling** and enter **120**.

Note
- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting the **J Print Centered** check box.

15 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.347

Printing at full size

Printing on Oversize Paper 77
Printing at Full Size (Windows) 78
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS) 79
Borderless Printing at Actual Size 81
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) 83
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS) 85

Printing on Oversize Paper

You can print all areas of the original at full scale by selecting the paper size from **Oversize** (sizes where the margins needed for printer operation have been added to the page size).
We recommend when printing with a focus on image.

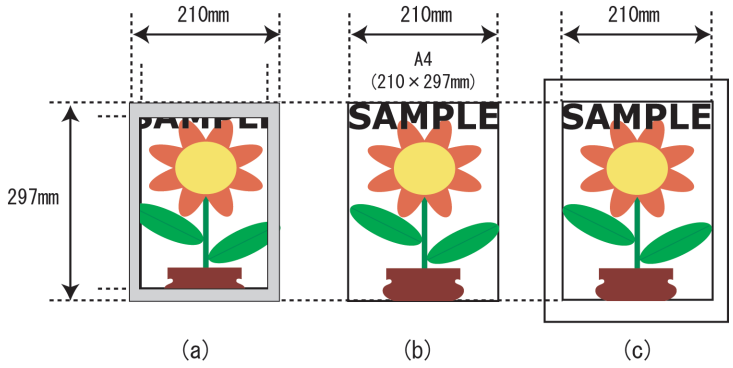
Note
- If you prepare an original for printing without a margin and print it on paper of regular size, the image near the edge will not be printed.

- **Oversize**

When printing on standard paper sizes, printing is performed by taking the margins necessary for printer operations inside the region of the original. (See "**Print Area**.") ➔P.1002 For example, printing the A4 size (210 x 297 mm) original shown in Figure (b) gives the result as shown in Figure (a).

However, if **Oversize** paper is selected, printing is performed by taking the margins necessary for printer operations outside of the region of the original to give the result as shown in Figure (c).

The A4 size print as shown in Figure (b) can then be obtained by trimming the margins from the periphery after printing.



Important
- When printing on **Oversize** paper, load paper larger than the page size—a size that includes the margin required by the printer.
  - Sheets: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 26 mm (1 in) higher than the page size
  - Rolls: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 6 mm (0.24 in) higher than the page size

Note
- Paper larger than the maximum size supported by the printer cannot be used as paper for oversized printing. (See "**Paper Sizes**.") ➔P.492
- Oversized printing (selecting **Oversize** in **Page Size**) is only available in Windows.
- If you are performing oversized printing in Mac OS, you need to configure printing on non-standard paper sizes.
- To specify a non-standard paper size in oversized printing, register the paper size as a Custom Paper Size. Oversized printing is not available with **Custom Size**. (See "**Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes**.") ➔P.105

For instructions on oversized printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Printing at Full Size (Windows)** ➔P.78
- **Printing at Full Size (Mac OS)** ➔P.79

Printing at Full Size (Windows)

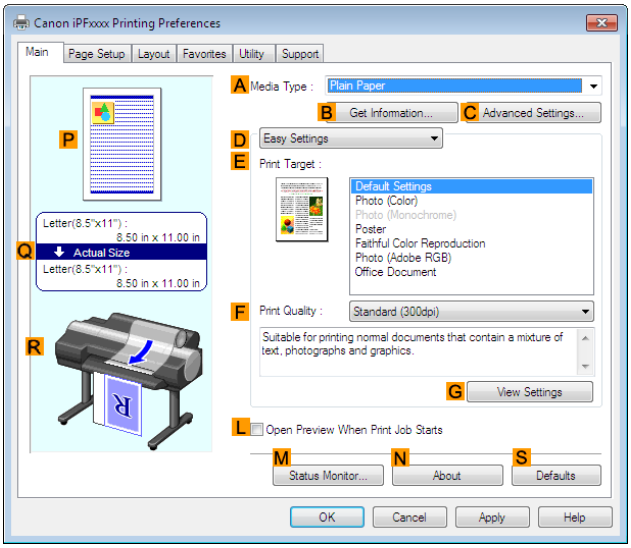
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

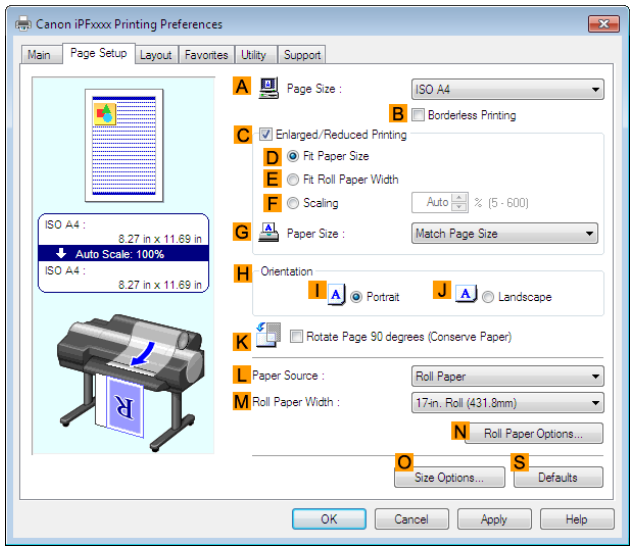
2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6 Click **O Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

7 In the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, select the **Oversize** check box in **Display Series**.

8 Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

9 Click **Oversize - ISO A4** in the **A Page Size** list.

10 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

11 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

12 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.162

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS)

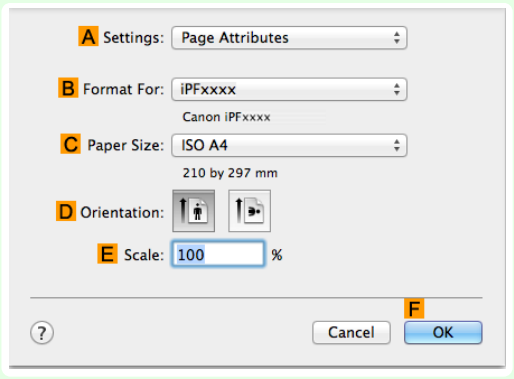
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

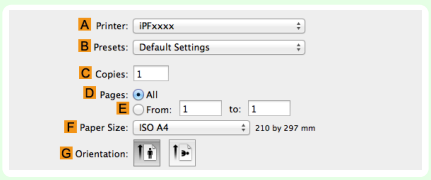
1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

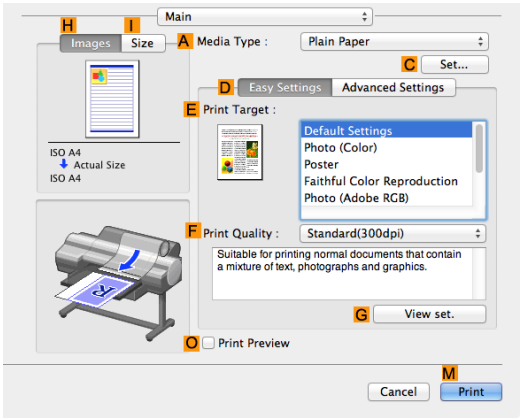


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 In **F Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - Oversize**.

4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.

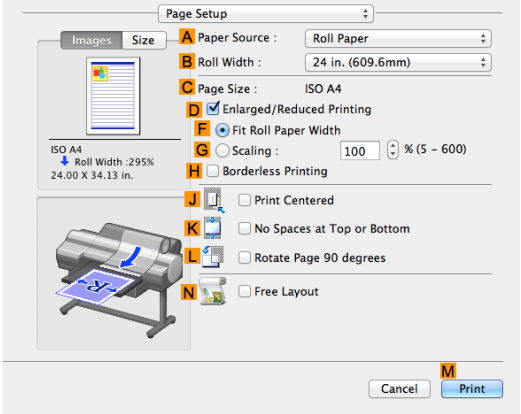


6 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

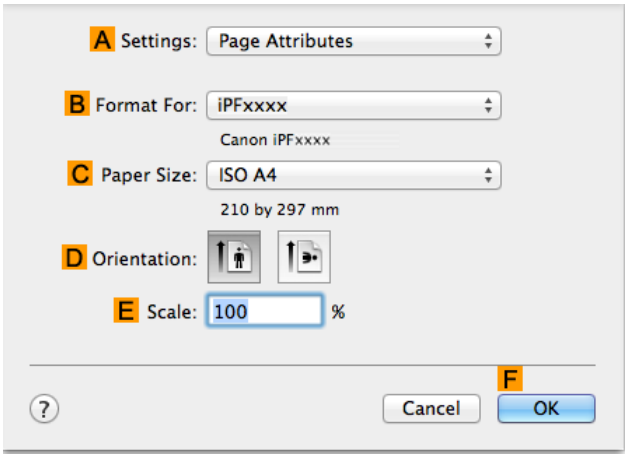
9 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

11 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)** is selected.

12 Make sure **C Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4 - Oversize**.



13 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.347

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.
In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") →P.496
- Although it normally prints borderless on the top, bottom, left, and right (4-edge borderless), in the following cases, it becomes borderless only on the left and right (2-edge borderless) because the top and bottom of the printed image are not automatically cut.

- When paper where the borderless printing is described as two edges only in the **Paper Reference Guide** (paper where printed image areas cannot be cut cleanly) is selected
- When the following settings are made in the printer control panel
  - **Cutting Mode** is **Manual**
  - **CutDustReduct.** is **On**
- When auto cut is configured as not performed in the printer driver

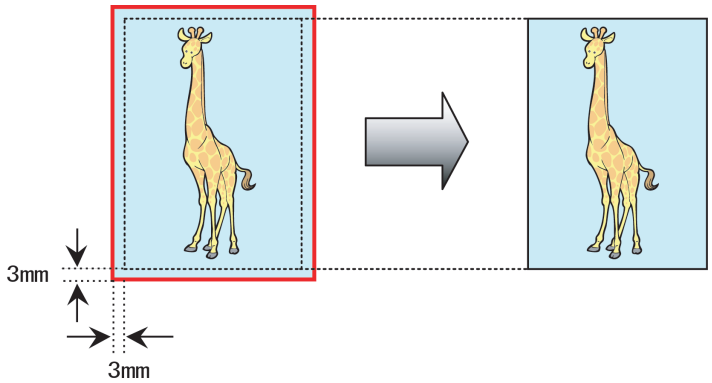
Important

- When printing without borders, be certain to set the blue switch on the platen to the ● side. If the switch is set incorrectly, print quality may deteriorate. (See "**Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.**") →P.960
- Borderless printing is not possible if details such as crop marks and margins are included as data on the periphery of the original.
- If the length of the image to print is short, then since the roll paper is fed out to a prescribed length before cutting in order to prevent cutting problems and ejection problems, the trailing edge of the roll paper might not be printed borderless.
- If you use an A1 orA2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing onthe Roll Holder. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") →P.503
  If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing,the Platen maybe soiled from borderless printing.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- If **Fit Paper Size** or **Print Image with Actual Size** (Windows only) is selected while performing borderless printing, **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** cannot be selected. Note that if borderless printing is possible, then even if the original is rotated 90 degrees, it will be printed by automatically rotating the page by 90 degrees.

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

- **Print Image with Actual Size**

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. We recommend when focusing on image quality. You should create the original at a size larger by 3 mm on each side than the paper size.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- When performing borderless printing without using **Print Image with Actual Size**, the image deteriorates slightly because the image is automatically enlarged.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)** →P.83
- **Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS)** →P.85

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

Important

- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, select **No** from the **Automatic Cutting** list in the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Once printed and cut, please cut the upper and lower bands with scissors.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: **Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper**
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1 Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) —that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)

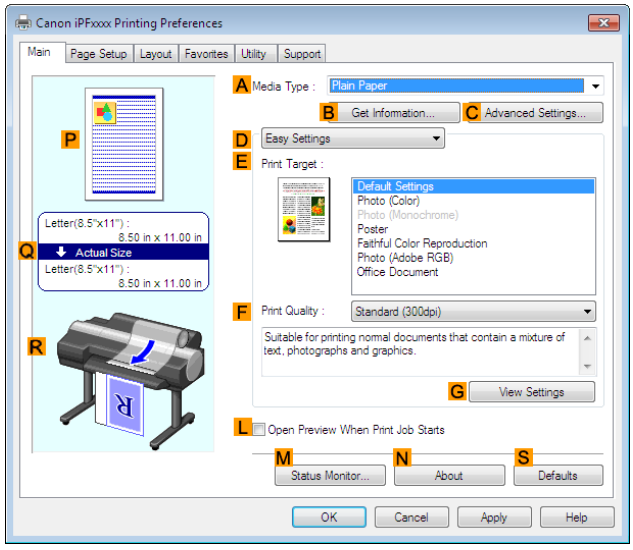
Note

- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
- The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

2 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

4 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



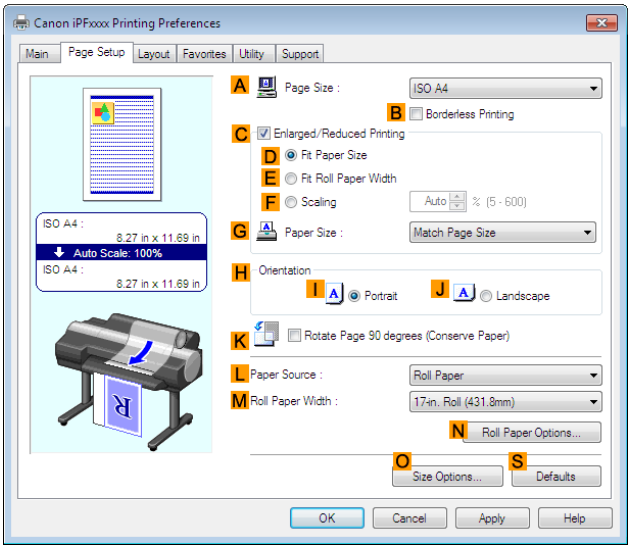
5 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper**.

6 Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

Important

- When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this kind of situation, change the ink drying time using the following procedure.
  - Click **Advanced Settings** in **Media Type**.
  - Select an ink drying time in the list for the **Between Pages** setting of **Drying Time**.

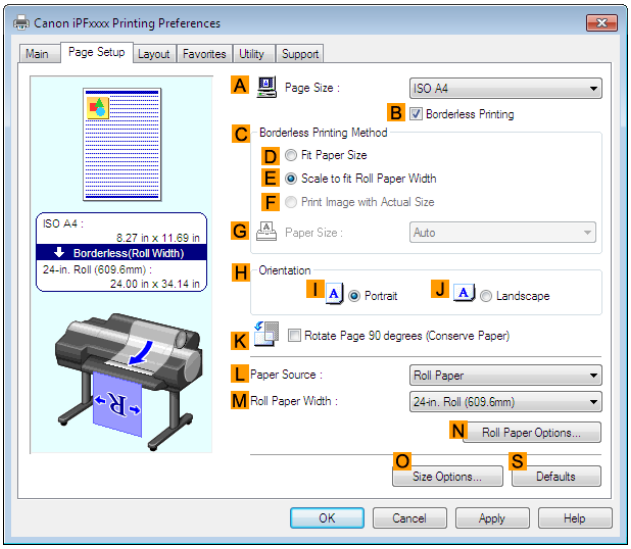
7 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

9 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

10 Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

12 Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13 In **C Borderless Printing Method**, click **F Print Image with Actual Size**.

14 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS)

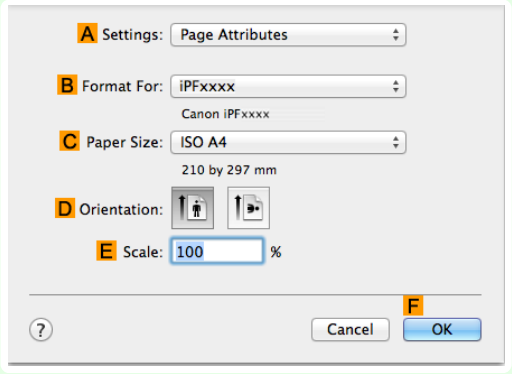
This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") →P.503
The platen may be soiled from borderless printing if you do not attach it.

Important
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, select **No** from the **Automatic Cutting** list in the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Once printed and cut, please cut the upper and lower bands with scissors.

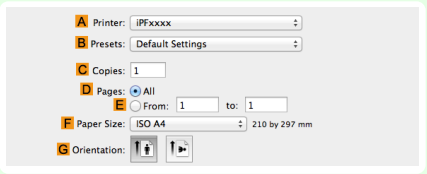
- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)–Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: **Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper**
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1 Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

Note
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2 Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3 In the **C Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

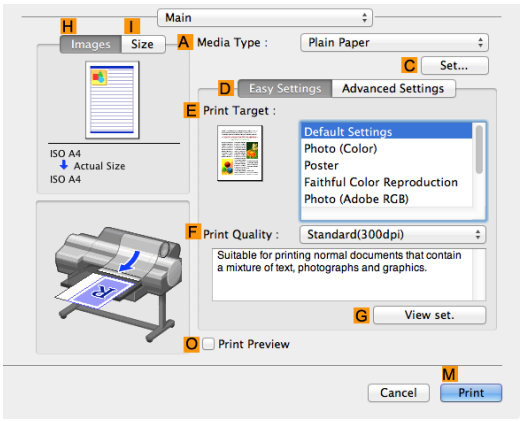
Note
- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by **-Borderless.**

4 Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5 In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

6 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

7 Access the **Main** pane.



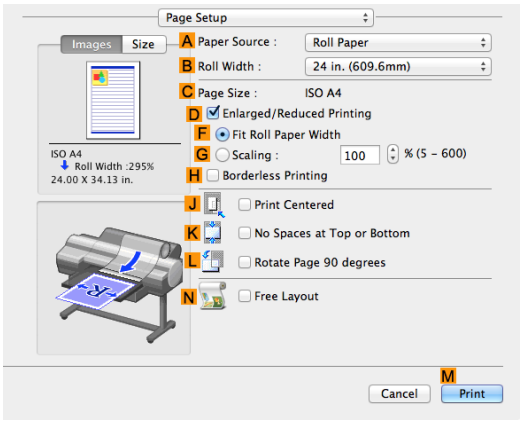
8 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper**.

9 Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

Important

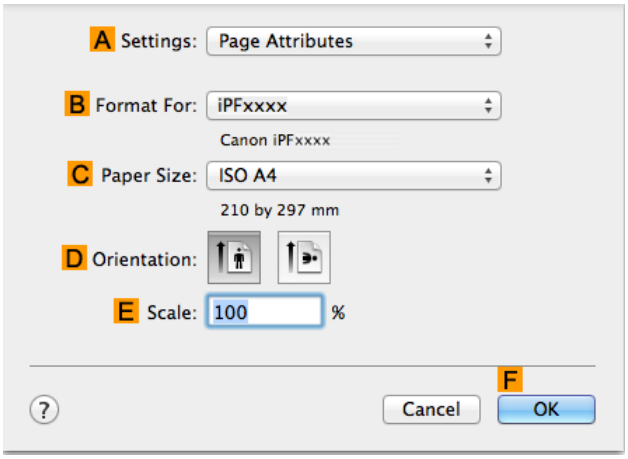
- When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this kind of situation, change the ink drying time in **Between Pages** in the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.

10 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



11 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.
Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)** is selected.

12 Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



13 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.347

Borderless Printing

Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size 88
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 89
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 92
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 93
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS) 95
Borderless Printing at Actual Size 81
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) 83
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS) 85

Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.
In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") ➔P.496
- Although it normally prints borderless on the top, bottom, left, and right (4-edge borderless), in the following cases, it becomes borderless only on the left and right (2-edge borderless) because the top and bottom of the printed image are not automatically cut.
  - When paper where the borderless printing is described as two edges only in the **Paper Reference Guide** (paper where printed image areas cannot be cut cleanly) is selected
  - When the following settings are made in the printer control panel
    - **Cutting Mode** is **Manual**
    - **CutDustReduct.** is **On**
  - When auto cut is configured as not performed in the printer driver

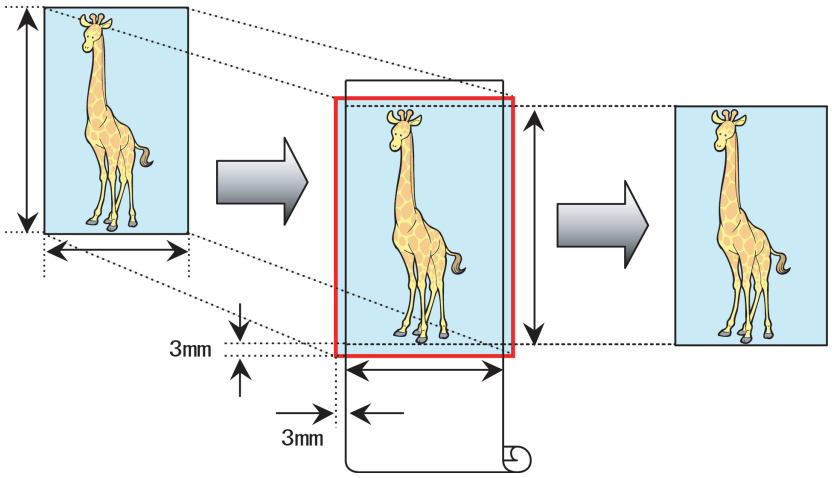
Important

- When printing without borders, be certain to set the blue switch on the platen to the ● side. If the switch is set incorrectly, print quality may deteriorate. (See "**Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen**.") ➔P.960
- Borderless printing is not possible if details such as crop marks and margins are included as data on the periphery of the original.
- If the length of the image to print is short, then since the roll paper is fed out to a prescribed length before cutting in order to prevent cutting problems and ejection problems, the trailing edge of the roll paper might not be printed borderless.
- If you use an A1 orA2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing onthe Roll Holder. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder**.") ➔P.503
  If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing,the Platen maybe soiled from borderless printing.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- If **Fit Paper Size** or **Print Image with Actual Size** (Windows only) is selected while performing borderless printing, **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** cannot be selected. Note that if borderless printing is possible, then even if the original is rotated 90 degrees, it will be printed by automatically rotating the page by 90 degrees.

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

- **Fit Paper Size**

  Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



Note

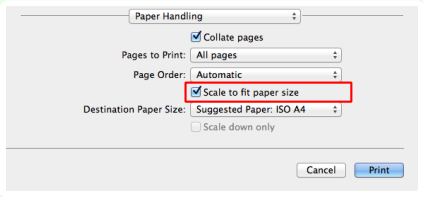
- The printer driver automatically enlarges originals 3 mm (0.12 in) past the dimensions of the paper on each side. The 3 mm portion beyond the edge on each side is not printed.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)** ➔P.89

Note

- To perform borderless printing with resizing to fit the paper size on Mac OS, select borderless in **Paper Size** and use **Scale to fit paper size** in the **Paper Handling** panel provided by the OS. For more information, see the Mac OS User Manual.



Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

Important

- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, select **No** from the **Automatic Cutting** list in the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Once printed and cut, please cut the upper and lower bands with scissors.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: **Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper**
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

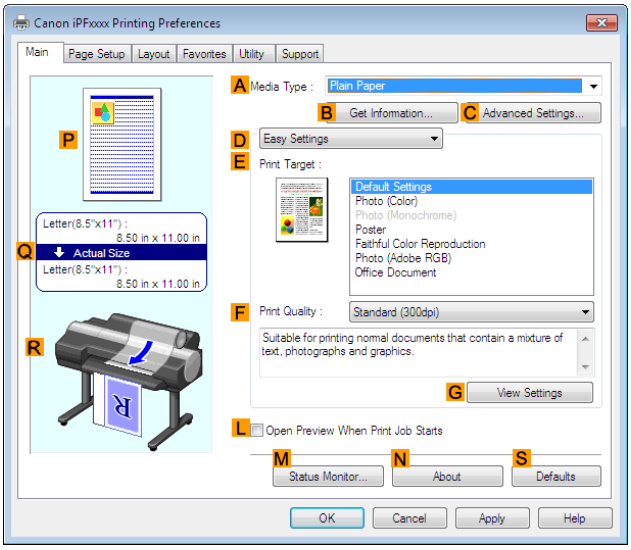
1 In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

Note
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

4 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

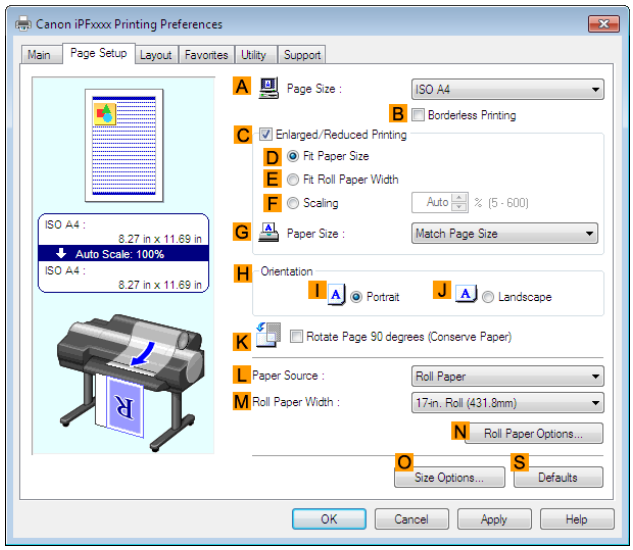


5 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper**.

6 Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

Important
- When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this kind of situation, change the ink drying time using the following procedure.
  - Click **Advanced Settings** in **Media Type**.
  - Select an ink drying time in the list for the **Between Pages** setting of **Drying Time**.

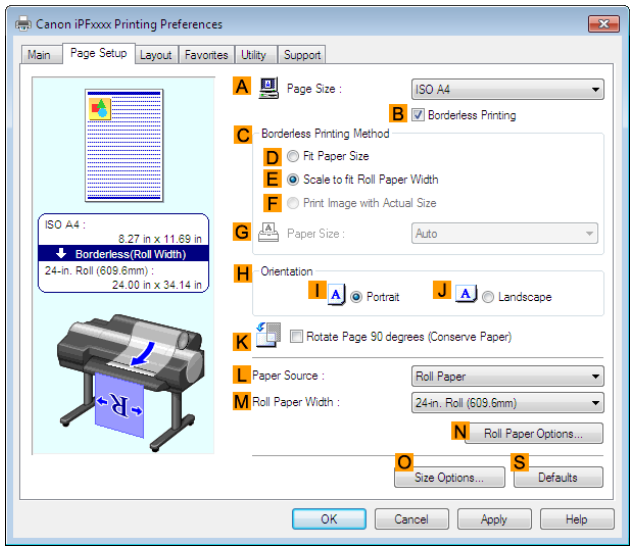
7 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

9 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

10 Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

12 Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13 In **C Borderless Printing Method**, click **D Fit Paper Size**.

14 Click **Match Page Size** in the **G Paper Size** list.

15 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.
In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") ➔P.496
- Although it normally prints borderless on the top, bottom, left, and right (4-edge borderless), in the following cases, it becomes borderless only on the left and right (2-edge borderless) because the top and bottom of the printed image are not automatically cut.
  - When paper where the borderless printing is described as two edges only in the **Paper Reference Guide** (paper where printed image areas cannot be cut cleanly) is selected
  - When the following settings are made in the printer control panel
    - **Cutting Mode** is **Manual**
    - **CutDustReduct.** is **On**
  - When auto cut is configured as not performed in the printer driver

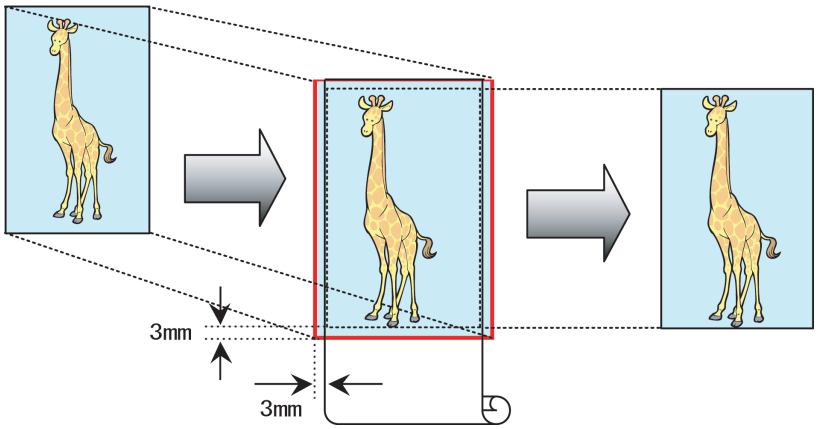
Important

- When printing without borders, be certain to set the blue switch on the platen to the ● side. If the switch is set incorrectly, print quality may deteriorate. (See "**Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen**.") ➔P.960
- Borderless printing is not possible if details such as crop marks and margins are included as data on the periphery of the original.
- If the length of the image to print is short, then since the roll paper is fed out to a prescribed length before cutting in order to prevent cutting problems and ejection problems, the trailing edge of the roll paper might not be printed borderless.
- If you use an A1 orA2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing onthe Roll Holder. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder**.") ➔P.503
  If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing,the Platen maybe soiled from borderless printing.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- If **Fit Paper Size** or **Print Image with Actual Size** (Windows only) is selected while performing borderless printing, **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** cannot be selected. Note that if borderless printing is possible, then even if the original is rotated 90 degrees, it will be printed by automatically rotating the page by 90 degrees.

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

- **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width**

  Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width.



Note
- You can combine this function with rotating pages 90 degrees before printing so that the original width (relative to portrait orientation) matches the roll paper width in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)** ➔P.93
- **Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS)** ➔P.95

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder**.") ➔P.503
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

Important
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, select **No** from the **Automatic Cutting** list in the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Once printed and cut, please cut the upper and lower bands with scissors.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: **Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper**
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

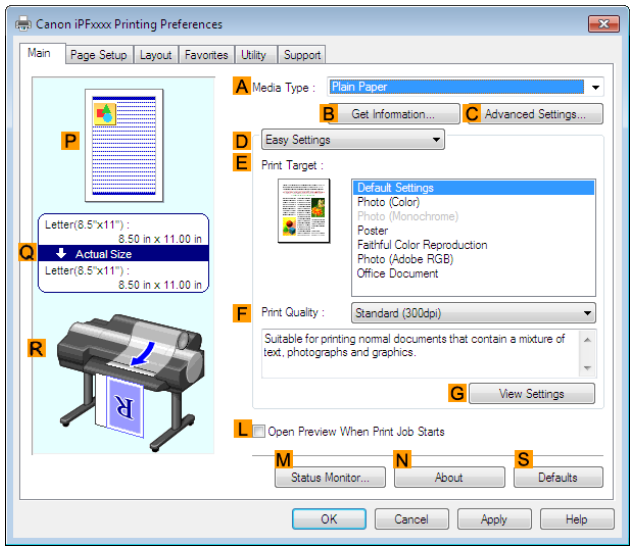
1 In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

Note
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

4 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



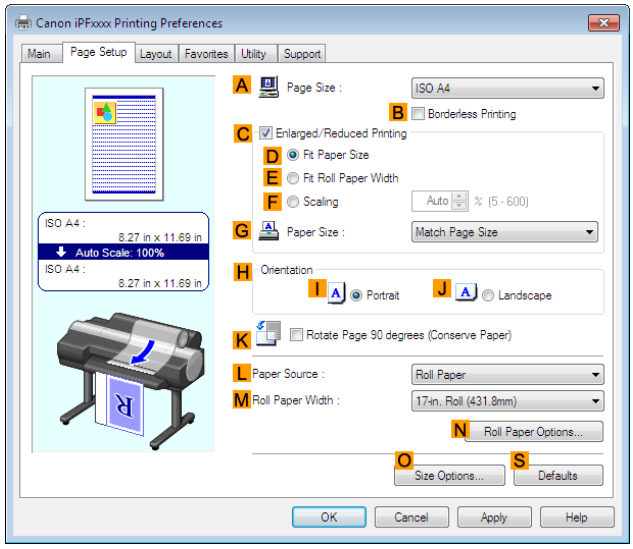
5 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper**.

6 Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

Important

- When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this kind of situation, change the ink drying time using the following procedure.
  - Click **Advanced Settings** in **Media Type**.
  - Select an ink drying time in the list for the **Between Pages** setting of **Drying Time**.

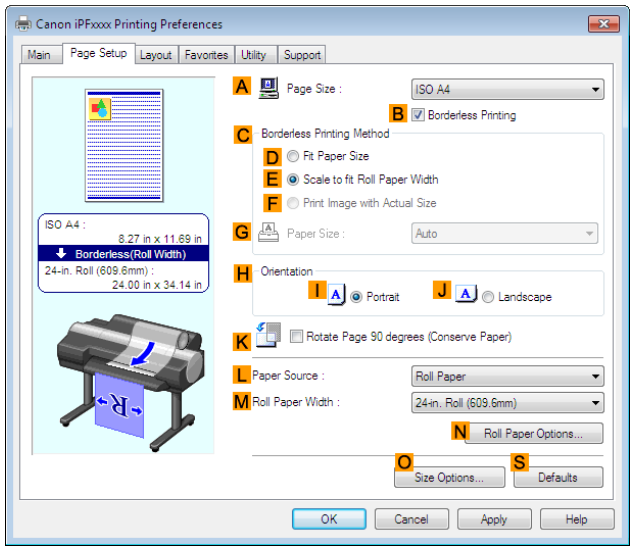
7 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

9 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

10 Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

12 Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13 In **C Borderless Printing Method**, make sure **E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** is selected.

14 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.162

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder**.") →P.503

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

Important

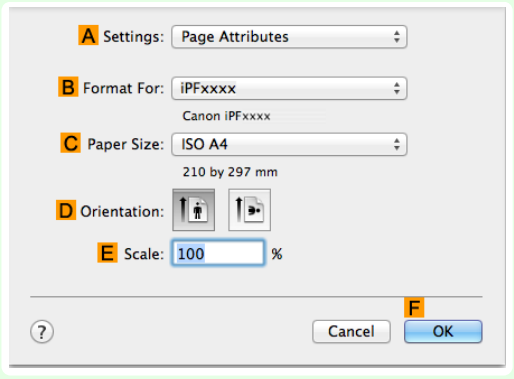
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, select **No** from the **Automatic Cutting** list in the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Once printed and cut, please cut the upper and lower bands with scissors.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: **Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper**
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

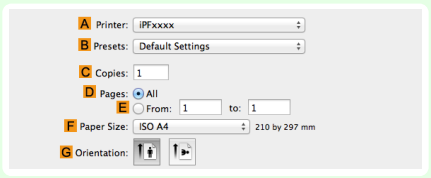
1 Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2 Select the printer in the **B** **Format for** list.

3 In **C** **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

Note

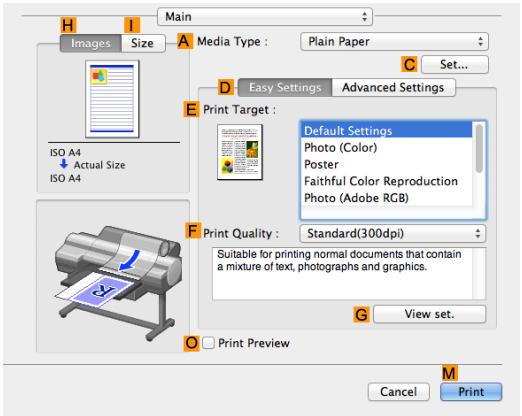
- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to fit the roll width.

4 Click **F** **OK** to close the dialog box.

5 In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

6 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

7 Access the **Main** pane.



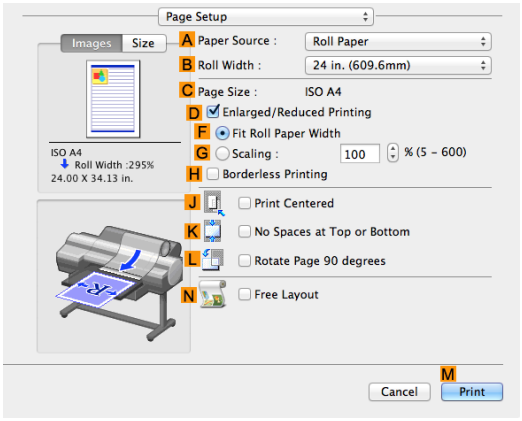
8 In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper**.

9 Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

Important

- When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this kind of situation, change the ink drying time in **Between Pages** in the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.

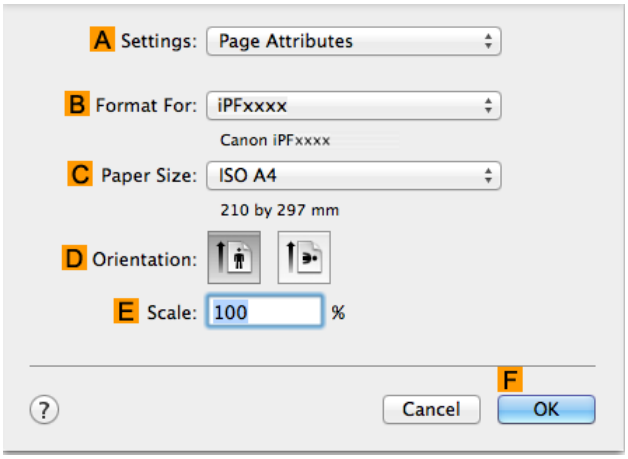
10 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



11 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

12 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)** is selected.

13 Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



14 Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

15 Select the **H Borderless Printing** check box.
This ensures that **F Fit Roll Paper Width** is automatically selected in **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

16 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.347

Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes

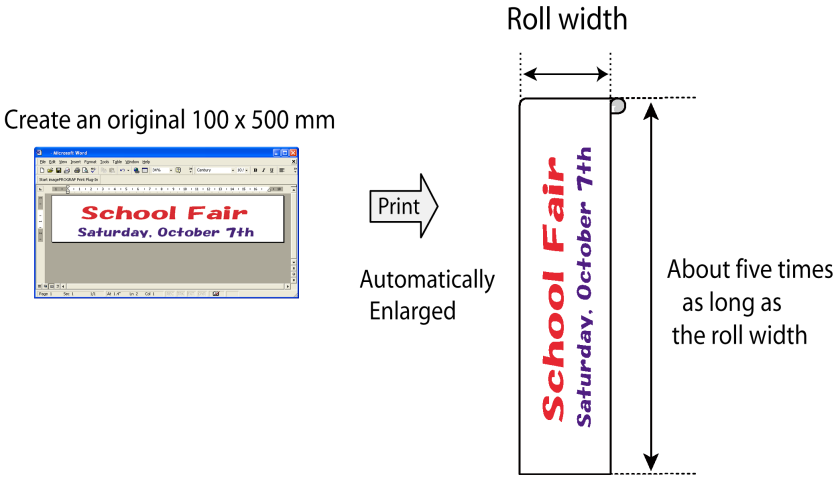
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) 98
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) 99
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS) 103
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes 105
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) 105
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS) 109

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)

On this printer, large-format printing of up to 18.0 m is available using rolls.
If you use Print Plug-In for Office or PosterArtist, you can easily print maximum 18.0 m vertical or horizontal banners. (Refer to "**Print Plug-In for Officefeatures (Windows)**" ➔P.303 and "**Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals**" ➔P.51 .)
However, you may not be able to print 18.0 m due to restrictions in the settable document size according to the application software.

Fit Roll Paper Width

To match the width of vertical and horizontal banners with the width of rolls, use the printer driver function for automatically enlarging/reducing and printing.
For example, if you automatically enlarge a document created with application software such as Microsoft Word, you can print the full width of the roll easily.



For instructions on printing vertical or horizontal banners, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)** ➔P.99
- **Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS)** ➔P.103

Important

- Before printing, check how much of the roll paper is left. If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, a warning message is displayed when there is not enough roll paper left.
- If not much ink is left, prepare replacement ink tanks.
- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in Print Quality, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)

By automatic enlargement of a document created with an application software by the printer driver, you can print maximum 18.0 m vertical or horizontal banners.
However, you may not be able to print 18.0 m due to restrictions in the settable document size according to the application software.
This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: A horizontal banner created in Microsoft Word
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 in (406.4 mm)

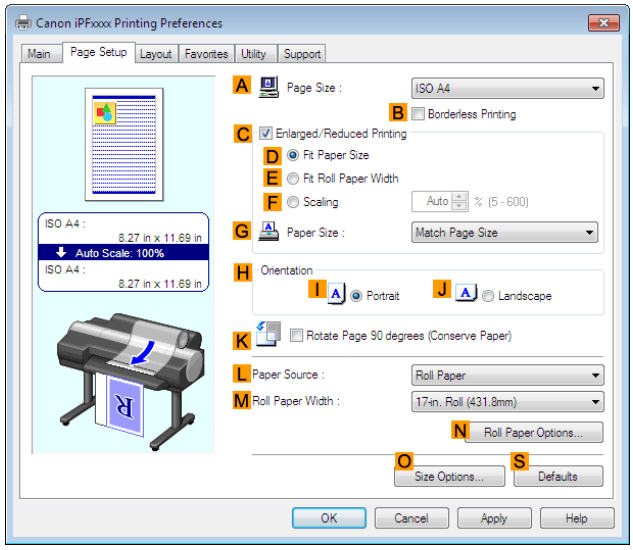
The print procedure is as follows.

1. Register a Custom Paper Size in the printer driver.
   Call a non-standard paper size registered in the printer driver with Custom Paper Size.
   Once you register Custom Paper Size, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list.
   Custom Paper Size can be set up to 18.0 m.
2. In the application, create an original in the size you registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

Registering a Custom Paper Size

This example describes how to register a paper size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu** .") ➔P.167
2. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



3. Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.
4. Click **O Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
5. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Paper Size Name**. **My Horizontal Banner** is used in this example.
6. In **Units**, click **mm**.

7 Under **Paper Size**, enter **100** in **Width** and **500** in **Height**.

8 Click **Add** to add the paper size of **My Horizontal Banner.**

9 Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

10 Close the printer driver dialog box.

Note

- Although you can even set **Custom Size** for the paper size, the maximum settable size is 3.2 m. The setting of **Custom Size** is disabled when you exit the application software.
  For more information, see "**Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes** ." ➔P.105

Creating the banner in the application

Follow the steps below to create the banner in Microsoft Word using the Custom Paper Size you registered.

1 Start Microsoft Word.

2 Choose **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Page Setup** dialog box.

3 Under **Paper Size**, click the Custom Paper Size you registered—**My Horizontal Banner** in this example.

Important

- If **My Horizontal Banner** is not listed, make sure this printer is selected as the printer to use.
- In applications such as Microsoft PowerPoint that do not enable you to choose registered paper sizes, use the custom paper size setting in **Custom** and specify 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in)

4 Set the printing orientation to horizontal.

5 Create the banner.

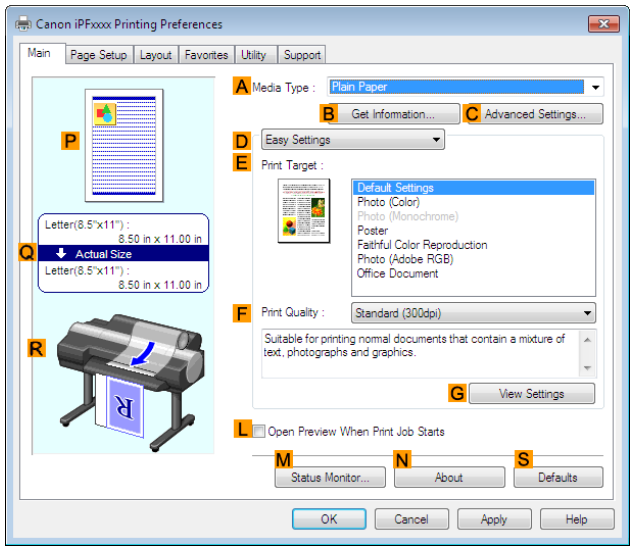
Printing the banner

Follow these steps to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1 Choose **Print** in the Microsoft Word menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

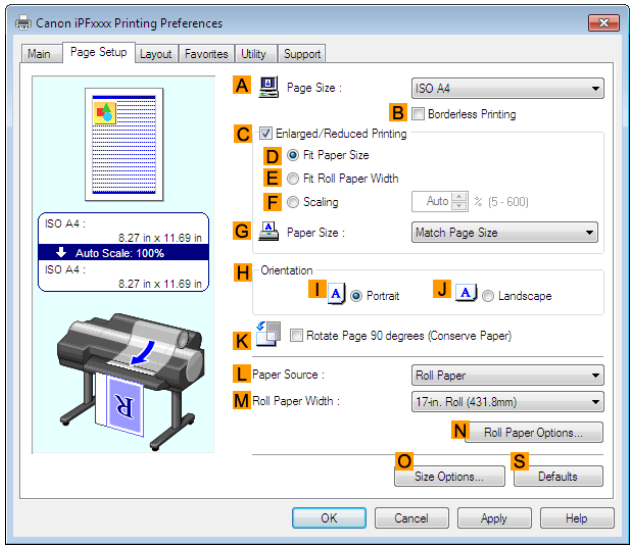
3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5 After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Poster** in the **E Print Target** list.

6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

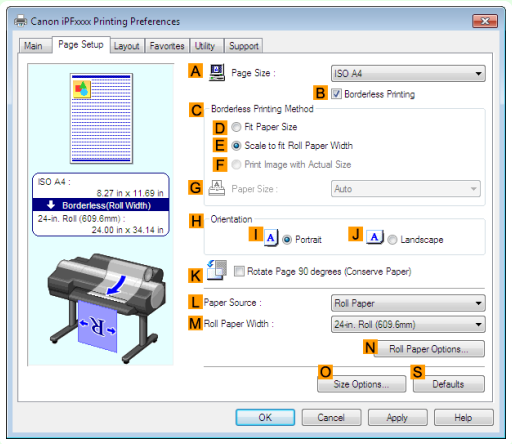


7 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size you registered, **My Horizontal Banner**.

8 Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the **B Borderless Printing** check box.



9 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

10 After you click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed.

11 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, and then click **OK**.

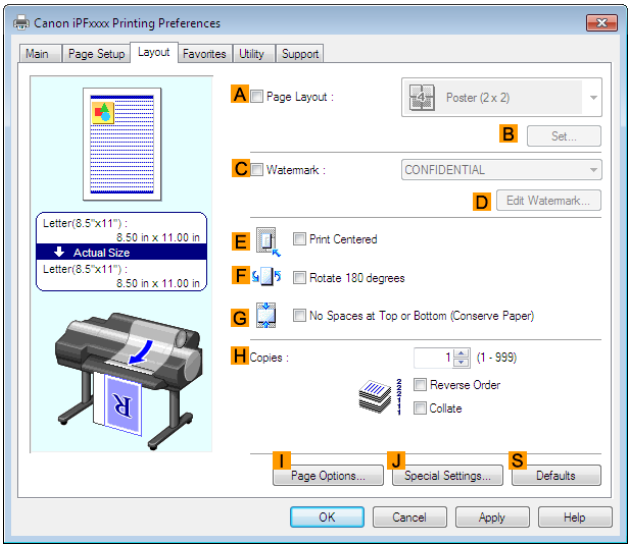
12 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

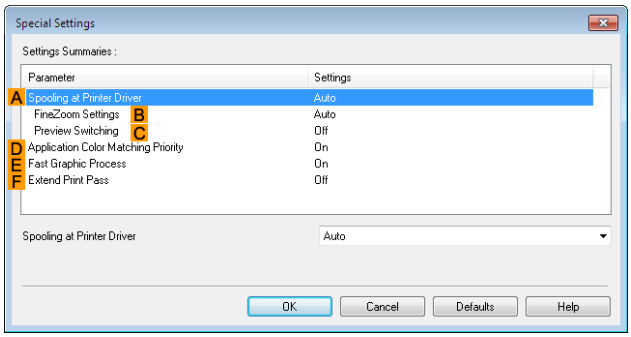
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

If printing is unsuccessful, you may be able to print after completing the following setting.

1 On the **Layout** sheet, click **J Special Settings** to display the **Special Settings** dialog box.



2 In the **FineZoom Settings** list, click **Yes**.



Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS)

By automatic enlargement of a document created with an application software by the printer driver, you can print maximum 18.0 m vertical or horizontal banners.
This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page Size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

The print procedure is as follows.

1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.
2. In **Page Setup**, register **Custom Paper Sizes**.
   Once you register **Custom Paper Sizes**, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list.
   Custom Paper Sizes can be set up to 18.0 m.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

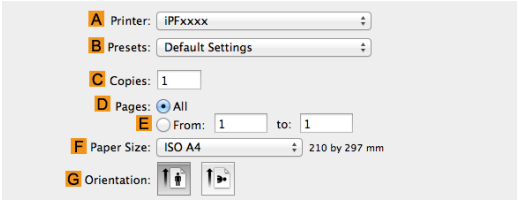
Note
- The following procedures are based on OS X v10.7. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS and setup.

Register a **Custom Paper Sizes**

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

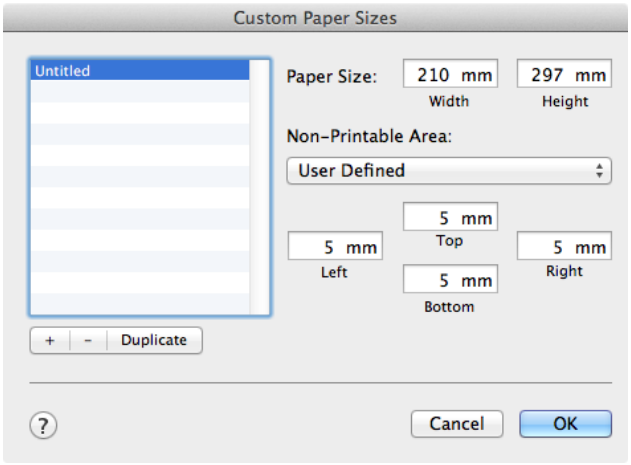
1 Create the document in the application.

2 Choose **Print** in the application menu.



3 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

4 Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the **F Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Paper Sizes** dialog box.



5 Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left, and then enter a name for the page size you want to register. Here, enter **100*500**.
If the **Untitled** size is not listed at left, click **+** below the list.

6 Under **Paper Size**, enter **10** in **Width** and **50** in **Height**. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.

7 Specify the margins by entering **0.3** in **Non-Printable Area**. Here, too, measurements are entered in centimeters.

8 Click **OK** to close the **Custom Paper Sizes** dialog box.

9 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **100*500**, the size you registered.

10 In **G Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.

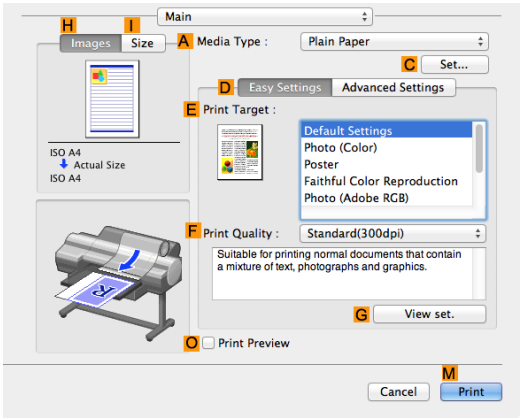
11 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **OK** to close the dialog box.

Print the banner

Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Access the **Main** pane.

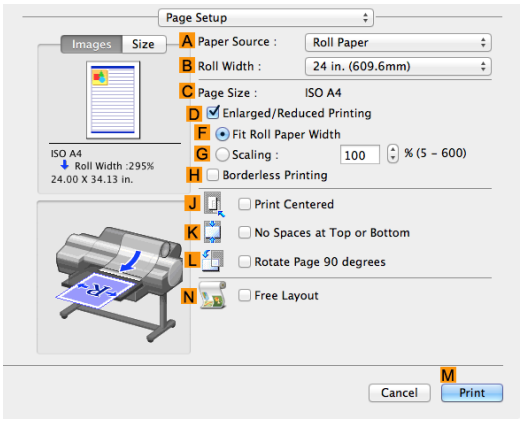


3 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

4 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

5 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

6 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



7 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

8 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)** is selected.

9 In **C Page Size**, make sure **100*500** is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.

10 Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

11 Click **F Fit Roll Paper Width**.

12 Confirm the print settings, and click **M Print** to start printing.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" ➔P.347

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes

For printing on non-standard size paper, first register the paper size in the printer driver.
Once you register a paper size, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list. The paper size can be set up to 18.0 m.

Note
- In Windows, although you can even set **Custom Size** for the paper size, the maximum settable size is 3.2 m. The setting of **Custom Size** is disabled when you exit the application software.

For instructions on specifying non-standard paper sizes for printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)** ➔P.105
- **Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS)** ➔P.109

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)

For printing on non-standard size paper, first register the paper size in the printer driver.
Call a non-standard paper size registered in the printer driver with Custom Paper Size.
Once you register Custom Paper Size, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list.
Custom Paper Size can be set up to 18.0 m.

Note

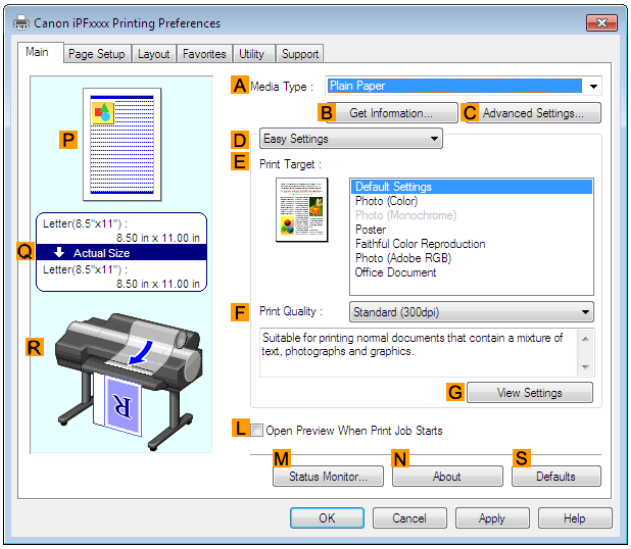
- Although you also can set **Custom Size** for the paper size temporarily, the maximum settable size is 3.2 m. Also, the setting of **Custom Size** is disabled when you exit the application software.

Registering and Printing With a Custom Paper Size

This topic describes how to register a non-standard paper size by the name of **430 mm Square** and print based on the following example.

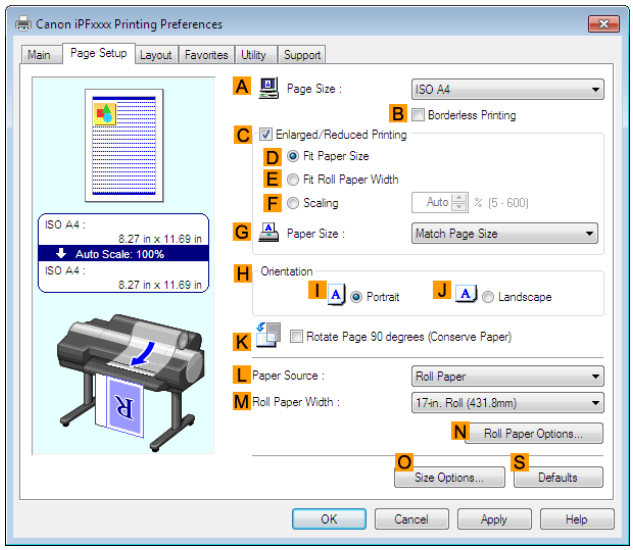
- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Media Type: Any type
- Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

1. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
6. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, select from the **E Print Target** list.

7 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8 Click **O Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

9 Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Paper Size Name**. **430 mm Square** is used in this example.

10 Select **mm** in **Units**.

11 Enter **430** (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.

Note
- If you select the **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** check box, after you enter a value in either **Width** or **Height**, the other value will be automatically applied based on the original aspect ratio.

12 Click **Add** to register **430 mm Square**.

13 Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

14 Click **Cut Sheet** in the **L Paper Source** list.

15 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size you added,**430 mm Square**.

16 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

Printing by using **Custom Size**

This section describes how to print using **Custom Size** based on the following example.

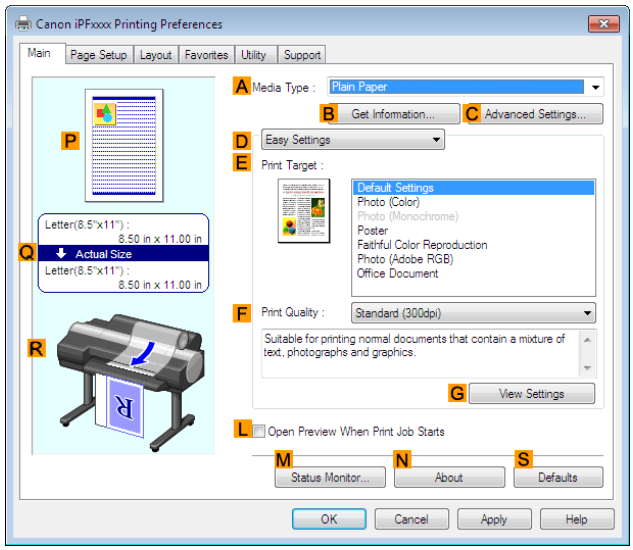
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: Square of non-standard dimensions (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Any type
- Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

1 Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.

2 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

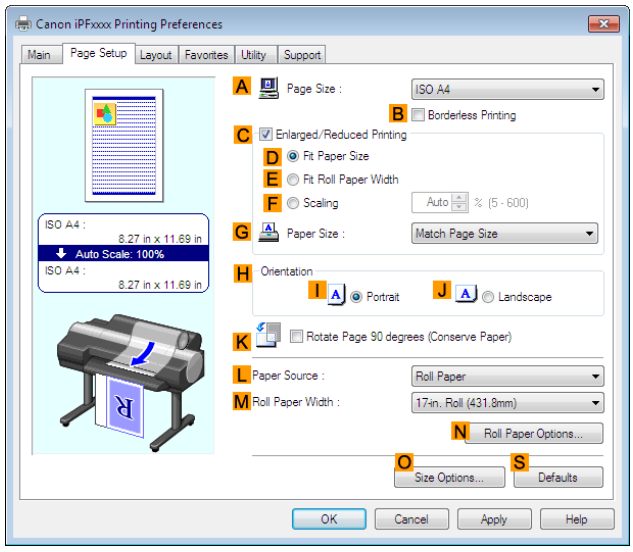
4 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

6 After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, select from the **E Print Target** list.

7 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8 Click **Cut Sheet** in the **L Paper Source** list.

9 Click **Custom Size** in the **A Page Size** list to display the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.

10 Confirm that **mm** is selected in **Units**.

11 Enter **430** (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.

12 Click **OK** to close the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.

13 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS)

For printing on non-standard size paper, first register the paper size in the printer driver.
Call a non-standard paper size registered in the printer driver with **Custom Paper Sizes** .
Once you register **Custom Paper Sizes**, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list.
Custom Paper Sizes can be set up to 18.0 m.
This topic describes how to register a non-standard paper size by the name of **430*430** and print based on the following example.

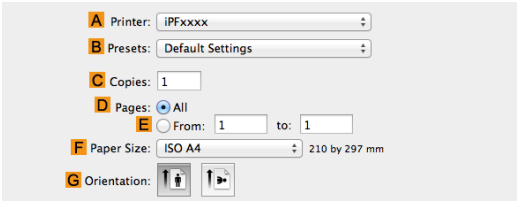
- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Media Type: Any type
- Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

Note
- The following procedures are based on OS X v10.7. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS.

1 Create the document in the application.

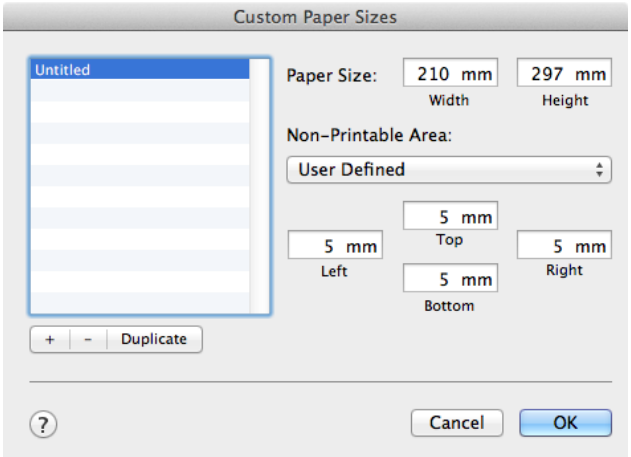
2 Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.

3 Choose **Print** in the application menu.



4 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

5 Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the **F Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Paper Sizes** dialog box.



6 In **Paper Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter **43.00 cm** in **Height** and **Width**.

7 In **Non-Printable Area**, enter **0.5** for the top and side margins and **2.3** for the bottom margin. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.

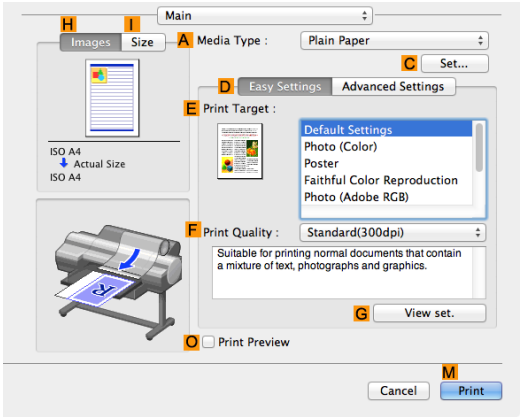
8 Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left in the **Custom Paper Sizes** dialog box and enter the paper name—in this case, **430*430**.

9 Click **OK** to close the **Custom Paper Sizes** dialog box.

10 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **430*430**, the size you registered.

11 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

12 Access the **Main** pane.

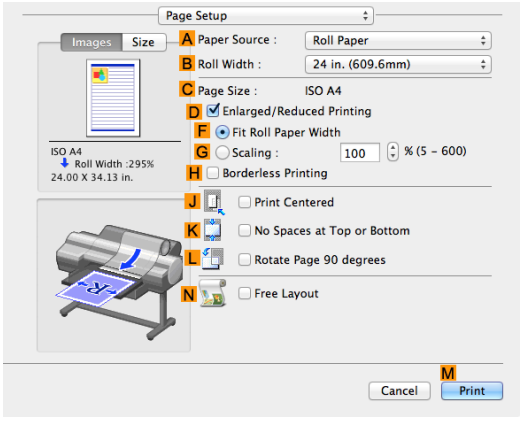


13 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

14 After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, select from the **E Print Target** list.

15 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

16 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



17 Click **Cut Sheet** in the **A Paper Source** list.

18 In **C Page Size**, make sure **430*430** is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.

19 Confirm the print settings, and then click **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.347

Tiling and multiple pages per sheet

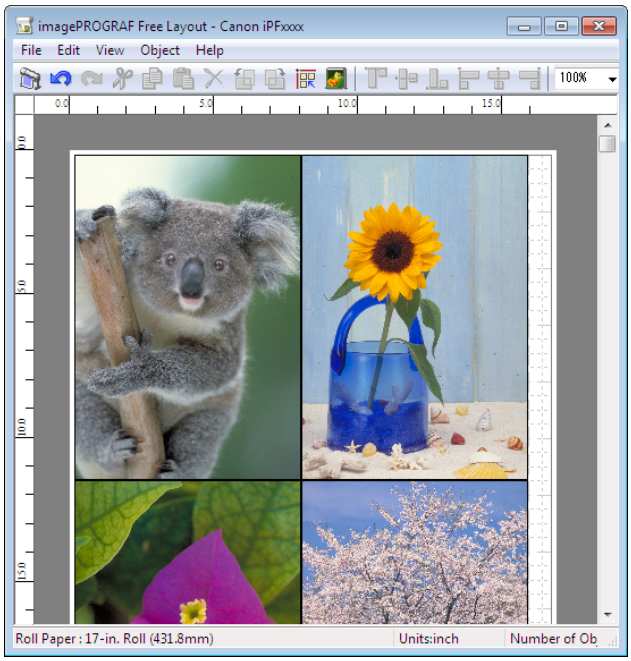
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other 112
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) 113
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS) 115
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously 116
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) 116
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS) 118
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet 119
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) 120
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS) 122
Printing Posters in Sections 124
Printing Large Posters (Windows) 124

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other

By arranging originals from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or web browser screen shots next to each other on single sheets, you can create highly expressive presentation materials, easy-to-understand meeting materials, and a variety of other printed documents.

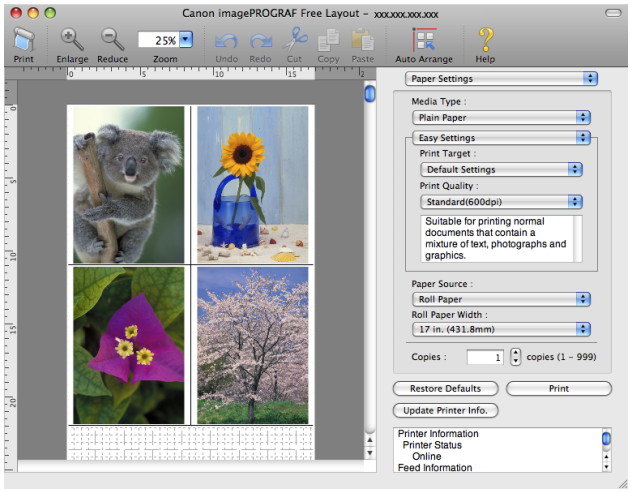
- **Free Layout** (Windows)

  Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files—even multiple source applications—in a single-page layout.



- **Free Layout** (Mac OS)

  Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files—even multiple source applications—in a single-page layout.



For instructions on arranging originals from multiple applications, refer to the following topics.

- **Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)** ➔P.113
- **Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS)** ➔P.115

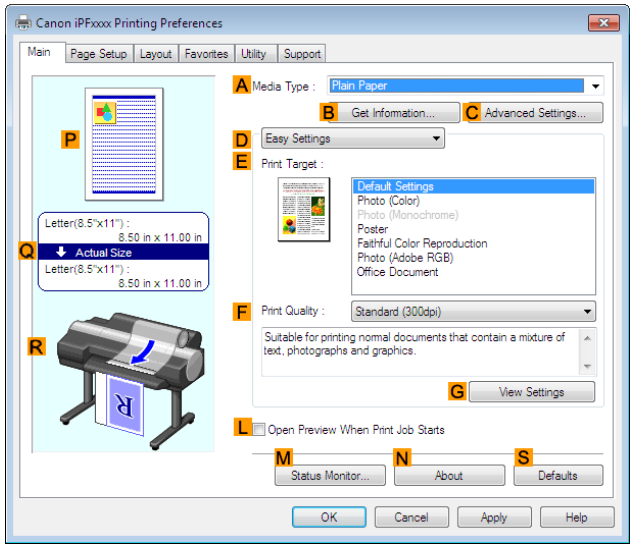
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)

This topic describes how to arrange multiple originals using the **Free Layout** function.

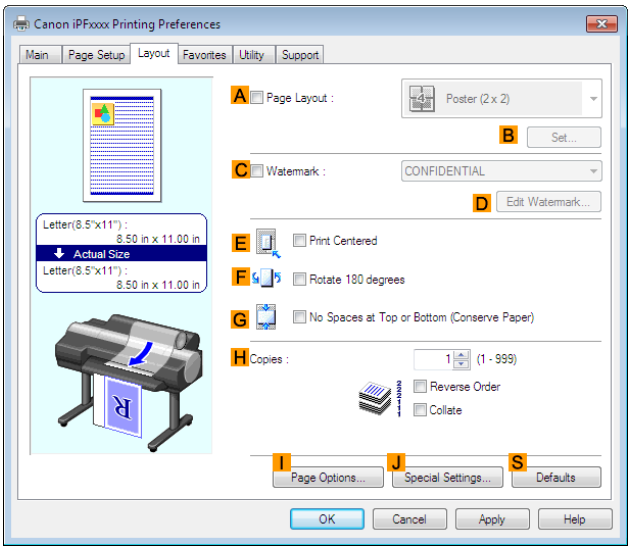
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



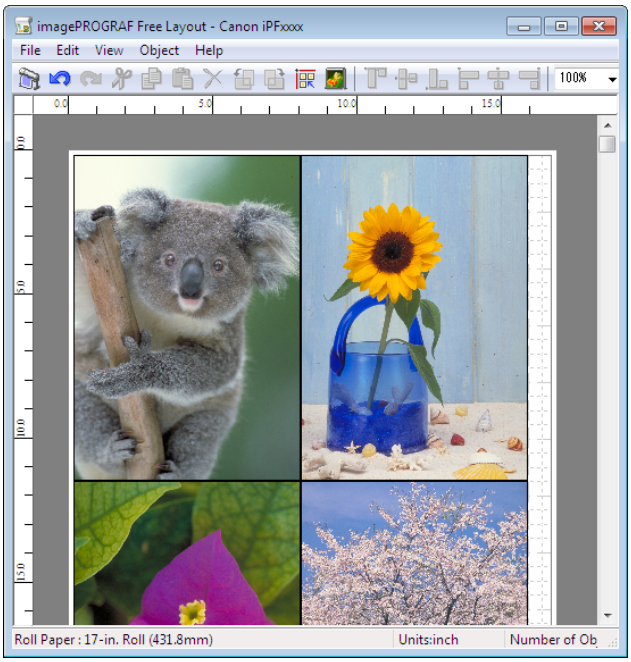
4 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



5 Select the **A Page Layout** check box.

6 Click **Free Layout** in the **A Page Layout** list.

7 When you attempt to print, the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



8 Edit and rearrange the image in the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window as desired.

Note

- Without closing the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window, repeat steps 1–7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.
- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** help topic.

9 Print from the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** menu.

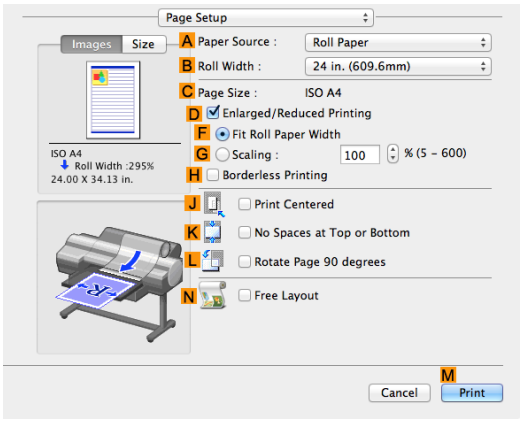
Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** functions, see "Free Layout." ➔P.204

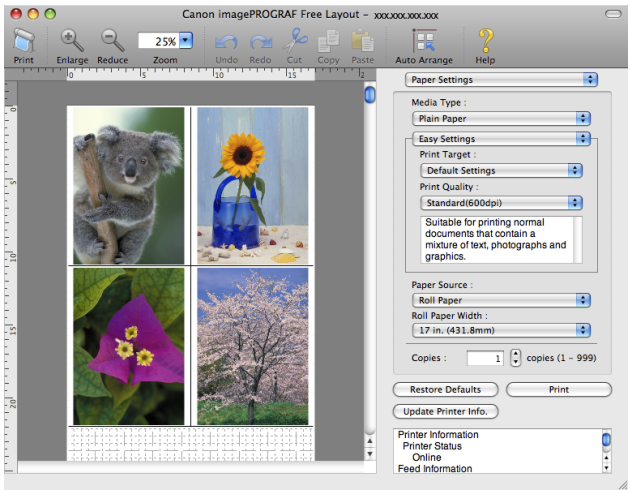
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to use the **Free Layout** function to arrange multiple originals next to each other before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



3. Select the **N Free Layout** check box.
4. Click **M Print**.
5. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window is displayed.



6. Edit and rearrange the image in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window as desired.

Note
- Without closing the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window, repeat steps 1 to 4 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.
- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** help topic.

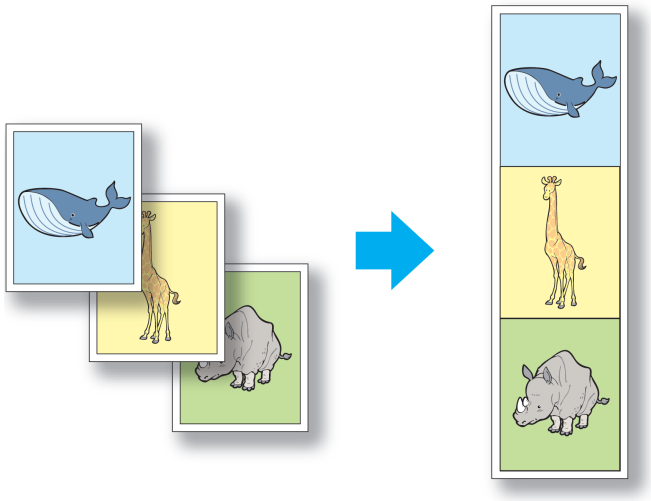
7. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** menu.

Note
- For details on **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** functions, see "Free Layout." →P.388

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously

You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

- **Banner Printing**



Important
- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- When using Banner Printing, some of the settings are disabled, including Borderless Printing, Enlarge/Reduce Printing, and Layout.

For instructions on printing multiple pages continuously, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your operating system.

- **Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)** ➔P.116
- **Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS)** ➔P.118

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)

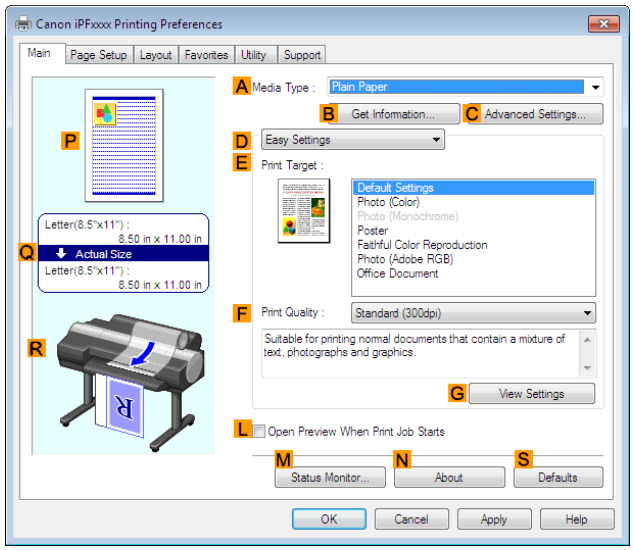
This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

Important
- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- When using Banner Printing, some of the settings are disabled, including Borderless Printing, Enlarge/Reduce Printing, and Layout.

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

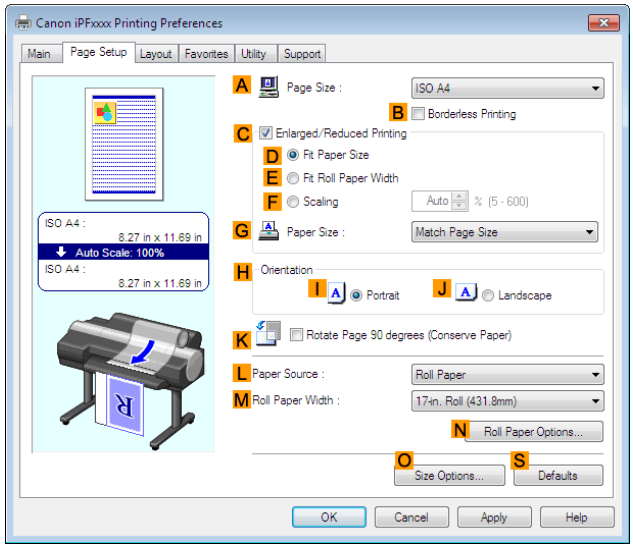
2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



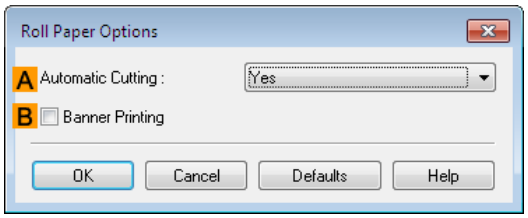
4 In the **A Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.

5 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

7 Click **N Roll Paper Options** to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.



8 Select the **B Banner Printing** check box.

9 Click **OK**.

10 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

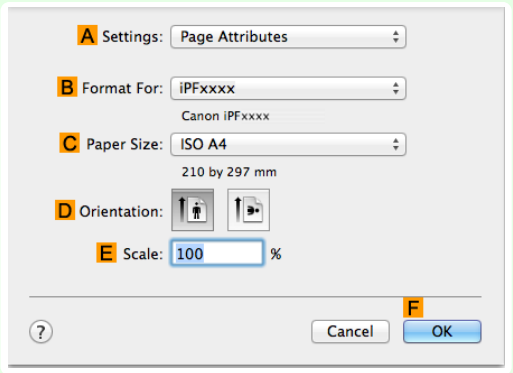
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

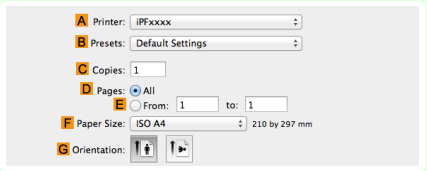
Important
- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- When using Banner Printing, some of the settings are disabled, including Borderless Printing, Enlarge/Reduce Printing, and Layout.

1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

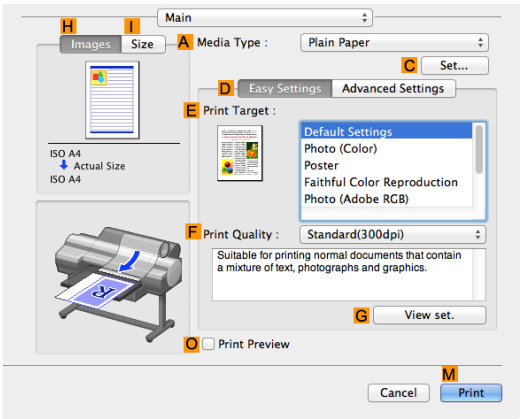


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 Click the original size in the **F Paper Size** list.

4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.

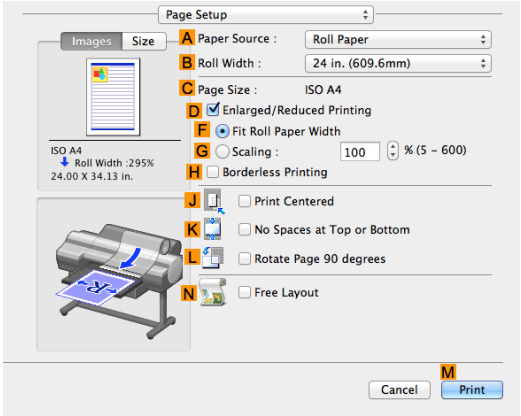


6 In the **A Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.

7 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10 Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the **A Paper Source** list.

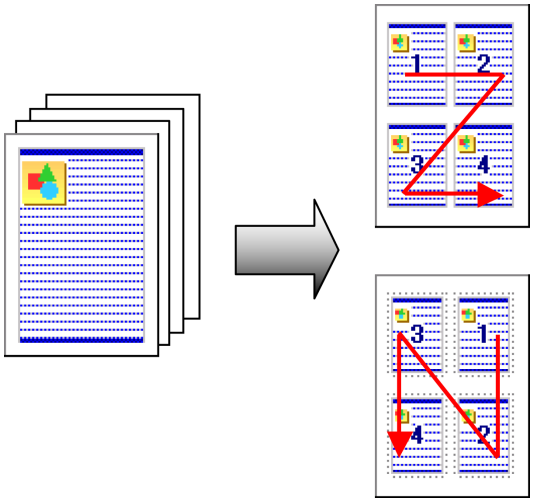
11 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.347

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet

To conserve paper, you can print several pages of the original on a single sheet by reducing the original and dividing the sheet into areas for each page.



- **Page Layout**

  Specify a number of pages of the original to print on a single sheet, in a layout of multiple pages per sheet.

Important
- This function cannot be combined with the following options.
  - Borderless Printing
  - Scaling Originals (Windows)
  - Banner Printing (Windows)
- When printing using this function, the **Print Centered** setting is disabled.

Note
- You can print up to 16 pages of the original on a single sheet.
- You can also change the page layout order and print page boundary lines, as desired.

For instructions on printing multiple pages per sheet, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

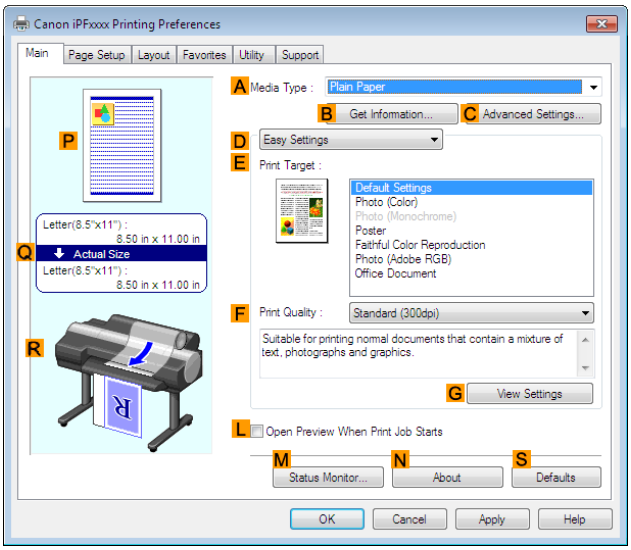
- **Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows)** ➔P.120
- **Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS)** ➔P.122

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows)

This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

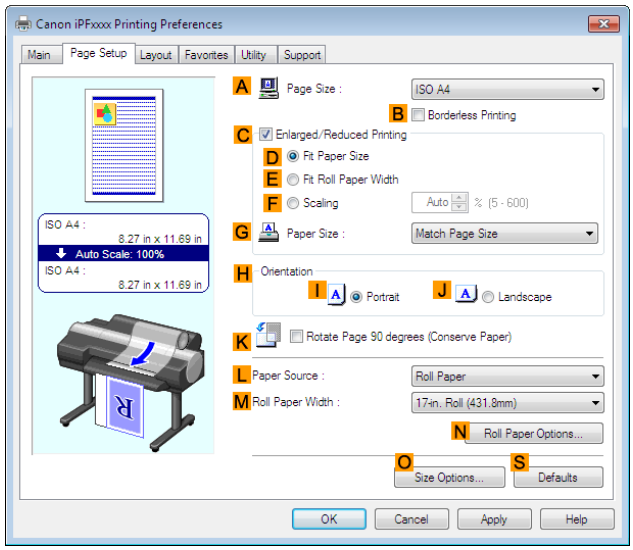
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (See **"Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications ."**) ➔P.165
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

7 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

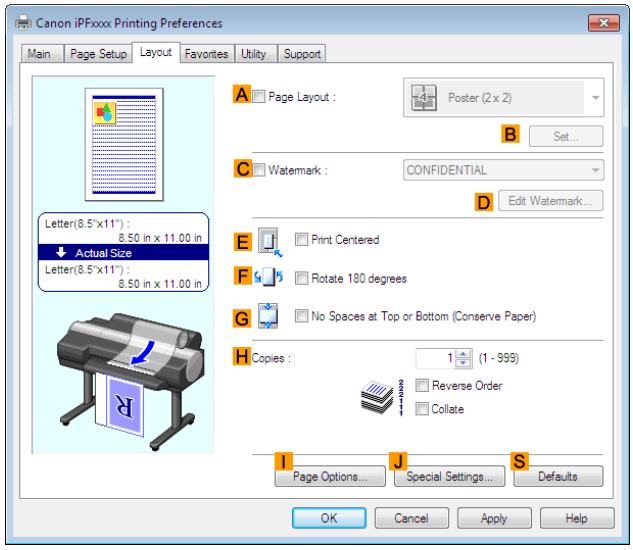


8 In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A3**.

9 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

10 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

11 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



12 Select the **A Page Layout** check box.

13 Click **4 Pages/Sheet** in the **A Page Layout** list.

Note

- You can select the layout order for placing four pages on a sheet and a frame border in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box by clicking **B Set**. If you select a pattern to print borders, the size of the images are reduced about 5% to create space for the printed border. If **None** is selected, then the images are not reduced for printing.

14 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

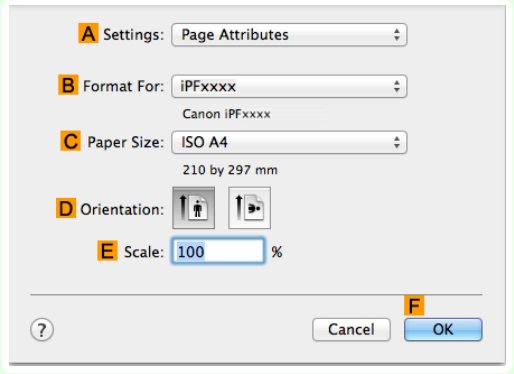
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to print four pages of an original on a single sheet, based on the following example.

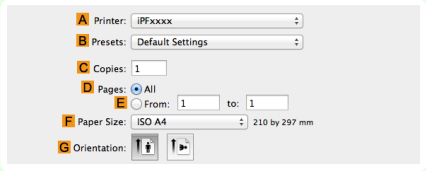
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

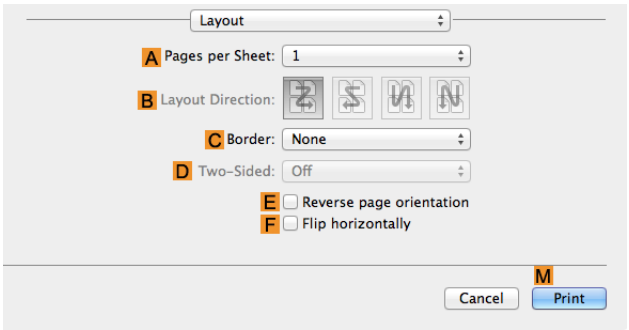


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.

4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

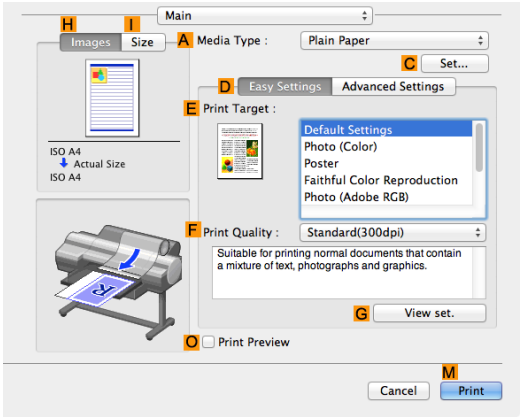
5 Access the **Layout** pane.



6 Click **4** in the **A Pages per Sheet** list.

Note
- You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in **B Layout Direction** and **C Border**.

7 Access the **Main** pane.

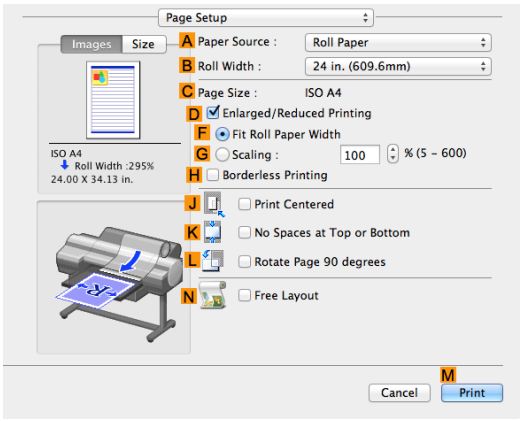


8 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

9 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

10 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

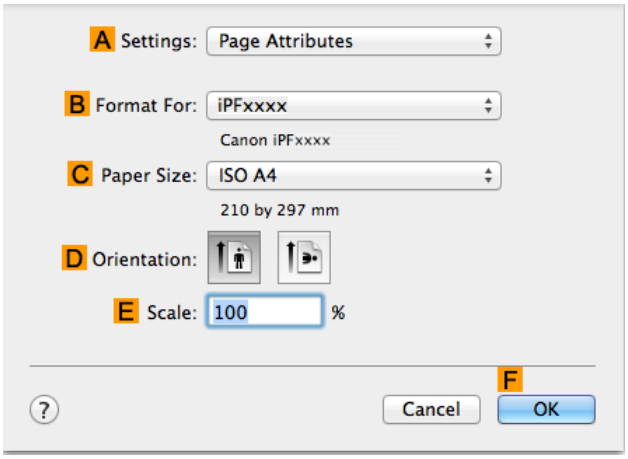
11 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



12 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

13 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)** is selected.

14 Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A3**.

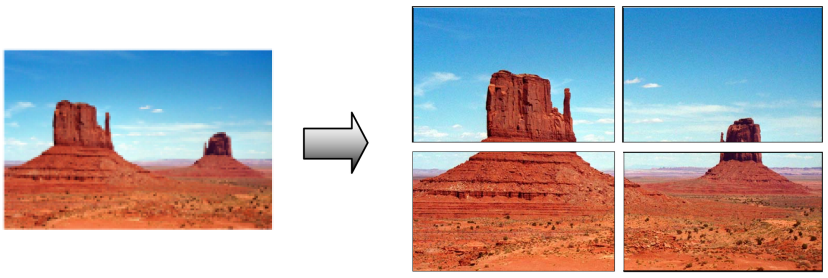


15 Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." ➔P.347

Printing Posters in Sections

You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer.



- **Page Layout**

  Choose poster printing.

Important
- When printing using this function, the **Print Centered**, **Watermark**, **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**, and **Page Options** settings are disabled.

For instructions on printing large posters, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Printing Large Posters (Windows)** ➔P.124

Note
- This method of poster printing is supported in Windows.

Printing Large Posters (Windows)

You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing it in sections on four sheets, based on the following example.

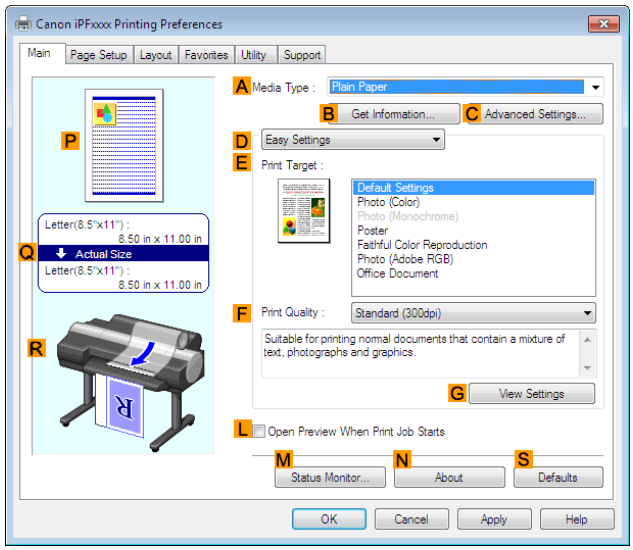
- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

- Paper: Sheets
- Paper Size: A2 (420.0 × 594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

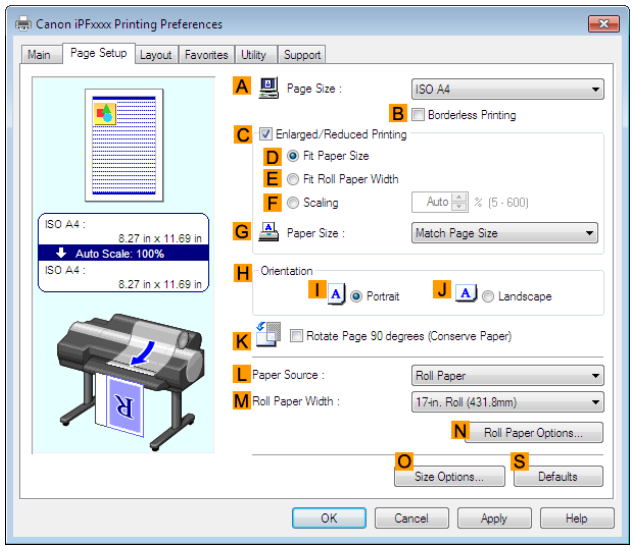
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

5. Click **Poster** in the **E Print Target** list.

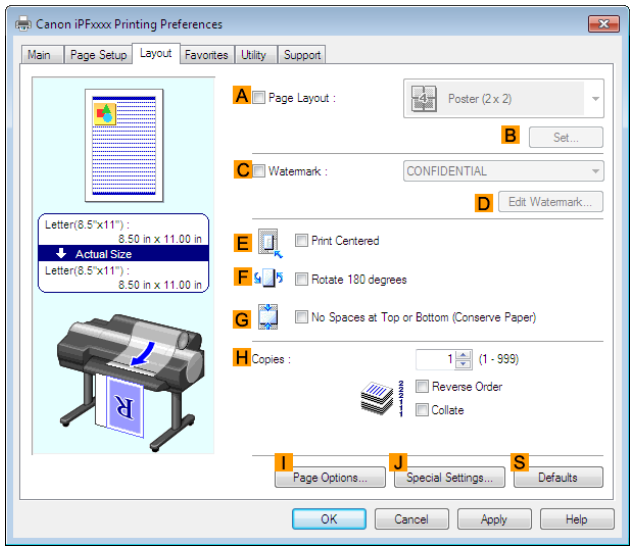
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A2**.

8. Click **Manual** in the **L Paper Source** list.

9 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10 Select the **A Page Layout** check box.

11 Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the **A Page Layout** list.

Note

- Follow the steps below to print only a portion of the poster as divided for printing.
  - Click **B Set** under **A Page Layout** to display the **Pages to Print** dialog box.
  - On the **Pages to Print** dialog box, clear the check boxes of the portion you do not want to print.
  - Click **OK** to close the **Pages to Print** dialog box.

12 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.162

Centering originals

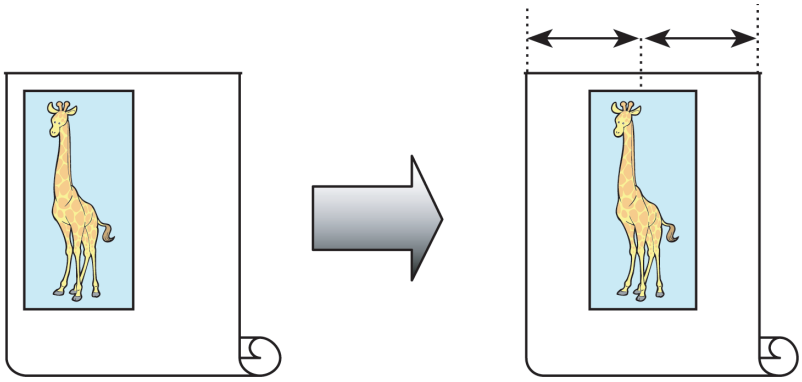
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls 127
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) 127
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS) 129
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets 131
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) 131
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS) 133

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls

You can print originals centered on a page—for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

- **Print Centered**

  If you use originals smaller than the roll paper width, you can center them relative to the width when printing.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on rolls, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)** →P.127
- **Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS)** →P.129

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)

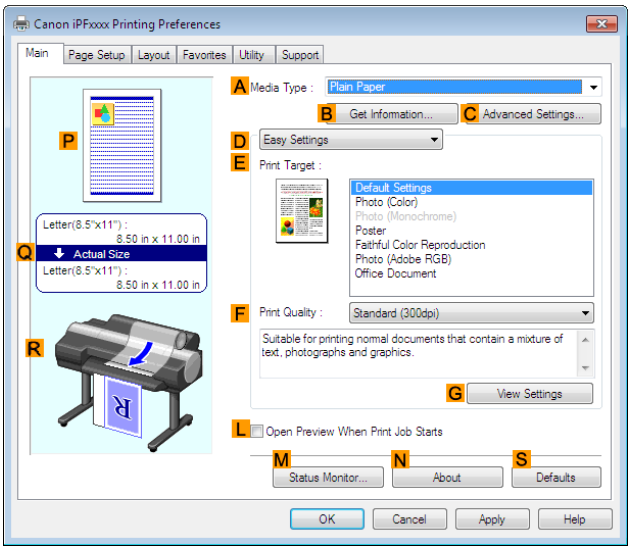
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") →P.165

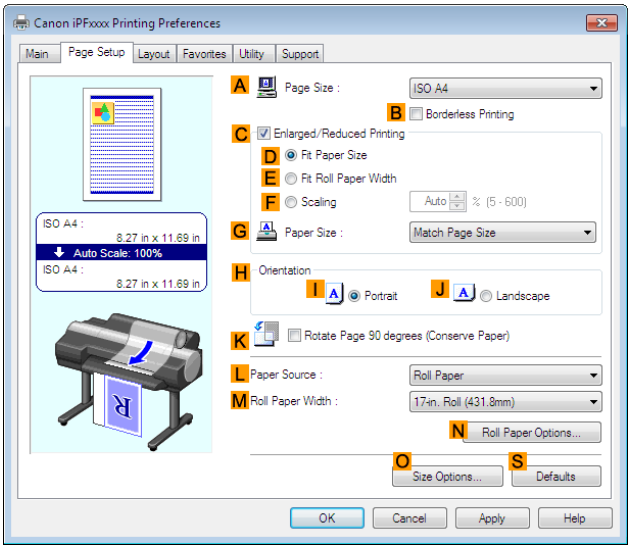
3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5 Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

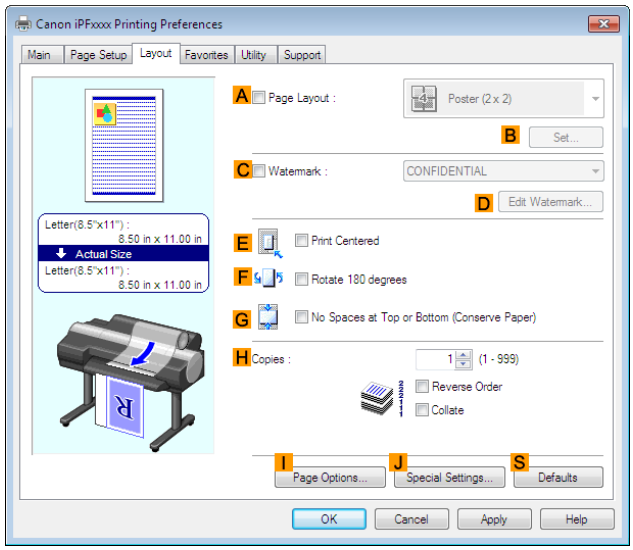


7 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

8 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

9 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.

10 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11 Select the **E Print Centered** check box.

12 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

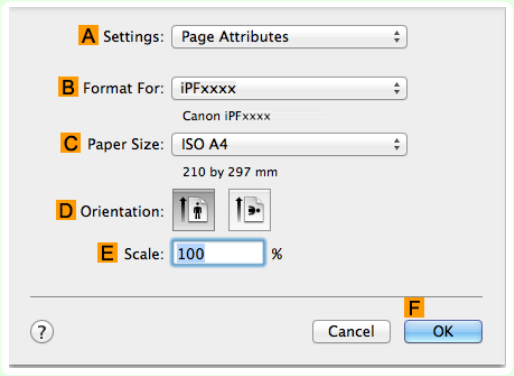
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

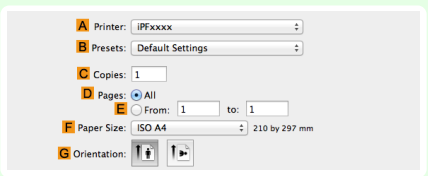
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

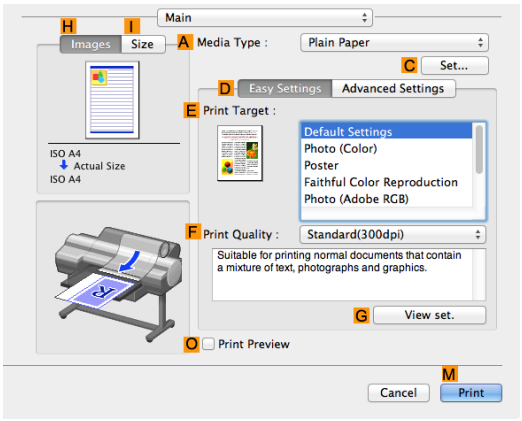


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.

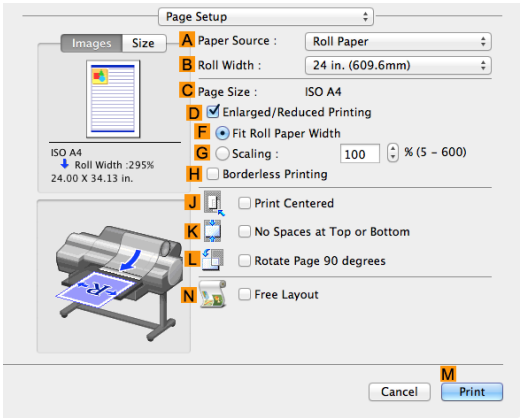


6 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

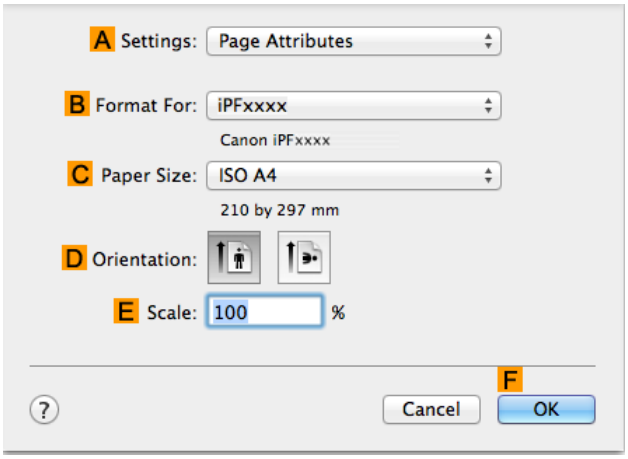
9 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

11 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)** is selected.

12 Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



13 Select the **J Print Centered** check box.

14 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

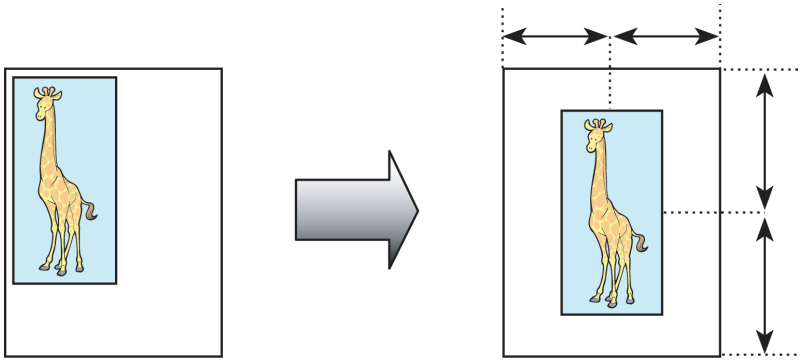
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" ➔P.347

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets

You can print originals centered on a page—for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

- **Print Centered**

  If you use paper larger than the original size or print originals after reduction, the printed images may be aligned in the upper-left corner of the paper. In this case, you can center originals on sheets when printing.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on sheets, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)** ➔P.131
- **Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS)** ➔P.133

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)

This topic describes how to reduce an original 50% for printing centered on a sheet.

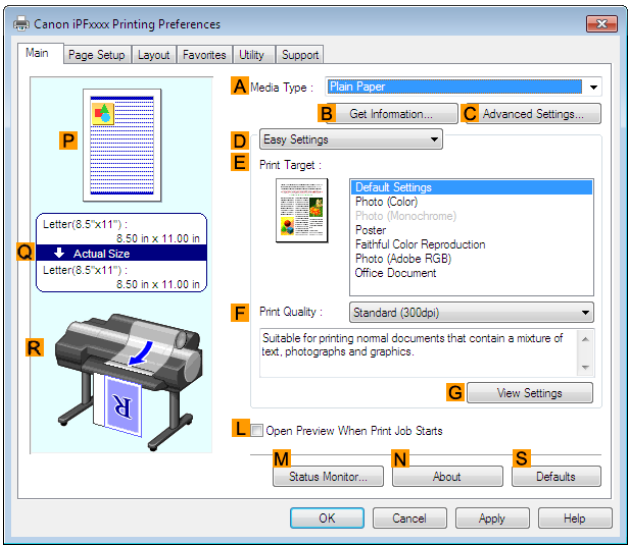
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper

- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

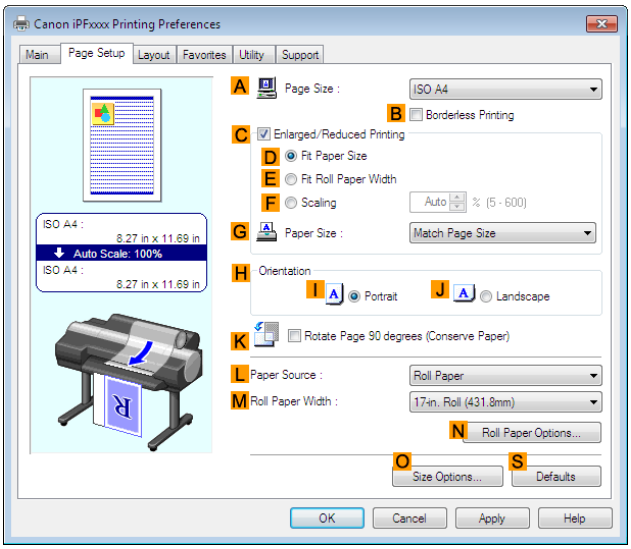
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

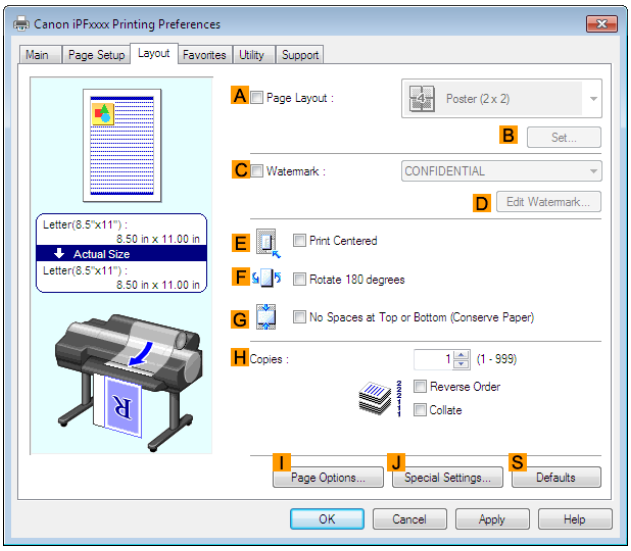
8. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

9. Click **Match Page Size** in the **G Paper Size** list.

10. Click **F Scaling** and enter **50**.

11 Click **Manual** in the **L Paper Source** list.

12 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



13 Select the **E Print Centered** check box.

14 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Important

- If you have selected **Manual** as the paper source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" ➔P.162

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS)

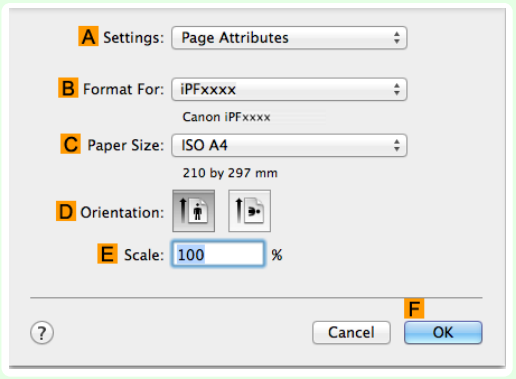
This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

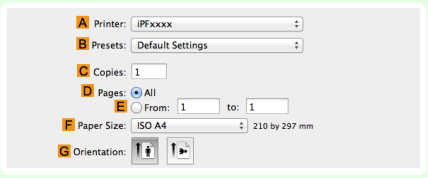
1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

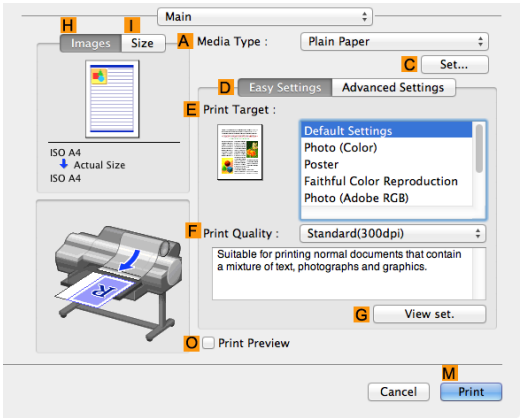


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - for Paper Tray (Large Margins)**.

4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.

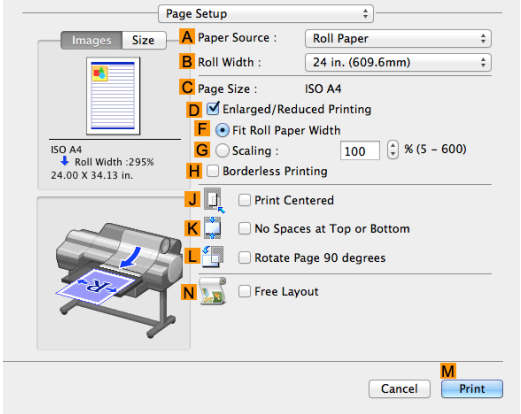


6 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

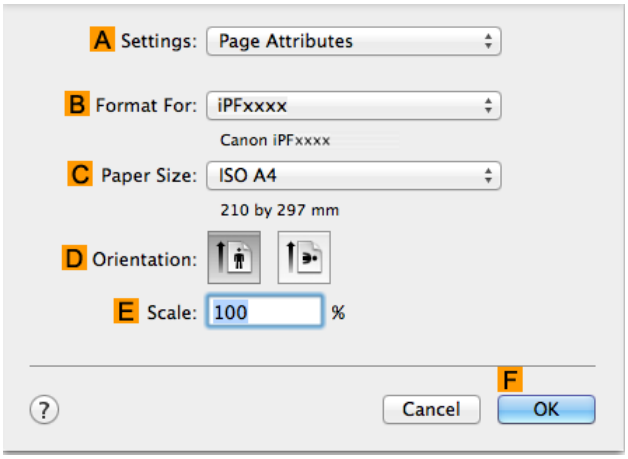
8 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10 Click **Manual** in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

11 Make sure the **C** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4 - for Paper Tray (Large Margins)**.



12 Select the **J** **Print Centered** check box.

13 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.347

Important

- If you have selected **Manual** as the paper source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

Conserving roll paper

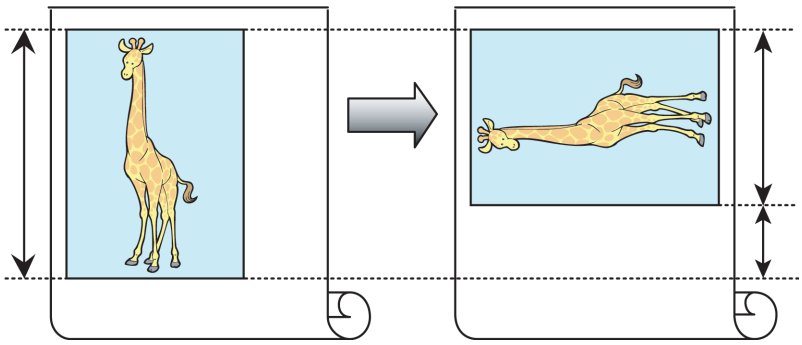
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees 136
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) 136
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS) 138
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins 139
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) 140
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS) 142

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

- **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)**

  When originals are printed in portrait orientation, the original is rotated 90 degrees before printing if it fits within the roll width. This enables you to conserve paper.



Important

- If the page would exceed the roll paper width after rotation, use this function with Scale to fit Roll Paper Width to print rotated pages.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)** →P.136
- **Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS)** →P.138

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)

This topic describes how to conserve paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

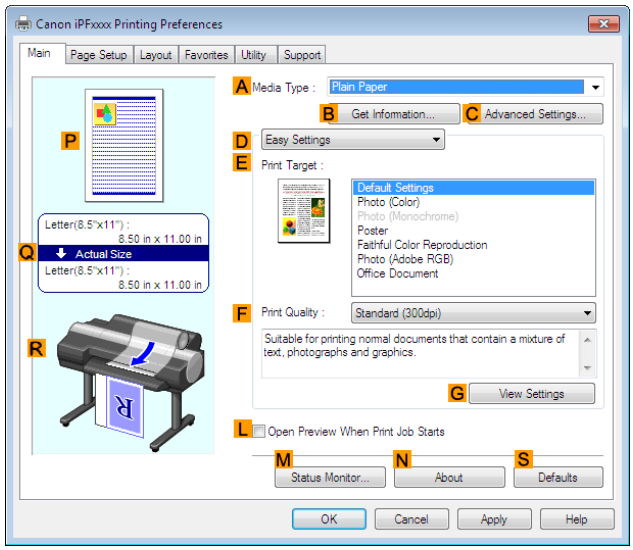
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll paper (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

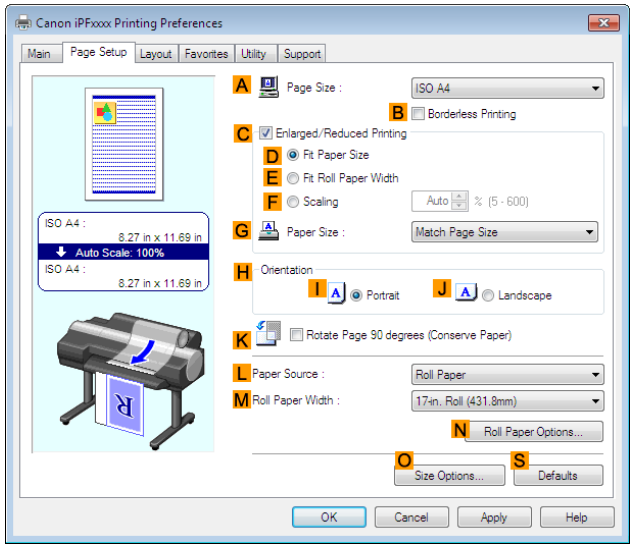
2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") →P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

7 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

8 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.

9 Select the **K Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** check box.

10 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.162

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

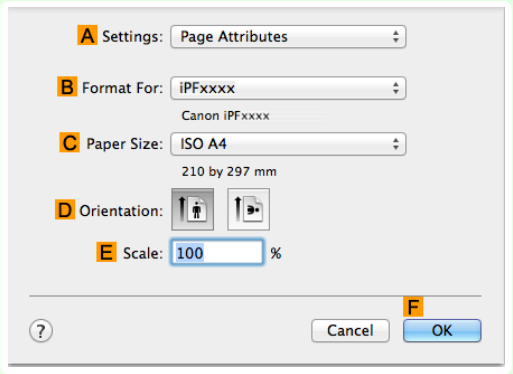
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

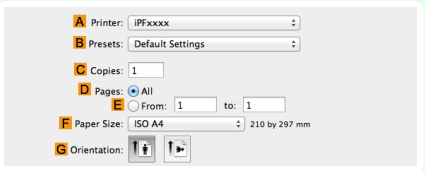
1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

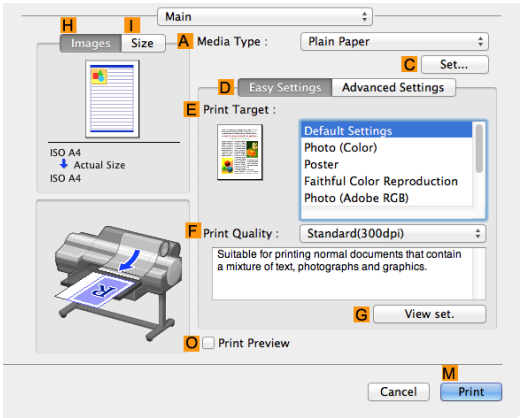


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

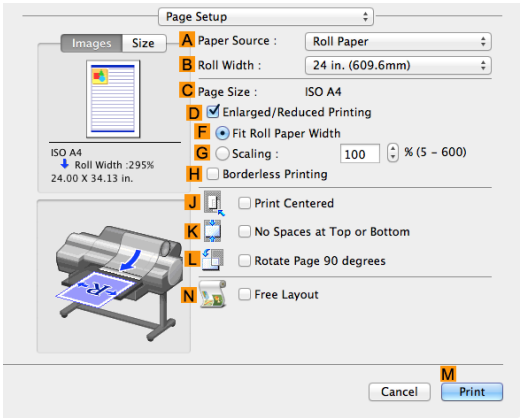
4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.



6 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

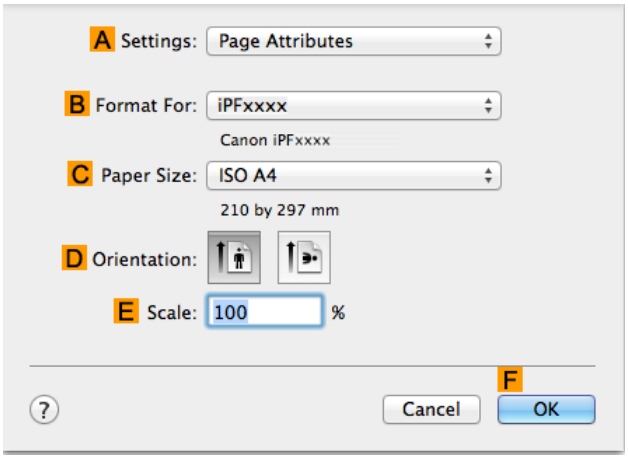
7 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



8 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

9 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)** is selected.

10 Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



11 Select the **L Rotate Page 90 degrees** check box.

12 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

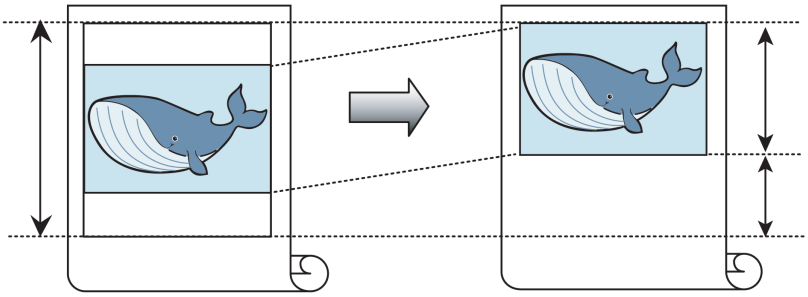
Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.347

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

- **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**

You can print without feeding the paper for blank portions of originals if there are top and bottom margins in originals. This enables you to conserve as much paper as the size of the margins.



Important
- Printing without the top and bottom margins is not supported in the following cases.
- If you have chosen poster as the type of page layout

Note
- Even during borderless printing, you can print without the top and bottom margins.
- Printing without the top and bottom margins may cause inconsistency in the size of printed documents, depending on the layout of images or text in your originals.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)** →P.140
- **Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS)** →P.142

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)

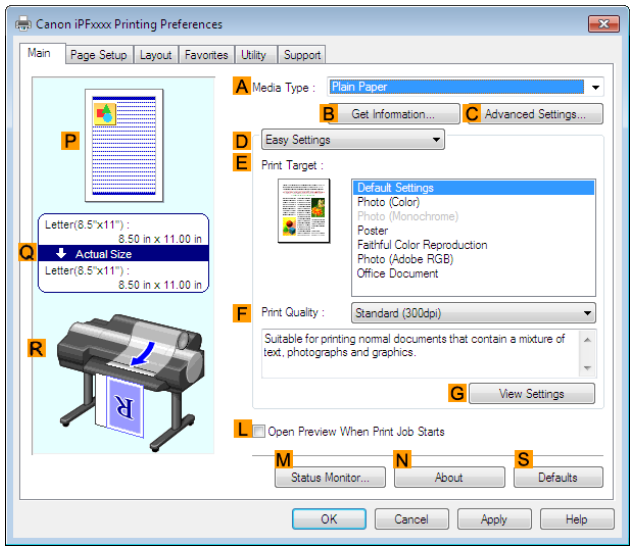
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

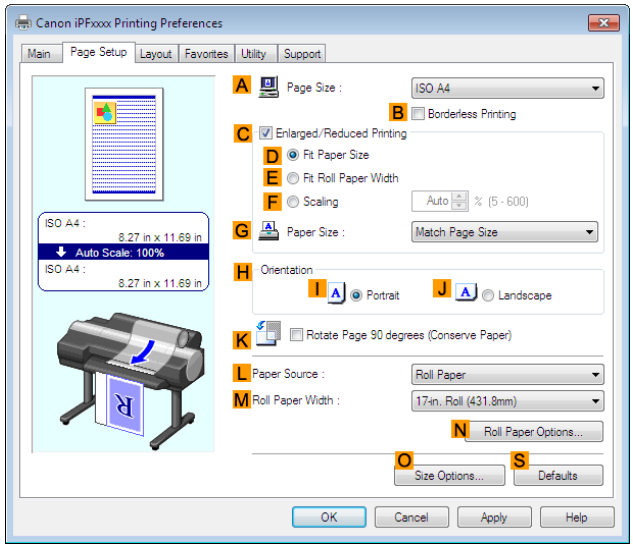
2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") →P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

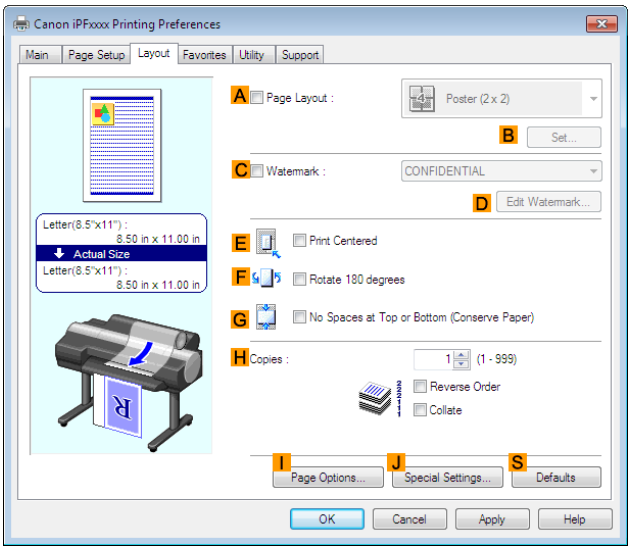


6 In the **A** **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

7 Select and click a roll paper in the **L** **Paper Source** list.

8 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M** **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.

9 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10 Select the **G No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)** check box.

11 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.162

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS)

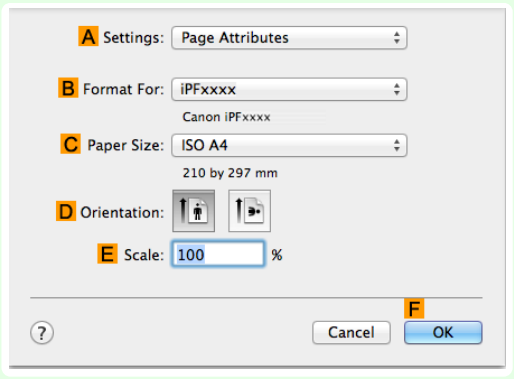
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

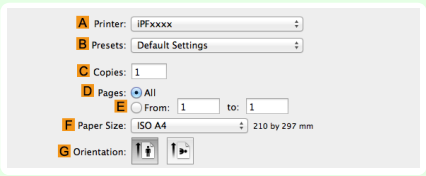
1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

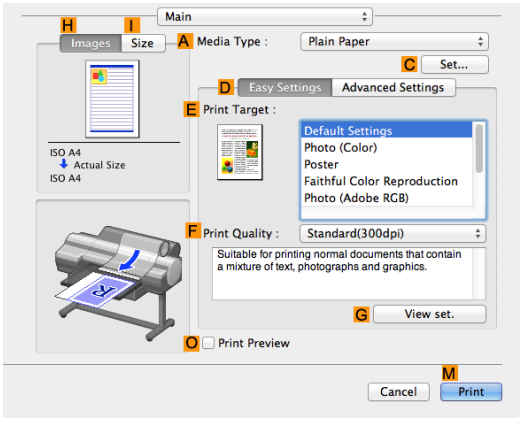


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

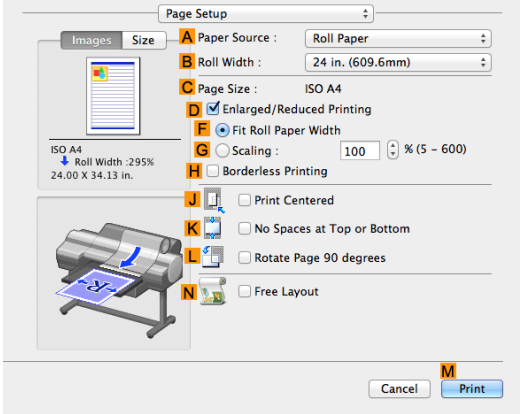
4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.



6 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

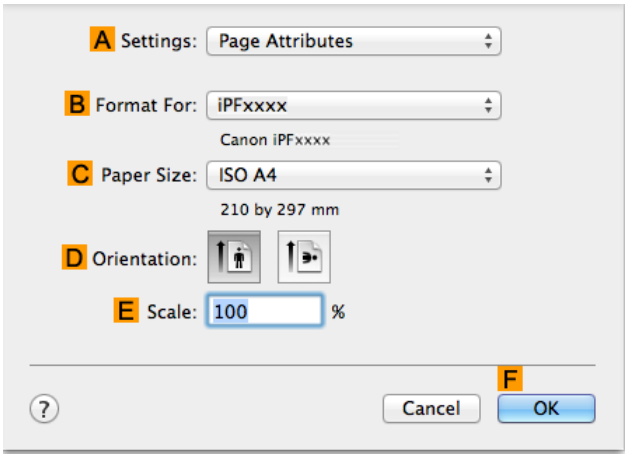
7 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



8 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

9 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)** is selected.

10 Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



11 Select the **K No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.

12 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.347

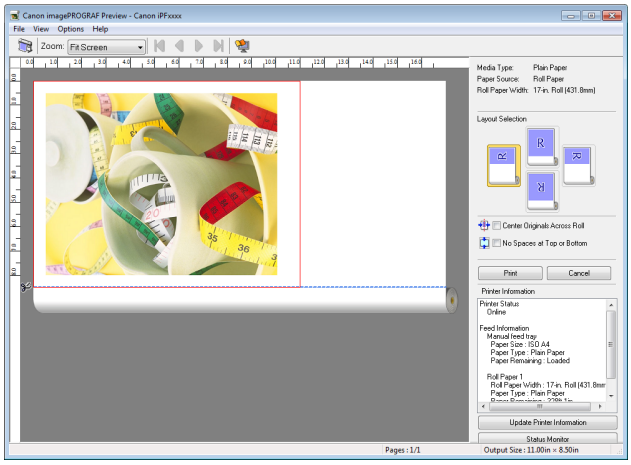
Checking Images Before Printing

Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing

You can check the print layout on the preview screen.

- **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** (Windows)

  While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust orientation or other settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.

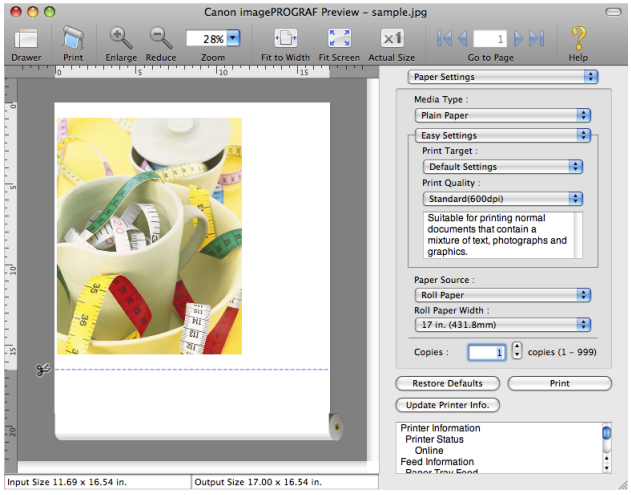


Note

- Under some settings and in some environments, PageComposer may be started.

- **Preview** (Mac OS)

  While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust layout or size settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.



For instructions on how to check the layout before printing, refer to the following topics:

- **Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows)** →P.162
- **Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS)** →P.347

Other useful settings

Printing With Watermarks 146
Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) 147

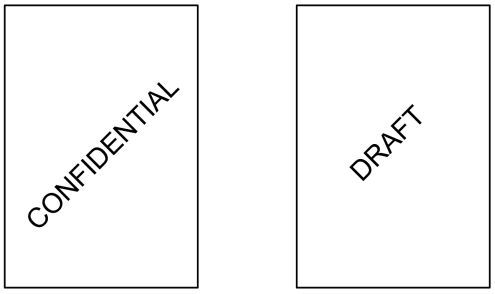
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation 149
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) 149
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS) 151

Using Favorites 153
→ Using Favorites (Windows) 164
→ Using Favorites (Mac OS) 348

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing 153
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) 153
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS) 154

Printing With Watermarks

You can add watermarks (background images) to documents that require special handling.



- **Watermark**

  Watermarks are applied to all pages of your document.

  Important
  - Watermarks are not printed if you select poster as the type of page layout.

  The following watermarks are provided:

  - CONFIDENTIAL
  - COPY
  - DRAFT
  - FILE COPY
  - FINAL
  - PRELIMINARY
  - PROOF
  - TOP SECRET

  You can also create your own watermarks. Specify the following options to customize your watermark.

  - Watermark string: Specify the font, size, color, and so on. Surround the watermark with a frame, if desired.
  - Watermark position: Specify the position on the page, the angle, and so on.
  - Watermark printing method: Specify whether to print the watermark superimposed or under the document image. You can also print the watermark only on the first page, if desired.

Note
- Watermarks are supported in Windows.
- In addition to the provided watermarks, you can create up to 50 original watermarks.

For detailed instructions on printing with watermarks, refer to the following topics:

- **Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)** ➔P.147

Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)

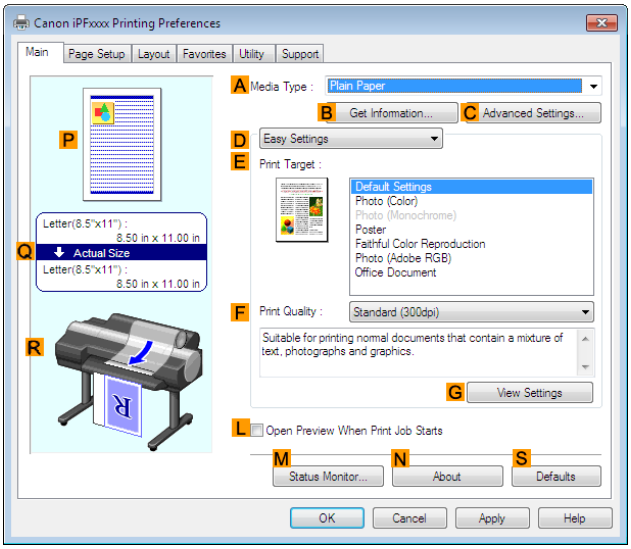
This topic describes how to print with watermarks, based on the following example of printing with a **FILE COPY** watermark.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in[)

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See **"Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

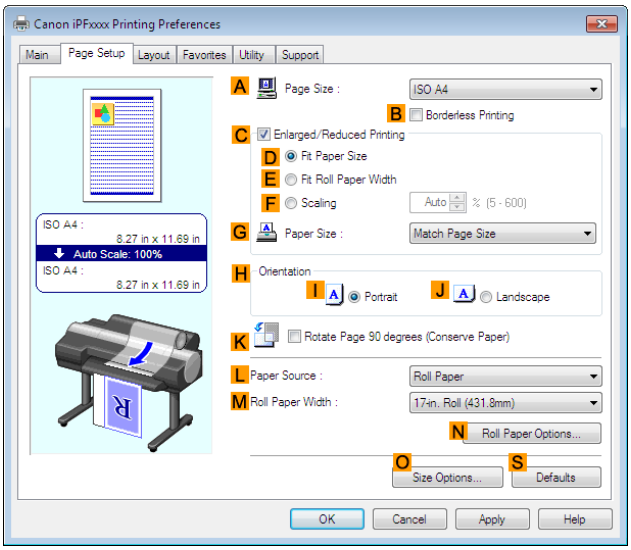


4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

Note
- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View Settings**.

6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

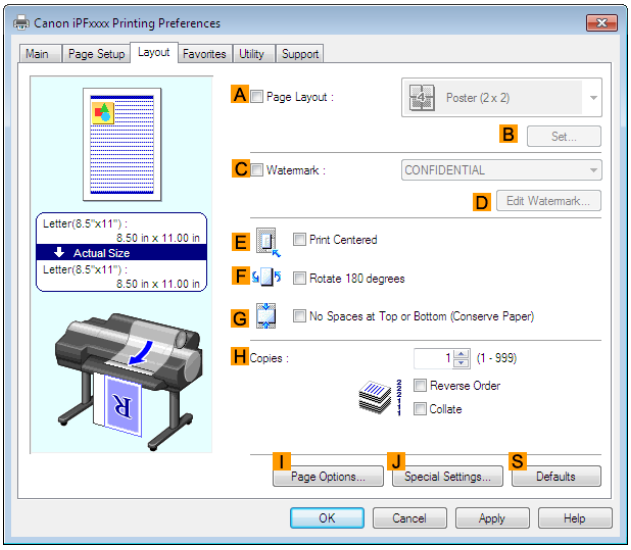


7 In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A2**.

8 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

9 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

10 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11 Select the **C Watermark** check box.

12 Click **FILE COPY** in the **Watermarks** list.

Note

- Click **D Edit Watermark** to open the **Edit Watermark** dialog box. In the **Edit Watermark** dialog box, you can create custom watermarks and change the position and angle of watermarks.

13 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

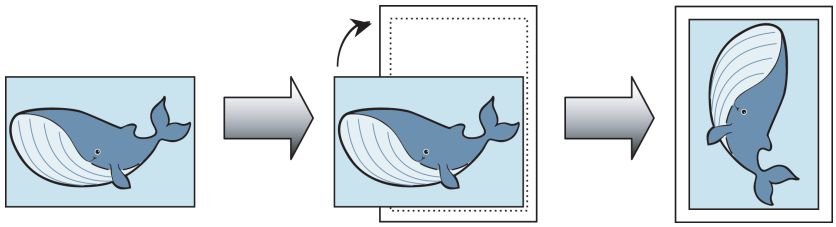
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" ➔P.162

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation

You can specify the original orientation to match the orientation of the paper for printing.

- **Orientation**

  Paper is usually loaded in the printer in portrait orientation. When you have an original in landscape orientation, you can specify the printing orientation so that the original is printed in landscape orientation.



- **Rotate 180 degrees**

  The original is rotated 180 degrees to print it upside down.

- **Mirror**

  A mirror image of the original is printed.

For instructions on specifying the original orientation before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)** ➔P.149
- **Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS)** ➔P.151

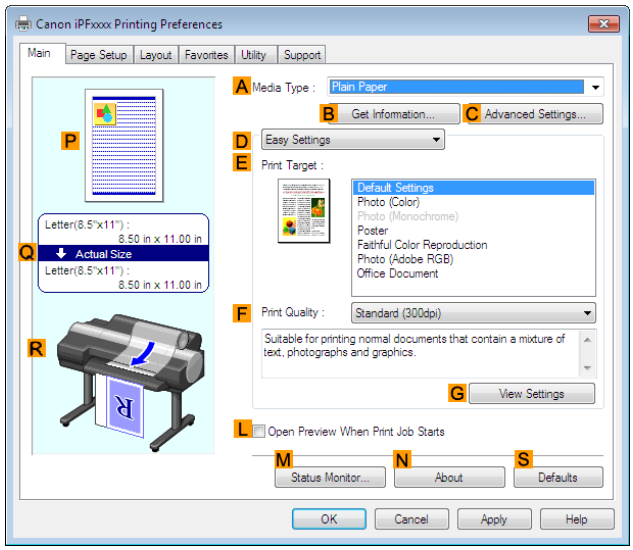
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)

This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

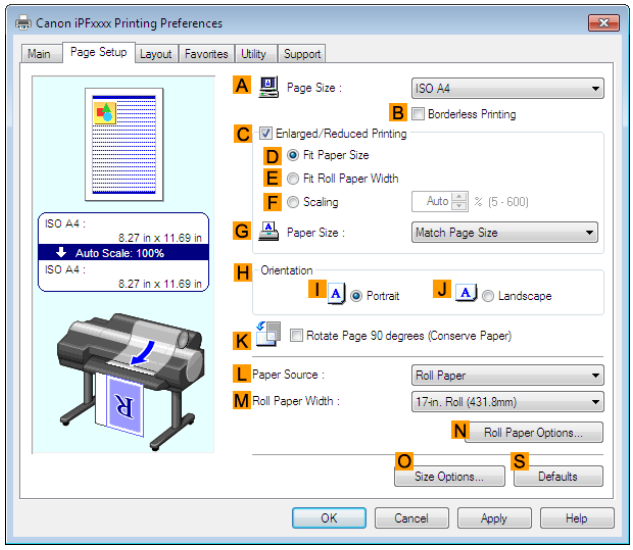


4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

6 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

7 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

9 In **H Orientation**, click **J Landscape**.

10 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

11 Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

12 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

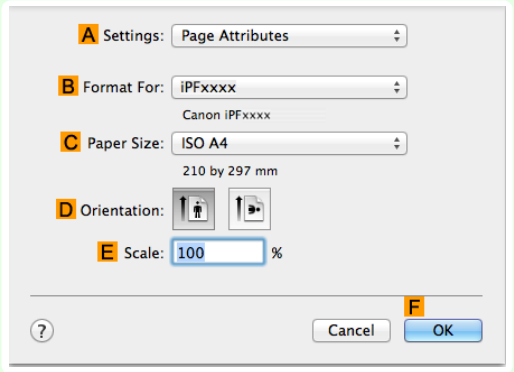
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

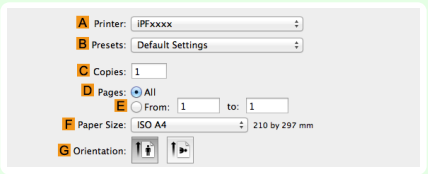
- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



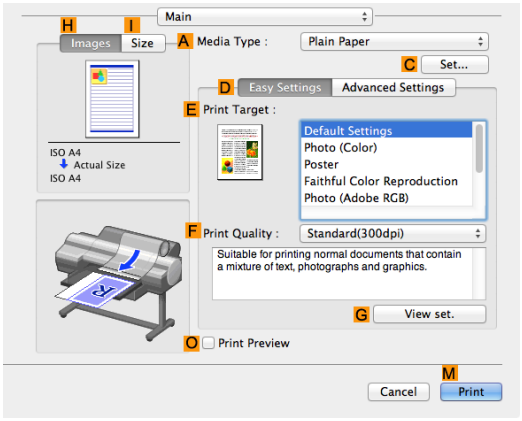
2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4 In **G Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.

5 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

6 Access the **Main** pane.

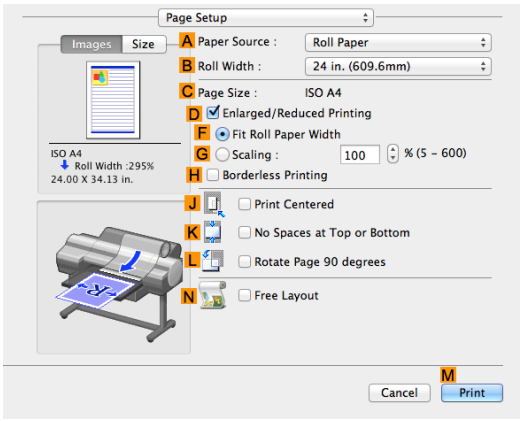


7 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

9 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

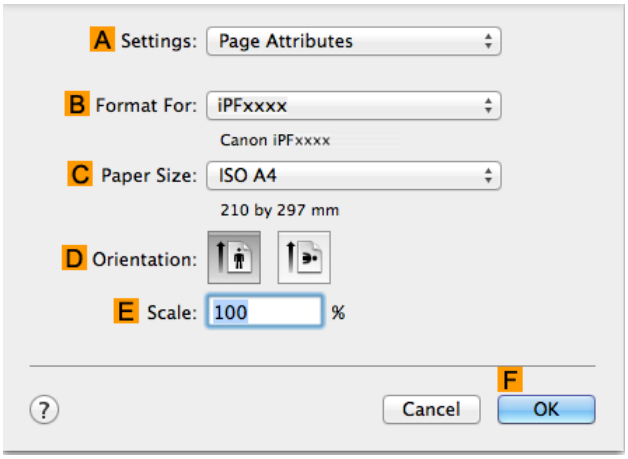
10 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



11 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

12 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)** is selected.

13 Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



14 Confirm the print settings, and then click **Print** to start printing.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." →P.347

Using Favorites

You can register print settings as **Favorites** to reuse settings from a particular job that met your expectations, or settings for a particular page size that you will use repeatedly.

- **Favorites**

  Registering a favorite for later use. You can choose the settings you have registered from a list before printing, and you can check the settings details.

  Note
  - You can also save the favorite settings as files. Using these files is a convenient way to print under the same conditions on another computer. (In Windows.)

  For instructions on using favorites to print, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

  - **Using Favorites (Windows)** →P.164
  - **Using Favorites (Mac OS)** →P.348

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing

Roll paper can be automatically cut after printing.

Note
- It may not be possible to cut certain types of paper, such as adhesive paper. For details on types of paper that cannot be used with the auto cut feature, see the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Types of Paper**.") →P.492

- **Automatic Cutting**

  Roll paper is cut automatically after printing. If you prefer, you can print continuously without cutting the roll, or you can print a cut line.

  For instructions on cutting roll paper after printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

  - **Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)** →P.153
  - **Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS)** →P.154

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)

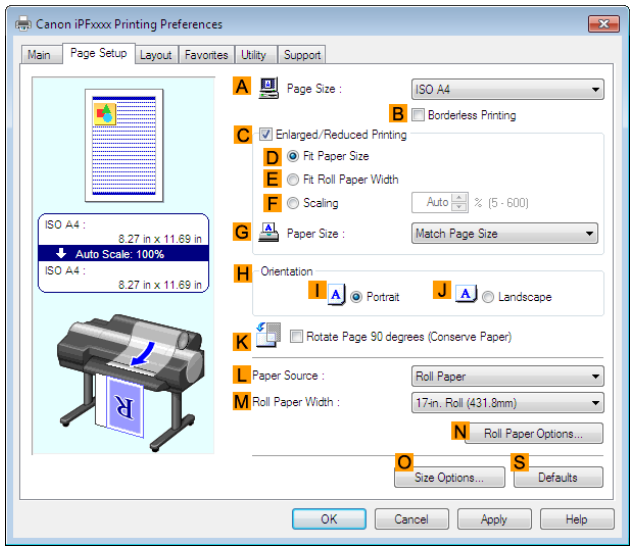
This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically after printing (using the auto cut function), as well as how to print a cut line for manual cutting.

Note
- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function if it is disabled, or to select the setting for printing a cut line instead.

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

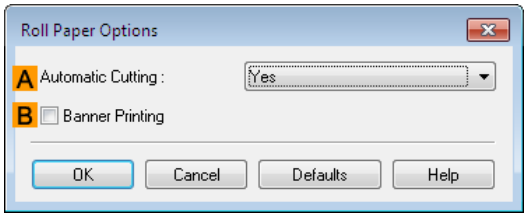
2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") →P.165

3 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



4 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

5 Click **N Roll Paper Options** to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.



6 To enable automatic cutting, click **Yes** in the **A Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.

7 Click **OK** to close the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.

8 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" →P.162

Roll paper will be automatically cut after printing.

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS)

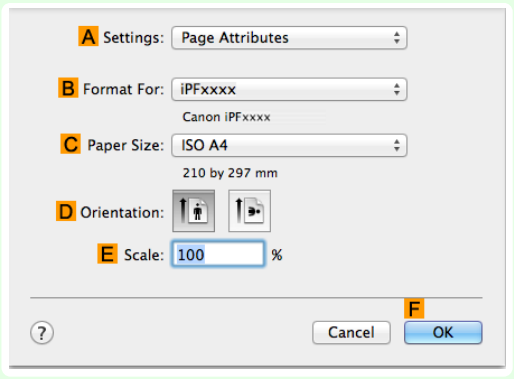
This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically after printing (using the auto cut function), as well as how to print a cut line for manual cutting.

Note
- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function if it is disabled, or to select the setting for printing a cut line instead.

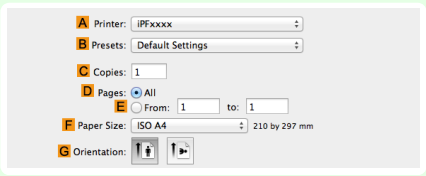
1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

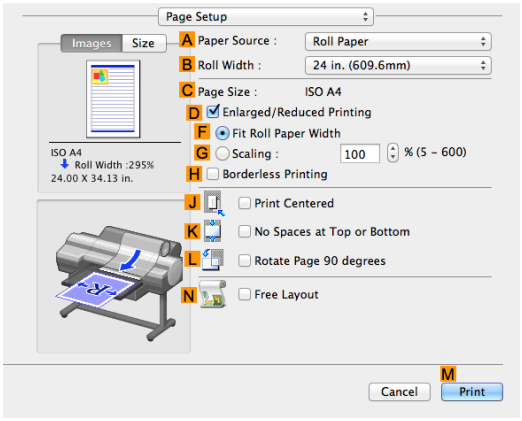


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 Choose the original size in the **F Paper Size** list.

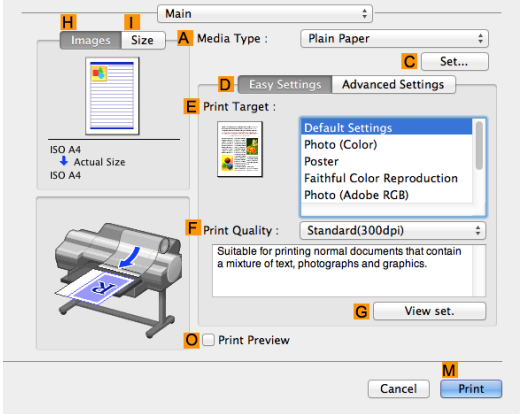
4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



6 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

7 Access the **Main** pane.



8 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

9 Click **C Set** to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.

10 To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the **H Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.

Important
- If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer Control Panel.

11 Click **OK** to close the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.

12 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings .**" ➔P.347

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35

Windows Software

Printer Driver 158
Preview 193
Free Layout 204
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 227
Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional 238
Layout Plug-In for Photoshop 298
Print Plug-In for Office 303
→ Status Monitor 700
→ Accounting 705
→ Device Setup Utility 695
→ Media Configuration Tool 546
→ Color Calibration Management Console 809

Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

Printer Driver

Printer Driver Settings 158

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 160
Confirming Print Settings 162
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing 162
Using Favorites 164

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications 165
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu 167

Main Sheet 168
- Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box 171
- Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box 171
- View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application 173
- Color Adjustment Sheet: Color 173
- Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color 175
- Matching Sheet 175
- Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome 178
- Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome 179
- Gray Adjustment Sheet 180

Page Setup Sheet 181
- Output Method Dialog box 183
- Paper Size Options Dialog Box 184

Layout Sheet 185
- Page Options Dialog Box 187
- Special Settings Dialog Box 188

Favorites Sheet 189
Utility Sheet 190
Support Sheet 191
- Settings Summaries Dialog Box 191

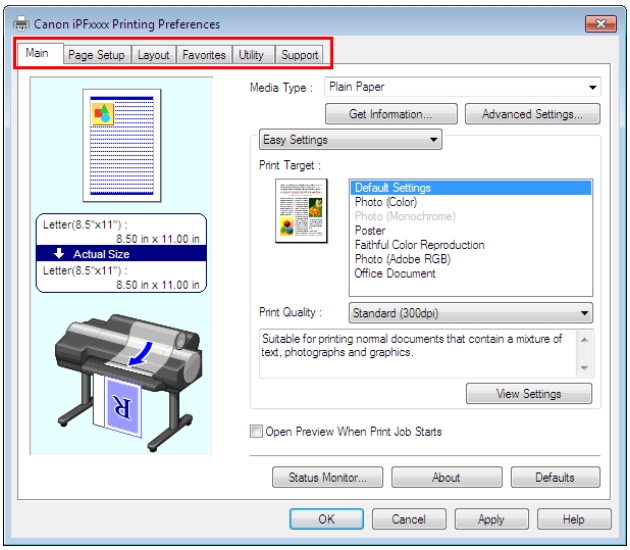
Device Settings Sheet 192

Printer Driver Settings

For instructions on accessing the Windows printer driver, refer to the following topics.

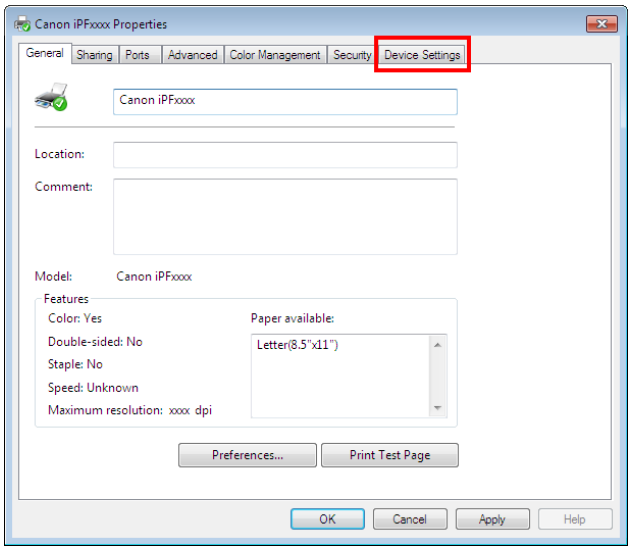
- **Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** →P.165
- **Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu** →P.167

For information on the Windows printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.



- **Main Sheet** →P.168
  You can specify the type of paper, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.
  - **Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box** →P.171
  - **View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application** →P.173
  - **Color Adjustment Sheet: Color** →P.173
  - **Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color** →P.175
  - **Matching Sheet** →P.175
  - **Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome** →P.178
  - **Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome** →P.179
  - **Gray Adjustment Sheet** →P.180
- **Page Setup Sheet** →P.181
  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and feed source, and automatic cutting.
  - **Output Method Dialog box** →P.183
  - **Paper Size Options Dialog Box** →P.184
- **Layout Sheet** →P.185
  You can specify the page layout, watermarks, the orientation, the number of copies, and print processing options.
  - **Page Options Dialog Box** →P.187
  - **Special Settings Dialog Box** →P.188
- **Favorites Sheet** →P.189
  Groups of print settings you select on each sheet can be saved as a favorite. Favorites you have added can be edited or used at the time of printing as desired.
- **Utility Sheet** →P.190
  You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

- **Support Sheet** ➔P.191
  You can view support information and the user manual.



- **Device Settings Sheet** ➔P.192
  You can display settings for optional equipment installed on the printer and see the version information for the printer driver.

imagePROGRAF Free Layout is a feature for freely arranging originals from various source applications on a single page as desired before printing. For details, see "**Free Layout**." ➔P.204
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy is a feature for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see "**Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**." ➔P.227

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

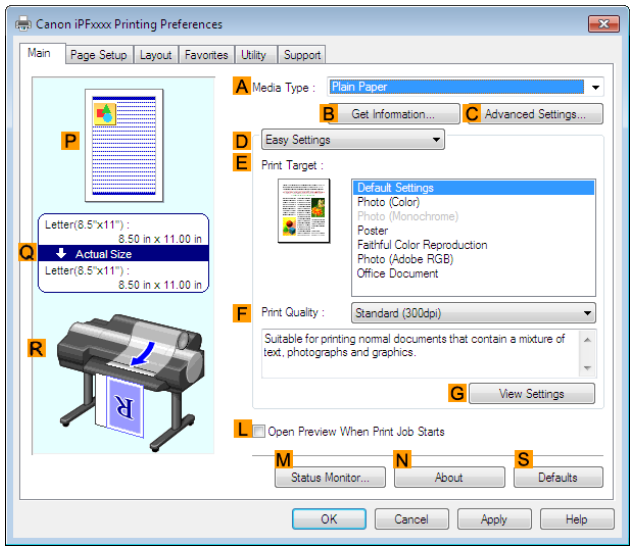
Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

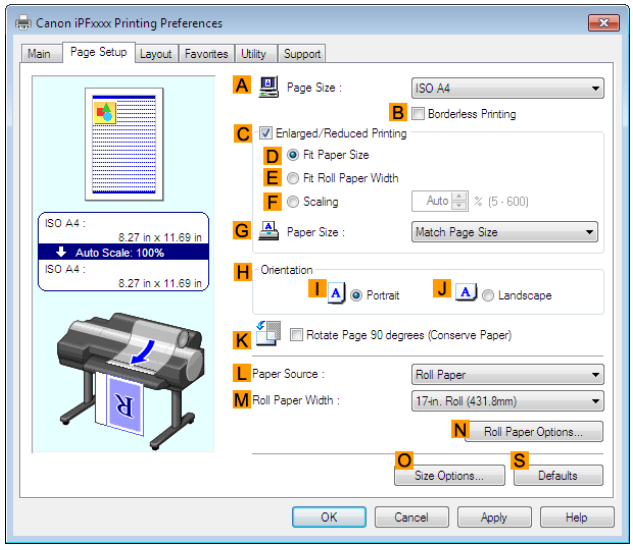


4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

Note

- Click the **B Get Information** button to display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box. On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the feed source and type of paper.
  This function requires that the **Status Monitor** be installed.

5 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6 In the **A Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.

7 In the **L Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

8 If you have selected roll paper in **L Paper Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in **M Roll Paper Width**.

Note

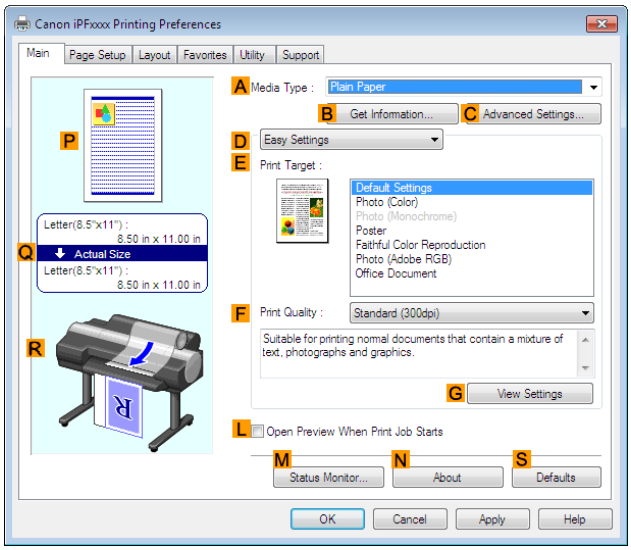
- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see "**Printer Driver Settings** ." ➔P.158

Confirming Print Settings

There are two ways to confirm the print settings, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings

  A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, and **Layout** sheets. By checking illustrations and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, paper source, layout, and so on.



Display Area	Information Displayed
P Top illustrations	Illustrations indicate the orientation, page layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information.
Q Middle, bordered area	The page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction are indicated.
R Bottom illustrations	Illustrations indicate the feed source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **G View Settings** on the **Main** sheet to display the **View Settings** dialog box.

- Checking a print preview

  You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.

  When you activate this feature, **imagePROGRAF Preview** or PageComposer is started before printing. Confirming how documents will be printed this way helps prevent printing errors.

  For details on print previews, see "**Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing.**" ➔P.145

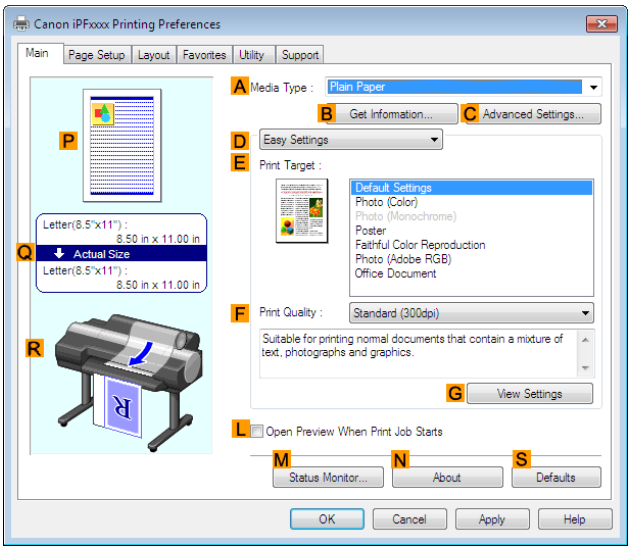
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

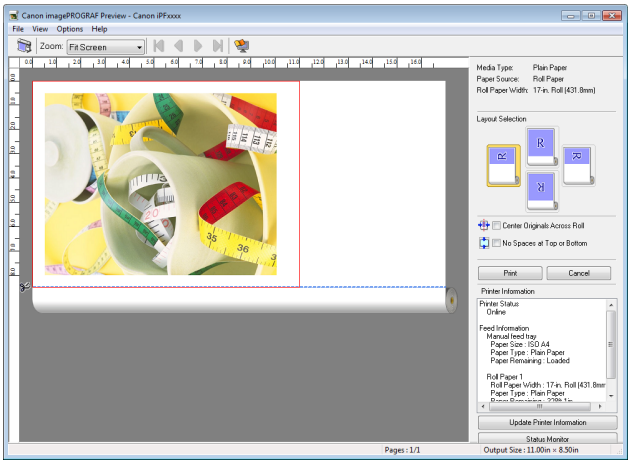
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 Select the **L Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.

5 After you click **OK**, when you print a job, the **image-PROGRAF Preview** window will be displayed.



Note

- If PageComposer is running, access the **Special Settings** dialog box from the **Layout** sheet and clear **Enable Preview Switching**.

6 On the main window, you can check the layout and change settings as needed.

7 To print, click **Print** in the **File** menu.

Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, see "Preview." ➔P.193

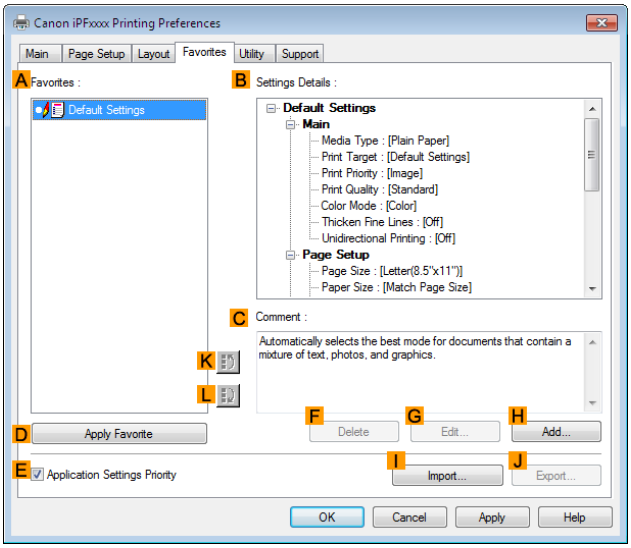
Using Favorites

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

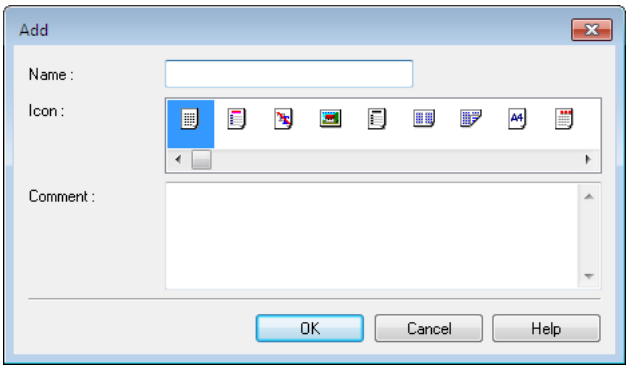
Registering a favorite

This section describes the procedure for registering printing settings that have been changed in the driver as **Favorites**.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165
3. Perform normal printing settings.
   The favorite is registered from here.
4. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



5. Click **H Add** to display the **Add** dialog box.



6. Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as **Photos for Presentations** or **Monthly Report.**
7. Choose a fitting icon for these print settings in the Icon list.
8. In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added, as desired.

9 Click **OK** to close the **Add** dialog box.
The favorite you have added is now displayed in **A Favorites**.

Note
- To save a favorite as a file, click **J Export** and specify the file to save.

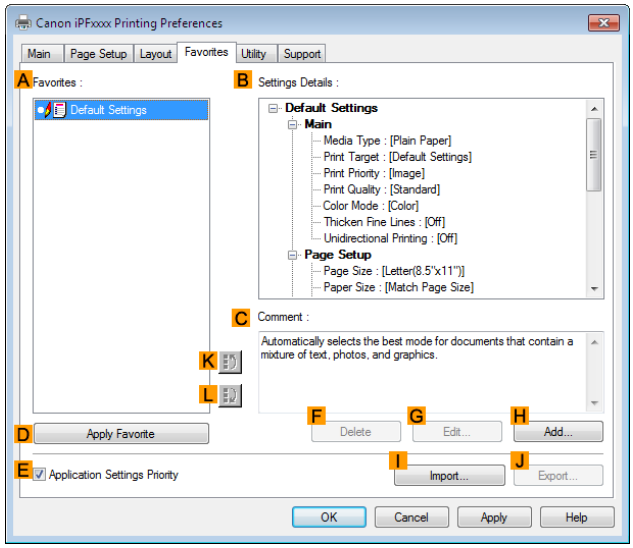
Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

3 Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



4 In the **A Favorites**, choose the favorite you registered.

Note
- To import a favorite, click **I Import** and specify the favorite file.

5 Click **D Apply Favorite** to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.

6 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "**Confirming Print Settings** ." ➔P.162

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications

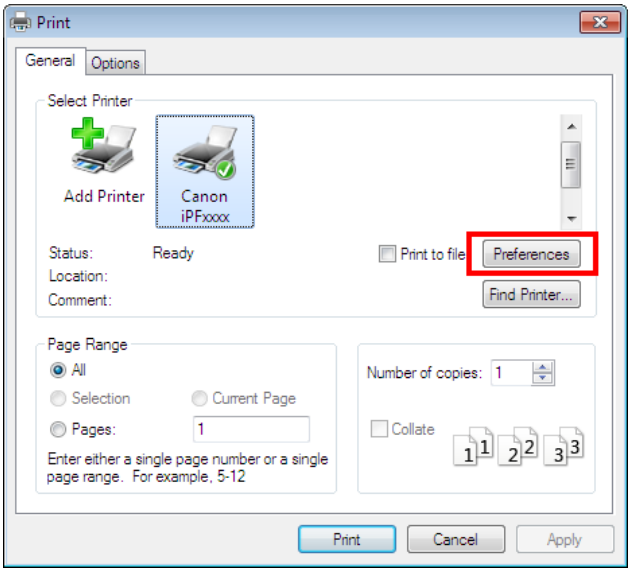
1 Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

2 Select the printer, and then display the printer driver dialog box.

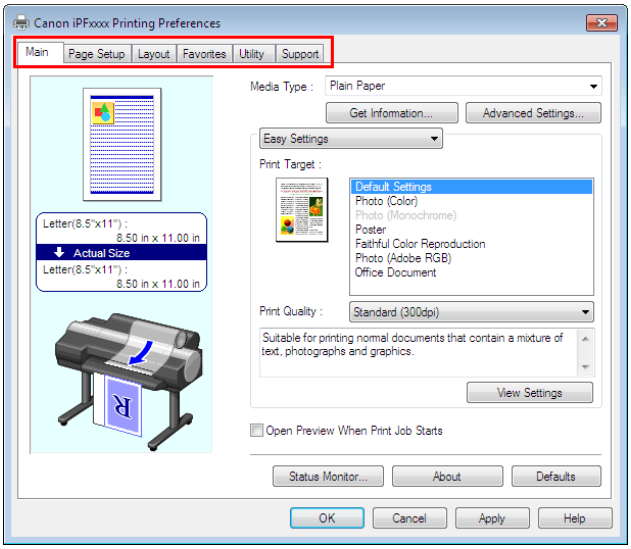
Note

- The dialog box for specifying printing conditions varies depending on the source application. In some cases, when you select the printer, a sheet for configuring the printer driver is added to the dialog box.
  In the following case, click **Preferences**.

- Example: **Print** dialog box displayed by the application software



Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Note

- The titles of dialog boxes may vary depending on the application, and sheets other than these six sheets may be displayed.

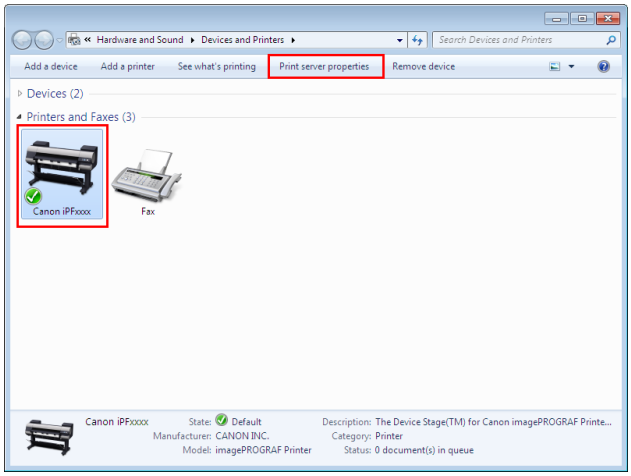
Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the source application, changes you make to the settings will only apply temporarily to that application. Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from the Windows system menu.
  To use the settings continuously in all applications, open the printer driver from the system menu to make the settings.
  (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu** .") ➔P.167

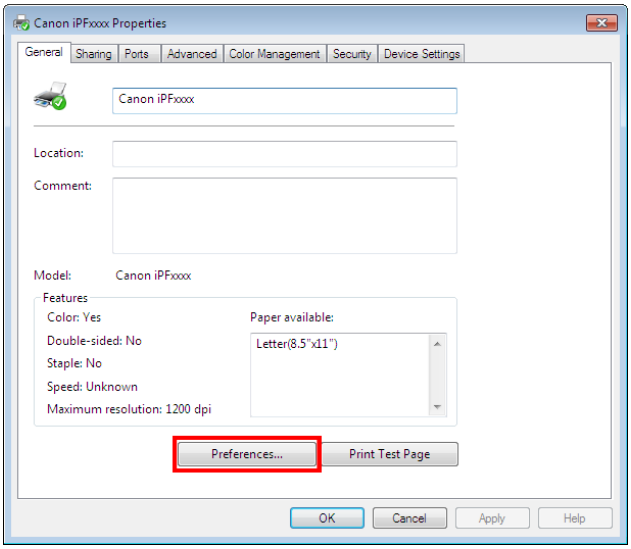
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu

1 Click **start** > **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).

2 Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



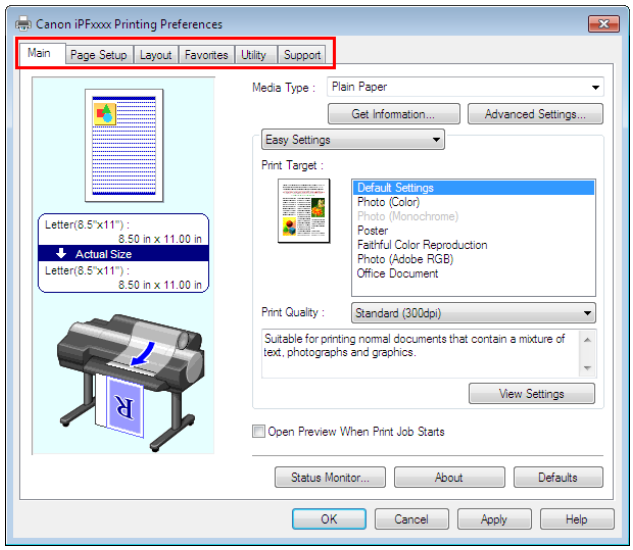
3 Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Main**(or **Printing Preferences**) dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.



Note

- The **Device Settings** sheet is also an extension of the printer driver. (See "**Device Settings Sheet** .") ➔P.192

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications.
  (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

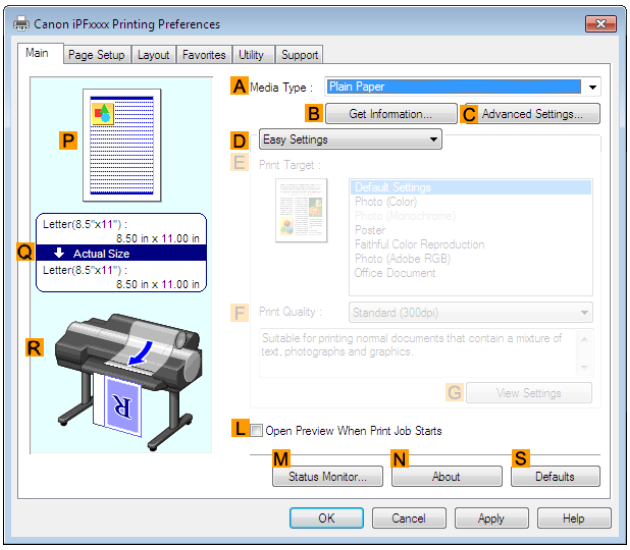
Main Sheet

The following settings are available on the **Main** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.

Note

- On the **Main** sheet, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the particular printing application, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Common Items



- **A Media Type**

  Select the type of paper.

  For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Paper Reference Guide**.")

- **B Get Information**

Displays **Paper Information on Printer**. You can update the printer driver settings for the feed source, media type, and roll width by selecting the feed source.

- **Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box** ➔P.171

- **C Advanced Settings**

Displays **Paper Detailed Settings**. You can configure the printing settings to match the type of media, such as the ink drying time.

- **Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box** ➔P.171

- **L Open Preview When Print Job Starts**

If you turn this on, **imagePROGRAF Preview** starts before printing.
This allows you to check on-screen previews of documents before printing.

- **Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing** ➔P.145

- **M Status Monitor**

Starts **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**.
You can check the printer status, job status, and other conditions.
You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings.
For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help file.

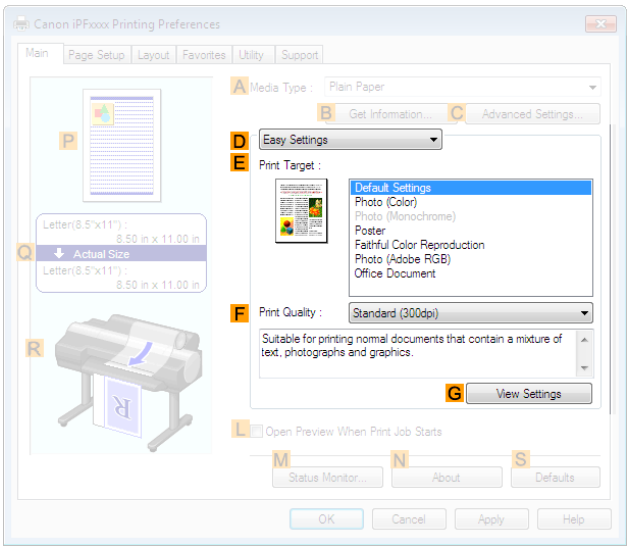
- **N About**

Displays version information for the printer driver.

- **S Defaults**

Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Configuration using **Easy Settings**



- **E Print Target**

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

- **Printing Photos and Images** ➔P.37
- **Printing Office Documents** ➔P.47

Note

- Depending on the **A Media Type** setting, some **E Print Target** options may not be available.

- **F Print Quality**

Choose the level of print quality.

- **Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing** ➔P.59

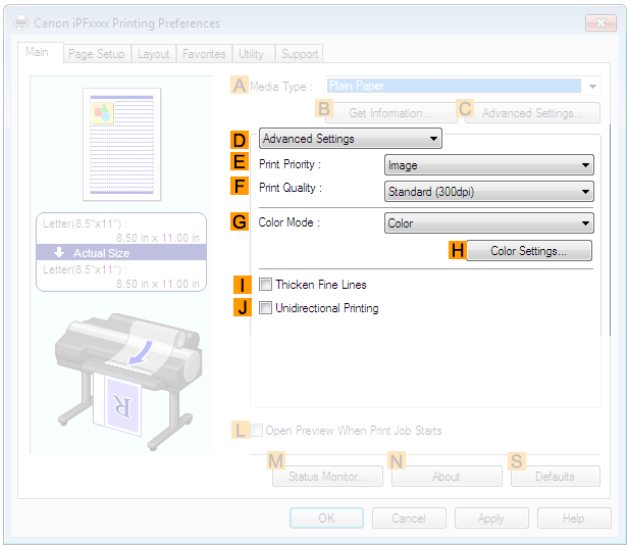
- **G View Settings**

Displays the **E Print Target** setting values.

You can view and change the order of **E Print Target** setting values.

- **View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application** ➔P.173

Configuration using **Advanced Settings**



- **E Print Priority**

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

- **Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing** ➔P.59

- **F Print Quality**

Choose the level of print quality.

- **Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing** ➔P.59

- **G Color Mode**

Choose the color mode.

- **Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing** ➔P.59

Note

- Depending on the **A Media Type** setting, some **G Color Mode** options may not be available.

- **H Color Settings**

Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings.

- **Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver** ➔P.53

- **I Thicken Fine Lines**

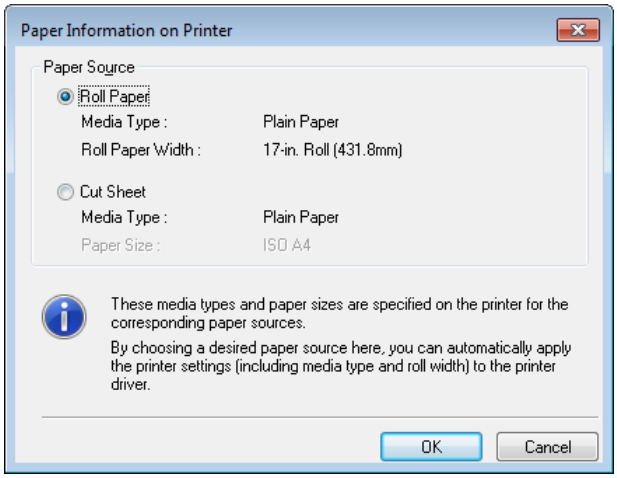
Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.

- **J Unidirectional Printing**

  Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the paper source and media type.



Note

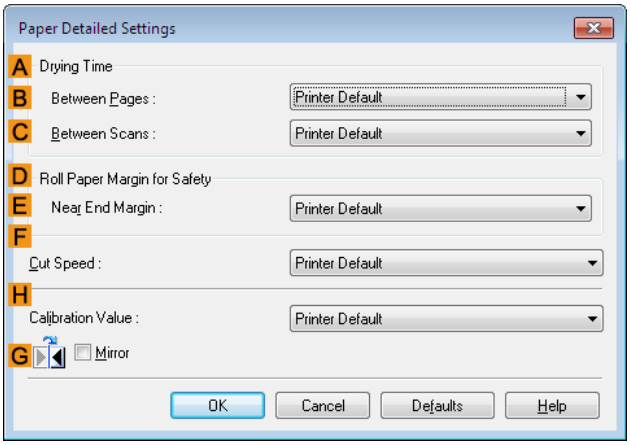
- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **Get Information** by **Media Type**. (See "**Main Sheet** .") ➔P.168

- **A Paper Source**

  Shows the paper source supported by the printer, as well as information about the loaded paper. To update the paper source and media type settings in the printer driver, select the desired **Paper Source** option and click **OK**.

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box

In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box, you can set **Drying Time** for the paper selected with **Media Type** of the **Main** sheet, etc.
You can display this dialog box by clicking **Settings** of **Media Type** on the **Main** sheet. (See "**Main Sheet** .") ➔P.168
As for the items for which you can select **Printer Default** in this dialog box, you also can set them from the control panel of the printer. (See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632



A Drying Time

Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Between Pages** setting is only valid for rolls.

• B Between Pages

You can set the time to wait after printing 1 document page until ejecting the paper. Since waiting time is required for ink to dry before a roll is cut, you can deliver paper in the Output Stacker with the ink dried even if **Cutting Mode** is set to **Automatic**.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
Off	Paper is ejected immediately after printing completes.
30 sec. / 1 min. / 3 min. / 5 min. / 10 min. / 30 min. / 60 min.	Paper is ejected when the set time elapses after printing completes.

• C Between Scans

You can set the time to wait after printing 1 line on a page until printing the next line. Set this to avoid bleeding or color unevenness such as when bleeding occurs on a page or when color unevenness occurs during borderless printing.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
Off	The next line is printed immediately after a line is printed.
1 sec. / 3 sec. / 5 sec. / 7 sec. / 9 sec.	The next line is printed when the set time elapses after a line is printed. * Increase the time according to the occurrence condition of bleeding or unevenness.

D Roll Paper Margin for Safety

You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.

• E Near End Margin

Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
3 mm (0.12 in)	The document is printed in the standard size. * Select this when you do not have any problems in printing.
20 mm (0.8 in)	Select this when rubbing against the printhead occurs such as when using paper that tends to curl.

F Cut Speed

Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
High Speed	When the **Standard** setting does not result in cutting the surface cleanly, select this.
Standard	Select this when you do not have any problems in automatic cutting.
Low Speed	This helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you select it when using adhesive paper.

H Calibration Value

You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.

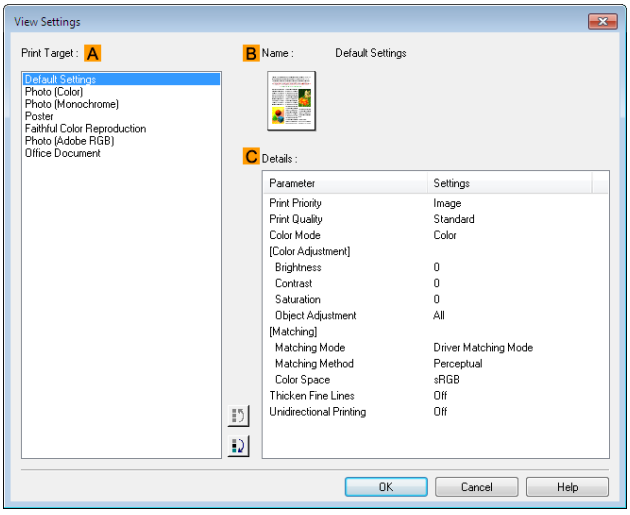
Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
Enabled	Print using the calibration results.
Disabled	Print without using the calibration results. Select this to avoid the changing of the color of images during printing by color calibration.

G Mirror

Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **View Settings** by **Print Target**. (See "Main Sheet .") ➔P.168

- **A Print Target**

  Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).

- **B Name**

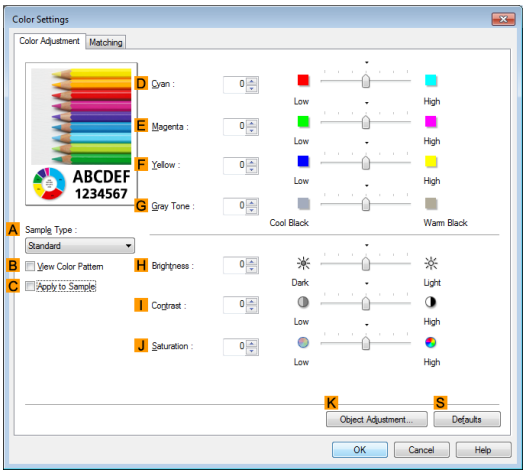
  Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.

- **C Details**

  Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each listed item for the selected **Print Target**.

Color Adjustment Sheet: Color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (See "**Main Sheet** .") ➔P.168

- **A Sample Type**

  Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

- **B View Color Pattern**

  Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

- **C Apply to Sample**

  Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

- **D Cyan/ E Magenta/ F Yellow**

  Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.

- **G Gray Tone**

  Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue) or **Warm Black** (tinged with red).

- **H Brightness**

  Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **I Contrast**

  Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

- **J Saturation**

  Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.

- **K Object Adjustment**

  Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

  - **Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color** ➔P.175

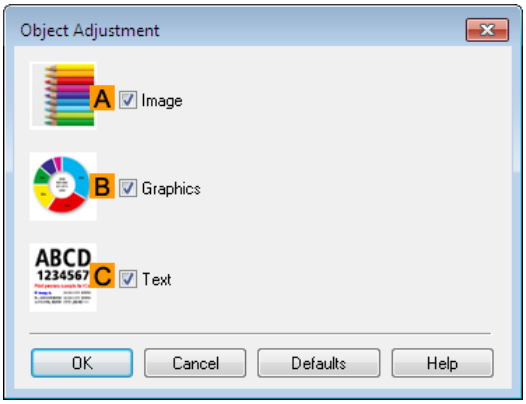
- **S Defaults**

  Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Note
- For details on settings items, see "**Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver.**" ➔P.53

Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note
- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

- **A Image**
  Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
- **B Graphics**
  Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
- **C Text**
  Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Matching Sheet

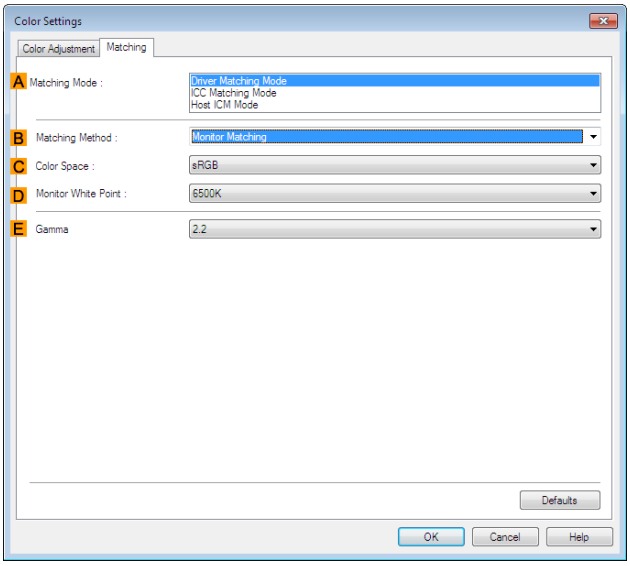
On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.

Important
- If **No color correction** is selected under **Color Mode**, the **Matching** sheet is not displayed.

Note
- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** in **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet. (See "**Main Sheet** .") ➔P.168

Driver Matching Mode

The following options are available when you select **Driver Matching Mode** in the **A Matching Mode** list.



- **A Matching Mode**

  Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

  Normally, select **Driver Matching Mode**. For color matching based on ICC profiles, select **ICC Matching Mode** or **Host ICM Mode**, depending on your color matching system.

- **B Matching Method**

  Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching Mode**.

- **C Color Space**

  Select the applicable color space as desired.

- **D Monitor White Point**

  Enter the color temperature set on the monitor.

  Displayed when the **B Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching**.

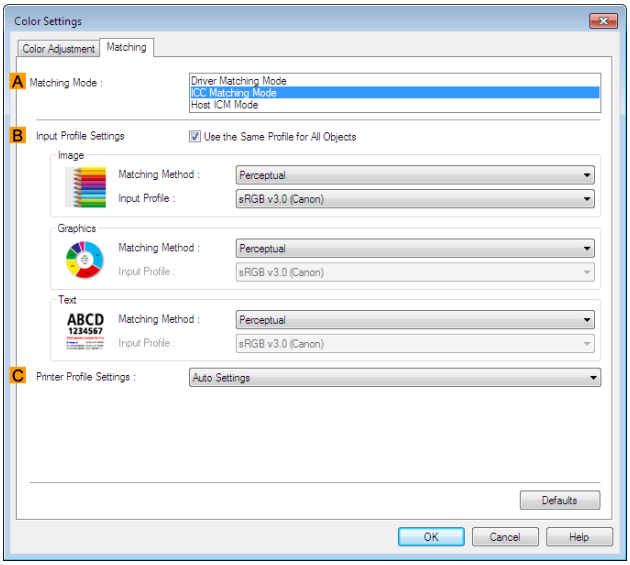
- **E Gamma**

  You can adjust the gradation of intermediate tones in an image.

  2.2 is normally selected. If you want a softer impression than **2.2**, select **1.8**.

ICC Matching Mode and Host ICM Mode

The following options are available when you select **ICC Matching Mode** or **Host ICM Mode** in the **A Matching Mode** list.



- **A Matching Mode**

  Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

- **B Input Profile Settings**

  You can select **Image**, **Graphics**, or **Text**. You can choose **Matching Method** and **Input Profile**.

  Various options are available depending on your selected **Matching Mode**.

  To apply the same input profile automatically for **Graphics** and **Text**, select **Use the Same Profile for All Objects**. To apply separate input profiles to **Graphics** and **Text**, clear **Use the Same Profile for All Objects** and specify the individual settings.

- **C Printer Profile Settings**

  Specify the printer profile as desired. Normally, select **Auto Settings**.

  We recommend that you select an ICC profile created using commercially available profile creation software in order to perform color management accurately on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper.

  The created ICC profile needs to be saved in the following folder on the computer you are using.

  C:\Windows\system32\spool\drivers\color folder

  Note

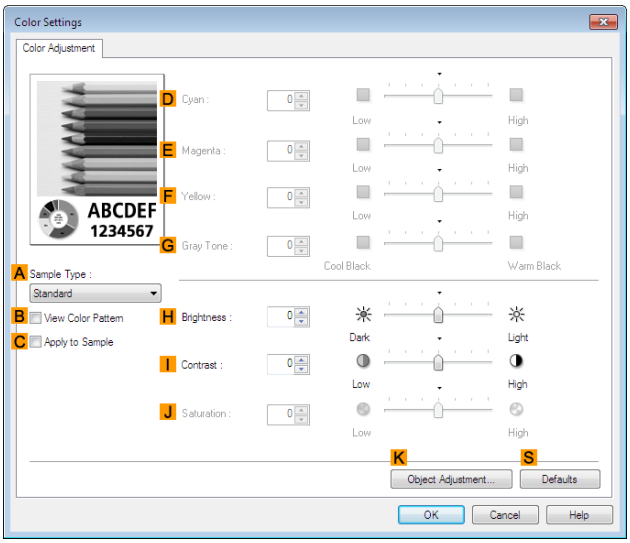
  - C: may vary according to the user environment.

Note

- For details on settings items, see "**Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver.**" ➔P.53

Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** sheet for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (See "**Main Sheet** .") →P.168

- **A Sample Type**

  Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

- **B View Color Pattern**

  Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

- **C Apply to Sample**

  Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

- **D Cyan/ E Magenta/ F Yellow**

  Not available.

- **G Gray Tone**

  Not available.

- **H Brightness**

  Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **I Contrast**

  Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

- **J Saturation**

  Not available.

- **K Object Adjustment**

  Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

  - **Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome** →P.179

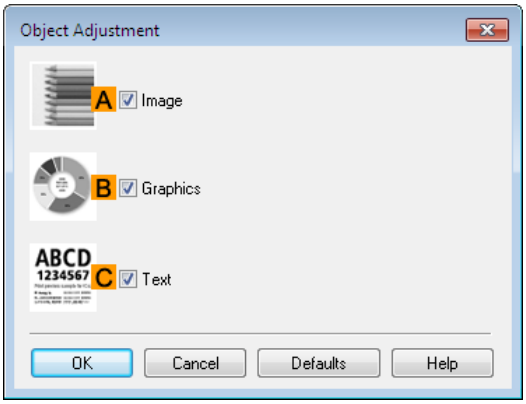
- **S Defaults**

  Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

  Note
  - For details on settings items, see "**Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver.**" →P.53

Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note
- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

- **A Image**

  Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

- **B Graphics**

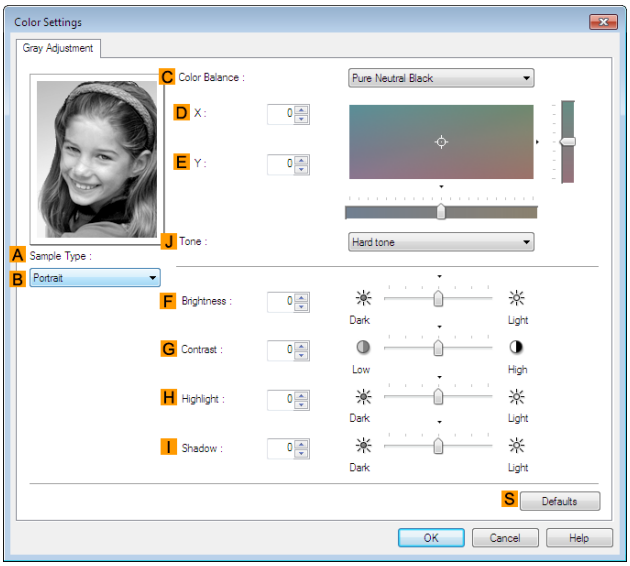
  Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

- **C Text**

  Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Gray Adjustment Sheet

On the **Gray Adjustment** sheet, you can adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, and other image qualities.



Note

- To display the **Gray Adjustment** sheet, on the Main Sheet →P.168 , select **Monochrome (Photo)** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Color Settings**.
- **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper.

- **A Sample Type**

  The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.

- **B Sample List**

  Select a sample image, as desired.

- **C Color Balance**

  Click the list to select a color balance that suits the printing application.

- **D X/E Y**

  Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area.

  You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it.

  Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired.

  You can click the arrows by the **D X** (horizontal) and **E Y** (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.

- **J Tone**

  You can adjust the brightness of intermediate tones in an image. Selecting **Hard tone** gives a hard impression with more definition. Selecting **Soft tone** gives a soft impression.

- **F Brightness**

  Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **G Contrast**

  Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

- **H Highlight**

  Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.

- **I Shadow**

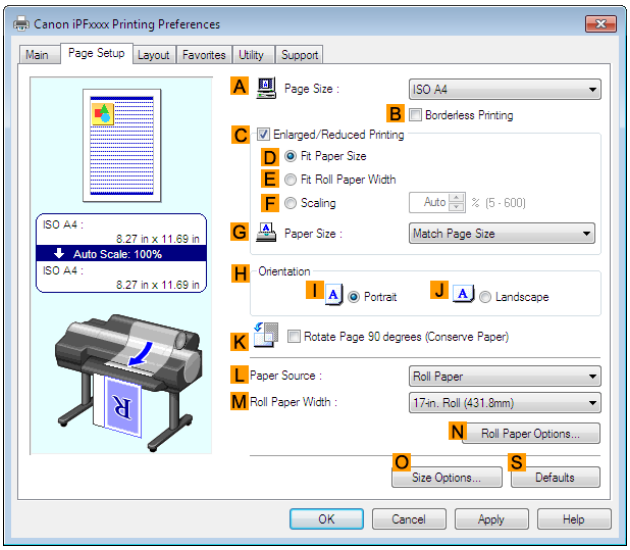
  Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.

- **S Defaults**

  Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Page Setup Sheet

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.

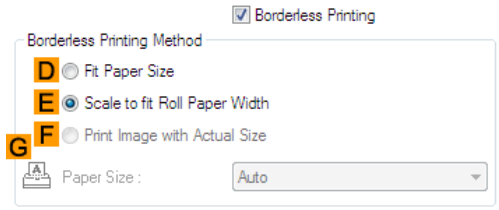


- **A Page Size**

  Select the page size as specified in the source application.

  For details on available page sizes, see "**Paper Sizes.**" ➔P.492

- **B Borderless Printing**



  Borderless printing is available if roll paper is selected in the **L Paper Source** list. Choose from the following options when this setting is activated.

  - **Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size** ➔P.88
  - **Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width** ➔P.92
  - **Borderless Printing at Actual Size** ➔P.81

- **D Fit Paper Size**

  Scales the document image to match the paper size.

- **E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width**

  Scales the document image to match the roll width.

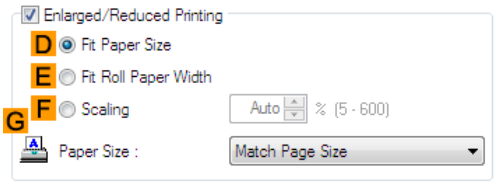
- **F Print Image with Actual Size**

  Prints documents at their actual size. This function is available when you have selected the size same as the width of **Roll Paper** for either the length or width of the document from the **A Page Size** list.

- **G Paper Size**

  Available when **D Fit Paper Size** is selected.
  Choose the size of the paper you will print on.
  For details on available paper sizes, see "**Paper Sizes.**" ➔P.492
  Paper sizes compatible with borderless printing are shown in the list.

- **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing**



  Choose from the following options when this setting is activated.

  - **Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size** ➔P.65
  - **Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width** ➔P.67
  - **Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value** ➔P.71

- **D Fit Paper Size**

  Scales the document image to match the paper size.

- **E Fit Roll Paper Width**

  Scales the document image to match the roll width.

- **F Scaling**

  Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of **5–600.**

- **G Paper Size**

  Choose the size of the paper you will print on.
  For details on available paper sizes, see "**Paper Sizes.**" ➔P.492

- **H Orientation**

  Choose the printing orientation.

  - **Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation** ➔P.149

- **K Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)**

  Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing.

  - **Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees** ➔P.136

- **L Paper Source**

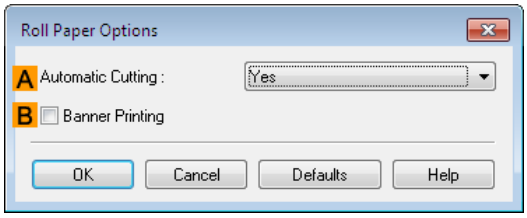
  Choose the feed source, as desired.
  Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **Media Type** on the **Main** sheet.

- **M Roll Paper Width**

  Choose the roll width.
  For details on available roll widths, see "**Paper Sizes.**" ➔P.492

- **N Roll Paper Options**

  Complete optional roll paper settings. Click to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.



  Under **A Automatic Cutting**, you can specify **Yes** or **No** and **Print Cut Guideline**.

  - **Cutting Roll Paper After Printing** ➔P.153

  Select **B Banner Printing** when printing multiple pages continuously.

  - **Printing Multiple Pages Continuously** ➔P.116

- **P Output Method**

  Click to display the **Output Method** dialog box, which enables you to complete the **Output Method** and **Name of data to be saved** settings.

  - **Output Method Dialog box** ➔P.183

- **O Size Options**

  Click to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, which enables you to register additional paper sizes or select the size system for use.

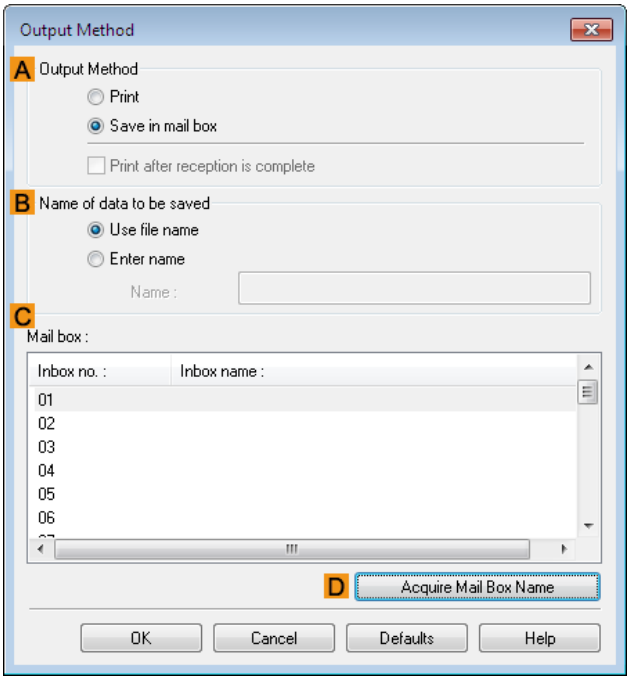
  - **Paper Size Options Dialog Box** ➔P.184

- **S Defaults**

  Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Output Method Dialog box

The **Output Method** dialog box allows you to select the **Output Method** and set the save settings when saving to the box.



Note

- To display the **Output Method** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** sheet, click **Output Method**. (See "**Page Setup Sheet** .") ➔P.181

- **A Output Method**

  If **Print** is selected, the print job is saved to the printer hard disk after printing has finished.

  If **Save in mail box** is selected, the print job is saved to the printer hard disk. If you choose **Save in mail box**, also specify the destination personal box in the **Mail box** list.

  If **Print after reception is complete** is checked, you can prevent degradation of print quality that occurs when receiving a print job is interrupted and printing is aborted in the middle.

  These can be selected as **Print** options.

- **B Name of data to be saved**

  To use the file name, choose **Use file name**.

  Otherwise choose **Enter name** and enter a name in **Name**.

- **C Mail box**

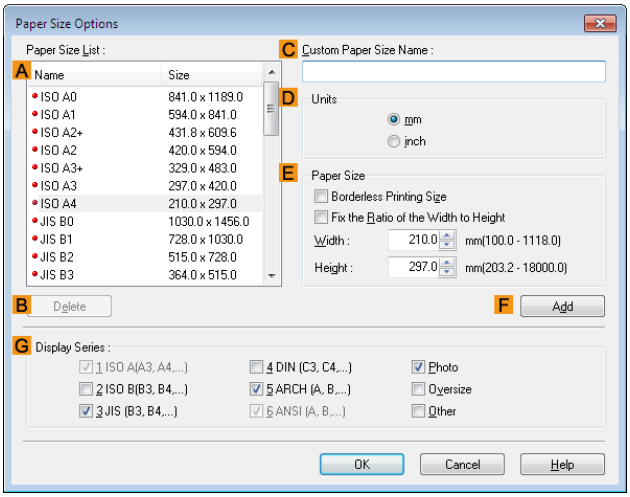
  Displays a list of mail boxes. If you choose **Save in mail box**, also specify the destination personal box from the list.

- **D Acquire Mail Box Name**

  When this is clicked, the box name acquired from the printer main unit is displayed in **Mail box**.

Paper Size Options Dialog Box

In the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, you can create and register your own Custom Paper Size. The sizes you define are listed with standard paper sizes for selection later as needed.



Important

- You cannot create any arbitrary roll paper width as a Custom Paper Size.
- If you select a **Paper Size** from **Paper Size Options**, load paper of a size equal to or larger than the **Paper Size Options** into the printer. If the size of the loaded paper is smaller than the **Paper Size Options**, an incomplete output image may be printed.

Note

- To display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** sheet, click **Paper Size Options**. (See "**Page Setup Sheet** .") ➔P.181

- **A Paper Size List**

  Shows the names and sizes of paper that can be used with the printer driver.

- **B Delete**

  Custom paper sizes created by users can be deleted from the **A Paper Size List**, as needed.

  However, they cannot be deleted in the following situations.

  - If a standard paper size of the printer driver is selected.
  - If an oversized paper size is selected.
  - If a paper size marked with a red circle is selected.

- **C Custom Paper Size Name**

  You can name Custom Paper Size as desired.

- **D Units**

  Specify the desired unit of measure for the Custom Paper Size height and width.

- **E Paper Size**

  Specify the desired **Width** and **Height**. You can make your selection from sizes that are compatible with **Borderless Printing** by selecting **Borderless Printing Size**. To maintain the aspect ratio of the **Width** and **Height** as you resize the paper, select **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height**.

- **F Add**

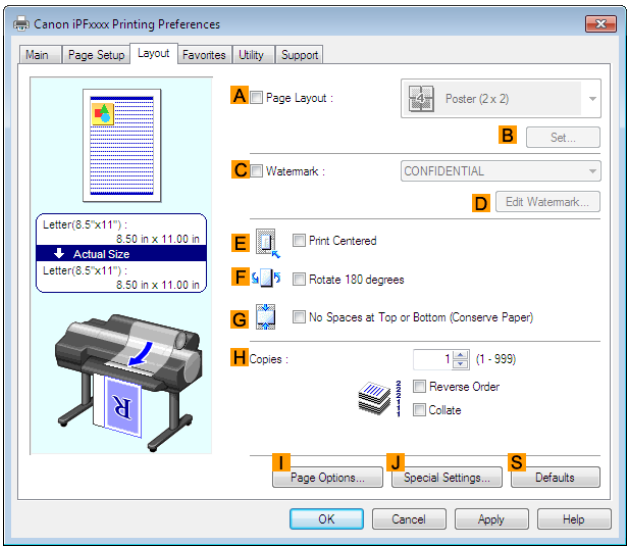
  Enables you to register the custom paper size you have specified or overwrite an existing custom paper size.

- **G Display Series**

  You can limit the number of options shown in **Page Size**, **Paper Size**, and **Paper Size List**.

Layout Sheet

The following settings are available on the **Layout** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



- **A Page Layout**

  Activate this setting to select a particular page layout.

  - **Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet** ➔P.119
  - **Printing Posters in Sections** ➔P.124
  - **Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other** ➔P.112
  - **Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals** ➔P.51

- **B Set**

Click to display one of the following dialog boxes depending on the selection in **A Page Layout**. In these dialog boxes, you can specify layout details and which pages to print, as well as other settings.

- **Page Layout Printing**
- **Pages to Print**
- **Free Layout Settings**

- **C Watermark**

Activating this option makes two settings available, **Watermarks** and **D Edit Watermark**.

- **Printing With Watermarks** →P.146
- **Watermarks**
  Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.

- **D Edit Watermark**

Click to display the **Edit Watermark** dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.

- **E Print Centered**

Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper.

- **Printing Originals Centered on Rolls** →P.127
- **Printing Originals Centered on Sheets** →P.131

- **F Rotate 180 degrees**

Activate this option to rotate document images by 180 degrees before printing.

- **G No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**

Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper.

- **Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins** →P.139

- **H Copies**

Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of **1–999.**

- **Reverse Order**
  Activate this option to print pages in reverse order.

- **I Page Options**

Click to display the **Page Options** dialog box, which enables you to complete settings for printing the user name, date, or page number in the header or footer.

- **Page Options Dialog Box** →P.187

- **J Special Settings**

If the printing results are not as you expected, click this option to change how printing is processed.

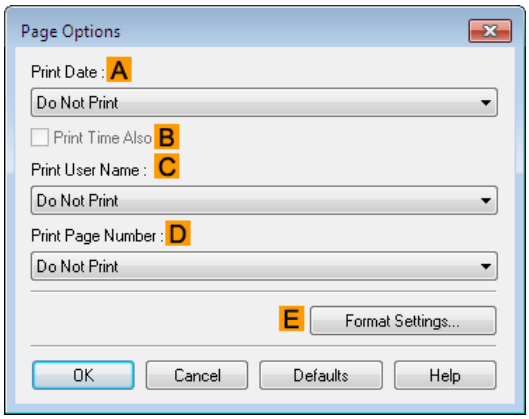
- **Special Settings Dialog Box** →P.188

- **S Defaults**

Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Page Options Dialog Box

The **Page Options** dialog box offers the following settings.



Note

- To display the **Page Options** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Page Options**. (See "Layout Sheet .") ➔P.185

- **A Print Date**

  Select where the date is printed, as desired. To print the time as well, select **B Print Time Also**.

- **C Print User Name**

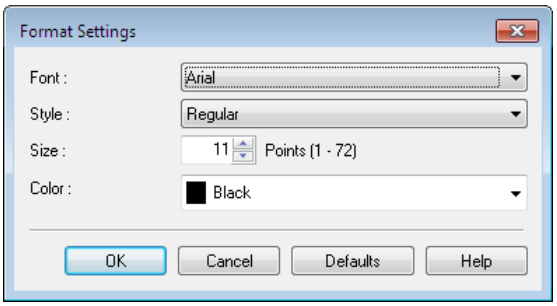
  Select where the user name is printed, as desired.

- **D Print Page Number**

  Select where the page number is printed, as desired.

- **E Format Settings**

  Click to display the **Format Settings** dialog box, which enables you to complete format-related settings.

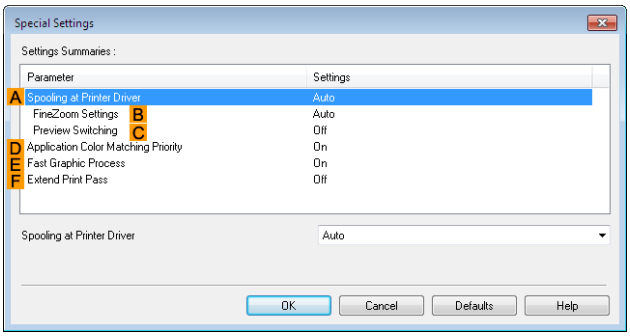


Note

- If you specify the same position for multiple items, the items are printed from left to right in this order: date, user name, and page number.
- When you print multiple pages per sheet using **Page Layout Printing** or similar functions, these items will be printed for each page.

Special Settings Dialog Box

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.



Note

- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Special Settings**. (See "Layout Sheet .") ➔P.185
- Click the processing method for **Parameter** within the **Settings Summaries** frame to display a list of the setting details under the frame.

• A Spooling at Printer Driver

Sets whether or not print jobs are spooled in the printer driver and processed by PageComposer.
Printing results may be improved in some cases by setting this to **No** or **No (EMF Spooling)**.

Note

- When set to **No** or **No (EMF Spooling)**, functions such as **Page Layout**, **Watermark**, **Reverse Order**, **Page Options**, **FineZoom Settings**, and **Preview Switching**can no longer be used.

• B FineZoom Settings

This function is used in large-format printing.
If it is set to **Yes**, problems in the printing may be improved.
If it is set to **No**, image distortions such as fine lines disappearing may be improved.

• C Preview Switching

When this setting is turned on, PageComposer starts when printing is performed with the **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box selected in the **Main** sheet.

• D Application Color Matching Priority

When this is on, you can give applications priority in color management.

• E Fast Graphic Process

Turning this setting on may help produce the expected results if image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses.

Note

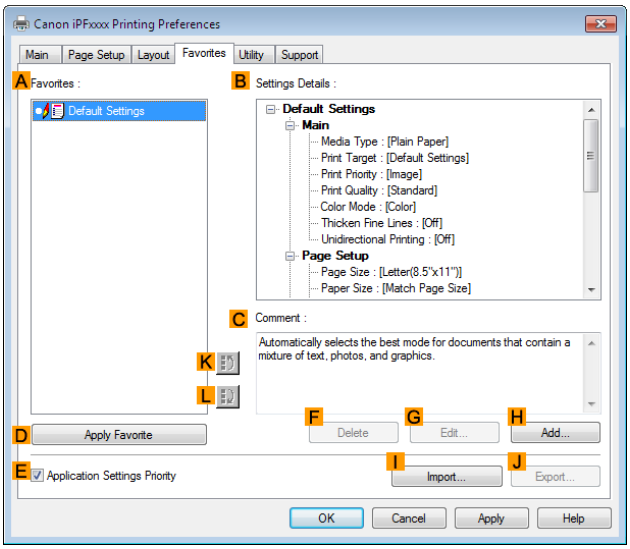
- This function cannot be used on 64-bit version of Windows.

• F Extend print pass

If you are concerned about uneven colors in the print result of **Highest quality**, selecting this option may improve printing results. However, printing may take longer.

Favorites Sheet

The following settings are available on the **Favorites** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



- **A Favorites**

  Printing favorites you have created are listed with **Default Settings** favorites.

  - **Using Favorites** →P.153

- **B Settings Details**

  Displays details of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites**.

- **C Comment**

  Displays notes registered in the favorite.

- **D Apply Favorite**

  Click to change the current print settings to those of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites**.

- **E Application Settings Priority**

  Activate this setting to use settings values specified in the source application in preference to favorite settings selected in the **A Favorites**, when clicking **D Apply Favorite**. For details on the settings items used in preference, refer to the printer driver help.

- **F Delete**

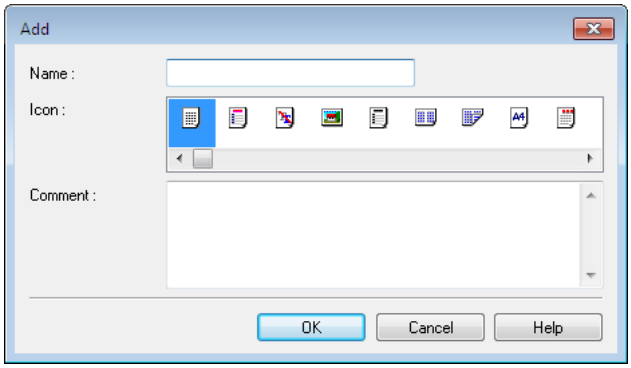
  Click to delete the selected favorite from the **A Favorites** list.

- **G Edit**

  Click to display the **Edit** dialog box, which enables you to change the name and icon for the favorite selected in the **A Favorites** list.

- **H Add**

  Click to display the **Add** dialog box, which enables you to add the current print settings as a favorite.



- **I Import**

  Click to display the **Open** dialog box, which enables you to import favorite settings saved as a file.

- **J Export**

  Click to display the **Save As** dialog box, which enables you to save the favorite settings as a file.

- **K Up**

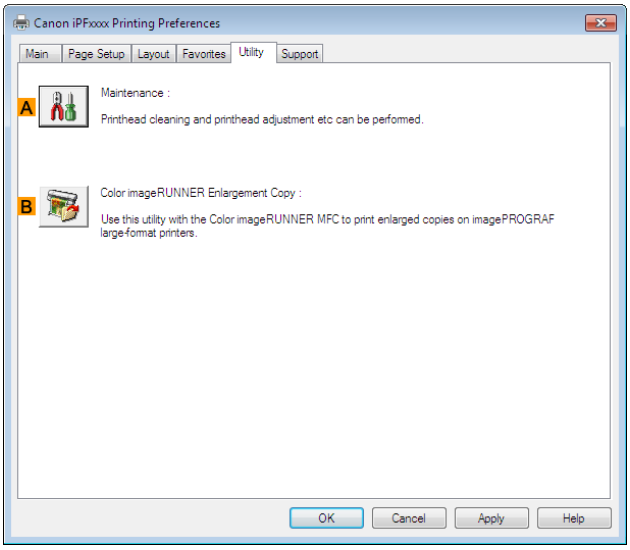
  Click to move the selected favorite up in the **A Favorites** list.

- **L Down**

  Click to move the selected favorite down in the **A Favorites** list.

Utility Sheet

The following items can be executed on the **Utility** sheet. For details on the utilities, refer to the relevant utility help.



- **A Maintenance**

  Click to start the **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**, which offers the following maintenance for the printer.

  - Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) check
  - Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning
  - Head alignment adjustment
  - Feed amount adjustment

- **B Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**

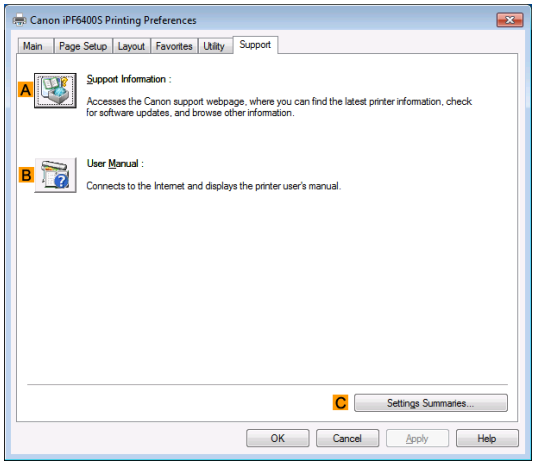
  Click to launch **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy), which enables you to create hot folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** and assign print settings to hot folders.

  - **Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER** ➔P.236

  For details, see **"Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy."** ➔P.227

Support Sheet

On the **Support** sheet, you can view support information and the user's manual.



- **A Support Information**

  Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.

- **B User Manual**

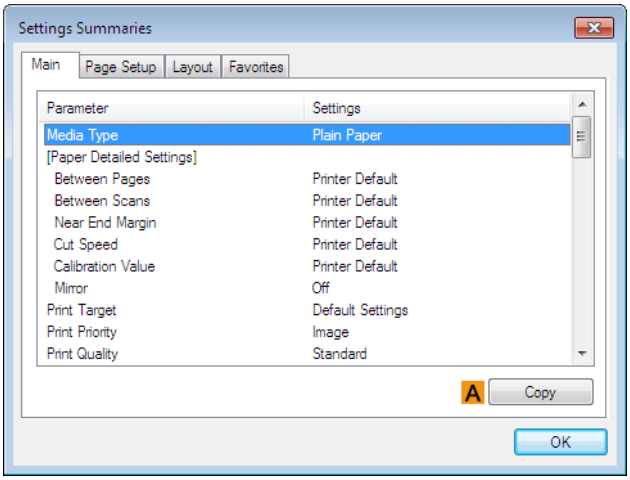
  Click to connect to the Internet and display the printer user's manual.

- **C Settings Summaries**

  Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.

Settings Summaries Dialog Box

The **Settings Summaries** dialog box enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.

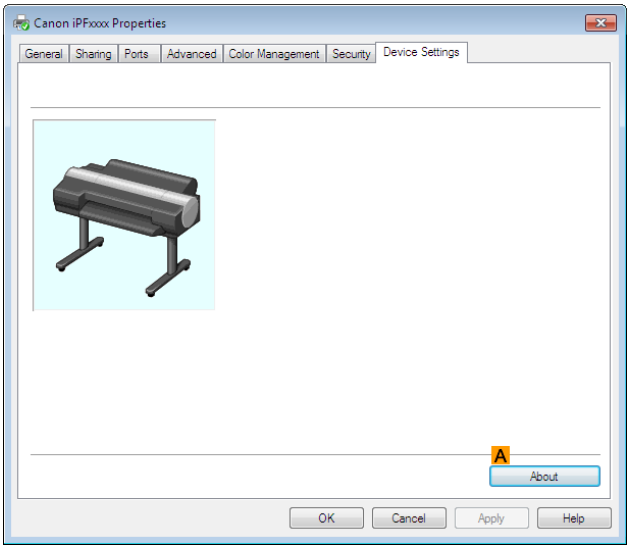


- **A Copy**

  Click to copy the settings information to the clipboard. You can paste the settings information into a file created with a text editor or similar application.

Device Settings Sheet

Many settings items on the printer properties sheets are controlled by Windows applications. However, the **Device Settings** sheet is for configuring the printer, and it is an extension of the printer driver.
The following settings are available on the **Device Settings** sheet.



- **A About**

  You can display version information for the printer driver.

Preview

The Features of Preview 193
Starting Preview 193

Preview Main Window 195
Dialog Area 197

Enlarge/Reduce the screen display 198
Moving a Page 198
Using the ruler 198
Priority setting for rotating 90 degrees 199
Printing with Selecting the Layout 200
Print on the Center 202
Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom 203

The Features of Preview

The main features of Preview are as follows.

- While viewing this screen, you can adjust layout settings of a document created with application software.
- You can not only adjust layout settings but also your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen, and you can print the preview screen as it is seen.

Note
- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Preview settings.

Starting Preview

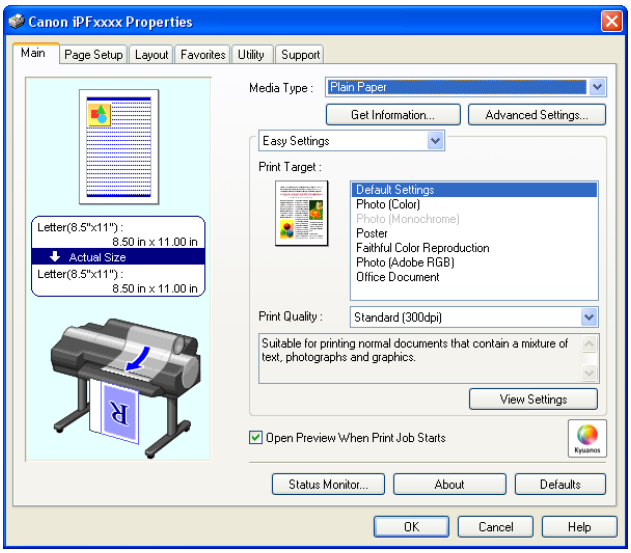
Follow the procedure below to start the Preview.

1 Start the apllication software which you use.

2 From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

Note
- Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

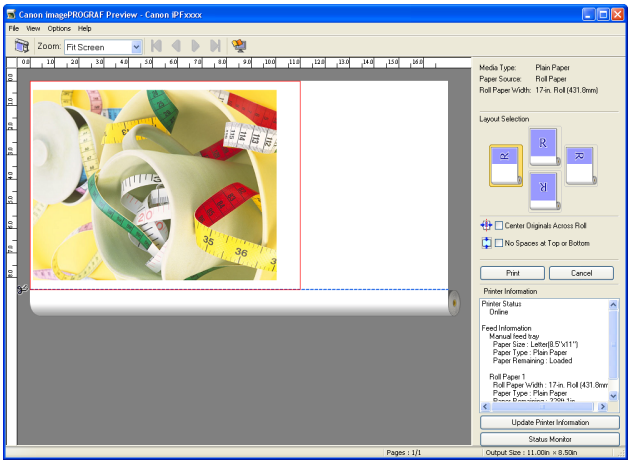
3 On the **Main** sheet, click on the **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.
Click the **OK** button to save the settings.



Note
- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

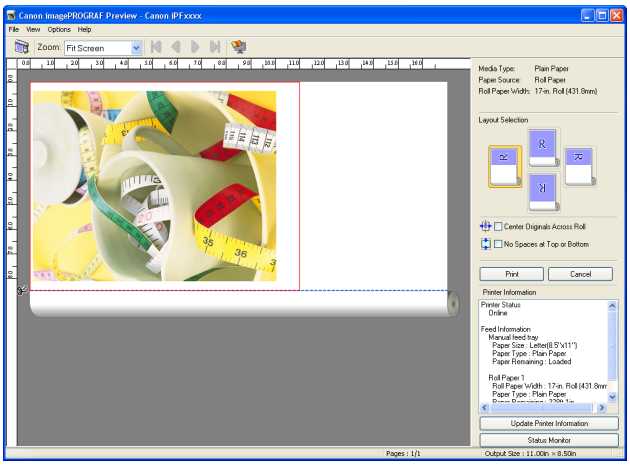
4 On the **Print** dialog box in the apllication software, click the **Print** button.

5 Preview main window is displayed.



Preview Main Window

The Preview main window consists of the menu and tool bars, preview and dialog area and status bar.

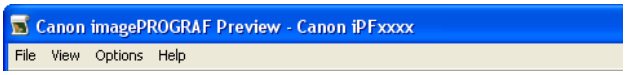


Note

- You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool bar.

- Menu Bar

  This allows you to select menus required for operations.

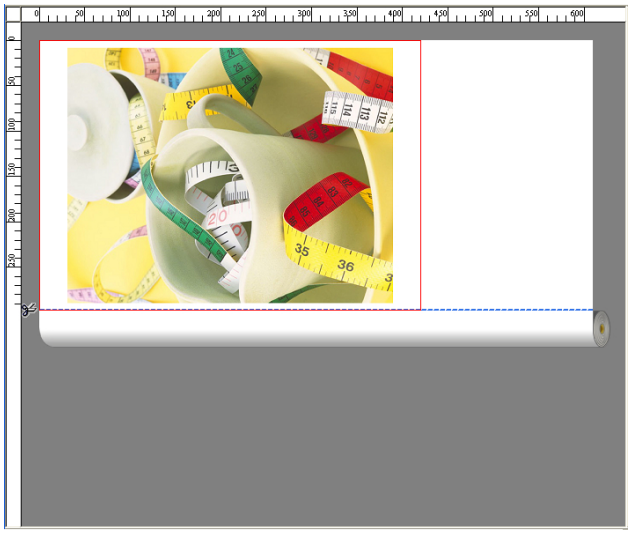


- Tool Bar

  This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.

- Preview Area

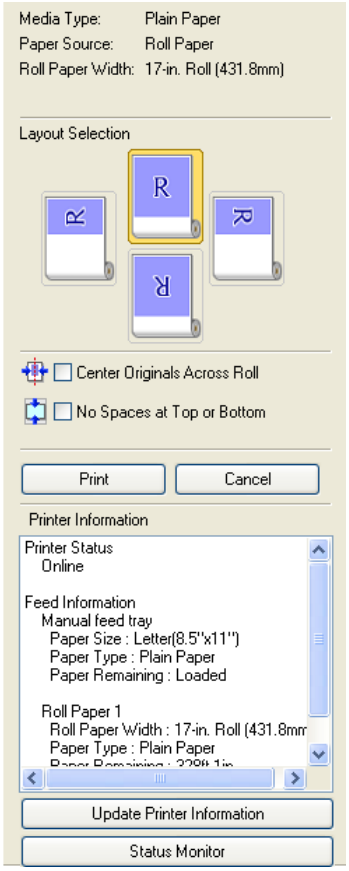
  You can check the settings you made in this area.



- Dialog Area

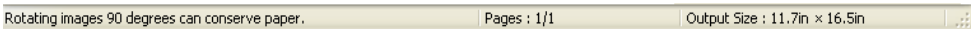
This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job.

For more information about Dialog Area, see "**Dialog Area**." ➔P.197



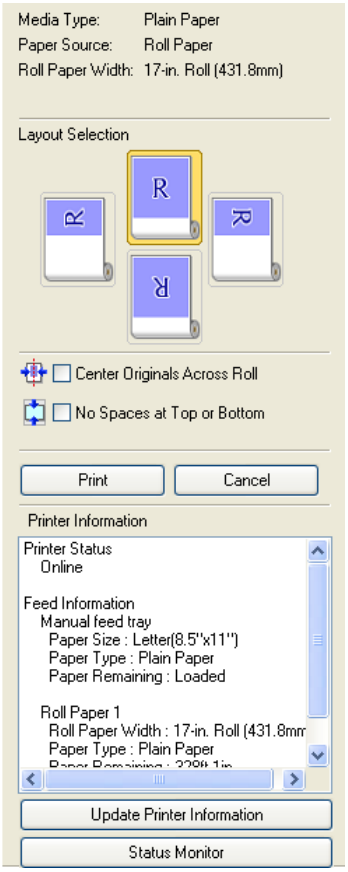
- Status Bar

This shows the message, **Pages** and **Output Size**.



Dialog Area

You can select the layout and print on the center.



- **Media Type**/**Paper Source**/Paper Size

  You can confirm the information that is set.

- **Layout Selection**

  You can print which conserves paper by selecting the layout.

  For more information about **Layout Selection**, see "**Printing with Selecting the Layout.**" ➔P.200

- **Center Originals Across Roll**

  You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

  For more information about **Center Originals Across Roll**, see "**Print on the Center.**" ➔P.202

  Note

  - Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**

  You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

  For more information about **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**, see "**Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom.**" ➔P.203

  Note

  - Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Print** Button

  Click the button to start printing.

- **Cancel** Button
  Click the button to stop printing.
- **Printer Information**
  You can confirm the information acquired from the printer.
- **Update Printer Information** Button
  Click the button to update the printer information with connecting to the printer.
- **Status Monitor** Button
  Click the button to start **Status Monitor**.

Enlarge/Reduce the screen display

You can enlarge or reduce the screen display when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu.

Setting	Details
Fit Screen	Display all.
Fit to Width	Display to the width of the paper.
Reduce	Display at half of the standard size.
Standard	Display at the standard size.
Enlarge	Display with the double of the standard size.
Enlarge More	Display with the triple of the standard size.

Note
- This item can be selected even if you have clicked the ▼ button in the toolbar **Zoom**.

Moving a Page

You can move a page to display when you select **Go to Page** from the **View** menu.

Setting	Details
First Page	Go to the first page.
Previous Page	Go to the previous page.
Next Page	Go to the next page.
Last Page	Go to the last page.
Go To Page	Go to the specified page.

Note
- You can also move a page by clicking on the tool bar.

Using the ruler

You can confirm the layout with using the ruler.

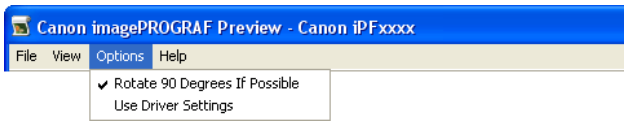
- Switching the ruler Show/Hide
  In the **View** menu, select **Ruler** to switch the ruler Show/Hide.

- Changing the ruler unit
  You can set the ruler unit when you select **Units** from the **View** menu.

Setting	Details
mm	Use mm as the ruler unit.
inch	Use inches as the ruler unit.

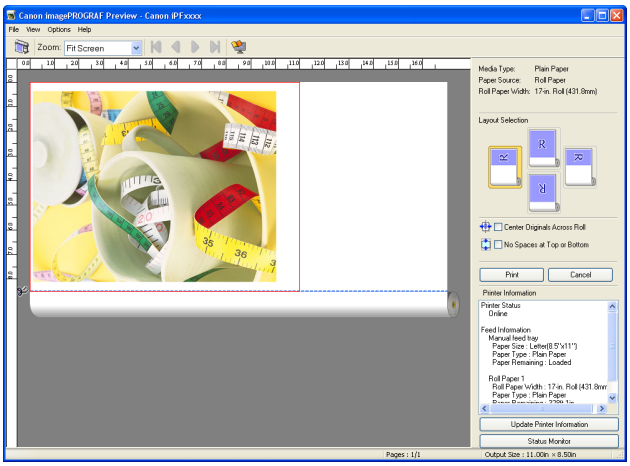
Priority setting for rotating 90 degrees

You can select **Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible** or **Use Driver Settings** from the **Options** menu.

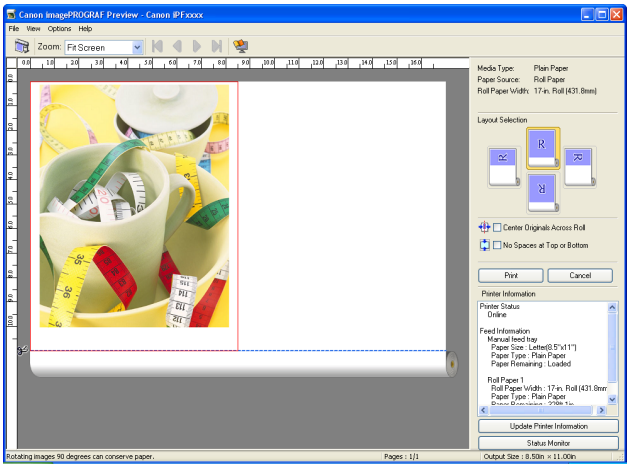


Setting	Details
Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible	Rotates pages in portrait orientation 90 degrees before printing. Pages are only rotated if they can fit lengthwise across the roll.
Use Driver Settings	Follows printer driver settings when determining whether to rotate pages.

Selecting **Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible** or Placing a checkmark for **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** on the printer driver



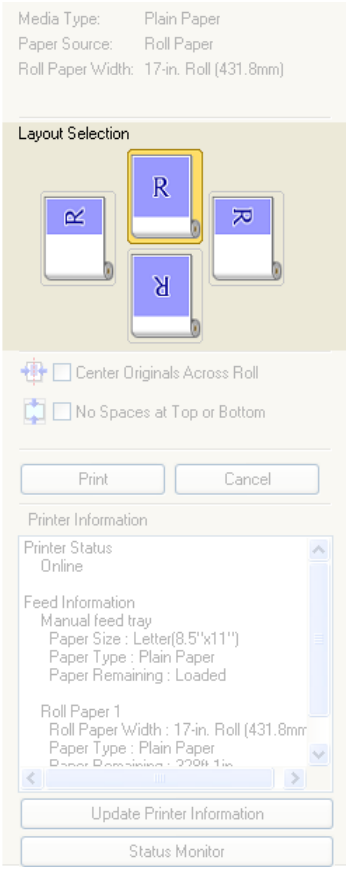
Selecting **Use Driver Settings**



Printing with Selecting the Layout

You can print which conserves paper by selecting the layout.

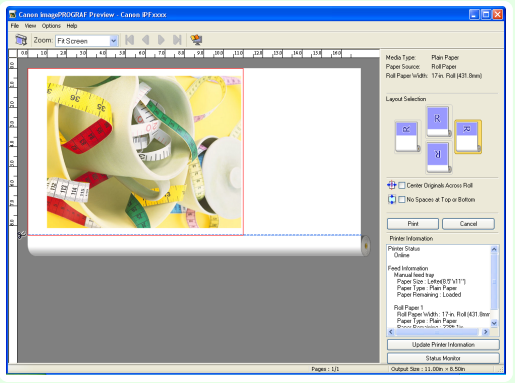
1 In **Layout Selection**, click the layout button to use.



Button	Details
Upper Button	Turn at the position of .
Right Button	Turn at the position of .
Left Button	Turn at the position of .
Lower Button	Turn at the position of .

Note

- **Right Button** or **Left Button** can be selected only when the rotated pages can fit lengthwise across the roll.
- By clicking **Right Button** or **Left Button**, you can save paper by printing in landscape orientation on roll paper.
- You can select only **Upper Button** or **Lower Button** if **Cut Sheet** is selected.



Button	Details
	The button is selected currently.
	The button can be selected.
	The button can not be selected.

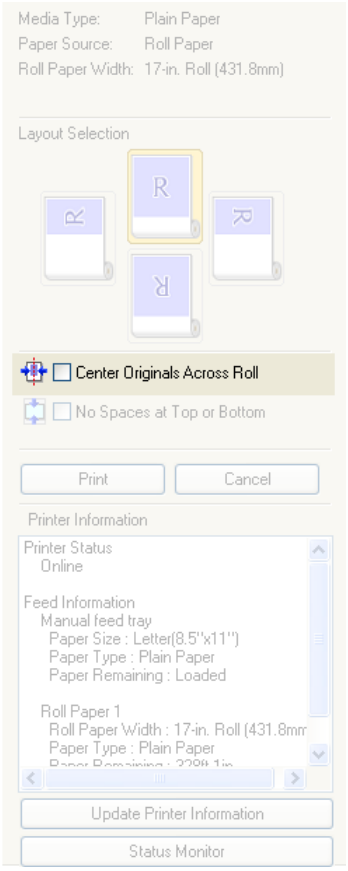
2 Click the **Print** button.

Printing on the selected layout begins.

Print on the Center

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

1 Click the **Center Originals Across Roll** check box on.



2 Click the **Print** button.

Printing on the center begins.

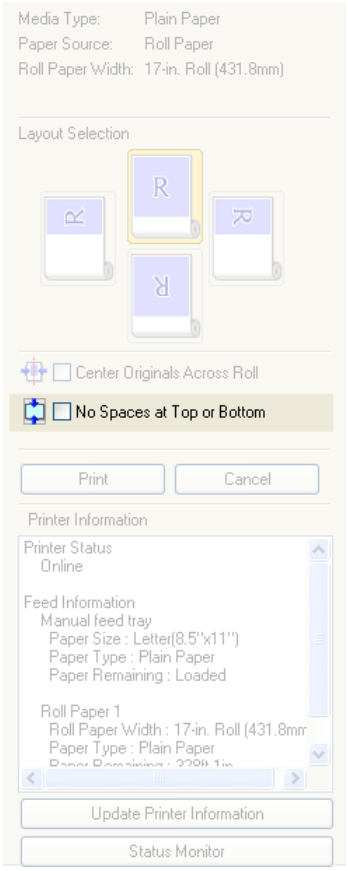
Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom

You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

1 Click the **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box on.



2 Click the **Print** button.

Printing on the settings with no spaces at top or bottom begins.

Free Layout

The Features of Free Layout 204
Starting Free Layout 205

Free Layout Main Window 206
Detailed Settings 207
Preferences Dialog Box 208
Page Options Dialog Box 209
Zoom Dialog Box 210
Format Dialog Box 210

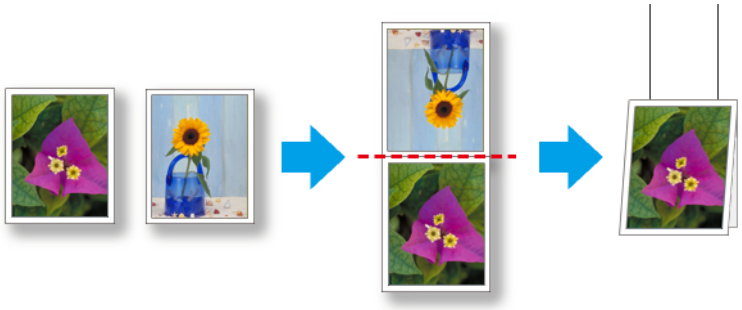
Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page 212
Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page 214
Selecting an Object 217
Changing the Object Size 217
Moving an Object 218
Rotating an Object 218
Laying out Objects Automatically 219
Aligning Objects 219
Changing the Object Overlapping Order 221
Pasting a Copied or Cut Object 222

Folded Duplex Window 223
Finished Size Settings Dialog Box 224
Binding Settings Dialog Box 225
Prints using Folded Duplex 226

The Features of Free Layout

The main features of Free Layout are as follows.

- Allows you to lay out at will and print a document created with application software.
- You can not only lay out multiple pages on one page but also lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page, or lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.
- Any two pages can be arranged and printed in a layout that becomes duplex on folding.
  This can be used such as for advertising posters that are suspended from the ceiling.



Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Free Layout settings.

Starting Free Layout

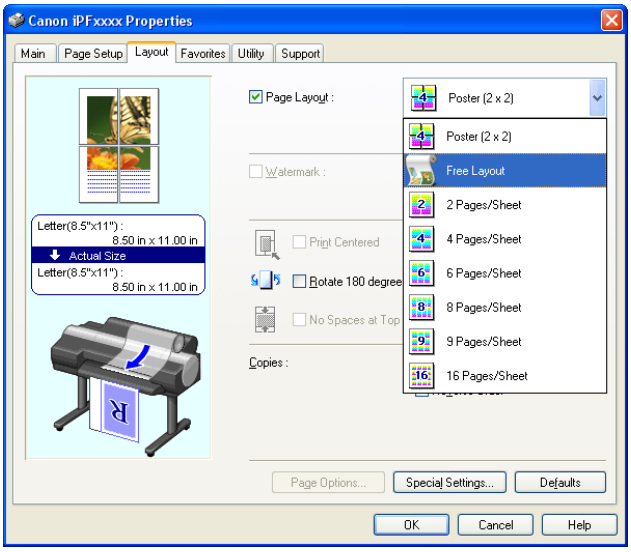
Follow the procedure below to start the Free Layout.

1. Start the apllication software which you use.

2. From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

Note
- Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

3. From the list, select the printer and select the **Layout** sheet.

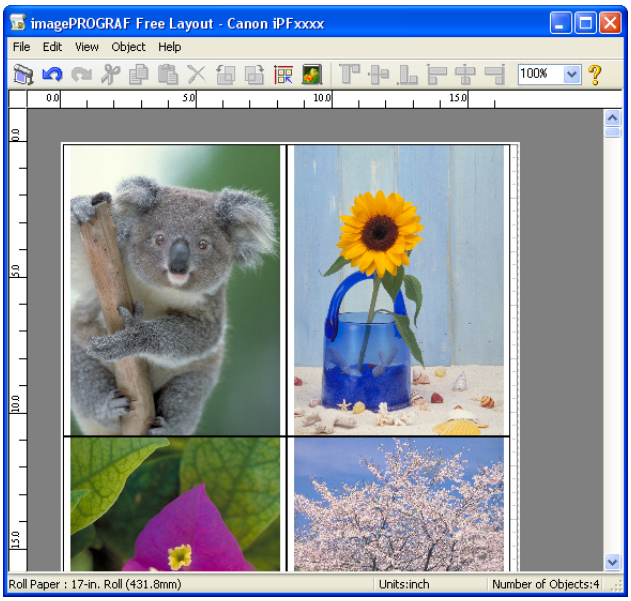


Note
- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

4. In the **Layout** sheet, click on the **Page Layout** check box and select Free Layout from the list. Click the **OK** button to save the settings.

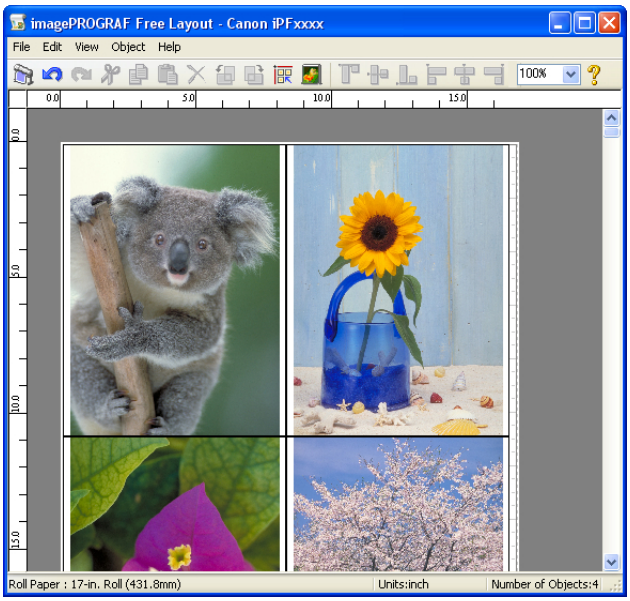
Note
- When you select Free Layout, all other setting items will be disabled.

5 On the **Print** dialog box in the apllication software, click the **Print** button.
Free Layout main window is displayed.



Free Layout Main Window

The Free Layout main window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and status bar.



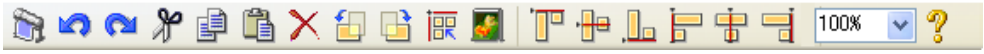
Note
- You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool and status bar.

- Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.

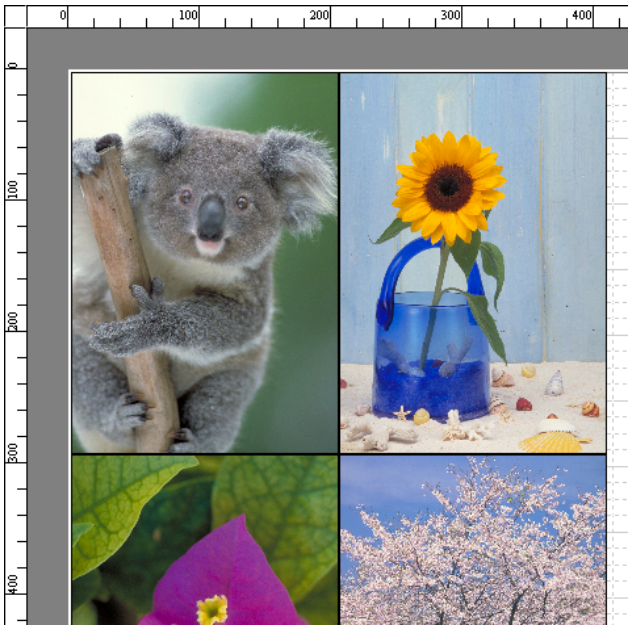
- **Tool Bar**

  This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



- **Layout Area**

  This allows you to lay out objects and edit the object size and orientation.

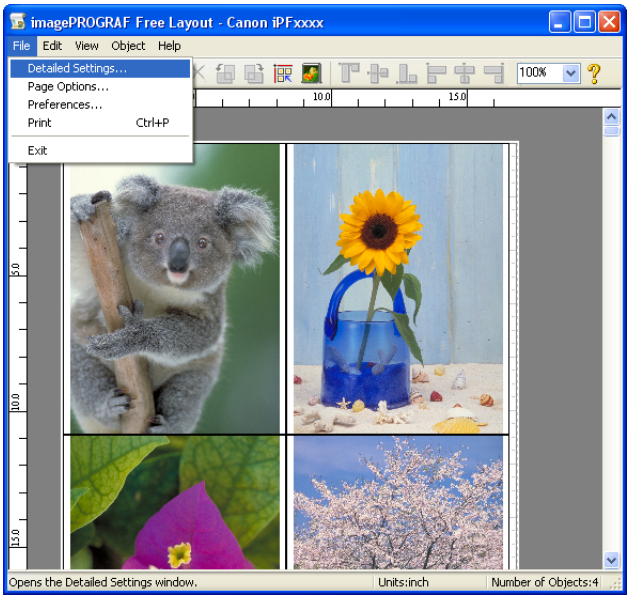


- **Status Bar**

  This shows the paper size, unit of length, and number of objects.

Detailed Settings

The printer driver opens when you select **Detailed Settings** from the **File** menu. The printer driver is used to configure basic settings to match the type of media loaded in the printer.

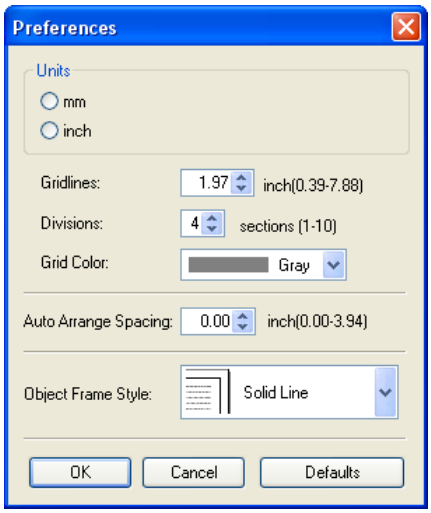


Refer to "**Printer Driver**" ➔P.158 for details on the printer driver.

Note
- When you select the **Detailed Settings**, the only three sheets displayed are the **Main** sheet, the **Page Setup** sheet, and the**Layout** sheet. Some of the printer driver settings may be disabled.

Preferences Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Preferences** from the **File** menu. This allows you to configure the preferences of Free Layout.



- **Units**

  Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

- **Gridlines**

  You can input a grid line width value in numerical characters so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.

  Note
  - You can input between 10.0 and 200.0(mm) (between 0.39 and 7.88(inch)).
  - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Divisions**

  You can change the number of divisions of grid lines so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.

  Note
  - You can input between 1 and 10.
  - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Grid Color**

  Select the grid line color.

- **Auto Arrange Spacing**

  Change the object-to-object spacing to be applied in the operation of laying out objects automatically.

  Note
  - You can input between 0.0 and 100.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 3.94(inch)).
  - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Object Frame Style**

  You can select the object frame style for printing.

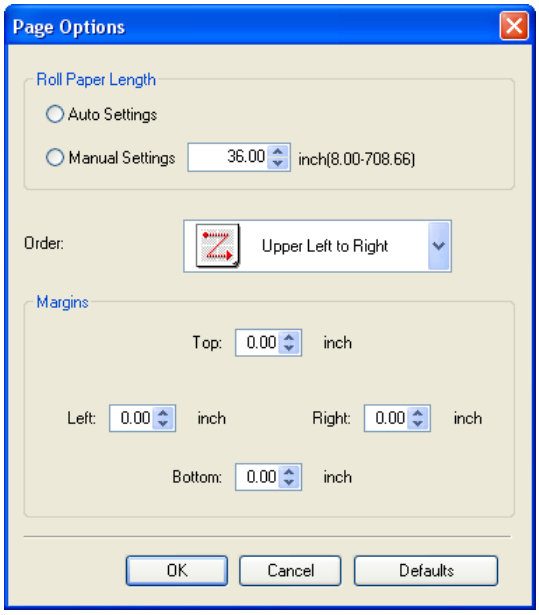
  The following settings are available for the object frame style.

Setting	Details
None	You can print with no frame style.

Setting	Details
Solid Line	You can print the solid line as the frame style.
Dotted Line	You can print the dotted line as the frame style.
Dashed Line	You can print the dashed line as the frame style.
Crop Marks	You can print with the crop marks.

Page Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Page Options** from the **File** menu. This allows you to configure the roll paper length, object layout order, and margins of Free Layout.



- **Roll Paper Length**

Set the length of one page to print on roll paper.

The following settings are available for roll paper length.

Setting	Details
Auto Settings	The one-page length to be printed on roll paper is automatically set so that the laid-out objects are printed on one page.
Manual Settings	You can input the length of one page to print on roll paper in numerical characters.

Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
- You can input between 203.2 and 18000.0(mm) (between 8.00 and 708.66(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Order**

Set the object layout order.

The following settings are available for order.

Setting	Details
Upper Left to Right	The objects are laid out from upper left to right.
Upper Left to Bottom	The objects are laid out from upper left to bottom.
Upper Right to Left	The objects are laid out from upper right to left.
Lower Left to Top	The objects are laid out from lower left to top.

Note
- When you have selected **Roll Paper Length** > **Auto Settings** and **Paper Orientation** > **Vertical**, you can choose **Upper Left to Right** or **Upper Right to Left**.
- When you have selected **Roll Paper Length** > **Auto Settings** and **Paper Orientation** > **Horizontal**, you can choose **Upper Left to Bottom** or **Lower Left to Top**.

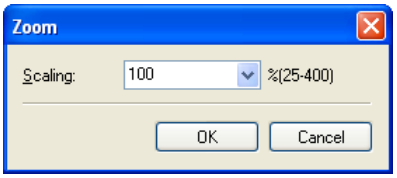
- **Margins**

You can input the paper margins in numerical characters.

Note
- You can input between 0.0 and 50.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 1.97(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Zoom Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.



- **Scaling**

Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.

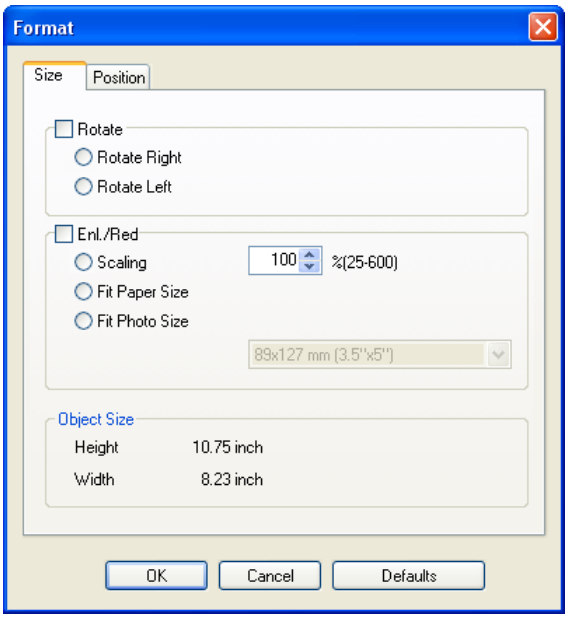
Note
- You can input between 25 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking ▼ button.

Format Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Format** from the **Object** menu after you select an object.

Size Sheet

You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.



Note
- When the objects are not selected, you can not select **Format**.

- **Rotate**

When you place a checkmark here, you can select **Rotate Right** or **Rotate Left**.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right	Rotates the object 90 degrees clockwise.
Rotate Left	Rotates the object 90 degrees counterclockwise.

Note
- When several objects are selected, you cannot select **Rotate**.

- **Enl./Red.**

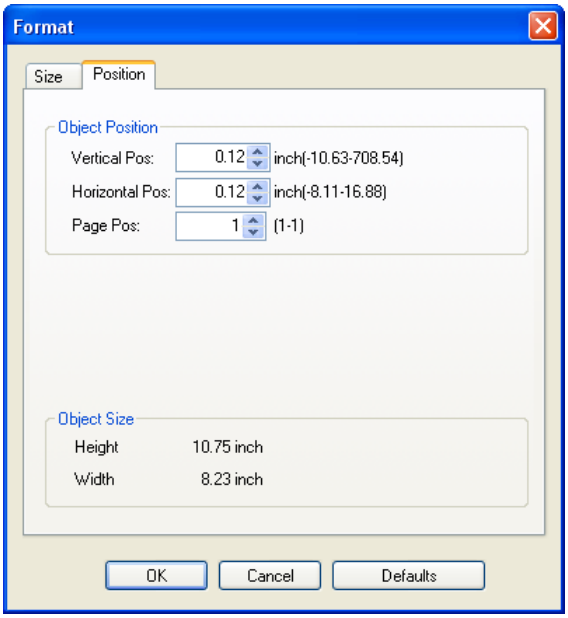
When you place a checkmark here, you can select **Scaling**, **Fit Paper Size**, or **Fit Photo Size**.

Setting	Details
Scaling	Allows you to input the value of the enlargement or reduction ratio of an object.
Fit Paper Size	Prints by enlarging or reducing each object to match the paper size. If you are using roll paper, objects are enlarged or reduced so that the width of each object matches the width of the roll paper.
Fit Photo Size	Prints all of the objects at the specified photo size.

Note
- You can input between 25 and 600.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Position Sheet

You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.



Note
- When the objects are not selected, you can not select **Format**.

- **Object Position**

You can move the object position by changing the values.

Setting	Details
Vertical Pos	You can input the number of the vertical position in numerical characters.
Horizontal Pos	You can input the number of the horizontal position in numerical characters.
Page Pos	You can input the number of the page position in numerical characters.

- **Object Size**

You can confirm the object size.

Note

- When several objects are selected, you cannot display **Object Size**.

Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page

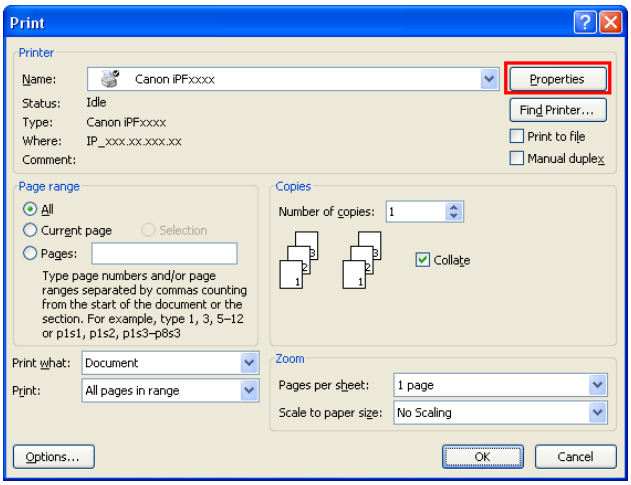
You can lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page.

1 From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

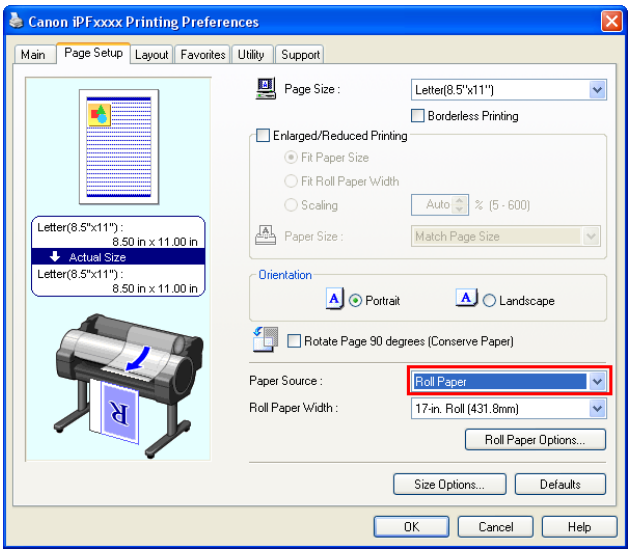
Note

- Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

2 Click **Properties** to open the **Properties** dialog box.

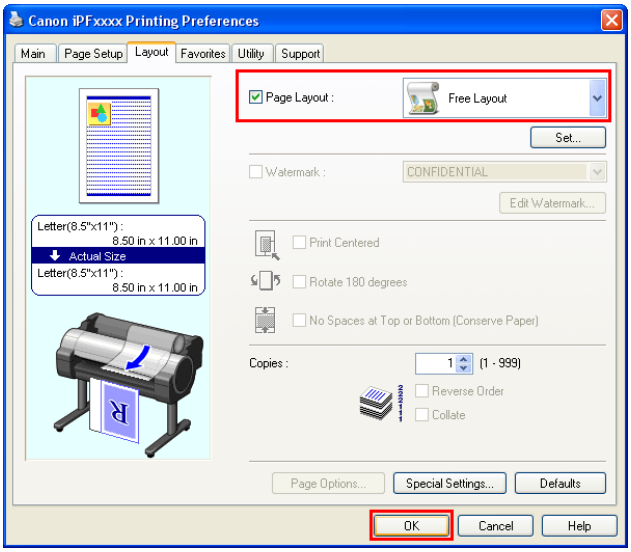


3 In the **Page Setup** sheet, select **Paper Source**.



Note
- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

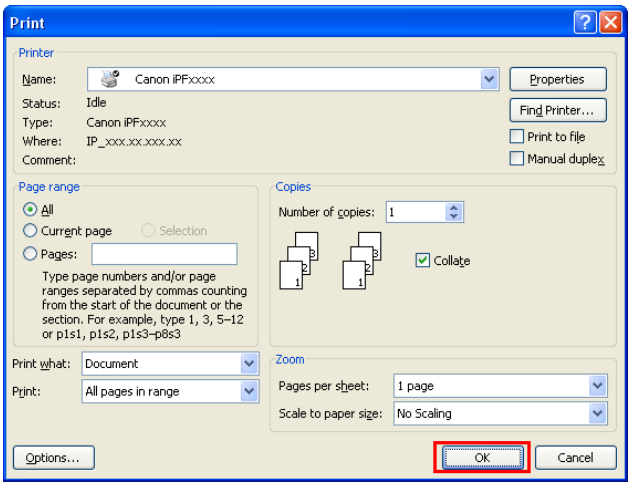
4 In the **Layout** sheet, click on the **Page Layout** check box and select Free Layout from the list.



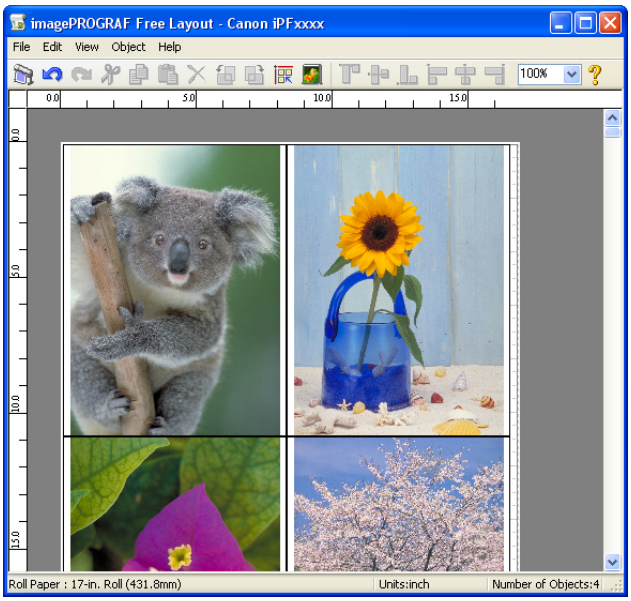
Note
- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.
- When you select Free Layout, all other setting items will be disabled.

5 Click the **OK** button to save the settings.

6 In the **Print** dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the **OK** button.



Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.



7 Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with the application software and repeat the above steps.

Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page

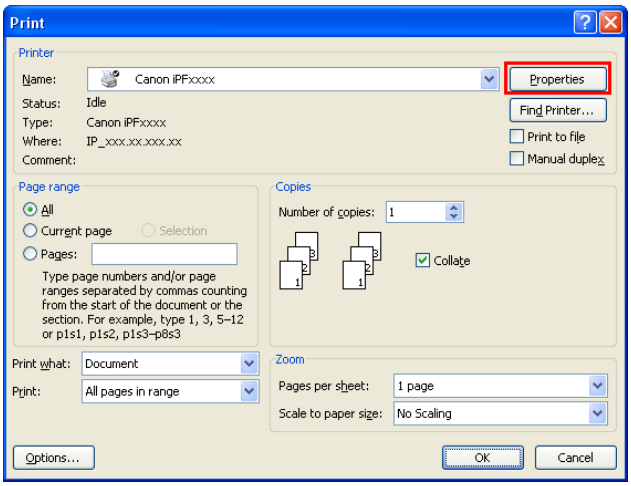
You can lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.

1 From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

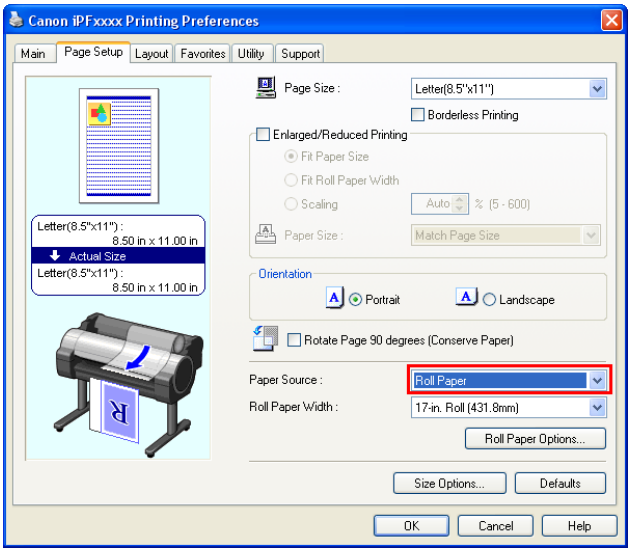
Note

- Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

2 Click **Properties** to open the **Properties** dialog box.



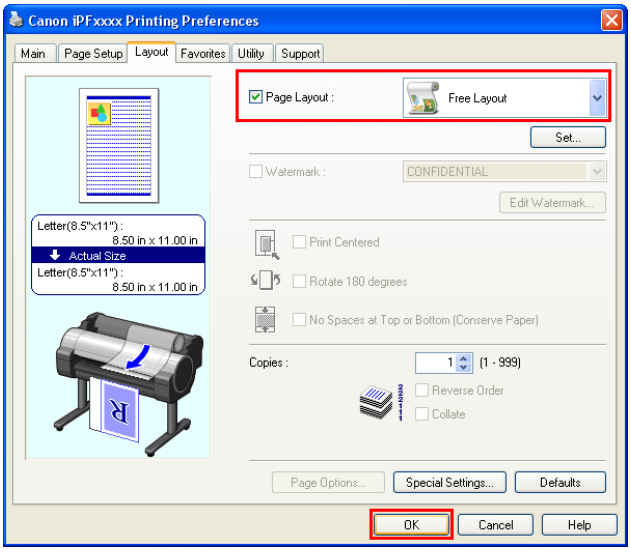
3 In the **Page Setup** sheet, select **Paper Source**.



Note

- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

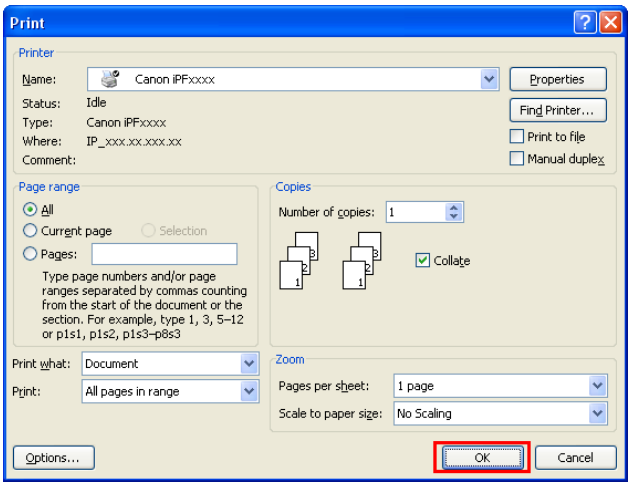
4 In the **Layout** sheet, click on the **Page Layout** check box and select Free Layout from the list.



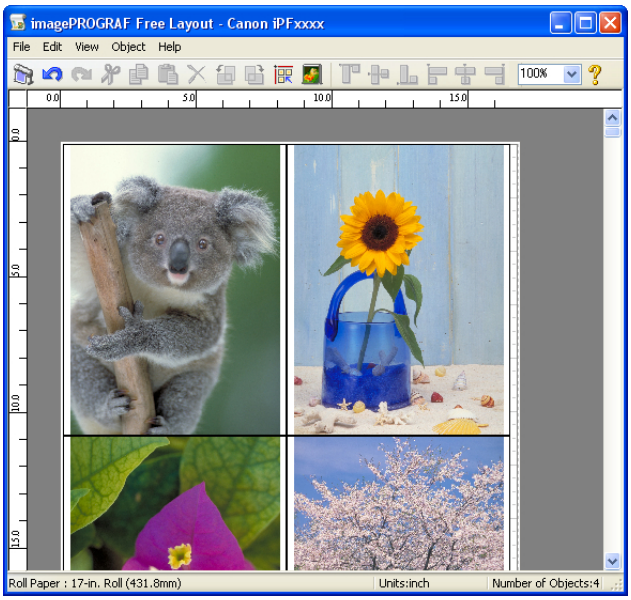
Note
- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.
- When you select Free Layout, all other setting items will be disabled.

5 Click the **OK** button to save the settings.

6 In the **Print** dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the **OK** button.



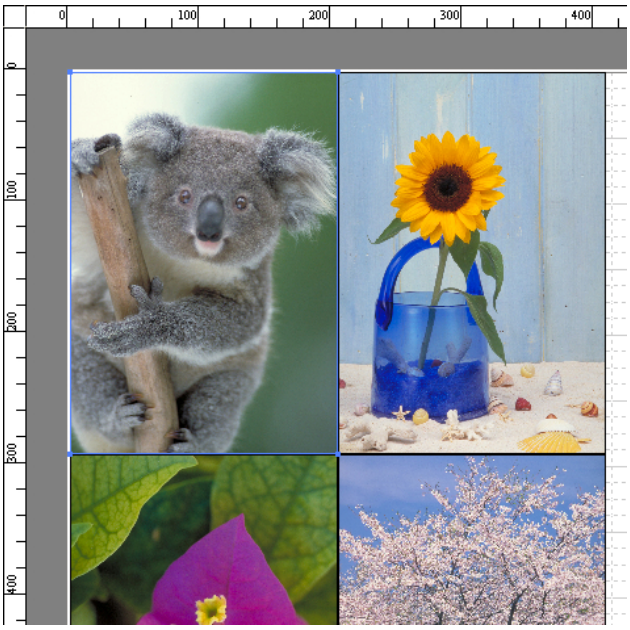
Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.



7 Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with other application software and repeat the above steps.

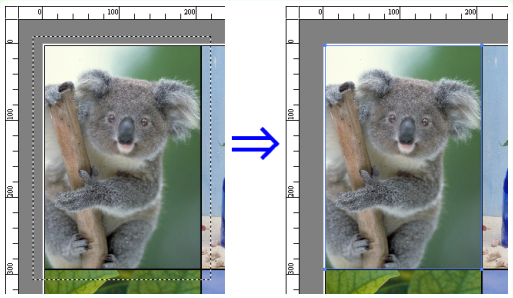
Selecting an Object

When an object is selected, a select box (blue border) appears around the object.



Note

- To select an object, click that object.
- To select multiple successive objects, click them while holding down the Shift key.
- To select multiple arbitrary objects, click them while holding down the Ctrl key.
- To select all objects, select **Select All** from the **Edit** menu.
- When you specify the area with dragging the mouse, the object in the area is selected.



Changing the Object Size

You can change the object size by means of mouse operation or by specifying a scaling value.

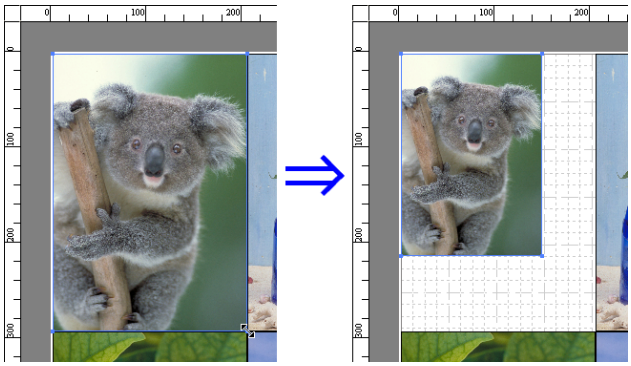
Note

- The vertical-to-horizontal ratio remains unchanged when the object is enlarged or reduced.

Resizing by means of mouse operation

1 Select an object.

2 Place the pointer at a corner of the selection box around the object to show the arrow handle, and drag this handle to change the object size.



Resizing by specifying a scaling value

1 Select an object.
Click on the **Enl./Red.** checkbox in the **Format Dialog Box** ➔P.210 and select **Scaling**.

2 You either enter numbers directly.

Note
- You can input between 25 and 600.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

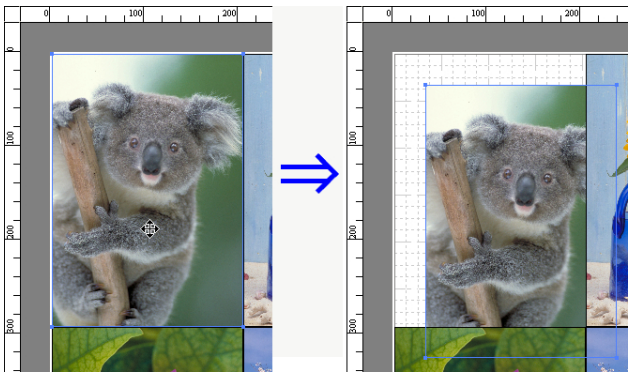
3 Click the **OK** button.

Moving an Object

You can move the object position.

1 Select an object.

2 Place the pointer inside the selection box of the object to show the crosshair handle, and drag it to move the object.
Alternatively, you can move the **Object Position** by changing the values in **Vertical Pos**, **Horizontal Pos** and **Page Pos** in the **Format Dialog Box** ➔P.210 .

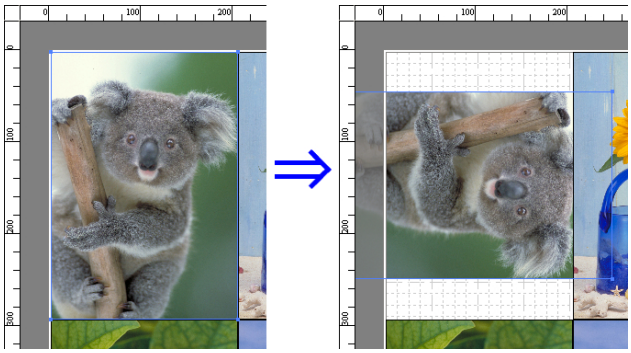


Rotating an Object

You can rotate the object.

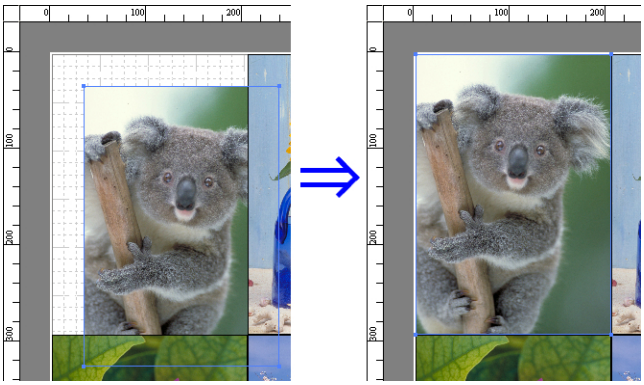
1 Select an object.

2 Select **Rotate Left 90 Degrees** or**Rotate Right 90 Degrees** from the toolbar.
Alternatively, you may click on the **Rotate** check box in the **Format Dialog Box** ➔P.210 then select **Rotate Right** or **Rotate Left**, and click the **OK** button.



Laying out Objects Automatically

Click **Auto Arrange Object** in the tool bar. This automatically lays out objects. Alternatively, you may select **Auto Arrange Object** from the **Object** menu.



Note

- The object layout order varies depending on the **Order** setting in the **Page Options Dialog Box** ➔P.209 dialog box.

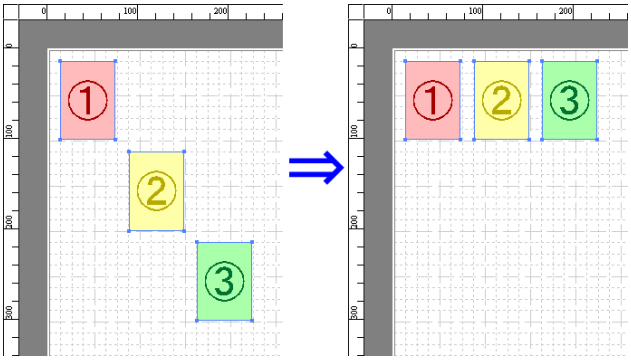
Aligning Objects

You can align objects systematically.

1 Select multiple objects.

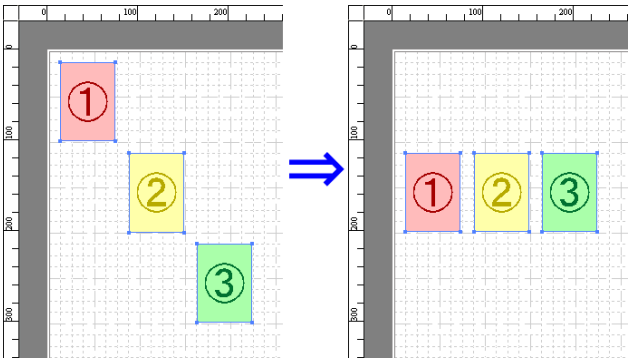
2 Click the align button from the toolbar.
Alternatively, you may select the align menu from the **Object** menu.

- **Align Top**
  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the top.



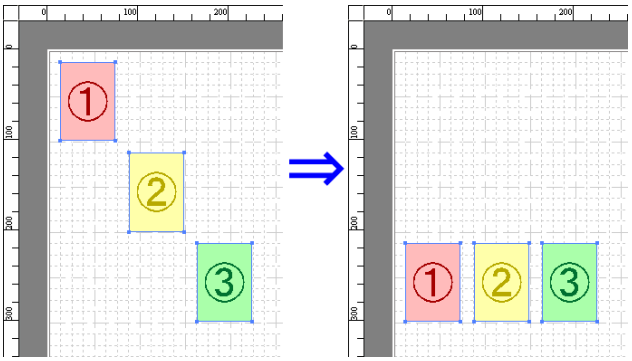
- **Center Vertically**

  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the vertical center.



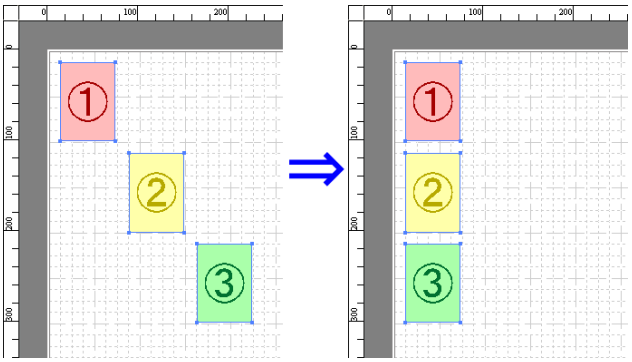
- **Align Bottom**

  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the bottom.



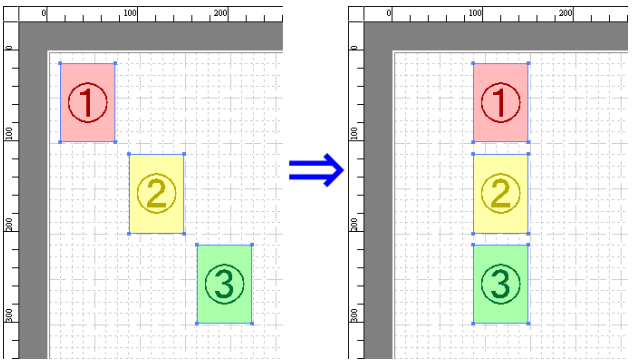
- **Align Left**

  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the left.



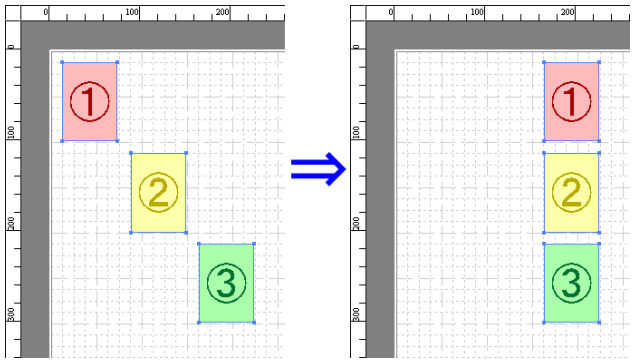
- **Center Horizontally**

  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the horizontal center.



- **Align Right**

  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the right.



Changing the Object Overlapping Order

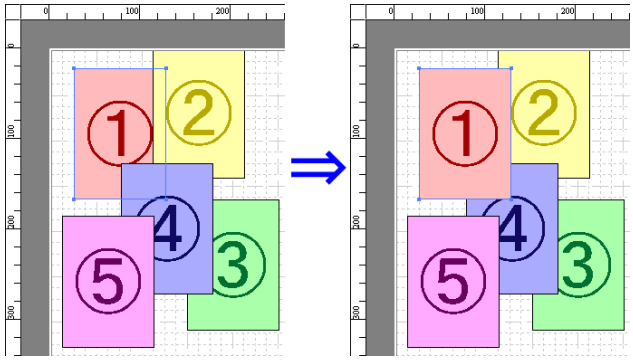
You can change the object overlapping order.

1. Select an object.
2. Select the Overlapping Order menu from the **Object** menu.

Note
- The order of overlapping affects the order of objects automatically laid out.
- You can also select by clicking the right button of the mouse on an object.

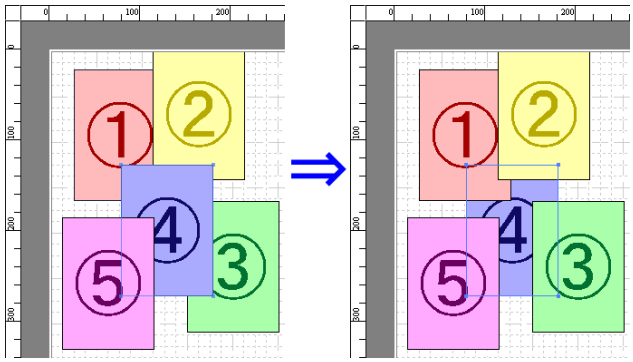
- **Bring to Front**

  Moves the object to the frontmost position.



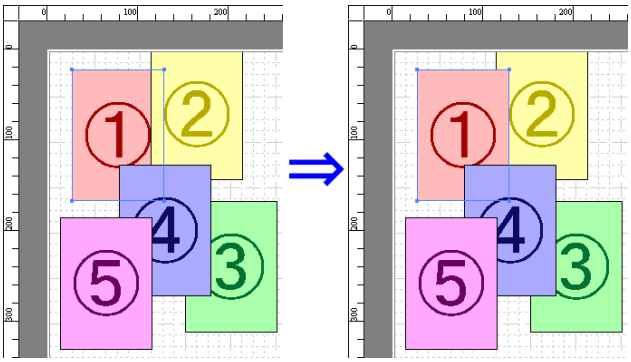
- **Send to Back**

  Moves the object to the backmost position.



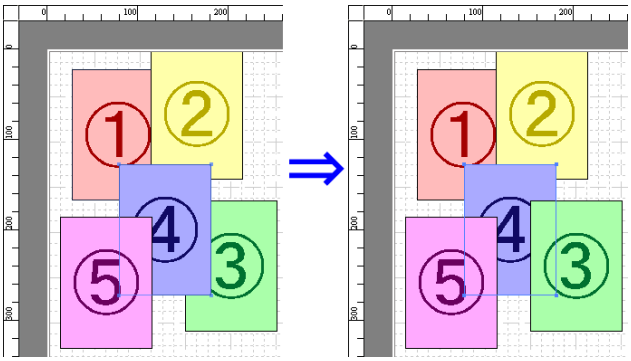
- **Bring Forward**

  Moves the object one position to the front.



- **Send Backward**

  Moves the object one position to the back.



Pasting a Copied or Cut Object

1. Click **Copy** or **Cut** from the toolbar.
   Alternatively, you may select **Copy** or **Cut** from the **Edit** menu.

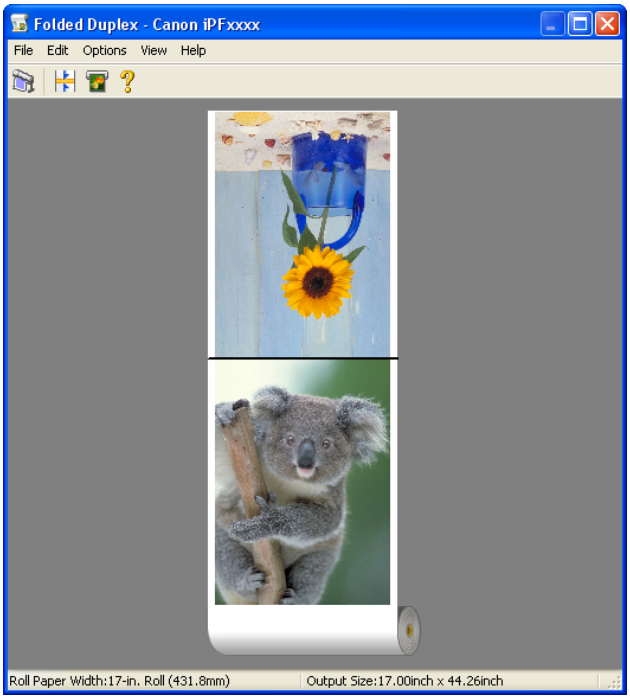
2. Click **Paste** from the toolbar.
   Alternatively, you may select **Paste** from the **Edit** menu.

Note

- The copied or cut object is laid out at the end of the page.
- You can also select by clicking the right button of the mouse on an object.
- In order to paste an object on any position that you like, you can paste the object with **Pointed Paste** by clicking the right button of the mouse on any position that you want.

Folded Duplex Window

This window is displayed if you select **Folded Duplex** from the **Edit** menu after selecting an object. Using the **Folded Duplex** function allows you to print with fold lines added.
The **Folded Duplex** window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and status bar.



Note

- The toolbar and status bar can be toggled between hidden and displayed from the **View** menu.

- Menu Bar

  This allows you to select menus required for operations.

- Tool Bar

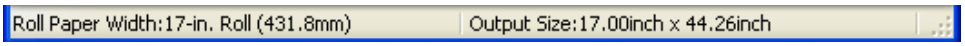
  This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.

- Layout Area

  This allows you to check the arrangement and orientation of objects.

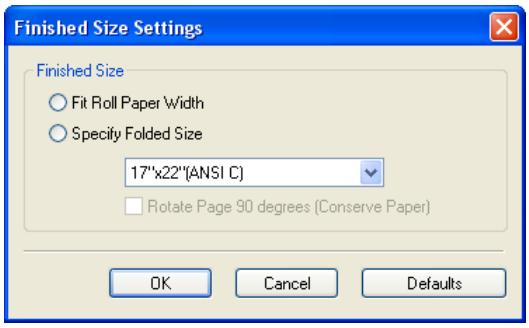
- Status Bar

  This shows the paper source, roll paper width, and output size.



Finished Size Settings Dialog Box

This dialog box is displayed when you select **Finished Size Settings** from the **Edit** menu. This allows you to configure finished size settings.



- **Finished Size**

  Selects the method for setting the finished size.

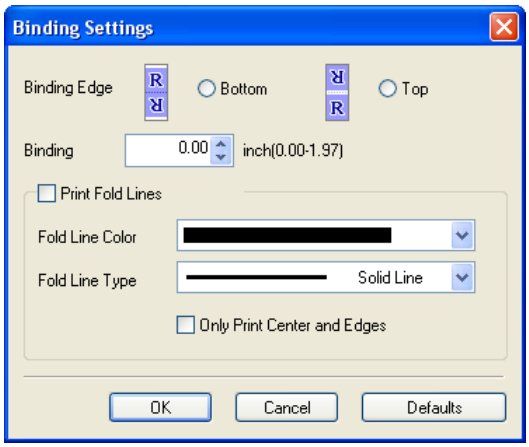
  The following settings are available for the finished size.

Setting	Details
Fit Roll Paper Width	Prints by automatically enlarging or reducing the entire document so that the width of the document matches the roll paper width.
Specify Folded Size	Prints by automatically enlarging or reducing the entire document to match the size of the paper. Select the actual size of the paper you want to print on in **Fit Paper Size**.

Setting	Details
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)	Prints by rotating pages by 90 degrees. Pages are automatically rotated if they will fit within the roll paper width when rotated, and are not rotated if they will not fit within the roll paper width.

Binding Settings Dialog Box

This is displayed when you select **Binding Settings** from the**Edit** menu. This allows you to configure the binding edge settings.



- **Binding Edge**

Configures the binding edge when folding paper.

The following settings are available for the binding edge.

Setting	Details
Bottom	Prints by placing the binding margin (gutter) at the bottom of the document.
Top	Prints by placing the binding margin (gutter) at the top of the document.

- **Binding**

Configures the binding margin (gutter).

Prints by creating a binding margin (gutter) of the specified size. Enter the margin size as a number.

Note
- The values that can be entered are 0 to 50 (mm).

- **Print Fold Lines**

Configures the color and type of fold lines.

Note
- To not print fold lines, clear the **Print Fold Lines** checkbox.

- **Fold Line Color**

You can select the fold lines.

- **Fold Line Type**

You can select the fold lines.

The following settings are available for the fold line type.

Setting	Details
Solid Line	You can print the solid line as the frame style.
Dotted Line	You can print the dotted line as the frame style.

Setting	Details
Dashed Line	You can print the dashed line as the frame style.

- **Only Print Center and Edges**

  To print fold lines at the center and both edges, select the **Only Print Center and Edges** checkbox.

Prints using Folded Duplex

This prints 2 pages consecutively. Folding back the paper at the fold lines of the center substitutes for duplex printing.

1. Select two objects from the layout area of Free Layout.
2. Select **Folded Duplex** from the **Edit** menu of Free Layout.
   Open the **Folded Duplex** window and arrange the selected objects in the layout area.
3. Open the **Finished Size Settings** dialog box from the **Edit** menu.
4. Select **Fit Roll Paper Width** or**Specify Folded Size** in **Finished Size**.

   Note
   - **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** is also available when**Specify Folded Size** is selected.
5. Click **OK** to save the settings.
6. Open the **Binding Settings** dialog box from the **Edit** menu.
7. Select **Bottom** or **Top** in **Binding Edge**.
8. Specify the **Binding** width in **Binding**.
9. Configure the **Fold Line Color** and **Fold Line Type** from **Print Fold Lines**.

   Note
   - When the **Only Print Center and Edges** checkbox is selected, fold lines are only printed at the three locations of the center and both edges.
10. Click **OK** to save the settings.
11. Confirm the print setting and begin printing.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 227
Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 227

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box 228

Hot Folder 229
Creating a New Hot Folder 230
Specifying an Existing Shared Folder as a Hot Folder 233

Setting the Print Parameters 236
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 236

The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The main features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy are as follows.

- Allows the document scanned with the Color imageRUNNER to be automatically enlarged and printed.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.

Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy settings.

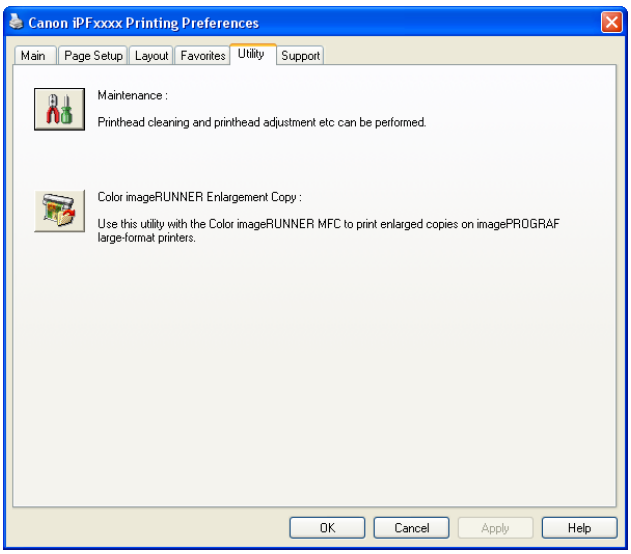
Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

Follow the procedure below to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

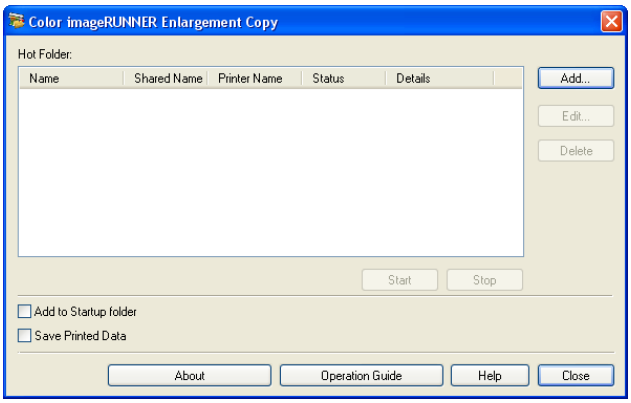
To start by selecting **Printers and Faxes** from the **start** button

1 Open the folder of the OS you are using for configuring printers.
For example, on Windows XP click the **start** button on the desktop, and then select **Printers and Faxes**.

2 Right-click the Printers icon and select **Printing Preferences** to open the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.
In the **Utility** sheet, click the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** button.



3 The **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box displays.

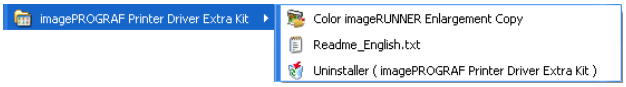


Note

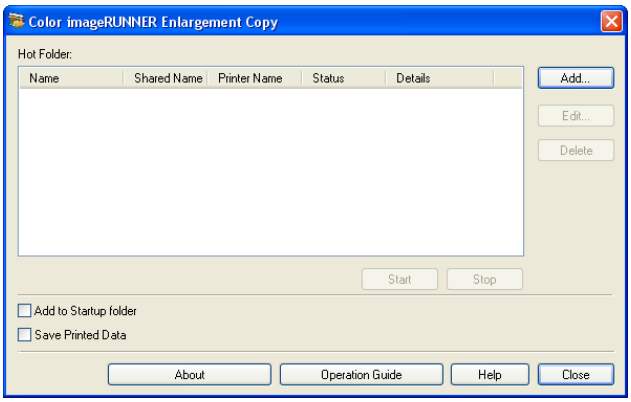
- If you click on the **Add to Startup folder** check box in the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, the icon of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility will appear on the task bar when starting Windows thereafter.

To start by selecting **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** from the **start** button

1 From the Windows **start** button, select **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

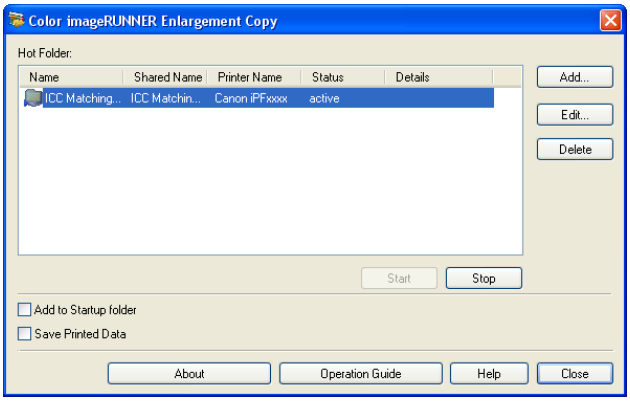


2 The **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box displays.



Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box

The explanation below is on the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



Note
- For the step to open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, see "**Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.**" →P.227

- **Hot Folder**
  The hot folder list appears.
- **Add** Button
  Click the button to open the **Easy Setup Wizard** dialog box so that you can add a hot folder.
- **Edit** Button
  From the **Hot Folder** list, select a hot folder and click the button to open the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box that allows you to edit the hot folder.
- **Delete** Button
  From the **Hot Folder** list, select a hot folder and click the button to delete the hot folder.
- **Start** Button
  Clicking the button changes the status of the selected **inactive** Hot Folder to **active**.
- **Stop** Button
  Clicking the button changes the status of the selected **active** Hot Folder to **inactive**.
- **Add to Startup folder**
  Register the application in the Windows startup menu.
- **Save Printed Data**
  Automatically saves printed data.
- **About** Button
  Click the button to display the name and the version number of the utility.
- **Operation Guide** Button
  Click the button to display the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual**.

Hot Folder

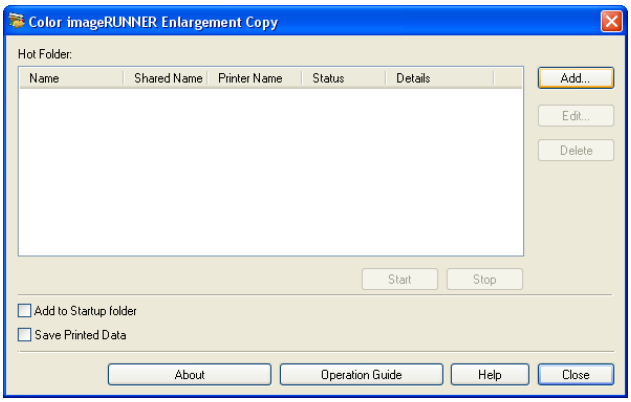
Hot folder refers to a folder used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

- When transferred to the PC's hot folder, the document data scanned with the Color imageRUNNER is printed in enlarged size from the printer according to the print conditions set in the hot folder.
- You can create a new hot folder, edit or delete an existing one, and set print conditions at will.

Note
- You can create up to 20 hot folders.

Creating a New Hot Folder

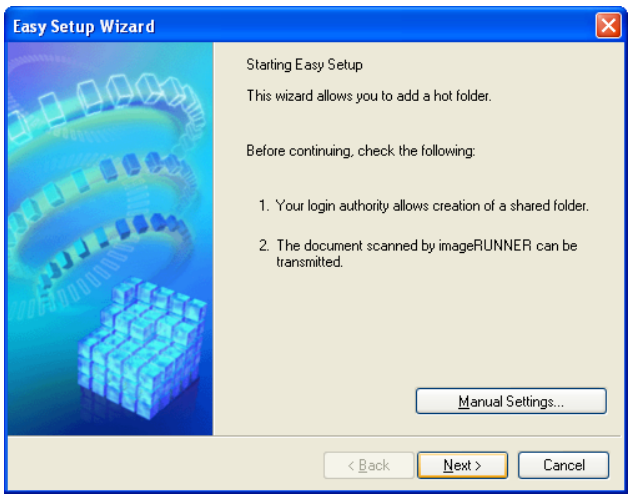
1 Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, and then click the **Add** button.



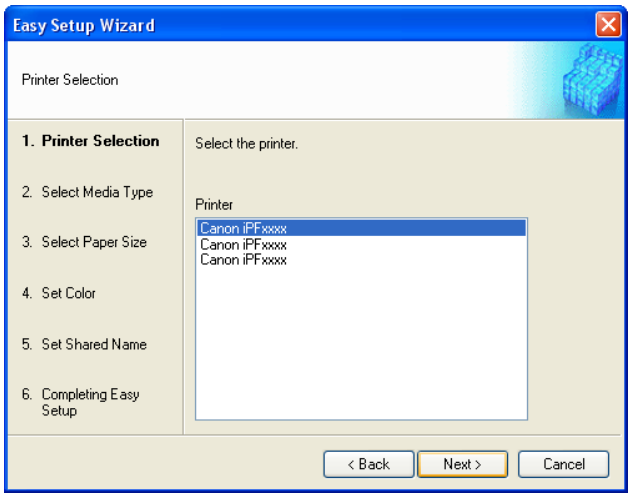
Note

- For the step to open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, see "**Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.**" →P.227

2 The **Easy Setup Wizard** dialog box displays. Click the **Next** button.



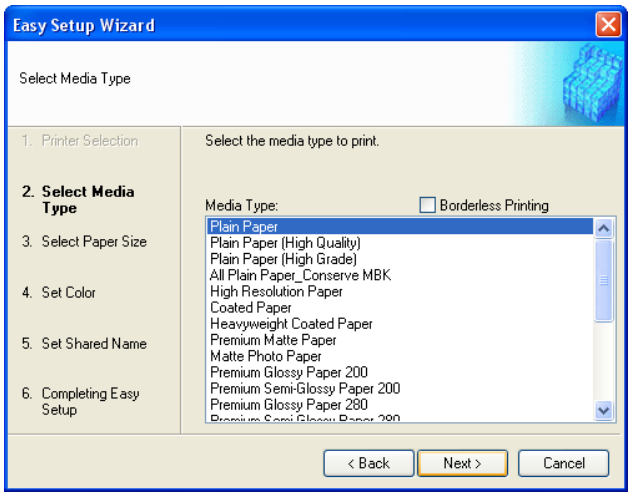
3 Select the type of printer to use. Click the **Next** button.



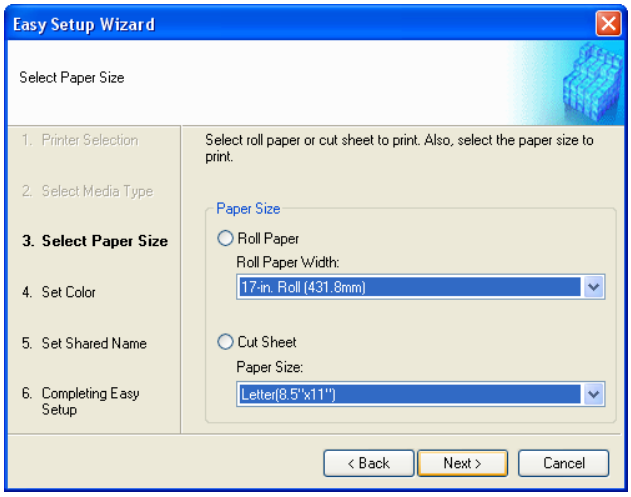
4 Select the media type to print.

> **Note**
> - If the **Borderless Printing** checkbox is checked, only media types that can be used for borderless printing are displayed in the list.

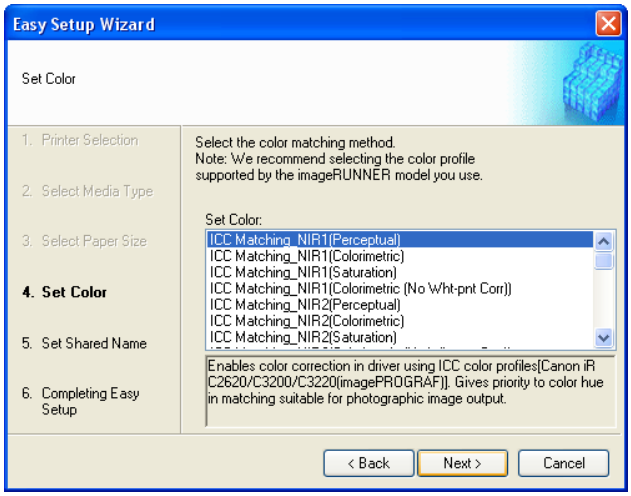
Click the **Next** button.



5 Select roll paper or cut sheet to print. Also, select the media size to print.
Click the **Next** button.

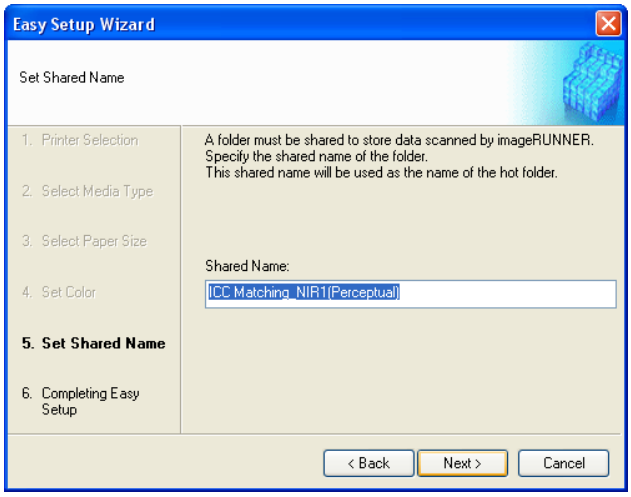


6 Select the color matching method.
Click the **Next** button.

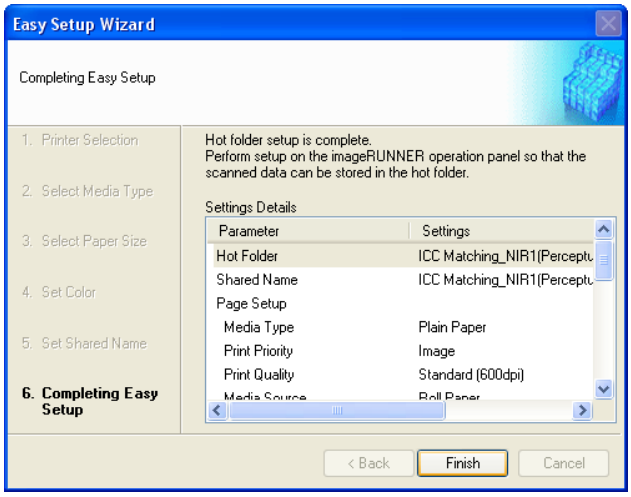


7 To receive a document scanned with the Color imageRUNNER, you need to share a folder. Enter the folder shared name in **Shared Name**.
Click the **Next** button.

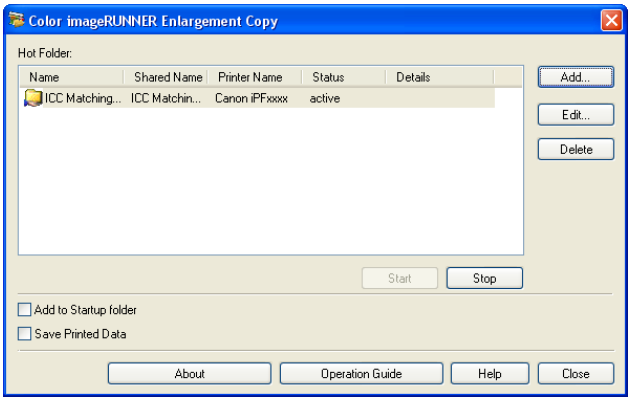
Note
- This shared name is used as the name of the hot folder.
- You cannot use the **Back** button, after clicking the **Next** button here.



8 Click **Finish** button to close the **Easy Setup Wizard** dialog box.



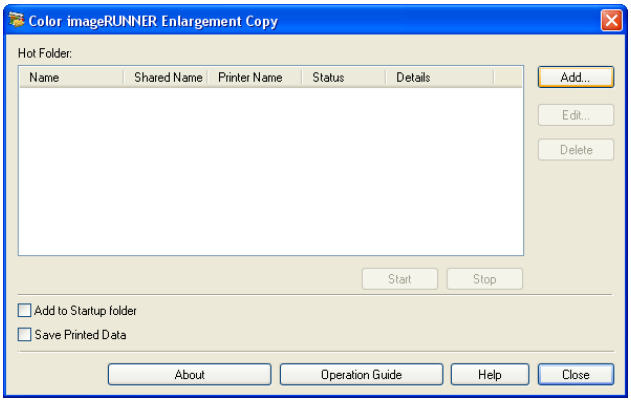
The hot folder you have created appears in the **Hot Folder** list in the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



Specifying an Existing Shared Folder as a Hot Folder

1 Share the folder you want to specify as a hot folder.

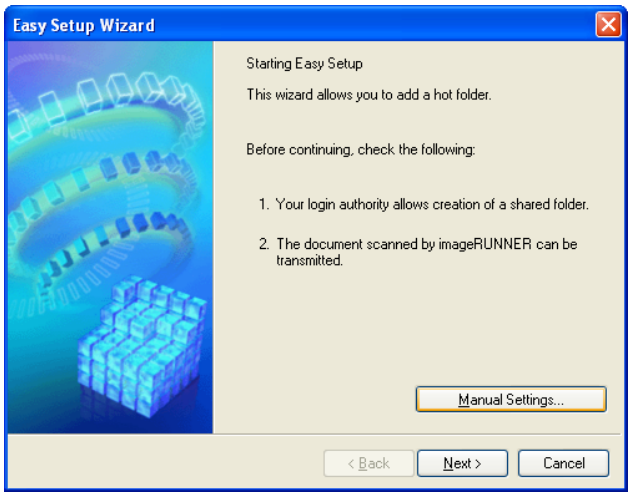
2 Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, and then click the **Add** button.



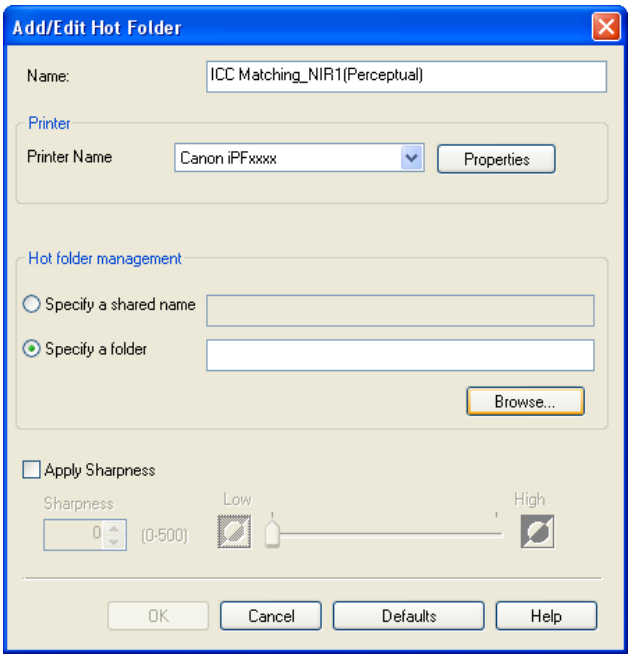
Note

- For the step to open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, see **"Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy."** →P.227

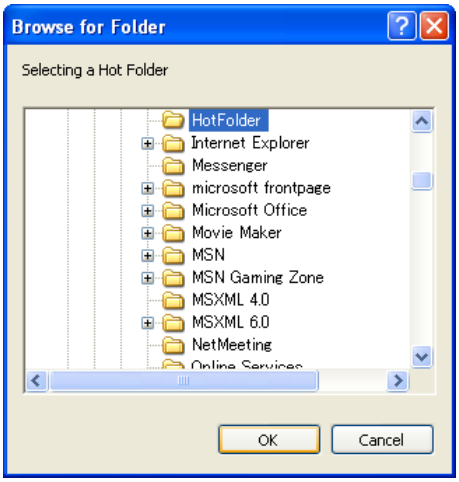
3 The **Easy Setup Wizard** dialog box displays. Click the **Manual Settings** button.



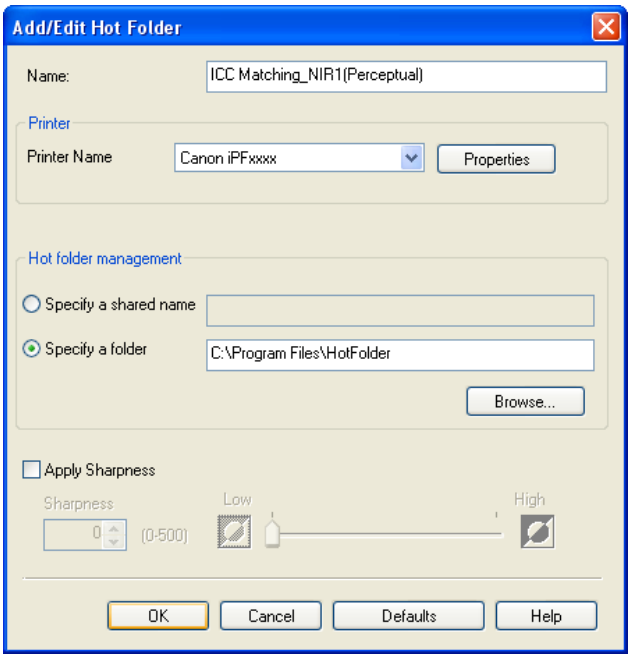
4 The **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box displays.
Enter the hot folder name in **Name**.
Click the **Browse** botton, with selecting **Specify a folder**, to set the existing shared folder.



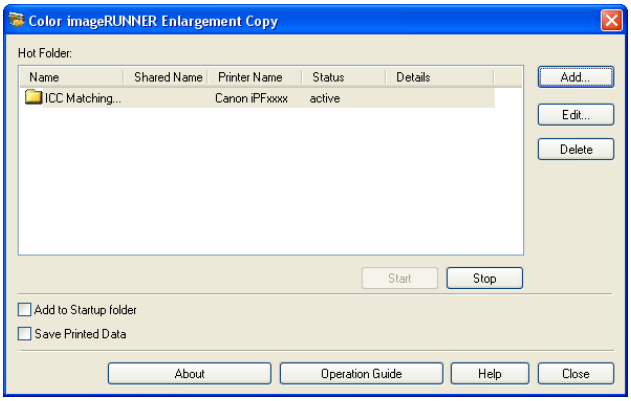
5 The location of the folders will appear.
Select the folder to specify a hot folder, and click the **OK** button.



6 As necessary, set the print conditions in the hot folder. (See "**Setting the Print Parameters.**") ➔P.236
Click the **OK** button to close the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.

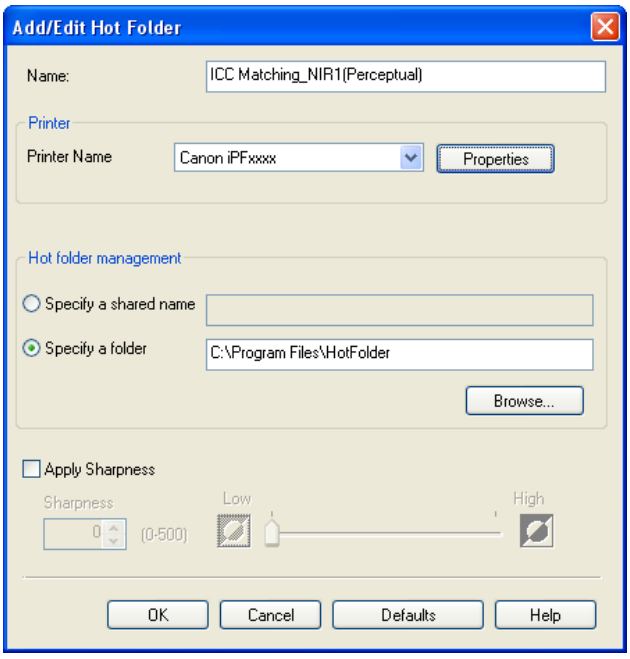


The hot folder you have created appears in the **Hot Folder** list in the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



Setting the Print Parameters

The printer driver opens when you click the **Properties** button in the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box. The printer driver is used to configure basic settings to match the type of media loaded in the printer.



Refer to "**Printer Driver**" →P.158 for details on the printer driver.

Note

- The only three sheets displayed are the **Main** sheet, the **Page Setup** sheet, and the **Layout** sheet. Some of the printer driver settings may be disabled.

- **Apply Sharpness**

  Place a checkmark here to set the sharpness.

  Drag the slider bar to the left or right to adjust. You can also adjust by directly entering a number in the numeric input field.

Note

- You can input between 0 and 500.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.
- You cannot be applied to PDF files.

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** function.
To use **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**, first complete these settings in the following order.

1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy. For details, see "**Creating a New Hot Folder**." →P.230
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER. For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional

Features of the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional 239
Installation Procedures 239
Uninstall Procedures 243
Starting from Photoshop 243
Starting from Digital Photo Professional 244

Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional Main Window 245
Preview Area 247
Main Sheet 249
Page Setup Sheet 252
Color Settings Sheet (Color) 254
Color Settings Sheet (Monochrome) 255
Print History Sheet 256
Support Sheet 257

Adjustment pattern setting dialog box 258
Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box 261
Set Configuration Dialog Box 263
ICC Conversion Options dialog box 264
Roll Paper Options Dialog Box 264
Size Options Dialog Box 265
Curves Dialog Box 266
Print History Details Dialog Box 267

Utilize Three Types of Previews 268
Check Image with Print Area Layout 268
Check the original image with Image 269
Check Image with Roll Paper Preview 269
Print with a Desired Picture Quality 270
Adjust the Colors and Print 271
Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color) 271
Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome) 272
Adjust the Colors by Color Matching 274
Print High-Quality Adobe RGB 16bit Images 275
Prints monochrome photographs with high quality 276
Using Adobe CMM 277
Printing an Adjustment Pattern and Selecting Adjustment Values 278
Perform Black Point Compensation 280
Perform Printing Press Simulation Print 281
Enlarge/Reduce and Print 281
Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size 282
Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper 283
Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print 284
Print with No Borders 285
Customize Media Settings 286
Utilize Print History 286
Confirm Print History Details 287
Apply Print History to an Image 288
Store Print History to Print Preferences 288
Delete Print History 290
Export Print History from Print Preferences 292
Import Print History to Print Preferences 293
Delete Print History from Print Preferences 295
Set Information to Print with Image 296

Features of the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional

The main features of the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional are as follows.

- You can automatically detect the color space of Adobe RGB or sRGB-use images, etc., and automatically set optimal profiles. Thus, you can print without the trouble of configuring settings.
- You can modify image data directly in Photoshop and send the image data to the printer. This allows you to process not only 8-bit, but also 16-bit image data.
- By using the preview function for images based on real images, and the preview function for layouts based on image positioning by media size, you can use this software to make color adjustments and confirm print layout.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.
- You can print an image with adjustment values such as the color balance, brightness, and contrast varying in steps and select your preferred adjustment values. (See "**Adjustment pattern setting dialog box**.") ➔P.258
- You can create and print a layout image for finishing by mounting in a frame with the image extended to the sides of the frame by using the Layout Plug-In that is installed at the same time as the Print Plug-In for Photoshop. (See "**About the Layout Plug-In**.") ➔P.298
- By using the print history management function, you can import past print settings parameters. Additionally, you can save preferences as a file.

Note
- The actual output may differ from the settings in Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional (the arrangement of the image in the layout preview, print start position, and paper size) depending on the media type, image size, paper detailed settings, and printer main unit settings.

- Loss of gradation in dark areas can be reduced by performing black point compensation.

Note
- Adobe CMM is required in order to use the black point compensation function.

- You can perform a printer simulation print by specifying the printer profile.

Installation Procedures

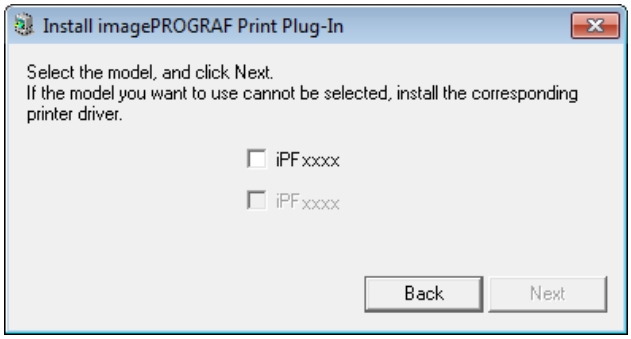
The procedure for installing the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional is as follows.

1 Insert the User Software CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive to start the installer.

Note
- If the installer screen does not appear, open the CD-ROM icon in **My Computer** and click on **iPFInst.exe** to open the icon.

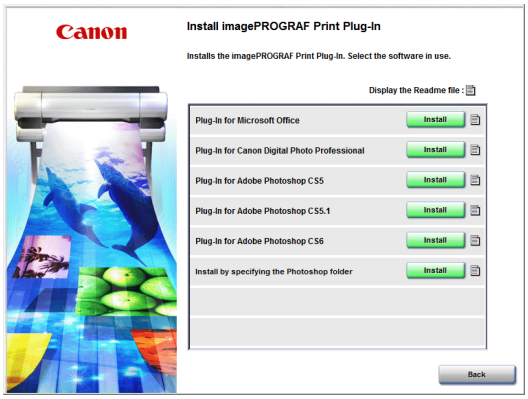
2 Click **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** button.

3 Select the printer model and click the **Next** button.

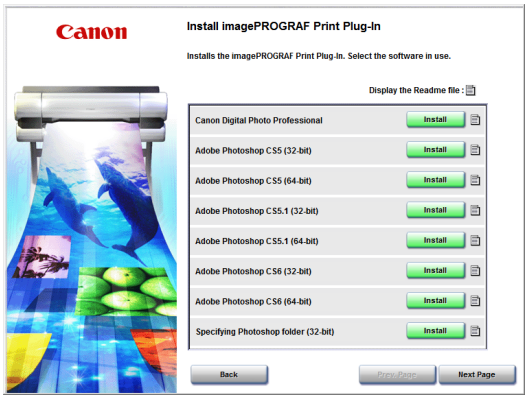


4 Click the **Install** button corresponding to the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional you are using.

- For 32-bit Windows



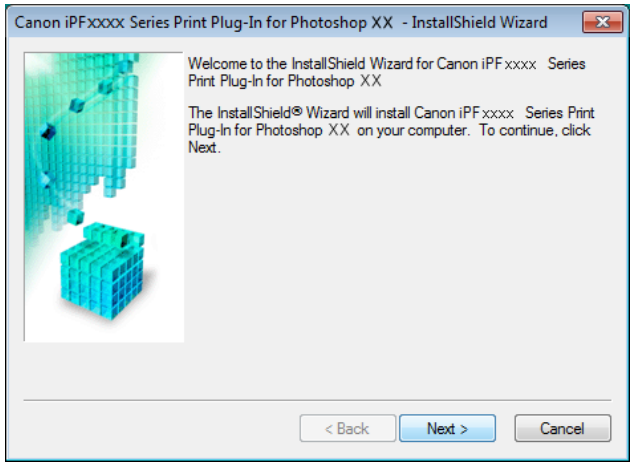
- For 64-bit Windows



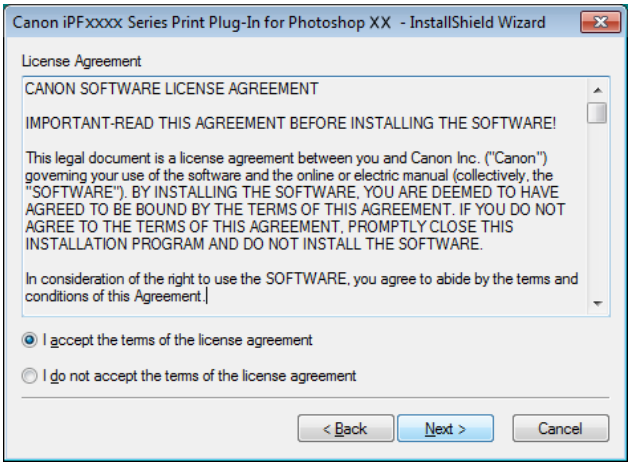
Note

- If a version of Photoshop supported by Print Plug-In for Photoshop is not installed, **The application is not installed.** is displayed. Install the Print Plug-In on a computer that has a supported version of Photoshop installed.
- If the folder for the Photoshop Plug-In to install Print Plug-In cannot be found, **Specify the destination for installation of the plug-in?** will appear. In this case, refer to the Photoshop manual then specify a folder for the Plug-In.
- The Print Plug-In for Photoshop cannot be installed on systems where the installed Photoshop has not been started even once. In this situation, start and then exit Photoshop once before installing the Print Plug-In for Photoshop.

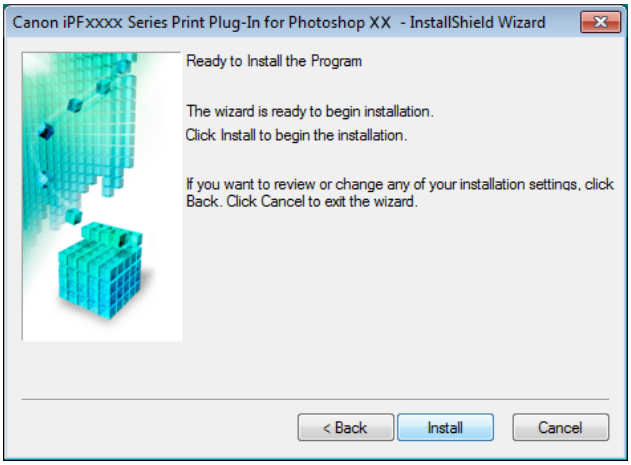
5 Click **Next** button.



6 After you have read the Licensing Agreement, select **I accept the terms of the license agreement** and click the **Next** button.

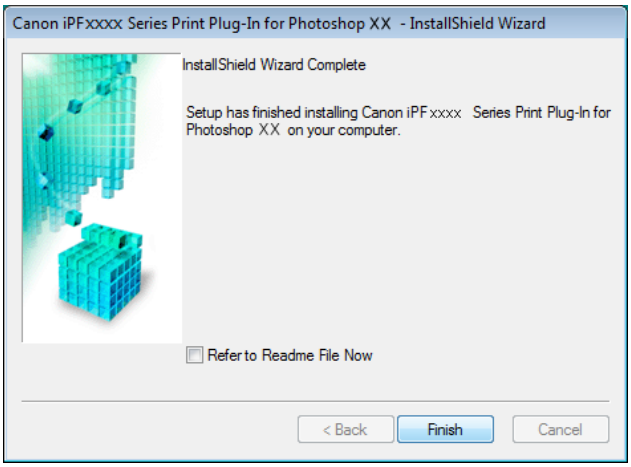


7 Click **Install** button.



8 Click **Finish** button.

Installing the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional finishes.



Note

- After you have installed the Print Plug-In for Photoshop, a screen for installing the Layout Plug-In is displayed next. Follow the instructions displayed to complete installation.

Uninstall Procedures

The procedure for uninstalling the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional and Layout Plug-In is as follows.

Note
- This section describes the procedure in Windows 7.

- Uninstall the Print Plug-In for Photoshop

1. Select **start** in **Control Panel** menu.
2. Select **Programs and Features**.
3. Select **Canon iPFxxxx Series Print Plug-In for Photoshop xx**, then click **Change/Remove**.

- Uninstall the Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional

1. Select **start** in **Control Panel** menu.
2. Select **Programs and Features**.
3. Select **Canon iPFxxxx Series Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional**, then click **Change/Remove**.

Note
- iPFxxxx is the name of your printer.

- Uninstalling the Layout Plug-In

1. Select **Control Panel** from the **start** menu.
2. Select **Programs and Features**.
3. Select **imagePROGRAF Layout Plug-In**, and then click the **Change/Remove** button.

Starting from Photoshop

Follow the procedure below to start the Print Plug-In for Photoshop from Photoshop.

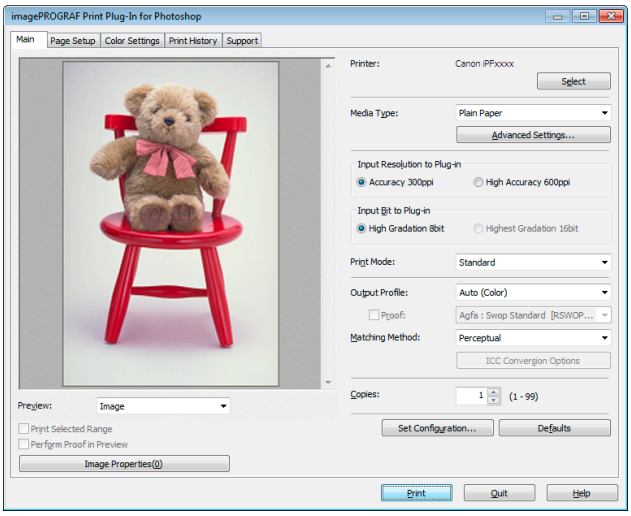
1 Start Photoshop.

2 Open the image that you wish to print.

3 If required, select the print range.

Note
- Images for use with Print Plug-In for Photoshop are less than 60,000 pixels in width and height. Reduce the selection range or reduce the image with processing for images more than 60,000 pixels in width and height, and then attempt step 3.

4 Select **Export** (or **Data Export**) from the **File** menu and then select the output plug-in that matches your printer. The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop window (known below as the Print Plug-In window) is displayed.



Important

- When a profile is created with a commercially available profile creation tool, it may be created in ICCv4 format. When an image source profile is ICCv4, you must install AdobeCMM or use Print Plug-In in a Windows Vista or later environment.
  When Adobe CMM is not installed in a Windows XP environment, a message is displayed, and the source profile changes to Adobe RGB. To use an ICCv4 profile in a Windows XP environment, exit Plug-In and then install Adobe CMM. For details on installing Adobe CMM, refer to "**Using Adobe CMM**" →P.277 .

Note

- If the message below is displayed but the Print Plug-In window is not displayed, install the newest imagePROGRAF printer driver and then attempt step 3.
  The imagePROGRAF Printer Driver for iPFxxxx is either not installed correctly or not installed at all. Please install.
  (The iPFxxxx portion of the above message will reflect your printer name.)
- If the message below is displayed but the Print Plug-In window is not displayed, convert the color space of the image to either RGB color, grayscale, or CMYK color and then attempt step 3.
  Set the color space of the image to either RGB color, grayscale, or CMYK color.

Starting from Digital Photo Professional

Follow the procedure below to start the Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional from Digital Photo Professional.

1 Start Digital Photo Professional.

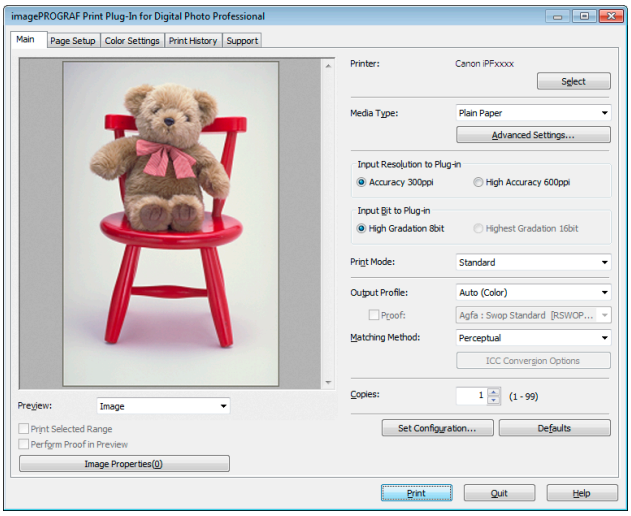
2 Open the RGB color image that you want to print.

3 If required, select the print range.

Note

- Images for use with Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional are less than 6,000 pixels in width and height. Reduce the selection range or reduce the image with processing for images more than 6,000 pixels in width and height, and then attempt step 3.

4 Select **Plug-in printing** from the **File** menu and then select the output plug-in that matches your printer. The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional window (hereinafter referred to as the Print Plug-In window) is displayed.

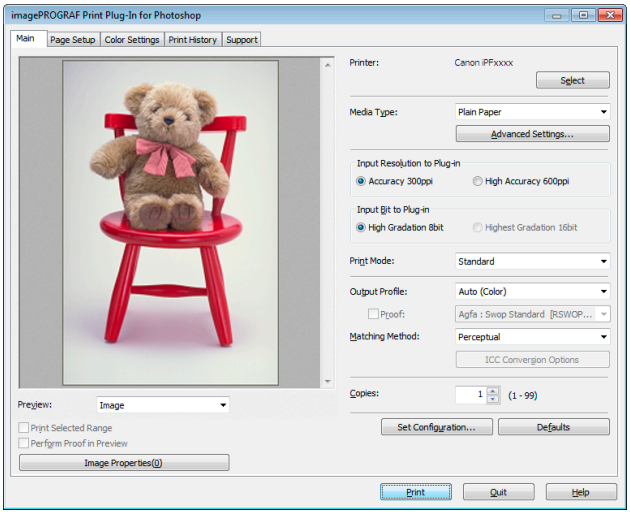


Important

- When a profile is created with a commercially available profile creation tool, it may be created in ICCv4 format. When an image source profile is ICCv4, you must install AdobeCMM or use Print Plug-In in a Windows Vista or later environment.
  When Adobe CMM is not installed in a Windows XP environment, a message is displayed, and the source profile changes to Adobe RGB. To use an ICCv4 profile in a Windows XP environment, exit Plug-In and then install Adobe CMM. For details on installing Adobe CMM, refer to "**Using Adobe CMM**" ➔P.277 .

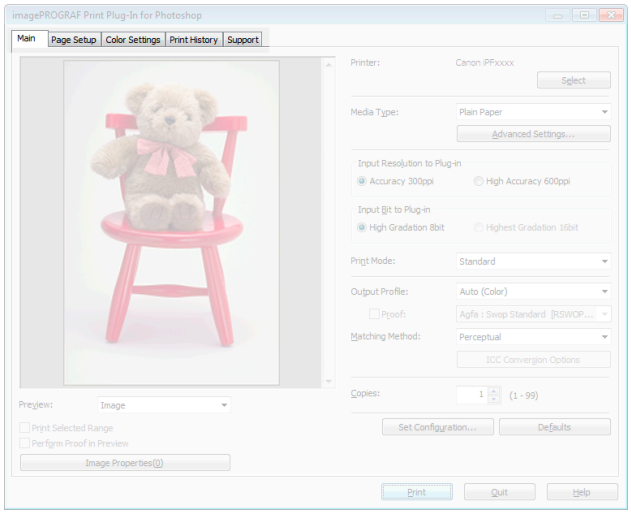
Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional Main Window

The Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional main window consists of the sheet selection area, and the preview and button area.



- Sheet Selection Area

The tabs used to switch between each sheet on the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional window are displayed.

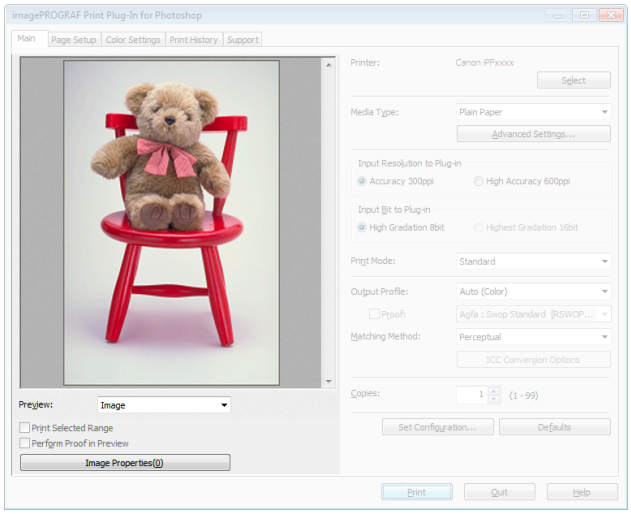


When you select a tab, a sheet is displayed. The settings available on each sheet are as follows.

- **Main Sheet** ➔P.249
- **Page Setup Sheet** ➔P.252
- **Color Settings Sheet (Color)** ➔P.254
- **Print History Sheet** ➔P.256
- **Support Sheet** ➔P.257

- Preview Area

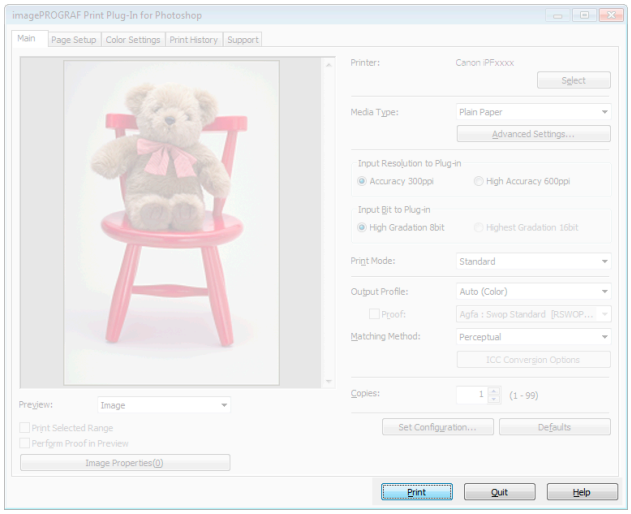
You can check the settings you made on the image in this area.



About the settings available on the preview area, see "**Preview Area.**" ➔P.247

- Button Area

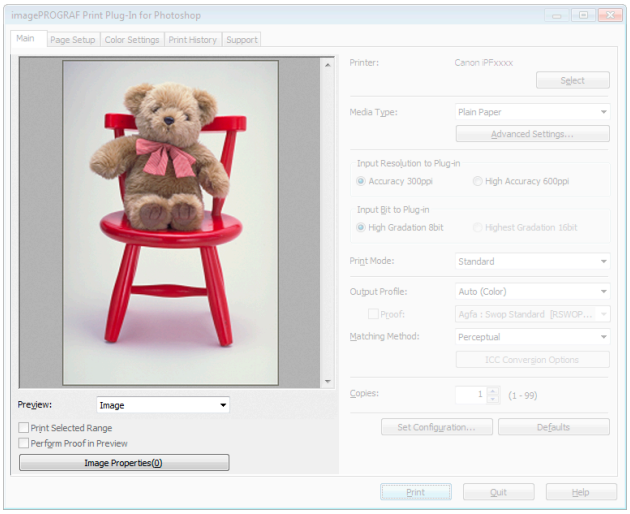
  This contains the buttons **Print**, **Quit** and **Help**.



  - **Print** Button
    Click this button to begin printing.
  - **Quit** Button
    Click this button to close the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional Main window and return to application software.
  - **Help** Button
    Click this button to display the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional Help file.

Preview Area

You can check the settings you made on the image in this area.



- **Preview**
  Select the preview display method.
  For more information about preview, see "**Utilize Three Types of Previews.**" →P.268

Setting	Details
Print Area Layout	Displays the print range and the area out of the print range in the layout matching the **Paper Size** set.

Setting	Details
Print Area Layout	*You can change the image print position when you drag the image while the cursor is displayed as .
Image	The entire image is displayed. *You can select the print range when you drag the image while the cursor is displayed as . *When you click the image while the cursor is displayed as , the selected area is deselected.
Roll Paper Preview	Display the media size and roll paper information on the top in the layout printing on roll paper. *To select **Roll Paper Preview**, select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

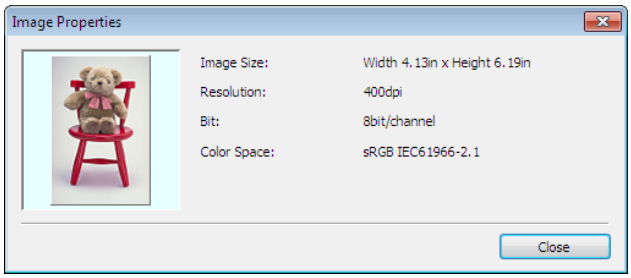
- **Print Selected Range**
  Place a checkmark here to only print the selected range.

  Note
  - When you select **Preview** in the **Image**, then select a portion of the image on the preview display, this becomes valid.

- **Perform Proof in Preview**
  Place a checkmark here to simulate the colors of the output product in the preview.

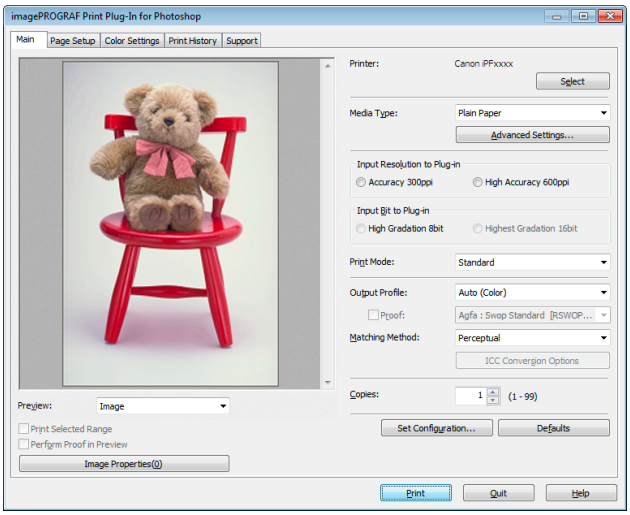
  Note
  - If **Auto (Color)** is selected under **Output Profile**, some media types are enabled.
  - If ICC profile is selected under **Output Profile**, this is always enabled.
  - The actual color balance of the print product and the simulation product may differ with some environments and conditions. In addition, when you have selected an ICC Profile with **Output Profile** and it is not compatible with the printer or media that you are using, the color balance of the actual print product will differ.

- **Image Properties** button
  When you click the button to open the **Image Properties** dialog box, where **Image Size**, **Resolution**, **Bit** and **Color Space** information of the image imported to Print Plug-In are displayed.
  Click the **Close** button to return to Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional.



Main Sheet

You can use this sheet to perform basic settings such as selecting a printer, setting the media type, or adjusting image quality.



- **Printer**

  The printer types are displayed.

- **Select** button

  Click this button to display the **Select Printer** dialog box.

  When you click the **OK** button after selecting the printer in the **Select Printer** dialog box, you can change the printer that corresponds with Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional.

- **Media Type**

  This allows you to select the media type.

  For more information about Media Type, see "**Customize Media Settings.**" ➔P.286

  Note

  - Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

- **Advanced Settings** button

  Click the button to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.

  For more information about the media detailed settings, see "**Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box.**" ➔P.261

- **Input Resolution to Plug-in**

  You can select the resolution to process the image with Print Plug-In.

  The following settings are available for resolution.

Setting	Details
Accuracy 300ppi	This processes images at an accurate resolution. This can control print speed and memory capacity.
High Accuracy 600ppi	This processes images at a more accurate resolution. This setting results in the best print quality, but this takes more time to print than **Accuracy 300ppi** while also requiring more memory capacity. *This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type**

- **Input Bit to Plug-in**

  You can select the bit number to process with Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional.

The following settings are available for the input bit number.

Setting	Details
High Gradation 8bit	This processes images with at 8bit/channel (24 bit).
Highest Gradation 16bit	This processes images with at 16bit/channel (48 bit). *This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type** and **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

- **Print Mode**

Selecting the printing mode strikes the balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.
The following settings are available for the print mode.

Setting	Details
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in **Standard** or **Fast** modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in **Highest** or **High** mode.
Fast	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in fast mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.
Highest (Max. No. of Passes)	If you are concerned about uneven colors in the print result of **Highest quality**, selecting this option may improve printing results. However, printing may take longer.

Note
- The selectable fields may vary according to the **Media Type**, **Input Resolution to Plug-in** and **Input Bit to Plug-in** settings.

- **Output Profile**

You can select the output profile.
The following settings are available for the output profile.

Setting	Details
Auto (Color)	Performs the optimum color conversion from the input image data color space information (sRGB, Adobe RGB), media settings etc. You should normally select these settings.
Auto (Monochrome Photo)	Performs the best color conversion to monochrome from the input image data color space information (sRGB, Adobe RGB), media settings etc.
None (No Color Correction)	You cannot perform color conversion with a plug-in. This is useful for creating an original ICC profile.
External ICC Profiles	This selects printer ICC profiles to be output to ICC profiles saved in the OS standard folder. Use the color space of the input data as well as the select ICC profile to perform color conversion.

Important
- To use an ICCv4 profile, you must install AdobeCMM or use Print Plug-In in a Windows Vista or later environment. For details on installing Adobe CMM, refer to "**Using Adobe CMM**" ➔P.277 .

Note
- **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** can only be selected for the corresponding media types.

- **Proof**

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**.
When this is checked, you can perform printing press simulation prints.

Refer to "**Perform Printing Press Simulation Print**" ➔P.281 for details on printing press simulation prints.

- **Matching Method**

You can select the processing method when performing color conversion.

The following settings are available for the matching method.

Setting	Details
Perceptual	This converts the image to an image with natural color balance and gradation. This is useful for pictures.
Saturation	This converts the image to an image with heightened color saturation. The color balance of pictures and drawings may change.
Relative Colorimetric	This converts the image with emphasis on color balance before the conversion or on visual color balance. This is useful for pictures and drawings.
Absolute Colorimetric	No mapping of colors to destination white point is performed. This is suitable for proofing to simulate the output of a particular device. Note that black point compensation does not function if you are using Adobe CMM.

Note
- When the **Output Profile** you have set is **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** or **None (No Color Correction)**, you cannot select a matching method.

- **ICC Conversion Options** button

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**.

When this button is clicked, the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box is displayed allowing you to configure color conversion related settings.

Refer to "**ICC Conversion Options dialog box**" ➔P.264 for details on ICC Conversion Options.

- **Copies**

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

Note
- The maximum value is 99.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ or ▼.

- **Set Configuration** button

Clicking the button opens the **Set Configuration** dialog box that provides settings for the adjustment of image sharpness and image enlargement method.

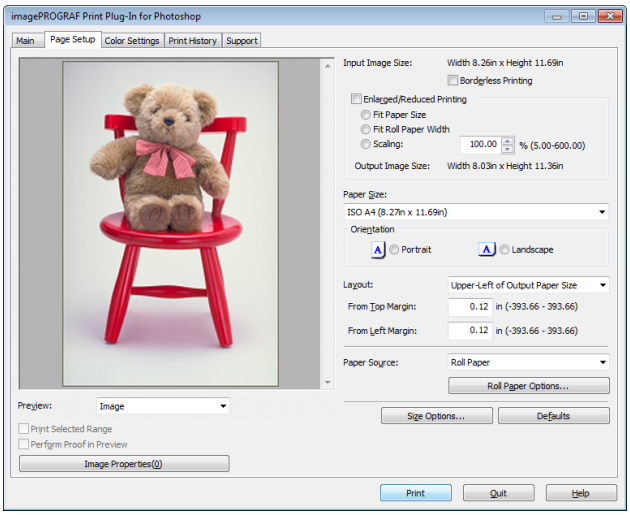
For more information about **Set Configuration**, see "**Set Configuration Dialog Box.**" ➔P.263

- **Defaults** button

Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Main** sheet to their defaults.

Page Setup Sheet

You can use this sheet to set the size of the image to be printed, the media size, and whether to enlarge/reduce the image.



- **Input Image Size**

  The size of the image imported to Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional is displayed.

- **Borderless Printing**

  When you place a checkmark here, the **Specify Roll Paper Width** dialog box is displayed and you can print an image without borders.

  For more information about **Borderless Printing**, see "Print with No Borders." →P.285

  Note
  - Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

  When you place a checkmark here, you can print enlarged/reduced images.

  When printing an enlarged/reduced image, select the method for enlargement/reduction. The image size sent to the printer is displayed matching the selected method in **Output Image Size**.

  The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	This automatically enlarges/reduces the entire image imported to Print Plug-In to match the export media size when printing.
Fit Roll Paper Width	This automatically enlarges/reduces the entire image imported to Print Plug-In to match the width of the roll paper with the width of the image when printing. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
Scaling	This enlarges/reduces the entire image by the specified scaling value. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5-600%. *You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ or ▼.

  Note
  - This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

- **Output Image Size**

  The output image size is displayed up to one place after the decimal point in millimeters.

Note
- When **Paper Size** is smaller than **Output Image Size**, part of the image may not print.

- **Paper Size**

You can select the size of the print media.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
- This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width** is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

- **Orientation**

This selects the print orientation.
The following settings are available for orientation.

Setting	Details
Portrait	Prints the image on the media as it appears on the screen.
Landscape	Prints the image on the media rotated 90 degrees.

- **Layout**

You can select the print position of an image on the media.
The following settings are available for layout.

Layout

Setting	Details	
Upper-Left of Output Paper Size	Prints the image with fitting the top left of the active print area for **Paper Size**.	
Center of Output Paper Size	Prints the center of the image on the center of the selected **Paper Size**.	
Specify Print Start Position	You can print with specifying the top and left printing start positions in **From Top Margin** and **From Left Margin** for **Paper Size**.	
	From Top Margin	Input the margin from the top of the media in numbers. *You can input between -9999 and 9999 mm.
	From Left Margin	Input the margin from the left of the media in numbers. *You can input between -9999 and 9999 mm.

Note
- Select **Print Area Layout** or **Image** in **Preview** when you select **Layout**.

Roll Paper Layout

Setting	Details
Upper-Left of Roll Paper	Prints the top left of Media Size on the top left of the selected roll paper.
Center of Roll Paper	Prints the center of Media Size on the center of the selected roll paper.

Note
- Select **Roll Paper Layout** in **Preview** when you select **Roll Paper Preview**.

- **Paper Source**

You can select the media source.
The following settings are available for media source.

Setting	Details
Manual	Select for manual paper feed printing.

Setting	Details
Manual (3mm margins)	Select for manual paper feed printing when you want to minimize the margin at the far end edge of paper.
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.

Note

- When you select **Manual (3mm margins)** for **Paper Source**, the far end edge of printed image may become defective depending on the paper used. If this happens, select another media source.

- **Roll Paper Options** button

Click this button to open the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box, where you can set roll paper width and perform auto cut settings.

For more information about the roll paper options, see "**Roll Paper Options Dialog Box.**" ➔P.264

- **Size Options**

Click the Size Options button to open the **Size Options** dialog box and you can select a media name, size and other settings.

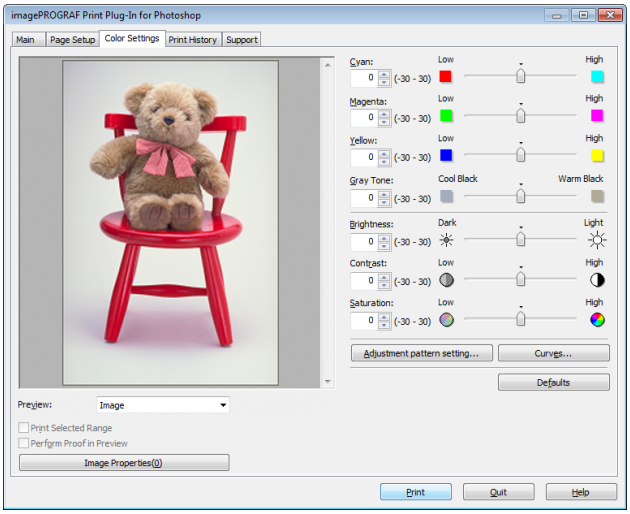
For more information about the size options, see "**Size Options Dialog Box.**" ➔P.265

- **Defaults** button

Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Page Setup** sheet to their defaults.

Color Settings Sheet (Color)

You can use this sheet to adjust image Color, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, **Saturation**, and you can set the color balance of print product more to your liking.



Note

- You can check a preview of the adjusted state for the following items.
  Cyan / **Magenta** / **Yellow**, **Gray Tone**, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and **Saturation**

- **Cyan** / **Magenta** / **Yellow**

You can adjust the strength or weakness of a color by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Gray Tone**

You can adjust gray tone from cool black (cool tones) to warm black (red tones) by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Brightness**

  You can adjust the brightness of the printed image without losing the brightest and darkest areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Contrast**

  You can relatively adjust the brightness of the brightest and darkness areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Saturation**

  You can adjust the saturation of vivid color balance to dark color balance by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Adjustment pattern setting** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box is displayed. The **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box allows you to print an adjustment pattern with adjustment values that vary in steps up and down, and to select your preferred adjustment values.

  For details on **Adjustment pattern setting**, see "Adjustment pattern setting dialog box." →P.258

- **Curves** button

  Click the button to open the **Curves** dialog box then set the **Channel** and other settings.

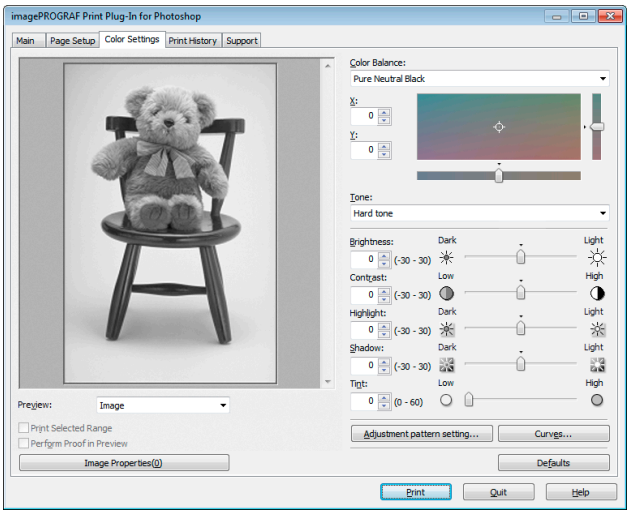
  For more information about **Curves**, see "Curves Dialog Box." →P.266

- **Defaults** button

  Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Color Settings** sheet to their defaults.

Color Settings Sheet (Monochrome)

This screen allows you to adjust settings such as the **Color Balance**, **Tone**, **Brightness**, and **Contrast** to configure the printing result to be closer to your expected tone and gradation.
This is displayed when **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** is selected in the **Output Profile** on the **Main Sheet** →P.249 .



Note

- You can check a preview of the adjusted state for the following items.
  Color Balance, **Tone**, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, **Highlight**, **Shadow**, and **Tint**

- **Color Balance**

  Allow you to select the color balance to suit your application.

- **X/Y**

  Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area.

  You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it.

Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired.

You can click the arrows by the **X** (horizontal) and **Y** (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.

- **Tone**

  You can adjust the brightness of intermediate tones in an image. Selecting **Hard tone** gives a hard impression with more definition. Selecting **Soft tone** gives a soft impression.

- **Brightness**

  You can adjust the brightness of the printed image without losing the brightest and darkest areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Contrast**

  You can relatively adjust the brightness of the brightest and darkness areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Highlight**

  Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.

- **Shadow**

  Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.

- **Tint**

  Fills in the white parts of the paper with a small amount of ink in order to reduce the difference in texture between highlights in the image and the white parts of the paper.

- **Adjustment pattern setting** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box is displayed. The **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box allows you to print an adjustment pattern with adjustment values that vary in steps up and down, and to select your preferred adjustment values.

  For details on **Adjustment pattern setting**, see "**Adjustment pattern setting dialog box**." ➔P.258

- **Curves** button

  Click the button to open the **Curves** dialog box then set the **Channel** and other settings.

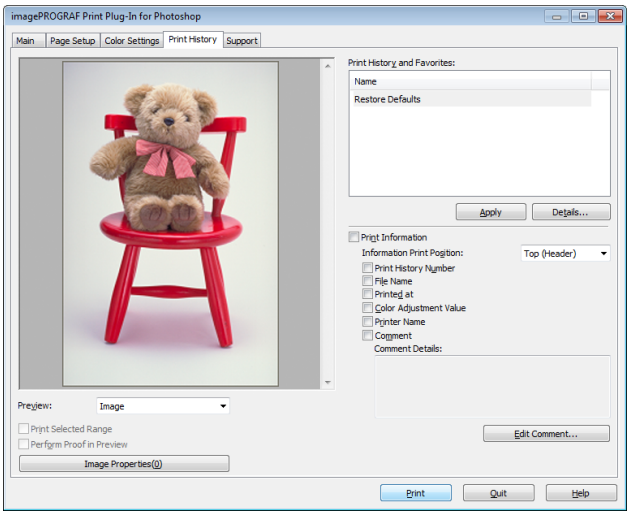
  For more information about **Curves**, see "**Curves Dialog Box**." ➔P.266

- **Defaults** button

  Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Color Settings** sheet to their defaults.

Print History Sheet

You can use this sheet to apply settings history used in printing, and to print information, such as the image file name, with the image.



- **Print History and Favorites**

This displays a list of print preferences.

Select **Restore Defaults** and click the **Apply** button to restore all settings to their initial settings.

Note

- You can check the 3 print preferences in the preview display.

- **Apply** button

When you click the button, the print setting content applies to the current image selected with **Print History and Favorites**.

- **Details** button

Click the Details button to open the **Print History Details** dialog box, where you can manage print history.

For more information about the print history details, see "**Print History Details Dialog Box.**" →P.267

- **Print Information**

When you place a checkmark here, you can print the file name and print time and date on the image. The following settings are available for the print position and content.

For more information about **Print Information**, see "**Set Information to Print with Image.**" →P.296

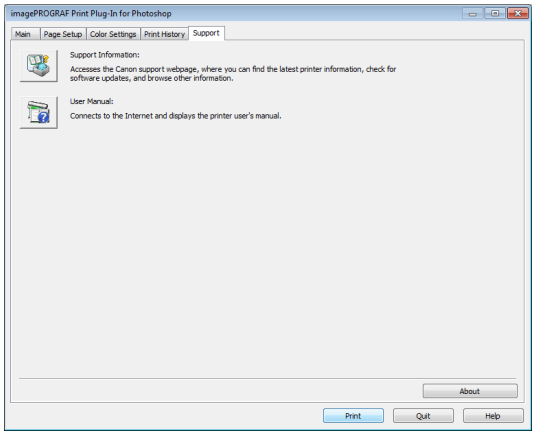
Setting	Details	
Information Print Position	Selects the information print position.	
	Top (Header)	Information is printed on the top of the image.
	Bottom (Footer)	Information is printed on the bottom of the image.
Print History Number	Place a checkmark here to print the print history number.	
File Name	Place a checkmark here to print the file name.	
Printed at	Place a checkmark here to print the time and date.	
Color Adjustment Value	Place a checkmark here to print the color adjustment value.	
Printer Name	Place a checkmark here to print the printer name.	
Comment	Place a checkmark here to print the comment details.	
Comment Details	Place a checkmark here to display the comment details.	

- **Edit Comment** button

Click the button to display the **Edit Comment** dialog box, where you can edit the comment.

Support Sheet

You can display product support information and the electronic manual.



- **Support Information** button

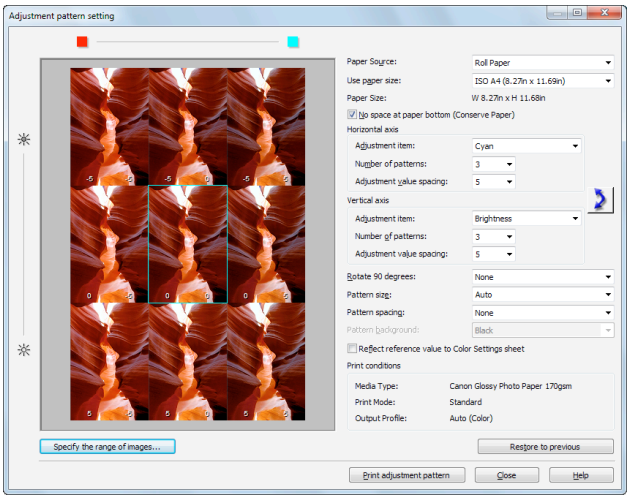
  Click this button to check information such as the latest information on the product and version upgrade information for the software.

- **User Manual** button

  Click this button to display the printer User Manual.

Adjustment pattern setting dialog box

Displays the adjustment pattern by taking images with the adjustment values varying up and down in steps from the baseline adjustment values in the **Color Settings** sheet (color or monochrome). This allows you to print the adjustment pattern and select your preferred adjustment values while comparing the images.



- Preview Area

  This area allows you to view adjustment pattern images side-by-side to check the state when changes to adjustment values are applied.

  The adjustment values of the image enclosed in the blue frame in the center are used as the base values, with images arranged around this with the adjustment values varying in steps up and down from these base values. If you click any of the images, the adjustment pattern is redisplayed with the adjustment values from that image as the base values.

  The adjustment values are displayed at the top of each image. If both the **Horizontal Axis** and **Vertical Axis** are configured, the adjustment value for the **Horizontal Axis** is displayed on the right and the adjustment value for the **Vertical Axis** is displayed on the left. If the image is so small that the adjustment values cannot be displayed, you can check the adjustment values by displaying the tool tip.

  Note

  - For images where the adjustment values are out of range, an adjustment pattern is not displayed and the message **Out of Range** is displayed instead.

- **Paper Source**

  Selects the paper feed method for the paper to print the adjustment pattern on. You can split the usage between printing adjustment patterns on cut paper (manual feed) and printing work pieces on roll paper.

- **Use Paper Size**

  Selects the paper size to print the adjustment pattern on.

  The adjustment pattern is printed so that it fits into the selected paper size.

  Note

  - If the image size is large and **Dimensions** is selected in **Pattern Size**, the pattern display might not fit within the vertical direction of the paper size. In this case, select **Auto** in **Pattern Size**.
  - The printed paper size is displayed in **Paper Size**.

- **Paper Size**

  Since the length in the vertical direction may differ between the **Use Paper Size** and actual printed material, this displays the actual output paper size.

- **No Space at Paper Bottom (Conserve Paper)**

  If a margin appears at the bottom of the paper with the paper size selected in **Use Paper Size**, you can conserve paper by selecting this check box to print excluding the margin area. The state of the length in the vertical direction being shortened to conserve the margin area is reflected in the displayed **Paper Size**.

- **Horizontal Axis/Vertical Axis**

  Configures settings such as the items that change in steps and the number of patterns when multiple adjustment patterns are arranged horizontally or vertically.

  - **Adjustment Item**

    Selects the items to change in steps.
    For color, you can select **Cyan**, **Magenta**, **Yellow**, **Gray Tone**, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, or **Saturation**.
    For monochrome, you can select X **Color Balance**, Y **Color Balance**, **Tone**, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, **Highlight**, **Shadow**, or **Tint**.
    The icons for **Horizontal Axis Adjustment Item** are displayed above the preview area and the icons for **Vertical Axis Adjustment Item** are displayed on the left of the preview area.

    Note
    - **None** can only be selected for **Vertical Axis** in both color and monochrome.

  - **Number of Patterns**

    You can select the number of images to display in the pattern in the horizontal or vertical direction from 3, 5, and 7. If the adjustment item is **Tone**, you can select 3 or 5. When **Tone** is selected as the adjustment value, -1 is **Soft tone**, 0 is **Middle tone**, 2 is **Medium-hard tone**, 3 is **Hard tone**, and 5 is **Strong-hard tone**.

  - **Adjustment Value Spacing**

    You can select the interval of the variation in adjustment values between neighboring adjustment pattern images from the range of 1 to 10. The larger the value, the greater the differences between the states of the adjustment pattern images. Note that if the adjustment item is **Tone**, the **Adjustment Value Spacing** cannot be selected.

  - (Swap) button

    Rearranges the adjustment pattern with the **Horizontal Axis** and **Vertical Axis** adjustment items swapped.

- **Rotate 90 degrees**

  Rotating the image may make it easier to conserve paper and compare images.
  Select **Per Image** to rotate each of the images in the adjustment pattern by 90 degrees.
  Select **Entire Image after layout** to rotate the entire adjustment pattern by 90 degrees.
  When **None** is selected, the image is not rotated.

- **Pattern Size**

  You can specify the size of the image when printing the adjustment pattern.
  When **Auto** is selected, the image is enlarged or reduced to fit the adjustment pattern into the **Use Paper Size**.
  When **Dimensions** is selected, the image is printed at the input image size without enlarging or reducing. **Dimensions** cannot be selected when the paper feed method is **Manual**.

  Note
  - If the input image size is large, check the **Paper Size** before starting printing because it may be larger than the actual printed material size.
  - Select **Dimensions** in **Pattern Size** to print at the input image size without enlarging or reducing the images.
  - Patterns that extend past the horizontal width of the paper are printed wrapped onto the next line.

- **Pattern Spacing**

  You can select **None** or **Available**. If **Available** is selected, you can insert a background between each image. The background color can be specified in **Pattern Background**.

- **Pattern Background**

  You can select the background color from **White**, **Black**, and Gray.

  If it is difficult to compare the differences between neighboring adjustment pattern images, changing the background color may make it easier to compare. The **Pattern Spacing** can be selected if **Pattern Background** is **Available**.

- **Update Base Values in the Color Settings Sheet**

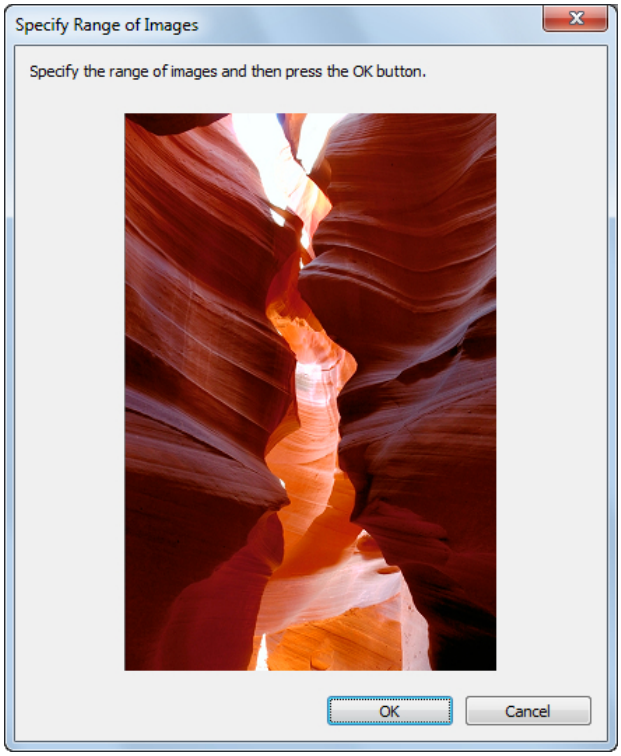
  Select this check box and click the **Close** button to apply the setting values (standard values) of the image enclosed in the blue frame in the center of the preview area in the **Color Settings** sheet (color or monochrome).

- **Print Conditions**

  Displays the paper type, print mode, and output profile configured in the main window. This makes it possible to check the details of each of the settings when printing the adjustment pattern without returning to the main window.

- **Specify the Range of Images** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Specify the Range of Images** dialog box is displayed for specifying the range of images.



  When you specify the range by using the mouse or other means and then click the **OK** button, the **Specify the Range of Images** dialog box closes and the specified image range is redisplayed as the adjustment pattern.

  If you click the **Cancel** button, the **Specify the Range of Images** dialog box closes even if a range is selected.

  Note

  - The selected range is cleared by clicking the image with a range selected.

- **Restore to Previous** button

  When this button is clicked, the settings are restored to the defaults when the **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box was first displayed.

- **Close** button

When this button is clicked, the setting values in the **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box are saved and the dialog box is closed. These setting values are applied the next time the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional is started. Furthermore, if you select the **Update Base Values in the Color Settings Sheet** check box and click the **Close** button, the setting values for the image enclosed in the blue frame in the preview area (central image) are applied to the settings in the **Color Settings** sheet (color or monochrome).

- **Print Adjustment Pattern** button

When this button is clicked, printing the adjustment pattern is executed. The **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box does not close even after executing the printing.

The adjustment values are printed at the top of each image. If both the **Horizontal Axis** and **Vertical Axis** are configured, the adjustment value for the **Horizontal Axis** is displayed on the right and the adjustment value for the **Vertical Axis** is displayed on the left.

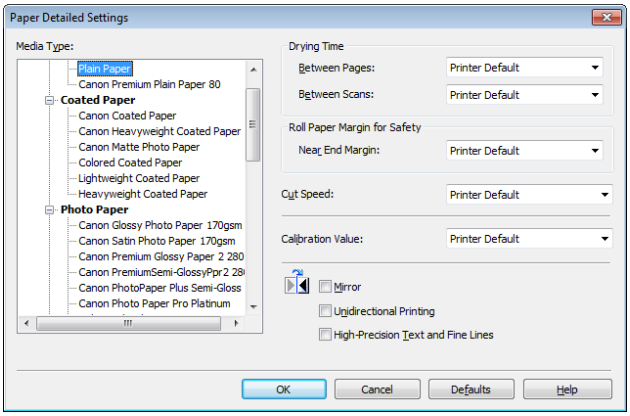
Each of the setting values for the paper type, print mode, and output profile as well as the adjustment values configured in the **Color Settings** sheet (color or monochrome) are printed at the bottom of the paper. However, the adjustment values for the **Curves** are not printed.

Note

- The job name when printing the adjustment pattern is "Original Image Name + Pattern-Print". For example, the print job name for the image "ABC.jpg" is "ABC_Pattern-Print.jpg".

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Advanced Settings** button on the **Main** Sheet. You can set **Drying Time** and **Roll Paper Margin for Safety** by media type.



- **Drying Time**

Between Pages

This sets the wait time for the ink to dry between each completely printed sheet and the output of the sheet.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
None	The paper is ejected immediately after printing.
30sec. / **1min.** / **3min.** / **5min.** / **10min.** / **30min.** / **60min.**	The sheet is ejected when the specified time after printing has elapsed.

Between Scans

This sets the wait time between line scans during printing.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
None	The printing continues to the next line immediately after the last line.
1sec. / **3sec.** / **5sec.** / **7sec.** / **9sec.**	The printing continues to the next line after the set time.

Setting	Details
1sec. / 3sec. / 5sec. / 7sec. / 9sec.	*For the media type that has problems, such as ink smears on the page or colors that seem uneven during borderless printing etc., increase the value for this setting.

- **Roll Paper Margin for Safety**

Near End Margin

This sets the length of the near end margin of the roll paper.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
3mm	Print at a standard size. *Select for Media Type that has no problem when printing with a standard size margin.
20mm	Select this when rubbing against the printhead occurs such as when using paper that tends to curl.

- **Cut Speed**

This selects the auto cut speed.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
Fast	Select this setting if cutting with the **Standard** setting is not clean.
Standard	Select this setting when you are not experiencing problems.
Slow	This helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you select it when using adhesive paper.

- **Calibration Value**

When calibration has been carried out on the printer, use this setting to choose whether or not to use the results.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
Use Value	The calibration results are used for printing.
Disregard Value	The calibration results are not used for printing. Select this option to avoid changes to image color tones during printing due to color calibration.

- **Mirror**

Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

- **Unidirectional Printing**

Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

- **High-Precision Text and Fine Lines**

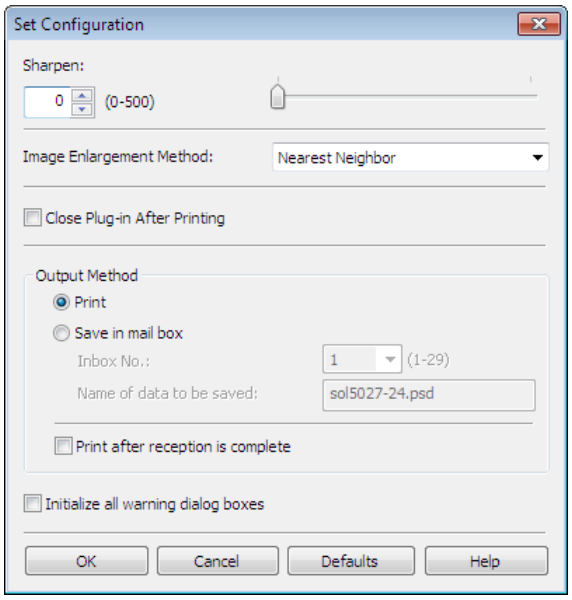
Print increasing ink impact accuracy, particularly for sharper text and fine lines. However, this takes more time than regular printing.

Note

- When **Highest (Max. No. of Passes)** is selected as the print mode, **High-Precision Text and Fine Lines** cannot be selected.

Set Configuration Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Set Configuration** button on the **Main** Sheet. You can set the adjustment of image sharpness and image enlargement method.



- **Sharpen**

  Performs adjustment of the sharpness (outline) settings.

- **Image Enlargement Method**

  You can select the image enlargement method.

  The following settings are available for the image enlargement method.

Setting	Details
Nearest Neighbor	Performs simple enlargement.
Bilinear	Performs line vector enlargement.
Bicubic	Adjust pixels with calculation of elements such as a color or brightness of neighboring pixels.

- **Close Plug-in After Printing**

  When you place a checkmark here, the plug-in closes after printing finishes.

  Note

  - If printing does not finish correctly because it was canceled or an error occurred, the plug-in does not close.

- **Output Method**

  You can select the output method.

  The following settings are available for the output method.

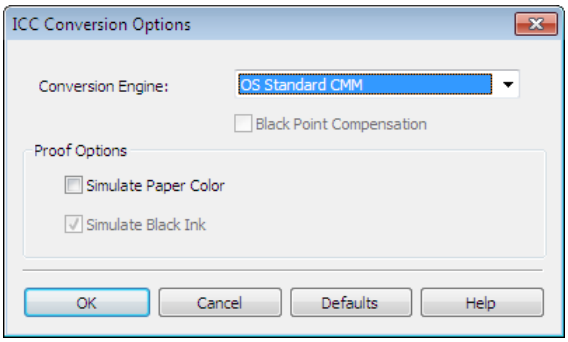
Setting	Details
Print	Normal printing. The print job data is stored temporarily in the box as the job prints.
Save in mail box	Saves the print data in the mail box. If you select **Save in mail box**, you must specify **Name of data to be saved**.
Print after reception is complete	When you place a checkmark here, you can print after saving jobs in the temporary storage space. This cannot be used when **Save in mail box** is selected.

- **Initialize all warning dialog boxes**

  When this is checked, all of the warning dialog boxes that have been set to "Do not show this screen again" become displayed.

ICC Conversion Options dialog box

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected in the **Output Profile** list in the **Main** sheet and the **ICC Conversion Options** button is clicked. This allows you to configure detailed color matching related settings.



- **Conversion Engine**

  Selects the conversion engine to use when converting colors.

  Note
  - Adobe CMM needs to be installed in order to use **Adobe CMM**. Refer to "**Using Adobe CMM**" ➔P.277 for details on how to install Adobe CMM.

- **Black Point Compensation**

  Check this check box to perform black point compensation. Loss of gradation in dark areas can be improved by performing black point compensation.

  Note
  - This can be used if **Adobe CMM** is selected as the **Conversion Engine**.

- **Proof Options**

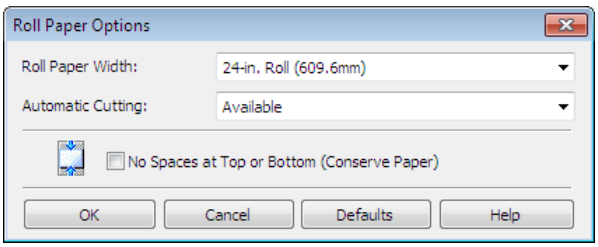
  Configures settings related to printing press simulation.

  The proof options consist of the following settings.

Setting	Details
Simulate Paper Color	Select this when performing paper color simulation. When this is on, **Simulate Black Ink** is automatically turned on and becomes grayed out.
Simulate Black Ink	Select this when performing simulation of black ink. In order to enable this setting, **Adobe CMM** needs to be selected under **Conversion Engine**.

Roll Paper Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Roll Paper Options** button on the **Page Setup** Sheet. You can set the roll paper width and perform the auto cut settings.



- **Roll Paper Width**

  This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.

- **Automatic Cutting**

  You can set the printer to cut roll paper automatically or print a guideline for cutting.

  The following settings are available for automatic cutting.

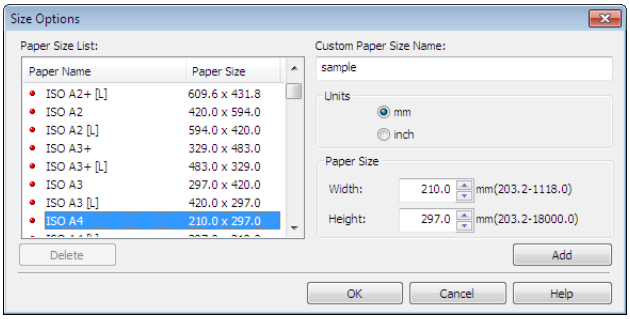
Setting	Details
Available	Each page is automatically cut after it is printed.
None	Each page is not cut after it is printed and printing continues without interruption.
Print Cut Guideline	A print cut guideline is printed after each page and printing continues without interruption.

- **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**

  When you place a checkmark here, the print data is printed without margins.

Size Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Size Options** button on the **Page Setup** Sheet. You can select a media name, size and other settings.



- **Paper Size List**

  Displays all the standard sizes and custom media sizes.

- **Custom Paper Size Name**

  You can enter any name up to 63 characters.

- **Units**

  You can select the units of measure to use when you define custom media size. Switching this setting resets the units of measure for the entire Plug-In.

- **Paper Size**

  Width

  Enter the width of the media size.

  Height

  Enter the height of the media size.

  Note

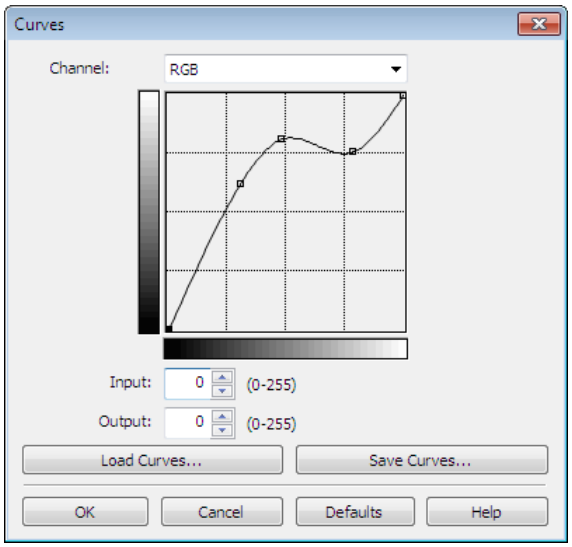
  - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Add** button

  Click the button to register the contents of the settings.

Curves Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Curves** button on the **Color Settings** Sheet. You can set **Channel** and other settings.



- **Channel**

  Select from among **RGB**, **Red**, **Green**, or **Blue**.

  Note
  - Gray is displayed for monochrome printing and this selection cannot be changed.

- **Input**

  Enter an input value.

  Note
  - The allowed entry range is 0 to 255.
  - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Output**

  Enter an output value.

  Note
  - The allowed entry range is 0 to 255.
  - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Load Curves** button

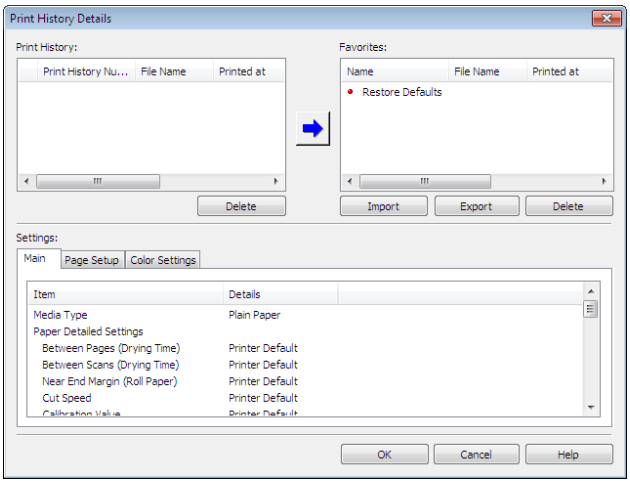
  Click the button to load stored data for a tone curve.

- **Save Curves** button

  Click the button to stores the current tone curve settings.

Print History Details Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Details** button on the **Print History** Sheet. This controls print history. For more information about **Print History Details**, see "**Utilize Print History**." →P.286



- **Print History**

Print History appears in list format.

Display Items	Details
Print History Number	Displays the print history number.
File Name	Displays image file name.
Printed at	Displays time and date of printing.
Comment	Displays comment details.

Note
- Up to 200 print history items can be displayed. All items above 200 are deleted.
- When you cannot print properly because you canceled the printing or an error occurred, appears ✕ to the left of the print history number.

- **Delete** button

Click the button to delete the selected print history.

- **Add** button

Click the button to add the selected print history to preferences.

Note
- Up to 200 print preference items can be added.

- **Favorites**

The print history stored in print preferences displays in list format.

Note
- You can change the order by selecting an item and dragging it to another place.

- **Import** button

Click the button to import print history saved as a file.

- **Export** button

Click the button to save print history as a file that is stored in print preferences.

- **Delete** button

  Click the button to delete print history stored in print preferences.

- **Settings**

  Displays the print history settings selected from the **Print History** or **Favorites**.

Setting	Details
Main	When you select this the **Main** sheet settings are displayed.
Page Setup	When you select this the **Page Setup** sheet settings are displayed.
Color Settings	When you select this the **Color Settings** sheet settings are displayed.

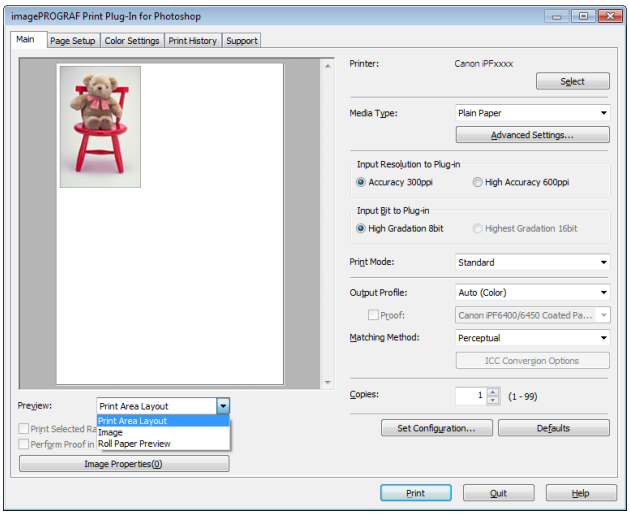
Utilize Three Types of Previews

You can use Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional to check an image in three types of previews.
The preview types are as follows.

- **Check Image with Print Area Layout** →P.268
- **Check the original image with Image** →P.269
- **Check Image with Roll Paper Preview** →P.269

Check Image with Print Area Layout

Displays the print range and the area out of the print range in the layout matching the media size set in the print area layout.
Select **Print Area Layout** in **Preview**.

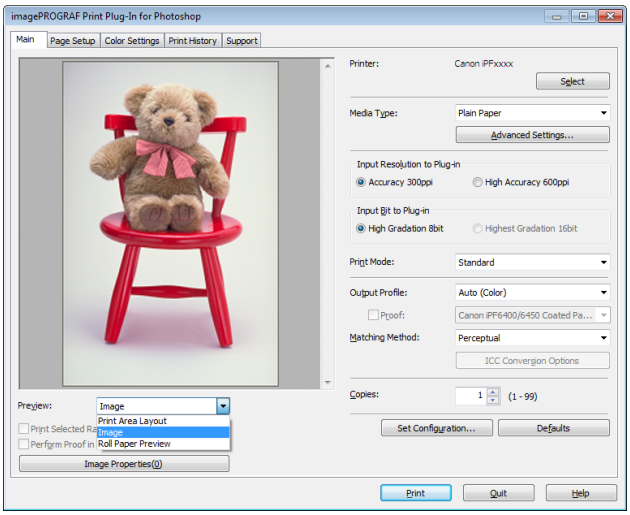


Note

- When the cursor on the preview is displayed as on the preview, you can specify the print position by dragging the image.
- When the cursor is displayed as on the preview, the below conditions on the **Page Setup** sheet have all been met.
  - There is no checkmark in **Borderless Printing**.
  - There is no checkmark in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** or **Scaling** has been selected.

Check the original image with Image

In the image preview you can check the entire image that you have input.
Select **Image** in **Preview**.

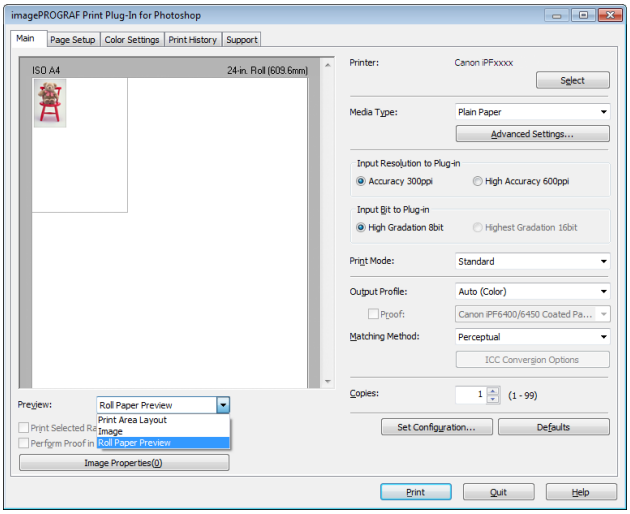


Note

- When the cursor appears as a small magnifying glass while there is an **Image** in the **Preview** area, the **Print Selected Range** feature is enabled and you an drag the cursor on the image and select an area for printing.
- When you click the image while the cursor is displayed as on the preview, the selected area is deselected.

Check Image with Roll Paper Preview

Display the media size and roll paper information on the top in the layout printing on roll paper in Roll Paper Preview
Select **Roll Paper Preview** in **Preview**.



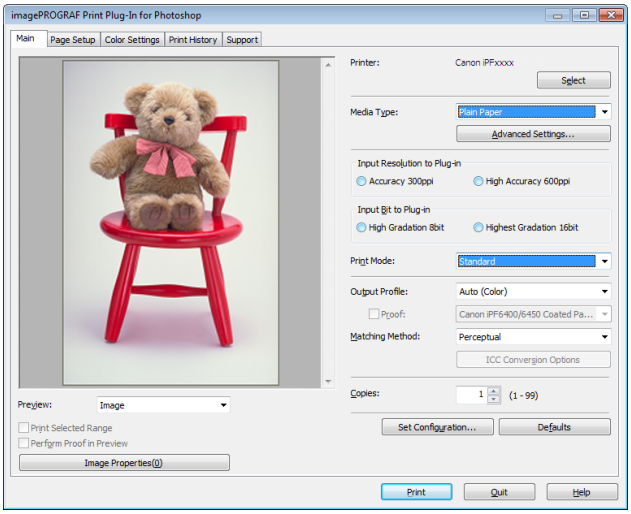
Note

- To select **Roll Paper Preview** in **Preview**, select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

Print with a Desired Picture Quality

You can specify and print at the resolution you desire.

1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select the media set to the printer in **Media Type**.

Note
- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

3 Choose either **Accuracy 300ppi** or **High Accuracy 600ppi** for the resolution to process images in **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

Note
- When you select **Accuracy 300ppi** images are processed at an accurate resolution. This can control print speed and memory capacity.
- When you select **High Accuracy 600ppi** images are processed at a more accurate resolution. This setting results in the best print quality, but this takes more time to print than **Accuracy 300ppi** while also requiring more memory capacity.
- **High Accuracy 600ppi** will not display with some **Media Type** settings.

4 Choose either **High Gradation 8bit** or **Highest Gradation 16bit** for the bit number when processing images in **Input Bit to Plug-in**.

Note
- When you select **High Gradation 8bit**, images are processed at 8 bit/channel (24 bit).
- When you select **Highest Gradation 16bit**, images are processed at 16bit/channel (48 bit).
- **Highest Gradation 16bit** will not display with some **Media Type** or **Input Resolution to Plug-in** settings.

5 Select the mode to be printed when processing images in **Print Mode**.

Note
- The settings that can be selected differ by **Media Type**, **Input Resolution to Plug-in**, and **Input Bit to Plug-in** selected.

6 Click the **Print** button.

Printing begins.

Adjust the Colors and Print

You can adjust the colors to your liking and print images.
The explanation below is on 6 ways to adjust the colors using Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional.

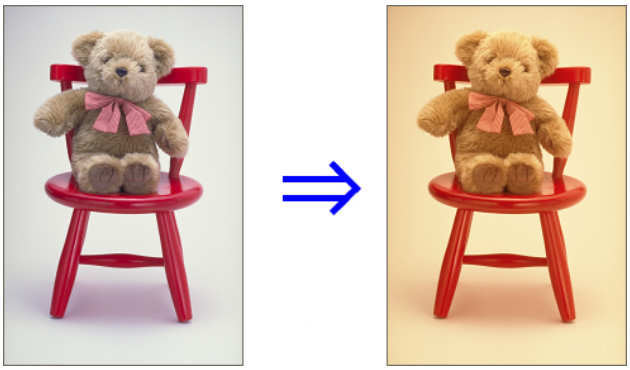
- **Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color)** ➔P.271
- **Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome)** ➔P.272
- **Adjust the Colors by Color Matching** ➔P.274
- **Print High-Quality Adobe RGB 16bit Images** ➔P.275
- **Prints monochrome photographs with high quality** ➔P.276
- **Using Adobe CMM** ➔P.277

Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color)

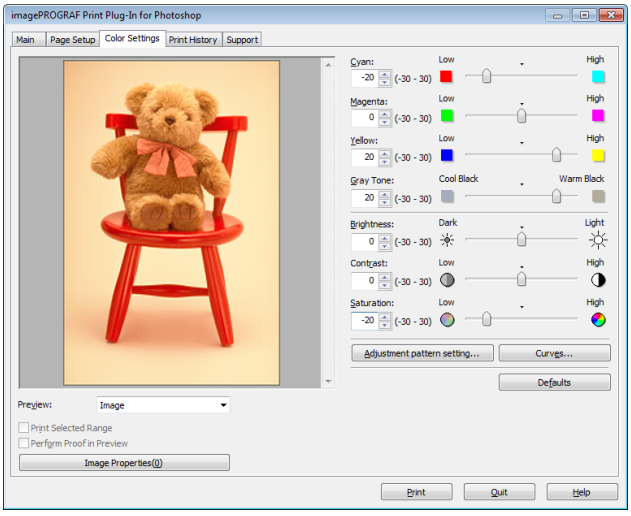
You can adjust the colors while checking the adjustments in the preview.
The following explanation is on the procedures for adjusting example image below.

- **Low** for **Cyan**
- **High** for **Yellow**
- **Low** for **Saturation**
- **Warm Black** for **Gray Tone**
- Enhance brightness for the curves

The above image adjustments are reflected in the before and after images below.



1 Display the **Color Settings** sheet.



2 Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Low** in **Cyan**.

3 Drag the slide bar in the direction of **High** in **Yellow**.

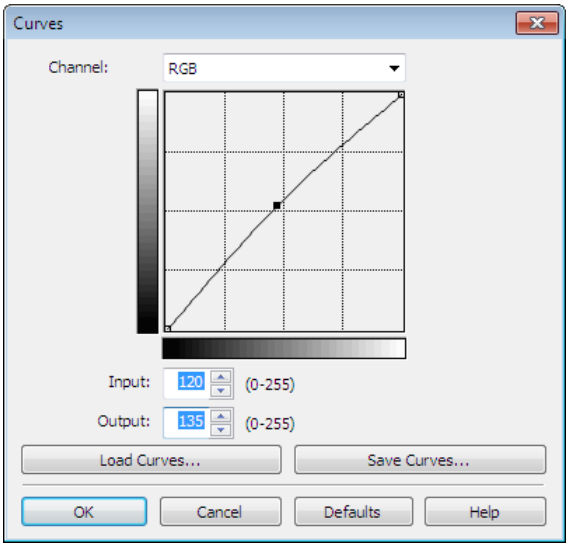
4 Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Low** in **Saturation**.

5 Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Warm Black** in **Gray Tone**.

Note
- You can change the numbers by inputting in numerical characters.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

6 Click the **Curves** button then click near the center of the curve.

7 Enter 120 in **Input** and 135 in **Output** then click the **OK** button.



8 Click the **Print** button.

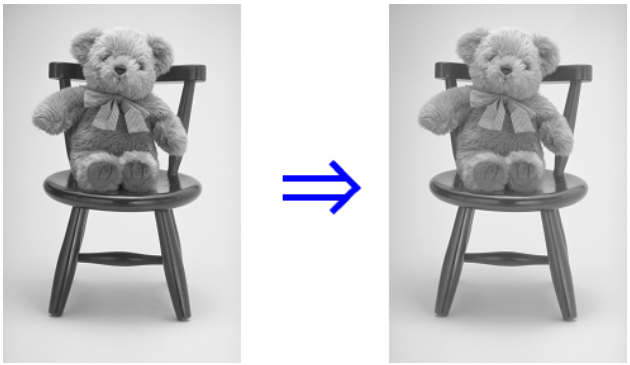
The adjustments are reflected in the image and printing begins.

Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome)

You can adjust the colors while checking the adjustments in the preview.
The following explanation is about the procedures for adjusting example image below.

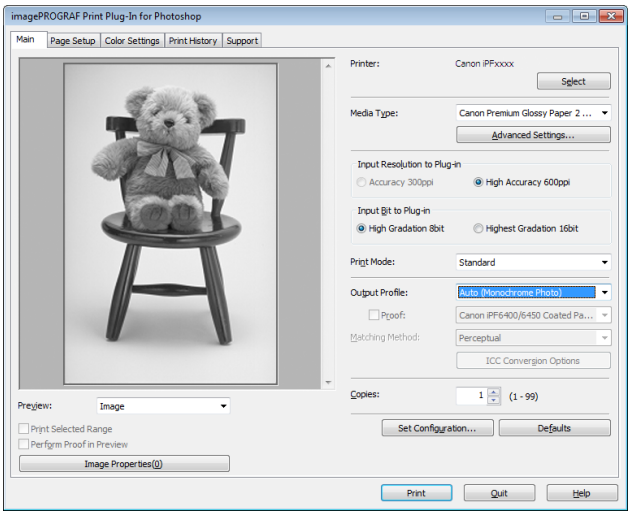
- **Low** for **Contrast**
- **Light** for **Highlight**
- **Light** for **Shadow**
- Enhance brightness for the curves

The unapplied and the applied images of the above image adjustments are as below.

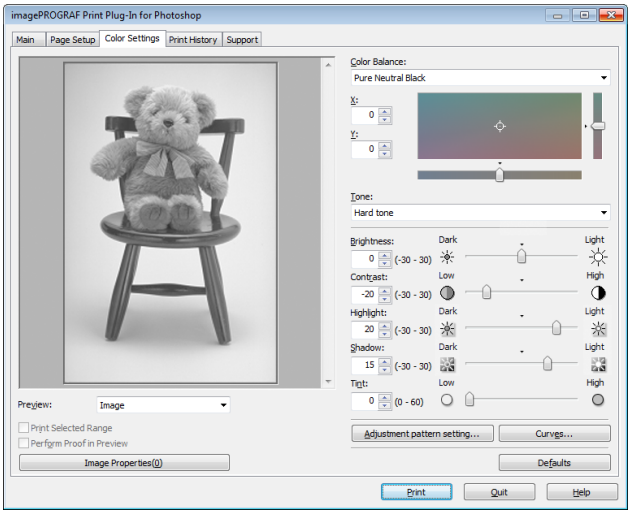


1 Open the **Main** sheet.

2 Select **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** in **Output Profile**.



3 Open the **Color Settings** sheet.



4 In **Contrast**, drag the slide bar toward **Low**.

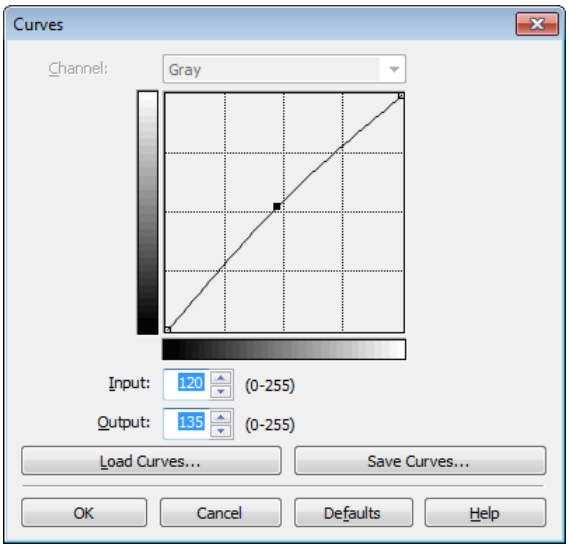
5 In **Highlight**, drag the slide bar toward **Light**.

6 In **Shadow**, drag the slide bar toward **Light**.

Note
- You can change the numbers by inputting in numerical characters.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

7 Click the **Curves** button then click near the center of the curve.

8 Enter 120 in **Input** and 135 in **Output** then click the **OK** button.



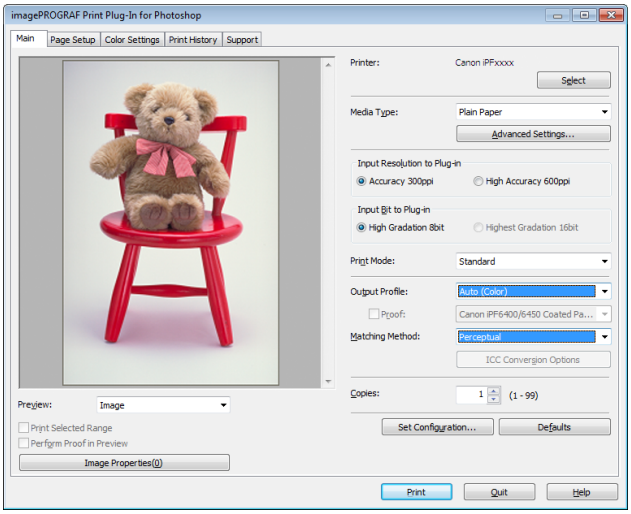
9 Click the **Print** button.

This applies the image adjustments and starts the print job.

Adjust the Colors by Color Matching

When you print a color image imported from a scanner or a digital camera, the image may appear different from the image on the screen. That is due to the differences in color on the screen and in the printer. In Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional, you can get the color balance of the print product closer to the color balance displayed on the screen through performing ICC (International Color Consortium) color profile settings, matching method settings, and settings for the internal profile, which performs optimum color conversion in response to media and resolution settings.

1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select the profile in **Output Profile**.

Note

- When you place a checkmark in **Perform Proof in Preview**, you can check the color matching in the preview. This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type**.
- The details of **Output Profile** you have set is saved even when you close the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/ Digital Photo Professional, but when the specified profile cannot be located it is set to **Auto (Color)**.
- If an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**, Adobe CMM can be selected as the color conversion engine. Refer to "**Using Adobe CMM**" ➔P.277 for details.

3 Select the profile matching method in **Matching Method**.

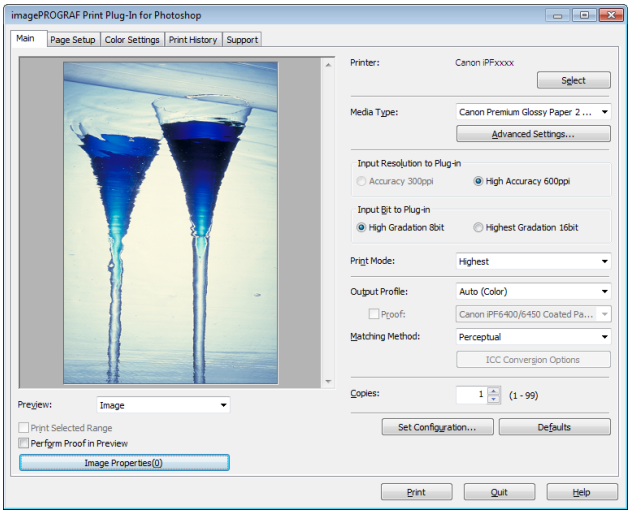
4 Click the **Print** button.

Printing begins with the output profile and matching method that you have set.

Print High-Quality Adobe RGB 16bit Images

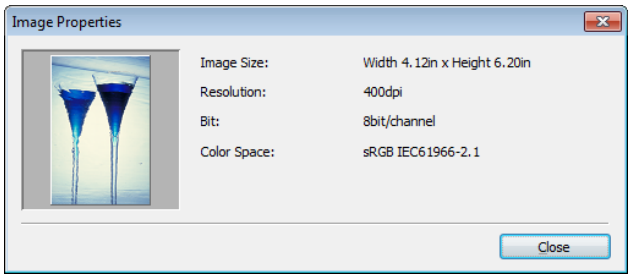
This prints a high-quality Adobe RGB 16bit image taken with a high-end digital camera. Print Plug-In for Photoshop/ Digital Photo Professional allows you to print high color gamut and high tone images, when the Adobe RGB 16bit image data has been retouched in Photoshop, without compromising the level of tone in the image.

1 Select the Adobe RGB 16bit image data in Photoshop and start Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional. (See "**Starting from Photoshop.**") ➔P.243

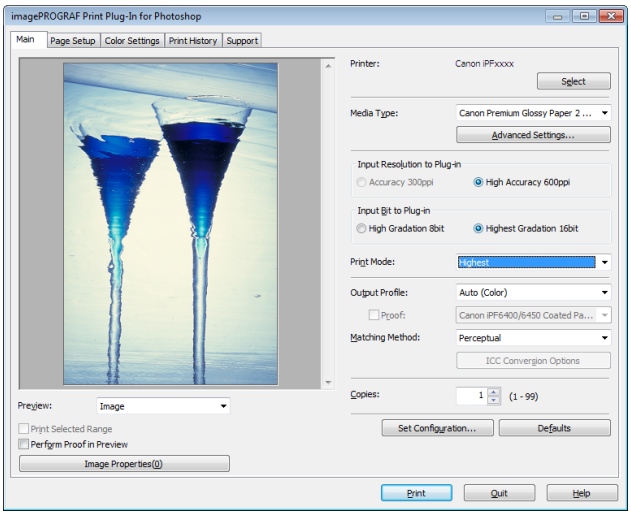


2 Click **Image Properties** button.

3 Check that **Adobe RGB** is displayed in **Color Space**, and **16bit/channel** is displayed in **Bit** in the **Image Properties** dialog box, and click the **Close** button.



4 Display the **Main** sheet.



5 Select **High Accuracy 600ppi** in **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

6 Select **Highest Gradation 16bit** in **Input Bit to Plug-in**.

7 Select the highest quality possible in **Print Mode**.

8 If required, adjust the colors using color matching.

Note

- For more information about the color matching, see "**Adjust the Colors by Color Matching.**" ➔P.274

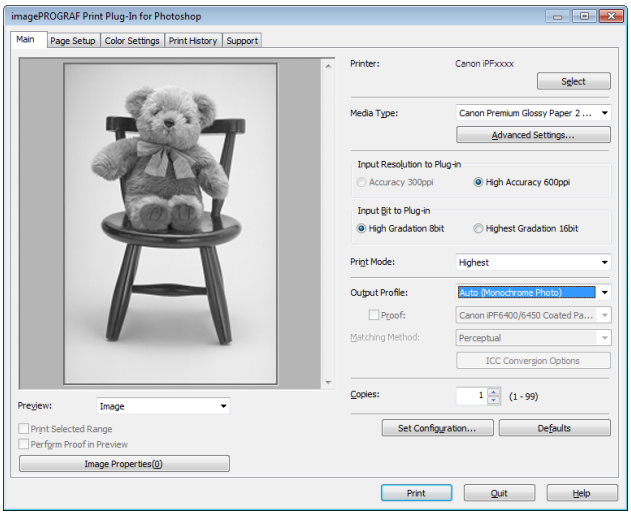
9 Click the **Print** button.

Printing of the Adobe RGB 16bit image begins.

Prints monochrome photographs with high quality

Prints images captured with a scanner or digital camera in monochrome with high quality. Provides stable monochrome photo images without color casts and minimizes the influences of the difference of the light source.

1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** in **Output Profile**.

Note
- **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** can be selected only after a compatible **Media Type** has been selected.

3 Click the **Print** button.

Performs conversion to the most suitable monochrome and printing begins.

Using Adobe CMM

Adobe CMM is a color conversion engine made by Adobe. Using Adobe CMM makes it possible to obtain uniform color conversion results and to use the black point compensation function.

• How to Obtain Adobe CMM

Adobe CMM can be obtained using the following procedure.

1 Open the Adobe website (http://www.adobe.com).

2 Enter "Adobe CMM" in the search input box on the screen.

3 Search for the "Adobe Color Management Module (CMM)" item and select the Windows version.

4 Download the file by following the on-screen directions.

5 Start the installer in the downloaded file to perform the installation.

Important
- Use version 1.1 or higher of Adobe CMM.

• Adobe CMM System Requirements

The system requirements for Adobe CMM are as follows.

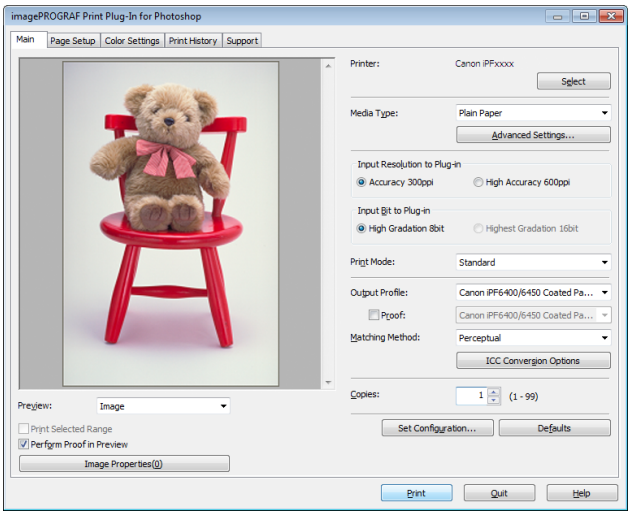
- Supported OS
  Windows XP SP2, Windows Vista
- Supported CPU
  Intel Xeon, Xeon Dual, Intel Centrino, Pentium 4 processor

Note
- Check with Adobe for details.

• How to Use Adobe CMM

The procedure for using Adobe CMM is as follows.

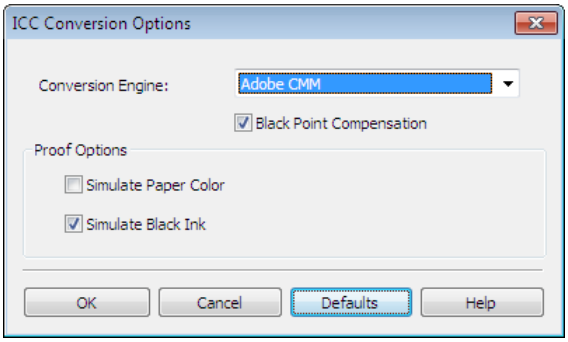
1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3 Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button.

4 In the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box, select **Adobe CMM** from **Conversion Engine**.



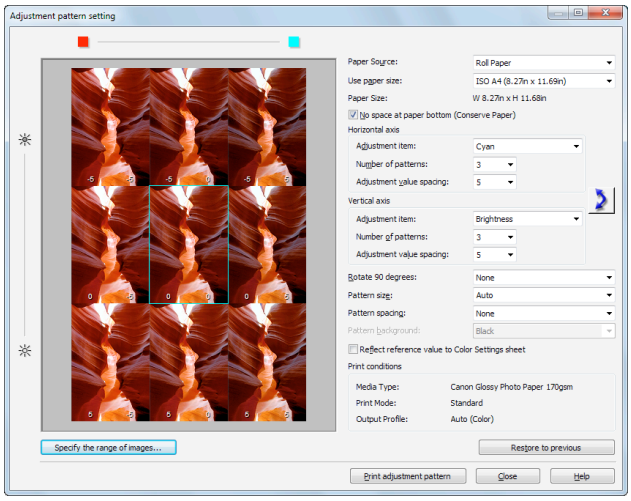
5 Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

Printing an Adjustment Pattern and Selecting Adjustment Values

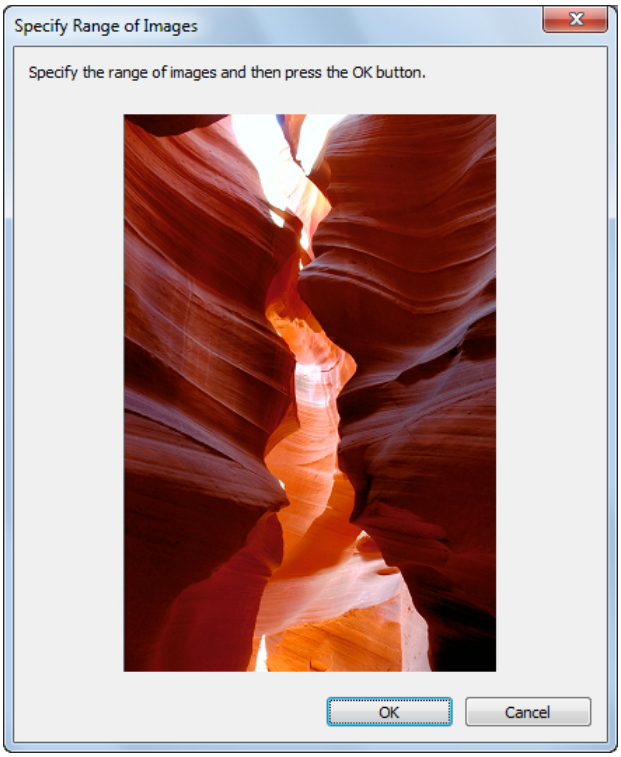
Since you can print an adjustment pattern and select your preferred adjustment values while comparing the images, this allows you to conserve ink and paper, and save the time it takes to repeatedly check adjustment results.
The procedure for displaying and printing an adjustment pattern is as follows.

1 Display the **Color Settings** sheet (color or monochrome) and set the adjustment values to use as the baseline values.

2 Click the **Adjustment pattern setting** button to display the **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box.



3 Set the **Adjustment Item**, **Number of Patterns**, and **Adjustment Value Spacing** for the **Horizontal Axis** and **Vertical Axis**.
If you want to check part of an image as the adjustment pattern, click the **Specify the Range of Images** button, select the range you want to check in the **Specify the Range of Images** dialog box, and then click the **OK** button.



4 Set **Rotate 90 degrees**, **Pattern Size**, **Pattern Spacing**, and **Pattern Background** as needed.

5 For the **Paper Source** setting, select how the paper to print on is to be supplied.

6 For the **Use Paper Size** setting, select the paper size to print on.

7 Click the **Print Adjustment Pattern** button.
The adjustment pattern starts printing.

8 Check the image in the adjustment pattern that is closest to the customer image and click the corresponding image in the preview area.

9 If there are any other items that you want to adjust, select **Adjustment Item** and perform steps 7 and 8.

10 Once you have made the necessary adjustments, select the **Update Base Values in the Color Settings Sheet** check box and click the **Close** button.
The previous adjustment values in the **Color Settings** sheet (color or monochrome) are updated.

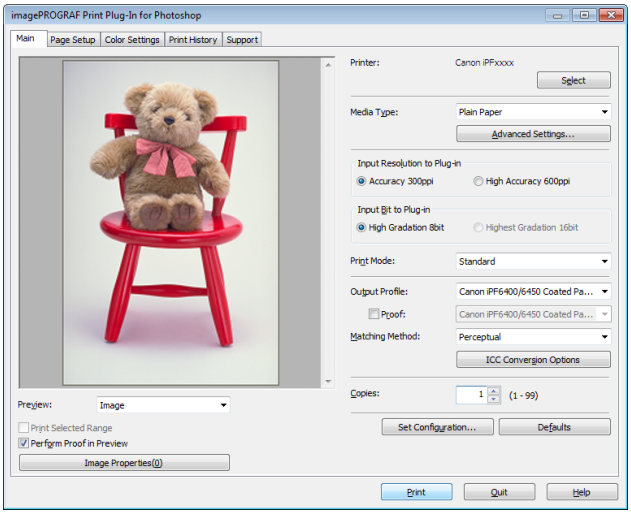
Perform Black Point Compensation

Black point compensation that is equivalent to Photoshop can be performed using the following procedure. Use this to avoid saturation in the black areas of images.

Important

- Adobe CMM needs to be installed in order to use black point compensation. Refer to "Using Adobe CMM" →P.277 for details on how to install Adobe CMM.

1 Display the **Main** sheet.

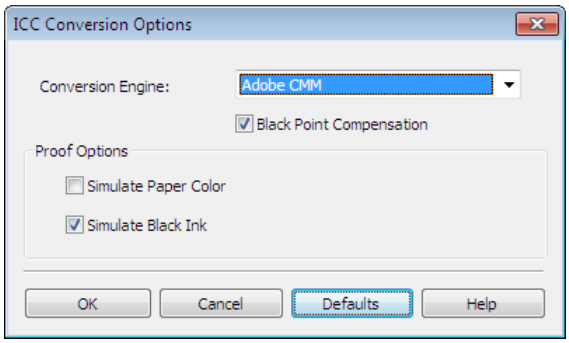


2 Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3 Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button to open the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

4 Select **Adobe CMM** as the **Conversion Engine**.

5 Check the **Black Point Compensation** check box.

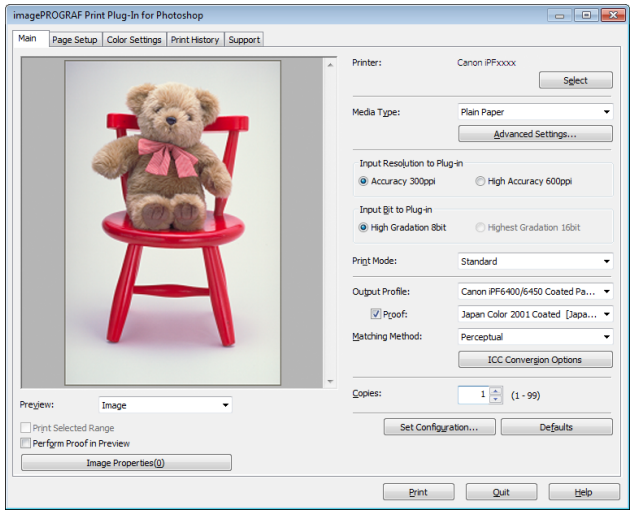


6 Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

Perform Printing Press Simulation Print

You can perform printing press simulation prints by specifying ICC profiles such as Japan Color or SWOP, and specifying an ICC profile for the printing press.

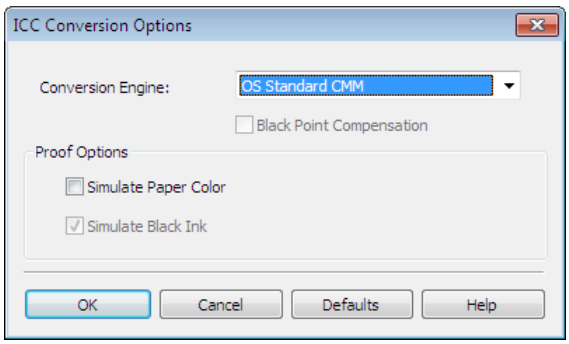
1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3 Check the **Proof** check box and select the profile for the printing press you want to target from the list on the right.

4 Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button to open the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.



5 Configure the **Proof Options** as needed.

Note
- The proof options are **Simulate Paper Color** and **Simulate Black Ink**. The settings that can be selected vary depending on the **Conversion Engine** settings.

6 Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

7 Click the **Print** button.
Printing begins.

Enlarge/Reduce and Print

You can enlarge or reduce an image in Print Plug-In.
Three methods to enlarge/reduce and print are as follows.

- **Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size** →P.282
- **Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper** →P.283

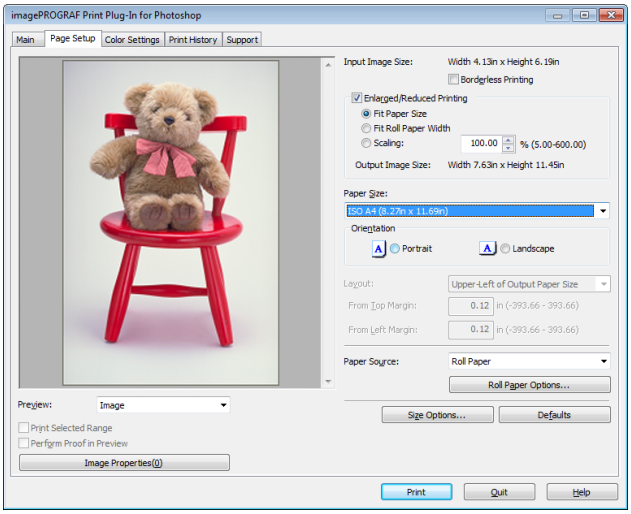
- **Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print** →P.284

Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size

By specifying the media type loaded in the printer, the image can be enlarged or reduced to fit the size of the image area of the media. This feature is useful when you need to print on the full width of Media that you have selected.

Note
- When you need to print on the full width of roll media, see "**Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper.**" →P.283
- When you do the procedure below to print on roll media, the print job will match the size of the output with the media selected with the **Paper Size** setting.

1 Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



2 Select the size of the media that you want to print in **Paper Size**.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
- This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width**is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

3 Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

Note
- When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
- When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

4 Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

5 Select **Fit Paper Size**.

6 Click the **Print** button.

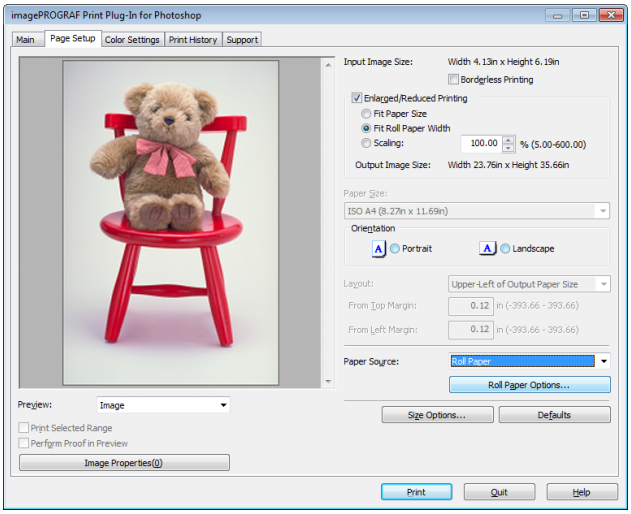
The image prints filling the entire output media surface.

Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper

You can enlarge/reduce and print an image matching the width of the roll paper set in the printer. This is useful when you wish to print an image that covers the entire width of the roll paper.

Note
- Printing will not occur properly when a print roll is not set to the printer.

1 Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



2 Select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

3 Click the **Roll Paper Options** button.

4 Set the roll paper options and click the **OK** button.

Note
- For more information about the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box, see "Roll Paper Options Dialog Box." →P.264
- Click the **Defaults** button to return all of the roll paper option settings to their defaults.

5 Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

Note
- When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
- When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

6 Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

7 Select **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

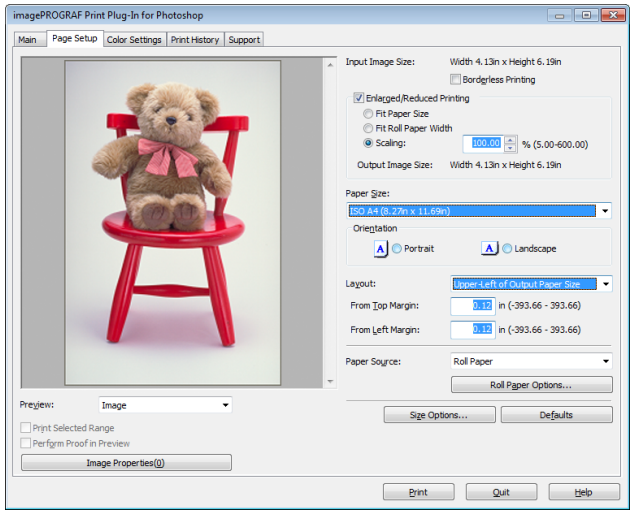
8 Click the **Print** button.

The image prints covering the entire width of the roll paper.

Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print

You can specify scaling to enlarge/reduce an image and print. This is useful when you wish to print an image at a specific size.

1 Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



2 Select the size of the media that you want to print in **Paper Size**.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
- **Fit Roll Paper Width**is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

3 Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

Note
- When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
- When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

4 Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

5 Select **Scaling** and input the scaling factor or drag the four corners of the image in the Preview display.

Note
- You can specify scaling rate in intervals of 0.01%.
- You can specify a range between 5.00-600.00%.
- The size of the width and height proportionally grow when the image is enlarged/reduced.

6 Either drag the image on the **Print Area Layout** preview, or set the print position **Layout**.

7 Click the **Print** button.

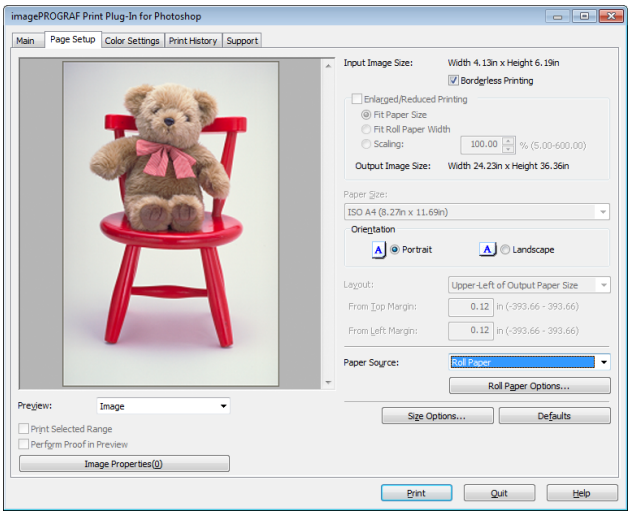
Printing begins at the set scaling rate.

Print with No Borders

You can use the borderless printing function to print without margins surrounding the image.

Note
- With some media borderless printing can be performed only between two edges.
- To use the borderless printing function, the specified media must be set to the printer.

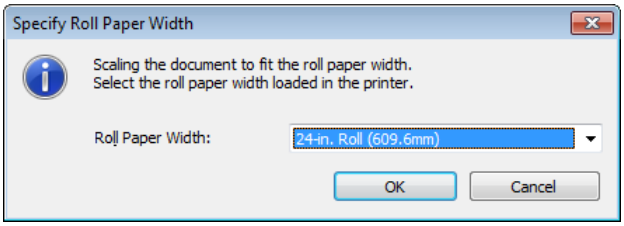
1 Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



2 Select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

3 Click the **Borderless Printing** check box on.

Note
- Select the width for roll paper set in the printer in **Roll Paper Width** in the **Specify Roll Paper Width** dialog box, and click **OK**.



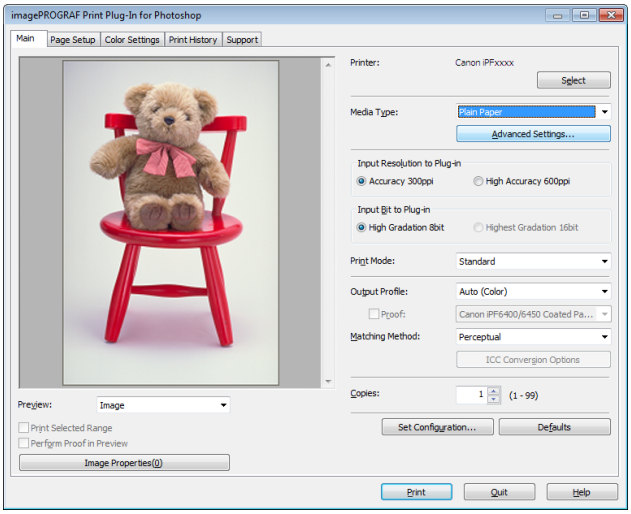
4 Click the **Print** button.

Borderless printing begins.

Customize Media Settings

You can customize media settings.

1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select the media type that you wish to customize in **Media Type**.

Note

- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

3 Click the **Advanced Settings** button.

4 Perform the settings in the **Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box** ➔P.261 and click the **OK** button.

Utilize Print History

When you perform various settings and print in Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional, those settings are saved as print history. Also, you can export and import as files. You can store often-used print history under a specified name in print preferences.

Note

- You can save up to 200 print history items. All items over 200 are deleted in chronological order.

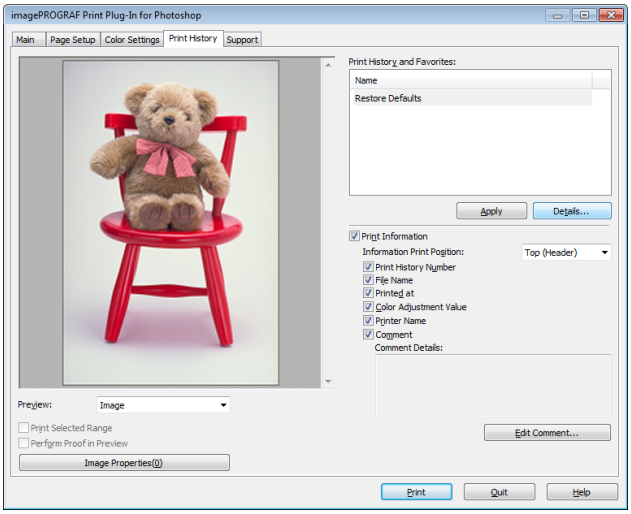
You can do the following things using print history.

- **Confirm Print History Details** ➔P.287
- **Apply Print History to an Image** ➔P.288
- **Store Print History to Print Preferences** ➔P.288
- **Delete Print History** ➔P.290
- **Export Print History from Print Preferences** ➔P.292
- **Import Print History to Print Preferences** ➔P.293
- **Delete Print History from Print Preferences** ➔P.295
- **Set Information to Print with Image** ➔P.296

Confirm Print History Details

You can confirm the print history details.

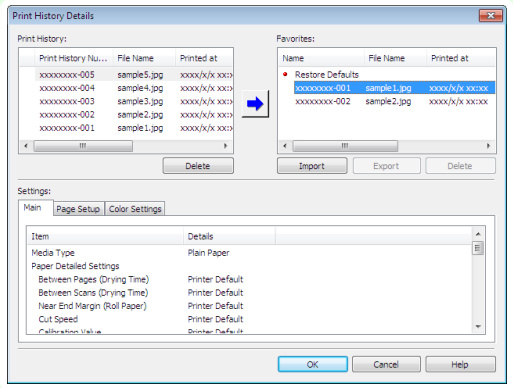
1 Display **Print History** sheet.



2 Click the **Details** button.

Note

- Select the print history you wish to check the details of, from either **Print History** or **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box.



3 Check the print history details in **Settings**, and click the **OK** button.

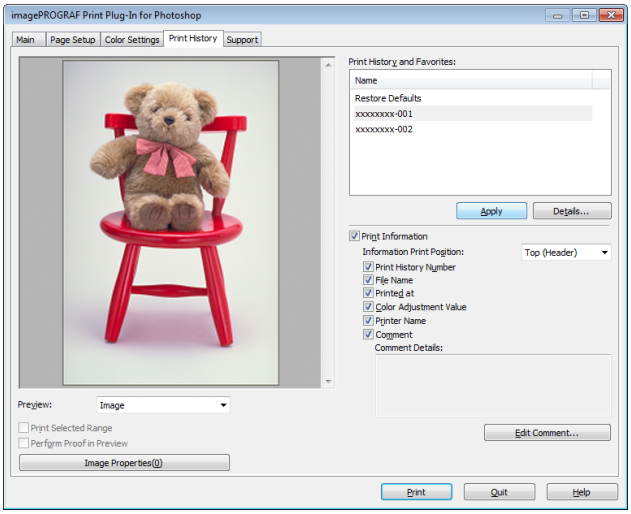
Note

- You can display the print history details by switching the sheets.

Apply Print History to an Image

You can use previous print history, and apply it to an image.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.



2 If required, check the print history details. (See "**Confirm Print History Details.**") ➔P.287

3 Select the print history you wish to apply from **Print History and Favorites**, and click the **Apply** button.

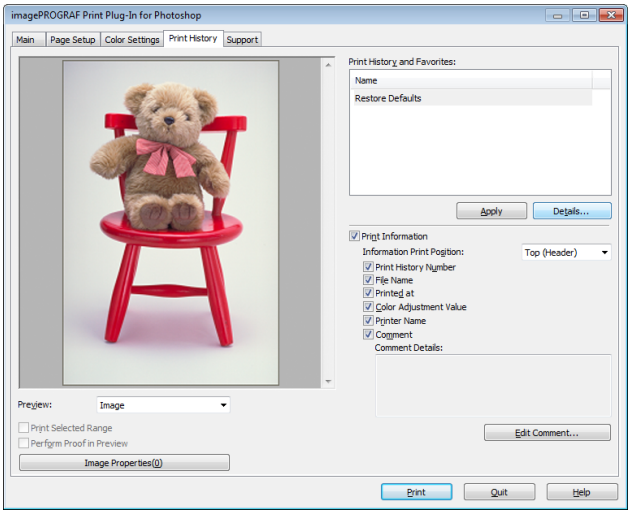
Store Print History to Print Preferences

You can store often-used print history to print preferences. Not only can you store the print history stored under a different name in print preferences, you can also find it with ease.

Note

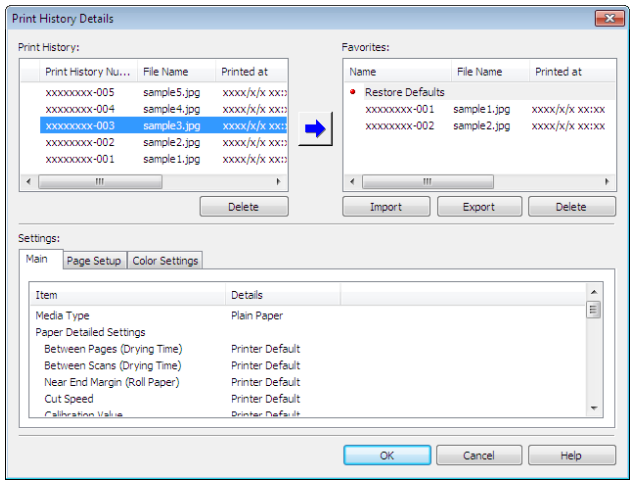
- You can store up to 200 print history items to print preferences.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.

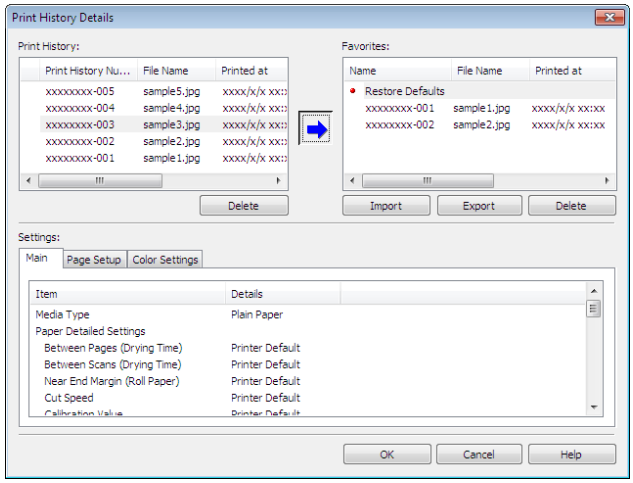


2 Click the **Details** button.

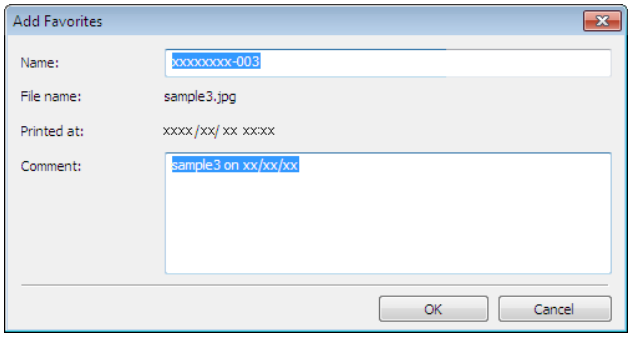
3 Select the print history you wish to store in print preferences from **Print History** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and check the print history details in **Settings**.



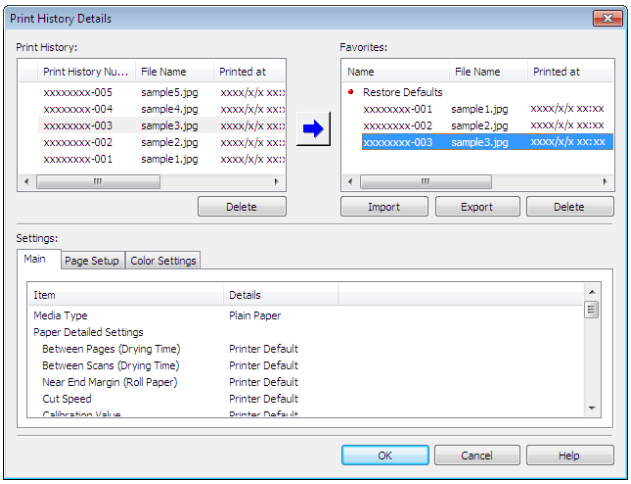
4 Select the print history you wish to store in print preferences from **Print History** and click the button.



5 In the **Add Favorites** dialog box input the name of the print history in **Name**, input a comment in **Comment**, and click the **OK** button.



6 Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



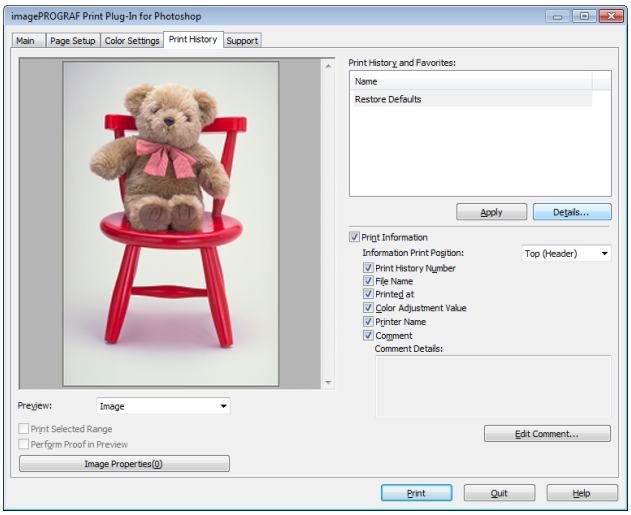
Delete Print History

You can delete print history.

Important

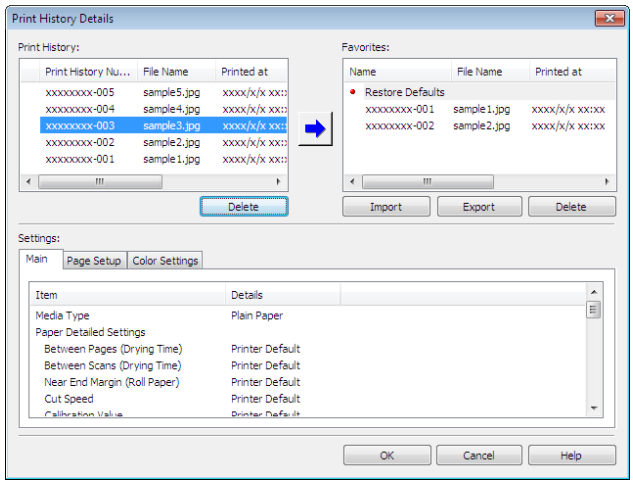
- Be aware that you cannot undo deletions of print history.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.

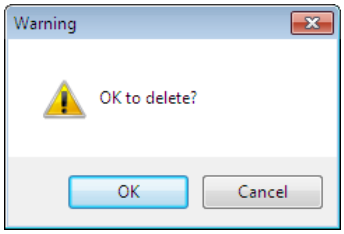


2 Click the **Details** button.

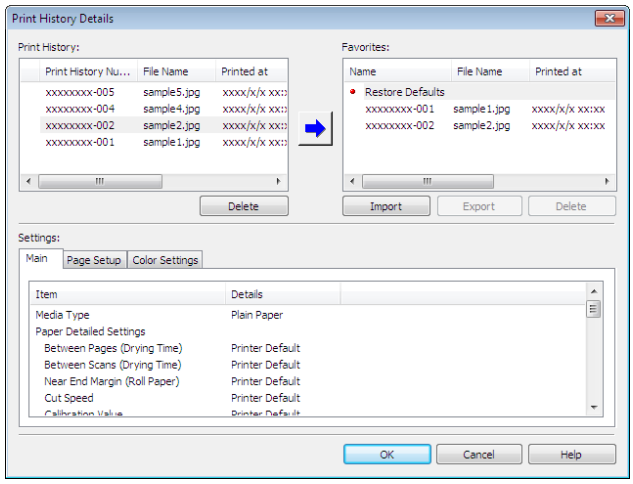
3 Select the print history you wish to delete from **Print History** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Delete** button.



4 Click the **OK** button.



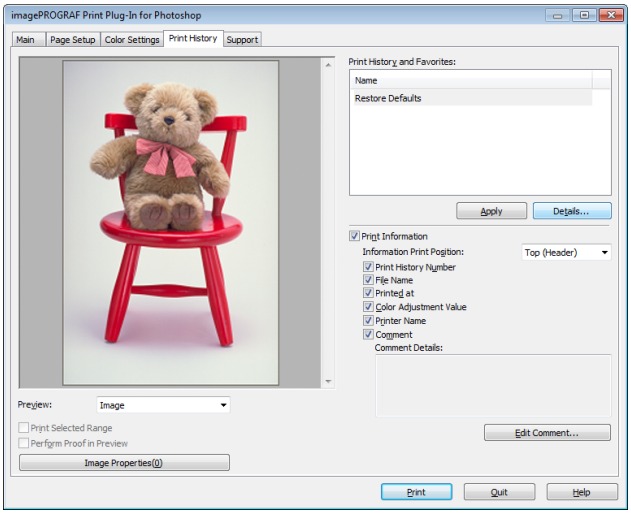
5 Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Export Print History from Print Preferences

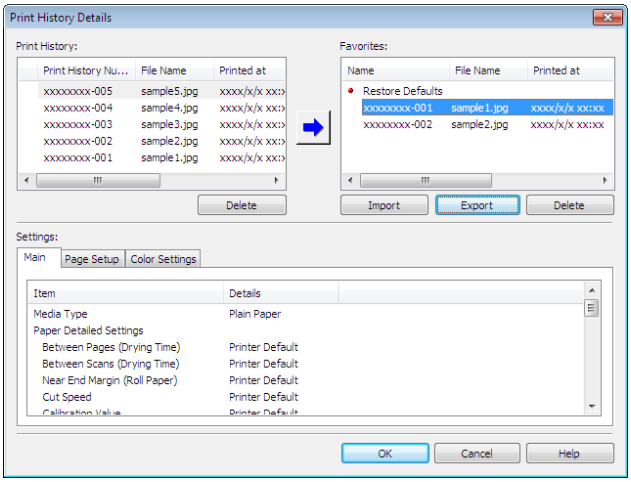
You can export print history stored in print preferences as a file.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.



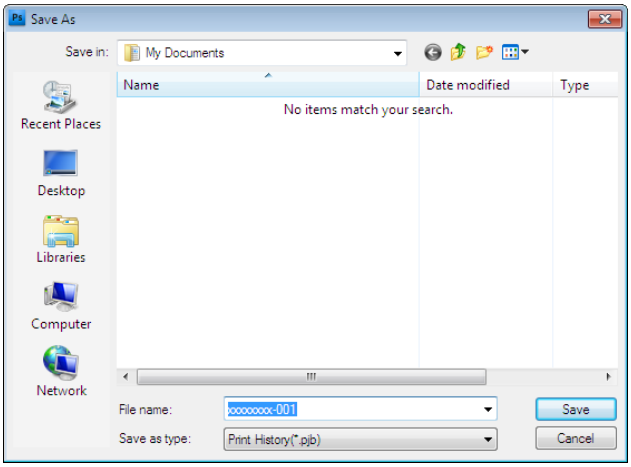
2 Click the **Details** button.

3 Select the print history you wish to export from **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Export** button.



4 Input the name of the print history in **File Name** in the **Save As** dialog box, and click the **Save** button.

The print history is exported under the specified file name.

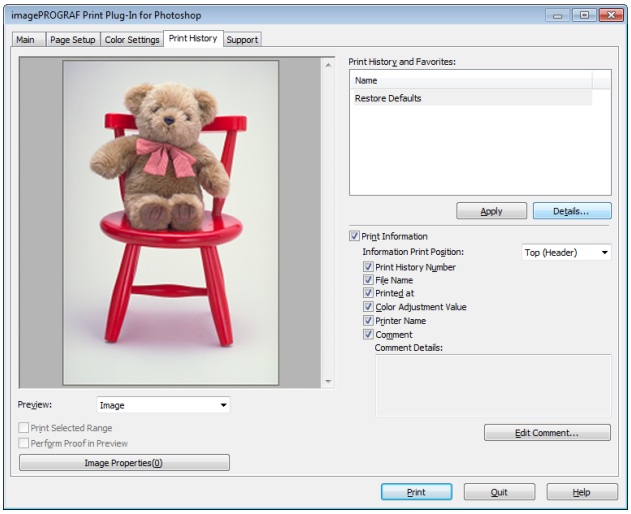


5 Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.

Import Print History to Print Preferences

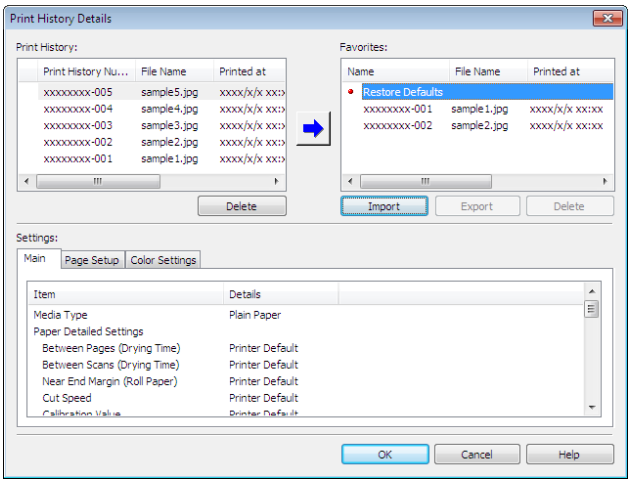
You can import print history in file format and store it to print preferences.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.



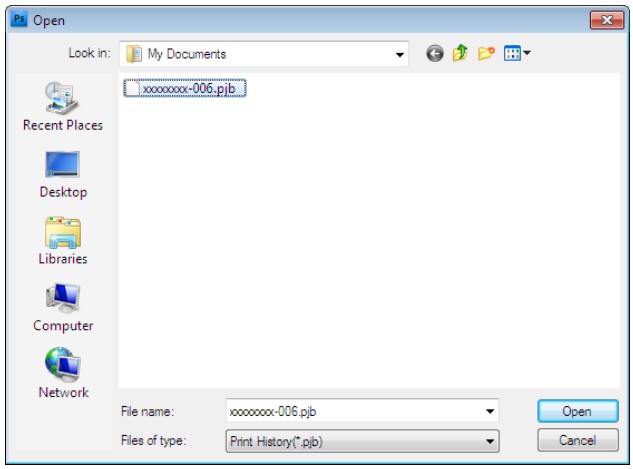
2 Click the **Details** button.

3 Click the **Import** button of the **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box.



4 Select the print history you wish to import in the **Open** dialog box, and click the **Open** button.

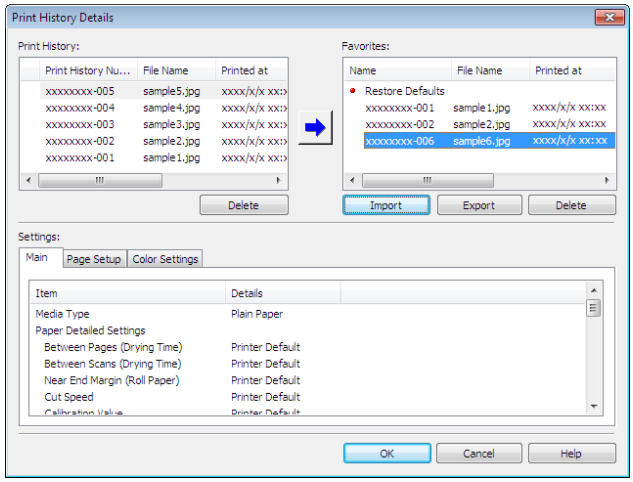
The print history is imported.



Note

- The print history file name suffix is *.pjb.
- You cannot import a print history file exported from a different OS in Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional.
- You cannot import a print history file exported from a different printer in Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional.

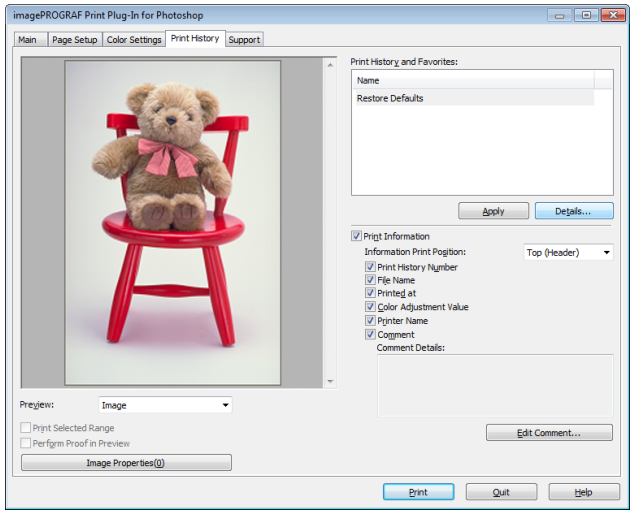
5 Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Delete Print History from Print Preferences

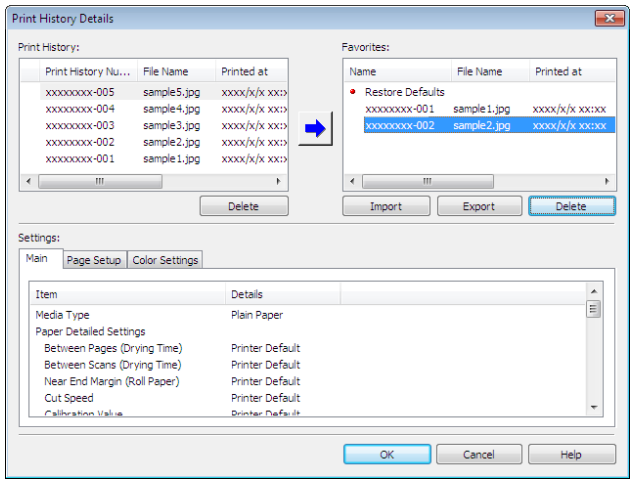
You can delete print history store to print preferences. You cannot store more than 200 print history items in print preferences.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.

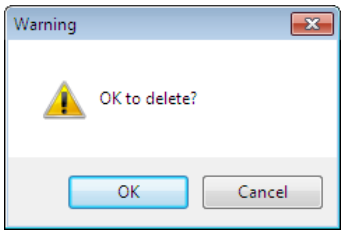


2 Click the **Details** button.

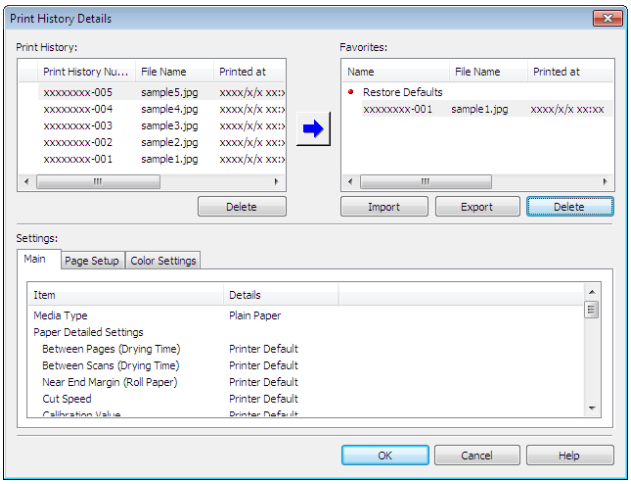
3 Select the print history you wish to delete from **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Delete** button.



4 Click the **OK** button.



5 Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



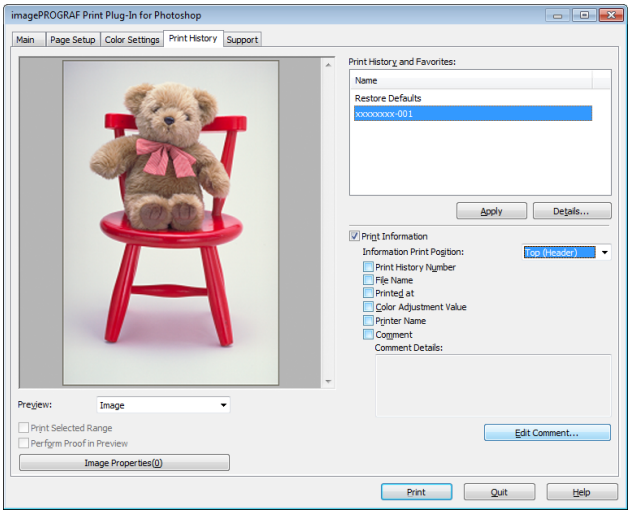
Set Information to Print with Image

You can print information with an image that is related, such as the file name and the time and date.

Note

- When you use the borderless printing function to print, the information will not be printed. (See "**Print with No Borders.**") ➔P.285
- When the printed information is too long as does not fit on the media, a break will appear in the printed information.
- The information may print on the image data with some media sizes, enlargement rates and print position values.
- When **Keep Media Size** is set to **On** on the printer, a portion of bottom of the print data is not printed.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.



2 Click the **Print Information** check box on.

3 Select the position where you wish to print the information in **Information Print Position**.

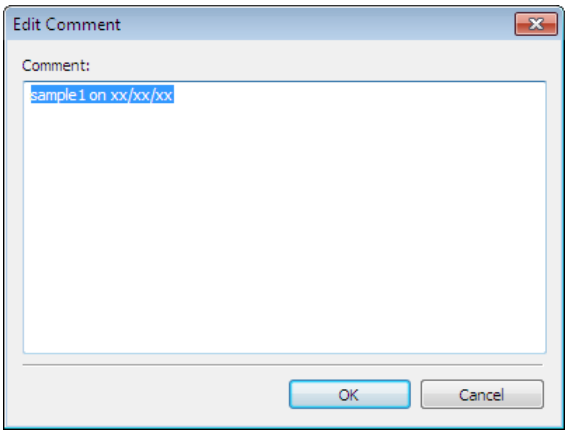
4 Click the information check box you wish to print on.

5 When you wish to edit the comment, click the **Edit Comment** button.

Note

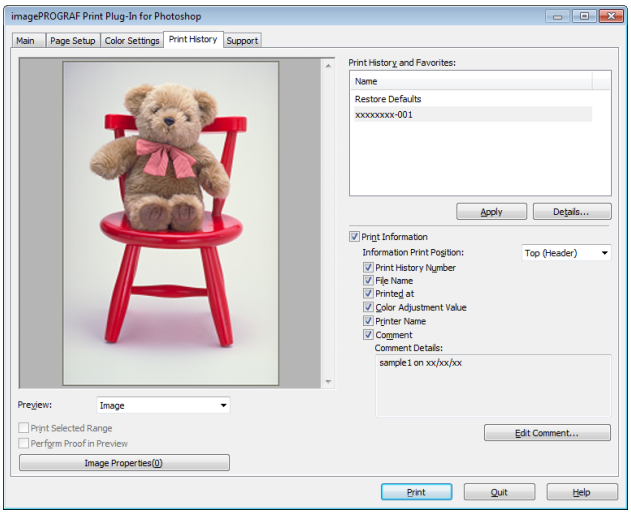
- When you do not wish to edit the comment, move to step 7.

6 Input the comment in the **Edit Comment** dialog box, and click **OK** button.



7 Click the **Print** button.

Comments are printed with images.

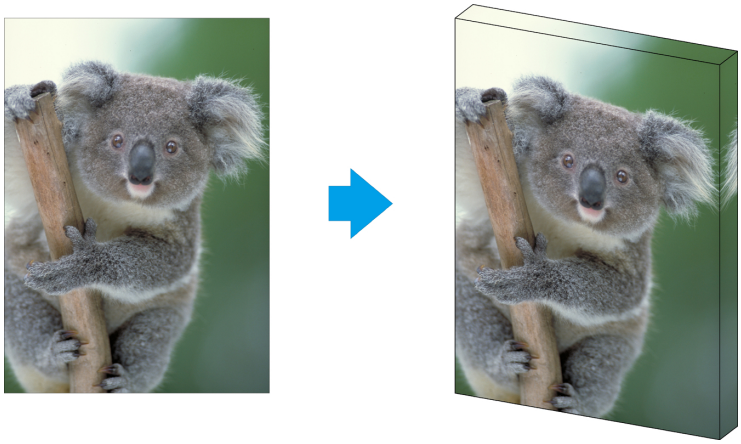


Layout Plug-In for Photoshop

About the Layout Plug-In 298
Layout Plug-In Main Window 298
Add Canvas Size dialog box 300
Creating and Printing a Layout Image for Mounting on a Frame 301

About the Layout Plug-In

When printing a photo to mount on a frame, you can start the Layout Plug-In from Photoshop and create a layout image where the image extends to the sides of the frame.



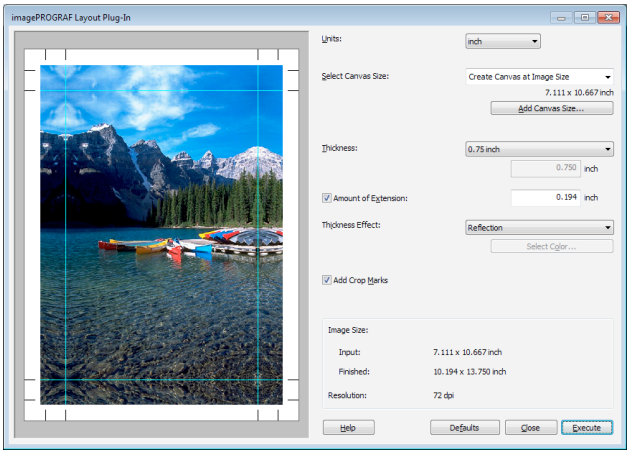
Note

- The Layout Plug-In can be used with Photoshop CS6, Photoshop CS5.1, and Photoshop CS5.
- Layout images created in the Layout Plug-In can be printed as-is from the Print Plug-In for Photoshop.

For details on the functionality of the Layout Plug-In, see **"Layout Plug-In Main Window."** ➔P.298
For details on how to start and how to use the Layout Plug-In, see **"Creating and Printing a Layout Image for Mounting on a Frame."** ➔P.301

Layout Plug-In Main Window

This window is for creating a layout image for finishing an image extended around the sides of the frame when printing a photo for mounting on a frame.
You can check the details of the settings in the preview area on the left side of the Layout Plug-In Main Window.



- **Units**

You can select the units from mm, inches, and pixels.

Important
- Since values entered in mm or inches are first converted temporarily to pixels and then reconverted to mm or inches, values may be displayed that differ from the entered values.

- **Select Canvas Size**

Selects the canvas size. If **Create the Canvas at the Image Size** is selected, the image size is treated as the canvas size. It is recommended that you provide a canvas that matches the image size.

- **Add Canvas Size** button

Click this button to display the **Add Canvas Size** dialog box and register a **Custom Canvas Size**. (See "**Add Canvas Size dialog box.**") ➔P.300

- **Thickness**

Specifies the thickness of the canvas (the width of the canvas sides). Although you can select from 0.75 inches (approx. 19 mm) and 1.5 inches (approx. 38 mm), you can also specify any arbitrary thickness.

Important
- Since values entered in mm or inches are first converted temporarily to pixels and then reconverted to mm or inches, values may be displayed that differ from the entered values.

- **Amount of Extension**

Selecting this check box allows you to configure the amount of extension that protrudes past the canvas sides. This allows you to prevent white paper from appearing on the canvas sides when mounted.

Important
- Since values entered in mm or inches are first converted temporarily to pixels and then reconverted to mm or inches, values may be displayed that differ from the entered values.

- **Thickness Effect**

You can select from the following canvas effects.

- **Image**
  Wraps the image to the canvas sides.
- **Soft Image**
  Performs Gaussian filtering on the image on the canvas sides.
- **Reflection**
  Reflects the image on the canvas sides.
- **Soft Reflection**
  Reflects the image on the canvas sides and performs Gaussian filtering.
- **White**
  Makes the canvas sides white.
- **Black**
  Makes the canvas sides black.
- **Custom Color**
  Makes the canvas sizes the specified color. The color is specified by clicking the **Select Color** button.

- **Add Crop Marks**

When this check box is selected, crop marks are printed at the outer edges of the image as guides to the positions to fold the paper when mounting on a canvas.

- Display Information

Displays the following information.

- **Input**
  Displays the original image size before creating the layout image.

- **Finished**
  Displays the image size of the entire layout image with the canvas sides, crop marks, and the amount of extension added to the input image size.
- **Resolution**
  Displays the resolution of the image. This is not changed from the resolution of the original image. If the image size is changed in the Layout Plug-In, the resolution is maintained the same as the original image, and resampling is performed using the Bicubic method.
  If you do not want the number of pixels in the image to change (resample), select **Create the Canvas at the Image Size** in **Select Canvas Size** and select an option other than **Image** and **Soft Image** in **Thickness Effect**.

- **Defaults** button

Click this button to reset the setting values.

- **Close** button

When this button is clicked, the Layout Plug-In exits and the current setting values are saved. When the Layout Plug-In is started the next time, the setting values from the previous time are used.

- **Execute** button

When this button is clicked, the Print Plug-In for Photoshop starts. To print the created layout image, click the **Print** button in the Print Plug-In for Photoshop main window.

Important

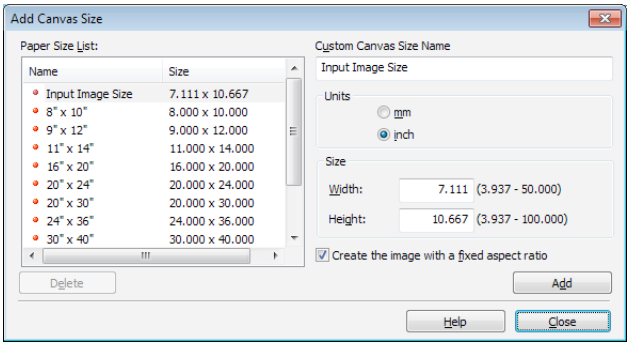
- When you close the Print Plug-In, the created layout image is discarded.

Note

- If the Print Plug-In for Photoshop for multiple different models is installed, a screen for selecting the model is displayed when you click the **Execute** button.
- When you close Print Plug-In for Photoshop main window after printing, the Layout Plug-In main window is displayed again.
- If the size of the layout image is larger than the paper size that can be printed by the printer, you should reduce the size of the layout image to the output paper size in advance before printing.

Add Canvas Size dialog box

This dialog box is displayed when you click the **Add Canvas Size** button in the Layout Plug-In main window. It allows you to register and delete arbitrary canvas sizes (custom canvas sizes).



Click the **Close** button to close the **Add Canvas Size** dialog box.

Adding a Canvas Size

1 Specify the units for the width and height of the canvas size you are adding in **Units**.

2 Enter the width and height of the canvas size you are adding in **Size**.
When you select a size displayed in the **Paper Size List**, the values are displayed in the **Width** and **Height** in the **Size** field. When **Input Image Size** is selected, the size of the input image is used as-is for the width and height of the canvas.
Selecting the **Create the Image with a Fixed Aspect Ratio** check box allows you to create a custom size at the same aspect ratio as the input image. For example, if you change the width, then the height also changes according to the aspect ratio of the input image.

3 Enter the name of the canvas size to add in **Custom Canvas Size Name**.

4 Click the **Add** button.

Deleting a Canvas Size

1 Select the **Custom Canvas Size Name** you want to delete from the **Paper Size List**.

2 Click the **Delete** button.

Note
- Sizes that have a red circle in the **Name** cannot be deleted.

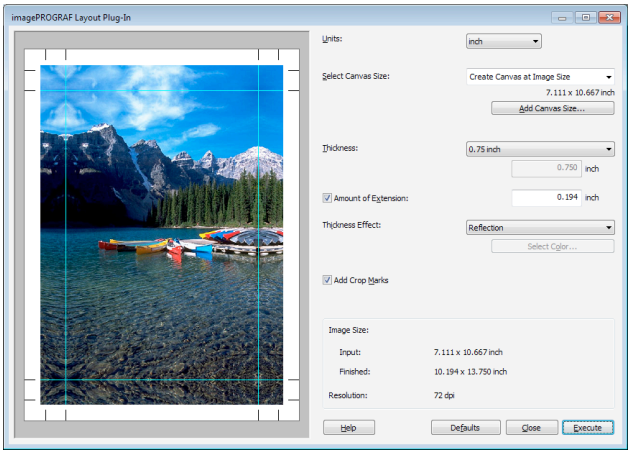
Creating and Printing a Layout Image for Mounting on a Frame

The procedure for creating and printing a layout image for mounting on a frame is as follows.

1 Start Photoshop.

2 Open the image to lay out and edit the image in Photoshop as needed.

3 Select **imagePROGRAF Layout Plug-In** from **Automate** in the Photoshop **File** menu.
Run the Layout Plug-In to display the Layout Plug-In Main Window.



Note
- The Layout Plug-In can handle images with a width and height of less than 60,000 pixels. For images with a width or height of 60,000 pixels or more, either reduce the selection range or reduce the image through image processing before performing step 3.

4 Select the canvas size that matches the frame for mounting the image and create a layout image by adding effects such as frame side effects.
For details, see "**Layout Plug-In Main Window.**" ➔P.298

Important
- The created layout image cannot be modified in Photoshop.

5 Once you have finished creating the layout image, run the Print Plug-In for Photoshop and print on paper that is larger than the size of the layout image.

Important
- When you click the **Close** button to close the Layout Plug-In, the created layout image is discarded.

6 Mount the printed layout image on the frame.

Important
- Fully dry the printed paper before mounting it on the frame.
- Take care when mounting on the frame. The ink may peel off if you touch the printed surface.

Note
- As you fold the printed paper along the frame, the folded areas may crack and reveal the paper underneath, depending on the media type. You can prevent the folded areas from splitting to some degree by using commercially available inkjet protection spray or liquid laminating agent for inkjets before folding.

Print Plug-In for Office

Print Plug-In for Officefeatures 303
Steps to install 304
Steps to uninstall 306
When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed 307

To start from Microsoft Word 310
Print Matching Roll Width(Word) 312
Borderless Printing(Word) 314
Multi-Page Printing(Word) 316
Register the settings (Word) 318
Print Using Registered Settings(Word) 319
Portrait Orientation/Landscape Orientation(Word) 321

To start from Microsoft PowerPoint 322
Print Matching Roll Width(PowerPoint) 324
Borderless Printing(PowerPoint) 326
Multi-Page Printing(PowerPoint) 329
Register the settings (PowerPoint) 330
Print Using Registered Settings(PowerPoint) 331
Portrait Orientation/Landscape Orientation(PowerPoint) 333

To start from Microsoft Excel 334
Print Entire Sheet(Excel) 336
Print Selected Area(Excel) 338
Configuring Binding (Excel) 341

Configuring Special Settings 342

Print Plug-In for Officefeatures

Print Plug-In for Office is a Plug-In that enables easy printing from **Microsoft Office**.

- It is displayed on the toolbar/ribbon, so it is easily accessible.
- It can be set by just selecting from the Wizard.
- **Large-Format Printing** custom size can also be set in the Wizard from **Microsoft Word** or **Microsoft Power-Point**.
- Custom size can be set automatically from **Microsoft Excel**.
- The layout can be checked before printing by starting the preview screen.

Note

- 64 bit edition Windows OS operates only on WOW64 (32 bit emulator).

Important

- The **Print Plug-In for Office** toolbar/ribbon might not be displayed in **Microsoft Office** after installing **imagePROG-RAF Print Plug-In for Office**. For details, refer to "**When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed**" ➔P.307 .
- If you opened the Office document from **Internet Explorer**, the software will not run correctly.
- If you are editing an embedded object or link object, the software will not run correctly.
- If you added the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** ribbon to the **Microsoft Office 2007/2010** Quick Access toolbar, the software will not run correctly.

Steps to install

Below are the steps to install **Print Plug-In for Office**.

Note

- You must log into Windows as an Administrator before the installation.

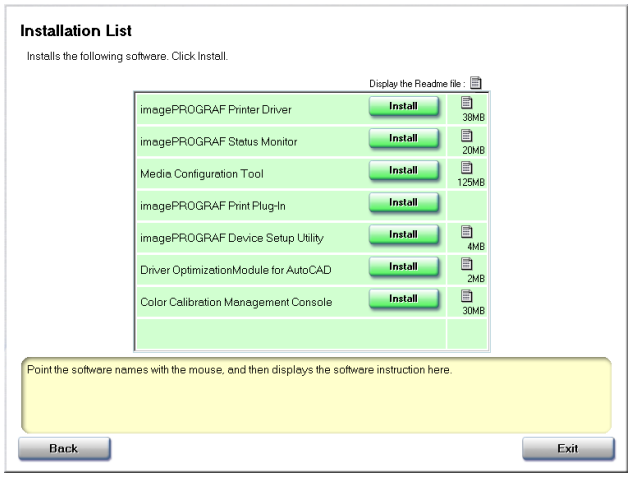
1 Insert "User Software CD-ROM" into the CD-ROM drive and start the installer.

Note

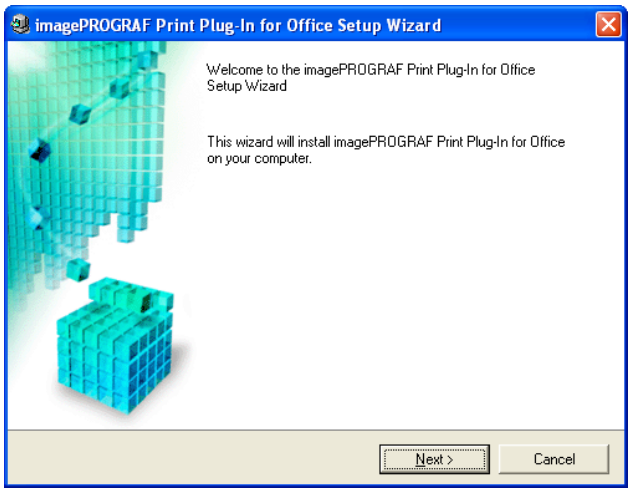
- If the installer screen does not display, open the CD-ROM icon from **My Computer**, click **iPFInst.exe**, and open the icon.

2 Click the **Install Individual Software** button.

3 Click **Install** in **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In**.

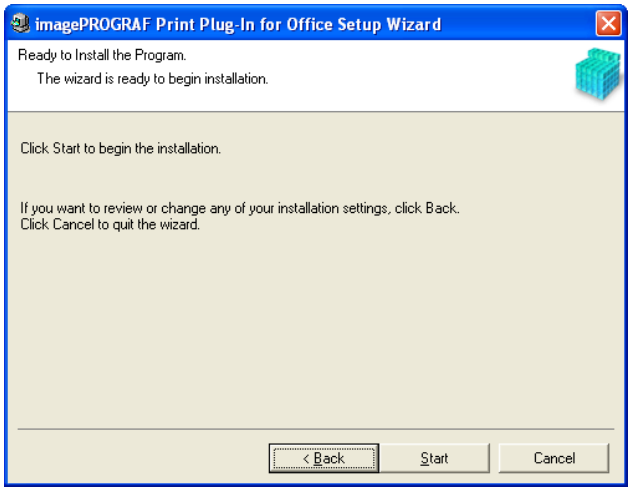


4 Click the **Next**button.



5 Read the **License Agreement**, and click the **Yes** button.

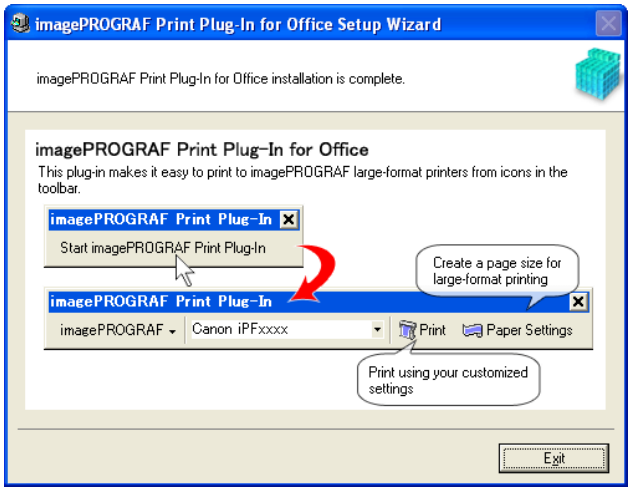
6 Click the **Start** button.



7 Click the **Yes** button.

8 Click the **Exit** button.

The installation for **Print Plug-In for Office** is complete.



Important

- When you install this software, the virtual printer **Canon imagePROGRAF PrintPlugIn** may be installed. If you want to use this software, do not uninstall the virtual printer **Canon imagePROGRAF PrintPlugIn**.
- The **Print Plug-In for Office** toolbar/ribbon might not be displayed in **Microsoft Office** after installing **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office**.
  Refer to the following topic for details on how to display the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office** toolbar/ribbon.
  - When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed ➔P.307

Steps to uninstall

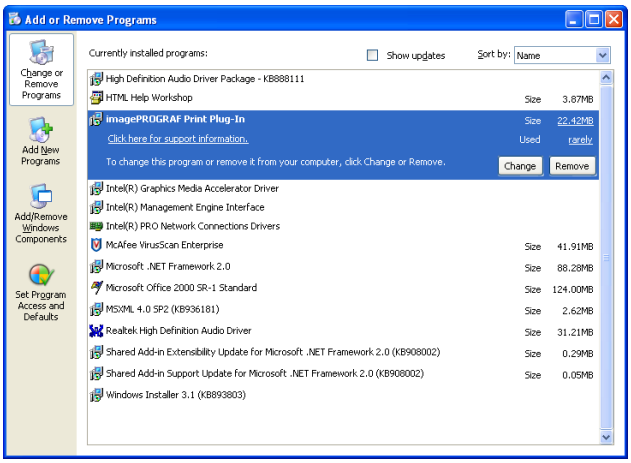
Below are the steps to uninstall **Print Plug-In for Office**.

1 If **Microsoft Office** is open, close it.

2 Select **Control Panel** from the **start** menu.

3 Open **Add or Remove Programs**.

4 Select **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In**, and click the **Remove** button.



Note

- You cannot uninstall **Print Plug-In for Office** if an Office application is running. When a message appears, select **Cancel** and close all Office applications that are running.

When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed

Buttons such as **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** sometimes do not appear in the **Word**, **PowerPoint** and **Excel** Office applications, and the **Print Plug-In for Office** functions are not available.
In this event, re-install **Print Plug-In for Office**.
If you are using **Microsoft Office 2003** or later, you can also enable add-ins to display **Print Plug-In for Office**.
See below for the procedure for re-installing the plug-in or enabling add-ins.

Re-installing **Print Plug-In for Office**

If a problem occurs, such as the system or an application terminating abnormally, the **Microsoft Office** application disables add-ins as a safety precaution.
In this event, you will need to re-install **Print Plug-In for Office** to display the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.

Note

- You cannot re-install **Print Plug-In for Office** once an Office application is running. When the message appears, select **Cancel** and close the active Office application.

Re-install **Print Plug-In for Office** as follows:

1 Close **Microsoft Office** if it is open.

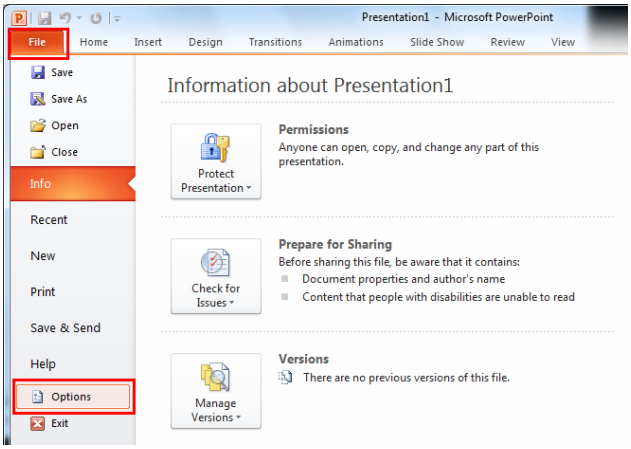
2 Install **Print Plug-In for Office**.
For information about instsalling, see "**Steps to install.**" →P.304

Enabling **Print Plug-In for Office** for items disabled in Office applications

If a problem occurs, such as the system or an application terminating abnormally, the **Microsoft Office** application disables add-ins as a safety precaution.
In this event, you will need to restore the disabled add-ins in order to display the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
Use the procedure below to restore the add-ins disabled by **Microsoft Office**.

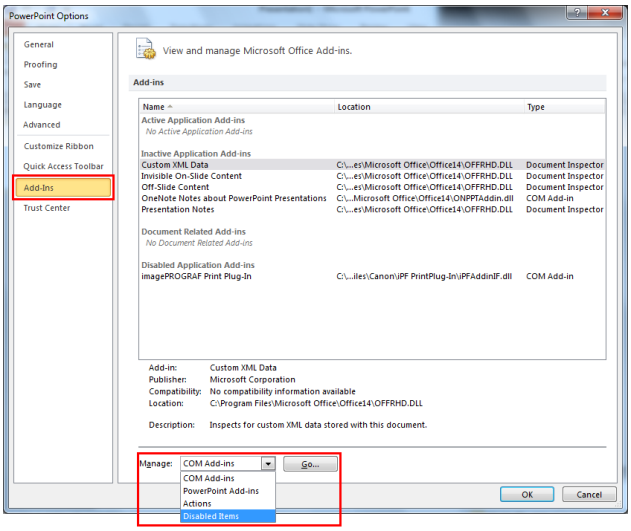
- For **Microsoft Office 2010**

1 Select **Options** from the **File** menu.

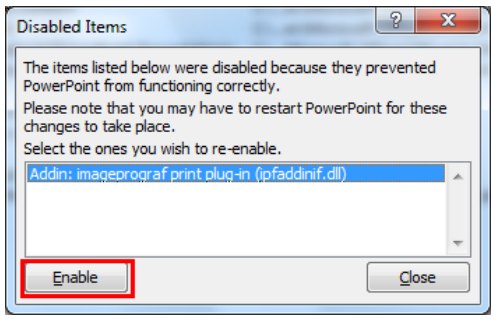


2 From the list on the left side of the **<application name> options** dialog box, select **Add-ins**.

3 Select **Disabled Items** in the **Manage** combo box and click the **Go** button.



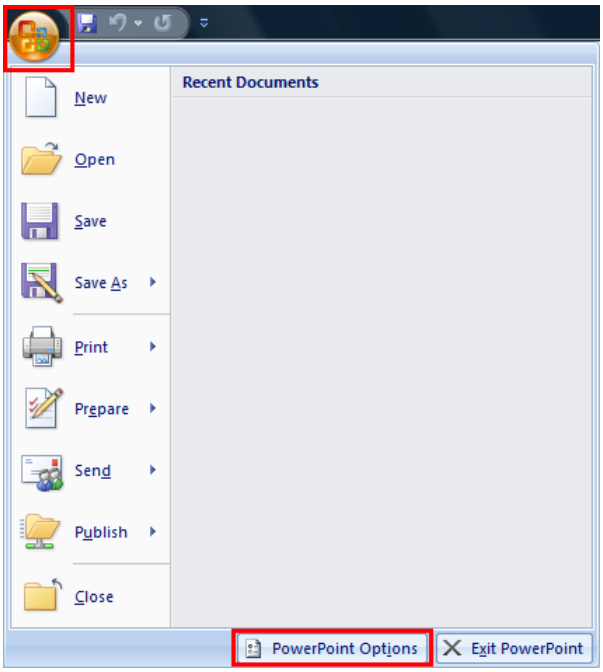
4 If **Addin imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)** is displayed in the **Disabled Items** dialog box, select it and click the **Enable** button.



5 Close all the dialog boxes and restart the Office application.

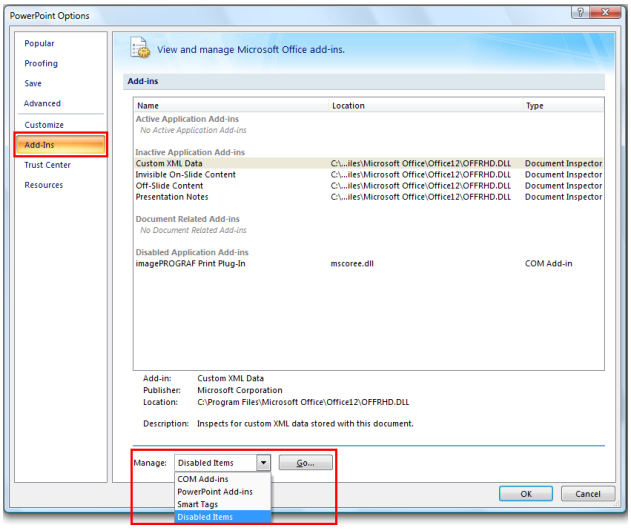
- For **Microsoft Office 2007**

1 Click the **Office** button and then click the **<application name> options** button.

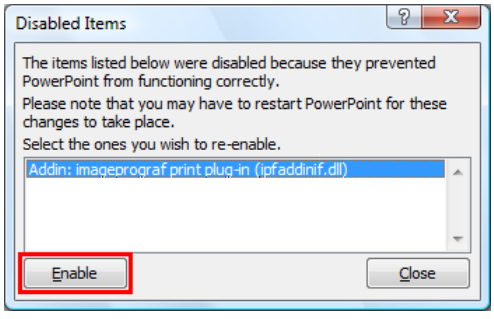


2 From the list on the left side of the **<application name> options** dialog box, select **Add-ins**.

3 Select **Disabled Items** in the **Manage** combo box and click the **Go** button.



4 If **Addin imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)** is displayed in the **Disabled Items** dialog box, select it and click the **Enable** button.

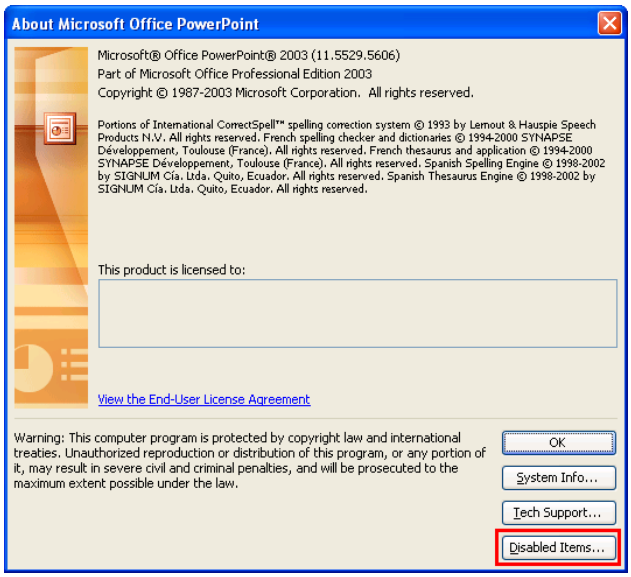


5 Close all the dialog boxes and restart the Office application.

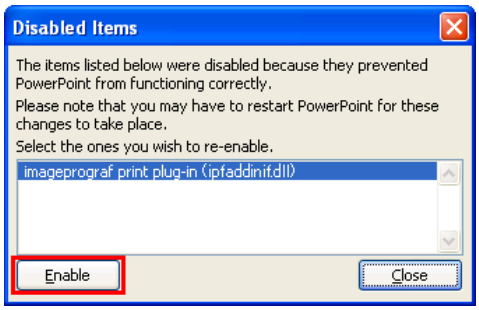
- For **Microsoft Office 2003**

1 Click **About <application name>** in the **Help** menu of application.

2 Click the **Disabled Items** button in the **About <application name>** dialog box.



3 If **Addin imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)** is displayed in the **Disabled Items** dialog box, select it and click the **Enable** button.



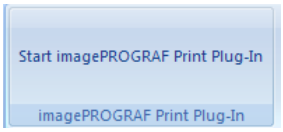
4 Close all the dialog boxes and restart the Office application.

To start from Microsoft Word

Below are the steps to start **Print Plug-In for Office** from **Microsoft Word**.

1 Start **Microsoft Word**.

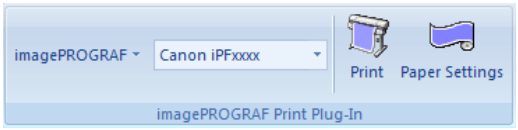
2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed on the toolbar/ribbon, click it.



Important

- If the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is not displayed, refer to the following.
- "When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed" →P.307

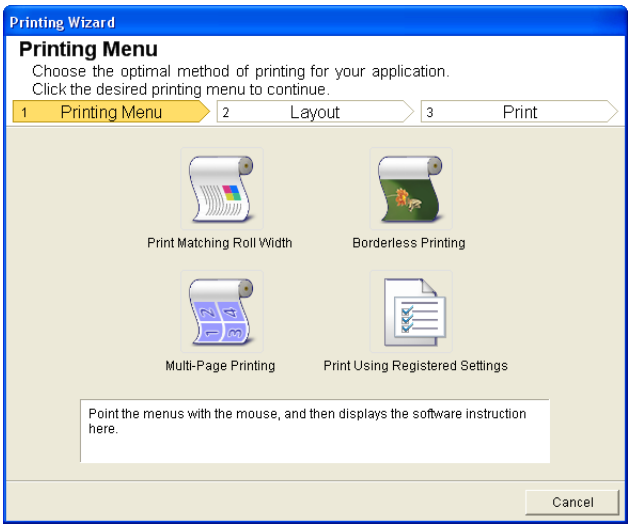
3 Check that the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is displayed.



4 Click the buttons on the toolbar/ribbon according to the items you want to set.

Icon	Contents
imagePROGRAF Menu	Displays the **About**, **Help**, and **Special Settings** dialog boxes. You can change the settings using the **Special Settings** dialog box. Refer to "**Configuring Special Settings**" →P.342 for details.
Canon iPFxxxx Printer list	Select Printer. If you select **Show All Printers**, the **imagePROGRAF** printers will be displayed again. Select this when you want to display all printer drivers or update the display.
Print **Print**Button	The print Wizard is displayed. The settings **Print Matching Roll Width**, **Borderless Printing**, **Multi-Page Printing**, and **Print Using Registered Settings** can be set.
Paper Settings **Paper Settings** Button	Large-Format Wizard is displayed. Settings for Portrait or Landscape Orientation can be set.

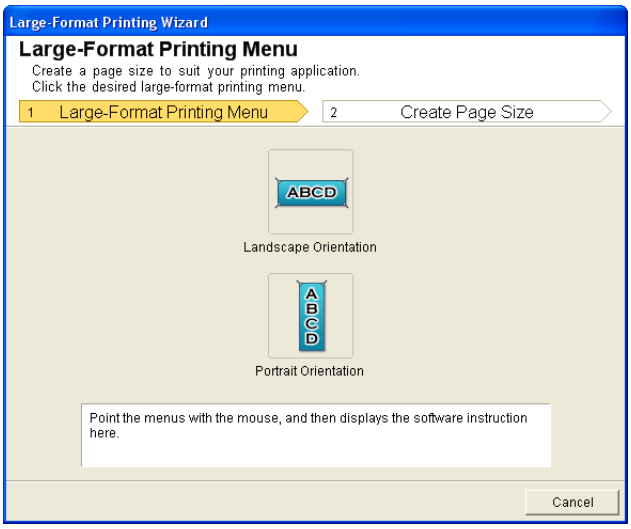
Printing Wizard dialog box



Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box



Important

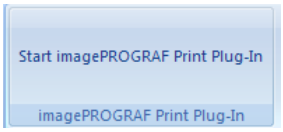
- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.
- The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.

Print Matching Roll Width(Word)

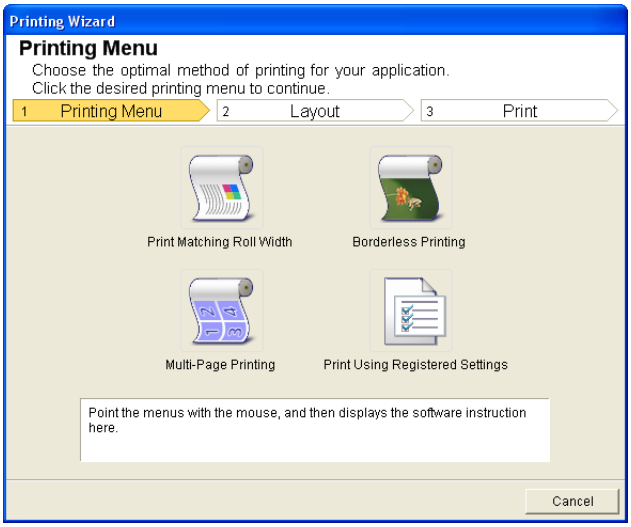
Prints to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, and also print Portrait and Landscape orientations made in **Large-Format Printing Wizard**.

1 Start **Microsoft Word**.

2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



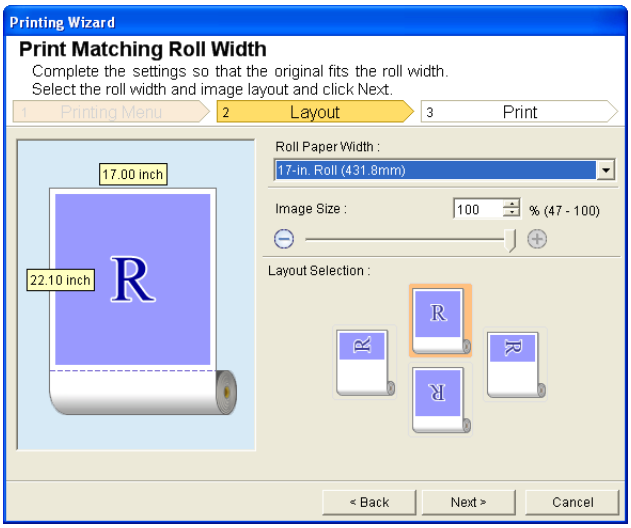
3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4 Click **Print Matching Roll Width**.

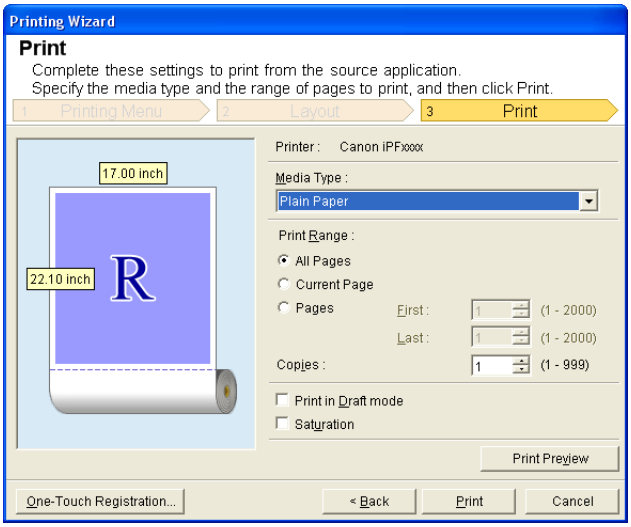


5 Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6 Select image size.

7 Select layout.

8 Select **Next**.



9 Select **Media Type**.

10 Select **Print Range** from **All Pages**, **Current Page**, and **Pages**.
If **Pages** is selected, enter the number of pages.

11 Enter **Copies**.

Note
- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- The settings are registered when the **One-Touch Registration** is pressed. This is convenient if you to need print multiple times using the same setting.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- When you print to the edge of the roll width, the maximum length will be the lesser of 5.587 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

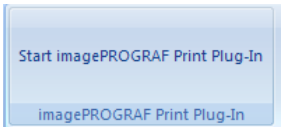
12 Press **Print** to start printing.

Borderless Printing(Word)

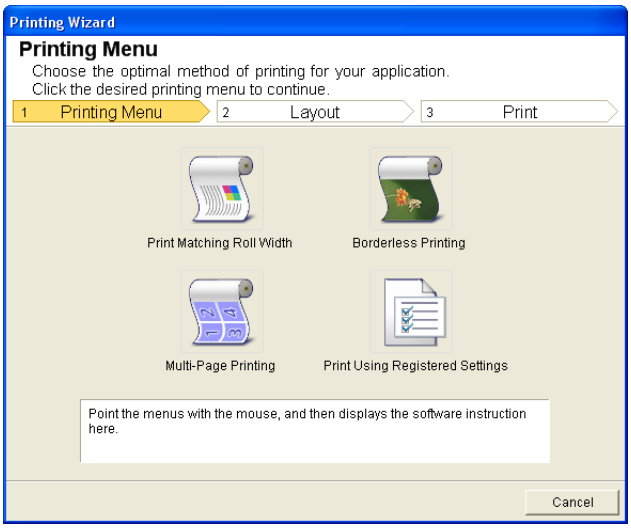
Prints up to the border of the media. Photos and posters can be printed without worrying about margins.

1 Start **Microsoft Word**.

2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.

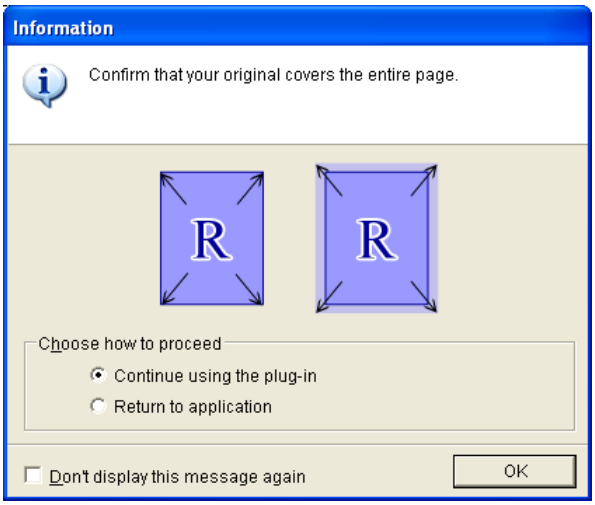


3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



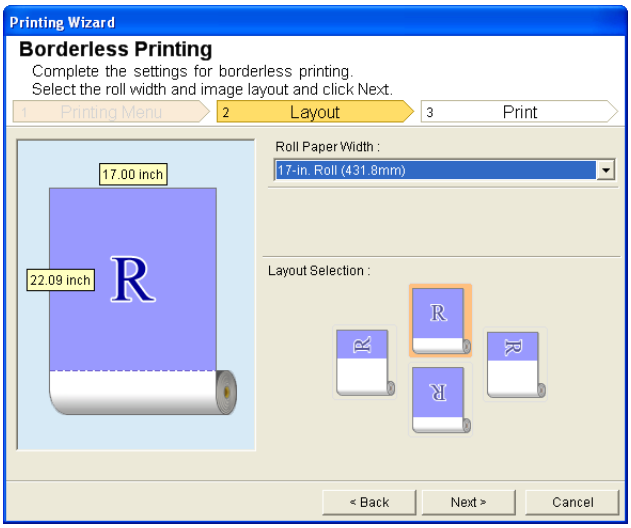
Important
- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ ribbon.

4 Click **Borderless Printing**.



5 A confirmation dialog box is displayed. If the data fills up the page, confirm that **Continue using the plug-in** is selected in **Choose how to proceed** and press **OK**.

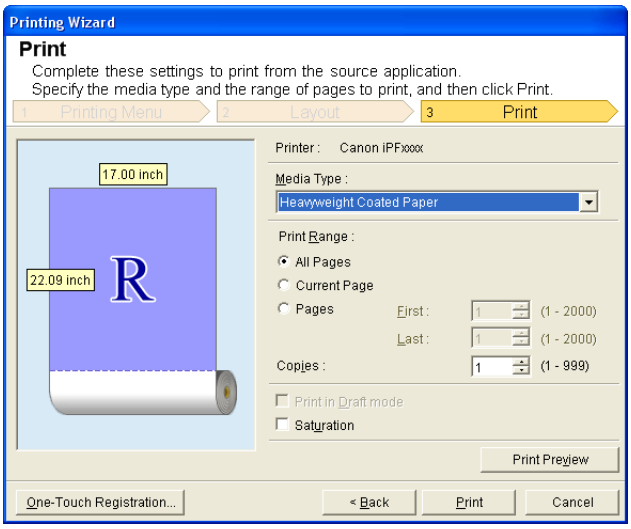
Note
- To adjust the data, select **Return to application** and press **OK**. Exit **Print Plug-In for Office** and return to the application.



6 Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

7 Select layout.

8 Select **Next**.



9 Select **Media Type**.

10 Select **Print Range** from **All Pages**, **Current Page**, and **Pages**.
If **Pages** is selected, enter the number of pages.

11 Enter **Copies**.

Note
- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- Press the **One-Touch Registration** button to register the settings. This is useful for multiple printing using the same settings.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can confirm and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- The maximum length for Borderless Printing is the lesser of 5.587 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

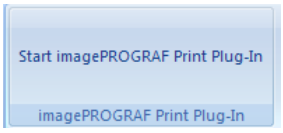
12 Press **Print** to start printing.

Multi-Page Printing(Word)

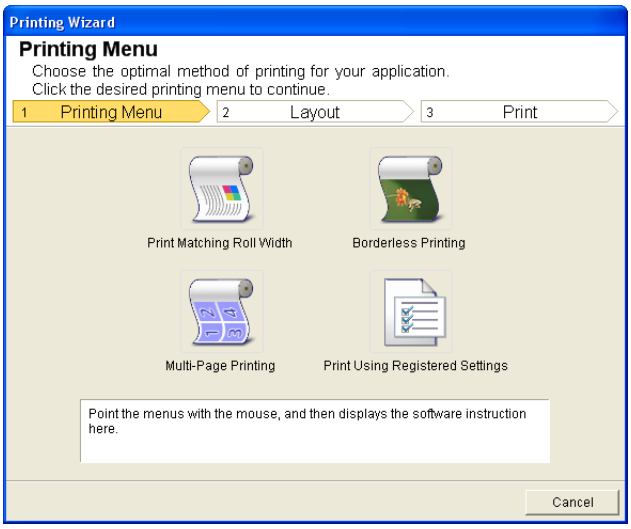
Prints multiple pages as one page. You can print handouts into a single page, or print matter with many pages.

1 Start **Microsoft Word**.

2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



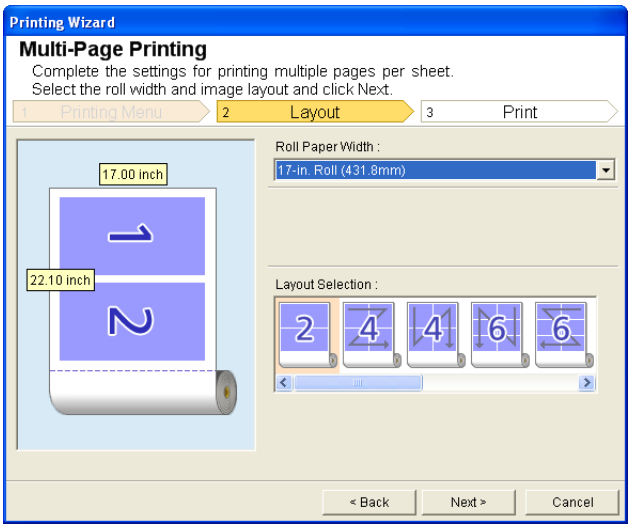
3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

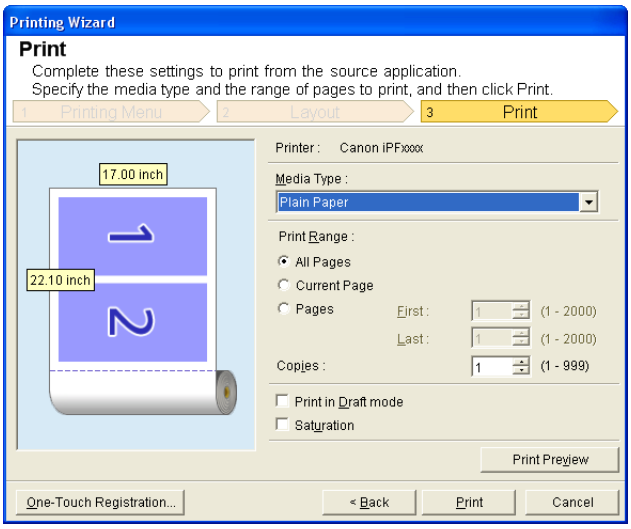
4 Click **Multi-Page Printing**.



5 Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6 Select layout from **Layout Selection**.

7 Select **Next**.



8 Select **Media Type**.

9 Select **Print Range** from **All Pages**, **Current Page**, and **Pages**.
If **Pages** is selected, enter the number of pages.

10 Enter **Copies**.

Note
- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- The settings are registered when the **One-Touch Registration** is pressed. This is convenient if you to need print multiple times using the same setting.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- The maximum length for Multi-Page Printing is the lesser of 5.587 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

11 Press **Print** to start printing.

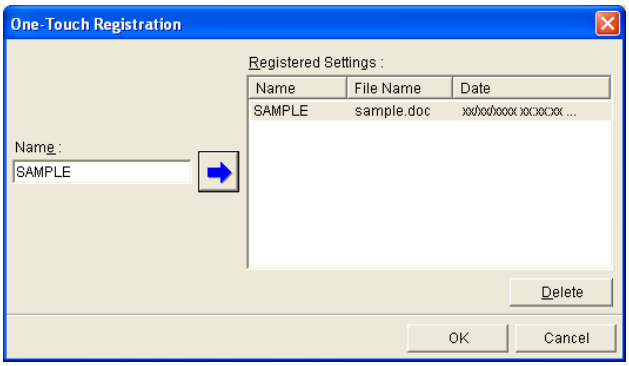
Register the settings (Word)

If you are going to print multiple times using the same setting, you can select **One-Touch Registration**. Registered settings can be recalled from **Print Using Registered Settings**.

1 Set up to the **Print** screen from **Print Matching Roll Width**,**Borderless Printing** or **Multi-Page Printing** of **Printing Menu**.

Note
- Up to 20 items can be registered.
- The available settings are as follows.
  - Print Matching Roll Width(Word) →P.312
  - Borderless Printing(Word) →P.314
  - Multi-Page Printing(Word) →P.316

2 Click the **One-Touch Registration** button.



3 Enter name in **Name**.
Up to 31 characters can be entered.

4 Click . The name you entered is displayed in **Registered Settings**.

5 Click **OK**, and return to the **Print** screen.

6 Click **Print** to print, and click **Cancel** to cancel the print.

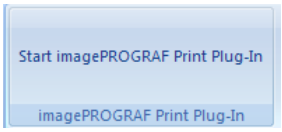
Note
- Clicking **Cancel** in the **Print** screen will not delete the registered settings.

Print Using Registered Settings(Word)

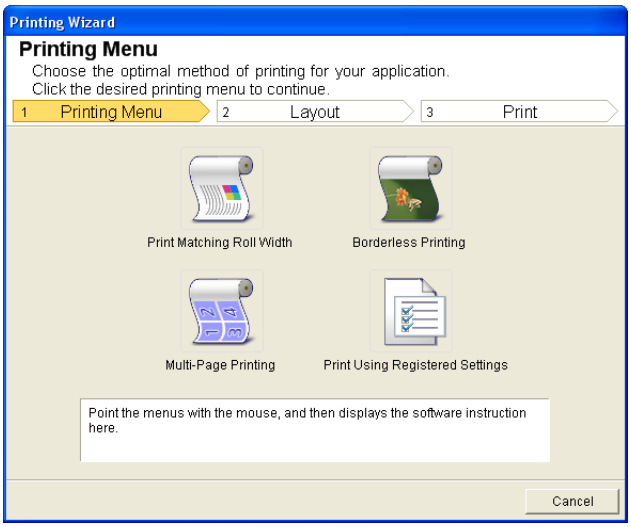
Prints using the registered settings.

1 Start **Microsoft Word**.

2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



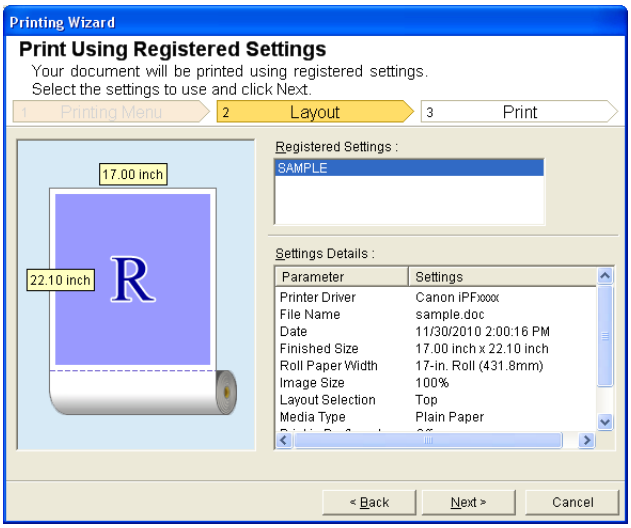
3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



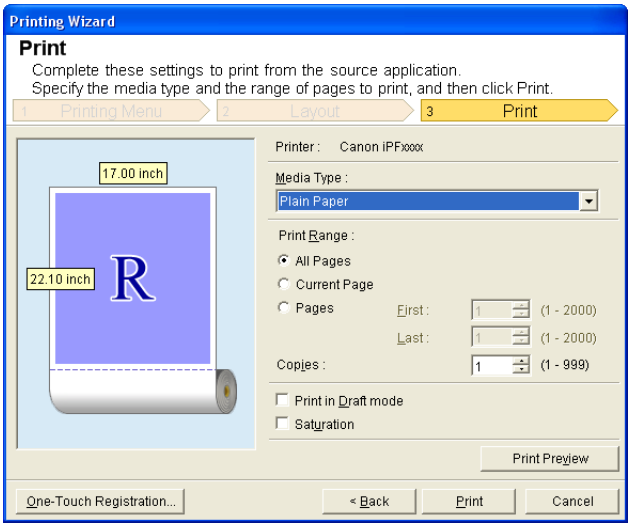
Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4 Click **Print Using Registered Settings**.



5 Click the **Next**button.



6 Select **Media Type**.

7 Select **Print Range** from **All Pages**, **Current Page**, or **Pages**.
If **Pages** is selected, enter the number of pages.

8 Enter **Copies**.

Note

- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- The maximum print length when printing with the registered settings is the lesser of 5.587 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

9 Press **Print** to start printing.

Portrait Orientation/Landscape Orientation(Word)

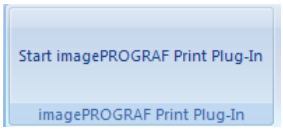
Print to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, or print the Landscape or Portrait Orientation Page Sizes made in the **Large-Format Printing Wizard**.

Create Page Size in Portrait or Landscape Orientation.

Use the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** to create portrait page sizes for Potrait Orientation, and landscape page sizes for Landscape Orientation.

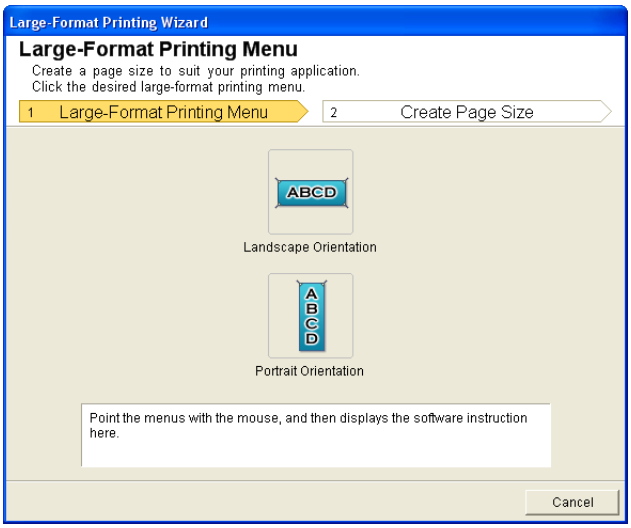
1 Start **Microsoft Word**.

2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



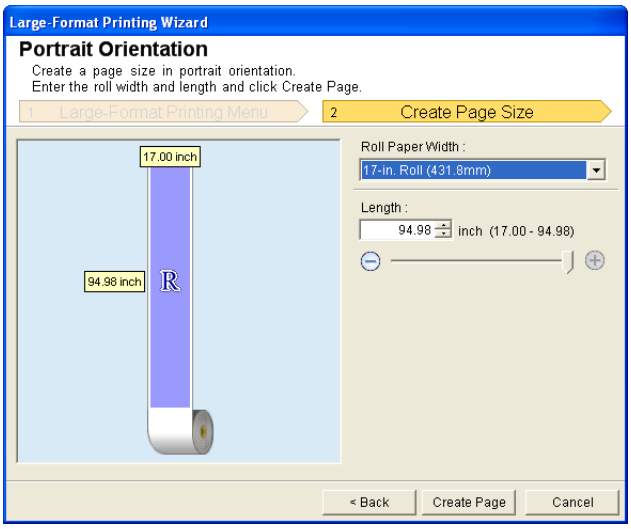
3 Click **Paper Settings** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.

Note
- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.



4 Click **Portrait Orientation** or **Landscape Orientation**.

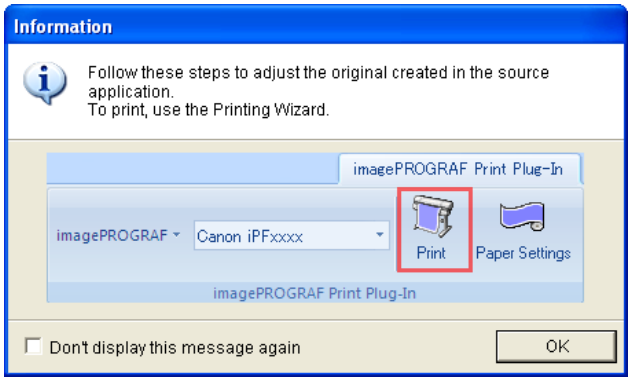
Note
- The steps taken to create a Portrait Page Size will be used as an example to explain the procedure.



5 Adjust **Length** from the list-box or slide-bar.

6 Click the **Create Page** button.

7 Click**OK** if the message is displayed.



8 Edit and create the document.

Note
- Printing is done in **Print Matching Roll Width** of the **Printing Wizard**. For details on **Print Matching Roll Width**, see "Print Matching Roll Width(Word)." ➔P.312

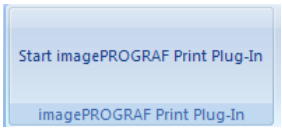
Important
- The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.

To start from Microsoft PowerPoint

Below are the steps to start **Print Plug-In for Office** from **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

1 Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

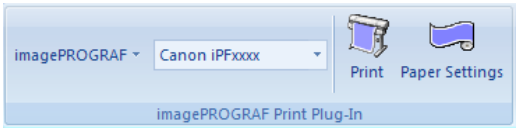
2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed on the toolbar/ribbon, click it.



Important

- If the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is not displayed, refer to the following.
- **When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed** →P.307

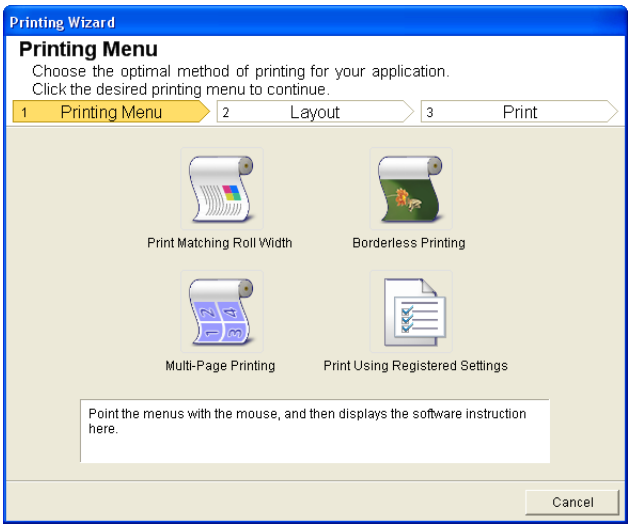
3 Check that the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is displayed.



4 Click the buttons on the toolbar/ribbon according to the items you want to set.

Icon	Contents
imagePROGRAF Menu	Displays the **About**, **Help**, and **Special Settings** dialog boxes. (See "**Configuring Special Settings.**") →P.342
Canon iPFxxxx Printer list	Select Printer. If you select **Show All Printers**, the **imagePROGRAF** printers will be displayed again. Select this when you want to display all printer drivers or update the display.
Print **Print**Button	The print Wizard is displayed. The settings **Print Matching Roll Width**, **Borderless Printing**, **Multi-Page Printing**, and **Print Using Registered Settings** can be set.
Paper Settings **Paper Settings** Button	Large-Format Wizard is displayed. Settings for Portrait or Landscape Orientation can be set.

Printing Wizard dialog box



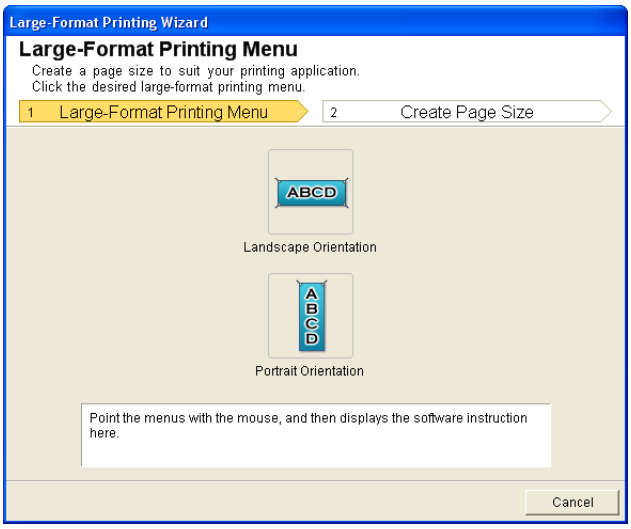
Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

Note

- If you open a password protected document as read-only, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run.

Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box



Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.
- The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.

Note

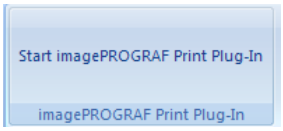
- If you open a password protected document as read-only, the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** cannot be run. Remove the password protection.

Print Matching Roll Width(PowerPoint)

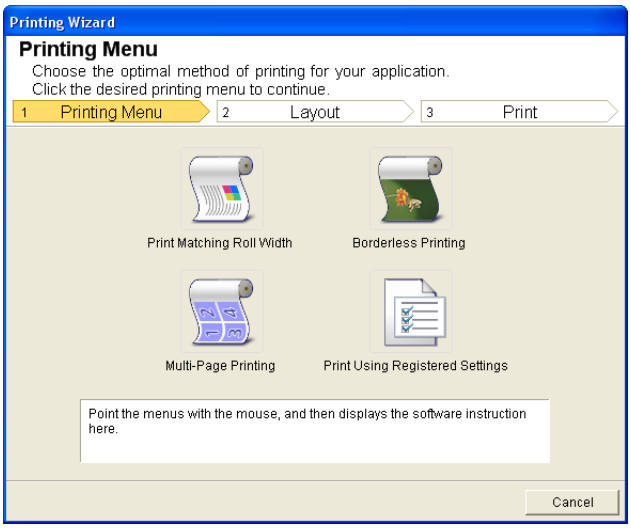
Prints to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, and also print Portrait and Landscape orientations made in **Large-Format Printing Wizard**.

1 Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



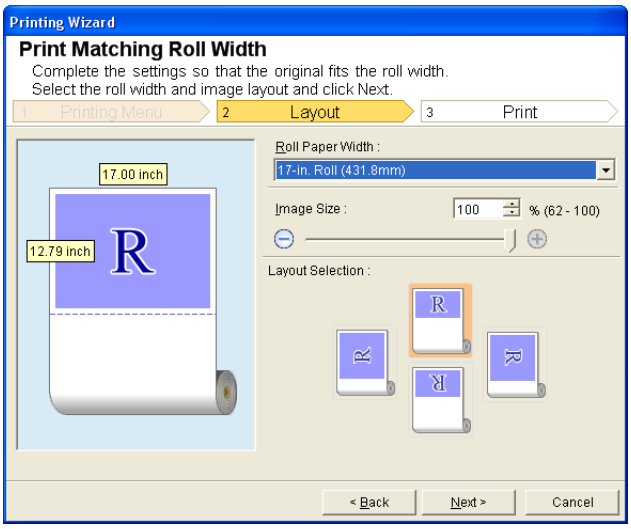
3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4 Click **Print Matching Roll Width**.

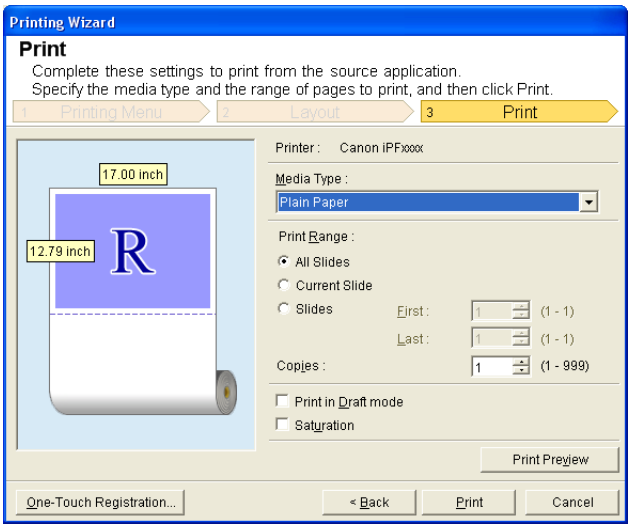


5 Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6 Select image size.

7 Select layout.

8 Select **Next**.



9 Select **Media Type**.

10 Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**.
If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

11 Enter **Copies**.

Note

- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- The settings are registered when the **One-Touch Registration** is pressed. This is convenient if you to need print multiple times using the same setting.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- When you print to the edge of the roll width, the maximum length will be the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

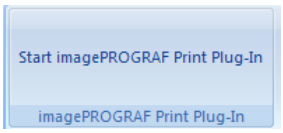
12 Press **Print** to start printing.

Borderless Printing(PowerPoint)

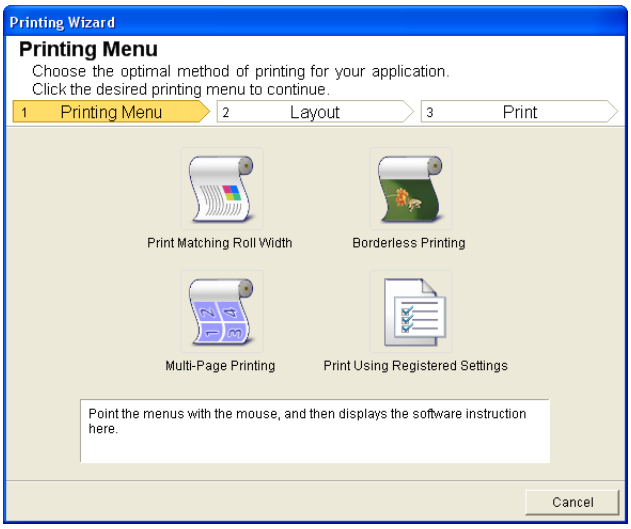
Prints up to the border of the media. Photos and posters can be printed without worrying about margins.

1 Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.

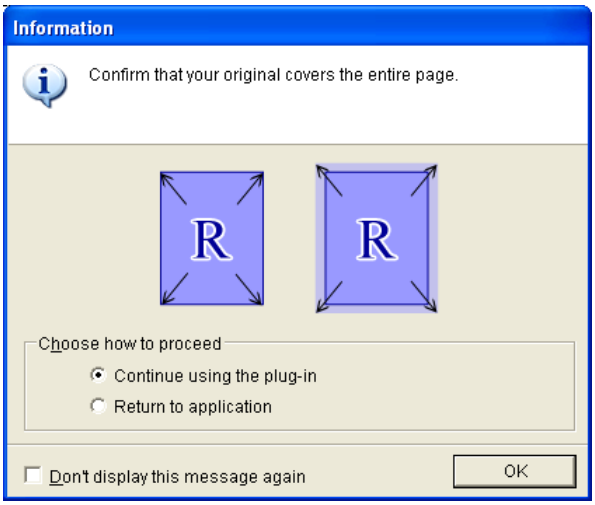


3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



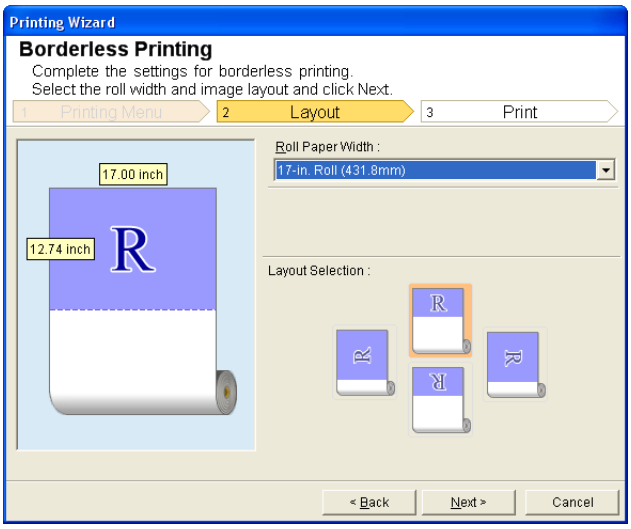
Important
- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4 Click **Borderless Printing**.



5 A confirmation dialog box is displayed. If the data fills up the page, confirm that **Continue using the plug-in** is selected in **Choose how to proceed** and press **OK**.

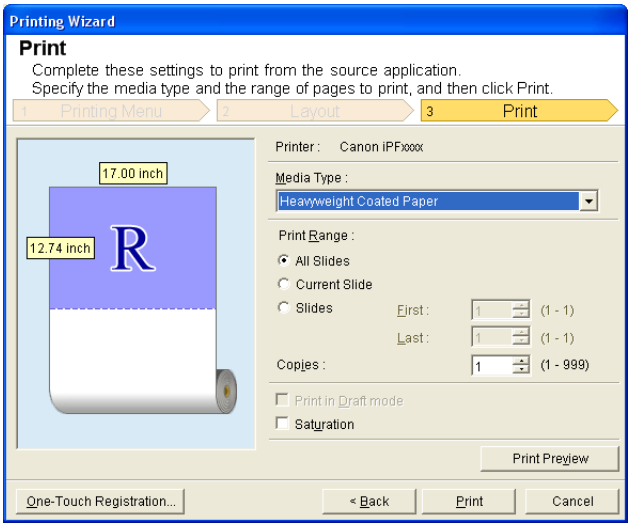
Note
- To adjust the data, select **Return to application** and press **OK**. Exit **Print Plug-In for Office** and return to the application.



6 Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

7 Select layout.

8 Select **Next**.



9 Select **Media Type**.

10 Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**.
If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

11 Enter **Copies**.

Note

- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- Press the **One-Touch Registration** button to register the settings. This is useful for multiple printing using the same settings.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can confirm and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- The maximum length for Borderless Printing is the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

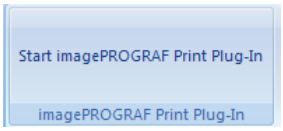
12 Press **Print** to start printing.

Multi-Page Printing(PowerPoint)

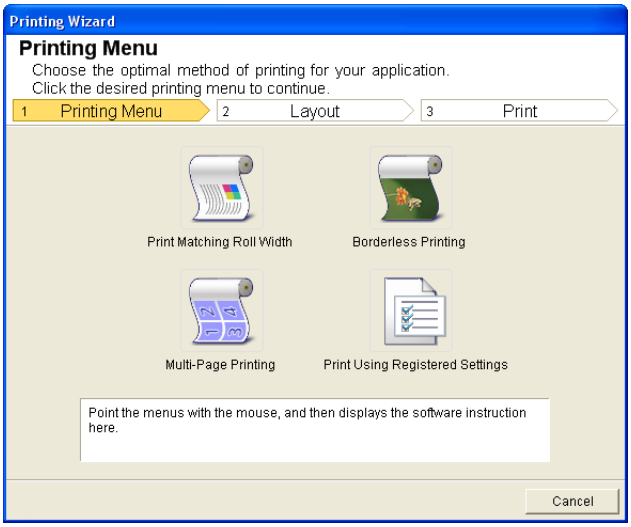
Prints multiple pages as one page. You can print handouts into a single page, or print matter with many pages.

1 Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



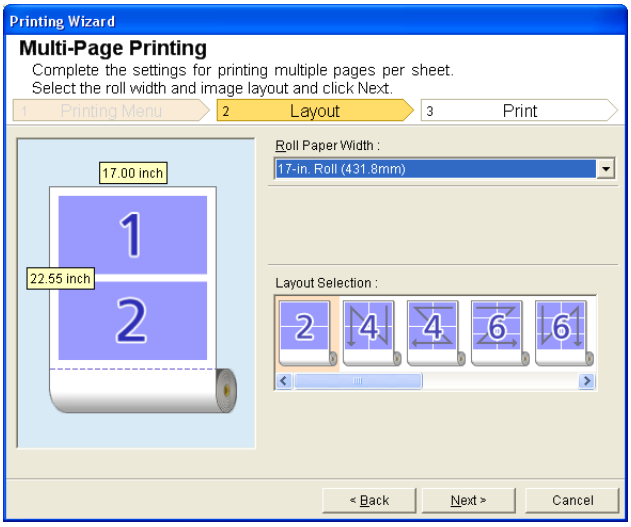
3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

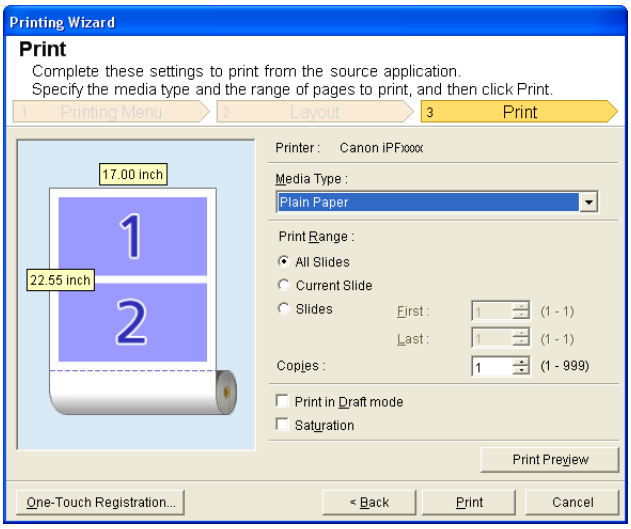
4 Click **Multi-Page Printing**.



5 Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6 Select layout from **Layout Selection**.

7 Select **Next**.



8 Select **Media Type**.

9 Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**.
If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

10 Enter **Copies**.

Note
- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- The settings are registered when the **One-Touch Registration** is pressed. This is convenient if you to need print multiple times using the same setting.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- The maximum length for Multi-Page Printing is the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

11 Press **Print** to start printing.

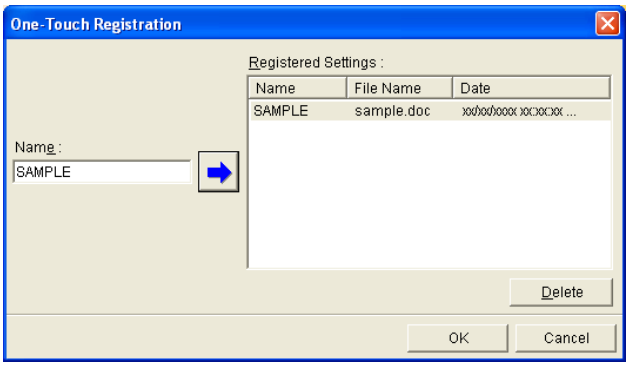
Register the settings (PowerPoint)

If you are going to print multiple times using the same setting, you can select **One-Touch Registration**. Registered settings can be recalled from **Print Using Registered Settings**.

1 Set up to the **Print** screen from **Print Matching Roll Width**,**Borderless Printing** or **Multi-Page Printing** of **Printing Menu**.

Note
- Up to 20 items can be registered.
- The available settings are as follows.
  - Print Matching Roll Width(PowerPoint) ➔P.324
  - Borderless Printing(PowerPoint) ➔P.326
  - Multi-Page Printing(PowerPoint) ➔P.329

2 Click the **One-Touch Registration** button.



3 Enter name in **Name**.
Up to 31 characters can be entered.

4 Click . The name you entered is displayed in **Registered Settings**.

5 Click **OK**, and return to the **Print** screen.

6 Click **Print** to print, and click **Cancel** to cancel the print.

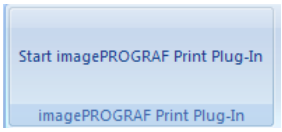
Note
- Clicking **Cancel** in the **Print** screen will not delete the registered settings.

Print Using Registered Settings(PowerPoint)

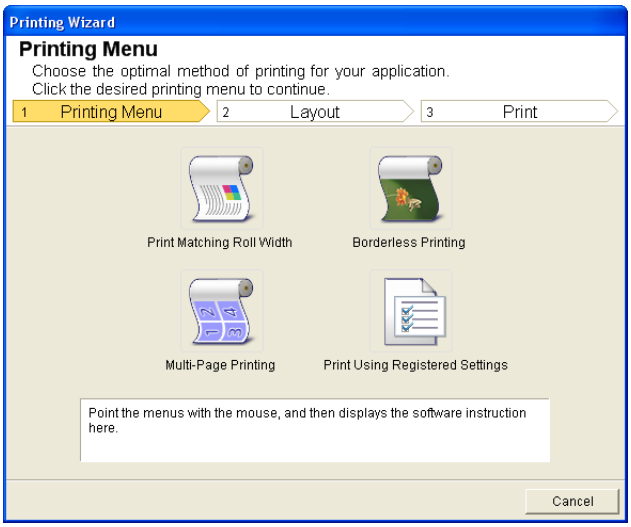
Prints using the registered settings.

1 Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



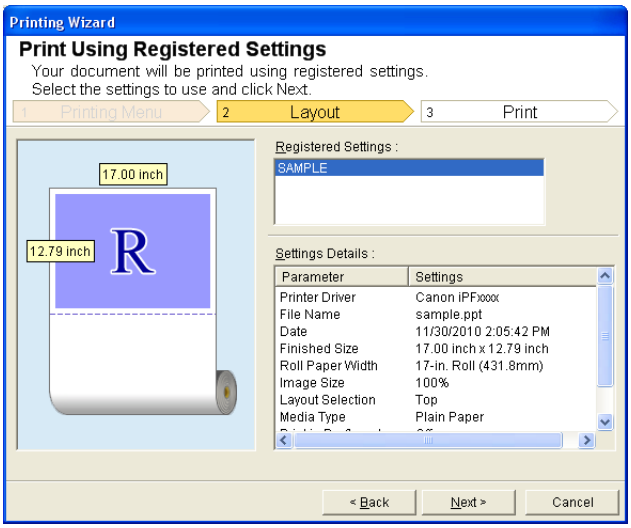
3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



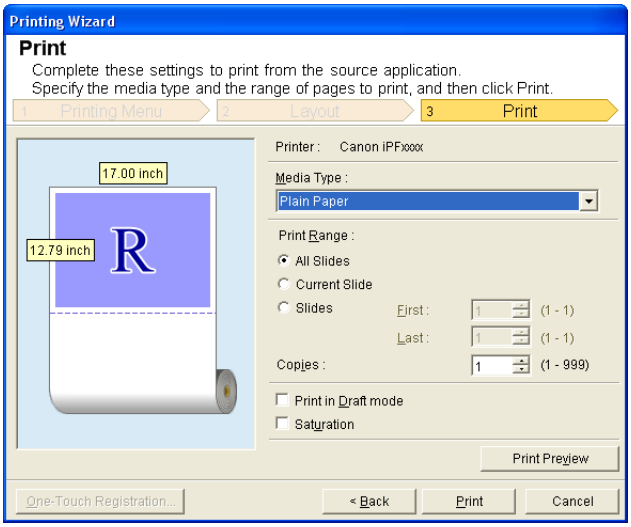
Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4 Click **Print Using Registered Settings**.



5 Click the **Next**button.



6 Select **Media Type**.

7 Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**.
If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

8 Enter **Copies**.

Note

- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- The maximum print length when printing with the registered settings is the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

9 Press **Print** to start printing.

Portrait Orientation/Landscape Orientation(PowerPoint)

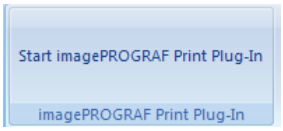
Print to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, or print the Landscape or Portrait Orientation Page Sizes made in the **Large-Format Printing Wizard**.

Create Page Size in Portrait or Landscape Orientation.

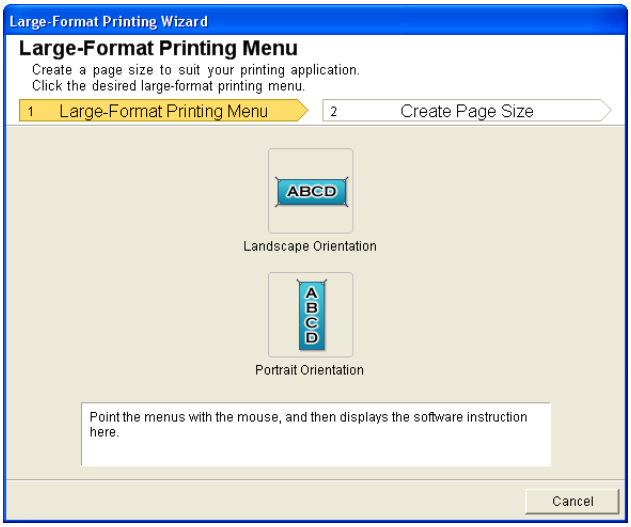
Use the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** to create portrait page sizes for Potrait Orientation, and landscape page sizes for Landscape Orientation.

1 Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



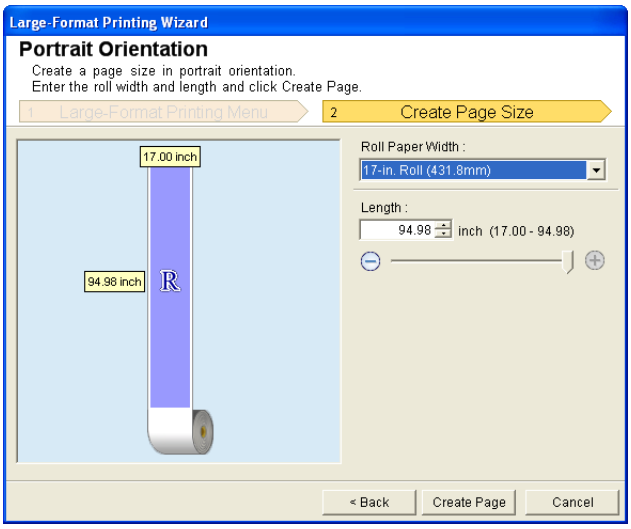
3 Click **Paper Settings** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Important
- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4 Click **Portrait Orientation** or **Landscape Orientation**.

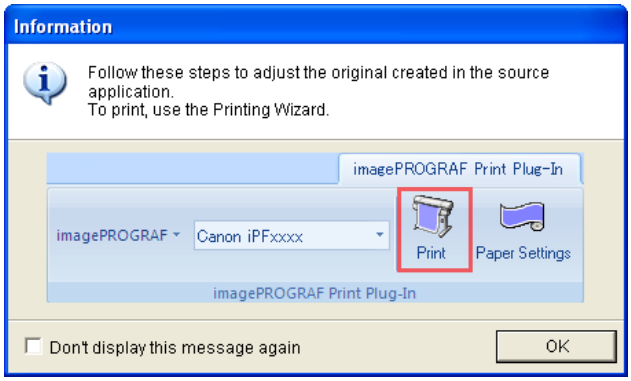
Note
- The steps taken to create a Portrait Page Size will be used as an example to explain the procedure.



5 Adjust **Length** from the list-box or slide-bar.

6 Click the **Create Page** button.

7 Click**OK** if the message is displayed.



8 Edit and create the document.

Important
- The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.

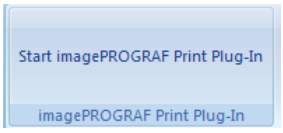
Note
- Printing is done in **Print Matching Roll Width** of the **Printing Wizard**. For details on **Print Matching Roll Width**, see "Print Matching Roll Width(PowerPoint)." ➔P.324

To start from Microsoft Excel

Below are the steps to start **Print Plug-In for Office** from **Microsoft Excel**.

1 Start **Microsoft Excel**.

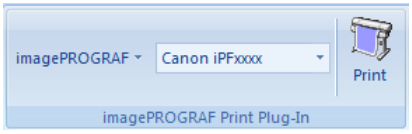
2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed on the toolbar/ribbon, click it.



Important

- If the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is not displayed, refer to the following.
- **When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed** ➔P.307

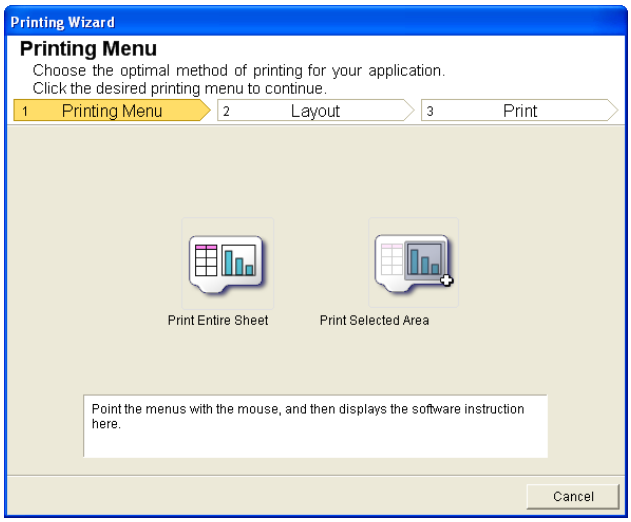
3 Check that the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is displayed.



4 Click the buttons on the toolbar/ribbon according to the items you want to set.

Icon	Contents
imagePROGRAF Menu	Displays the **About**, **Help**, and **Special Settings** dialog boxes. (See "**Configuring Special Settings.**") ➔P.342
Canon iPFxxxx Printer list	Select Printer. If you select **Show All Printers**, the **imagePROGRAF** printers will be displayed again. Select this when you want to display all printer drivers or update the display.
Print **Print**Button	The print Wizard is displayed. The settings **Print Entire Sheet** and **Print Selected Area** can be set.

Printing Wizard dialog box



Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.
- The **Printing Wizard** will not start if you click the **Print** button on the toolbar/ribbon while editing a cell.
- When more than one worksheet is selected, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run. Select only one worksheet and click **Print** again.
- When an object is selected, the **Printing Wizard** is not started if you click the **Print** button on the toolbar/ribbon.
- If the paper size in Excel is blank, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run. From the **File** menu in Excel, select **Page Setup** and check **Paper size**.

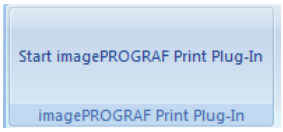
Note

- If you click the **Print** button with a graph selected, a message dialog box will appear asking if you want to continue printing. If you click **No**, you will return to the application.
- If you click the **Print** button with a page break set, a message dialog box will appear asking if you want to continue printing. If you click **No**, you will return to the application. If you do not use the set page break, check the page break preview and change the setting.
- If you click the **Print** button with a page range set, a message dialog box will appear asking if you want to continue printing. If you click **No**, you will return to the application. If you do not use the set page range, check the page break preview and change the setting.
- If you click the **Print** button with a worksheet or cell protected, a message dialog box will appear asking if you want to continue printing. If you click **No**, you will return to the application. If you want to change the setting, remove the protection from the worksheet or cell.

Print Entire Sheet(Excel)

For resizing the entire sheet to fit the roll width. Choose this option to enlarge the currently displayed sheet before printing.

1. Start **Microsoft Excel**.
2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.

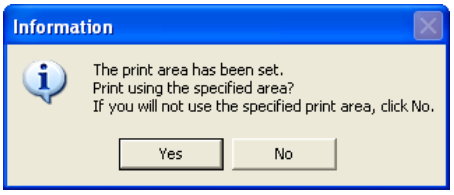


3. Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.

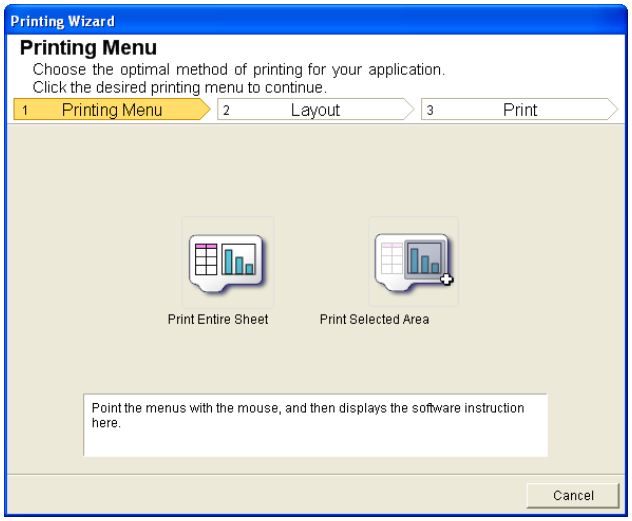
Important

- When more than one worksheet is selected, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run. Select only one worksheet and click **Print** again.

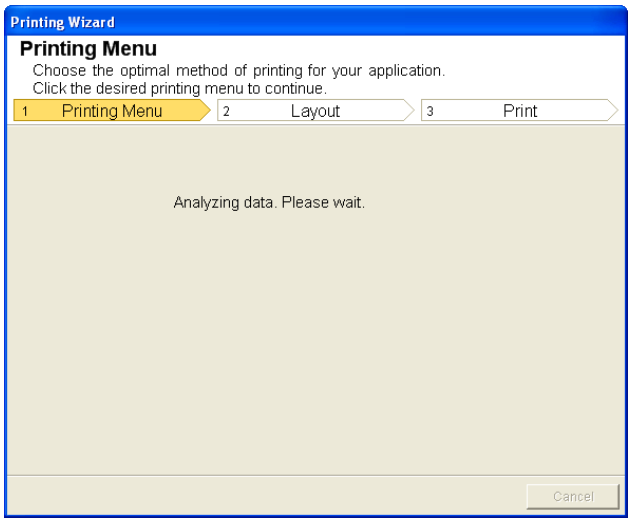
If a print area is set, a confirmation message dialog box will appear.
To print the entire sheet, cancel the setting of the print area.



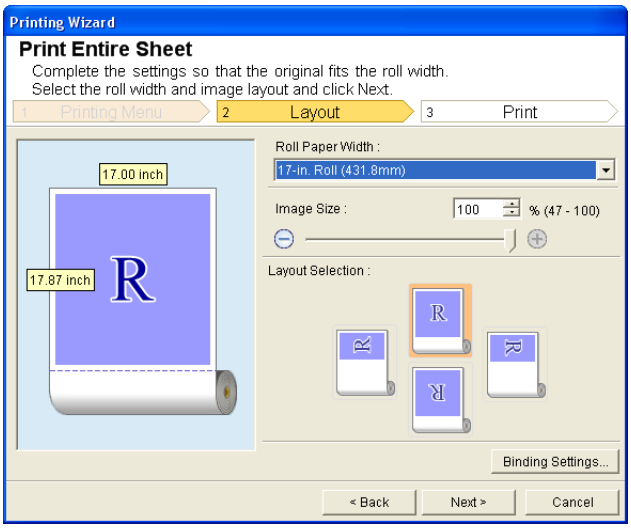
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



4 Click **Print Entire Sheet**.
A message will appear informing you that analysis is in progress.



The Layout menu will appear automatically.



Note
- If data analysis requires time, a message dialog will appear. If you select **No**, you will return to the application.

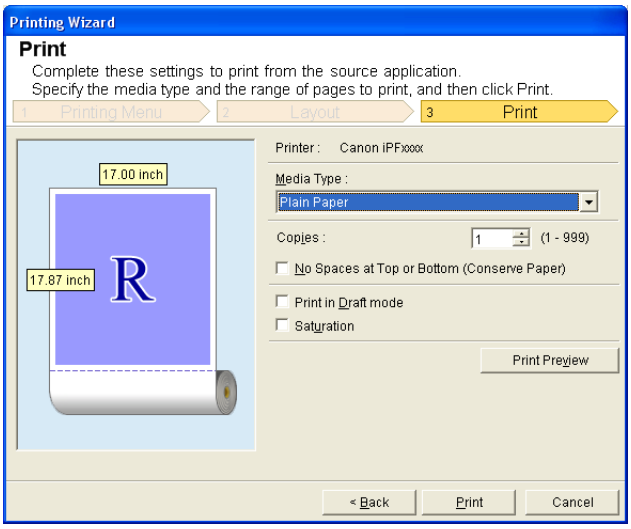
5 Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6 Select image size.

7 Select layout.

8 To configure **Binding**, click the **Binding Settings** button.
Refer to "**Configuring Binding (Excel)**" ➔P.341 for details on the procedure for configuring **Binding**.

9 Select **Next**.



10 Select **Media Type**.

11 Enter **Copies**.

12 If the upper and lower margins are too wide, check **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**. The upper and lower margins can be checked in **Print Preview**.

Note
- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- When you print to the edge of the roll width, the maximum print length is 18.0m.

13 Press **Print** to start printing.

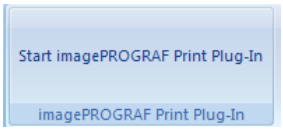
Important
- If divided into plural pages, try reducing the data size or the range you select.
- You cannot run **Print** or **Print Preview** if you select it for a worksheet with no data displayed.

Print Selected Area(Excel)

For resizing the selected range of cells to fit the roll width. Choose this option to enlarge a particular part of the sheet before printing.

1 Start **Microsoft Excel**.

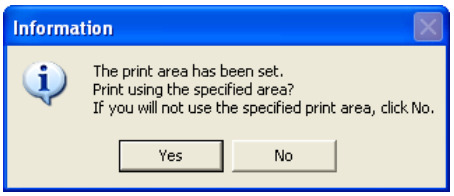
2 If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



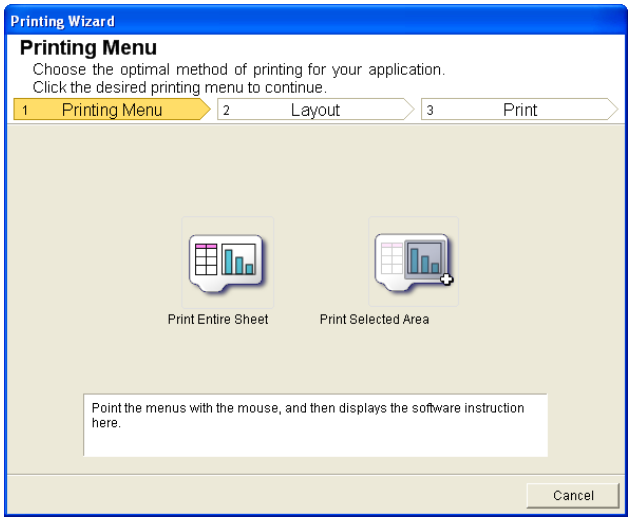
3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.

Important
- When more than one worksheet is selected, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run. Select only one worksheet and click **Print** again.

If a print area is set, a confirmation message dialog box will appear.
To print the selected area, cancel the setting of the print area.



The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.

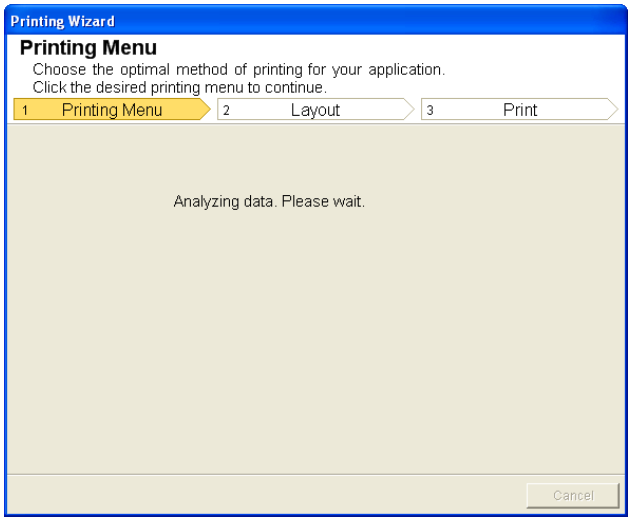


4 Click **Print Selected Area**.

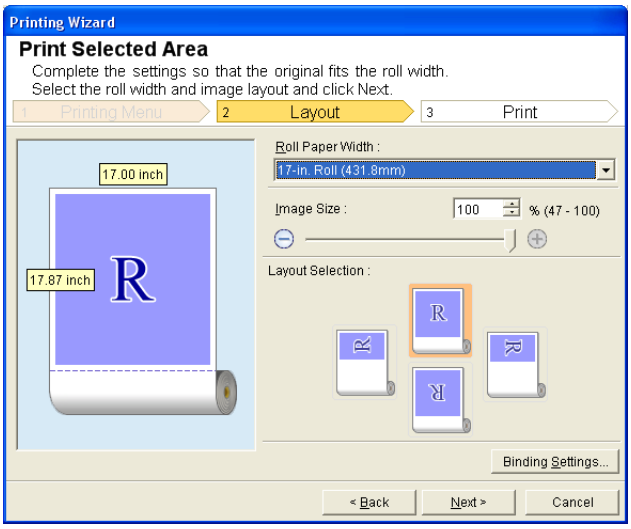
Important

- If only one cell is selected, **Print Selected Area** cannot be selected.

A message will appear informing you that analysis is in progress.



The Layout menu will appear automatically.



Important

- If the range selected in **Excel 2007/2010** is too large, it will not be possible to analyze the data. Select a smaller range and then run the analysis.

Note

- If data analysis requires time, a message dialog will appear. If you select **No**, you will return to the application.

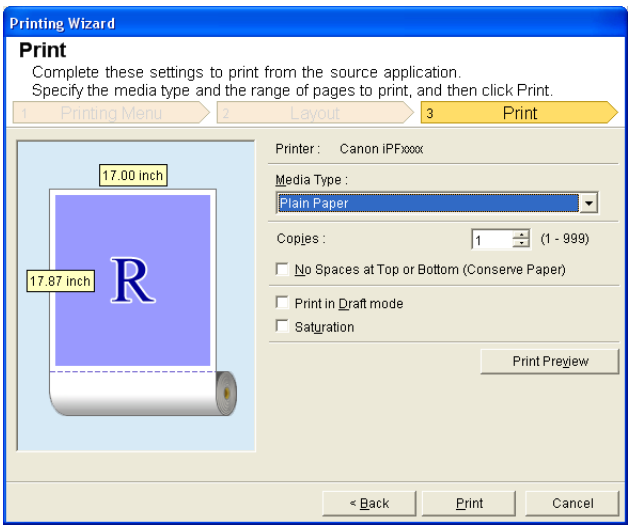
5 Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6 Select image size.

7 Select layout.

8 To configure **Binding**, click the **Binding Settings** button.
Refer to "**Configuring Binding (Excel)**" ➔P.341 for details on the procedure for configuring **Binding**.

9 Select **Next**.



10 Select **Media Type**.

11 Enter **Copies**.

12 If the upper and lower margins are too wide, check **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**.
The upper and lower margins can be checked in **Print Preview**.

Note
- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- When you print to the edge of the roll width, the maximum print length is 18.0m.

13 Press **Print** to start printing.

Important
- If divided into plural pages, try reducing the data size or the range you select.
- You cannot run **Print** or **Print Preview** if you select it for a worksheet with no data displayed.

Configuring Binding (Excel)

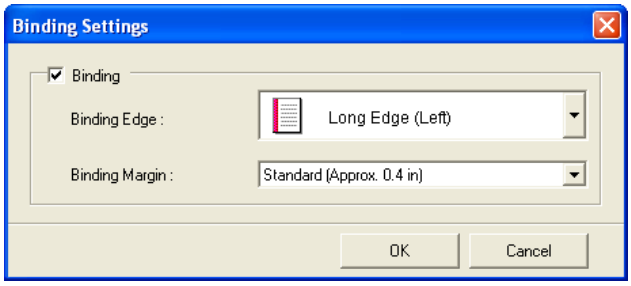
You can configure **Binding** margins for binding printouts.

1 Configure the settings up to **Layout Selection** in the **Layout** screen in **Print Entire Sheet** or **Print Selected Area**.
Refer to "**Print Entire Sheet(Excel)**" →P.336 and "**Print Selected Area(Excel)**" →P.338 for the configuration methods.

2 Click the **Binding Settings** button.

Important
- You cannot click the **Binding Settings** button in the following situations.
  - When the **Image Size** is set to a value smaller than **100%**
  - When a graph is selected
  - When page breaks have been set
  - When a sheet or cell is protected

Open the **Binding Settings** dialog box.



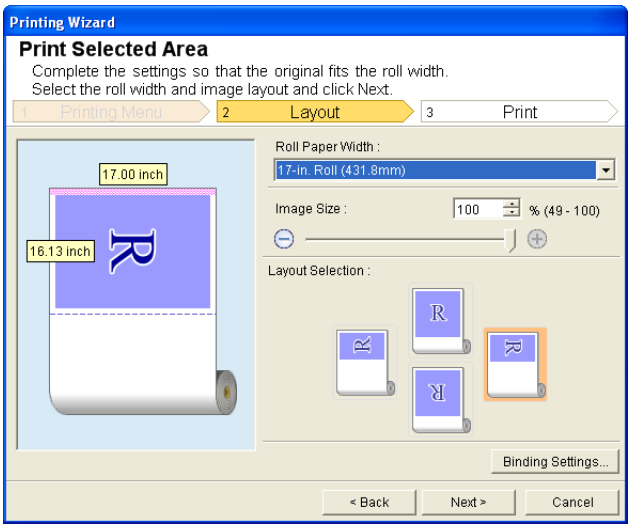
3 If the **Binding** checkbox is not checked, select it to turn binding on.

4 Select **Binding Edge**.

5 Select **Binding Margin**.

6 Click the **OK** button.
Return to the **Layout** screen.

Check that the **Binding** settings are applied in the preview screen.

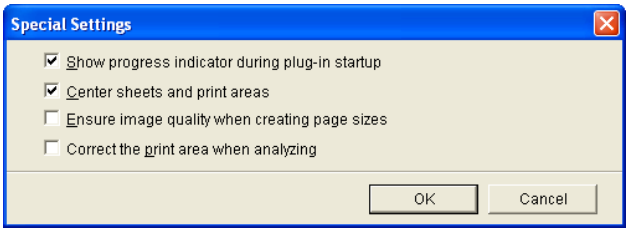


7 Configure the settings in the **Printing Wizard** dialog box.

Configuring Special Settings

You can configure **Special Settings** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar.

1 Click **imagePROGRAF** in the toolbar, and select **Special Settings**.



2 Turn the checkbox for the item you want to change on or off.

Item	Details
Show progress indicator during plug-in startup	When this setting is off, hides the progress indicator that appears while the plug-in is starting up.
Center sheets and print areas	When this setting is off, printing is performed without changing the position. When this setting is on, printing is performed with the top, bottom, left, and right margins layed out equally. When this setting is off, printing is performed without changing the position. This function is only valid in **Microsoft Excel**.
Ensure image quality when creating page sizes	When this setting is on, documents are created at the maximum size. This reduces the enlargement ratio during actual printing, which minimizes degradation of the quality of photos, etc. This function is only valid in **Microsoft PowerPoint**.
Correct the print area when analyzing	For data that cannot be processed with usual data analysis, the print area is corrected and then the data is processed. When data analysis fails, you may be able to print by turning on this checkbox. This function is only valid in **Microsoft Excel**.

3 Click **OK** to close the **Special Settings** dialog box.

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157

Mac OS Software

Printer Driver 344
Preview 364
Free Layout 388
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 414
Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional 430
Layout Plug-In for Photoshop 486
→ Printmonitor 703
→ Media Configuration Tool 577
→ Color Calibration Management Console 848

Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

Printer Driver

Printer Driver Settings 344

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 345
Confirming Print Settings 347
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing 347
Using Favorites 348

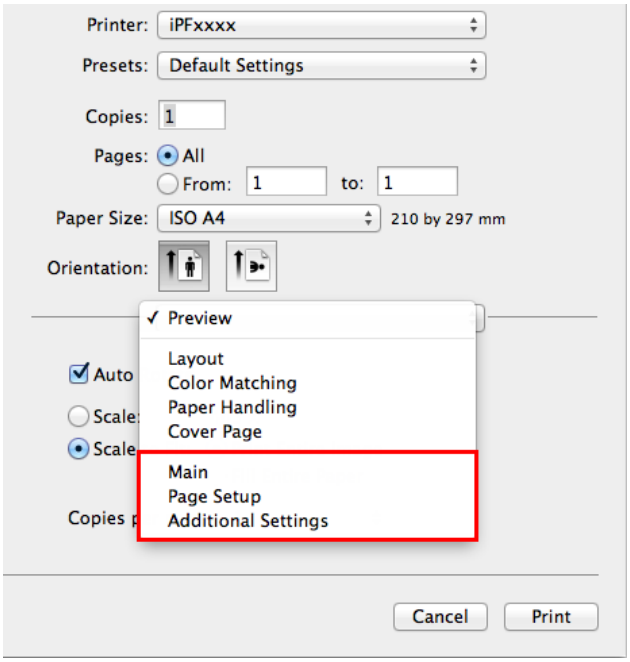
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications 349

Main Pane 349
Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box 352
View set. Dialog Box for the Printing Application 354
Matching pane 354
Color Settings Pane: Color 357
Object Adjustment dialog box: Color 358
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome 358
Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome 359
Gray Adjustment Pane 360
Page Setup Pane 361
Additional Settings Pane 362

Printer Driver Settings

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- **Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** →P.349



For information on the Mac OS printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- **Main Pane** →P.349
  You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.
  - **Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box** →P.352

- View set. Dialog Box for the Printing Application →P.354
- Color Settings Pane: Color →P.357
- Object Adjustment dialog box: Color →P.358
- Matching pane →P.354
- Color Settings Pane: Monochrome →P.358
- Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome →P.359
- Gray Adjustment Pane →P.360

- Page Setup Pane →P.361
  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and source, and automatic cutting.
- Additional Settings Pane →P.362
  You can specify settings for how print jobs are sent to the printer.

With the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** feature, you can arrange originals from various source applications on a single page before printing. For details, see "**Free Layout**." →P.388
With the **imagePROGRAF Preview** feature, you can check the layout before printing and adjust layout or size settings while viewing a preview screen. For details, see "**Preview**." →P.364
With the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** feature, you can automatically enlarge and print scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see "**Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**." →P.414

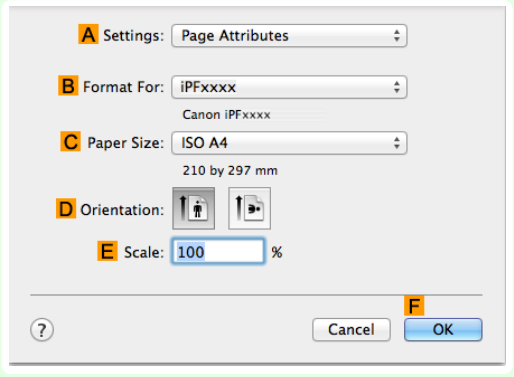
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

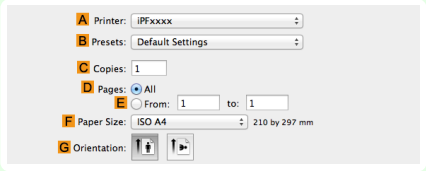
1 This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

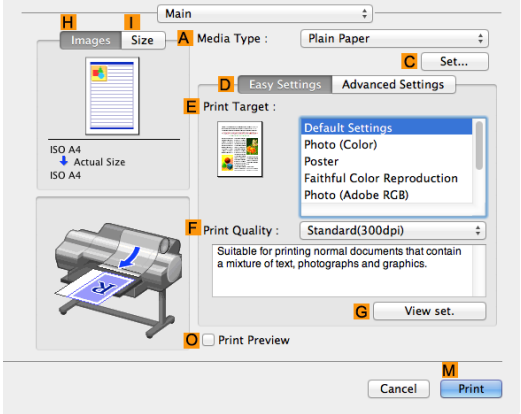


2 Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3 Choose the original size in the **F Paper Size** list.

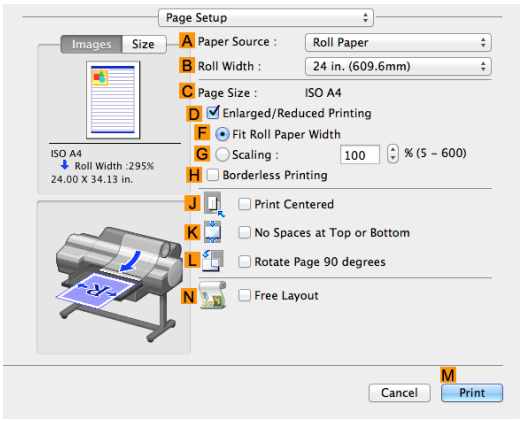
4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5 Access the **Main** pane.



6 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

7 Access the **Page Setup** pane.



8 In the **A Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

9 If you have selected **Manual** in **A Paper Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in **C Page Size**. If **Roll Paper** is selected in **A Paper Source**, select the width of the roll paper that is loaded in **B Roll Width**.

Note

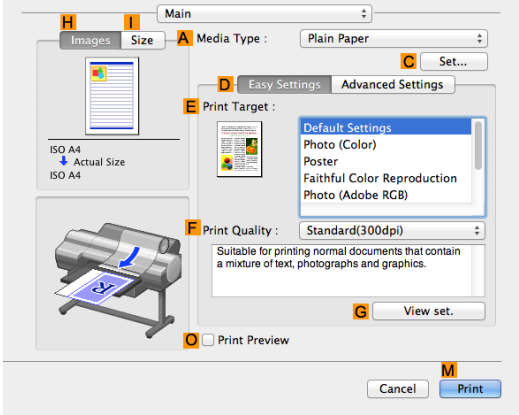
- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see "**Printer Driver Settings** ." ➔P.344

Confirming Print Settings

There are two ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified, as follows.

Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Utility**, and **Additional Settings** panes.By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, paper source, and so on.



Display Area	Information Displayed
Pane displayed when the **H Images** tab is clicked	On top, illustrations indicate the page size of the original, the paper size, orientation, layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information. Under this, the page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction is displayed.
Pane displayed when the **I Size** tab is clicked	Paper size details are indicated numerically.
Pane with printer and paper illustrations	Illustrations indicate the paper source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **G View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View set.** dialog box.

Checking a print preview

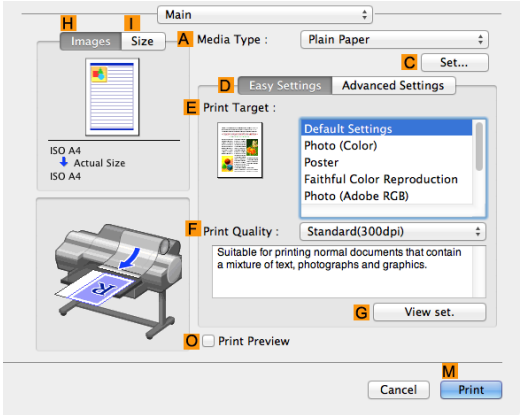
You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.
Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors.
For details on print previews, see "**Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing.**" ➔P.145

Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** function.

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

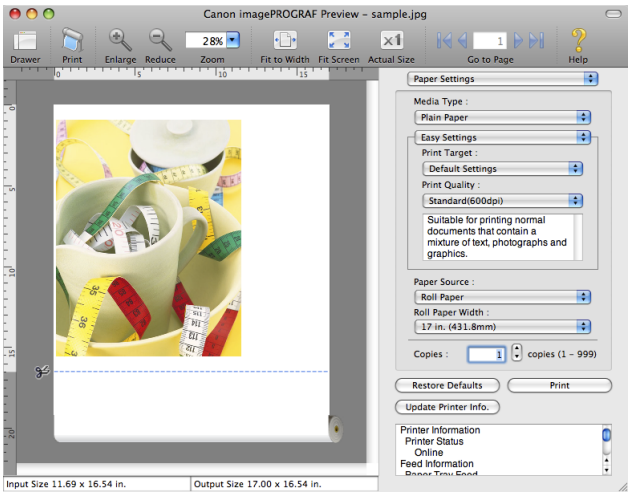
2 Access the **Main** pane.



3 Select the **O Print Preview** check box.

4 Click **M Print**.

5 The **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.



6 Check the layout and adjust settings in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window as desired.

7 Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** menu.

Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, see "Preview." ➔P.364

Using Favorites

You can use the **Presets** function in Mac OS X for favorite-based printing.

Note

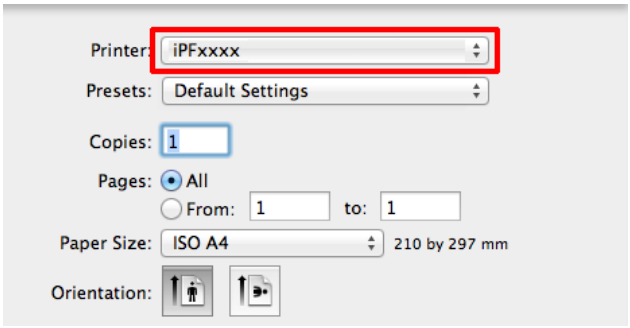
- In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications

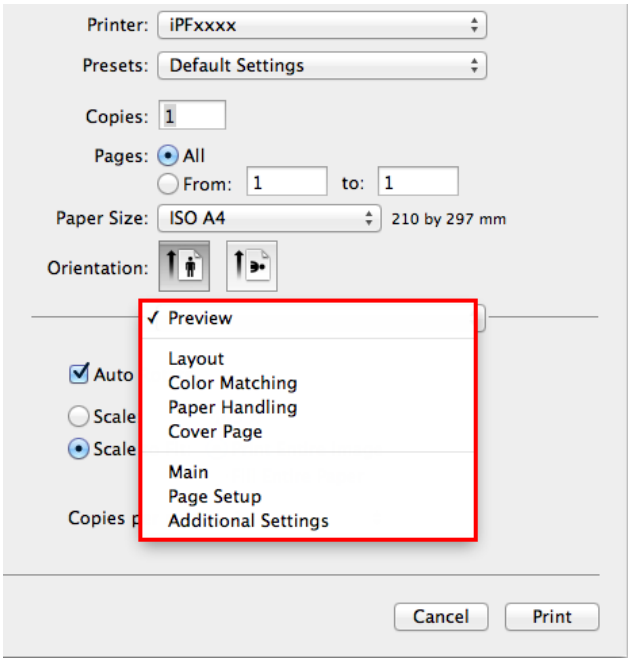
1 In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

Note
- This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2 Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3 Click **Print** to start printing.
As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.

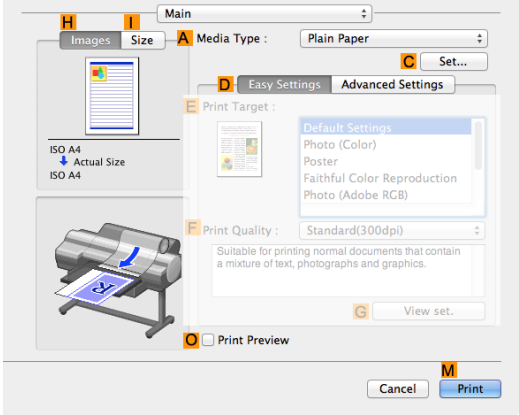


Main Pane

The following settings are available on the **Main** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

Note
- On the **Main** pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Common Items



- **A Media Type**

  Select the paper type.

  For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

- **C Set**

  Displays **Paper Detailed Settings**. You can configure the printing settings to match the type of media, such as the ink drying time.

  - **Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box** ➔P.352

- **O Print Preview**

  If you turn this on, **imagePROGRAF Preview** starts before printing.

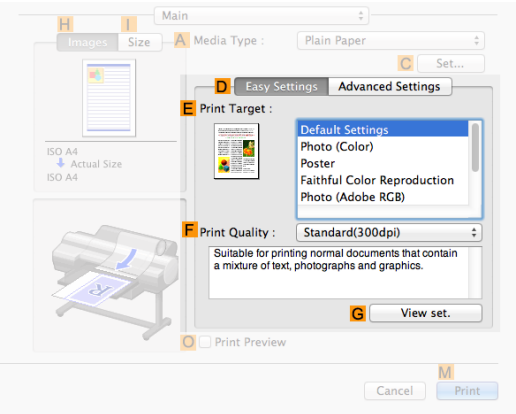
  This allows you to check on-screen previews of documents before printing.

  Important

  - When **Free Layout** is selected on the **Page Setup** panel, **Free Layout** is disabled.

  - **Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing** ➔P.145

Configuration using **Easy Settings**



- **E Print Target**

  Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

  - **Printing Photos and Images** ➔P.37

- **Printing Office Documents** ➔P.47

- **F Print Quality**

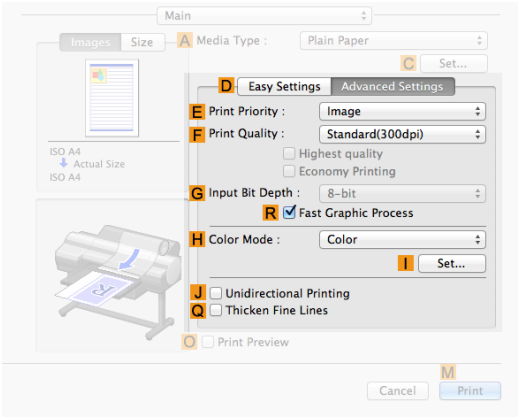
  Choose the level of print quality.

- **G View set.**

  Click to display the **View set.** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the **E Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in **E Print Target**.

  - **View set. Dialog Box for the Printing Application** ➔P.354

Configuration using **Advanced Settings**



- **E Print Priority**

  Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

  - **Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing** ➔P.59

- **F Print Quality**

  Choose the level of print quality.

  - **Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing** ➔P.59

- **G Input Bit Depth**

  Choose the levels of gradation in print data, either **8-bit** or **16-bit**. Optimal results when printing data with rich gradation are possible by choosing **16-bit**. For example, this option is particularly suited to printing images created after specifying 16 bits per channel in Photoshop.

- **R Fast Graphic Process**

  Select this option to print faster than usual, when possible.

- **H Color Mode**

  Choose the color mode.

  - **Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing** ➔P.59

- **I Set**

  Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings.

  - **Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver** ➔P.53

- **J Unidirectional Printing**

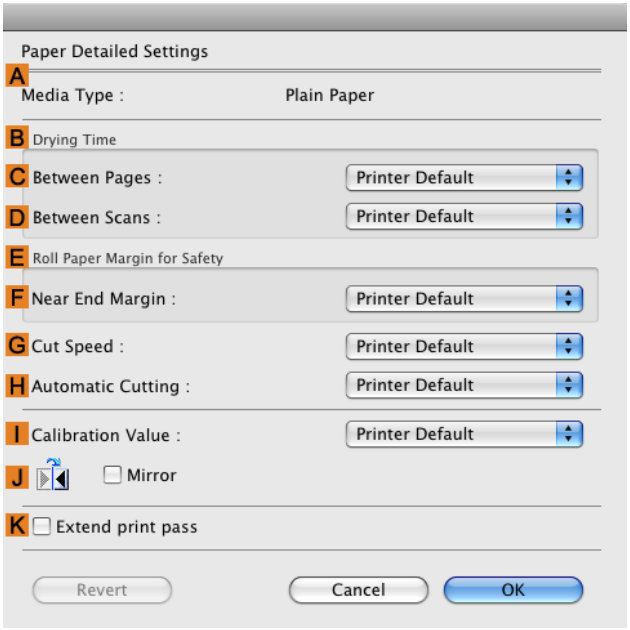
  Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

- **Q Thicken Fine Lines**

  Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box

The **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

- To display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Set** by **Media Type**. (See "Main Pane .") ➔P.349

A Media Type

The paper selected with **Media Type** of the **Main** panel is displayed.
For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Paper Reference Guide**.")

B Drying Time

Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Between Pages** setting is only valid for rolls.

- **C Between Pages**

  You can set the time to wait after printing 1 document page until ejecting the paper. Since waiting time is required for ink to dry before a roll is cut, you can deliver paper in the Output Stacker with the ink dried even if **Cutting Mode** is set to **Automatic**.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
None	Paper is ejected immediately after printing completes.
30 sec. / **1 min.** / **3 min.** / **5 min.** / **10 min.** / **30 min.** / **60 min.**	Paper is ejected when the set time elapses after printing completes.

• D Between Scans

You can set the time to wait after printing 1 line on a page until printing the next line. Set this to avoid bleeding or color unevenness such as when bleeding occurs on a page or when color unevenness occurs during borderless printing.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
None	The next line is printed immediately after a line is printed.
1 sec. / 3 sec. / 5 sec. / 7 sec. / 9 sec.	The next line is printed when the set time elapses after a line is printed. * Increase the time according to the occurrence condition of bleeding or unevenness.

E Roll Paper Margin for Safety

You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.

• F Near End Margin

Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
3 mm (0.12 in)	The document is printed in the standard size. * Select this when you do not have any problems in printing.
20 mm (0.8 in)	Select this when rubbing against the printhead occurs such as when using paper that tends to curl.

G Cut Speed

Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
High Speed	When the **Standard** setting does not result in a clean cut surface, select this.
Standard	Select this when you do not have any problems in automatic cutting.
Low Speed	This helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you select it when using adhesive paper.

H Automatic Cutting

Set whether to perform roll cutting automatically or print a cut line.
The following settings are available for automatic cutting.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
None	After printing completes, the roll is not cut per page, and the next page of data is printed successively.
Print Cut Guideline	After printing completes, a line is printed per page, and the next page of data is printed successively.

I Calibration Value

You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.

Setting Item	Details
Enabled	Print using the calibration results.
Disabled	Print without using the calibration results. Select this to avoid the changing of the color of images during printing by color calibration.

J Mirror

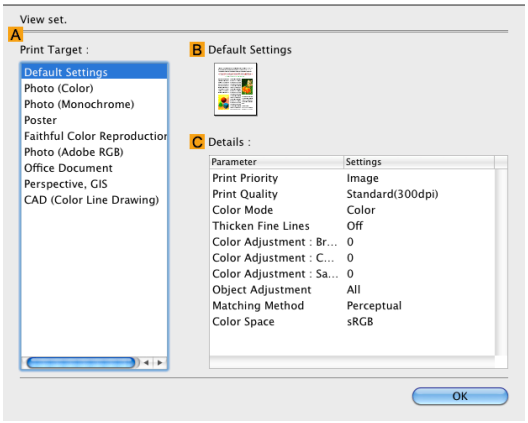
Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

K Extend print pass

Uneven printing that occurs when printing with **Highest** selected in **Print Quality** may be improved in some cases by selecting this check box. However, this also reduces the printing speed.

View set. Dialog Box for the Printing Application

In the **View set.** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View set.** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **View set.** by **Print Target**. (See "Main Pane .") →P.349

- **A Print Target**

  Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).

- **B Name**

  Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.

- **C Details**

  Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the **Print Target** list.

Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.

Important

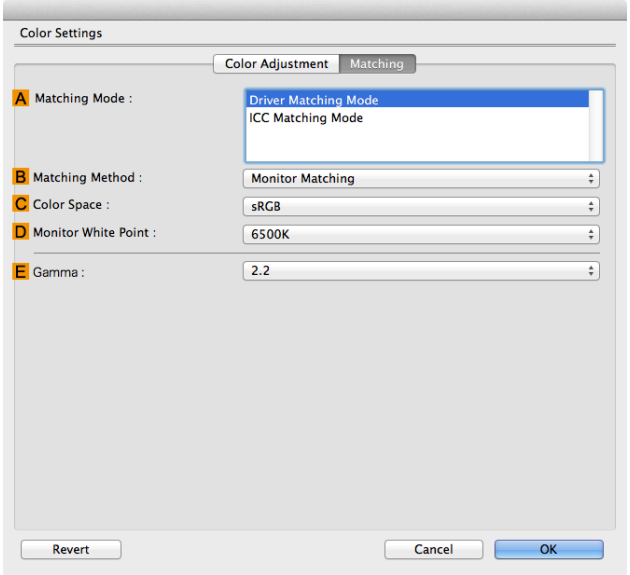
- The **Matching** pane is not displayed when **No color correction** or **Monochrome** is selected in **Color Mode**.

Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** pane click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** tab. (See "Main Pane .") →P.349

Driver Matching Mode

The following options are available when you select **Driver Matching Mode** in the **A Matching Mode** list.



- **A Matching Mode**

  Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

  Normally, select **Driver Matching Mode**. For color matching based on ICC profiles, select **ICC Matching Mode** depending on your color matching system.

- **B Matching Method**

  Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **B Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **A Matching Mode**.

- **C Color Space**

  Select the applicable color space as desired.

- **D Monitor White Point**

  Enter the color temperature set on the monitor.

  Displayed when the **B Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching**.

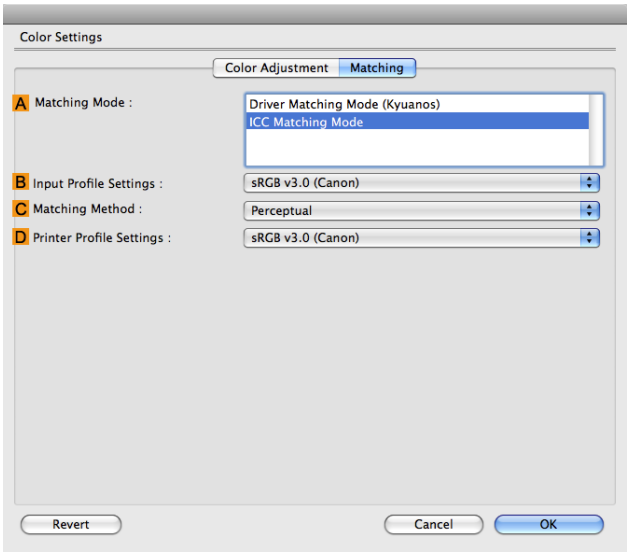
- **E Gamma**

  You can adjust the gradation of intermediate tones in an image.

  2.2 is normally selected. If you want a softer impression than **2.2**, select **1.8**.

ICC Matching Mode

The following options are available when you select **ICC Matching Mode**, in the **A Matching Mode** list.



Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** tab. (See "**Main Pane** .") →P.349

- **A Matching Mode**

  Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

- **B Input Profile Settings**

  You can choose **Input Profile**.

  Various options are available depending on your selected **A Matching Mode**.

- **C Matching Method**

  You can choose **C Matching Method**.

  Various options are available depending on your selected **A Matching Mode**.

- **D Printer Profile Settings**

  Specify the printer profile as desired.

  We recommend that you select an ICC profile created using commercially available profile creation software in order to perform color management accurately on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper.

  The created ICC profile needs to be saved in the following folder on the computer you are using.

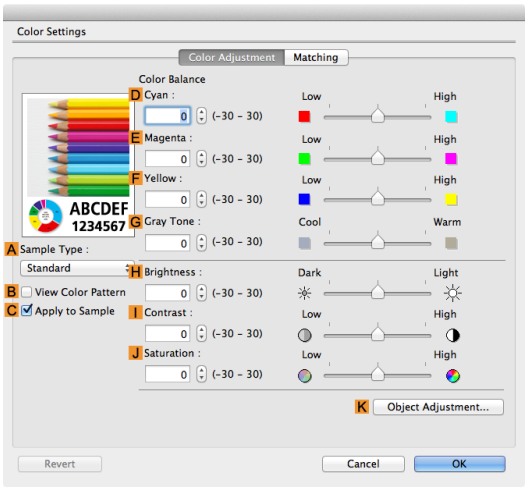
  /user/(user name)/library/ColorSync/Profiles folder

Note

- For details on settings items, see "**Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver.**" →P.53

Color Settings Pane: Color

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.
If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (See "**Main Pane** .") ➔P.349
- For details on settings items, see "**Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver.**" ➔P.53

- **A Sample Type**

  Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

- **B View Color Pattern**

  Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

- **C Apply to Sample**

  Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

- **D Cyan/ E Magenta/ F Yellow**

  Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.

- **G Gray Tone**

  Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool** (tinged with blue) or **Warm** (tinged with red).

- **H Brightness**

  Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **I Contrast**

  Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

- **J Saturation**

  Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.

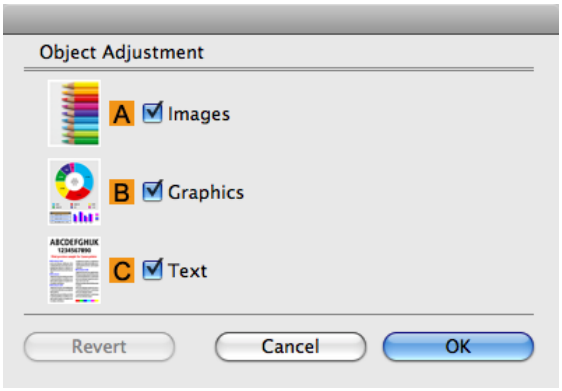
- **K Object Adjustment**

  Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

- **Object Adjustment dialog box: Color** →P.358

Object Adjustment dialog box: Color

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



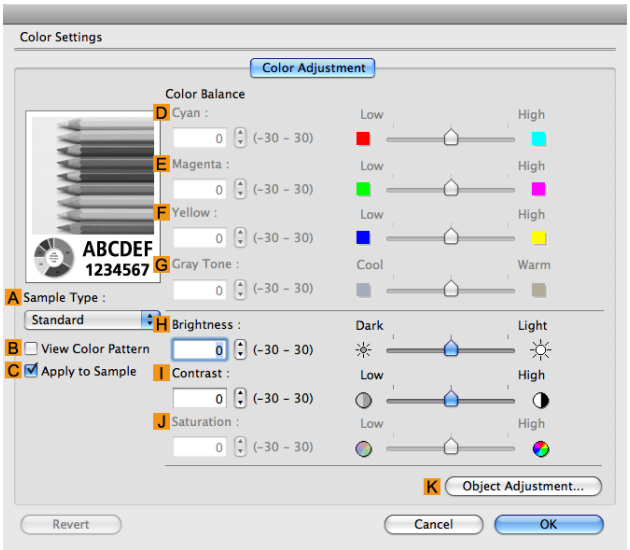
Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** panel.

- **A Images**
  Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
- **B Graphics**
  Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
- **C Text**
  Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Color Settings Pane: Monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** in **Advanced Settings**. (See "Main Pane .") →P.349
- For details on settings items, see "**Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver.**" →P.53

- **A Sample Type**

  Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

- **B View Color Pattern**

  Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

- **C Apply to Sample**

  Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

- **D Cyan/ E Magenta/ F Yellow**

  Not available.

- **G Gray Tone**

  Not available.

- **H Brightness**

  Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **I Contrast**

  Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **I Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **I Contrast** softens images.

- **J Saturation**

  Not available.

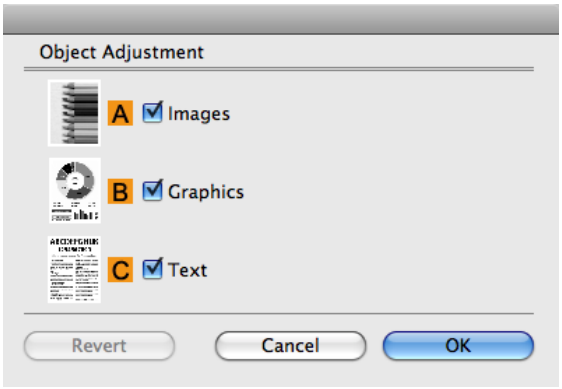
- **K Object Adjustment**

  Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

  - **Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome** →P.359

Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** panel.

- **A Images**

  Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

- **B Graphics**

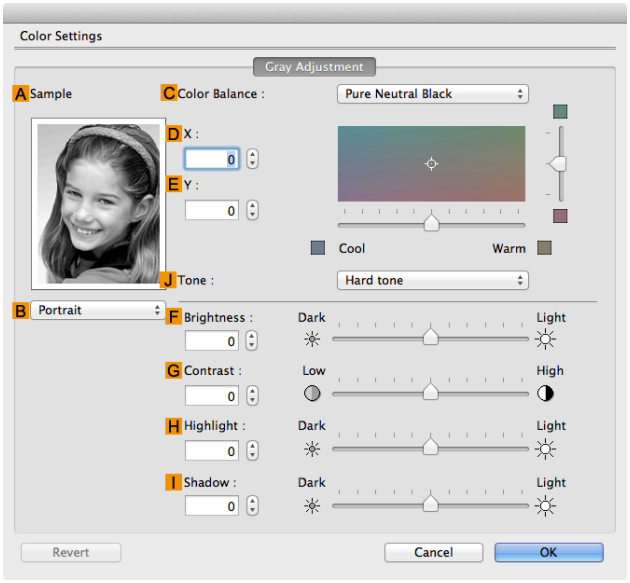
  Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

- **C Text**

  Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Gray Adjustment Pane

On the **Gray Adjustment** pane, you can adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, and other image qualities.



Note

- To display the **Gray Adjustment** pane, on the**Main Pane** →P.349 , select **Monochrome (Photo)** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Color Settings**.
- **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper.

- **A Sample**

  The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.

- **B Sample List**

  Select a sample image, as desired.

- **C Color Balance**

  Click the list to select a color balance that suits the printing application.

- **D X/E Y**

  Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area.

  You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it.

  Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired.

You can click the arrows by the **D X** (horizontal) and **E Y** (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.

- **J Tone**

  You can adjust the brightness of intermediate tones in an image. Selecting **Hard tone** gives a hard impression with more definition. Selecting **Soft tone** gives a soft impression.

- **F Brightness**

  Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **G Contrast**

  Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

- **H Highlight**

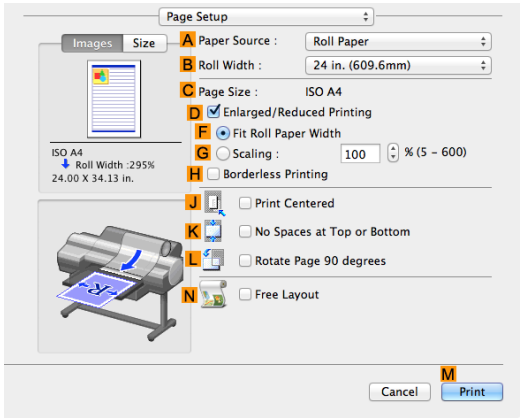
  Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.

- **I Shadow**

  Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.

Page Setup Pane

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



- **A Paper Source**

  Choose how paper is supplied.

  Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **A Media Type** in the **Main** pane.

- **B Roll Width**

  Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer.

- **C Page Size**

  Displays the size of the original, as specified in the page settings of the application.

  For details on page sizes available in the application, see "**Paper Sizes.**" →P.492

- **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

  Select this checkbox to choose the following options.

  - **Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width** →P.67
  - **Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value** →P.71

- **F Fit Roll Paper Width**

  Resizes the document image to match the roll width.

- **G Scaling**

  Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of **5–600.**

- **H Borderless Printing**

  Borderless printing is available if roll paper is selected in the **A Paper Source** list.

  Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper.

  - **Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width** ➔P.92
  - **Borderless Printing at Actual Size** ➔P.81

- **J Print Centered**

  Select this checkbox to print document images in the center of the paper.

  - **Printing Originals Centered on Rolls** ➔P.127
  - **Printing Originals Centered on Sheets** ➔P.131

- **K No Spaces at Top or Bottom**

  Select this checkbox to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper.

  - **Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins** ➔P.139

- **L Rotate Page 90 degrees**

  Select this checkbox to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing.

  - **Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees** ➔P.136

- **N Free Layout**

  Select this checkbox to start **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** before printing.

  This allows you to print multiple documents next to each other.

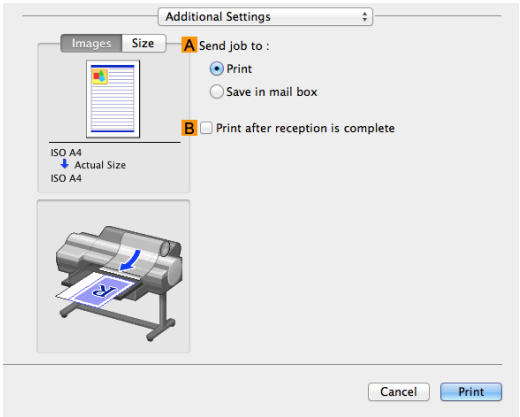
  Important

  - When **Print Preview** is selected on the **Main** panel, **Print Preview** is disabled.

  - **Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other** ➔P.112

Additional Settings Pane

The following settings are available on the **Additional Settings** pane.



- **A Send job to**

  You can configure the method for saving print jobs to the printer hard disk.

- **B Print after reception is complete**

  You can prevent degradation of print quality that occurs when receiving a print job is interrupted and printing is aborted in the middle.

Preview

The Features of Preview 364
Starting Preview 364

Preview Main Window 365
Paper Settings Panel 368
Easy Settings 369
Advanced Settings 371
Output Settings Panel 372
Color Settings Panel 374
Color Adjustment 375
Gray Adjustment 377
Matching 378
Driver Matching Mode 380
ICC Matching Mode 381
ColorSync 382

Preferences Dialog Box 382
Zoom Dialog Box 382
Go to Page Dialog Box 383

Print with No Borders 383
Print on the Center 384
Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom 384
Print Page Rotated 90 Degrees 385
Display with Fitting to the Width of the Paper 385
Display with All 386
Display with Actual Size 386
Moving a Page 387

The Features of Preview

The main features of Preview are as follows.

- While viewing this screen, you can adjust layout settings of a document created with application software.
- You can not only adjust layout settings but also your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen, and you can print the preview screen as it is seen.

Note
- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Preview settings.

Starting Preview

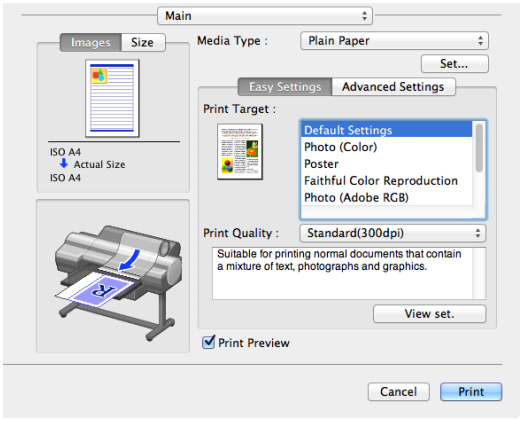
Follow the procedure below to start the Preview.

1. Start the apllication software which you use.
2. From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

Note
- Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

3. Click **Print Preview** in the **Main** panel to attach a checkmark.

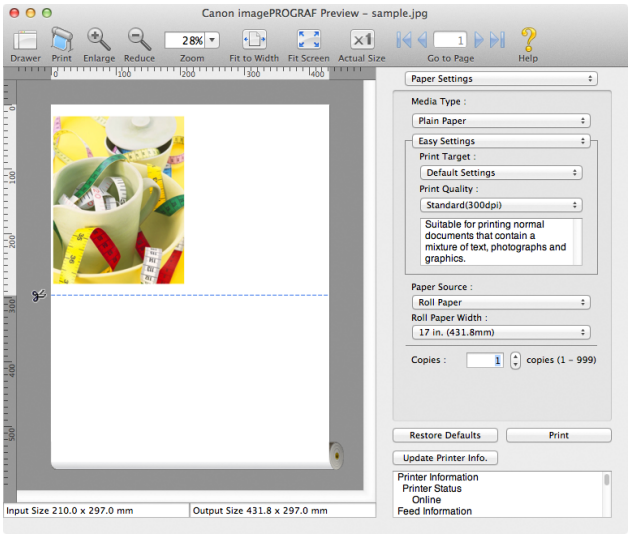
4 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.



Note

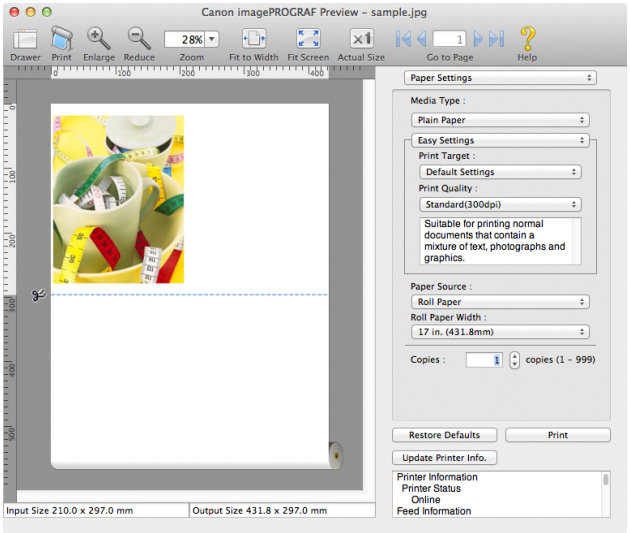
- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

5 Preview main window is displayed.



Preview Main Window

The Preview main window consists of the menu and tool bars, and preview, dialog , drawer and status area.



Note

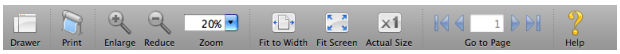
- You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool bar.

- Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.

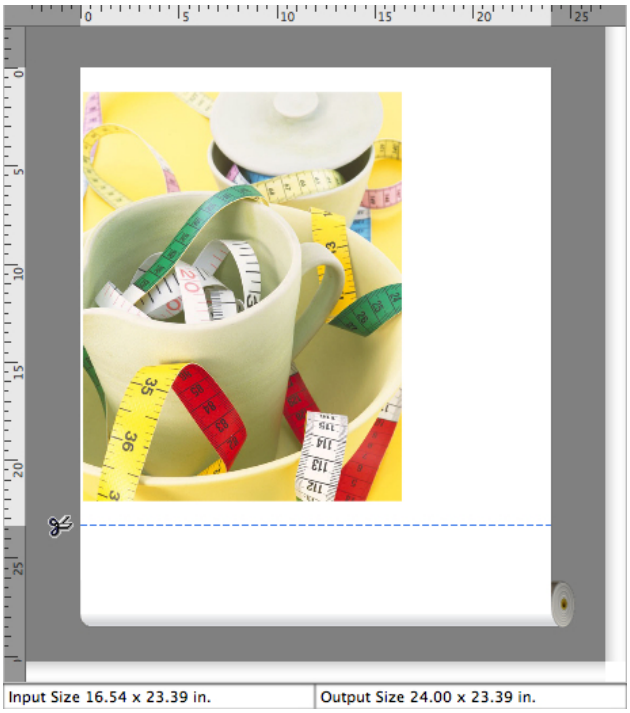
- Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



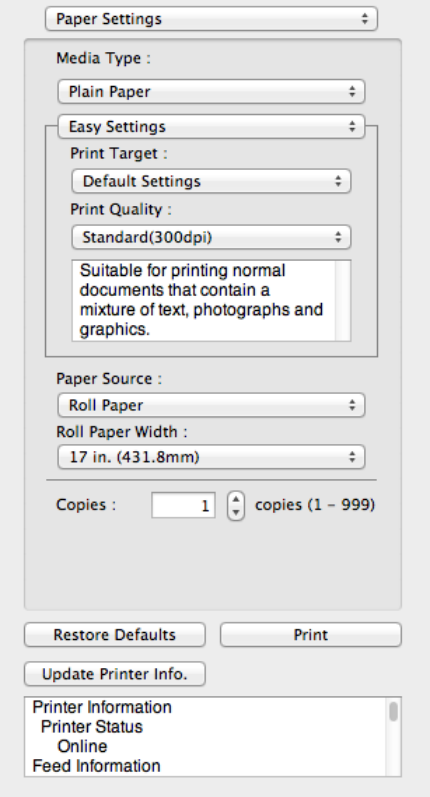
- Preview Area

You can check the settings you made in this area.



- Dialog Area

This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job.

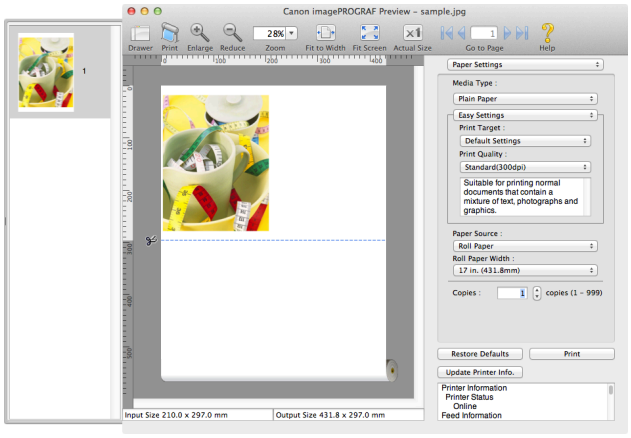


- Drawer Area

This allows you to display the thumbnails of a document.

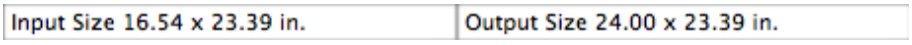
This area appears when you click **Drawer** from the tool bar.

Alternatively, you may select **Drawer** from the **View** menu.



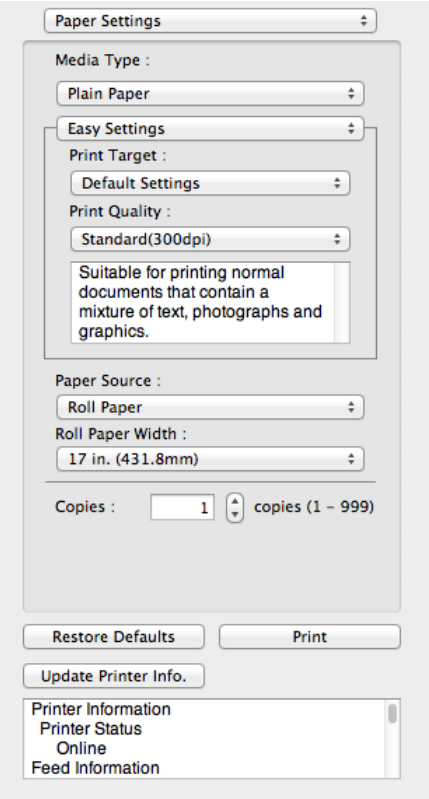
- Status Area

This shows **Input Size** and **Output Size**.



Paper Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Paper Settings** in the dialog area.



- **Media Type**

This allows you to select the media type.

Note
- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

- **Easy Settings / Advanced Settings**

Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs.
The settings available on each mode are as follows.

- Easy Settings →P.369
- Advanced Settings →P.371

- **Paper Source**

You can select the paper source.
The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
Manual	Select for manual paper feed printing.
Manual (3mm margins)	Select for manual paper feed printing when you want to minimize the margin at the far end edge of paper.
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.

Note
- When you select **Manual (3mm margins)** for **Paper Source**, the far end edge of printed image may become defective depending on the paper used. If this happens, select another paper source.

- **Roll Paper Width**

  This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.

  Note
  - Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Copies**

  You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

  Note
  - The maximum value is 999.
  - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Restore Defaults** Button

  Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.

- **Print** Button

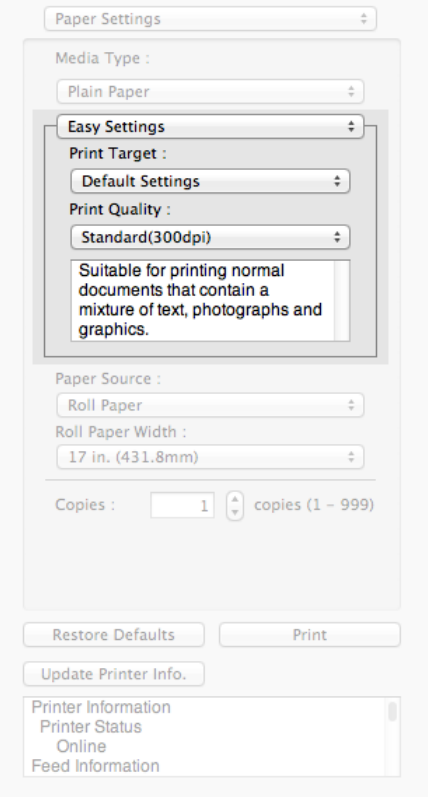
  Click the button to begin printing.

- **Update Printer Info.** Button

  Click the button to acquire printer information.

Easy Settings

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.



- **Print Target**

  You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each **Print Target** item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
Default Settings	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
Photo (Color)	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
Photo (Monochrome)	Suitable for optimized printing of monochrome photos.
Poster	The best setting for posters.Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
Faithful Color Reproduction	Prints by minimizing color differences. Suitable for when the printing results are too vivid or when printing scanned images.
Photo (Adobe RGB)	Prints using a color space with the best colors for Adobe RGB images.
CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Suitable for printing fine lines such as drawings clearly.
Perspective, GIS	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.
Office Document	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.
Custom Settings	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.

Note
- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

- **Print Quality**

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

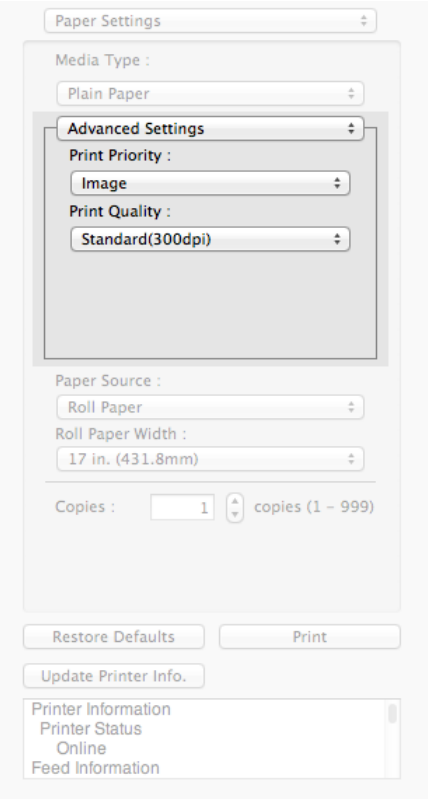
The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	**High** / **Standard** / **Fast**
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

Note
- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

Advanced Settings

Presents detailed settings for the print quality, the color mode, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.



• Print Priority

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
Image	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
Line Drawing	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newssheet or other documents that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you expect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select **Image**.
Proof	This is a setting for enhancing the reproducibility of characters, illustrations, and photos with print proofing.However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Office Document	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.

Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

• Print Quality

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

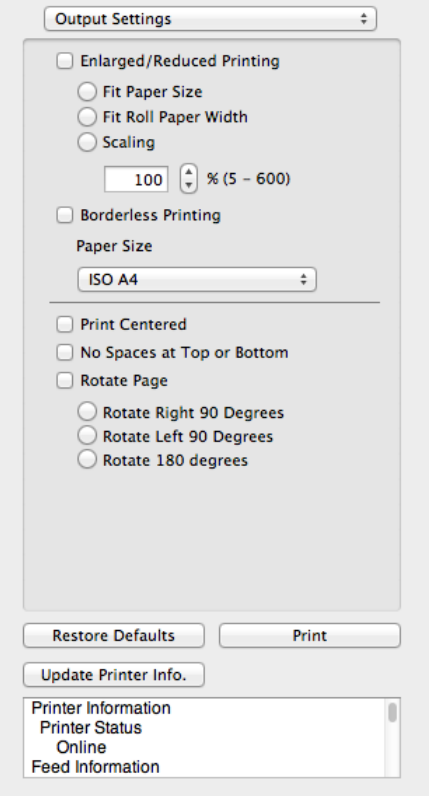
The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	**Highest quality** / **High** / **Standard** / **Fast**
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

Note
- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.
- For **Highest quality**, the resolution is not displayed.

Output Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Output Settings** in the dialog area.



• Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Select the method for enlarged/reduced printing.

The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the media size selected for output. Select the media size to print from **Paper Size**.
Fit Roll Paper Width	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the width of the roll paper with the page width. *Make sure that the width of the roll paper in the printer is set correctly for **Roll Paper Width** in the **Paper Settings** panel. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
Scaling	Enlarges/reduces the whole page by the scaling rate as specified. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5 and 600%. *You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button. *Although Scaling can be set to make the image larger than the media size, the part that does not fit in the media cannot be printed. *This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

- **Borderless Printing**

You can print the media without margins on all sides when the roll paper with the specific width and the specific media type is used.

For more information about **Borderless Printing**, see "Print with No Borders." ➔P.383

Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Print Centered**.

- **Paper Size**

You can select the size of the print media.

Note
- This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width** is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

- **Print Centered**

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

For more information about **Print Centered**, see "Print on the Center." ➔P.384

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

- **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**

You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

For more information about **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**, see "Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom." ➔P.384

Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Rotate Page**

Select the method for rotating page.

The following settings are available for rotating page.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page right 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated.
Rotate Left 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page left 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated.
Rotate 180 degrees	Allows you to rotate the image 180 degrees from the vertical to the right.

- **Restore Defaults** Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.

- **Print** Button

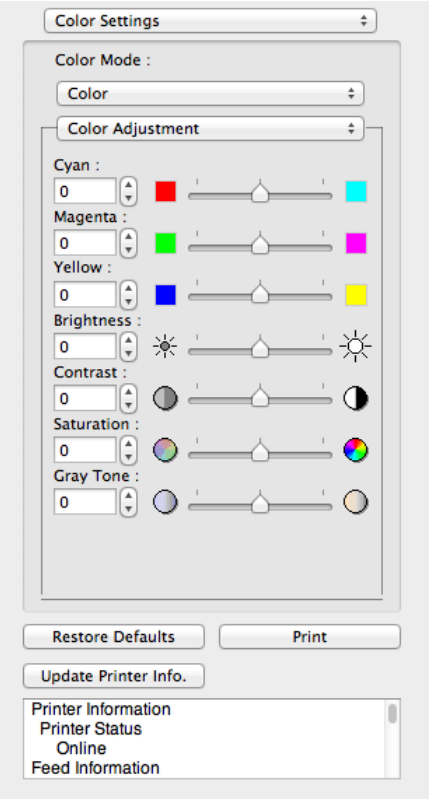
Click the button to begin printing.

- **Update Printer Info.** Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

Color Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Color Settings** in the dialog area.



• Color Mode

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Color	Enables color printing.
Monochrome (Photo)	Prints monochrome photo image data in a gray scale that is free of color casting (phenomenon of grays that appear tinted).
Monochrome	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled monochrome.
No color correction	Prints without performing color matching in the printer driver. Select this when color matching is performed by the application such as Adobe Photoshop or when you want to print color charts using the profile creation tool.

Note

- The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

• Color Adjustment / Gray Adjustment / Matching

You can set the color adjustment and matching.

- Color Adjustment →P.375
- Gray Adjustment →P.377
- Matching →P.378

Note

- You can select **Gray Adjustment** only after **Monochrome (Photo)** has been selected in **Color Mode**.
- **Matching** is not displayed if **No color correction** has been selected in **Color Mode**.

- **Restore Defaults** Button
  Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.
- **Print** Button
  Click the button to begin printing.
- **Update Printer Info.** Button
  Click the button to acquire printer information.

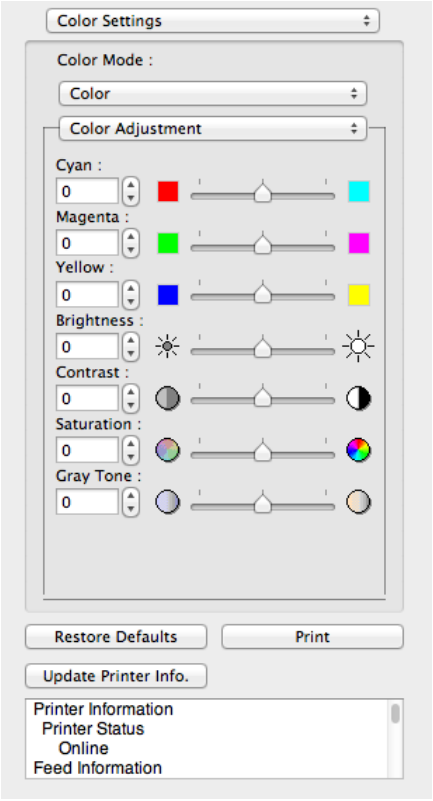
Color Adjustment

You can set the color adjustment.

Adjusting Color

Normally colors should be adjusted in the software application, but if you see colors in the printout that do not match colors on the screen, you can perform color adjustments.

1. Select **Color** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.
2. Select **Color Adjustment**.



3. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Cyan	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Magenta	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Yellow	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image.

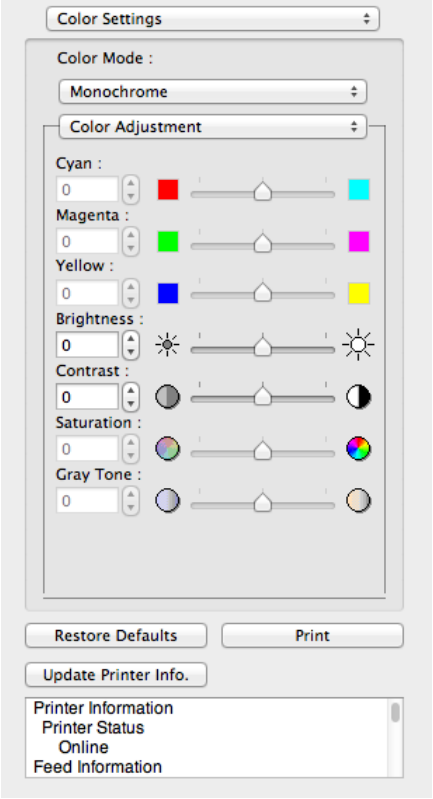
Setting	Details
Contrast	*For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjusts the hues for vivid color or dark color.
Gray Tone	Adjusts gray from cool black (bluish tones) to warm black (reddish tones).

Note
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

Adjusting Monochrome

Use the monochrome setting to print monochrome images of color photographs captured with a scanner or digital camera or other color images.

1. Select **Monochrome** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.
2. Select **Color Adjustment**.



3. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.

Note
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

Gray Adjustment

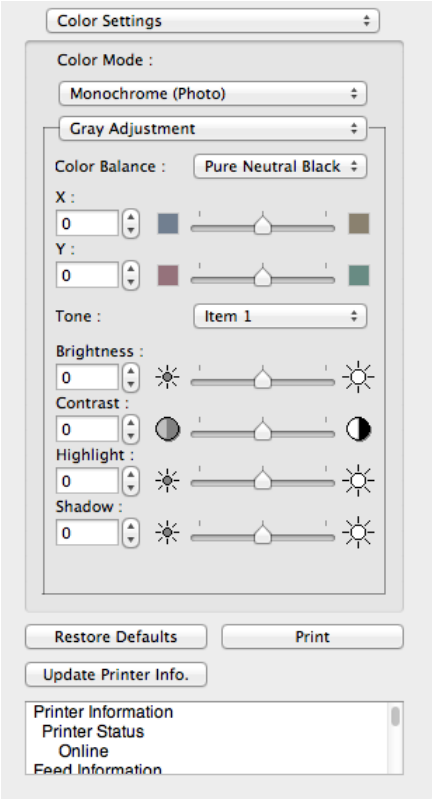
You can set the gray adjustment.

Adjusting Monochrome (Photo)

Sets monochrome printing for black-and-white photo image data captured with a scanner or digital camera.

1 Select **Monochrome (Photo)** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.

2 Select **Gray Adjustment**.



3 Click the **Color Balance** list and select the color settings.

Setting	Details
Cool Black	Adjusts cool black (blue tones) to gray.
Pure Neutral Black	Adjusts to neutral gray.
Warm Black	Adjusts warm black (red tones) to gray.

Note
- To perform the adjustments, drag the X or Y slide bar left and right.
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value by X and Y.

4 Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Tone	You can adjust the brightness of intermediate tones in an image. Selecting **Hard tone** gives a hard impression with more definition. Selecting **Soft tone** gives a soft impression.

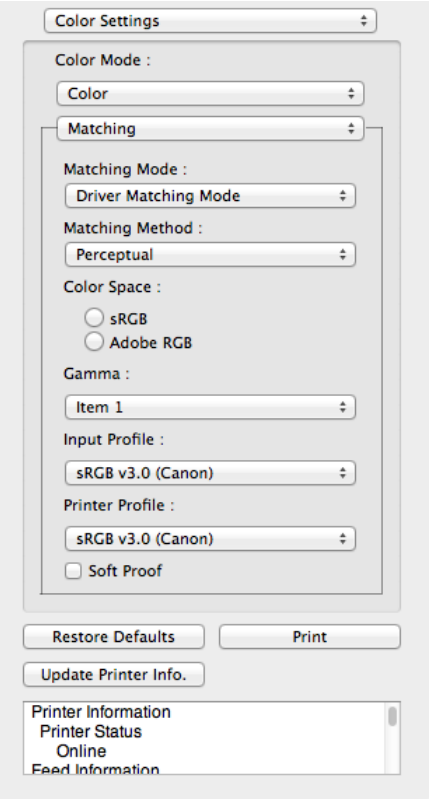
Setting	Details
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Highlight	Adjusts the brightness of the brightest areas.
Shadow	Adjusts the brightness of the darkest areas.

Note
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.
- The availability of settings depends on the selected the media type.

Matching

You can set the matching.

Important
- If **No color correction** is selected under **Color Mode**, the **Matching** is not displayed.



• Matching Mode

You can select a matching mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode ➔P.380	Enables printing of optimal color tones using a driver specific color profile. You should normally select this mode.

Setting	Details
ICC Matching Mode →P.381	Enables color matching using ICC profiles. Select this if you want to print by specifying the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail. This allows you to use ICC profiles for digital cameras and scanners, ICC profiles created using the profile creation tool, etc.
ColorSync →P.382	Enables color matching by using the ColorSync function of OS X. Select this if you want to perform soft proofing using ColorSync before printing.

Note
- You need to set each correction on the printer driver.
- **ColorSync** needs to be selected in the **Color Matching** panel of the driver in order to select **ColorSync**.

- **Matching Method**

You can select a matching method to suit the print job.

- **Color Space**

Select the color space.

Note
- You can select only after **Driver Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Gamma**

You can adjust the gradation of intermediate tones in an image. **2.2** is normally selected. If you want a softer impression than **2.2**, select **1.8**.

Note
- You can select only after **Driver Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Input Profile**

Select the input profile.

Note
- You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Printer Profile**

Select the printer profile.

Note
- You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

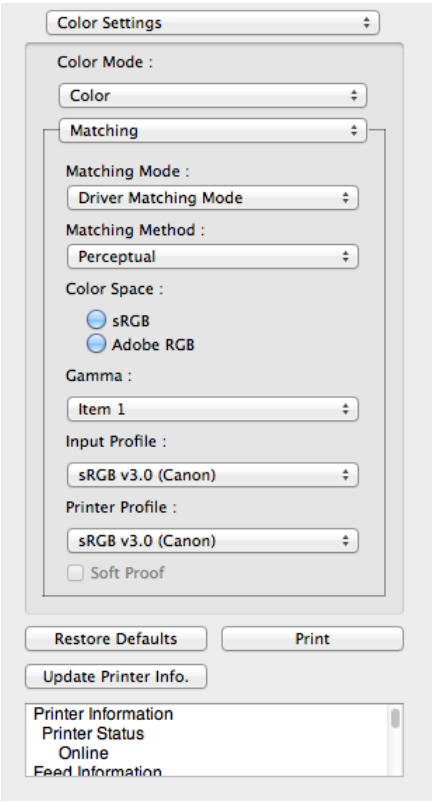
- **Soft Proof**

When you place a checkmark here, **ColorSync** applies to the preview area.

Note
- You can select only after **ColorSync** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

Driver Matching Mode

1 Under **Matching Mode**, select **Driver Matching Mode**.



2 Click the **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

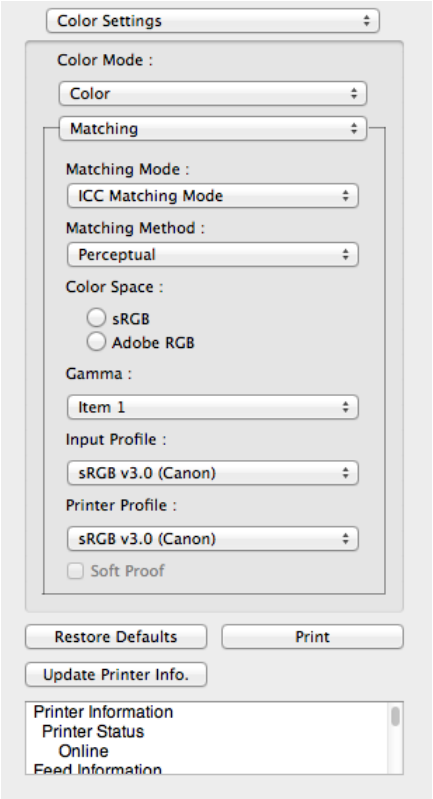
Setting	Details
Auto	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.

3 Select **Color Space** for the print output.

Setting	Details
sRGB	Uses color space for a standard monitor. This selection is ideal for most software applications.
Adobe RGB	Uses wide color space. Use this setting to print images created with Adobe RGB color space.

ICC Matching Mode

1 Under **Matching Mode**, select **ICC Matching Mode**.



2 Click the **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

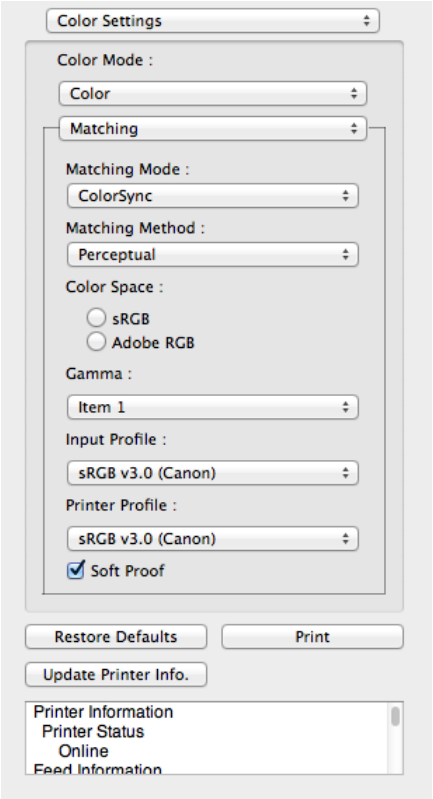
Setting	Details
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.
Colorimetric (No White-Point Correction)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to **Colorimetric**. Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute colorimetric.

3 Click the **Input Profile** list and select an input profile.

4 Click the **Printer Profile** list and select a printer profile.

ColorSync

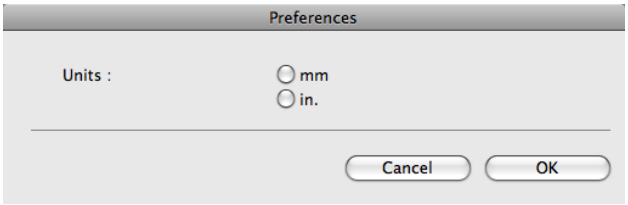
1 Check that **ColorSync** is selected in **Matching Mode**.



2 To apply **ColorSync** to previews, check the **Soft Proof** check box.

Preferences Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Preferences** from the **imagePROGRAF Advanced Preview** menu. You can set the preferences for Preview.

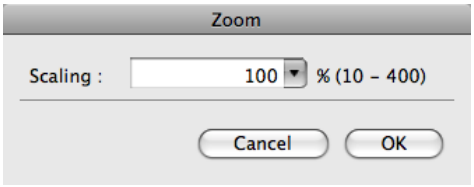


- **Units**

  Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

Zoom Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.



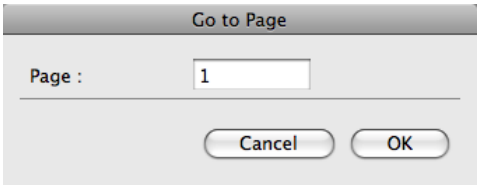
- **Scaling**

Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.

Note
- You can input between 10 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking ▼ button.

Go to Page Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Go to Page** from the **View** menu.



Note
- You can not select **Go to Page** if the document is only one page.

- **Page**

Input the page number in numerical characters to display in the preview area.

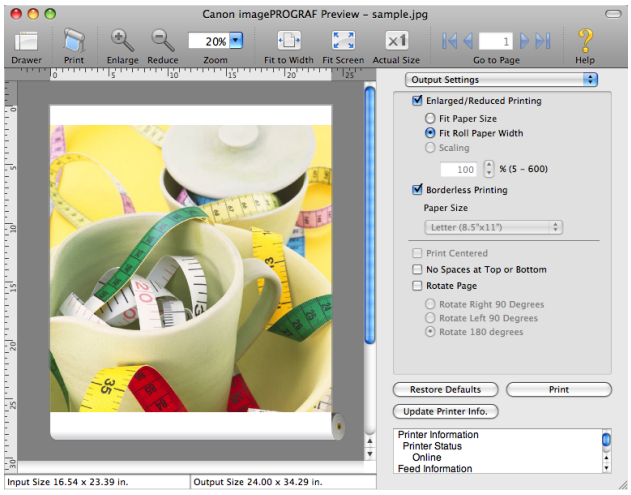
Note
- You can change the numbers in the range of the page of the documents.

Print with No Borders

You can use the borderless printing function to print without margins surrounding the image.

Note
- With some media borderless printing can be performed only between two edges.
- To use the borderless printing function, the specified media must be set to the printer.

1. On the **Paper Settings Panel** ➔P.368 , select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.
2. On the **Output Settings Panel** ➔P.372 , click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.
3. Select **Fit Roll Paper Width**.
4. Click the **Borderless Printing** check box on.



5 Click the **Print** button.

Borderless printing begins.

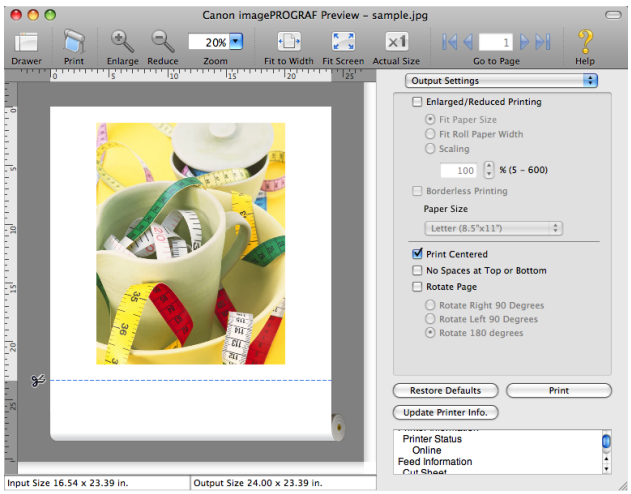
Print on the Center

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

Note

- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

1 On the **Output Settings Panel** →P.372 , click the **Print Centered** check box on.



2 Click the **Print** button.

Printing on the center begins.

Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom

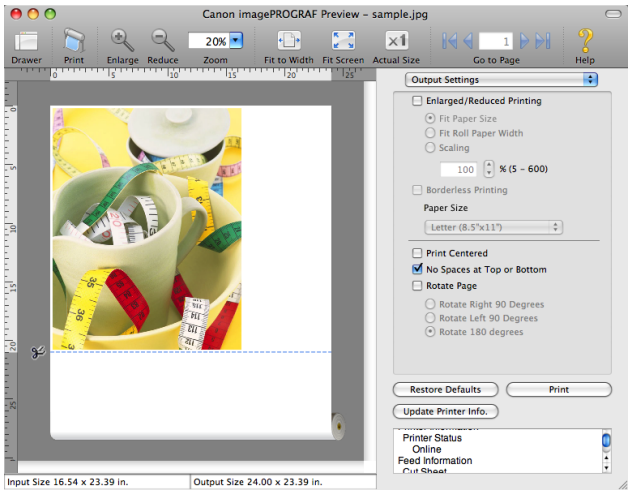
You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

Note

- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

1 On the **Paper Settings Panel** →P.368 , select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

2 On the **Output Settings Panel** ➔P.372 , click the **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box on.



3 Click the **Print** button.

Printing on the settings with no spaces at top or bottom begins.

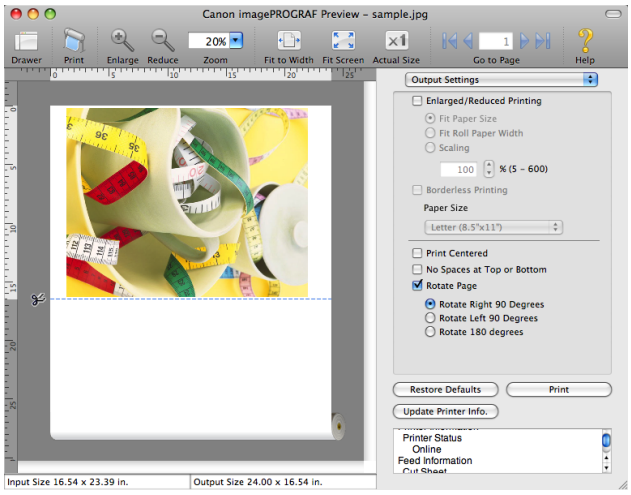
Print Page Rotated 90 Degrees

You can save paper by printing in landscape orientation on roll paper.

1 On the **Paper Settings Panel** ➔P.368 , select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

2 On the **Output Settings Panel** ➔P.372 , click the **Rotate Page** check box on.

3 Select **Rotate Right 90 Degrees** or **Rotate Left 90 Degrees**.



4 Click the **Print** button.

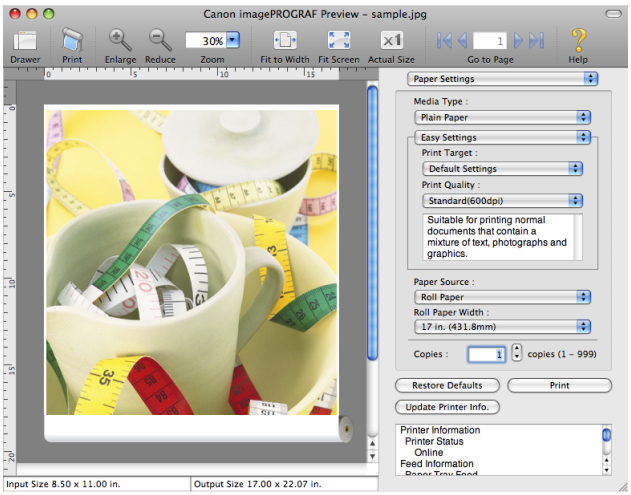
Printing on rotating 90 degrees begins.

Display with Fitting to the Width of the Paper

In the preview area, you can display to the width of the paper.

1 Select **Fit to Width** from the tool bar.

2 Fitting to the width of the paper, it is displayed.

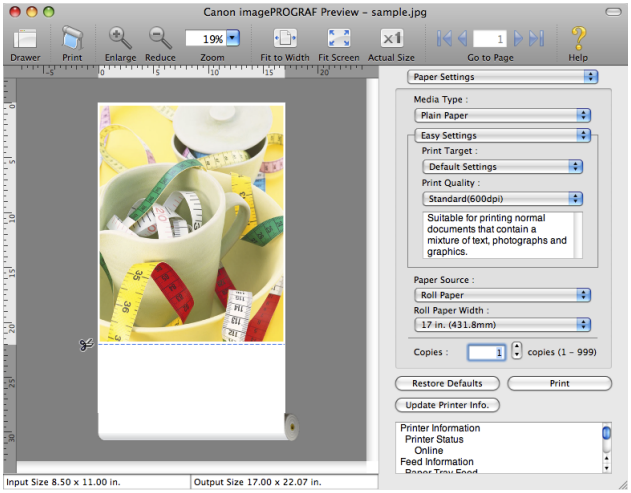


Display with All

In the preview area, you can display all.

1 Select **Fit Screen** from the tool bar.

2 All is displayed.

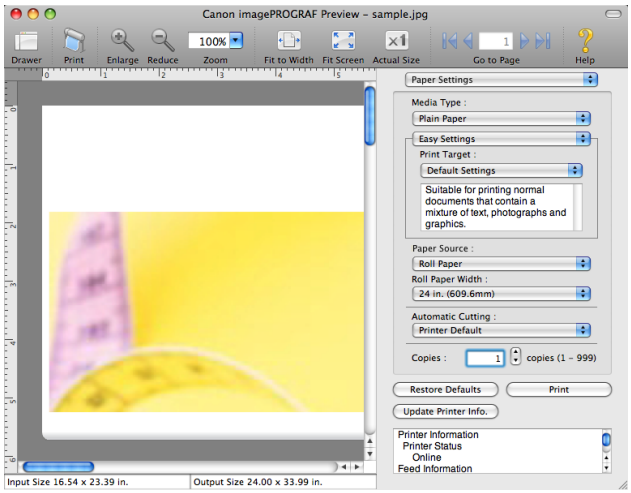


Display with Actual Size

In the preview area, you can display the actual size.

1 Select **Actual Size** from the tool bar.

2 Actual size is displayed.



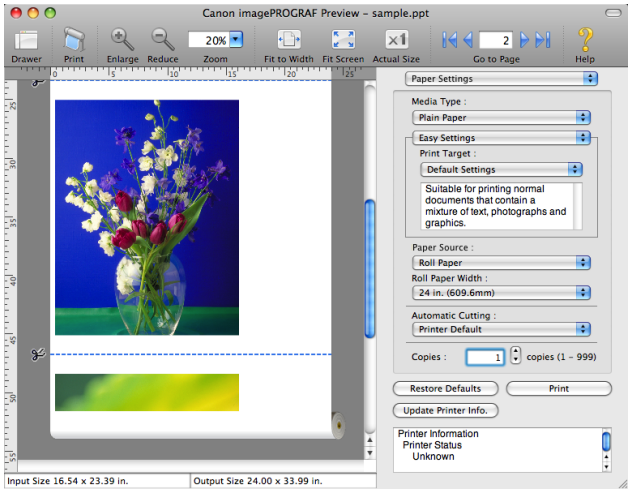
Moving a Page

You can move a page to display in the preview area.

1 Select each button in **Go to Page** on the tool bar.

Setting	Details
	Go to the first page.
	Go to the previous page.
	Go to the next page.
	Go to the last page.

2 The target page appears.



Note

- You can also move a page by clicking the page on the thumbnails.

Free Layout

The Features of Free Layout 388
Starting Free Layout 388

Free Layout Main Window 389
Paper Settings Panel 392
Easy Settings 393
Advanced Settings 395
Color Settings Panel 396
Color Adjustment 397
Gray Adjustment 399
Matching 400
Driver Matching Mode 402
ICC Matching Mode 403
ColorSync 404

Preferences Dialog Box 404
Page Setup Dialog Box 405
Zoom Dialog Box 406
Format Dialog Box 407

Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page 407
Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page 408
Selecting an Object 408
Changing the Object Size 409
Moving an Object 409
Rotating an Object 410
Laying out Objects Automatically 410
Aligning Objects 410
Changing the Object Overlapping Order 412
Pasting a Copied or Cut Object 413

The Features of Free Layout

The main features of Free Layout are as follows.

- Allows you to lay out at will and print a document created with application software.
- You can not only lay out multiple pages on one page but also lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page, or lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.

Note
- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Free Layout settings.

Starting Free Layout

Follow the procedure below to start the Free Layout.

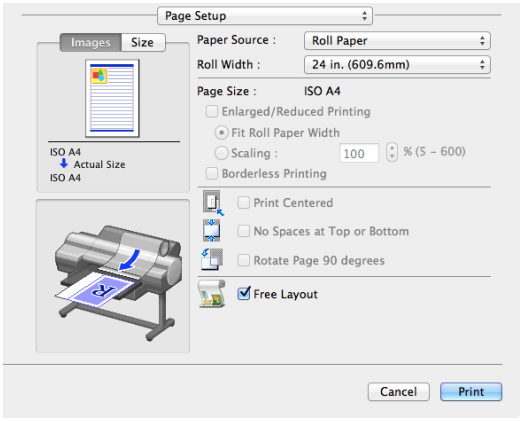
1 Start the apllication software which you use.

2 From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

Note
- Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

3 Click on **Free Layout** in the **Page Setup** panel to attach a checkmark.

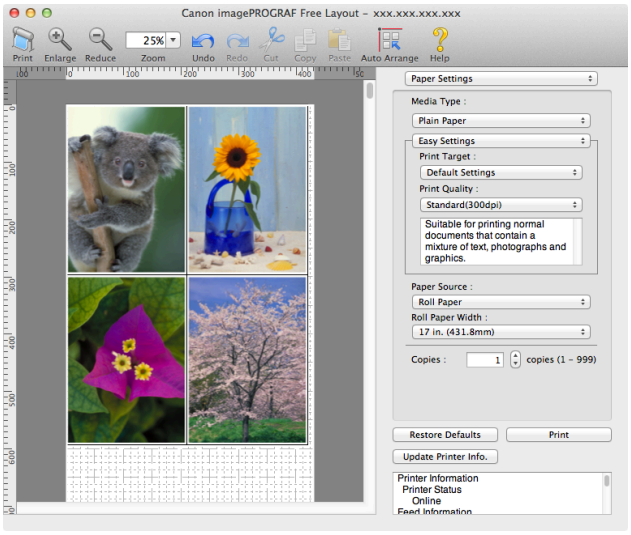
4 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.



Note

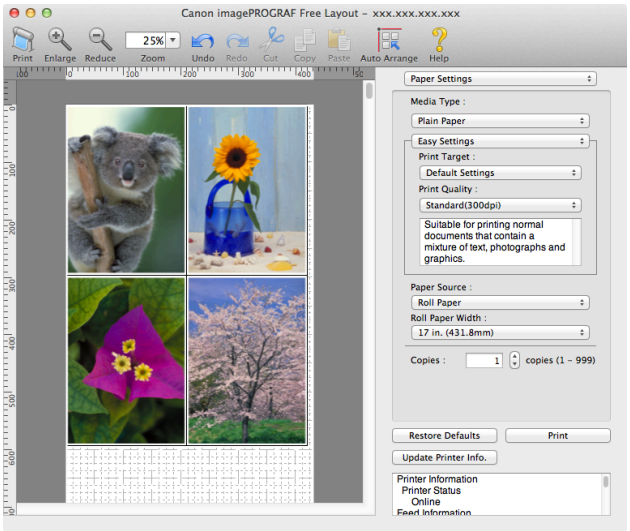
- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

5 Free Layout main window is displayed.



Free Layout Main Window

The Free Layout main window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and dialog areas.



Note

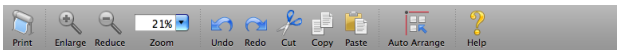
- You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool.

- Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.

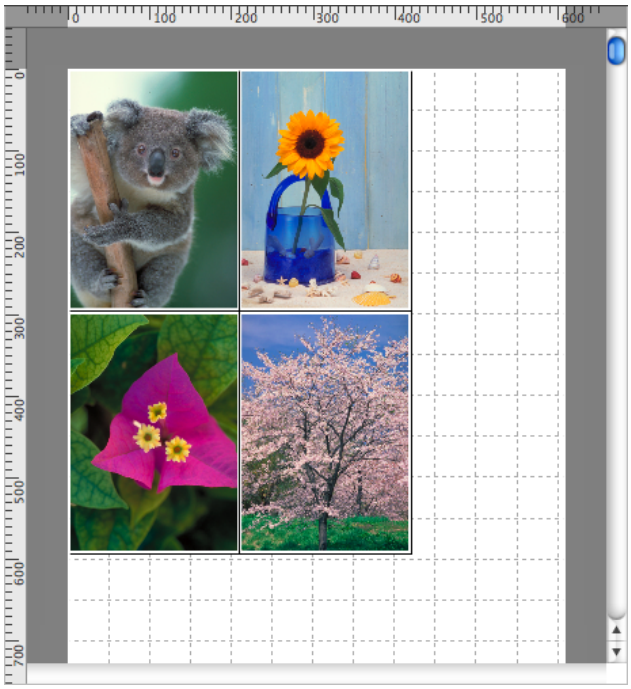
- Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



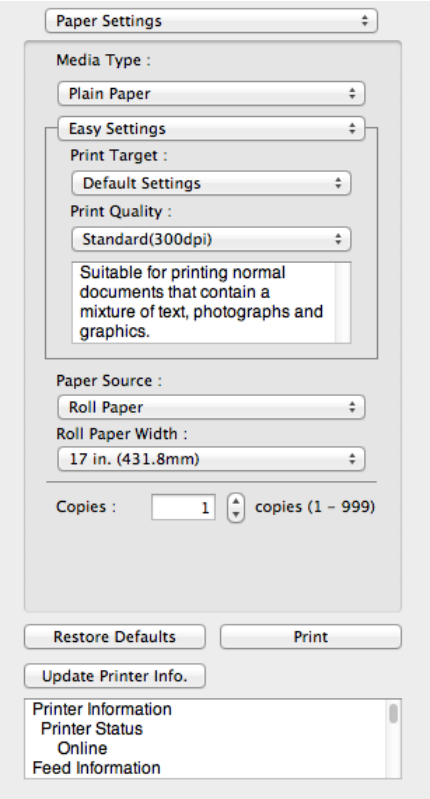
- Layout Area

This allows you to lay out objects and edit the object size and orientation.



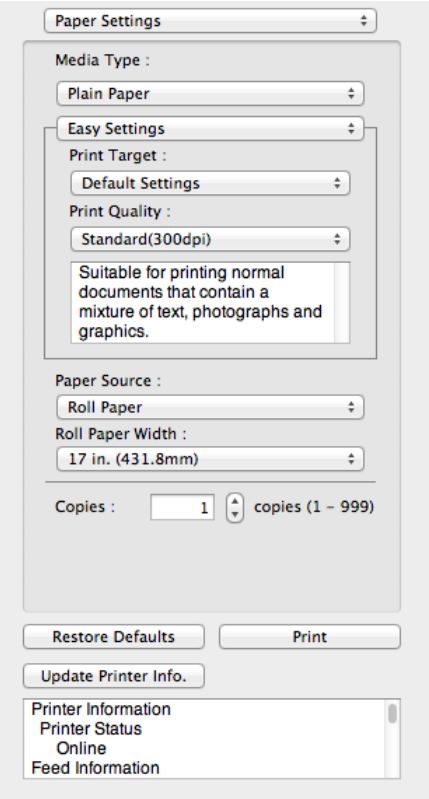
- Dialog Area

  This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job.



Paper Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Paper Settings** in the dialog area.



- **Media Type**

This allows you to select the media type.

Note
- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

- **Easy Settings / Advanced Settings**

Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs.
The settings available on each mode are as follows.

- Easy Settings →P.393
- Advanced Settings →P.395

- **Paper Source**

You can select the paper source.
The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.
Manual	Select for manual paper feed printing.
Manual (3mm margins)	Select for manual paper feed printing when you want to minimize the margin at the far end edge of paper.

Note
- When you select **Manual (3mm margins)** for **Paper Source**, the far end edge of printed image may become defective depending on the paper used. If this happens, select another paper source.

- **Roll Paper Width**

  This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.

  Note
  - Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Copies**

  You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

  Note
  - The maximum value is 999.
  - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Restore Defaults** Button

  Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Free Layout.

- **Print** Button

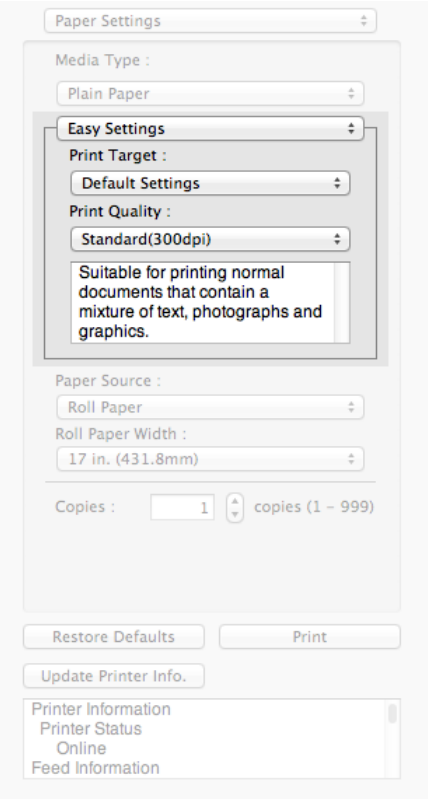
  Click the button to begin printing.

- **Update Printer Info.** Button

  Click the button to acquire printer information.

Easy Settings

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.



- **Print Target**

  You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each **Print Target** item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
Default Settings	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
Photo (Color)	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
Photo (Monochrome)	Suitable for optimized printing of monochrome photos.
Poster	The best setting for posters.Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
Faithful Color Reproduction	Prints by minimizing color differences. Suitable for when the printing results are too vivid or when printing scanned images.
Photo (Adobe RGB)	Prints using a color space with the best colors for Adobe RGB images.
CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Suitable for printing fine lines such as drawings clearly.
Perspective, GIS	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.
Office Document	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.
Custom Settings	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.

Note
- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

- **Print Quality**

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

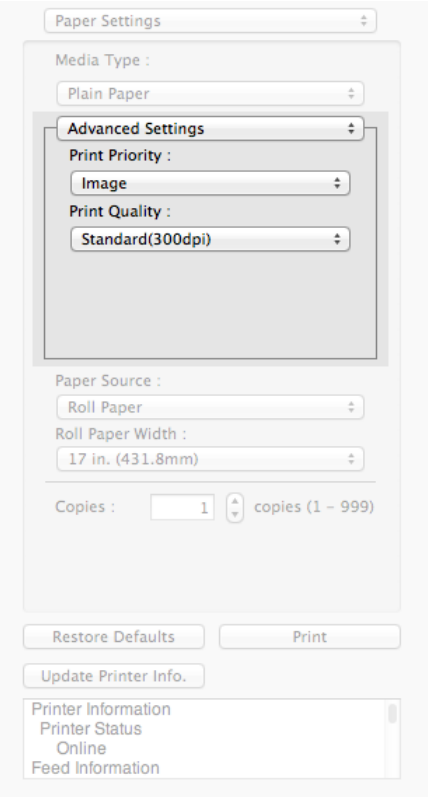
The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	**High** / **Standard** / **Fast**
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

Note
- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

Advanced Settings

Presents detailed settings for the print priority, the print quality, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.



• Print Priority

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
Image	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
Line Drawing	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newssheet or other documents that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you expect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select **Image**.
Proof	This is a setting for enhancing the reproducibility of characters, illustrations, and photos with print proofing.However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Office Document	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.

Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

• Print Quality

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

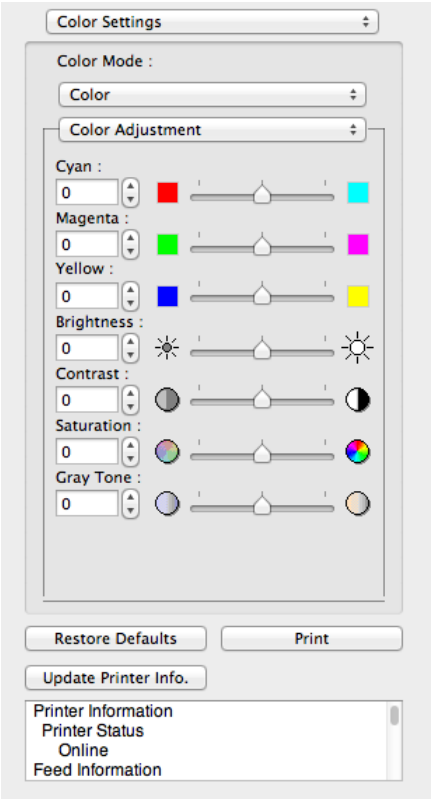
The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	**Highest quality** / **High** / **Standard** / **Fast**
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

Note
- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.
- For **Highest quality**, the resolution is not displayed.

Color Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Color Settings** in the dialog area.



• Color Mode

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Color	Enables color printing.
Monochrome (Photo)	Prints monochrome photo image data in a gray scale that is free of color casting (phenomenon of grays that appear tinted).
Monochrome	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled monochrome.
No color correction	Prints without performing color matching in the printer driver. Select this when color matching is performed by the application such as Adobe Photoshop or when you want to print color charts using the profile creation tool.

Note
- The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

• Color Adjustment / Gray Adjustment / Matching

You can set the color adjustment and matching.

- **Color Adjustment** →P.397
- **Gray Adjustment** →P.399
- **Matching** →P.400

Note
- You can select **Gray Adjustment** only after **Monochrome (Photo)** has been selected in **Color Mode**.
- **Matching** is not displayed if **No color correction** has been selected in **Color Mode**.

- **Restore Defaults** Button

  Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Free Layout.

- **Print** Button

  Click the button to begin printing.

- **Update Printer Info.** Button

  Click the button to acquire printer information.

Color Adjustment

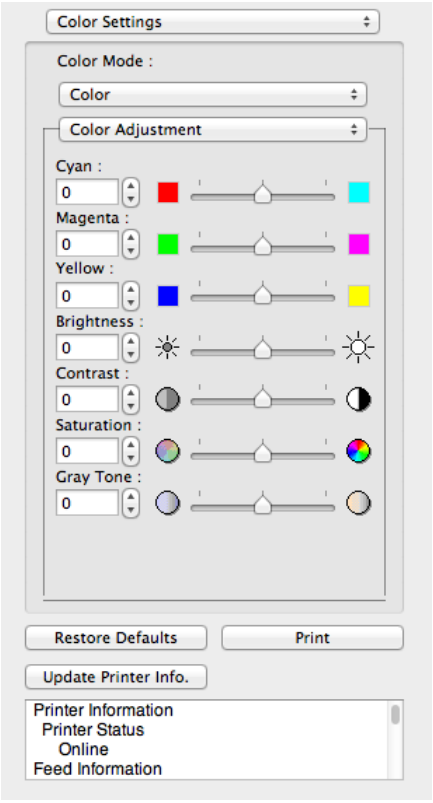
You can set the color adjustment.

Adjusting Color

Normally colors should be adjusted in the software application, but if you see colors in the printout that do not match colors on the screen, you can perform color adjustments.

1 Select **Color** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.

2 Select **Color Adjustment**.



3 Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Cyan	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.

Setting	Details
Magenta	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Yellow	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjusts the hues for vivid color or dark color.
Gray Tone	Adjusts gray from cool black (bluish tones) to warm black (reddish tones).

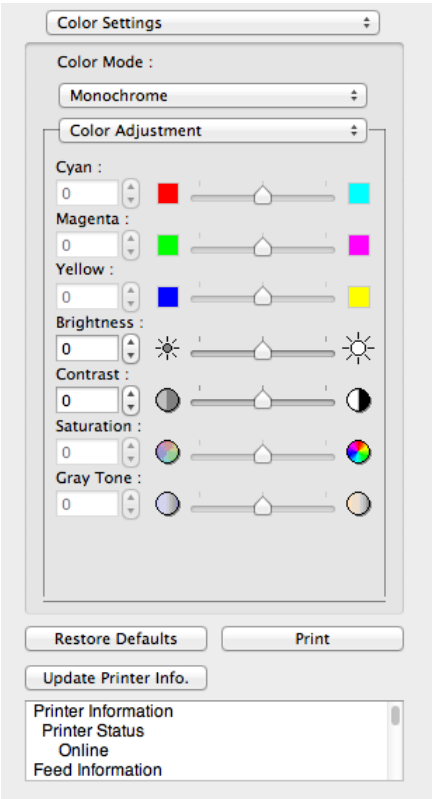
Note

- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

Adjusting Monochrome

Use the monochrome setting to print monochrome images of color photographs captured with a scanner or digital camera or other color images.

1. Select **Monochrome** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.
2. Select **Color Adjustment**.



3 Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.

Note
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

Gray Adjustment

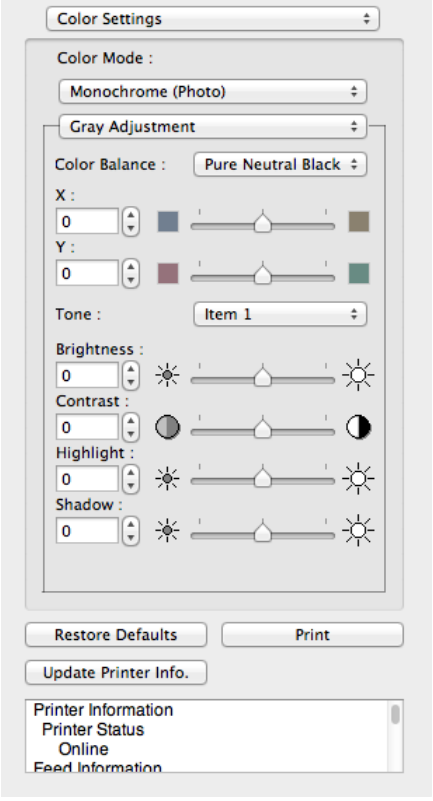
You can set the gray adjustment.

Adjusting Monochrome (Photo)

Sets monochrome printing for black-and-white photo image data captured with a scanner or digital camera.

1 Select **Monochrome (Photo)** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.

2 Select **Gray Adjustment**.



3 Click the **Color Balance** list and select the color settings.

Setting	Details
Cool Black	Adjusts cool black (blue tones) to gray.
Pure Neutral Black	Adjusts to neutral gray.
Warm Black	Adjusts warm black (red tones) to gray.

Note
- To perform the adjustments, drag the X or Y slide bar left and right.
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value by X and Y.

4 Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

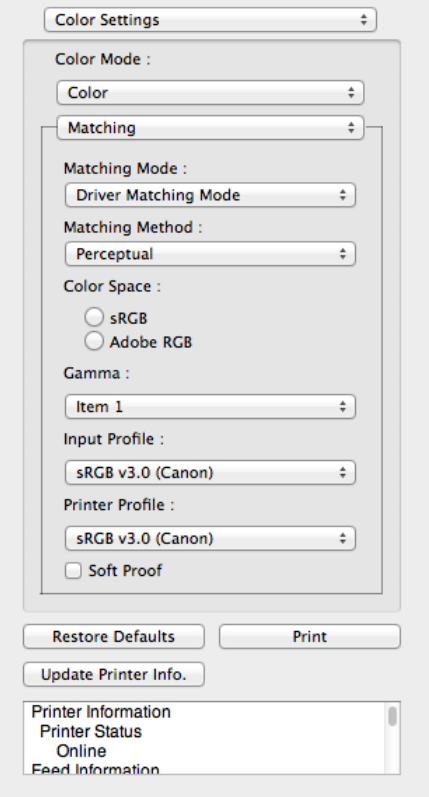
Setting	Details
Tone	You can adjust the brightness of intermediate tones in an image. Selecting **Hard tone** gives a hard impression with more definition. Selecting **Soft tone** gives a soft impression.
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Highlight	Adjusts the brightness of the brightest areas.
Shadow	Adjusts the brightness of the darkest areas.

Note
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.
- The availability of settings depends on the selected the media type.

Matching

You can set the matching.

Important
- If **No color correction** is selected under **Color Mode**, the **Matching** is not displayed.



- **Matching Mode**

You can select a matching mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode →P.402	Enables printing of optimal color tones using a driver specific color profile. You should normally select this mode.
ICC Matching Mode →P.403	Enables color matching using ICC profiles. Select this if you want to print by specifying the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail. This allows you to use ICC profiles for digital cameras and scanners, ICC profiles created using the profile creation tool, etc.
ColorSync →P.404	Enables color matching by using the ColorSync function of OS X. Select this if you want to perform soft proofing using ColorSync before printing.

Note
- You need to set each correction on the printer driver.
- **ColorSync** needs to be selected in the **Color Matching** panel of the driver in order to select **ColorSync**.

- **Matching Method**

You can select a matching method to suit the print job.

- **Color Space**

Select the color space.

Note
- You can select only after **Driver Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Gamma**

You can adjust the gradation of intermediate tones in an image. **2.2** is normally selected. If you want a softer impression than **2.2**, select **1.8**.

Note
- You can select only after **Driver Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Input Profile**

Select the input profile.

Note
- You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Printer Profile**

Select the printer profile.

Note
- You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

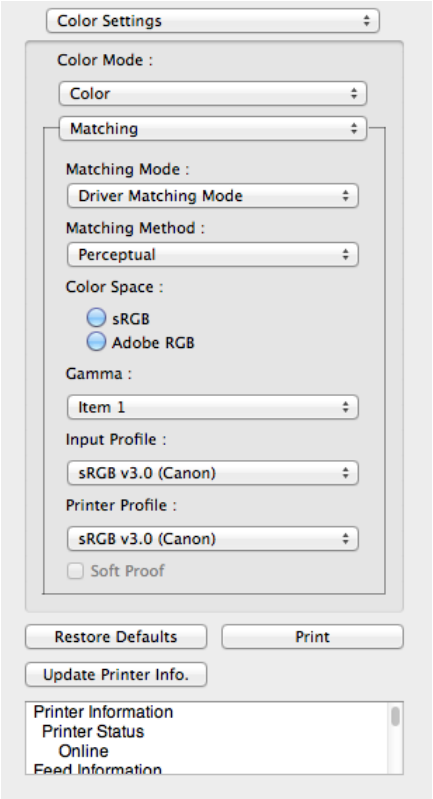
- **Soft Proof**

When you place a checkmark here, **ColorSync** applies to the layout area.

Note
- You can select only after **ColorSync** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

Driver Matching Mode

1 Under **Matching Mode**, select **Driver Matching Mode**.



2 Click the **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

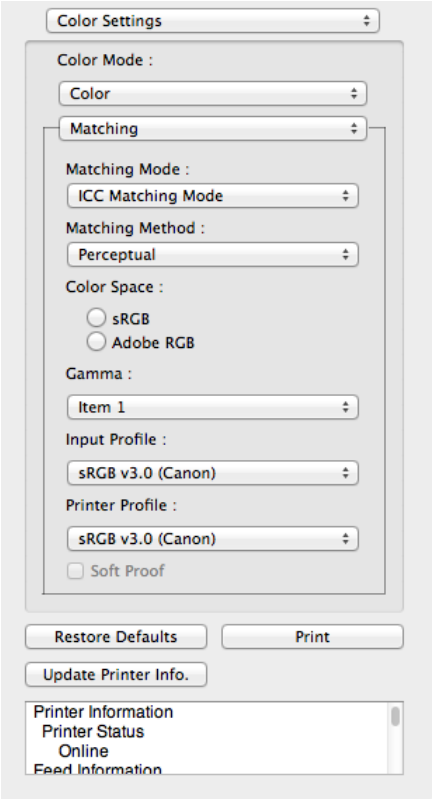
Setting	Details
Auto	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.

3 Select **Color Space** for the print output.

Setting	Details
sRGB	Uses color space for a standard monitor. This selection is ideal for most software applications.
Adobe RGB	Uses wide color space. Use this setting to print images created with Adobe RGB color space.

ICC Matching Mode

1 Under **Matching Mode**, select **ICC Matching Mode**.



2 Click the **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

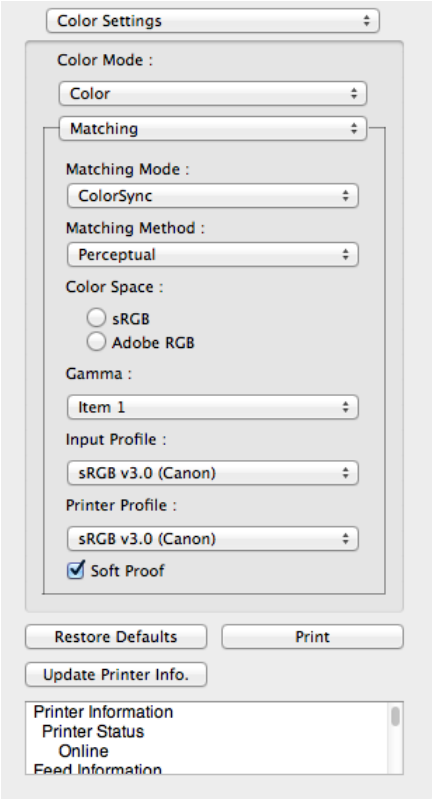
Setting	Details
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.
Colorimetric (No White-Point Correction)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to **Colorimetric**. Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute colorimetric.

3 Click the **Input Profile** list and select an input profile.

4 Click the **Printer Profile** list and select a printer profile.

ColorSync

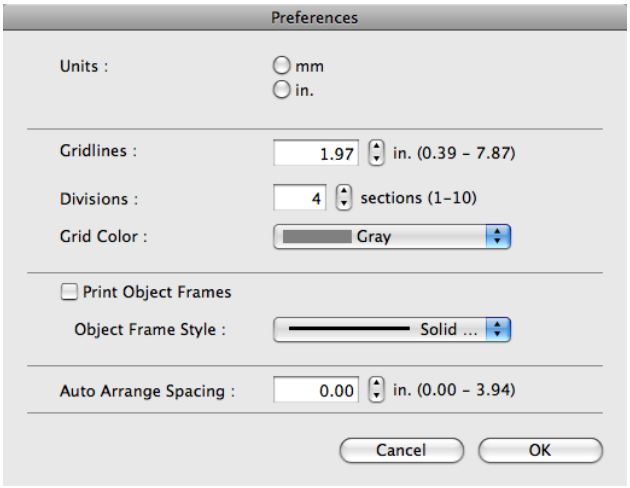
1 Check that **ColorSync** is selected in **Matching Mode**.



2 Place a checkmark on **Soft Proof** to simulate the output product in Layout Area.

Preferences Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Preferences** from the imagePROGRAF Advanced Preview menu. You can set the preferences for Free Layout.



- **Units**

  Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

- **Gridlines**

  You can input a grid line width value in numerical characters so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.

Note
- You can input between 10.0 and 200.0(mm) (between 0.39 and 7.87(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Divisions**

You can change the number of divisions of grid lines so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.

Note
- You can input between 1 and 10.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Grid Color**

Select the grid line color.

- **Print Object Frames**

You can print the object border.

Note
- If you do not want to print the object border, deselect the **Print Object Frames** check box.

- **Object Frame Style**

You can select the object frame style for printing.
The following settings are available for the object frame style.

Setting	Details
Solid Line	You can print the solid line as the frame style.
Dotted Line	You can print the dotted line as the frame style.
Dashed Line	You can print the dashed line as the frame style.

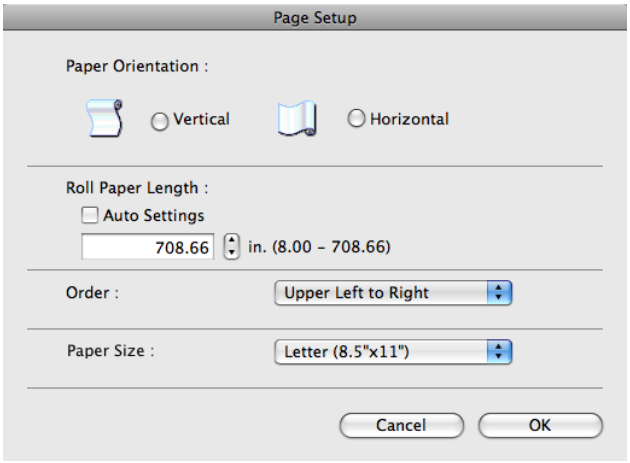
- **Auto Arrange Spacing**

Change the object-to-object spacing to be applied in the operation of laying out objects automatically.

Note
- You can input between 0.0 and 100.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 3.94(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Page Setup Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Page Setup** from the **File** menu.This dialog box provides selections for setting the media size, orientation and other important features.



- **Paper Orientation**

This selects the paper orientation.

The following settings are available for orientation.

Setting	Details
Vertical	Prints the image and text created with the application software in the orientation as it is.
Horizontal	Prints the image and text by rotating sideways 90 degrees from the orientation as specified in the application.

- **Roll Paper Length**

Set the length of one page to print on roll paper.

When you place a checkmark on **Auto Settings**, the one-page length to be printed on roll paper is automatically set so that the laid-out objects are printed on one page.

Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
- You can input between 203.2 and 18000.0(mm) (between 8.00 and 708.66(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Order**

Set the object layout order.

The following settings are available for order.

Setting	Details
Upper Left to Right	The objects are laid out from upper left to right.
Upper Left to Bottom	The objects are laid out from upper left to bottom.

Note
- When you have selected **Roll Paper Length** > **Auto Settings** and **Paper Orientation** > **Vertical**, you can choose only **Upper Left to Right**.
- When you have selected **Roll Paper Length** > **Auto Settings** and **Paper Orientation** > **Horizontal**, you can choose only **Upper Left to Bottom**.

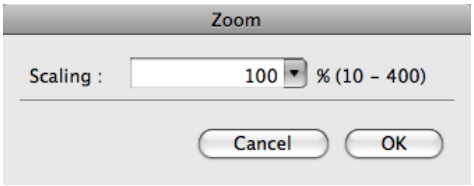
- **Paper Size**

You can select the size of the print media.

Note
- You cannot display this if **Roll Paper** is selected in **Paper Source**.

Zoom Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.



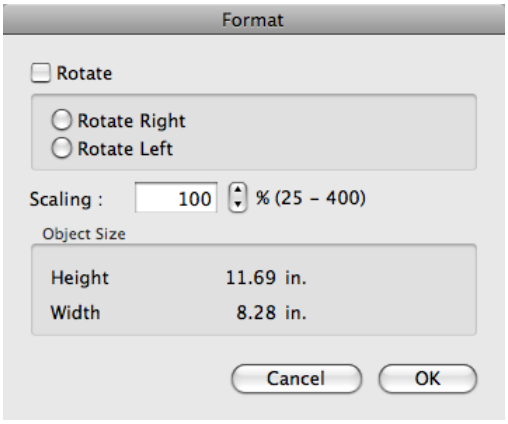
- **Scaling**

Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.

Note
- You can input between 10 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking ▼ button.

Format Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Format** from the **Object** menu after you select an object. You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.



Note
- When the objects are not selected, you can not select **Format**.

- **Rotate**

When you place a checkmark here, you can select **Rotate Right** or **Rotate Left**.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right	Rotates the object 90 degrees clockwise.
Rotate Left	Rotates the object 90 degrees counterclockwise.

Note
- When several objects are selected, you cannot select **Rotate**.

- **Scaling**

You can input the value for enlargement or reduction of the obeject in numerical characters.

Note
- You can input between 25 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Object Size**

You can confirm the object size.

Note
- When several objects are selected, you cannot display **Object Size**.

Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page

You can lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page.

1 From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

Note
- Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

2 Click on **Free Layout** in the **Page Setup** panel to attach a checkmark.

3 In the **Print** dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the **Print** button.
Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.

4 Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with the application software and repeat the above steps.

Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page

You can lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.

1 From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

Note
- Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

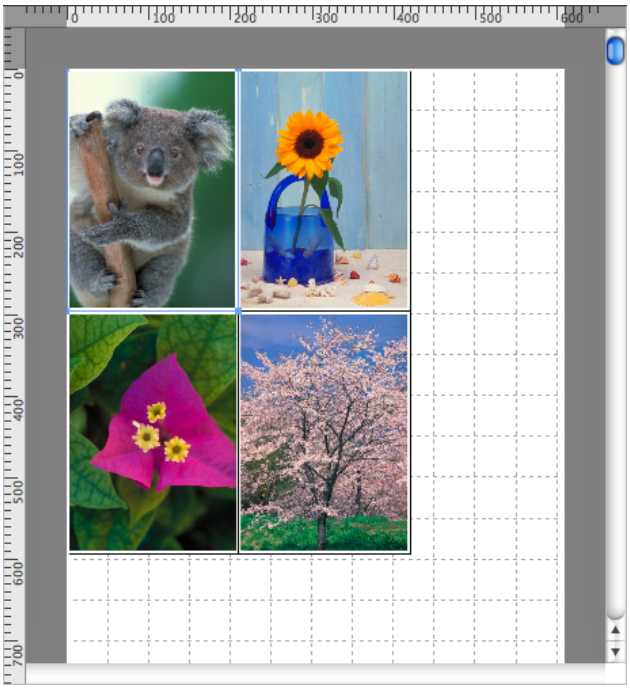
2 Click on **Free Layout** in the **Page Setup** panel to attach a checkmark.

3 In the **Print** dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the **Print** button.
Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.

4 Leaving Free Layout running, open the files with other application software and repeat the above steps.

Selecting an Object

When an object is selected, a select box (blue border) appears around the object.



Note
- To select an object, click that object.
- To select multiple successive objects, click them while holding down the shift key.
- To select multiple arbitrary objects, click them while holding down the command key.
- To select all objects, select **Select All** from the **Edit** menu.

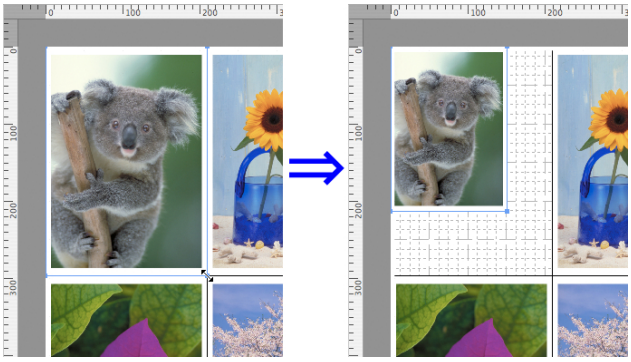
Changing the Object Size

You can change the object size by means of mouse operation or by specifying a scaling value.

Note
- The vertical-to-horizontal ratio remains unchanged when the object is enlarged or reduced.

Resizing by means of mouse operation

1. Select an object.
2. Place the pointer at a corner of the selection box around the object to show the arrow handle, and drag this handle to change the object size.



Resizing by specifying a scaling value

1. Select an object.
2. Open the **Format Dialog Box** →P.407 .
3. Use **Scaling** to set the magnification for enlargement or reduction. You either enter numbers directly.

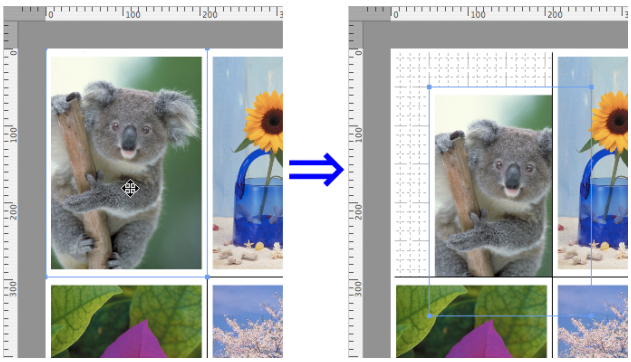
Note
- You can input between 25 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

4. Click the **OK** button.

Moving an Object

You can move the object position.

1. Select an object.
2. Place the pointer inside the selection box of the object to show the crosshair handle, and drag it to move the object.

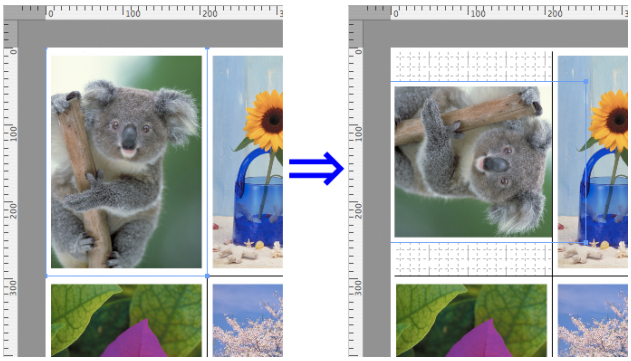


Rotating an Object

You can rotate the object.

1 Select an object.

2 Select **Rotate Left** or **Rotate Right** from the toolbar. Alternatively, you may click on the **Rotate** check box in the **Format Dialog Box** ➔P.407 then select **Rotate Right** or **Rotate Left**, and click the **OK** button.

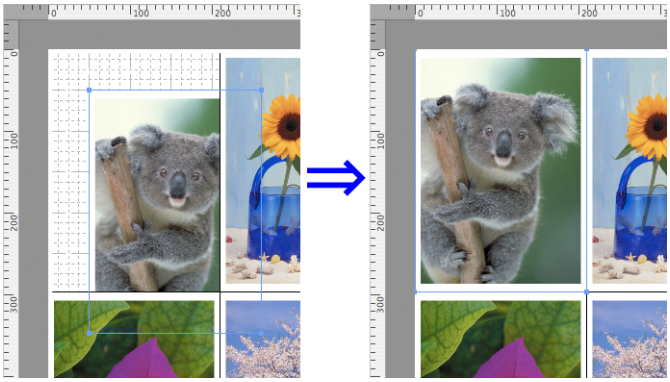


Note

- When several objects are selected, you cannot select **Rotate**.

Laying out Objects Automatically

Click **Auto Arrange** in the tool bar. This automatically lays out objects. Alternatively, you may select **Auto Arrange Object** from the **Object** menu.



Note

- The object layout order varies depending on the **Order** setting on the **Page Setup Dialog Box** ➔P.405 .

Aligning Objects

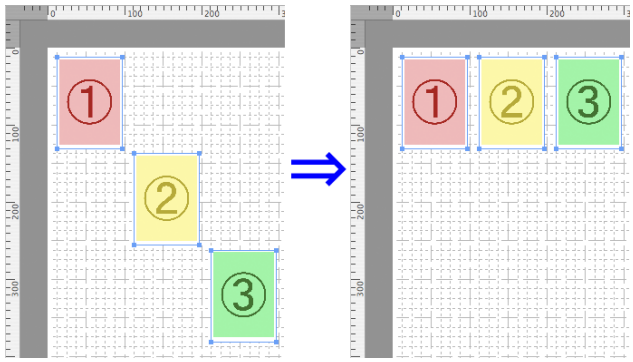
You can align objects systematically.

1 Select multiple objects.

2 Select the align menu from the **Object** menu.

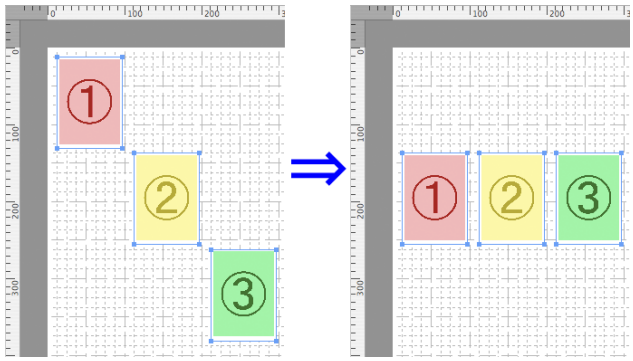
- **Align Top**

  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the top.



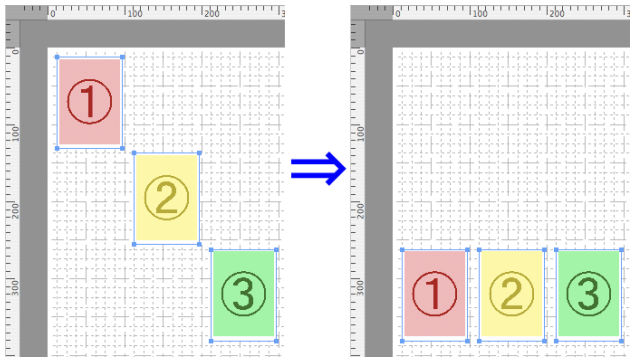
- **Center Vertically**

  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the vertical center.



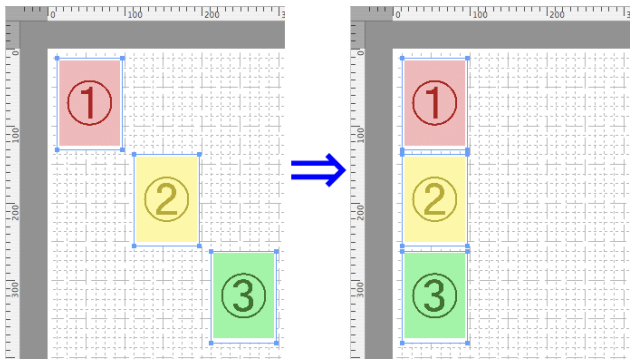
- **Align Bottom**

  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the bottom.



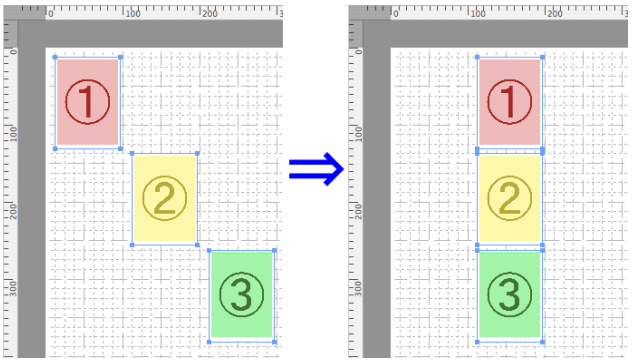
- **Align Left**

  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the left.



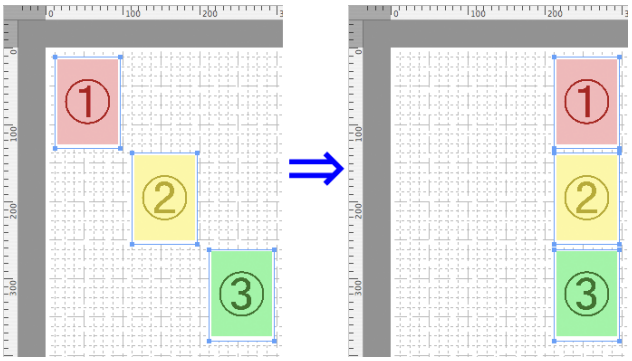
- **Center Horizontally**

  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the horizontal center.



- **Align Right**

  Lays out the objects, justifying them to the right.



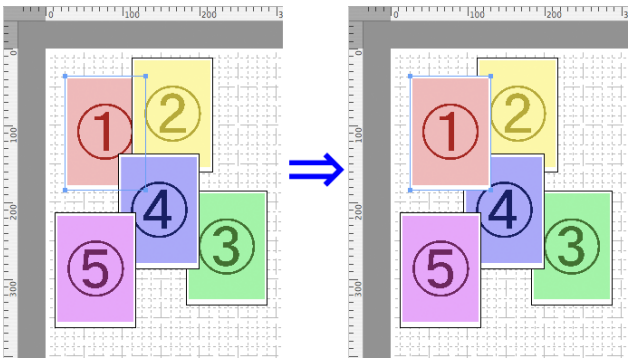
Changing the Object Overlapping Order

You can change the object overlapping order.

1. Select an object.
2. Select the overlapping order menu from the **Object** menu.

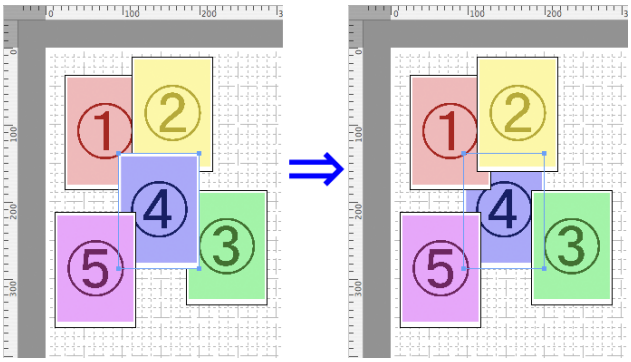
- **Bring to Front**

  Moves the object to the frontmost position.



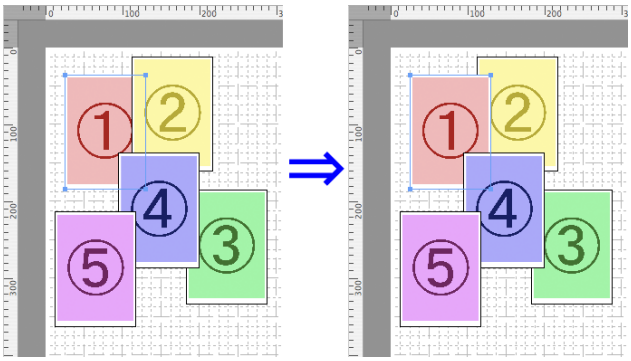
- **Send to Back**

  Moves the object to the backmost position.



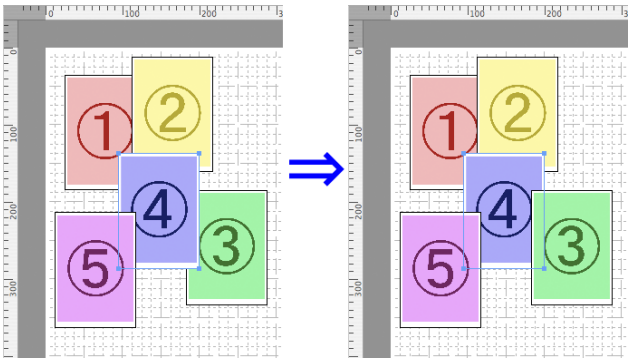
- **Bring Forward**

  Moves the object one position to the front.



- **Send Backward**

  Moves the object one position to the back.



Pasting a Copied or Cut Object

1. Click **Copy** or **Cut** from the toolbar.
   Alternatively, you may select **Copy** or **Cut** from the **Edit** menu.

2. Click **Paste** from the toolbar.
   Alternatively, you may select **Paste** from the **Edit** menu.

Note

- The copied or cut object is laid out at the end of the page.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 414
Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 414

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box 415

Hot Folder 415
Creating a New Hot Folder 416
Editing a Hot Folder (Setting Print Conditions) 417
Deleting a Hot Folder 419

Setting the Print Parameters 420
Paper Settings Panel 420
Easy Settings 422
Advanced Settings 423
Output Settings Panel 424
Color Settings Panel 426
Driver Matching Mode 427
ICC Matching Mode 428

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 428

The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The main features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy are as follows.

- Allows the document scanned with the Color imageRUNNER to be automatically enlarged and printed.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.

Note
- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy settings.

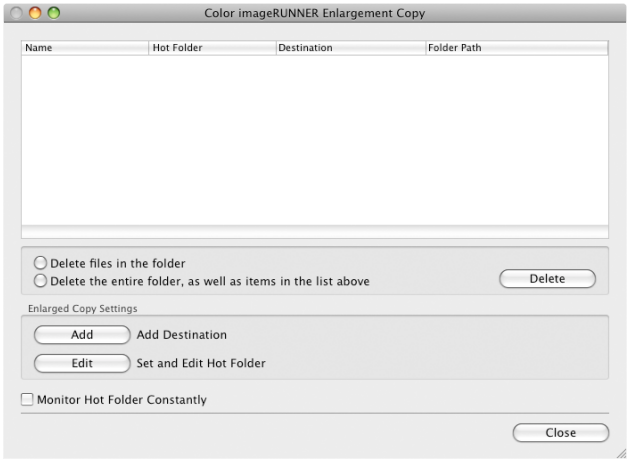
Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

You can start the utility by clicking on the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.app** icon in **Applications** > **Canon Utilities** > **iR Enlargement Copy**.

Note
- If you are using OS X v10.7 and later, start it from Launchpad.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box

The explanation below is on the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



Note

- For the step to open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, see "**Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.**" ➔P.414

- **Delete files in the folder**

  From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click the **Delete** button to delete only files in the hot folder.

- **Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above**

  From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click the **Delete** button to delete the hot folder.

- **Delete** Button

  Select **Delete files in the folder** or **Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above** and click this button to delete the hot folder or only files in the hot folder.

- **Add** Button

  Click the button to open the **Destination Selection** dialog box so that you can add a hot folder.

- **Edit** Button

  From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click this button to open the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box that allows you to edit the hot folder.

- **Monitor Hot Folder Constantly**

  If the check box is selected, the Hot Folder is monitored from after the next login.

Hot Folder

Hot folder refers to a folder used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

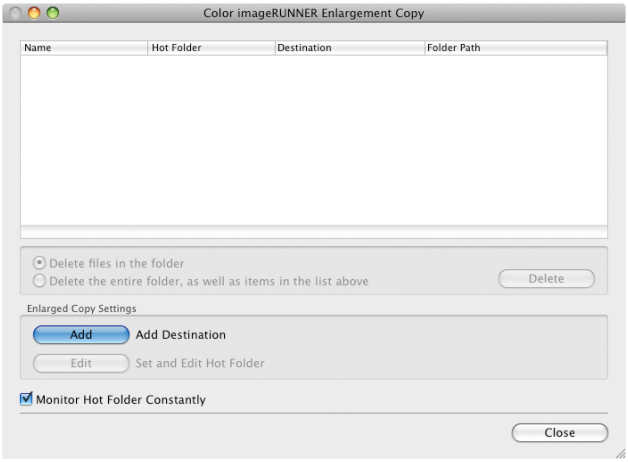
- When transferred to the PC's hot folder, the document data scanned with the Color imageRUNNER is printed in enlarged size from the printer according to the print conditions set in the hot folder.
- You can create a new hot folder, edit or delete an existing one, and set print conditions at will.

Note

- You can create up to 10 hot folders.

Creating a New Hot Folder

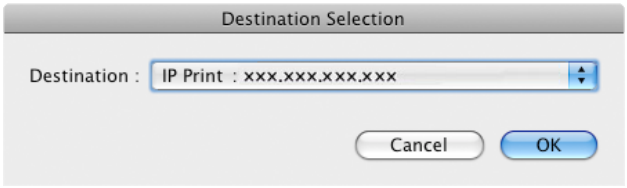
1 Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



Note

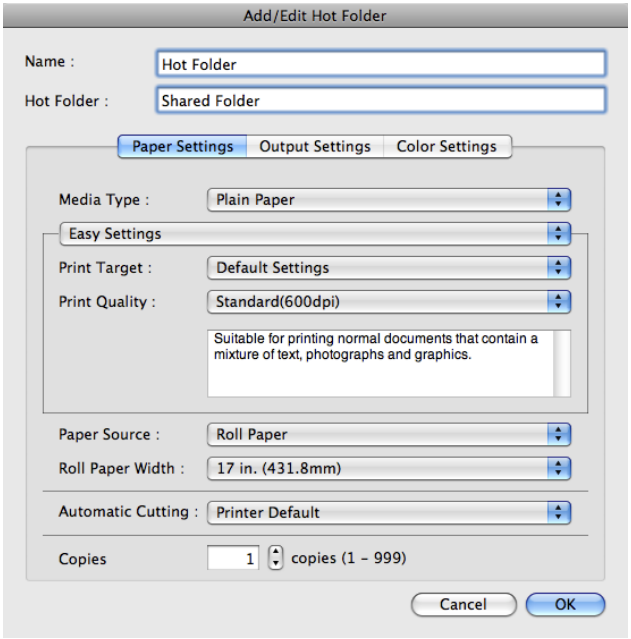
- For the step to open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, see "**Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.**" ➔P.414

2 Click the **Add** button in **Enlarged Copy Settings** to open the **Destination Selection** dialog box.



3 From the printer list in **Destination**, select the printer of destination.

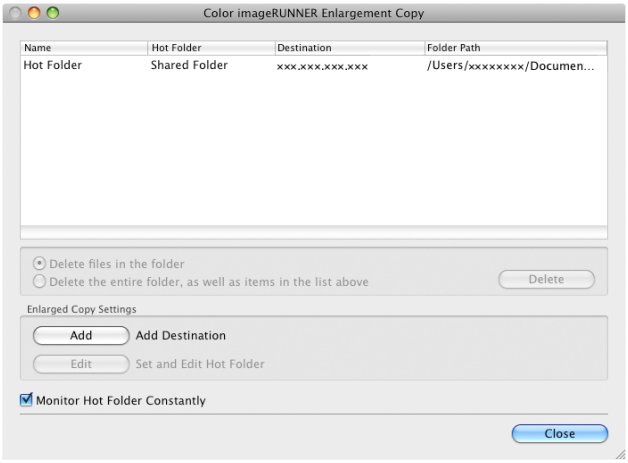
4 Click the **OK** button to open the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.



5 In **Name**, enter the name to display in the Hot Folder list.

6 In **Hot Folder**, enter the Hot Folder name.

7 Click the **OK** button. The created Hot Folder is listed in the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



8 Click the **Close** button to close the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.

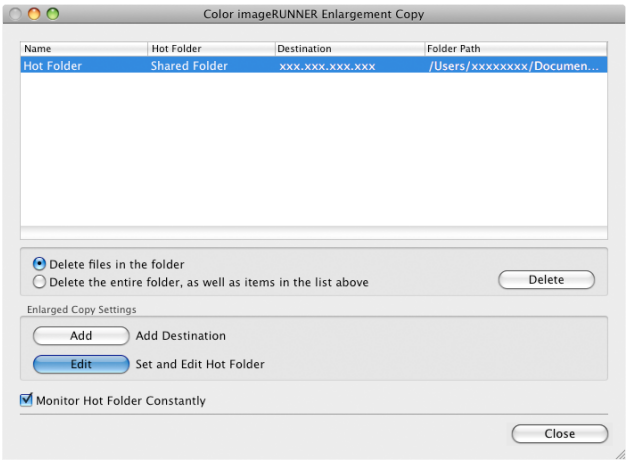
9 From the **Apple** Menu, open the **Sharing** dialog box for **System Preferences**.

10 For OS X v10.6:
Check the **File Sharing** checkbox and click the **Options** button.
Check the **Share files and folders using FTP** and **Share files and folders using SMB** checkboxes to configure the sharing.
For OS X v10.7 and later:
Check the **File Sharing** checkbox and click the **Options** button.
Check the **Share files and folders using SMB** checkbox to configure the sharing.

Note
- You can create up to 10 hot folders.

Editing a Hot Folder (Setting Print Conditions)

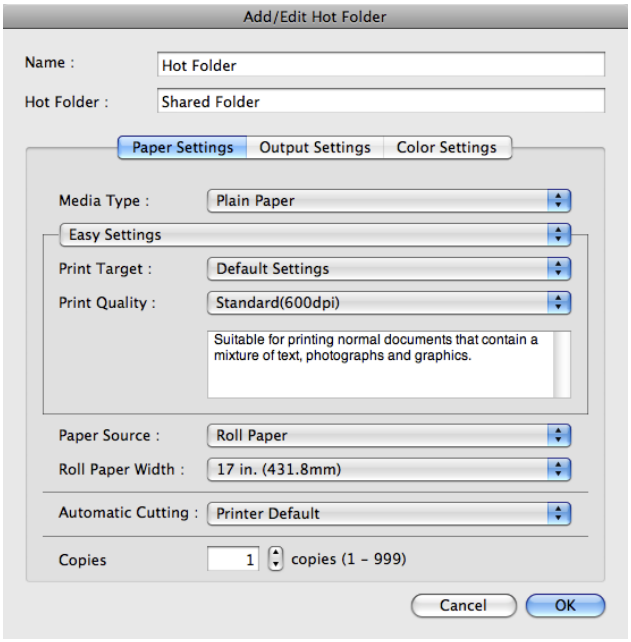
1 Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



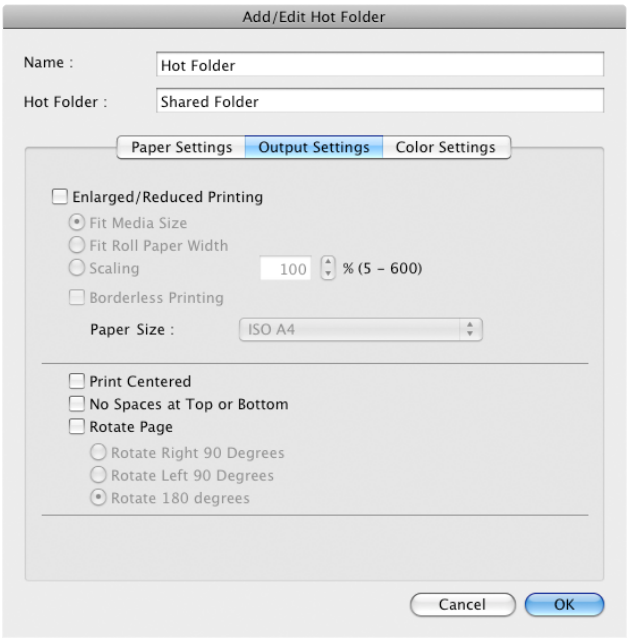
2 Select the Hot Folder from the Hot Folder list.

3 From **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Edit** button to open the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.

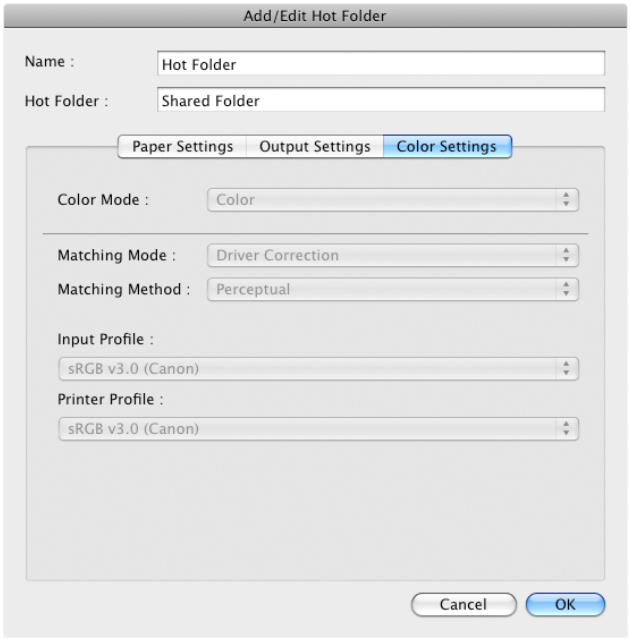
4 Make the necessary settings in the **Paper Settings Panel** ➔P.420 .



5 Make the necessary settings in the **Output Settings Panel** ➔P.424 .



6 Make the necessary settings in the **Color Settings Panel** ➔P.426 .



7 Click the **OK** button to close the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.

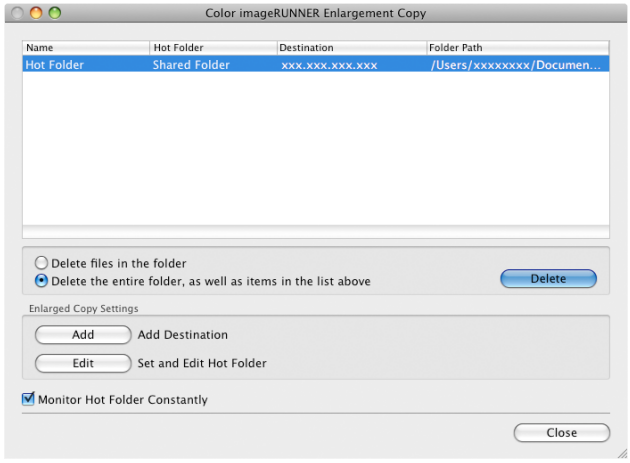
8 From the **Apple** Menu, open the **Sharing** dialog box for **System Preferences**.

9 For OS X v10.6:
Check the **File Sharing** checkbox and click the **Options** button.
Check the **Share files and folders using FTP** and **Share files and folders using SMB** checkboxes to configure the sharing.
For OS X v10.7 and later:
Check the **File Sharing** checkbox and click the **Options** button.
Check the **Share files and folders using SMB** checkbox to configure the sharing.

Note
- If you've made shared settings when you created a new Hot Folder, you do not need to execute steps 8 to 9.

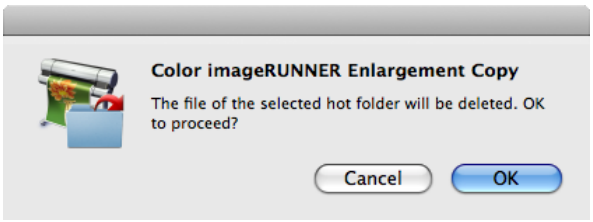
Deleting a Hot Folder

1 Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



2 Select the Hot Folder you want to delete from the Hot Folder list.

3 Select **Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above**, and then click the **Delete** button.



4 Read the messag,e and then click the **OK** button.

Note

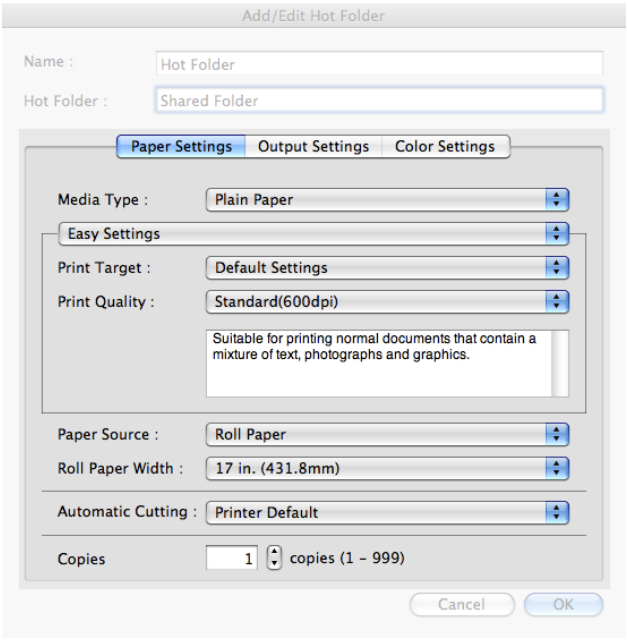
- Select **Delete files in the folder** to delete only files in the hot folder.

Setting the Print Parameters

You can set the print conditions in the setting panels within the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.
The settings available on each panel are as follows.

- **Paper Settings Panel** →P.420
- **Output Settings Panel** →P.424
- **Color Settings Panel** →P.426

Paper Settings Panel



- **Easy Settings / Advanced Settings**

  Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs.
  The settings available on each mode are as follows.

  - **Easy Settings** →P.422
  - **Advanced Settings** →P.423

- **Media Type**

  This allows you to select the media type.

Note
- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

- **Paper Source**

You can select the paper source.

The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
Manual	Select for manual paper feed printing.
Manual (3mm margins)	Select for manual paper feed printing when you want to minimize the margin at the far end edge of paper.
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.

Note
- When you select **Manual (3mm margins)** for **Paper Source**, the far end edge of printed image may become defective depending on the paper used. If this happens, select another paper source.

- **Roll Paper Width**

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.

Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Automatic Cutting**

You can set the printer to cut roll paper automatically or print a guideline for cutting.

The following settings are available for automatic cutting.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The value set on the printer operation panel takes priority.
None	Each page is not cut after it is printed and printing continues without interruption.
Print Cut Guideline	A print cut guideline is printed after each page and printing continues without interruption.

Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

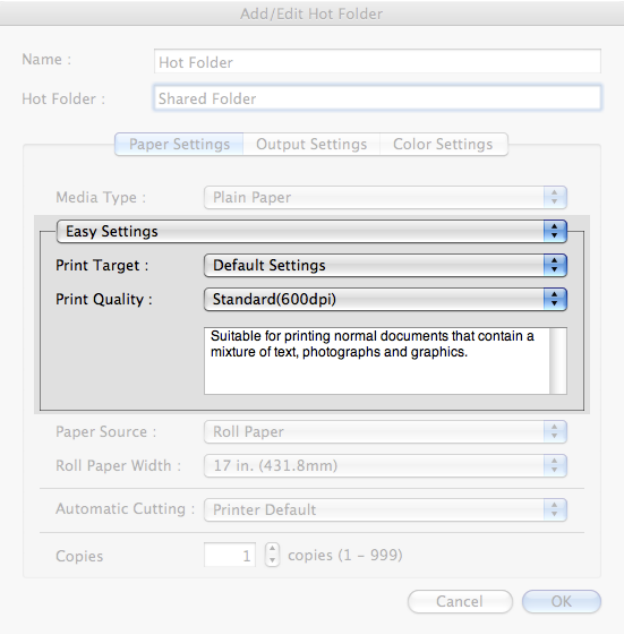
- **Copies**

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

Note
- The maximum value is 999.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Easy Settings

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.



• Print Target

You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each **Print Target** item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
Default Settings	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
Photo (Color)	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
Photo (Monochrome)	Suitable for optimized printing of monochrome photos.
Poster	The best setting for posters.Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
Faithful Color Reproduction	Prints by minimizing color differences. Suitable for when the printing results are too vivid or when printing scanned images.
CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Suitable for printing fine lines such as drawings clearly.
Perspective, GIS	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.
Office Document	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.
Custom Settings	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.

Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

• Print Quality

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

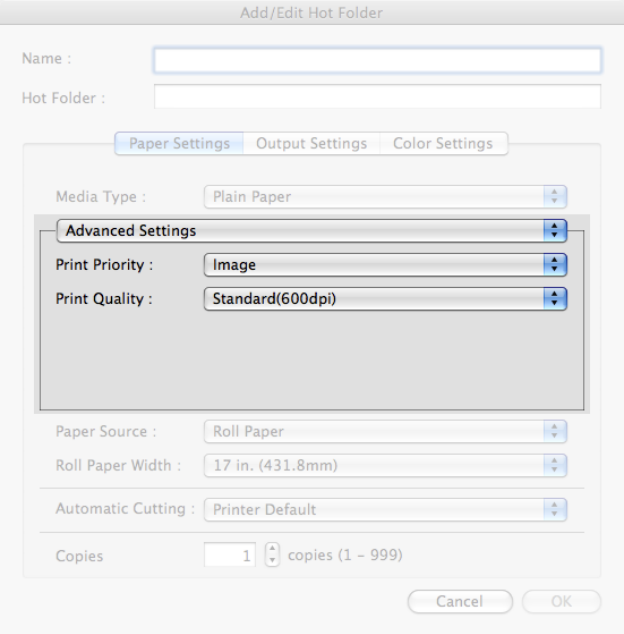
Setting	Details
Print Quality	**High** / **Standard** / **Fast**

Setting	Details
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

Note
- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

Advanced Settings

Presents detailed settings for the print priority, the print quality, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.



• Print Priority

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
Image	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
Line Drawing	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newssheet or other documents that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you expect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select **Image**.
Proof	This is a setting for enhancing the reproducibility of characters, illustrations, and photos with print proofing.However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Office Document	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.

Note
- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

• Print Quality

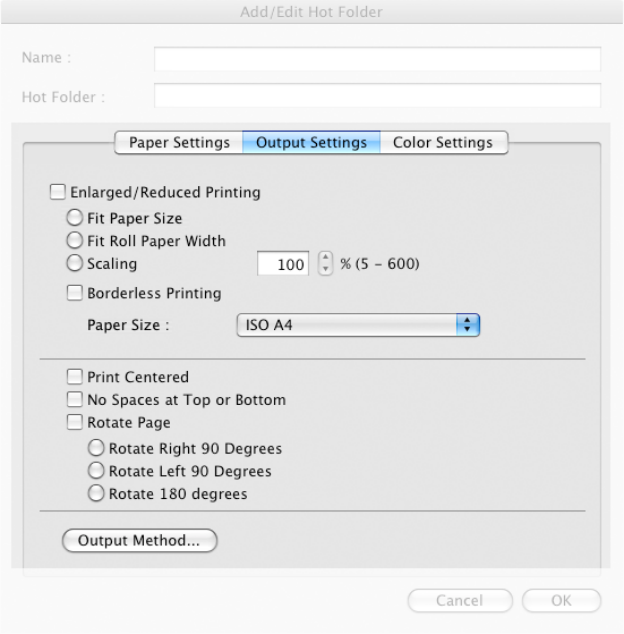
Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	**High** / **Standard** / **Fast**
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

Note
- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

Output Settings Panel



• Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Select the method for enlarged/reduced printing.

The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the media size selected for output. Select the media size to print from **Paper Size**.
Fit Roll Paper Width	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the width of the roll paper with the page width. *Make sure that the width of the roll paper in the printer is set correctly for **Roll Paper Width** in the **Paper Settings** panel. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
Scaling	Enlarges/reduces the whole page by the scaling rate as specified. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5 and 600%. *You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button. *Although Scaling can be set to make the image larger than the media size, the part that does not fit in the media cannot be printed. *This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

• Borderless Printing

You can print the media without margins on all sides when the roll paper with the specific width and the specific media type is used.

Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Paper Size**

You can select the size of the print media.

Note
- This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width** is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

- **Print Centered**

Select this feature to print the image in the center of a cut sheet or to print left and right margins evenly from the edges of roll paper.

Note
- This feature is useful when you print the document enlarged or reduced with **Scaling** as well. When an image is scaled, it is always enlarged or reduced in reference to a starting point in the upper left corner of the page. If the image is reduced, the bottom and right margins are enlarged and the top and left margins remain unchanged. At that point, you can set all margins evenly with this feature.

- **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**

You can set the printer to print without any empty area when the print data contains empty area at the top or bottom. Since the printer does not feed paper over the empty area, you can save paper.

Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Rotate Page**

Select the method for rotating page.

The following settings are available for rotating page.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page right 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated. *When **Fit Roll Paper Width** is selected under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**, then the image is enlarged or reduced after rotating to fit the width of the roll paper.
Rotate Left 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page left 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated. *When **Fit Roll Paper Width** is selected under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**, then the image is enlarged or reduced after rotating to fit the width of the roll paper.
Rotate 180 degrees	Allows you to rotate the image 180 degrees from the vertical to the right.

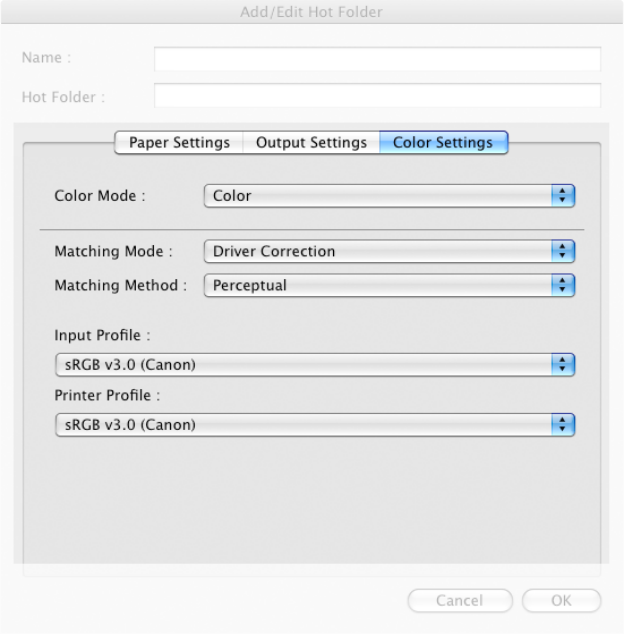
Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Output Method** Button

Click the button to open the **Output Method** dialog box.

In this dialog box, you can specify the object output method.

Color Settings Panel



• Color Mode

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Color	Enables color printing.
Monochrome (Photo)	Prints monochrome photo image data in a gray scale that is free of color casting (phenomenon of grays that appear tinted).
Monochrome	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled monochrome.

Note

- The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

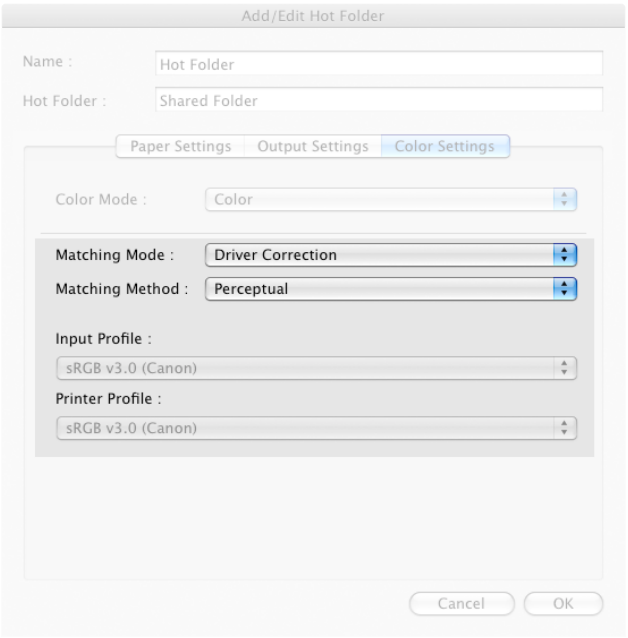
• Matching Mode

Under **Matching Mode**, select the matching mode.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode →P.427	Enables printing of optimal color tones using a driver specific color profile. You should normally select this mode.
ICC Matching Mode →P.428	Enables color matching using ICC profiles. Select this if you want to print by specifying the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail. This allows you to use ICC profiles for digital cameras and scanners, ICC profiles created using the profile creation tool, etc.
No Correction	No color matching is performed. Select this option when you want to perform color matching in the software application.

Driver Matching Mode

1 Under **Matching Mode**, select **Driver Matching Mode**.

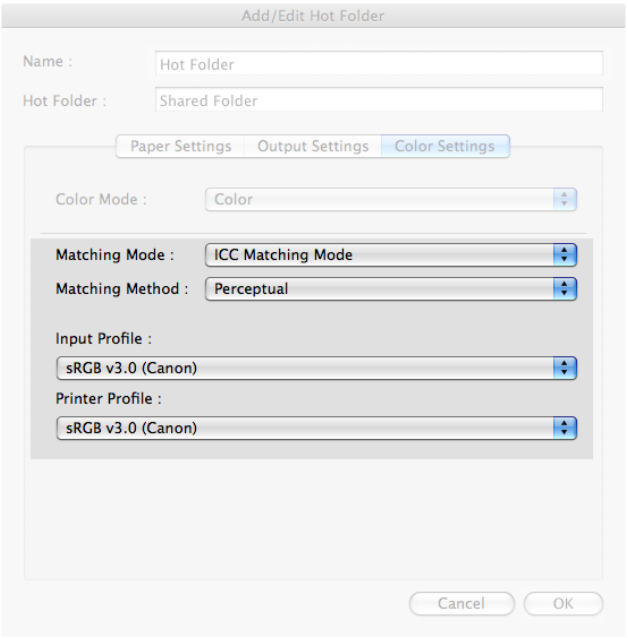


2 Click **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
Auto	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.

ICC Matching Mode

1 Under **Matching Mode**, select **ICC Matching Mode**.



2 Click **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.
Colorimetric (No White-Point Correction)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to **Colorimetric**. Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute colorimetric.

3 Click the **Input Profile** list, and then select an input profile.

Note
- To match the color on the printing, select the input profile for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy of the Color imageRUNNER type in use.

4 Click the **Printer Profile** list, and then select a printer profile.

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** function.
To use **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**, first complete these settings in the following order.

1. Register a hot folder on your computer.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy. For details, see "**Creating a New Hot Folder**." →P.416

2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER. For instructions on assigning scanning and sending settings to the **Favorites** button, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional

Features of the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional 431
Installation Procedures 431
Uninstall Procedures 433
Starting from Photoshop 434
Starting from Digital Photo Professional 435

Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional Main Window 436
Preview Area 438
Main Sheet 439
Page Setup Sheet 442
Color Settings Sheet (Color) 444
Color Settings Sheet (Monochrome) 445
Print History Sheet 446
Support Sheet 447

Adjustment pattern setting dialog box 448
Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box 451
Set Configuration Dialog Box 453
ICC Conversion Options dialog box 454
Roll Paper Options Dialog Box 454
Size Options Dialog Box 455
Curves Dialog Box 456
Print History Details Dialog Box 457

Utilize Three Types of Previews 458
Check Image with Print Area Layout 458
Check the original image with Image 459
Check Image with Roll Paper Preview 459
Print with a Desired Picture Quality 460
Adjust the Colors and Print 461
Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color) 461
Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome) 462
Adjust the Colors by Color Matching 465
Print High-Quality Adobe RGB 16bit Images 466
Prints monochrome photographs with high quality 467
Using Adobe CMM 467
Printing an Adjustment Pattern and Selecting Adjustment Values 469
Perform Black Point Compensation 470
Perform Printing Press Simulation Print 471
Enlarge/Reduce and Print 471
Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size 472
Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper 472
Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print 474
Print with No Borders 474
Customize Media Settings 475
Utilize Print History 476
Confirm Print History Details 476
Apply Print History to an Image 477
Store Print History to Print Preferences 477
Delete Print History 479
Export Print History from Print Preferences 480
Import Print History to Print Preferences 481
Delete Print History from Print Preferences 483
Set Information to Print with Image 484

Features of the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional

The main features of the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional are as follows.

- You can automatically detect the color space of Adobe RGB or sRGB-use images, etc., and automatically set optimal profiles. Thus, you can print without the trouble of configuring settings.
- You can modify image data directly in Photoshop and send the image data to the printer. This allows you to process not only 8-bit, but also 16-bit image data.
- By using the preview function for images based on real images, and the preview function for layouts based on image positioning by media size, you can use this software to make color adjustments and confirm print layout.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.
- You can print an image with adjustment values such as the color balance, brightness, and contrast varying in steps and select your preferred adjustment values. (See "**Adjustment pattern setting dialog box**.") ➔P.448
- You can create and print a layout image for finishing by mounting in a frame with the image extended to the sides of the frame by using the Layout Plug-In that is installed at the same time as the Print Plug-In for Photoshop. (See "**About the Layout Plug-In**.") ➔P.486
- By using the print history management function, you can import past print settings parameters. Additionally, you can save preferences as a file.

Note
- The actual output may differ from the settings in Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional (the arrangement of the image in the layout preview, print start position, and paper size) depending on the media type, image size, paper detailed settings, and printer main unit settings.

- Loss of gradation in dark areas can be reduced by performing black point compensation.

Note
- Adobe CMM is required in order to use the black point compensation function.

- You can perform a printer simulation print by specifying the printer profile.

Installation Procedures

The procedures to install Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional are as follows.

Note
- Always install the printer driver before installing the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional.

1 Insert the User Software CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive to start the installer.

2 Click on the **iPFxxxx Series PlugIn Installer.pkg** icon in the **Plug-in** folder in the User Software CD-ROM.

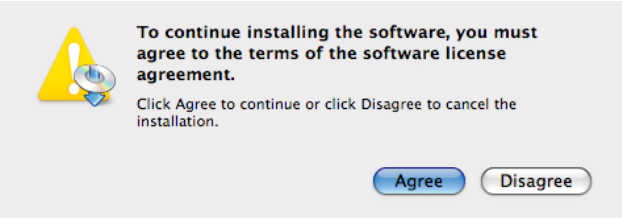
iPFxxxx Series PlugIn Installer.pkg

Note
- The iPFxxxx icon is the name of the printer you are using.

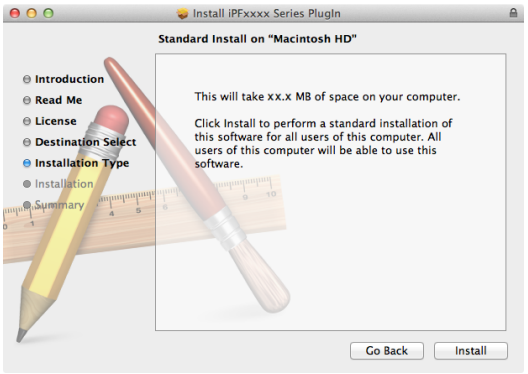
3 Follow the instructions on the screen.

4 After you have read the software User's Licensing Agreement, click the **Continue** button.

5 Click the **Agree** button.

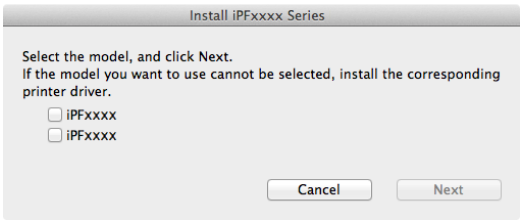


6 Click **Install**.



7 Enter an administrator name/password and click the **Install Software** button.

8 Select the printer model and click the **Next** button.

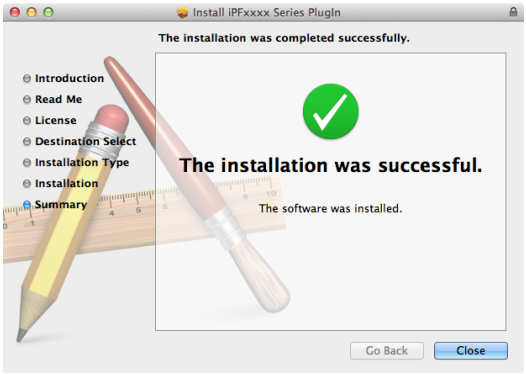


9 Select the applications that will use the Print Plug-In and click the **Next** button.

Note
- You can select multiple applications to use.
- If Photoshop is selected, the Layout Plug-In is also installed. If you do not want to install the Layout Plug-In, clear the **Install iPFLayout Plug-In for Photoshop** check box.

10 Click the **Close** button.

The Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional installation is complete.



Uninstall Procedures

The procedures for uninstalling the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional are as follows.

- Uninstall Print Plug-In for Photoshop

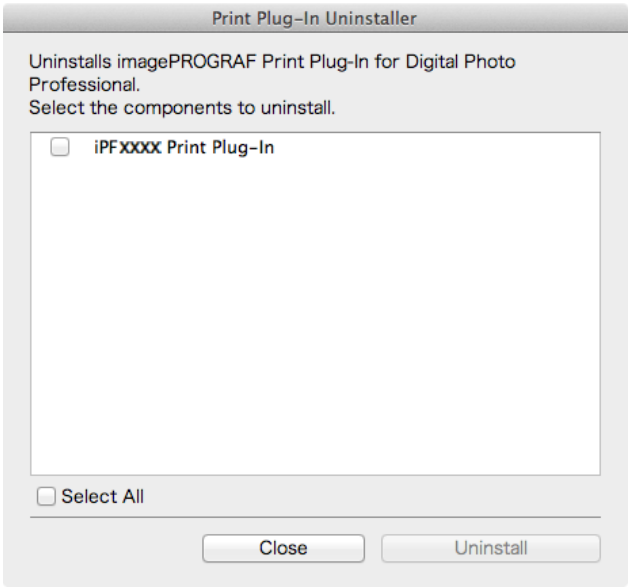
1. Close Photoshop.
2. Display the **Applications**>**Adobe Photoshop CSxx**>**Plug-ins**>**Import-Export**>**Print Plugin for iPFxxxx** folder in Finder. (The **Import-Export** folder does not exist in Photoshop CS6 and later.)
3. Delete the **Print Plugin for iPFxxxx** folder.

Note
- iPFxxxx is the name of your printer.

- Uninstall Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional

1. Place the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Open the **Plug-in** folder in the User Software CD-ROM.
3. Open the **Contens** folder.
4. Double-click the **Print Plugin Uninstaller** icon.

5. Choose the Plug-In to uninstall and click the **Uninstall** button.



6. Enter an administrator name/password and click the **OK** button.
Uninstalling the Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional finishes.

Starting from Photoshop

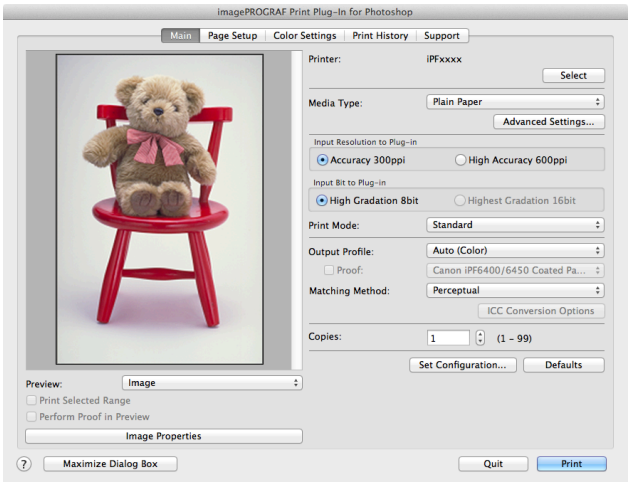
Follow the procedure below to start the Print Plug-In for Photoshop from Photoshop.

1. Start Photoshop.
2. Open the image that you wish to print.
3. If required, select the print range.

Note

- Images for use with Print Plug-In for Photoshop are less than 60,000 pixels in width and height. Reduce the selection range or reduce the image with processing for images more than 60,000 pixels in width and height, and then attempt step 3.

4. Select **Export** (or **Data Export**) from the **File** menu and then select the output plug-in that matches your printer. The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop window (known below as the Print Plug-In window) is displayed.



Note

- If the message below is displayed but the Print Plug-In window is not displayed, install the newest imagePROGRAF printer driver and then attempt step 3.
  To install imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In, the latest version of the imagePROGRAF printer driver must be installed.
- If the following message is displayed, but the Print Plug-In window is not displayed, open only one Photoshop.
  When Photoshop is running in multiple windows, the plug-in may not start.
- If the message below is displayed but the Print Plug-In window is not displayed, convert the color space of the image to either RGB color, grayscale, or CMYK color and then attempt step 3.
  Set the color space of the image to either RGB color, grayscale, or CMYK color.

Starting from Digital Photo Professional

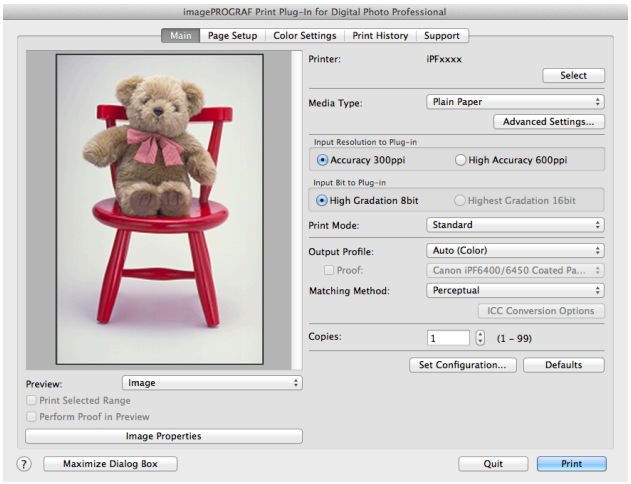
Follow the procedure below to start the Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional from Digital Photo Professional.

1. Start Digital Photo Professional.
2. Open the RGB color image that you want to print.
3. If required, select the print range.

Note

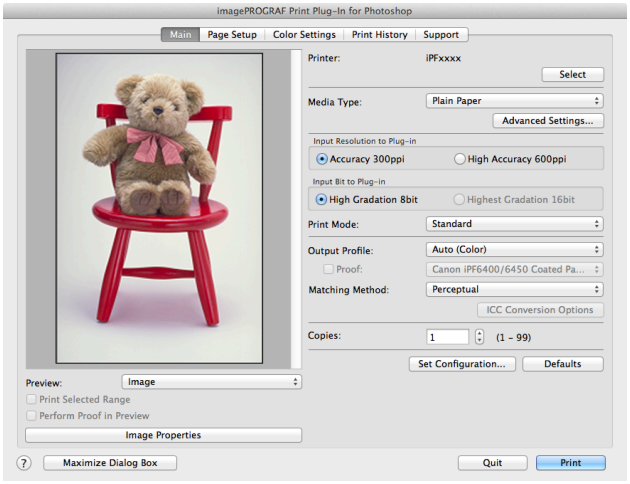
- Images for use with Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional are less than 6,000 pixels in width and height. Reduce the selection range or reduce the image with processing for images more than 6,000 pixels in width and height, and then attempt step 3.

4. Select **File** from the **Plug-in printing** menu and then select the output plug-in that matches your printer. The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional window (hereinafter referred to as the Print Plug-In window) is displayed.



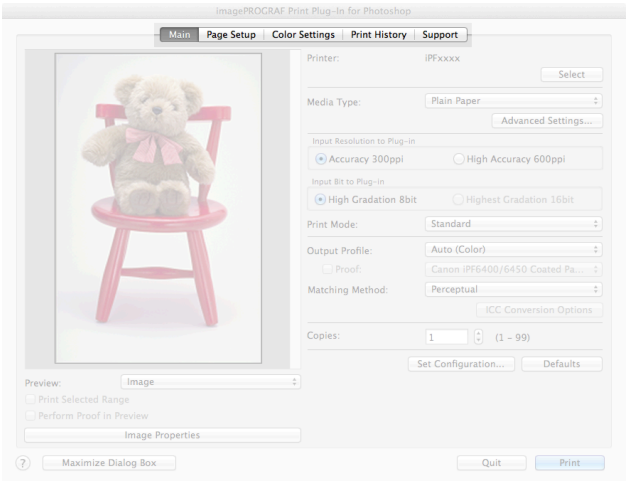
Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional Main Window

The Print Plug-In main window consists of the sheet selection area, and the preview and button area.



- Sheet Selection Area

  The tabs used to switch between each sheet on the Print Plug-In window are displayed.

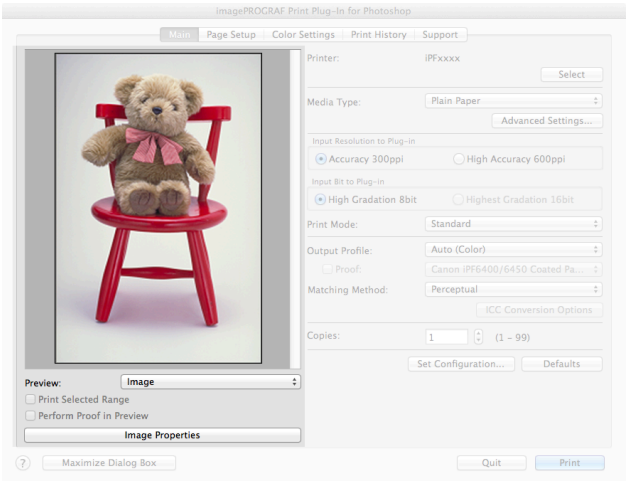


When you select a tab, a sheet is displayed. The settings available on each sheet are as follows.

- **Main Sheet** ➔P.439
- **Page Setup Sheet** ➔P.442
- **Color Settings Sheet (Color)** ➔P.444
- **Print History Sheet** ➔P.446
- **Support Sheet** ➔P.447

- Preview Area

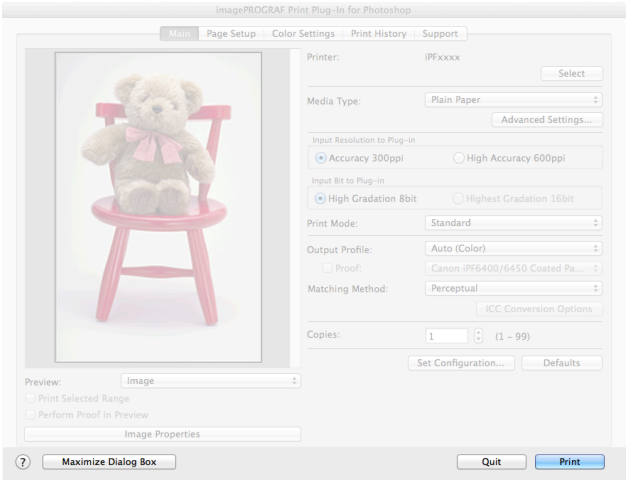
  You can check the settings you made on the image in this area.



  About the settings available on the preview area, see "**Preview Area**." ➔P.438

- Button Area

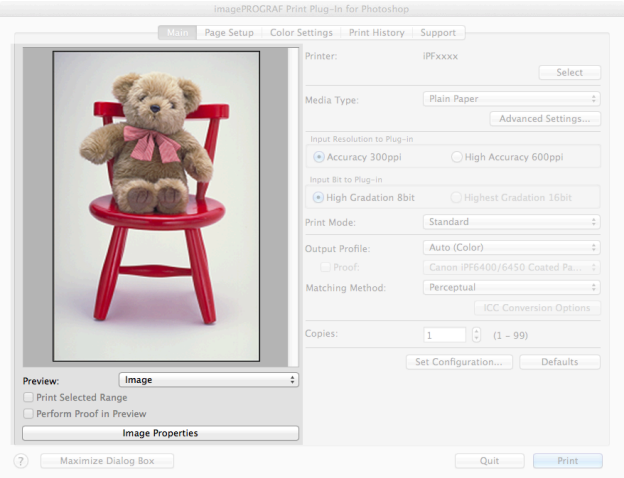
  This contains the buttons **Print**, **Quit**, **Help** and **Maximize Dialog Box**.



  - **Print** Button
    Click this button to begin printing.
  - **Quit** Button
    Click this button to close the Print Plug-In window and return to application software.
  - Button
    Click this button to display the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional Help file.
  - **Maximize Dialog Box** button
    When this button is clicked, the Print Plug-In main window is displayed enlarged to cover the entire display screen.

Preview Area

You can check the settings you made on the image in this area.



- **Preview**

Select the preview display method.

For more information about preview, see **"Utilize Three Types of Previews."** →P.458

Setting	Details
Print Area Layout	Displays the print range and the area out of the print range in the layout matching the **Paper Size** set. *You can change the image print position when you drag the image while the cursor is displayed as .
Image	The entire image is displayed. *You can select the print range when you drag the image while the cursor is displayed as . *When you click the image while the cursor is displayed as , the selected area is deselected.
Roll Paper Preview	Display the media size and roll paper information on the top in the layout printing on roll paper. *To select **Roll Paper Preview**, select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

- **Print Selected Range**

Place a checkmark here to only print the selected range.

Note
- When you select **Preview** in the **Image**, then select a portion of the image on the preview display, this becomes valid.

- **Perform Proof in Preview**

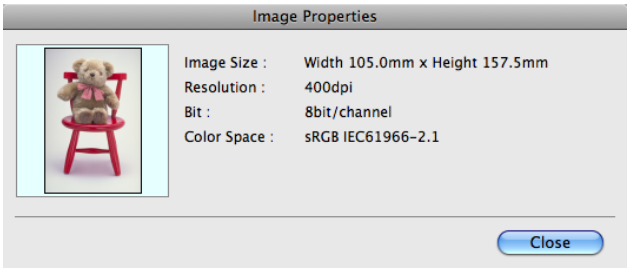
Place a checkmark here to simulate the colors of the output product in the preview.

Note
- If **Auto (Color)** is selected under **Output Profile**, some media types are enabled.
- If ICC profile is selected under **Output Profile**, this is always enabled.
- The actual color balance of the print product and the simulation product may differ with some environments and conditions. In addition, when you have selected an ICC Profile with **Output Profile** and it is not compatible with the printer or media that you are using, the color balance of the actual print product will differ.

- **Image Properties** button

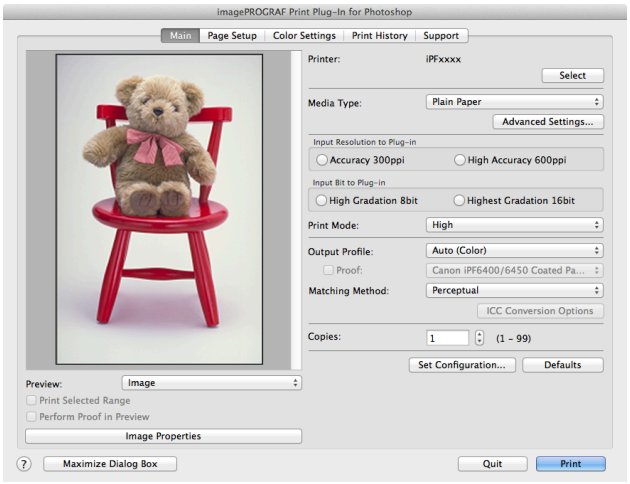
  When you click the button to open the **Image Properties** dialog box, where **Image Size**, **Resolution**, **Bit** and **Color Space** information of the image imported to Print Plug-In are displayed.

  Click the **Close** button to return to Print Plug-In.



Main Sheet

You can use this sheet to perform basic settings such as selecting a printer, setting the media type, or adjusting image quality.



- **Printer**

  The printer types are displayed.

- **Select** button

  Click this button to display the **Select Printer** dialog box.

  When you click the **OK** button after selecting the printer in the **Select Printer** dialog box, you can change the printer that corresponds with Print Plug-In.

- **Media Type**

  This allows you to select the media type.

  For more information about, see "**Customize Media Settings.**" ➔P.475

  Note

  - Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

- **Advanced Settings** button

  Click the button to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.

  For more information about the media detailed settings, see "**Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box.**" ➔P.451

• Input Resolution to Plug-in

You can select the resolution to process the image with Print Plug-In.
The following settings are available for resolution.

Setting	Details
Accuracy 300ppi	This processes images at an accurate resolution. This can control print speed and memory capacity.
High Accuracy 600ppi	This processes images at a more accurate resolution. This setting results in the best print quality, but this takes more time to print than **Accuracy 300ppi** while also requiring more memory capacity. *This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type**

• Input Bit to Plug-in

You can select the bit number to process with Print Plug-In.
The following settings are available for the input bit number.

Setting	Details
High Gradation 8bit	This processes images with at 8bit/channel (24 bit).
Highest Gradation 16bit	This processes images with at 16bit/channel (48 bit). *This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type** and **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

• Print Mode

Selecting the printing mode strikes the balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.
The following settings are available for the print mode.

Setting	Details
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in **Standard** or **Fast** modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in **Highest** or **High** mode.
Fast	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in fast mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.
Highest (Max. No. of Passes)	If you are concerned about uneven colors in the print result of **Highest quality**, selecting this option may improve printing results. However, printing may take longer.

Note

- The selectable fields may vary according to the **Media Type**, **Input Resolution to Plug-in** and **Input Bit to Plug-in** settings.

• Output Profile

You can select the output profile.
The following settings are available for the output profile.

Setting	Details
Auto (Color)	Performs the optimum color conversion from the input image data color space information (sRGB, Adobe RGB), media settings etc. You should normally select these settings.
Auto (Monochrome Photo)	Performs the best color conversion to monochrome from the input image data color space information (sRGB, Adobe RGB), media settings etc.
None (No Color Correction)	You cannot perform color conversion with a plug-in. This is useful for creating an original ICC profile.

Setting	Details
External ICC Profiles	This selects printer ICC profiles to be output to ICC profiles saved in the OS standard folder. Use the color space of the input data as well as the select ICC profile to perform color conversion.

Note
- **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** can only be selected for the corresponding media types.

- **Proof**

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**.
When this is checked, you can perform printing press simulation prints.
Refer to "**Perform Printing Press Simulation Print**" →P.471 for details on printing press simulation prints.

- **Matching Method**

You can select the processing method when performing color conversion.
The following settings are available for the matching method.

Setting	Details
Perceptual	This converts the image to an image with natural color balance and gradation. This is useful for pictures.
Saturation	This converts the image to an image with heightened color saturation. The color balance of pictures and drawings may change.
Relative Colorimetric	This converts the image with emphasis on color balance before the conversion or on visual color balance. This is useful for pictures and drawings.
Absolute Colorimetric	No mapping of colors to destination white point is performed. This is suitable for proofing to simulate the output of a particular device. Note that black point compensation does not function if you are using Adobe CMM.

Note
- When the **Output Profile** you have set is **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** or **None (No Color Correction)**, you cannot select a matching method.

- **ICC Conversion Options** button

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**.
When this button is clicked, the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box is displayed allowing you to configure color conversion related settings.
Refer to "**ICC Conversion Options dialog box**" →P.454 for details on ICC Conversion Options.

- **Copies**

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

Note
- The maximum value is 99.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ or ▼.

- **Set Configuration** button

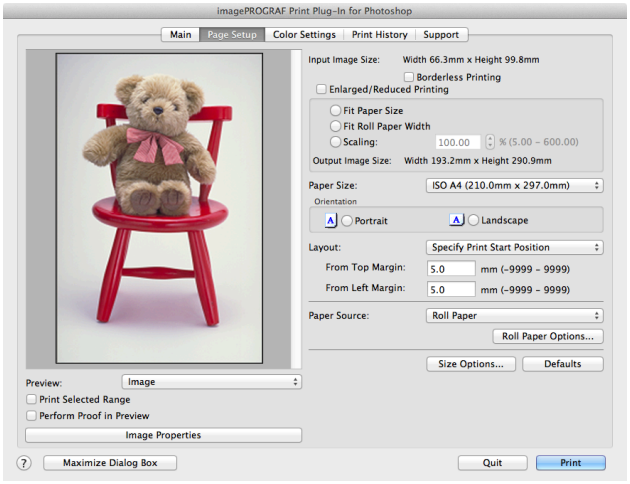
Clicking the button opens the **Set Configuration** dialog box that provides settings for the adjustment of image sharpness and image enlargement method.
For more information about **Set Configuration**, see "**Set Configuration Dialog Box.**" →P.453

- **Defaults** button

Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Main** sheet to their defaults.

Page Setup Sheet

You can use this sheet to set the size of the image to be printed, the media size, and whether to enlarge/reduce the image.



- **Input Image Size**

  The size of the image imported to Print Plug-In is displayed.

- **Borderless Printing**

  When you place a checkmark here, the **Specify Roll Paper Width** dialog box is displayed and you can print an image without borders.

  For more information about **Borderless Printing**, see "Print with No Borders." ➔P.474

  Note

  - Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

  When you place a checkmark here, you can print enlarged/reduced images.

  When printing an enlarged/reduced image, select the method for enlargement/reduction. The image size sent to the printer is displayed matching the selected method in **Output Image Size**.

  The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	This automatically enlarges/reduces the entire image imported to Print Plug-In to match the export media size when printing.
Fit Roll Paper Width	This automatically enlarges/reduces the entire image imported to Print Plug-In to match the width of the roll paper with the width of the image when printing. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
Scaling	This enlarges/reduces the entire image by the specified scaling value. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5-600%. *You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ or ▼.

  Note

  - This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

- **Output Image Size**

  The output image size is displayed up to one place after the decimal point in millimeters.

Note
- When **Paper Size** is smaller than **Output Image Size**, part of the image may not print.

- **Paper Size**

You can select the size of the print media.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
- This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width** is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

- **Orientation**

This selects the print orientation.
The following settings are available for orientation.

Setting	Details
Portrait	Prints the image on the media as it appears on the screen.
Landscape	Prints the image on the media rotated 90 degrees.

- **Layout**

You can select the print position of an image on the media.
The following settings are available for layout.

Layout

Setting	Details	
Upper-Left of Output Paper Size	Prints the image with fitting the top left of the active print area for **Paper Size**.	
Center of Output Paper Size	Prints the center of the image on the center of the selected **Paper Size**.	
Specify Print Start Position	You can print with specifying the top and left printing start positions in **From Top Margin** and **From Left Margin** for **Paper Size**.	
	From Top Margin	Input the margin from the top of the media in numbers. *You can input between -9999 and 9999 mm.
	From Left Margin	Input the margin from the left of the media in numbers. *You can input between -9999 and 9999 mm.

Note
- Select **Print Area Layout** or **Image** in **Preview** when you select **Layout**.

Roll Paper Layout

Setting	Details
Upper-Left of Roll Paper	Prints the top left of Media Size on the top left of the selected roll paper.
Center of Roll Paper	Prints the center of Media Size on the center of the selected roll paper.

Note
- Select **Roll Paper Preview** in **Preview** when you select **Roll Paper Layout**.

- **Paper Source**

You can select the media source.
The following settings are available for media source.

Setting	Details
Manual	Select for manual paper feed printing.

Setting	Details
Manual (3mm margins)	Select for manual paper feed printing when you want to minimize the margin at the far end edge of paper.
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.

Note

- When you select **Manual (3mm margins)** for **Paper Source**, the far end edge of printed image may become defective depending on the paper used. If this happens, select another media source.

- **Roll Paper Options** button

Click this button to open the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box, where you can set roll paper width and perform auto cut settings.

For more information about the roll paper options, see "**Roll Paper Options Dialog Box**." ➔P.454

- **Size Options** button

Click the Size Options button to open the **Size Options** dialog box and you can select a media name, size and other settings.

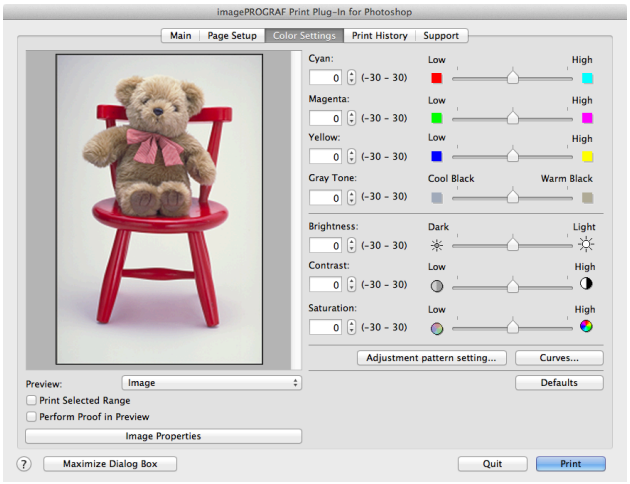
For more information about the size options, see "**Size Options Dialog Box**." ➔P.455

- **Defaults** button

Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Page Setup** sheet to their defaults.

Color Settings Sheet (Color)

You can use this sheet to adjust image Color, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, **Saturation**, and you can set the color balance of print product more to your liking.



Note

- You can check a preview of the adjusted state for the following items.
  Cyan / **Magenta** / **Yellow**, **Gray Tone**, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and **Saturation**

- **Cyan** / **Magenta** / **Yellow**

You can adjust the strength or weakness of a color by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Gray Tone**

You can adjust gray tone from cool black (cool tones) to warm black (red tones) by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Brightness**

  You can adjust the brightness of the printed image without losing the brightest and darkest areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Contrast**

  You can relatively adjust the brightness of the brightest and darkness areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Saturation**

  You can adjust the saturation of vivid color balance to dark color balance by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Adjustment pattern setting** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box is displayed. The **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box allows you to print an adjustment pattern with adjustment values that vary in steps up and down, and to select your preferred adjustment values.

  For details on **Adjustment pattern setting**, see "**Adjustment pattern setting dialog box.**" ➔P.448

- **Curves** button

  Click the button to open the **Curves** dialog box then set the **Channel** and other settings.

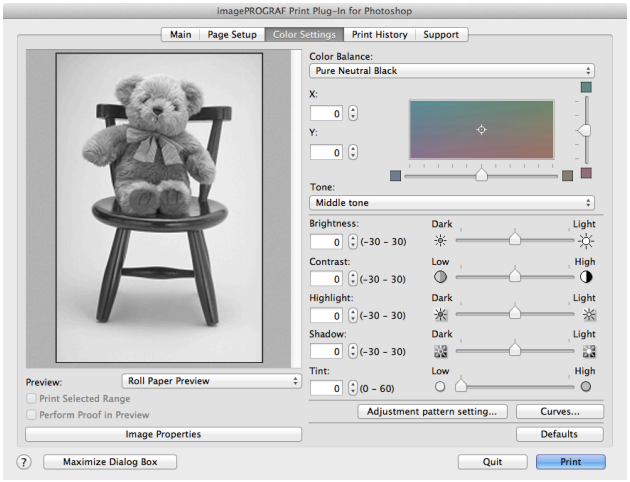
  For more information about **Curves**, see "**Curves Dialog Box.**" ➔P.456

- **Defaults** button

  Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Color Settings** sheet to their defaults.

Color Settings Sheet (Monochrome)

This screen allows you to adjust settings such as the **Color Balance**, **Tone**, **Brightness**, and **Contrast** to configure the printing result to be closer to your expected tone and gradation.
This is displayed when **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** is selected in the **Output Profile** on the **Main Sheet** ➔P.439 .



Note

- You can check a preview of the adjusted state for the following items.
  Color Balance, **Tone**, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, **Highlight**, **Shadow**, and **Tint**

- **Color Balance**

  Allow you to select the color balance to suit your application.

- **X/Y**

  Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area.

  You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it.

  Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired.

You can click the arrows by the **X** (horizontal) and **Y** (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.

- **Tone**

  You can adjust the brightness of intermediate tones in an image. Selecting **Hard tone** gives a hard impression with more definition. Selecting **Soft tone** gives a soft impression.

- **Brightness**

  You can adjust the brightness of the printed image without losing the brightest and darkest areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Contrast**

  You can relatively adjust the brightness of the brightest and darkness areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

- **Highlight**

  Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.

- **Shadow**

  Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.

- **Tint**

  Fills in the white parts of the paper with a small amount of ink in order to reduce the difference in texture between highlights in the image and the white parts of the paper.

- **Adjustment pattern setting** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box is displayed. The **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box allows you to print an adjustment pattern with adjustment values that vary in steps up and down, and to select your preferred adjustment values.

  For details on **Adjustment pattern setting**, see "**Adjustment pattern setting dialog box.**" ➔P.448

- **Curves** button

  Click the button to open the **Curves** dialog box then set the **Channel** and other settings.

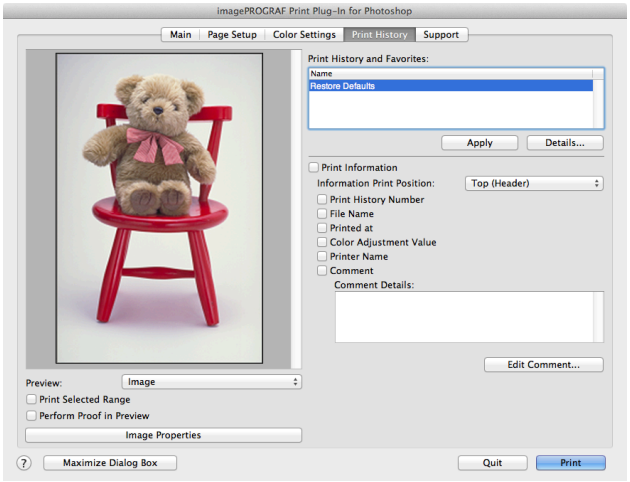
  For more information about **Curves**, see "**Curves Dialog Box.**" ➔P.456

- **Defaults** button

  Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Color Settings** sheet to their defaults.

Print History Sheet

You can use this sheet to apply settings history used in printing, and to print information, such as the image file name, with the image.



- **Print History and Favorites**

  This displays a list of print preferences.

Select **Restore Defaults** and click the **Apply** button to restore all settings to their initial settings.

Note
- You can check the 3 print preferences in the preview display.

- **Apply** button

When you click the button, the print setting content applies to the current image selected with **Print History and Favorites**.

- **Details** button

Click the Details button to open the **Print History Details** dialog box, where you can manage print history.
For more information about the print history details, see "**Print History Details Dialog Box**." →P.457

- **Print Information**

When you place a checkmark here, you can print the file name and print time and date on the image. The following settings are available for the print position and content.
For more information about **Print Information**, see "**Set Information to Print with Image**." →P.484

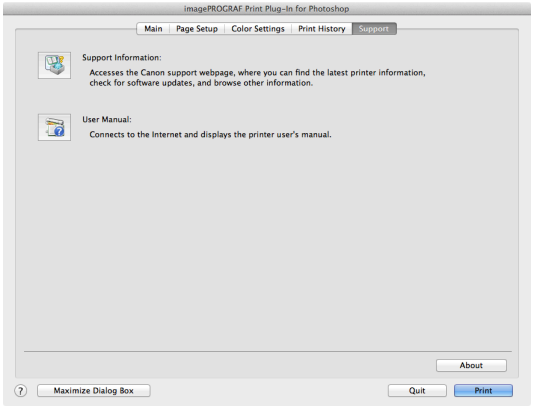
Setting	Details	
Information Print Position	Selects the information print position.	
	Top (Header)	Information is printed on the top of the image.
	Bottom (Footer)	Information is printed on the bottom of the image.
Print History Number	Place a checkmark here to print the print history number.	
File Name	Place a checkmark here to print the file name.	
Printed at	Place a checkmark here to print the time and date.	
Color Adjustment Value	Place a checkmark here to print the color adjustment value.	
Printer Name	Place a checkmark here to print the printer name.	
Comment	Place a checkmark here to print the comment details.	
Comment Details	Place a checkmark here to display the comment details.	

- **Edit Comment** button

Click the button to display the **Edit Comment** dialog box, where you can edit the comment.

Support Sheet

You can display product support information and the electronic manual.



- **Support Information** button

Click this button to check information such as the latest information on the product and version upgrade information for the software.

- **User Manual** button

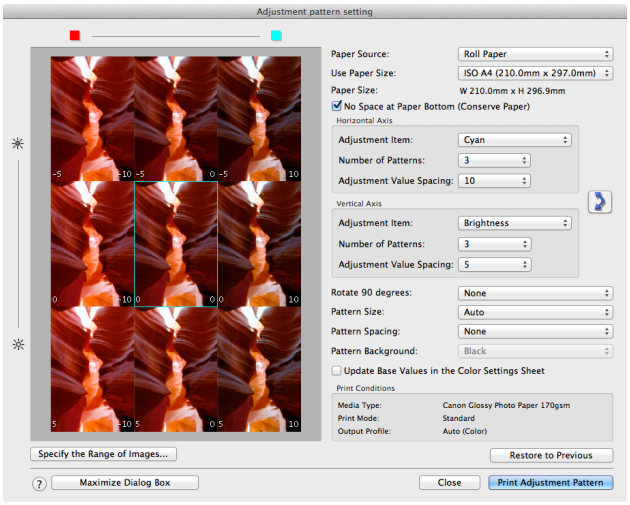
  Click this button to display the printer User Manual.

- **About** button

  Click the button to open the version information window of the Print Plug-In. Click the **OK** button in the version information window to return to the Print Plug-In window.

Adjustment pattern setting dialog box

Displays the adjustment pattern by taking images with the adjustment values varying up and down in steps from the baseline adjustment values in the **Color Settings** sheet (color or monochrome). This allows you to print the adjustment pattern and select your preferred adjustment values while comparing the images.



- Preview Area

  This area allows you to view adjustment pattern images side-by-side to check the state when changes to adjustment values are applied.

  The adjustment values of the image enclosed in the blue frame in the center are used as the base values, with images arranged around this with the adjustment values varying in steps up and down from these base values. If you click any of the images, the adjustment pattern is redisplayed with the adjustment values from that image as the base values.

  The adjustment values are displayed at the top of each image. If both the **Horizontal Axis** and **Vertical Axis** are configured, the adjustment value for the **Horizontal Axis** is displayed on the right and the adjustment value for the **Vertical Axis** is displayed on the left. If the image is so small that the adjustment values cannot be displayed, you can check the adjustment values by displaying the tool tip.

  Note

  - For images where the adjustment values are out of range, an adjustment pattern is not displayed and the message **Out of Range** is displayed instead.

- **Paper Source**

  Selects the paper feed method for the paper to print the adjustment pattern on. You can split the usage between printing adjustment patterns on cut paper (manual feed) and printing work pieces on roll paper.

- **Use Paper Size**

  Selects the paper size to print the adjustment pattern on.

  The adjustment pattern is printed so that it fits into the selected paper size.

  Note

  - If the image size is large and **Dimensions** is selected in **Pattern Size**, the pattern display might not fit within the vertical direction of the paper size. In this case, select **Auto** in **Pattern Size**.
  - The printed paper size is displayed in **Paper Size**.

- **Paper Size**

  Since the length in the vertical direction may differ between the **Use Paper Size** and actual printed material, this displays the actual output paper size.

- **No Space at Paper Bottom (Conserve Paper)**

  If a margin appears at the bottom of the paper with the paper size selected in **Use Paper Size**, you can conserve paper by selecting this check box to print excluding the margin area. The state of the length in the vertical direction being shortened to conserve the margin area is reflected in the displayed **Paper Size**.

- **Horizontal Axis/Vertical Axis**

  Configures settings such as the items that change in steps and the number of patterns when multiple adjustment patterns are arranged horizontally or vertically.

  - **Adjustment Item**

    Selects the items to change in steps.
    For color, you can select **Cyan**, **Magenta**, **Yellow**, **Gray Tone**, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, or **Saturation**.
    For monochrome, you can select X **Color Balance**, Y **Color Balance**, **Tone**, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, **Highlight**, **Shadow**, or **Tint**.
    The icons for **Horizontal Axis Adjustment Item** are displayed above the preview area and the icons for **Vertical Axis Adjustment Item** are displayed on the left of the preview area.

    Note
    - **None** can only be selected for **Vertical Axis** in both color and monochrome.

  - **Number of Patterns**

    You can select the number of images to display in the pattern in the horizontal or vertical direction from 3, 5, and 7. If the adjustment item is **Tone**, you can select 3 or 5. When **Tone** is selected as the adjustment value, -1 is **Soft tone**, 0 is **Middle tone**, 2 is **Medium-hard tone**, 3 is **Hard tone**, and 5 is **Strong-hard tone**.

  - **Adjustment Value Spacing**

    You can select the interval of the variation in adjustment values between neighboring adjustment pattern images from the range of 1 to 10. The larger the value, the greater the differences between the states of the adjustment pattern images. Note that if the adjustment item is **Tone**, the **Adjustment Value Spacing** cannot be selected.

  - (Swap) button

    Rearranges the adjustment pattern with the **Horizontal Axis** and **Vertical Axis** adjustment items swapped.

- **Rotate 90 degrees**

  Rotating the image may make it easier to conserve paper and compare images.
  Select **Per Image** to rotate each of the images in the adjustment pattern by 90 degrees.
  Select **Entire Image after layout** to rotate the entire adjustment pattern by 90 degrees.
  When **None** is selected, the image is not rotated.

- **Pattern Size**

  You can specify the size of the image when printing the adjustment pattern.
  When **Auto** is selected, the image is enlarged or reduced to fit the adjustment pattern into the **Use Paper Size**.
  When **Dimensions** is selected, the image is printed at the input image size without enlarging or reducing. **Dimensions** cannot be selected when the paper feed method is **Manual**.

  Note
  - If the input image size is large, check the **Paper Size** before starting printing because it may be larger than the actual printed material size.
  - Select **Dimensions** in **Pattern Size** to print at the input image size without enlarging or reducing the images.
  - Patterns that extend past the horizontal width of the paper are printed wrapped onto the next line.

- **Pattern Spacing**

  You can select **None** or **Available**. If **Available** is selected, you can insert a background between each image. The background color can be specified in **Pattern Background**.

- **Pattern Background**

  You can select the background color from **White**, **Black**, and Gray.

  If it is difficult to compare the differences between neighboring adjustment pattern images, changing the background color may make it easier to compare. The **Pattern Spacing** can be selected if **Pattern Background** is **Available**.

- **Update Base Values in the Color Settings Sheet**

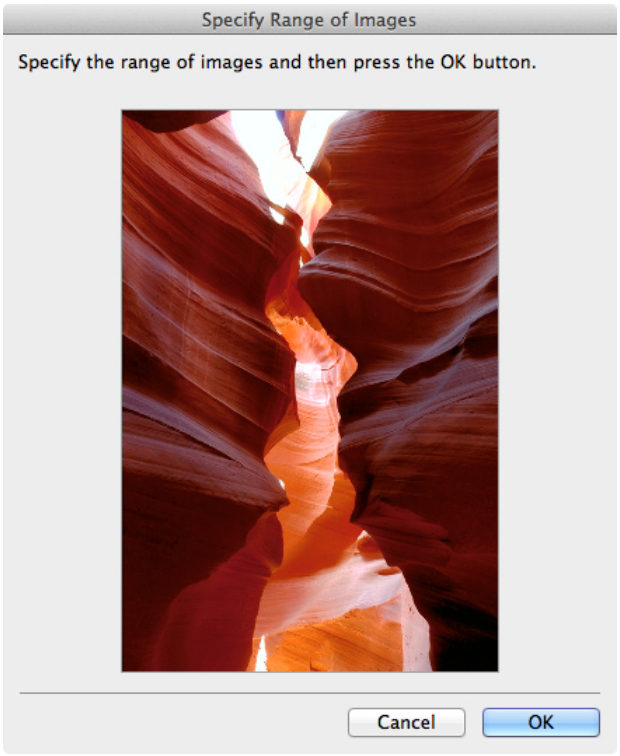
  Select this check box and click the **Close** button to apply the setting values (standard values) of the image enclosed in the blue frame in the center of the preview area in the **Color Settings** panel (color or monochrome).

- **Print Conditions**

  Displays the paper type, print mode, and output profile configured in the main window. This makes it possible to check the details of each of the settings when printing the adjustment pattern without returning to the main window.

- **Specify the Range of Images** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Specify the Range of Images** dialog box is displayed for specifying the range of images.



  When you specify the range by using the mouse or other means and then click the **OK** button, the **Specify the Range of Images** dialog box closes and the specified image range is redisplayed as the adjustment pattern.

  If you click the **Cancel** button, the **Specify the Range of Images** dialog box closes even if a range is selected.

  Note

  - The selected range is cleared by clicking the image with a range selected.

- **Restore to Previous** button

  When this button is clicked, the settings are restored to the defaults when the **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box was first displayed.

- **Close** button

When this button is clicked, the setting values in the **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box are saved and the dialog box is closed. These setting values are applied the next time the Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional is started. Furthermore, if you select the **Update Base Values in the Color Settings Sheet** check box and click the **Close** button, the setting values for the image enclosed in the blue frame in the preview area (central image) are applied to the settings in the **Color Settings** sheet (color or monochrome).

- **Print Adjustment Pattern** button

When this button is clicked, printing the adjustment pattern is executed. The **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box does not close even after executing the printing.

The adjustment values are printed at the top of each image. If both the **Horizontal Axis** and **Vertical Axis** are configured, the adjustment value for the **Horizontal Axis** is displayed on the right and the adjustment value for the **Vertical Axis** is displayed on the left.

Each of the setting values for the paper type, print mode, and output profile as well as the adjustment values configured in the **Color Settings** sheet (color or monochrome) are printed at the bottom of the paper. However, the adjustment values for the **Curves** are not printed.

Note

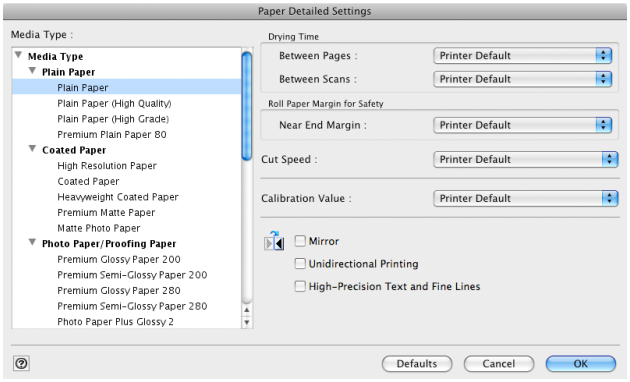
- The job name when printing the adjustment pattern is "Original Image Name + Pattern-Print". For example, the print job name for the image "ABC.jpg" is "ABC_Pattern-Print.jpg".

- **Maximize Dialog Box** button

When this button is clicked, the **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box is displayed enlarged to cover the entire display screen.

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Advanced Settings** button on the **Main** Sheet. You can set **Drying Time** and **Roll Paper Margin for Safety** by media type.



- **Drying Time**

Between Pages

This sets the wait time for the ink to dry between each completely printed sheet and the output of the sheet.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
None	The paper is ejected immediately after printing.
30sec. / **1min.** / **3min.** / **5min.** / **10min.** / **30min.** / **60min.**	The sheet is ejected when the specified time after printing has elapsed.

Between Scans

This sets the wait time between line scans during printing.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.

Setting	Details
None	The printing continues to the next line immediately after the last line.
1sec. / **3sec.** / **5sec.** / **7sec.** / **9sec.**	The printing continues to the next line after the set time. *For the media type that has problems, such as ink smears on the page or colors that seem uneven during borderless printing etc., increase the value for this setting.

- **Roll Paper Margin for Safety**

Near End Margin

This sets the length of the near end margin of the roll paper.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
3mm	Print at a standard size. *Select for Media Type that has no problem when printing with a standard size margin.
20mm	Select this when rubbing against the printhead occurs such as when using paper that tends to curl.

- **Cut Speed**

This selects the auto cut speed.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
Fast	Select this setting if cutting with the **Standard** setting is not clean.
Standard	Select this setting when you are not experiencing problems.
Slow	This helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you select it when using adhesive paper.

- **Calibration Value**

When calibration has been carried out on the printer, use this setting to choose whether or not to use the results.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
Use Value	The calibration results are used for printing.
Disregard Value	The calibration results are not used for printing. Select this option to avoid changes to image color tones during printing due to color calibration.

- **Mirror**

Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

- **Unidirectional Printing**

Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

- **High-Precision Text and Fine Lines**

Print increasing ink impact accuracy, particularly for sharper text and fine lines. However, this takes more time than regular printing.

Note

- When **Highest (Max. No. of Passes)** is selected as the print mode, **High-Precision Text and Fine Lines** cannot be selected.

Set Configuration Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Set Configuration** button on the **Main** Sheet. You can set the adjustment of image sharpness and image enlargement method.

- **Sharpen**

  Performs adjustment of the sharpness (outline) settings.

- **Image Enlargement Method**

  You can select the image enlargement method.

  The following settings are available for the image enlargement method.

Setting	Details
Nearest Neighbor	Performs simple enlargement.
Bilinear	Performs line vector enlargement.
Bicubic	Adjust pixels with calculation of elements such as a color or brightness of neighboring pixels.

- **Perform printing in the background**

  When you place a checkmark here, the plug-in performs printing with the Plug-In in the background.

- **Close Plug-in After Printing**

  When you place a checkmark here, the plug-in closes after printing finishes.

  Note

  - If printing does not finish correctly because it was canceled or an error occurred, the plug-in does not close.

- **Output Method**

  You can select the output method.

  The following settings are available for the output method.

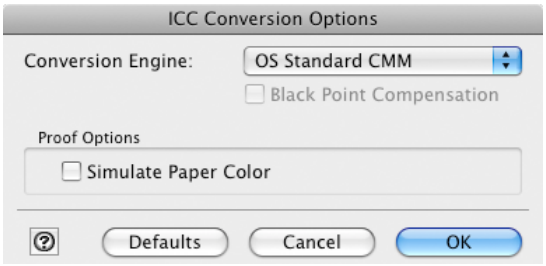
Setting	Details
Print	Normal printing. The print job data is stored temporarily in the box as the job prints.
Save in mail box	Saves the print data in the mail box. If you select **Save in mail box**, you must specify **Name of data to be saved**.
Print after reception is complete	When you place a checkmark here, you can print after saving jobs in the temporary storage space. This cannot be used when **Save in mail box** is selected.

- **Initialize all warning dialog boxes**

  When this is checked, all of the warning dialog boxes that have been set to "Do not show this screen again" become displayed.

ICC Conversion Options dialog box

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected in the **Output Profile** list in the **Main** sheet and the **ICC Conversion Options** button is clicked. This allows you to configure detailed color matching related settings.



- **Conversion Engine**

  Selects the conversion engine to use when converting colors.

  Note
  - Adobe CMM needs to be installed in order to use **Adobe CMM**. Refer to "**Using Adobe CMM**" →P.467 for details on how to install Adobe CMM.

- **Black Point Compensation**

  Check this check box to perform black point compensation. Loss of gradation in dark areas can be improved by performing black point compensation.

  Note
  - This can be used if **Adobe CMM** is selected as the **Conversion Engine**.

- **Proof Options**

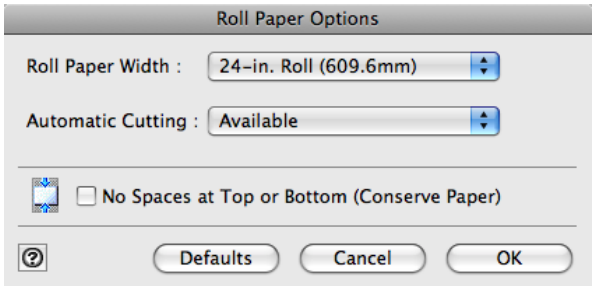
  Configures settings related to printing press simulation.

  The proof options consist of the following settings.

Setting	Details
Simulate Paper Color	Select this when performing paper color simulation.

Roll Paper Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Roll Paper Options** button on the **Page Setup** Sheet. You can set the roll paper width and perform the auto cut settings.



- **Roll Paper Width**

  This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.

- **Automatic Cutting**

  You can set the printer to cut roll paper automatically or print a guideline for cutting.

  The following settings are available for automatic cutting.

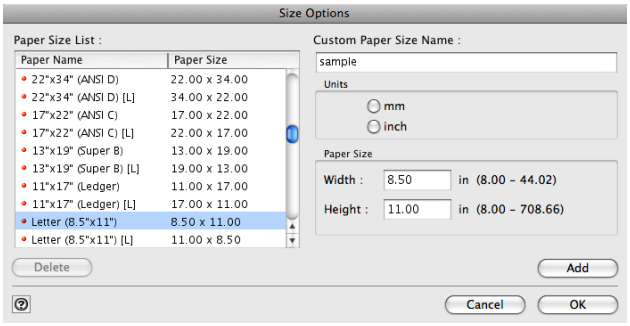
Setting	Details
Available	Each page is automatically cut after it is printed.
None	Each page is not cut after it is printed and printing continues without interruption.
Print Cut Guideline	A print cut guideline is printed after each page and printing continues without interruption.

- **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**

  When you place a checkmark here, the print data is printed without margins.

Size Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Size Options** button on the **Page Setup** Sheet. You can select a media name, size and other settings.



- **Paper Size List**

  Displays all the standard sizes and custom media sizes.

- **Custom Paper Size Name**

  You can enter any name up to 63 characters.

- **Units**

  You can select the units of measure to use when you define custom media size. Switching this setting resets the units of measure for the entire Plug-In.

- **Paper Size**

  Width

  Enter the width of the media size.

  Height

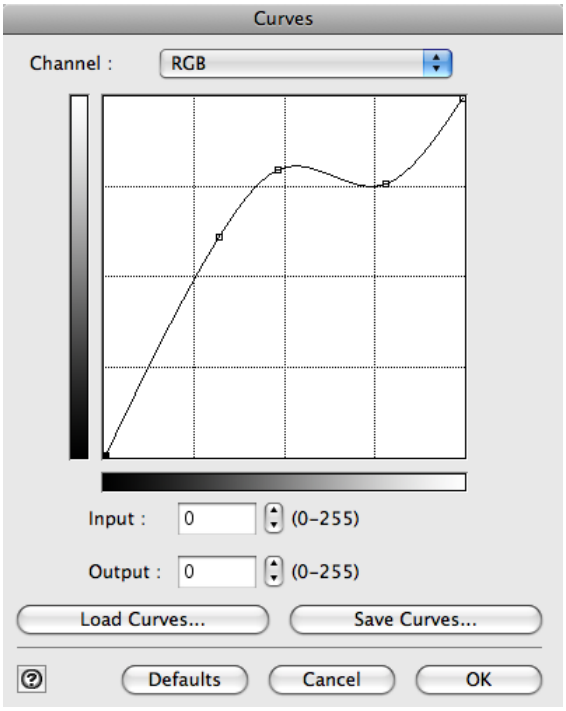
  Enter the height of the media size.

- **Add** button

  Click the button to register the contents of the settings.

Curves Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Curves** button on the **Color Settings** Sheet. You can set **Channel** and other settings.



- **Channel**

  Select from among **RGB**, **Red**, **Green**, or **Blue**.

  Note
  - **Gray** is displayed for monochrome printing and this selection cannot be changed.

- **Input**

  Enter an input value.

  Note
  - The allowed entry range is 0 to 255.
  - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Output**

  Enter an output value.

  Note
  - The allowed entry range is 0 to 255.
  - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Load Curves** button

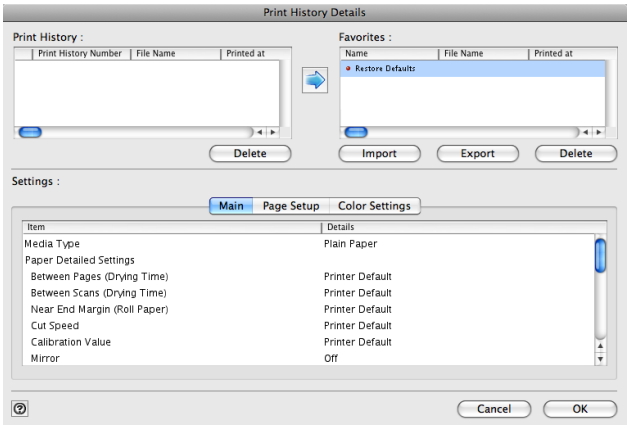
  Click the button to load stored data for a tone curve.

- **Save Curves** button

  Click the button to stores the current tone curve settings.

Print History Details Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Details** button on the **Print History** Sheet. This controls print history. For more information about **Print History Details**, see "**Utilize Print History**." →P.476



- **Print History**

  Print History appears in list format.

Display Items	Details
Print History Number	Displays the print history number.
File Name	Displays image file name.
Printed at	Displays time and date of printing.
Comment	Displays comment details.

Note
- Up to 200 print history items can be displayed. All items above 200 are deleted.
- When you cannot print properly because you canceled the printing or an error occurred, appears ✕ to the left of the print history number.

- **Delete** button

  Click the button to delete the selected print history.

- **Add** button

  Click the button to add the selected print history to preferences.

Note
- Up to 200 print preference items can be added.

- **Favorites**

  The print history stored in print preferences displays in list format.

Note
- You can change the order by selecting an item and dragging it to another place.

- **Import** button

  Click the button to import print history saved as a file.

- **Export** button

  Click the button to save print history as a file that is stored in print preferences.

- **Delete** button

  Click the button to delete print history stored in print preferences.

- **Settings**

  Displays the print history settings selected from the **Print History** or **Favorites**.

Setting	Details
Main	When you select this the **Main** sheet settings are displayed.
Page Setup	When you select this the **Page Setup** sheet settings are displayed.
Color Settings	When you select this the **Color Settings** sheet settings are displayed.

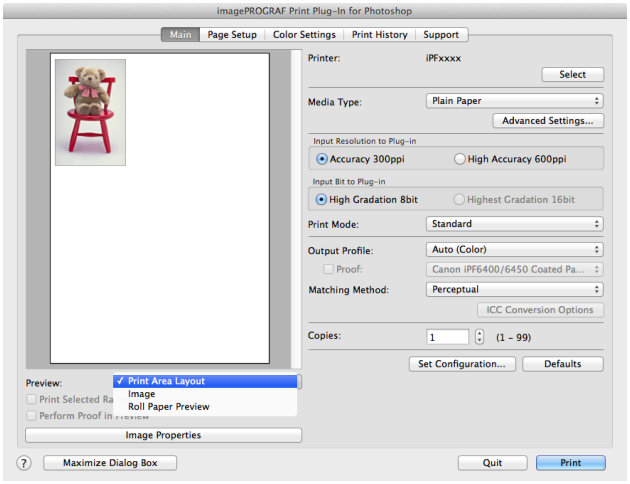
Utilize Three Types of Previews

You can use Print Plug-In to check an image in three types of previews.
The preview types are as follows.

- **Check Image with Print Area Layout** →P.458
- **Check the original image with Image** →P.459
- **Check Image with Roll Paper Preview** →P.459

Check Image with Print Area Layout

Displays the print range and the area out of the print range in the layout matching the media size set in the print area layout.
Select **Print Area Layout** in **Preview**.

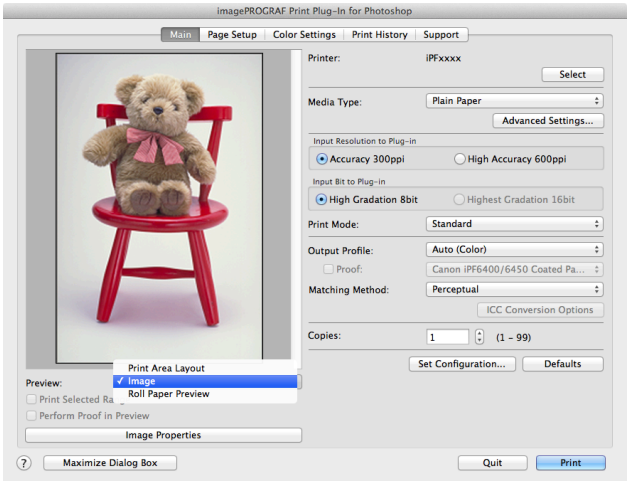


Note

- When the cursor on the preview is displayed as on the preview, you can specify the print position by dragging the image.
- When the cursor is displayed as on the preview, the below conditions on the **Page Setup** sheet have all been met.
  - There is no checkmark in **Borderless Printing**.
  - There is no checkmark in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** or **Scaling** has been selected.

Check the original image with Image

In the image preview you can check the entire image that you have input.
Select **Image** in **Preview**.

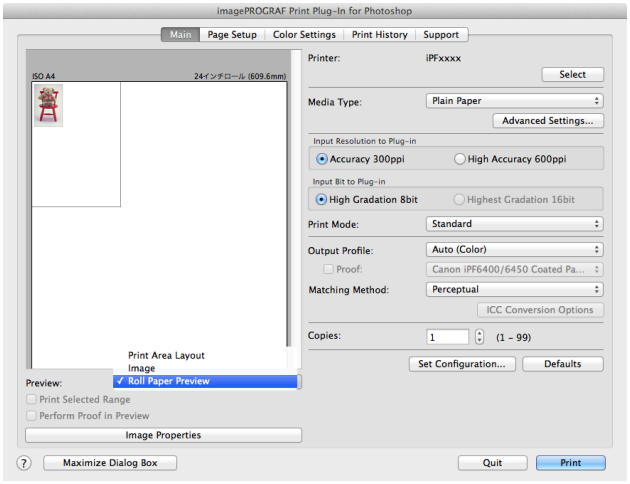


Note

- When the cursor appears as a small magnifying glass while there is an **Image** in the **Preview** area, the **Selected Range** feature is enabled and you an drag the cursor on the image and select an area for printing.
- When you click the image while the cursor is displayed as on the preview, the selected area is deselected.

Check Image with Roll Paper Preview

Display the media size and roll paper information on the top in the layout printing on roll paper in Roll Paper Preview
Select **Roll Paper Preview** in **Preview**.



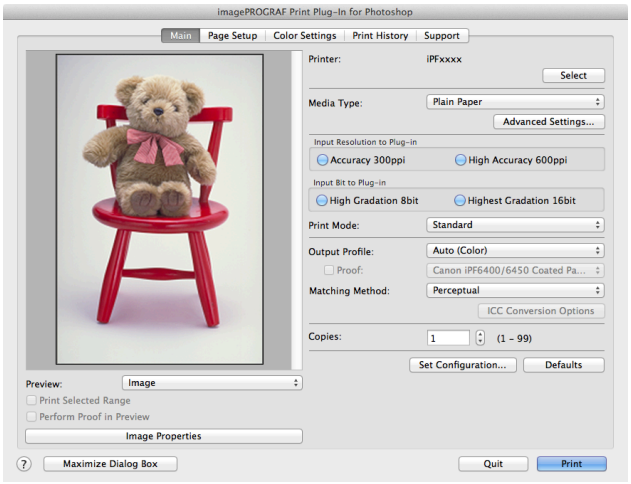
Note

- To select **Roll Paper Preview** in **Preview**, select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

Print with a Desired Picture Quality

You can specify and print at the resolution you desire.

1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select the media set to the printer in **Media Type**.

Note
- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

3 Choose either **Accuracy 300ppi** or **High Accuracy 600ppi** for the resolution to process images in **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

Note
- When you select **Accuracy 300ppi** images are processed at an accurate resolution. This can control print speed and memory capacity.
- When you select **High Accuracy 600ppi** images are processed at a more accurate resolution. This setting results in the best print quality, but this takes more time to print than **Accuracy 300ppi** while also requiring more memory capacity.
- **High Accuracy 600ppi** will not display with some **Media Type** settings.

4 Choose either **High Gradation 8bit** or **Highest Gradation 16bit** for the bit number when processing images in **Input Bit to Plug-in**.

Note
- When you select **High Gradation 8bit**, images are processed at 8 bit/channel (24 bit).
- When you select **Highest Gradation 16bit**, images are processed at 16bit/channel (48 bit).
- **Highest Gradation 16bit** will not display with some **Media Type** or **Input Resolution to Plug-in** settings.

5 Select the mode to be printed when processing images in **Print Mode**.

Note
- The settings that can be selected differ by **Media Type**, **Input Resolution to Plug-in**, and **Input Bit to Plug-in** selected.

6 Click the **Print** button.

Printing begins.

Adjust the Colors and Print

You can adjust the colors to your liking and print images.
The explanation below is on 5 ways to adjust the colors using Print Plug-In.

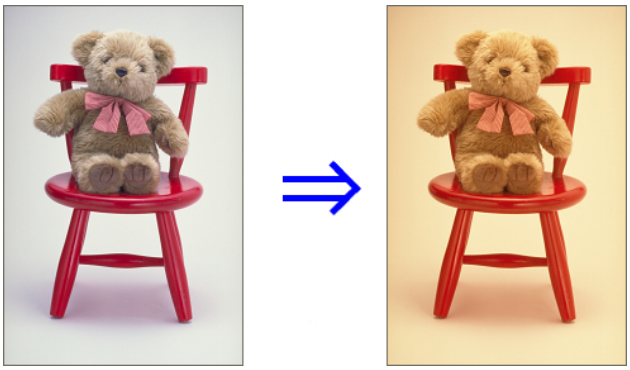
- **Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color)** ➔P.461
- **Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome)** ➔P.462
- **Adjust the Colors by Color Matching** ➔P.465
- **Print High-Quality Adobe RGB 16bit Images** ➔P.466
- **Prints monochrome photographs with high quality** ➔P.467
- **Using Adobe CMM** ➔P.467

Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color)

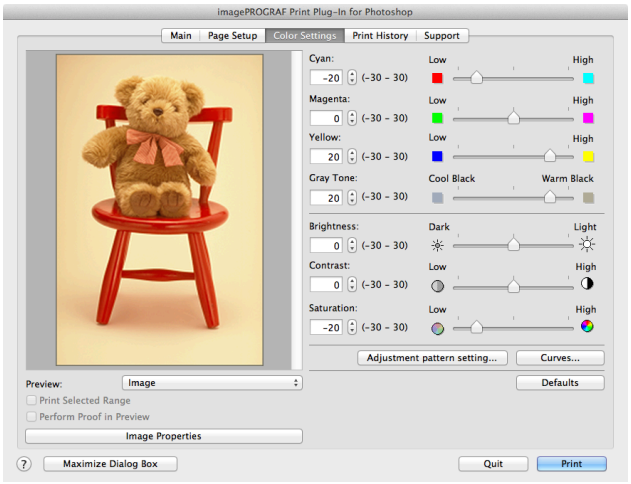
You can adjust the colors while checking the adjustments in the preview.
The following explanation is on the procedures for adjusting example image below.

- **Low** for **Cyan**
- **High** for **Yellow**
- **Low** for **Saturation**
- **Warm Black** for **Gray Tone**
- Enhance brightness for the curves

The above image adjustments are reflected in the before and after images below.



1 Display the **Color Settings** sheet.



2 Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Low** in **Cyan**.

3 Drag the slide bar in the direction of **High** in **Yellow**.

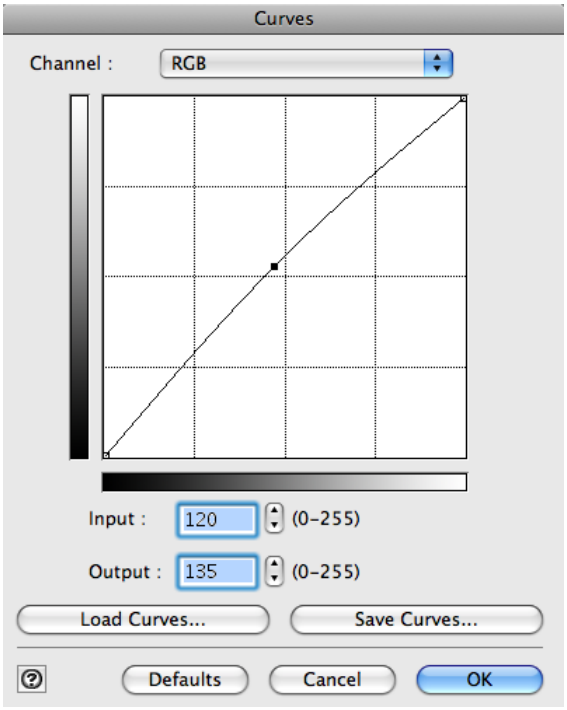
4 Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Low** in **Saturation**.

5 Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Warm Black** in **Gray Tone**.

Note
- You can change the numbers by inputting in numerical characters.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

6 Click the **Curves** button then click near the center of the curve.

7 Enter 120 in **Input** and 135 in **Output** then click the **OK** button.



8 Click the **Print** button.

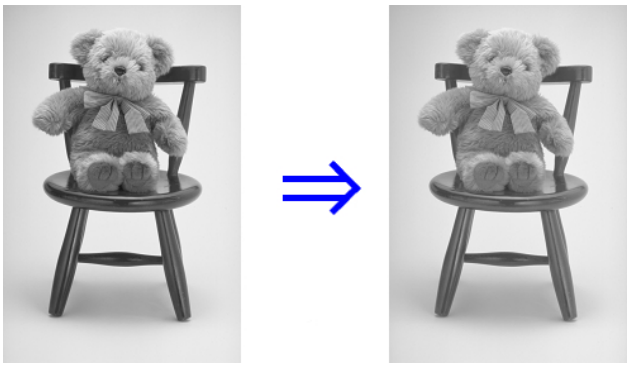
The adjustments are reflected in the image and printing begins.

Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome)

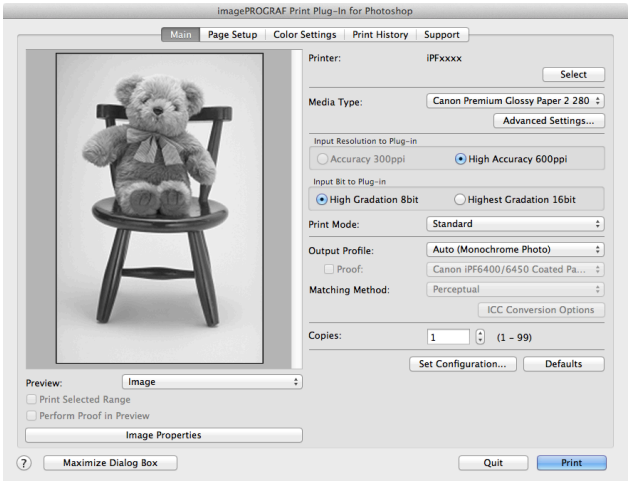
You can adjust the colors while checking the adjustments in the preview.
The following explanation is about the procedures for adjusting example image below.

- **Low** for **Contrast**
- **Light** for **Highlight**
- **Light** for **Shadow**
- Enhance brightness for the curves

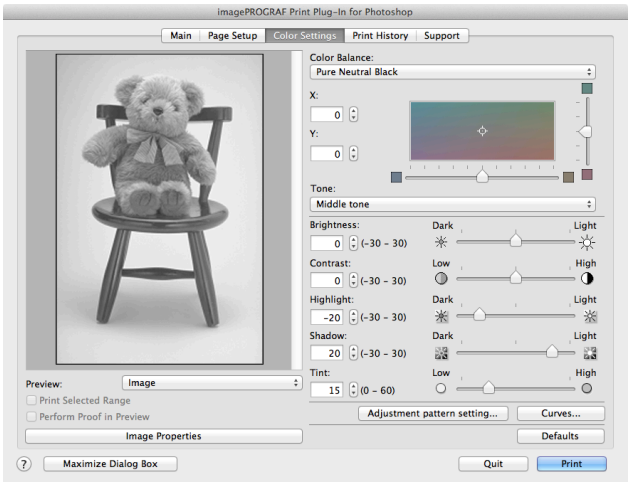
The unapplied and the applied images of the above image adjustments are as below.



1. Open the **Main** sheet.
2. Select **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** in **Output Profile**.



3. Open the **Color Settings** sheet.



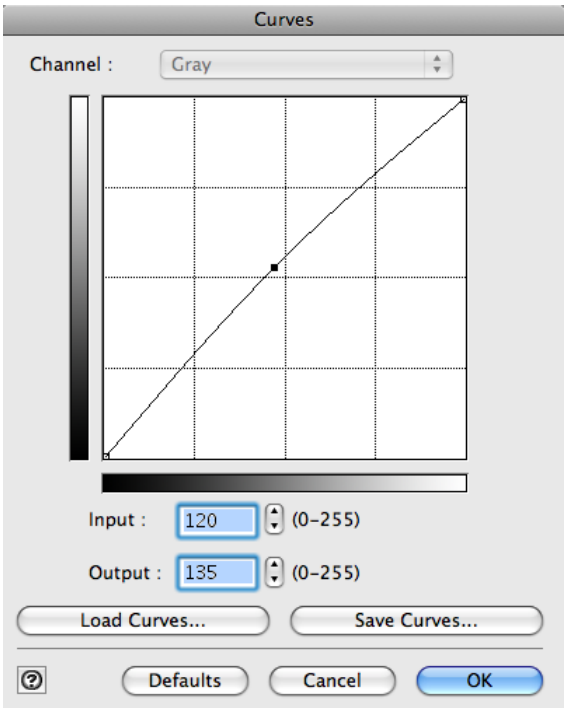
4. In **Contrast**, drag the slide bar toward **Low**.
5. In **Highlight**, drag the slide bar toward **Light**.

6 In **Shadow**, drag the slide bar toward **Light**.

Note
- You can change the numbers by inputting in numerical characters.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

7 Click the **Curves** button then click near the center of the curve.

8 Enter 120 in **Input** and 135 in **Output** then click the **OK** button.



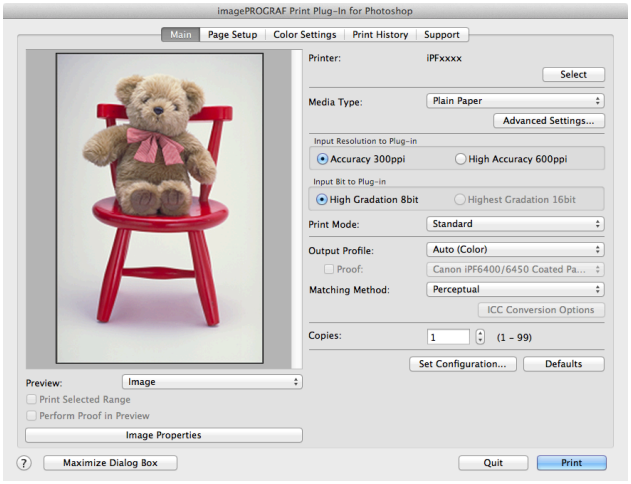
9 Click the **Print** button.

This applies the image adjustments and starts the print job.

Adjust the Colors by Color Matching

When you print a color image imported from a scanner or a digital camera, the image may appear different from the image on the screen. That is due to the differences in color on the screen and in the printer. In Print Plug-In, you can get the color balance of the print product closer to the color balance displayed on the screen through performing ICC (International Color Consortium) color profile settings, matching method settings, and settings for the internal profile, which performs optimum color conversion in response to media and resolution settings.

1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select the profile in **Output Profile**.

Note

- When you place a checkmark in **Perform Proof in Preview**, you can check the color matching in the preview. This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type**.
- The details of **Output Profile** you have set is saved even when you close the Print Plug-In, but when the specified profile cannot be located it is set to **Auto (Color)**.
- If an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**, Adobe CMM can be selected as the color conversion engine. Refer to "**Using Adobe CMM**" →P.467 for details.

3 Select the profile matching method in **Matching Method**.

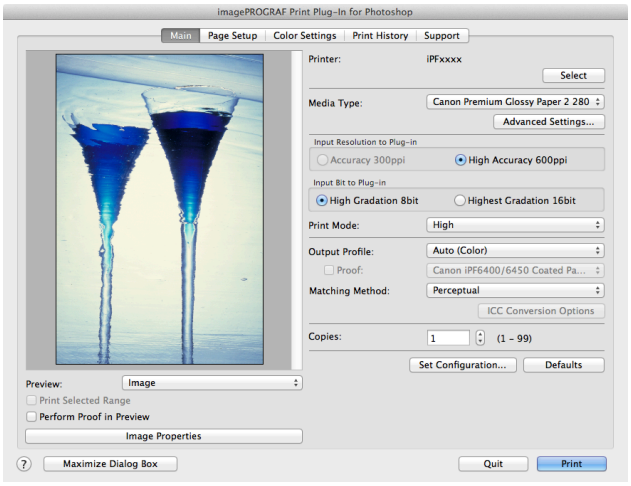
4 Click the **Print** button.

Printing begins with the output profile and matching method that you have set.

Print High-Quality Adobe RGB 16bit Images

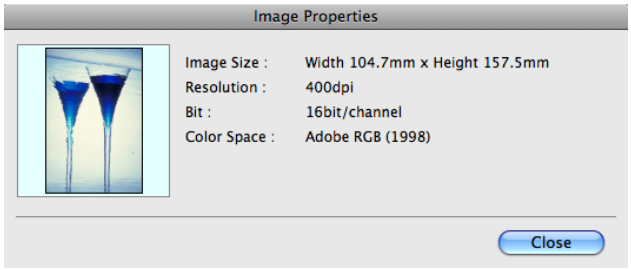
This prints a high-quality Adobe RGB 16bit image taken with a high-end digital camera. Print Plug-In allows you to print high color gamut and high tone images, when the Adobe RGB 16bit image data has been retouched in Photoshop, without compromising the level of tone in the image.

1 Select the Adobe RGB 16bit image data in Photoshop and start Print Plug-In. (See "**Starting from Photoshop.**") ➔P.434

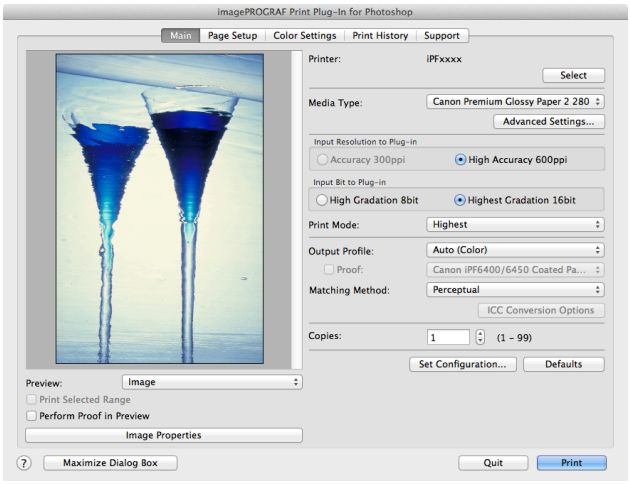


2 Click **Image Properties** button.

3 Check that **Adobe RGB** is displayed in **Color Space**, and **16bit/channel** is displayed in **Bit** in the **Image Properties** dialog box, and click the **Close** button.



4 Display the **Main** sheet.



5 Select **High Accuracy 600ppi** in **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

6 Select **Highest Gradation 16bit** in **Input Bit to Plug-in**.

7 Select the highest quality possible in **Print Mode**.

8 If required, adjust the colors using color matching.

Note
- For more information about the color matching, see "**Adjust the Colors by Color Matching.**" ➔P.465

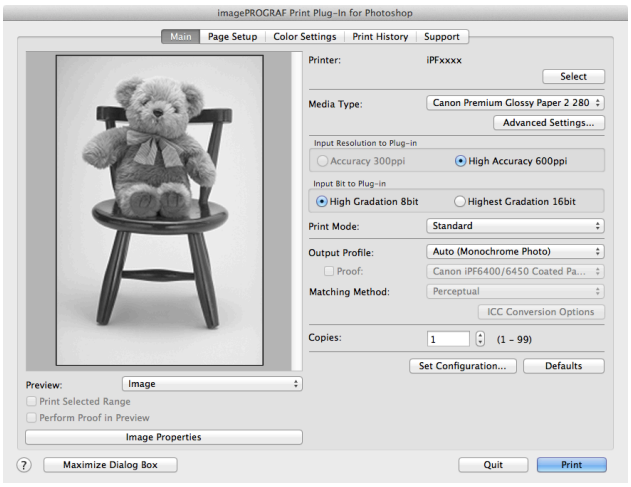
9 Click the **Print** button.

Printing of the Adobe RGB 16bit image begins.

Prints monochrome photographs with high quality

Prints images captured with a scanner or digital camera in monochrome with high quality. Provides stable monochrome photo images without color casts and minimizes the influences of the difference of the light source.

1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** in **Output Profile**.

Note
- **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** can be selected only after a compatible **Media Type** has been selected.

3 Click the **Print** button.

Performs conversion to the most suitable monochrome and printing begins.

Using Adobe CMM

Adobe CMM is a color conversion engine made by Adobe. Using Adobe CMM makes it possible to obtain uniform color conversion results and to use the black point compensation function.

Important
- Use version 1.1 or higher of Adobe CMM.

- How to Obtain Adobe CMM

Adobe CMM can be obtained using the following procedure.

1 Open the Adobe website (http://www.adobe.com).

2 Enter "Adobe CMM" in the search input box on the screen.

3 Search for the "Adobe Color Management Module (CMM)" item and select the Macintosh version.

4 Download the file by following the on-screen directions.

5 Start the installer in the downloaded file to perform the installation.

- Adobe CMM System Requirements

The system requirements for Adobe CMM are as follows.

- Supported OS
  Mac OS X v10.4.8 or later

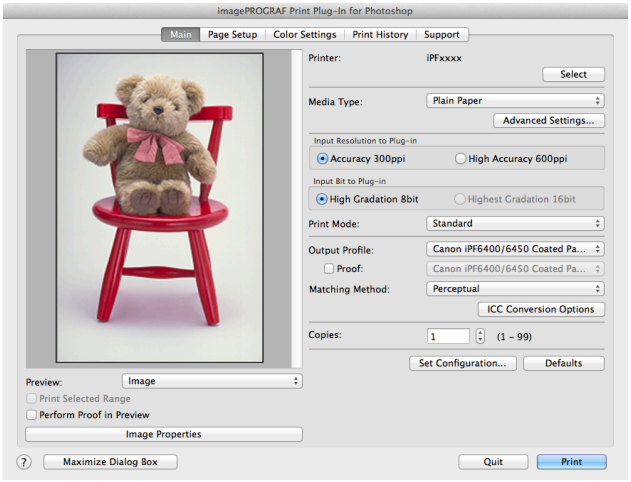
- Supported CPU
  PowerPC G4 or G5
  Intel Core Duo, Intel Core 2 Duo, Intel Xeon processor

Note
- Check with Adobe for details.

- How to Use Adobe CMM

The procedure for using Adobe CMM is as follows.

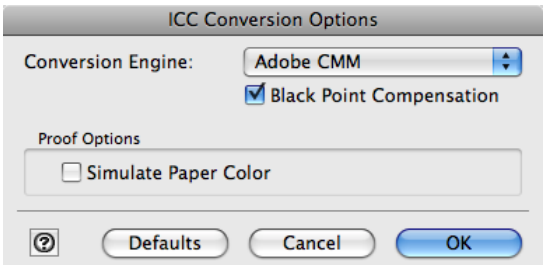
1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3 Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button.

4 In the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box, select **Adobe CMM** from **Conversion Engine**.



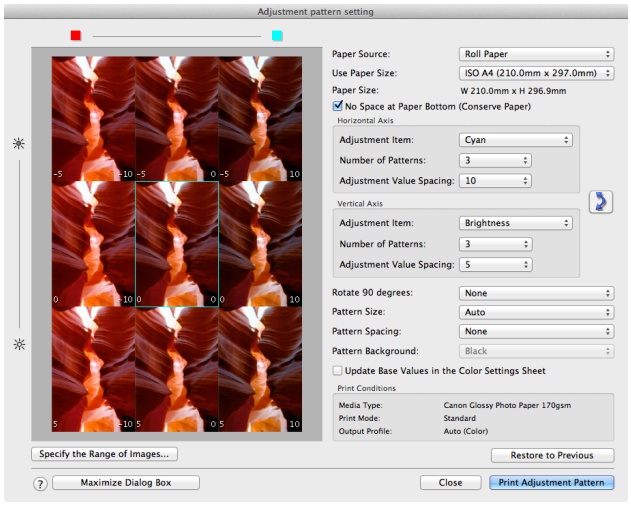
5 Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

Printing an Adjustment Pattern and Selecting Adjustment Values

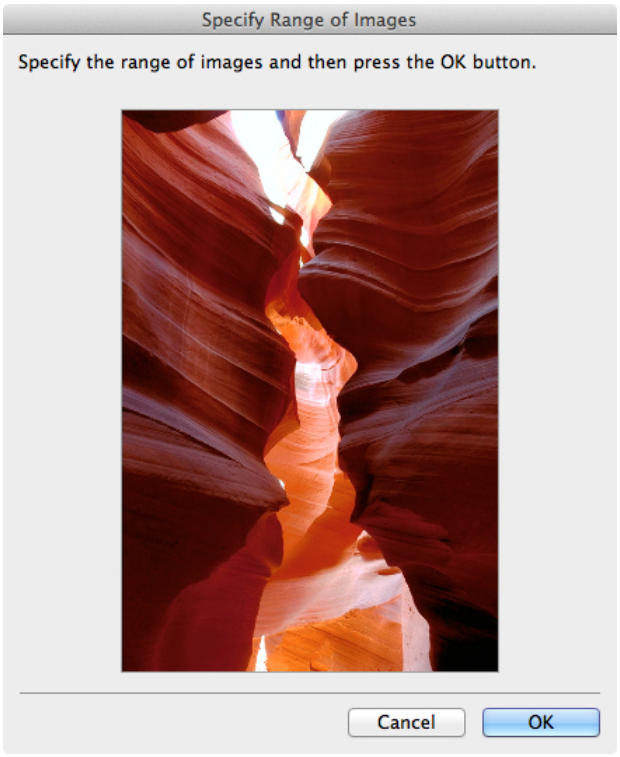
Since you can print an adjustment pattern and select your preferred adjustment values while comparing the images, this allows you to conserve ink and paper, and save the time it takes to repeatedly check adjustment results.
The procedure for displaying and printing an adjustment pattern is as follows.

1. Display the **Color Settings** sheet (color or monochrome) and set the adjustment values to use as the baseline values.

2. Click the **Adjustment pattern setting** button to display the **Adjustment pattern setting** dialog box.



3. Set the **Adjustment Item**, **Number of Patterns**, and **Adjustment Value Spacing** for the **Horizontal Axis** and **Vertical Axis**.
If you want to check part of an image as the adjustment pattern, click the **Specify the Range of Images** button, select the range you want to check in the **Specify the Range of Images** dialog box, and then click the **OK** button.



4. Set **Rotate 90 degrees**, **Pattern Size**, **Pattern Spacing**, and **Pattern Background** as needed.

5. For the **Paper Source** setting, select how the paper to print on is to be supplied.

6. For the **Use Paper Size** setting, select the paper size to print on.

7 Click the **Print Adjustment Pattern** button.
The adjustment pattern starts printing.

8 Check the image in the adjustment pattern that is closest to the customer image and click the corresponding image in the preview area.

9 If there are any other items that you want to adjust, select **Adjustment Item** and perform steps 7 and 8.

10 Once you have made the necessary adjustments, select the **Update Base Values in the Color Settings Sheet** check box and click the **Close** button.
The previous adjustment values in the **Color Settings** sheet (color or monochrome) are updated.

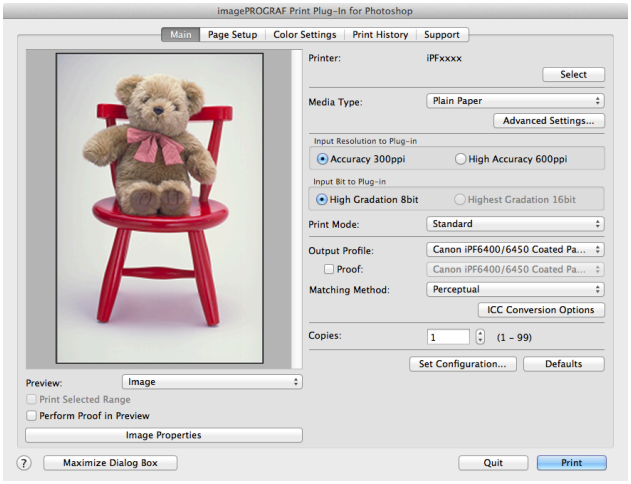
Perform Black Point Compensation

Black point compensation that is equivalent to Photoshop can be performed using the following procedure. Use this to avoid saturation in the black areas of images.

Important

- In order to make the black point compensation settings effective, close down and restart Photoshop or Digital Photo Professional.
- Adobe CMM needs to be installed in order to use black point compensation. Refer to "Using Adobe CMM" →P.467 for details on how to install Adobe CMM.

1 Display the **Main** sheet.

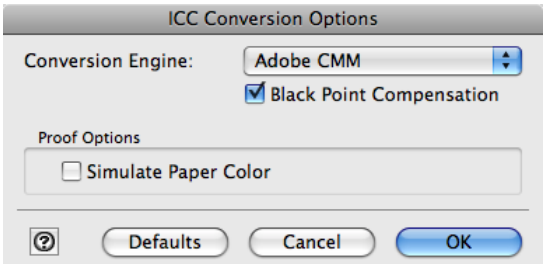


2 Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3 Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button to open the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

4 Select **Adobe CMM** as the **Conversion Engine**.

5 Check the **Black Point Compensation** check box.

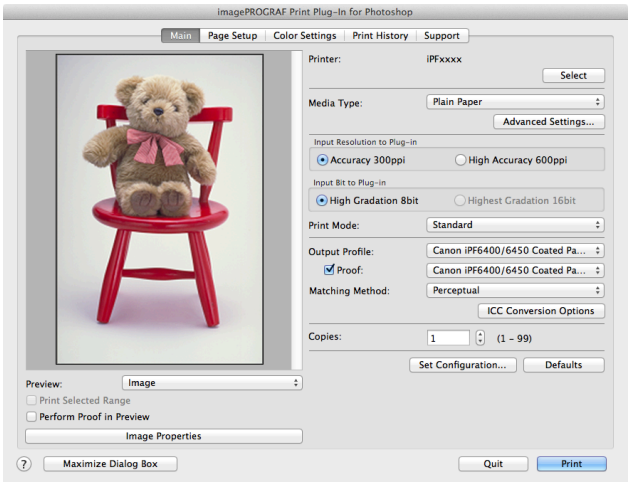


6 Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

Perform Printing Press Simulation Print

You can perform printing press simulation prints by specifying ICC profiles such as Japan Color or SWOP, and specifying an ICC profile for the printing press.

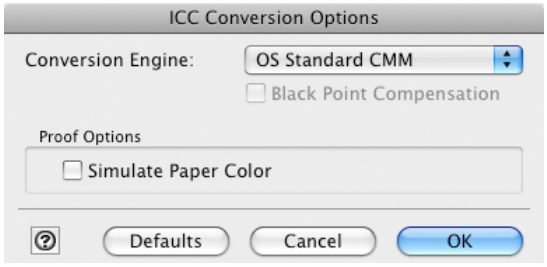
1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3 Check the **Proof** check box and select the profile for the printing press you want to target from the list on the right.

4 Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button to open the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.



5 Configure the **Proof Options** as needed.

Note
- The proof option is **Simulate Paper Color**.

6 Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

7 Click the **Print** button.
Printing begins.

Enlarge/Reduce and Print

You can enlarge or reduce an image in Print Plug-In.
Three methods to enlarge/reduce and print are as follows.

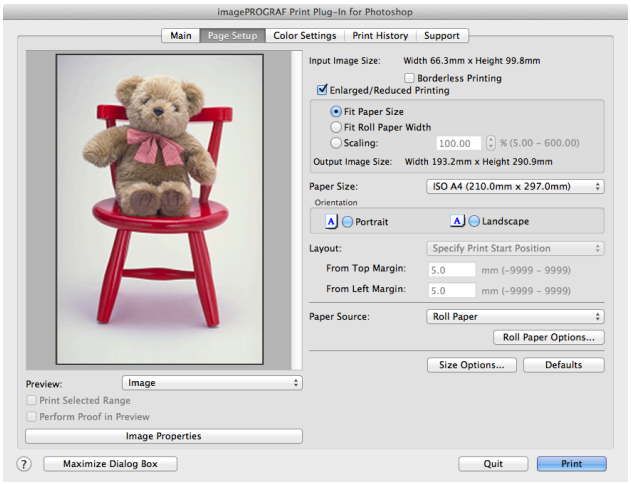
- **Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size** ➔P.472
- **Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper** ➔P.472
- **Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print** ➔P.474

Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size

By specifying the media type loaded in the printer, the image can be enlarged or reduced to fit the size of the image area of the media. This feature is useful when you need to print on the full width of Media that you have selected.

Note
- When you need to print on the full width of roll media, see "**Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper.**" ➔P.472
- When you do the procedure below to print on roll media, the print job will match the size of the output with the media selected with the **Paper Size** setting.

1 Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



2 Select the size of the media that you want to print in **Paper Size**.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
- This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width**is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

3 Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

Note
- When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
- When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

4 Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

5 Select **Fit Paper Size**.

6 Click the **Print** button.

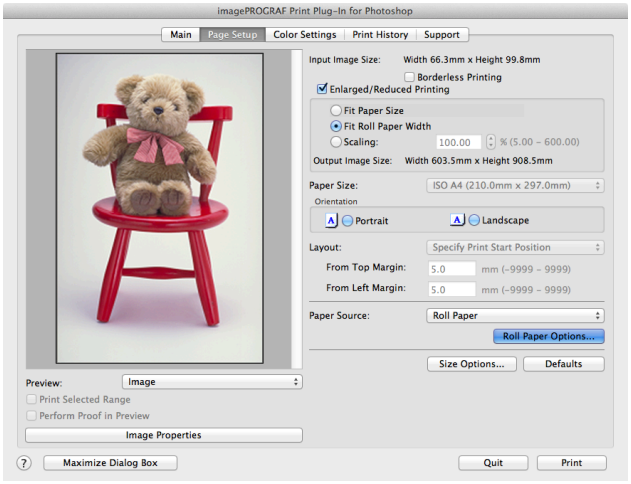
The image prints filling the entire output media surface.

Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper

You can enlarge/reduce and print an image matching the width of the roll paper set in the printer. This is useful when you wish to print an image that covers the entire width of the roll paper.

Note
- Printing will not occur properly when a print roll is not set to the printer.

1 Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



2 Select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

3 Click the **Roll Paper Options** button.

4 Set the roll paper options and click the **OK** button.

Note
- For more information about the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box, see "**Roll Paper Options Dialog Box.**" →P.454
- Click the **Defaults** button to return all of the roll paper option settings to their defaults.

5 Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

Note
- When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
- When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

6 Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

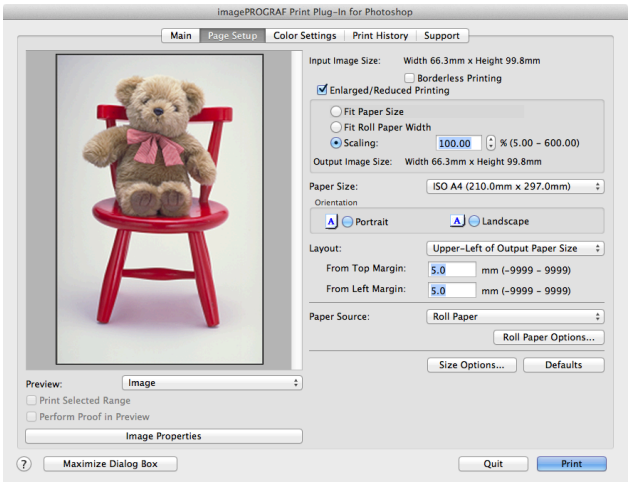
7 Select **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

8 Click the **Print** button.
The image prints covering the entire width of the roll paper.

Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print

You can specify scaling to enlarge/reduce an image and print. This is useful when you wish to print an image at a specific size.

1 Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



2 Select the size of the media that you want to print in **Paper Size**.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
- **Fit Roll Paper Width**is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

3 Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

Note
- When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
- When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

4 Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

5 Select **Scaling** and input the scaling factor or drag the four corners of the image in the Preview display.

Note
- You can specify scaling rate in intervals of 0.01%.
- You can specify a range between 5.00-600.00%.
- The size of the width and height proportionally grow when the image is enlarged/reduced.

6 Either drag the image on the **Print Area Layout** preview, or set the print position **Layout**.

7 Click the **Print** button.

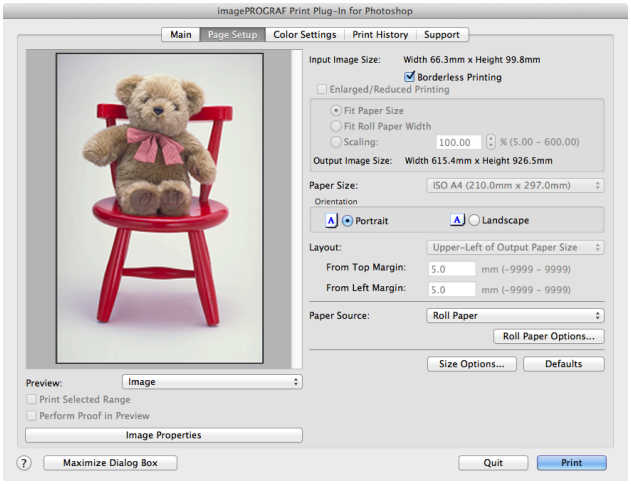
Printing begins at the set scaling rate.

Print with No Borders

You can use the borderless printing function to print without margins surrounding the image.

Note
- With some media borderless printing can be performed only between two edges.
- To use the borderless printing function, the specified media must be set to the printer.

1 Display the **Page Setup** sheet.

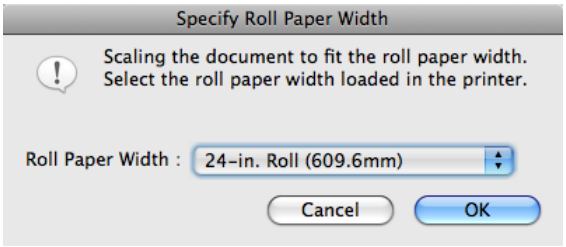


2 Select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

3 Click the **Borderless Printing** check box on.

Note

- Select the width for roll paper set in the printer in **Roll Paper Width** in the **Specify Roll Paper Width** dialog box, and click **OK**.



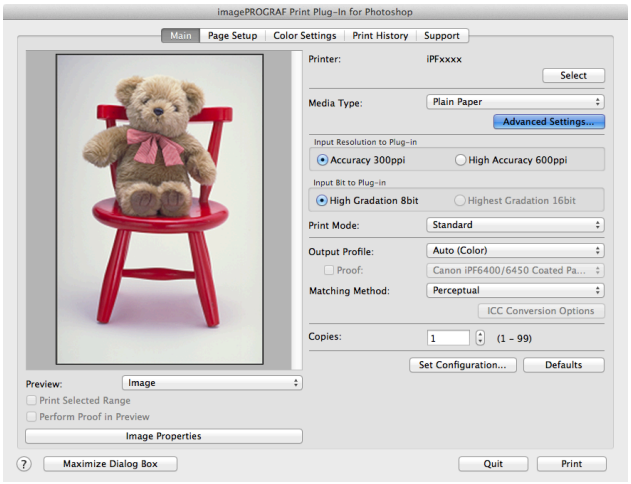
4 Click the **Print** button.

Borderless printing begins.

Customize Media Settings

You can customize media settings.

1 Display the **Main** sheet.



2 Select the media type that you wish to customize in **Media Type**.

Note
- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

3 Click the **Advanced Settings** button.

4 Perform the settings in the **Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box** ➔P.451 and click the **OK** button.

Utilize Print History

When you perform various settings and print in Print Plug-In, those settings are saved as print history. Also, you can export and import as files. You can store often-used print history under a specified name in print preferences.

Note
- You can save up to 200 print history items. All items over 200 are deleted in chronological order.

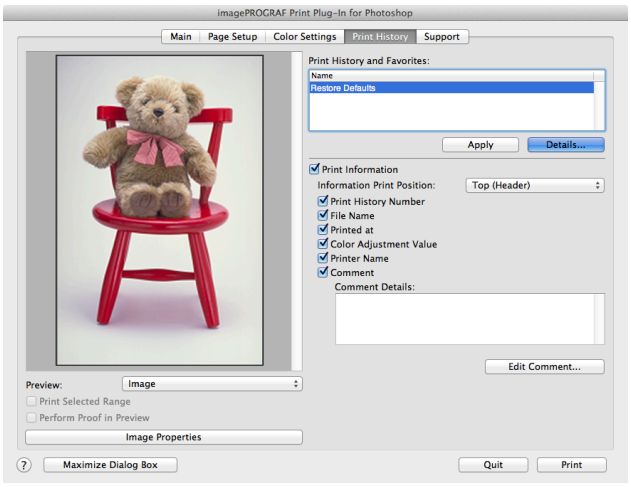
You can do the following things using print history.

- **Confirm Print History Details** ➔P.476
- **Apply Print History to an Image** ➔P.477
- **Store Print History to Print Preferences** ➔P.477
- **Delete Print History** ➔P.479
- **Export Print History from Print Preferences** ➔P.480
- **Import Print History to Print Preferences** ➔P.481
- **Delete Print History from Print Preferences** ➔P.483
- **Set Information to Print with Image** ➔P.484

Confirm Print History Details

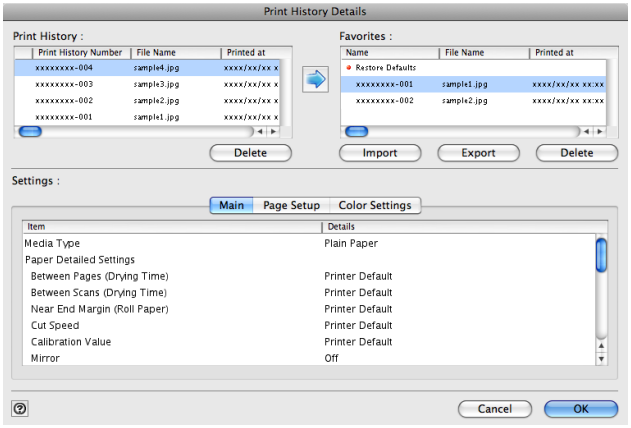
You can confirm the print history details.

1 Display **Print History** sheet.



2 Click the **Details** button.

Note
- Select the print history you wish to check the details of, from either **Print History** or **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box.



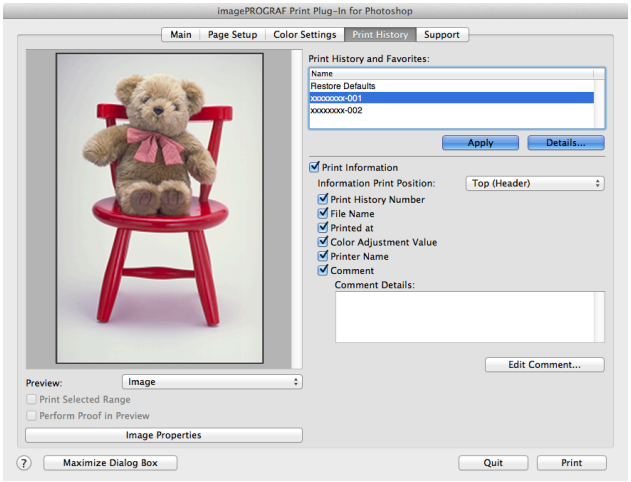
3 Check the print history details in **Settings**, and click the **OK** button.

Note
- You can display the print history details by switching the sheets.

Apply Print History to an Image

You can use previous print history, and apply it to an image.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.



2 If required, check the print history details. (See "**Confirm Print History Details.**") ➔P.476

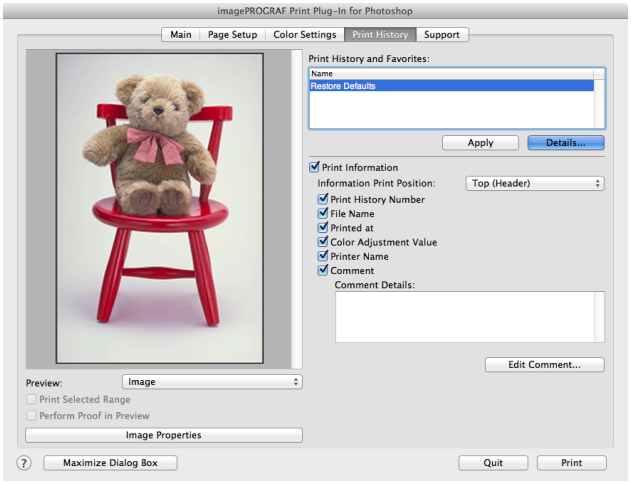
3 Select the print history you wish to apply from **Print History and Favorites**, and click the **Apply** button.

Store Print History to Print Preferences

You can store often-used print history to print preferences. Not only can you store the print history stored under a different name in print preferences, you can also find it with ease.

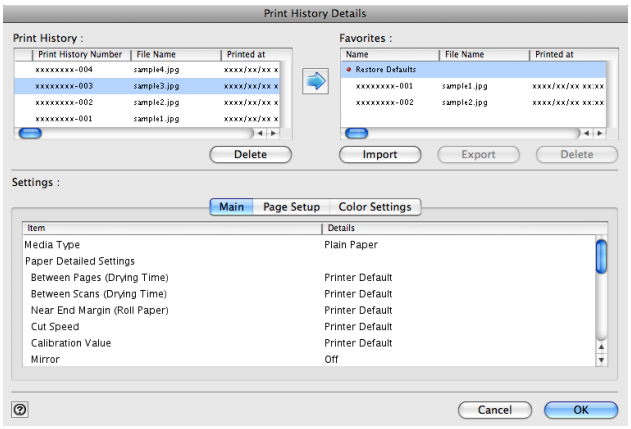
Note
- You can store up to 200 print history items to print preferences.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.

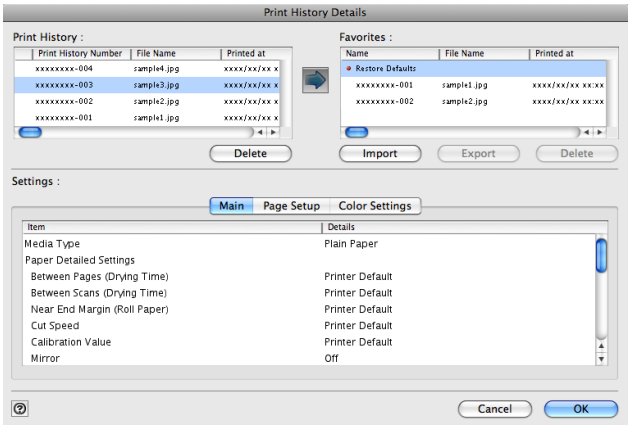


2 Click the **Details** button.

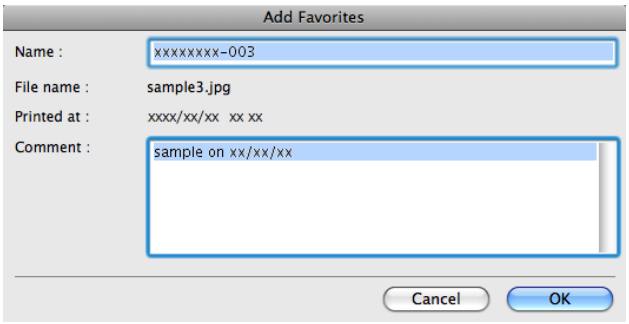
3 Select the print history you wish to store in print preferences from **Print History** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and check the print history details in **Settings**.



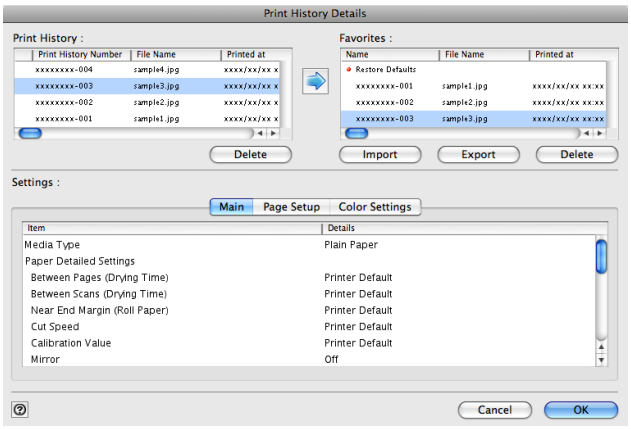
4 Select the print history you wish to store in print preferences from **Print History** and click the button.



5 In the **Add Favorites** dialog box input the name of the print history in **Name**, input a comment in **Comment**, and click the **OK** button.



6 Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



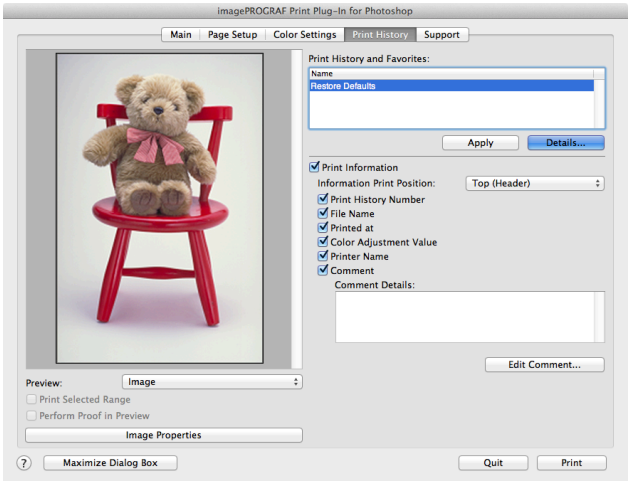
Delete Print History

You can delete print history.

Important

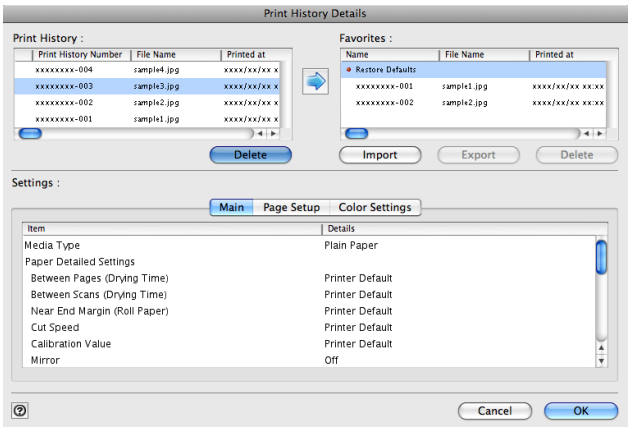
- Be aware that you cannot undo deletions of print history.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.

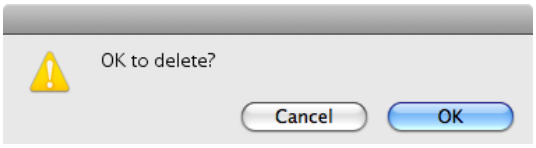


2 Click the **Details** button.

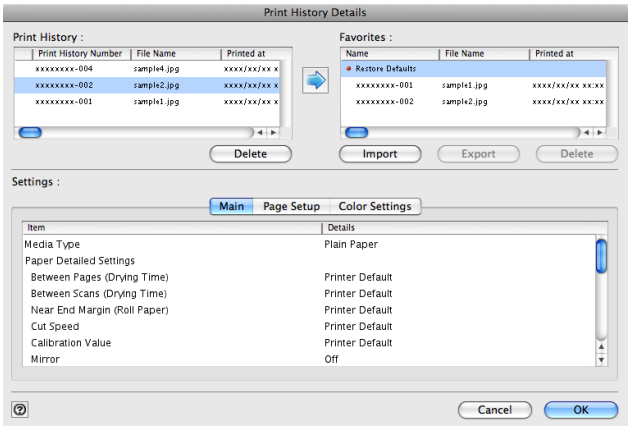
3 Select the print history you wish to delete from **Print History** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Delete** button.



4 Click the **OK** button.



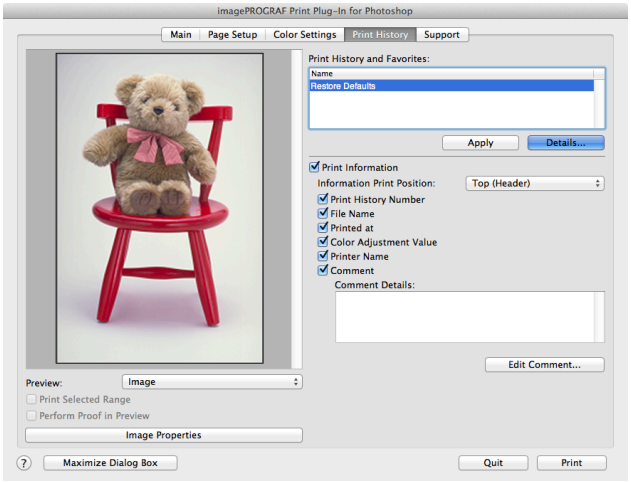
5 Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Export Print History from Print Preferences

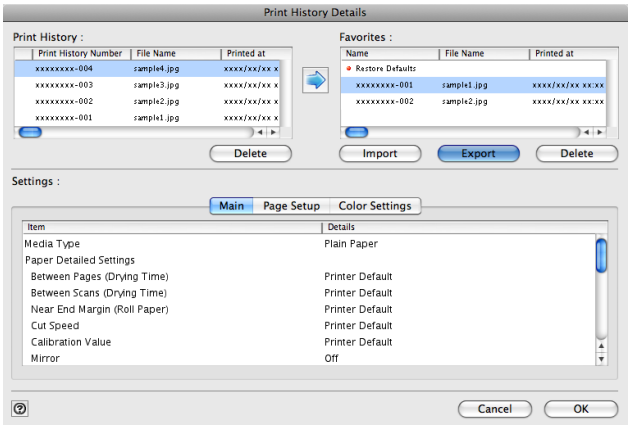
You can export print history stored in print preferences as a file.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.



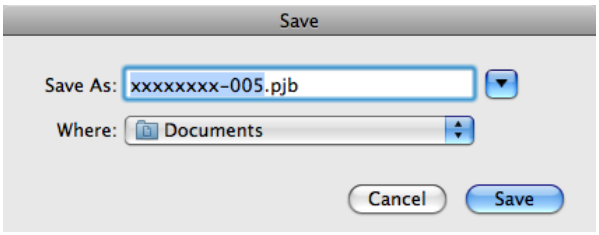
2 Click the **Details** button.

3 Select the print history you wish to export from **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Export** button.



4 Input the name of the print history in **Save As** in the **Save** dialog box, and click the **Save** button.

The print history is exported under the specified file name.

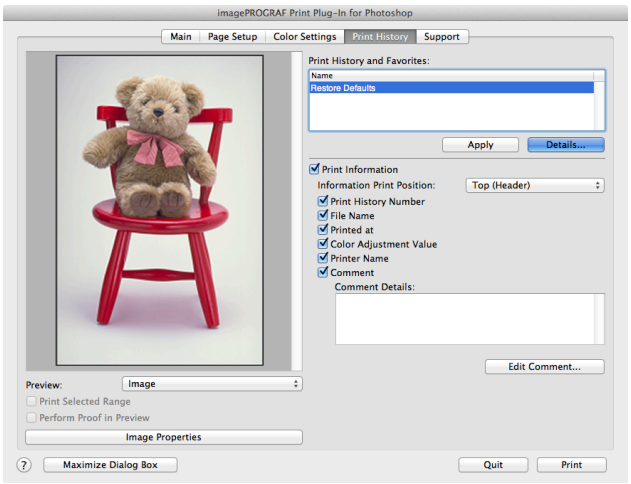


5 Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.

Import Print History to Print Preferences

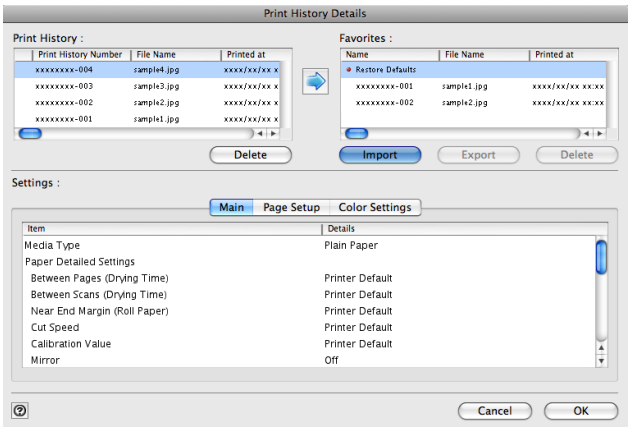
You can import print history in file format and store it to print preferences.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.



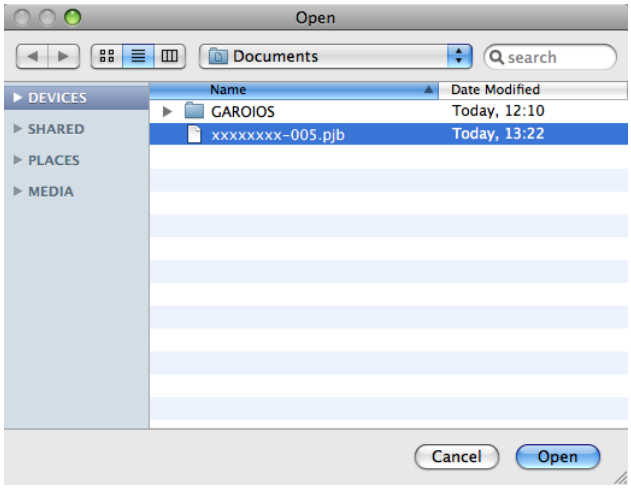
2 Click the **Details** button.

3 Click the **Import** button of the **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box.



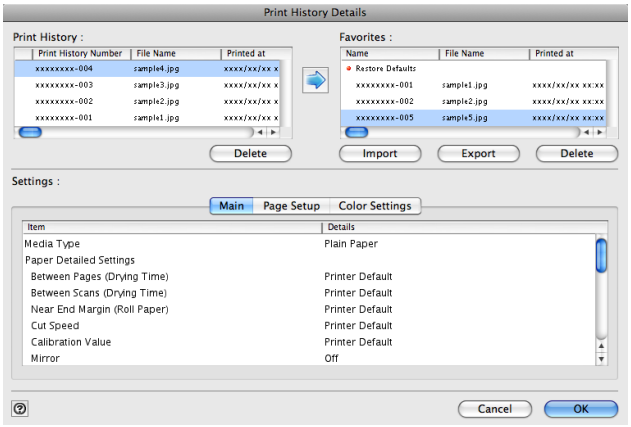
4 Select the print history you wish to import in the **Open** dialog box, and click the **Open** button.

The print history is imported.



Note
- The print history file name suffix is *.pjb/*.pjb2.
- You cannot import a print history file exported from a different OS in Print Plug-In.
- You cannot import a print history file exported from a different printer in Print Plug-In.

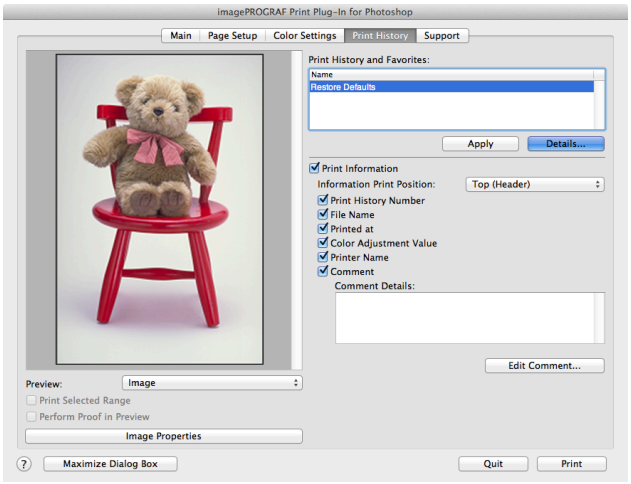
5 Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Delete Print History from Print Preferences

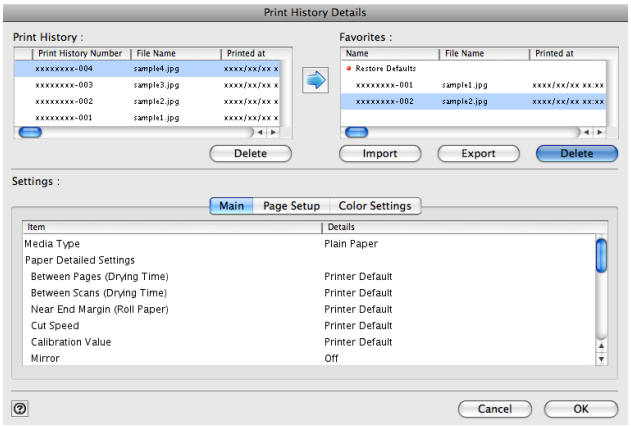
You can delete print history store to print preferences. You cannot store more than 200 print history items in print preferences.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.

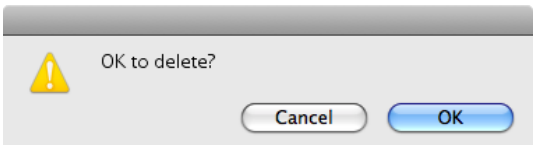


2 Click the **Details** button.

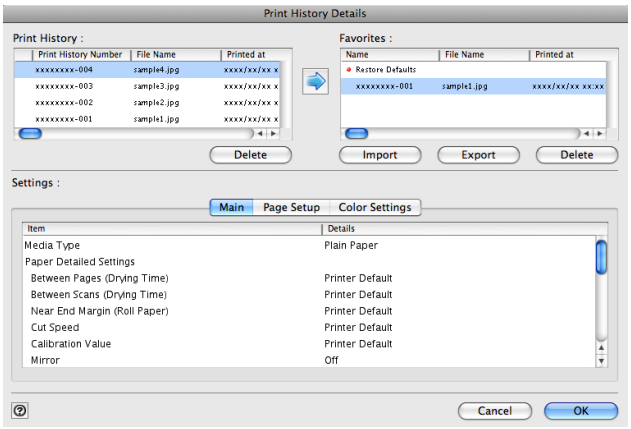
3 Select the print history you wish to delete from **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Delete** button.



4 Click the **OK** button.



5 Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



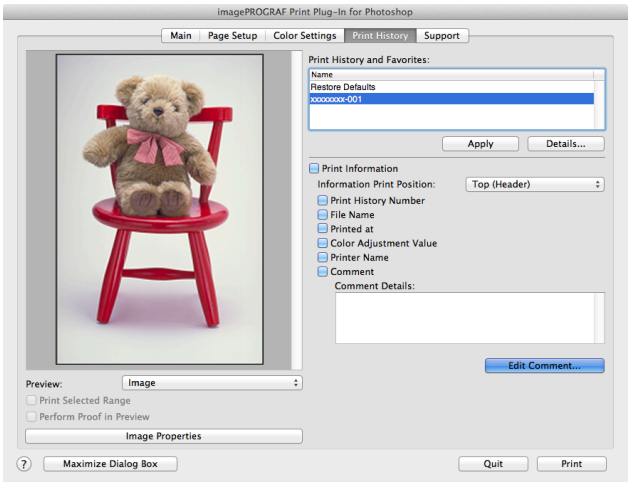
Set Information to Print with Image

You can print information with an image that is related, such as the file name and the time and date.

Note

- When you use the borderless printing function to print, the information will not be printed. (See "**Print with No Borders.**") ➔P.474
- When the printed information is too long as does not fit on the media, a break will appear in the printed information.
- The information may print on the image data with some media sizes, enlargement rates and print position values.
- When **Keep Media Size** is set to **On** on the printer, a portion of bottom of the print data is not printed.

1 Display the **Print History** sheet.



2 Click the **Print Information** check box on.

3 Select the position where you wish to print the information in **Information Print Position**.

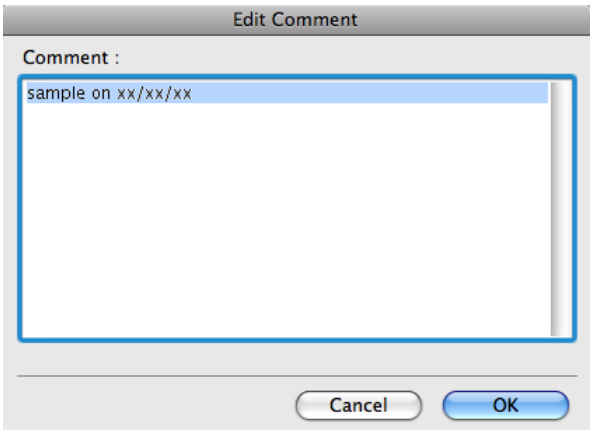
4 Click the information check box you wish to print on.

5 When you wish to edit the comment, click the **Edit Comment** button.

Note

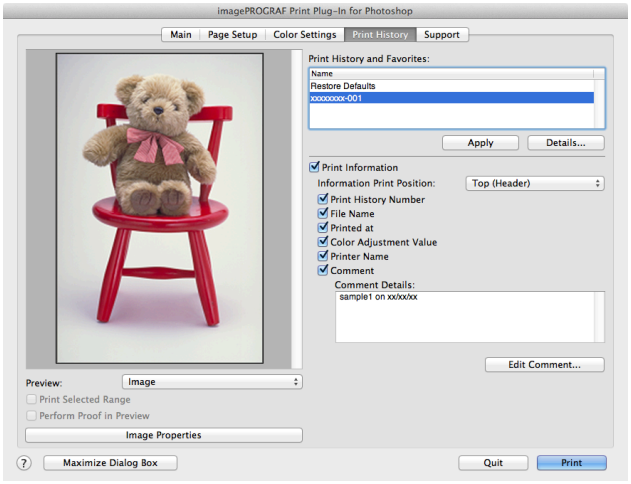
- When you do not wish to edit the comment, move to step 7.

6 Input the comment in the **Edit Comment** dialog box, and click **OK** button.



7 Click the **Print** button.

Comments are printed with images.

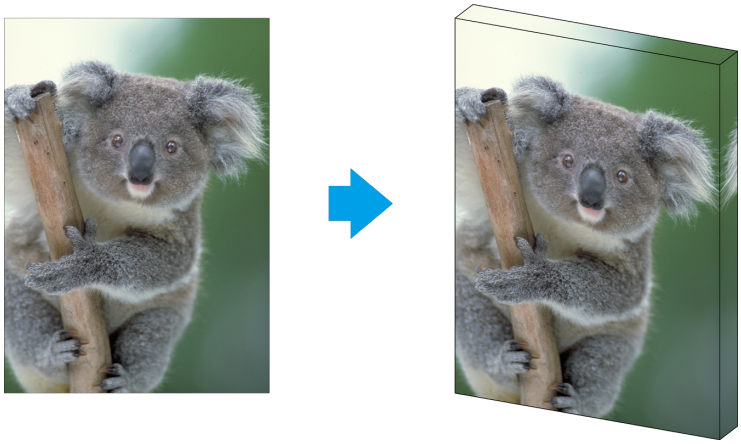


Layout Plug-In for Photoshop

About the Layout Plug-In 486
Layout Plug-In Main Window 486
Add Canvas Size dialog box 488
Creating and Printing a Layout Image for Mounting on a Frame 489

About the Layout Plug-In

When printing a photo to mount on a frame, you can start the Layout Plug-In from Photoshop and create a layout image where the image extends to the sides of the frame.

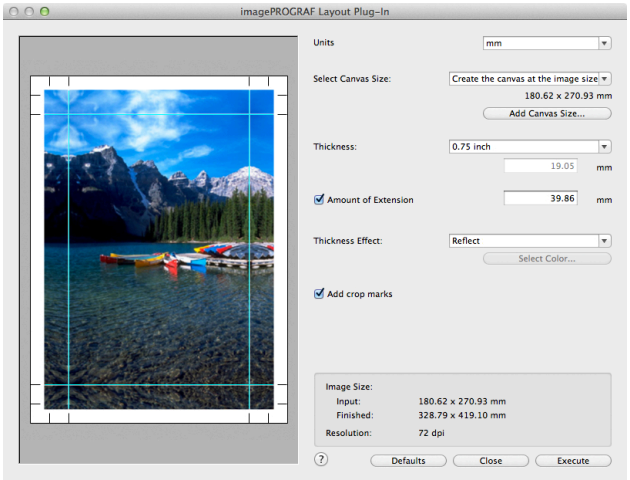


Note
- The Layout Plug-In can be used with Photoshop CS6, Photoshop CS5.1, and Photoshop CS5.
- Layout images created in the Layout Plug-In can be printed as-is from the Print Plug-In for Photoshop.

For details on the functionality of the Layout Plug-In, see **"Layout Plug-In Main Window."** ➔P.298
For details on how to start and how to use the Layout Plug-In, see **"Creating and Printing a Layout Image for Mounting on a Frame."** ➔P.301

Layout Plug-In Main Window

This window is for creating a layout image for finishing an image extended around the sides of the frame when printing a photo for mounting on a frame.
You can check the details of the settings in the preview area on the left side of the Layout Plug-In Main Window.



- **Units**

You can select the units from mm, inches, and pixels.

Important
- Since values entered in mm or inches are first converted temporarily to pixels and then reconverted to mm or inches, values may be displayed that differ from the entered values.

- **Select Canvas Size**

Selects the canvas size. If **Create the Canvas at the Image Size** is selected, the image size is treated as the canvas size. It is recommended that you provide a canvas that matches the image size.

- **Add Canvas Size** button

Click this button to display the **Add Canvas Size** dialog box and register a **Custom Canvas Size**. (See "**Add Canvas Size dialog box.**") ➔P.300

- **Thickness**

Specifies the thickness of the canvas (the width of the canvas sides). Although you can select from 0.75 inches (approx. 19 mm) and 1.5 inches (approx. 38 mm), you can also specify any arbitrary thickness.

Important
- Since values entered in mm or inches are first converted temporarily to pixels and then reconverted to mm or inches, values may be displayed that differ from the entered values.

- **Amount of Extension**

Selecting this check box allows you to configure the amount of extension that protrudes past the canvas sides. This allows you to prevent white paper from appearing on the canvas sides when mounted.

Important
- Since values entered in mm or inches are first converted temporarily to pixels and then reconverted to mm or inches, values may be displayed that differ from the entered values.

- **Thickness Effect**

You can select from the following canvas effects.

- **Image**
  Wraps the image to the canvas sides.
- **Soft Image**
  Performs Gaussian filtering on the image on the canvas sides.
- **Reflection**
  Reflects the image on the canvas sides.
- **Soft Reflection**
  Reflects the image on the canvas sides and performs Gaussian filtering.
- **White**
  Makes the canvas sides white.
- **Black**
  Makes the canvas sides black.
- **Custom Color**
  Makes the canvas sizes the specified color. The color is specified by clicking the **Select Color** button.

- **Add Crop Marks**

When this check box is selected, crop marks are printed at the outer edges of the image as guides to the positions to fold the paper when mounting on a canvas.

- Display Information

Displays the following information.

- **Input**
  Displays the original image size before creating the layout image.

- **Finished**
  Displays the image size of the entire layout image with the canvas sides, crop marks, and the amount of extension added to the input image size.
- **Resolution**
  Displays the resolution of the image. This is not changed from the resolution of the original image. If the image size is changed in the Layout Plug-In, the resolution is maintained the same as the original image, and resampling is performed using the Bicubic method.
  If you do not want the number of pixels in the image to change (resample), select **Create the Canvas at the Image Size** in **Select Canvas Size** and select an option other than **Image** and **Soft Image** in **Thickness Effect**.

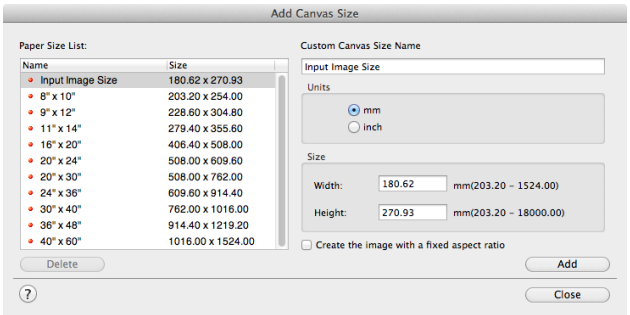
- **Defaults** button
  Click this button to reset the setting values.
- **Close** button
  When this button is clicked, the Layout Plug-In exits and the current setting values are saved. When the Layout Plug-In is started the next time, the setting values from the previous time are used.
- **Execute** button
  When this button is clicked, the Print Plug-In for Photoshop starts. To print the created layout image, click the **Print** button in the Print Plug-In for Photoshop main window.

Important
- When you close the Print Plug-In, the created layout image is discarded.

Note
- If the Print Plug-In for Photoshop for multiple different models is installed, a screen for selecting the model is displayed when you click the **Execute** button.
- When you close Print Plug-In for Photoshop main window after printing, the Layout Plug-In main window is displayed again.
- If the size of the layout image is larger than the paper size that can be printed by the printer, you should reduce the size of the layout image to the output paper size in advance before printing.

Add Canvas Size dialog box

This dialog box is displayed when you click the **Add Canvas Size** button in the Layout Plug-In main window. It allows you to register and delete arbitrary canvas sizes (custom canvas sizes).



Click the **Close** button to close the **Add Canvas Size** dialog box.

Adding a Canvas Size

1 Specify the units for the width and height of the canvas size you are adding in **Units**.

2 Enter the width and height of the canvas size you are adding in **Size**.
When you select a size displayed in the **Paper Size List**, the values are displayed in the **Width** and **Height** in the **Size** field. When **Input Image Size** is selected, the size of the input image is used as-is for the width and height of the canvas.
Selecting the **Create the Image with a Fixed Aspect Ratio** check box allows you to create a custom size at the same aspect ratio as the input image. For example, if you change the width, then the height also changes according to the aspect ratio of the input image.

3 Enter the name of the canvas size to add in **Custom Canvas Size Name**.

4 Click the **Add** button.

Deleting a Canvas Size

1 Select the **Custom Canvas Size Name** you want to delete from the **Paper Size List**.

2 Click the **Delete** button.

Note
- Sizes that have a red circle in the **Name** cannot be deleted.

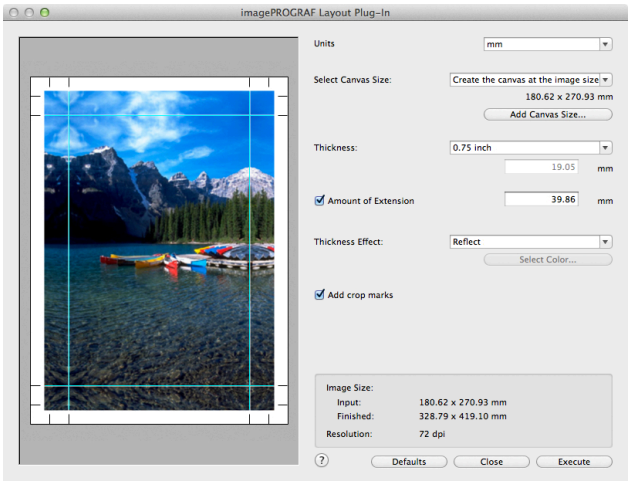
Creating and Printing a Layout Image for Mounting on a Frame

The procedure for creating and printing a layout image for mounting on a frame is as follows.

1 Start Photoshop.

2 Open the image to lay out and edit the image in Photoshop as needed.

3 Select **imagePROGRAF Layout Plug-In** from **Automate** in the Photoshop **File** menu.
Run the Layout Plug-In to display the Layout Plug-In Main Window.



Note
- The Layout Plug-In can handle images with a width and height of less than 60,000 pixels. For images with a width or height of 60,000 pixels or more, either reduce the selection range or reduce the image through image processing before performing step 3.

4 Select the canvas size that matches the frame for mounting the image and create a layout image by adding effects such as frame side effects.
For details, see "**Layout Plug-In Main Window**." →P.298

Important
- The created layout image cannot be modified in Photoshop.

5 Once you have finished creating the layout image, run the Print Plug-In for Photoshop and print on paper that is larger than the size of the layout image.

Important
- When you click the **Close** button to close the Layout Plug-In, the created layout image is discarded.

6 Mount the printed layout image on the frame.

Important
- Fully dry the printed paper before mounting it on the frame.
- Take care when mounting on the frame. The ink may peel off if you touch the printed surface.

Note
- As you fold the printed paper along the frame, the folded areas may crack and reveal the paper underneath, depending on the media type. You can prevent the folded areas from splitting to some degree by using commercially available inkjet protection spray or liquid laminating agent for inkjets before folding.

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343

Handling and Use of Paper

Paper 492
Handling rolls 503
Handling sheets 529
Output Stacker 542
Media Configuration Tool (Windows) 546
Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS) 577

Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

Paper

Types of Paper 492
Paper Sizes 492

Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper 494
Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper Using Existing Settings 495
Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper by Adding a Media Type 496

Displaying the Paper Reference Guide 496
Updating paper information 499

Types of Paper

The following types of paper are supported by the printer. For details on the paper supported by the printer, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

- Plain Paper
- Coated Paper
- Photo Paper
- Glossy Paper
- Proofing Paper
- CAD-dedicated Paper Etc.

The following content is described in the **Paper Reference Guide**.

- Types of paper
- Paper handling
- Paper product specifications
- Use precautions
- Setting of printer driver, control panel etc.

Note

- For more information on how to use paper that is not listed in the **Paper Reference Guide**,see "**Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper.**" ➔P.494

- **Paper Reference Guide** display method

  You can display the **Paper Reference Guide** from [imagePROGRAF Support Information]. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

- Method of Updating Supported Paper

  Photo Paper

  To use newly released paper, register the latest paper information on the printer with the Media Configuration Tool. (See "**Updating paper information.**") ➔P.499

Important

- To install the **Paper Reference Guide** and register paper types applicable to your region on your printer even when not using the printer driver, install the Media Configuration Tool.
  (See "**Media Configuration Tool (Windows).**") ➔P.546
  (See "**Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS).**") ➔P.577

Paper Sizes

Rolls

Rolls that meet the following conditions are supported.

- Outer diameter: Up to 150 mm (6 in)

- Inner diameter of paper core: 2 or 3 inches
- Printing side out

Roll Width	**Roll Paper Width** Setting in Printer Driver (*1)	Borderless Printing (*1)
609.6 mm (24.00 in)	**24-in. Roll (609.6mm)**	Yes
594.0 mm (23.39 in)	**ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)**	Yes (*2)
515.0 mm (20.28 in)	**JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)**	Yes
431.8 mm (17.00 in)	**17-in. Roll (431.8mm)**	Yes
420.0 mm (16.54 in)	**ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**	Yes (*2)
406.4 mm (16.00 in)	**16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**	Yes
355.6 mm (14.00 in)	**14-in. Roll (355.6mm)**	Yes
329.0 mm (12.95 in)	**A3+ Roll (329.0mm)**	No
300.0 mm (11.81 in)	**300mm Roll (300.0mm)**	No
297.0 mm (11.69 in)	**ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**	No
257.0 mm (10.12 in)	**JIS B4 Roll (257.0mm)**	Yes
254.0 mm (10.00 in)	**10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**	Yes
203.2 mm (8.00 in)	**8-in. Roll (203.2mm)**	No

*1: For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Types of Paper.**") →P.492

*2: Requires the Spacer for Borderless Printing.

Sheets

Sheets of the following sizes are supported.

Paper Sizes	Dimensions
ISO A1	594.0 × 841.0 mm (23.39 × 33.11 in)
ISO A2	420.0 × 594.0 mm (16.54 × 23.39 in)
ISO A2+(*1)	431.8 × 609.6 mm (17.00 × 24.00 in)
ISO A3(*1)	297.0 × 420.0 mm (11.69 × 16.54 in)
ISO A3+(*1)	329.0 × 483.0 mm (12.95 × 19.02 in)
ISO A4(*1)	210.0 × 297.0 mm (8.27 × 11.69 in)
ISO B2	500.0 × 707.0 mm (19.69 × 27.83 in)
ISO B3(*1)	353.0 × 500.0 mm (13.90 × 19.69 in)
ISO B4(*1)	250.0 × 353.0 mm (9.84 × 13.90 in)
JIS B2	515.0 × 728.0 mm (20.28 × 28.66 in)
JIS B3(*1)	364.0 × 515.0 mm (14.33 × 20.28 in)
JIS B4(*1)	257.0 × 364.0 mm (10.12 × 14.33 in)
22"x34"(ANSI D)	558.8 × 863.6 mm (22.00 × 34.00 in)
17"x22"(ANSI C)	431.8 × 558.8 mm (17.00 × 22.00 in)
11"x17"(Ledger)(*1)	279.4 × 431.8 mm (11.00 × 17.00 in)
13"x19"(Super B)(*1)	330.2 × 482.6 mm (13.00 × 19.00 in)
Letter(8.5"x11")(*1)	215.9 × 279.4 mm (8.50 × 11.00 in)
Legal(8.5"x14")(*1)	215.9 × 355.6 mm (8.50 × 14.00 in)
24"x36"(ARCH D)	609.6 × 914.4 mm (24.00 × 36.00 in)
18"x24"(ARCH C)	457.2 × 609.6 mm (18.00 × 24.00 in)
12"x18"(ARCH B)(*1)	304.8 × 457.2 mm (12.00 × 18.00 in)

Paper Sizes		Dimensions
9"x12"(ARCH A)(*1)		228.6 × 304.8 mm (9.00 × 12.00 in)
DIN C2		458.0 × 648.0 mm (18.03 × 25.51 in)
DIN C3(*1)		324.0 × 458.0 mm (12.76 × 18.03 in)
DIN C4(*1)		229.0 × 324.0 mm (9.02 × 12.76 in)
20"x24"		508.0 × 609.6 mm (20.00 × 24.00 in)
18"x22"		457.2 × 558.8 mm (18.00 × 22.00 in)
14"x17"(*1)		355.6 × 431.8 mm (14.00 × 17.00 in)
12"x16"(*1)		304.8 × 406.4 mm (12.00 × 16.00 in)
10"x12"(*1)		254.0 × 304.8 mm (10.00 × 12.00 in)
10"x15"(*1)		254.0 × 381.0 mm (10.00 × 15.00 in)
US Photo 16"x20"(*1)		406.4 × 508.0 mm (16.00 × 20.00 in)
Poster 20"x30"		508.0 × 762.0 mm (20.00 × 30.00 in)
13"x22"		329.0 × 558.0 mm (12.95 × 21.97 in)
Poster 300x900mm(*1)		300.0 × 900.0 mm (11.81 × 35.43 in)
Custom Paper Size	Top Paper Feed Slot	203.2 × 279.0 mm (8.00 × 10.98 in) to 610.0 × 1600.0 mm (24.02 × 62.99 in)
	Front Paper Feed Slot (When the Spectrophotometer Unit is not mounted)	250.0 × 350.0 mm (9.84 × 13.78 in) to 610.0 × 914.0 mm (24.02 × 35.98 in)
	Front Paper Feed Slot (When the Spectrophotometer Unit is mounted)	250.0 × 420.0 mm (9.84 × 16.54 in) to 610.0 × 914.0 mm (24.02 × 35.98 in)

*1: The Front Paper Feed Slot cannot be used.

Note
- For details on non-standard paper sizes, see "**Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes.**" ➔P.105
- Borderless printing is not supported on sheets.

Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper

When using this printer to print on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper, use paper that meets the following conditions.

Note
- Refer to **Paper Reference Guide** for details on genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

- Paper where the size is described in "Paper Sizes" (See "**Paper Sizes.**") ➔P.492
- Paper where the thickness is described in "Paper Thickness" in "Specifications" (See "**Specifications.**") ➔P.1000
- Paper where bleeding and ink overflow does not occur when printing
- Paper that does not warp severely when loading the paper or printing

Important
- If you use paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper, Canon provides absolutely no guarantees regarding print quality or paper feed properties. Refer to **Paper Reference Guide** for details on genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

After loading the paper in the printer, select the media type in the control panel and printer driver and then perform the printing. For the media type, you can select easily from existing settings or you can create and use settings for the paper you are using.

Printing Using Existing Settings

You can print easily by selecting from existing settings provided in the printer control panel and printer driver. (See **"Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper Using Existing Settings."**) ➔P.495

Printing Using Additional Settings

You can print by using the **Add Custom Paper** function in the Media Configuration Tool to create settings suitable for the paper other than genuine paper and feed confirmed paper you are using and adding these settings as a new media type to the printer control panel and printer driver. (See **"Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper by Adding a Media Type."**) ➔P.496

Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper Using Existing Settings

You can easily print on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper without making complicated settings by selecting existing settings provided in the printer control panel and printer driver depending on the media type you are using. The existing settings consist of general-purpose paper settings provided for each media type and special settings that allow you to select the amount of ink to use.

Important

- The genuine Canon paper settings provided in the printer control panel and printer driver are optimized for genuine Canon paper. If these settings are selected for printing on paper other than genuine Canon paper, the ink may bleed or the printhead may rub against the paper. In order to easily print on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper, we recommend that you select one of the following general-purpose paper settings or special settings.

Note

- For an overview of the media types, see **"Types of Paper."** ➔P.492
- For details on how to select the media type in the control panel and printer driver, see **"Types of Paper."** ➔P.492

Choosing General-Purpose Paper Settings

Since these settings anticipate a wide variety of paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper, these settings will make it difficult for bleeding ink and the printhead rubbing to occur. Refer to the following table for the relationships between the conditions of the paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper and the media type to select.

Type	Approximate weight	Approximate thickness	Printer control panel	Printer driver
Plain Paper	70 g/m²	0.09 mm (0.0035 in.)	**Plain Paper**	**Plain Paper**
Coated Paper	90 g/m²	0.13 mm (0.0051 in.)	**LW. Coated Paper**	**Lightweight Coated Paper**
Coated Paper	170 g/m²	0.22 mm (0.0087 in.)	**HW. Coated Paper**	**Heavyweight Coated Paper**
Photo Paper	180 g/m²	0.18 mm (0.0071 in.)	**LW. Photo Paper**	**Lightweight Photo Paper**
Photo Paper	260 g/m²	0.26 mm (0.010 in.)	**HW. Photo Paper**	**Heavyweight Photo Paper**
Proof	80 g/m²	0.10 mm (0.0039 in.)	**News Proof**	**Newsprint for Proofing**
Art Paper	65 g/m²	0.15 mm (0.0059 in.)	**JPN Paper Washi**	**Japanese Paper Washi**
Art Paper	200 g/m²	0.35 mm (0.014 in.)	**HW. Art Paper**	**Heavyweight Art Paper**
Art Paper	300 g/m²	0.44 mm (0.017 in.)	**Ex HW. Art Paper**	**Extra Heavyweight Art Paper**
Sign/CAD Paper	470 g/m²	0.35 mm (0.014 in.)	**Bannr Vinyl**	**Banner Vinyl**
Sign/CAD Paper	300 g/m²	0.28 mm (0.011 in.)	**Adhesive Vinyl**	**Adhesive Vinyl**
Sign/CAD Paper	240 g/m²	0.18 mm (0.0071 in.)	**Glossy Film**	**Glossy Film**
Sign/CAD Paper	150 g/m²	0.11 mm (0.0043 in.)	**CAD Clear Film**	**CAD Clear Film**

Selecting Special Settings

Special settings are provided that allow you to select the amount of ink used in steps. You can fix lackluster colors or bleeding ink by selecting special settings where the amount of ink used is suitable for the paper you are using. The special settings are organized as follows so that they can be used as follows depending on the type of black ink and the media type.

Type of special settings	Type of black ink	Example of applicable paper
"Special 1" to "Special 5"	BK (photo black)	Glossy paper, proofing paper
"Special 6" to "Special 10"	MBK (matte black)	Coated Paper, Matte Paper, Art Paper

"Special 1" and "Special 6" use the least amount of ink, with the amount of ink used increasing through 5 steps as the number increases up to "Special 5" and "Special 10" which use the greatest amount of ink. Although colors become more vivid as the amount of ink used increases, bleeding also occurs more easily. We recommend that you try in order starting from "Special 1" or "Special 6" while checking the state of the printing.

Note

- If you cannot obtain sufficiently good image quality by selecting the general-purpose settings or special settings, you can create settings as suitable for the paper you are using by using the "Add Custom Paper" function in the Media Configuration Tool. For details, see "**Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper by Adding a Media Type.**" ➔P.496

Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper by Adding a Media Type

The **Add Custom Paper** function in the Media Configuration Tool is provided as a method for improving print quality and feed properties over printing paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper using the general-purpose settings. This can be expected to improve properties such as print quality because it allows you to configure settings such as the maximum amount of ink to use and the height of the printhead depending on the characteristics of the paper you are using. Furthermore, printing can be performed by adding the settings created using this function to the printer control panel and printer driver as a new media type.
For details on Media Configuration Tool, refer as follows.

- **Media Configuration Tool (Windows)** ➔P.546
- **Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)** ➔P.577

Important

- For details on how to select the added media type in the control panel, see "**Changing the Type of Paper.**" ➔P.508
- For details on how to select the media type in the printer driver, refer to the following topics.
  Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) ➔P.160
  Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS) ➔P.345
- We recommend that you use an ICC profile created using commercially available profile creation software in order to perform color management accurately on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper. The created ICC profile can be registered to the printer driver and printed. For details, see "**Matching Sheet (Windows).**" ➔P.175

Displaying the Paper Reference Guide

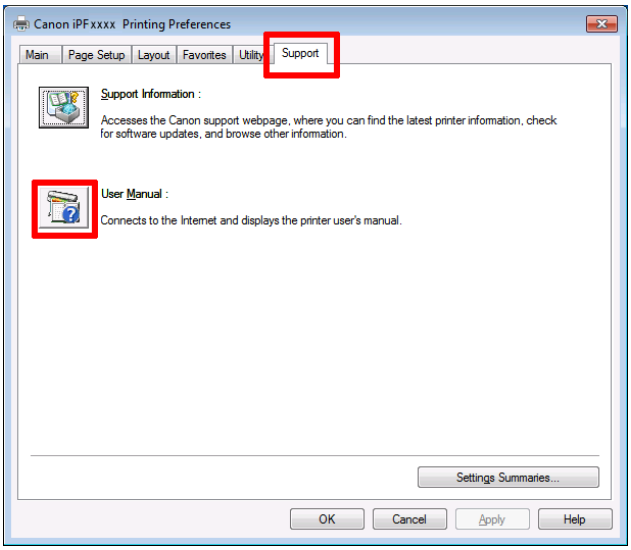
The **Paper Reference Guide** are not included. To view, display the **Paper Reference Guide** on the website from the links in the installed software. An Internet connection is required in order to view them.

- Windows

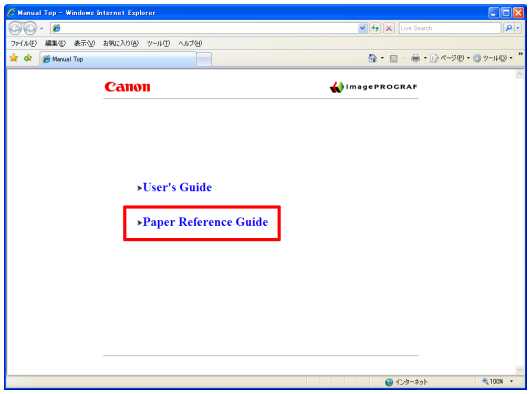
The basic instructions for displaying the **Paper Reference Guide** from the printer driver are as follows.

1. Open the printer driver.
   (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows).**") ➔P.165
   (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows).**") ➔P.167

2. Select the **Support** sheet and click the **User Manual** button.



3. Click **Paper Reference Guide**.



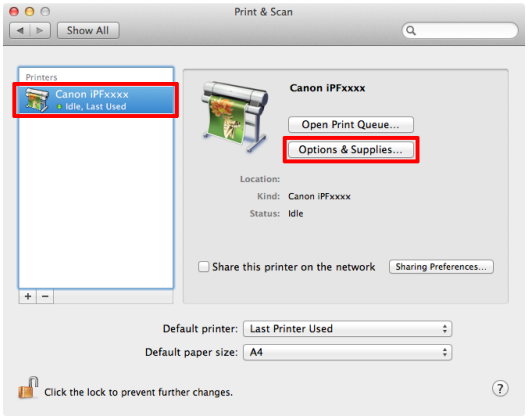
- Mac OS

The basic instructions for displaying the **Paper Reference Guide** from the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor are as follows.

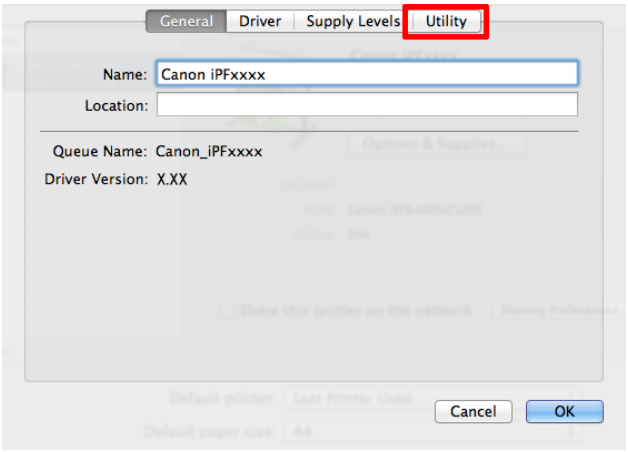
1. Click the **System Preferences** icon in the **Dock**.

2. Click **Print & Scan** (or **Print & Fax**).

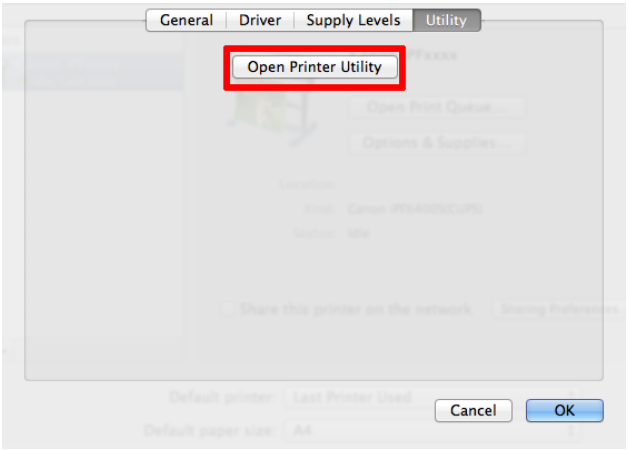
3. Select the printer from the list of printers and click **Options & Supplies**.



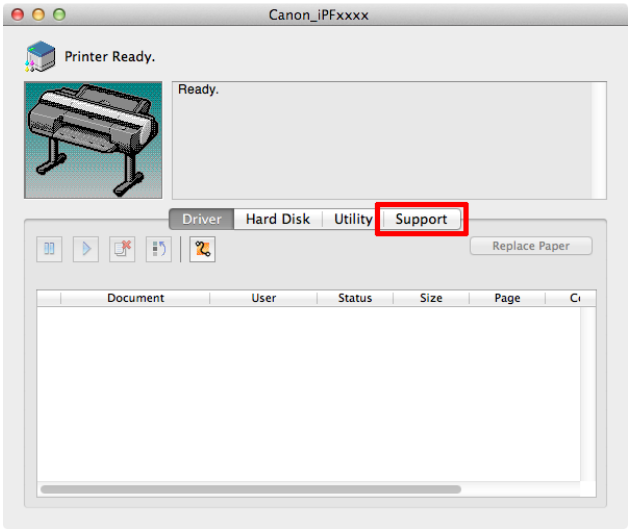
4. Click **Utility**.



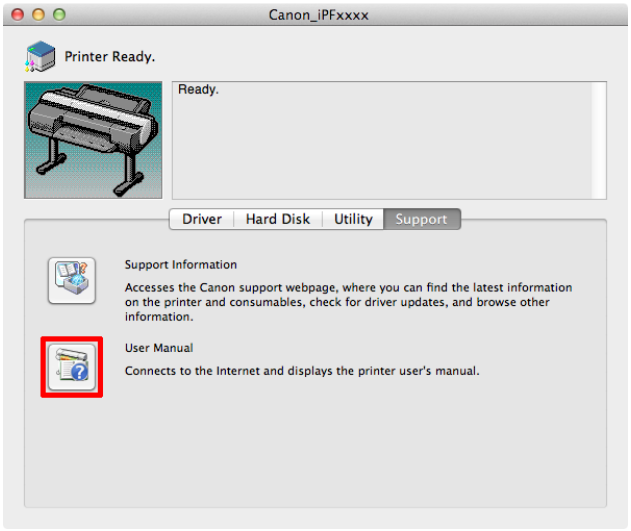
5. Click **Open Printer Utility**.



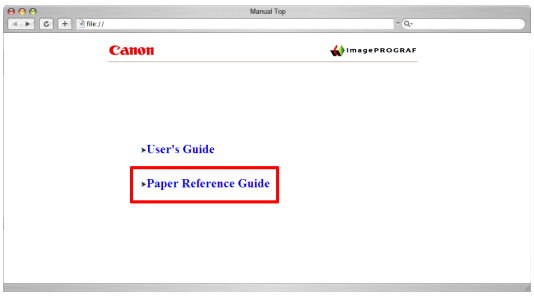
6. Click **Support**.



7. Click the **User Manual** button.



8. Click **Paper Reference Guide**.



Updating paper information

As for paper information of the printer Control Panel and printer driver, you can update it to the latest information by downloading and installing the latest version of **Media Information File** from the imagePROGRAF website.
The latest **Media Information File** can be downloaded by accessing the imagePROGRAF website from the links in the software installed on your computer. Contact your Canon dealer if you are unable to download it.
For details on **Media Information File** (Media Information File), refer as follows.

- **Media Configuration Tool (Windows)** ➔P.546
- **Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)** ➔P.577

Important

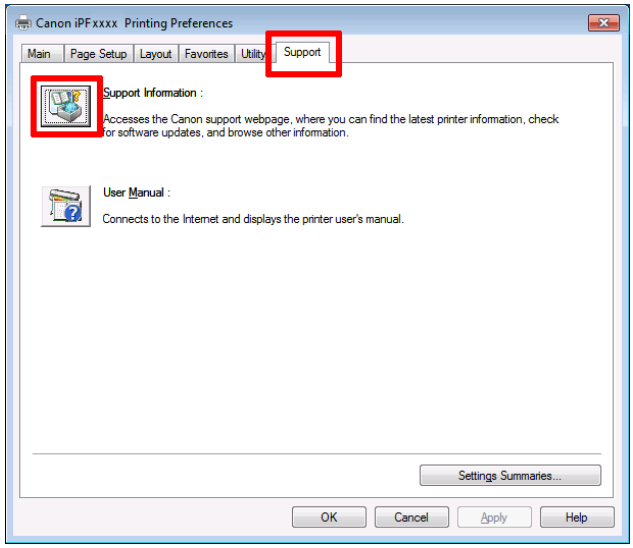
- When your version of Media Configuration Tool is older than the version released on the imagePROGRAF website, download and install the latest version of Media Configuration Tool before installing **Media Information File**. If you do not install the latest version of Media Configuration Tool before installing **Media Information File**, the latest paper information cannot be updated.

• Windows

The basic instructions for accessing the dedicated website from the printer driver are as follows.

1. Open the printer driver.
   (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows).**") ➔P.165
   (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows).**") ➔P.167
2. Select the **Support** sheet and click the **Support Information** button.

   The default browser on your computer is started and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.



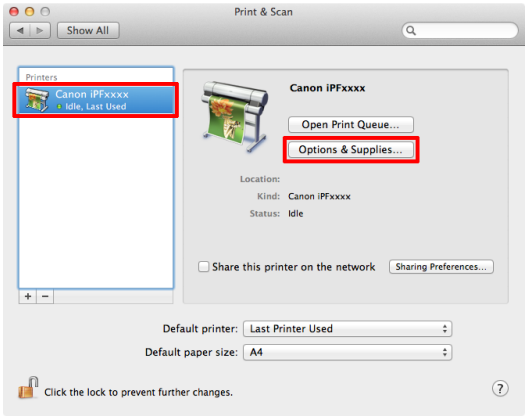
• Mac OS

The basic instructions for accessing the dedicated website from the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor are as follows.

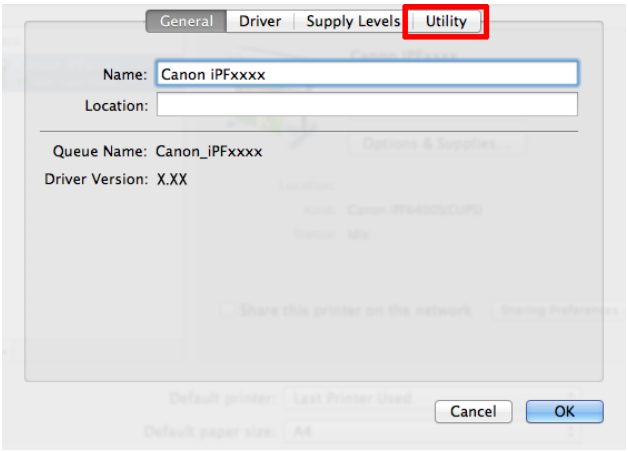
1. Click the **System Preferences** icon in the **Dock**.

2. Click **Print & Scan** (or **Print & Fax**).

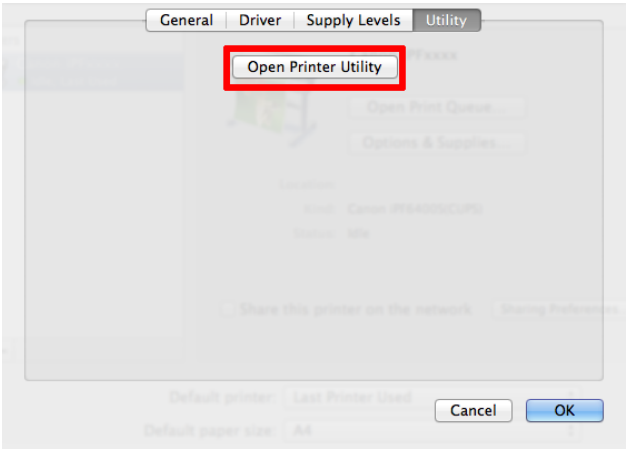
3. Select the printer from the list of printers and click **Options & Supplies**.



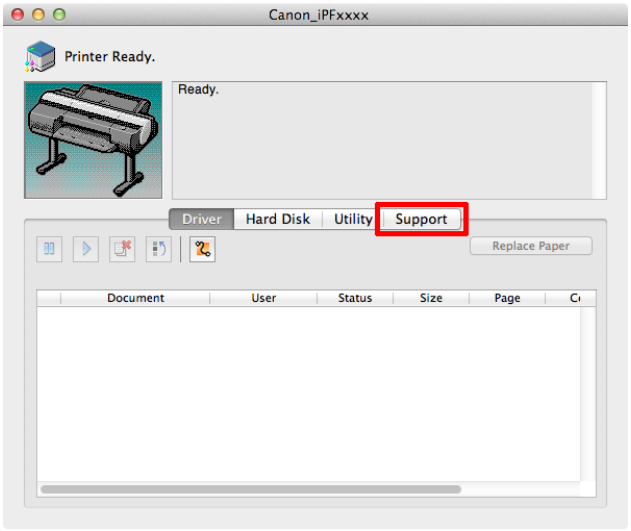
4. Click **Utility**.



5. Click **Open Printer Utility**.

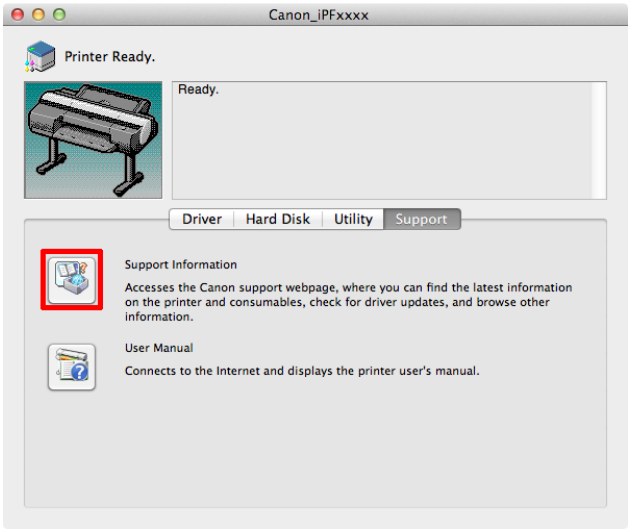


6. Click **Support**.



7. Click the **Support Information** button.

   The default browser on your computer is started and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.



Handling rolls

Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder 503
Loading Rolls in the Printer 505

Changing the Type of Paper 508
Specifying the Paper Length 509

Removing the Roll from the Printer 510
Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder 512

➔ Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 942
➔ Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot) 948

Feeding Roll Paper Manually 513
Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left 514
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls 514

Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls 516
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically 522
Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls 524

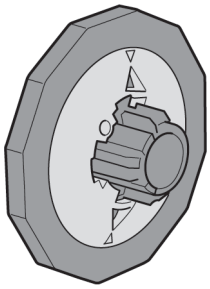
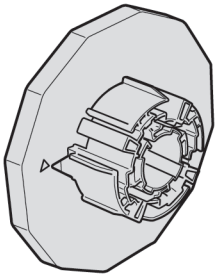
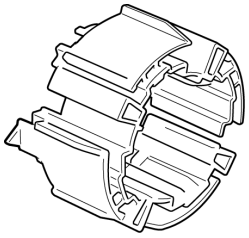
Roll Holder Set 524

Removing the Roll Feed Unit 525
Installing the Roll Feed Unit 526

Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually 527

Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder

When printing on rolls, attach the Roll Holder to the roll.
Rolls have a two- or three-inch paper core. Use the correct Holder Stopper and attachment for the paper core.
For borderless printing on A1 (594 mm) or A2 (420 mm) rolls, attach the included Spacer for Borderless Printing to the Roll Holder.

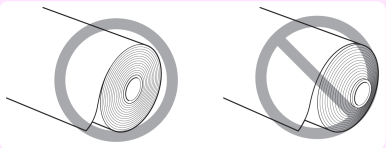
Using Rolls with a 2-inch Paper Core		Using Rolls with a 3-inch Paper Core	
Holder Stopper	Roll Holder Side	Holder Stopper	Roll Holder Side
For 2-inch paper cores 	No Attachment Needed	For 3-inch paper cores 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment 

Caution

- Set the roll on a table or other flat surface so that it does not roll or fall. Rolls are heavy, and dropping a roll may cause injury.

Important

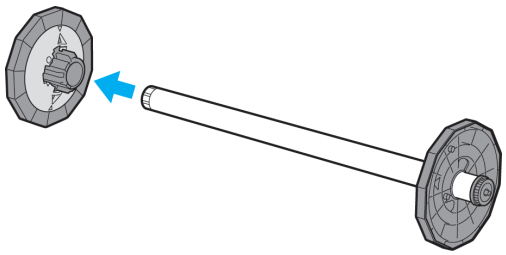
- When handling the roll, be careful not to soil the printing surface. This may affect the printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
- Use scissors or a cutting tool to cut the edge of the roll paper if it is uneven, dirty, or has tape residue. Otherwise, it may cause feeding problems and affect the printing quality. Be careful not to cut through any barcodes printed on the roll.
- Align the edges of the paper on both ends of the roll. Otherwise, it may cause feeding problems.



Note

- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see **Paper Sizes** or the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Paper Sizes.**") →P.492 (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") →P.496
- To view instructions as you attach the Roll Holder, press the **Navigate** button. (See "**How to View Instructions with Navigate.**") →P.619

1 Remove the Holder Stopper from the Roll Holder.



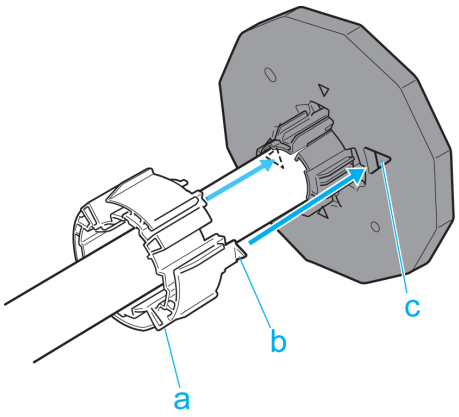
2 Insert the attachments for the roll paper on the Roll Holder.

- Using rolls with a 3-inch paper core

Attach the included 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the Roll Holder.

Align the triangular part (b) of the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment (a) with the triangular part (c) of the Roll Holder as shown, and insert the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment into the Roll Holder.

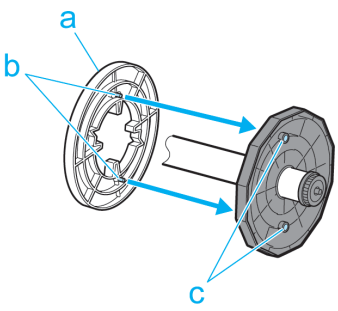
Use the Holder Stopper for 3-inch paper cores.



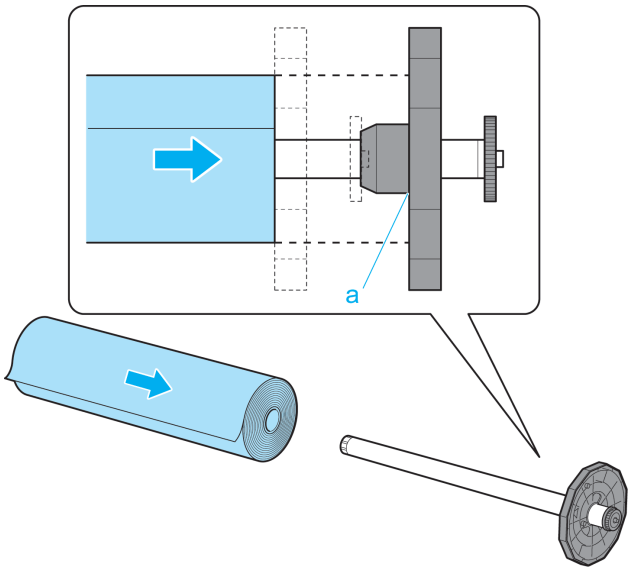
- Borderless printing on A1 or A2 rolls

Attach the included Spacer for Borderless Printing to the Roll Holder.

Insert the protrusions (b) of the Spacer for Borderless Printing (a) into the holes (c) of the Roll Holder, as shown.



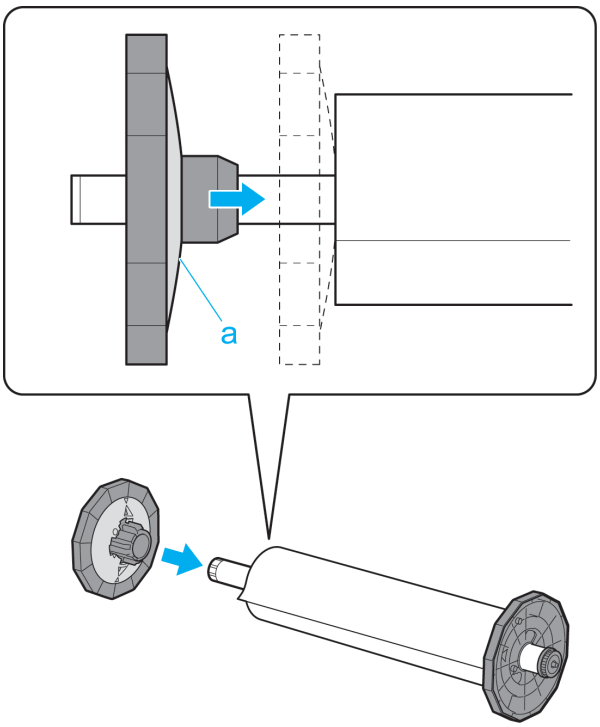
3 With the Roll Holder resting horizontally and the edge of the roll paper facing forward as shown, insert the roll in the Roll Holder from the left. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange (a) of the Roll Holder, leaving no gap.



Important

- Always have the Roll Holder resting horizontally when loading rolls. Attempting to load rolls with the Roll Holder upright may damage the Roll Holder.

4 Insert the Holder Stopper from the left in the Roll Holder as shown. Push it firmly in until the flange (a) of the Holder Stopper touches the roll.
Attach the appropriate Holder Stopper for the size of the paper core.



Loading Rolls in the Printer

Follow these steps to load rolls in the printer.

Important

- Always load rolls when the printer is on. If the printer is off when you load a roll, the paper may not be advanced correctly when you turn the printer on.
- Before loading a roll, confirm whether the inside of the Top Cover or the Ejection Guide is soiled. If soiled, we recommend cleaning in advance. (See "**Cleaning Inside the Top Cover**.") →P.907

Note

- The loading method for a printer with a Spectrophotometer Unit (option) is the same as for a printer with no Spectrophotometer Unit (option). If it is difficult to perform operations from the front of the printer, lower the Up-down Unit. (See "**Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually.**") ➔P.527

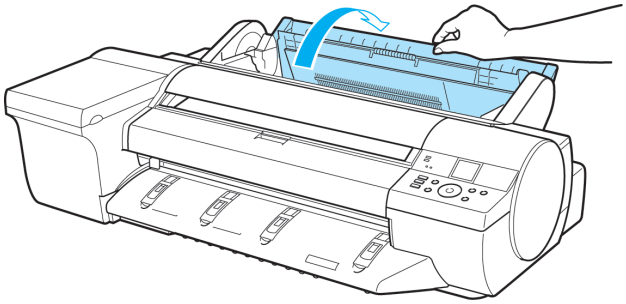
1 Press the **Load** button.

2 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.

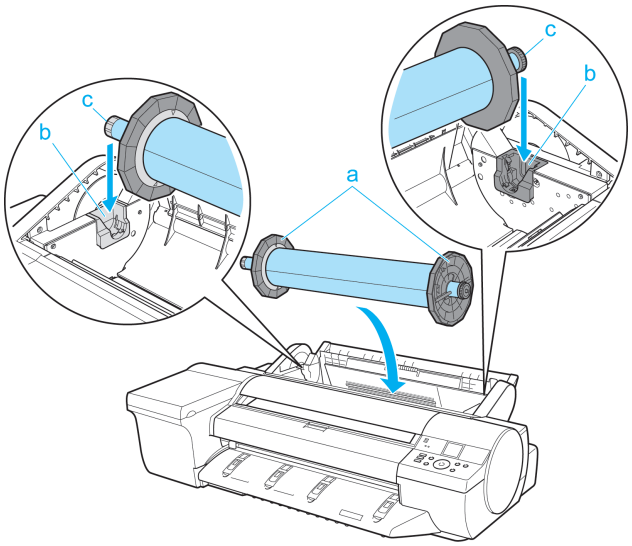
Note

- If any paper has been advanced that will not be used, a message is shown requesting you to remove it. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button. Remove the paper and go to the next step.

3 Open the Roll Feed Unit Cover.



4 Holding the Roll Holder flange (a), load the Roll Holder shaft into the guide grooves (b) on both sides of the Roll Holder Slot. At this time, load the shaft so that the color of the Roll Holder shaft (c) matches the color of the guide groove.



Caution

- Do not release the flanges until you load the holder fully in the Roll Holder Slot. Rolls are heavy, and dropping a roll may cause injury.
- Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the guide grooves (b) and the Roll Holder shaft (c) when loading rolls.

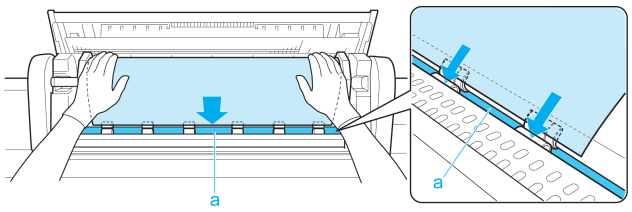
Important

- Do not force the Roll Holder into the printer with the right and left ends reversed. Otherwise, it may damage the printer or Roll Holder.

Note

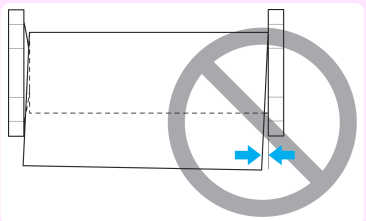
- If it is difficult to load rolls from the front of the printer, load rolls from the back of the printer.
  If the printer has a Spectrophotometer Unit (option), lowering the Up-down Unit makes it easier to perform operations from the front of the printer. (See "**Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually.**") ➔P.527

5 Insert the edge of the roll in the Paper Feed Slot (a) and advance the roll until you hear the feed tone.



Important

- Be careful not to soil the printing surface of roll paper as you insert it in the slot. This may affect the printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
- If the paper is wrinkled or warped, straighten it out before loading it.
- Load paper straight so it is not fed askew.



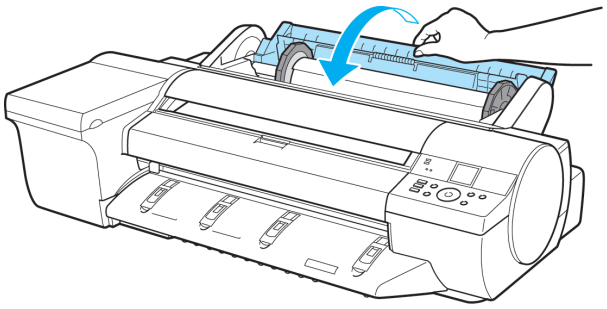
6 Once paper feeding starts, you will need to do the following, based on the **ManageRemainRoll** setting and the barcode printed on rolls. (See "**Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left.**") ➔P.514

ManageRemainRoll	Barcodes	Printer Operation After the Paper is Fed
Off	Printed	A menu for selection of the type of paper is shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
	Not printed	
On	Printed	The type and amount of paper left is automatically detected based on the barcode printed on the roll. There is no need to specify the type and length of the paper.
	Not printed	A menu for selection of the type and length of paper is shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type and length of paper loaded, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- For details on types of paper to select, see the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

7 Close the Roll Feed Unit Cover.



Important

- Cut the edge of the roll using the **Paper Cutting** function if the edge is creased or soiled. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**") ➔P.516

Note
- Adjusting the printhead alignment with the type of paper to be used in printing may enhance printing quality. (See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.**") ➔P.764
- If you set the detection of paper leading edge to **Do not perform**, a margin of about 23 cm is created at the paper leading edge when printing starts. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**") ➔P.516

Changing the Type of Paper

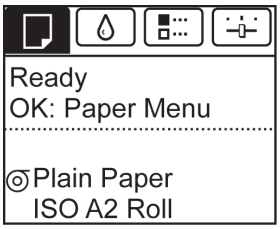
Follow these steps to change the type of paper specified on the printer after you have loaded paper.
If you will continue using this type of paper later, selecting **Keep Paper Type** > **On** will save the time and effort of configuring the media type setting when you load the paper again. The current media type settings before you select **On** will be automatically selected at that time. (See "Using the Same Type of Paper Regularly.") ➔P.509

Important
- For best printing results, the printer fine-tunes the print head height and the feed amount for each type of paper. Be sure to select the type of paper to use correctly before printing.
- Because the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper, the margins and the size of printed images may vary depending on the type of paper used. If margins and the size of images are not as you expected, adjust the paper feed amount. (See "**Adjusting the Feed Amount.**") ➔P.770

Changing the Type of Paper

Note
- When you load a roll, a menu for selection of the type of paper is shown on the Display Screen. Select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**, specify the roll length after the type of paper. (See "**Specifying the Paper Length.**") ➔P.509

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Chg. Paper Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded (**Roll Paper** or **Manual Paper**), and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

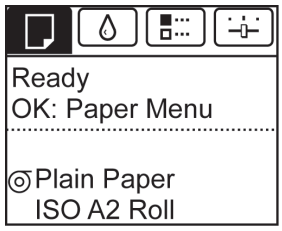
Important
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect printing quality.

Note
- For details on types of paper, see the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Types of Paper.**") ➔P.492 By default, Plain Paper is selected.

Using the Same Type of Paper Regularly

Configure this setting so that current media type settings will be automatically selected when you load the same type of paper later.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Keep Paper Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

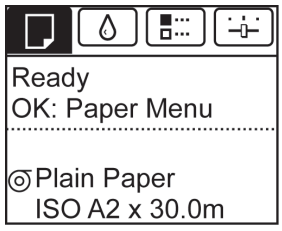
Note
- The specified media type setting is updated in the following situations.
  - When using sheets, if you send a print job before loading a sheet, the media type setting is updated to match the type of paper specified by the print job.
  - When you have selected **ManageRemainRoll** > **On** on the Control Panel and a barcode is printed on the roll, the media type setting is updated to match the type of paper specified by the barcode.
- To change the media type setting, see "Changing the Type of Paper." ➔P.508

Specifying the Paper Length

When changing the length of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the length as follows.

Note
- Specify the paper length when you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**. (See "**Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left.**") ➔P.514

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Chg. Paper Size**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll Length**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the length of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.
Specify the roll length as follows.

1. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to move to the next field for input.
2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to finish entering the value, and then press the **OK** button.

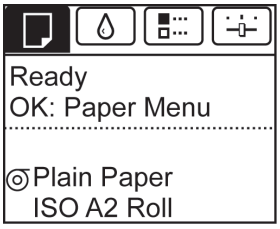
Removing the Roll from the Printer

Remove rolls from the printer as follows.

Important
- Once a roll has been advanced, do not pull the paper out by force. This will prevent further feeding, and the printer will be unable to keep track of the amount of roll paper left.
If you accidentally pull out paper, follow these steps to remove the roll, and open the paper feed slot.

Note
- If you need to cut the roll, see "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**" ➔P.516
- The operations for a printer with a Spectrophotometer Unit (option) are the same as for a printer with no Spectrophotometer Unit (option). If it is difficult to remove from the front of the printer, lowering the Up-down Unit may make the operation easier from the front of the printer. (See "**Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually.**") ➔P.527

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the [ ] (Paper tab) .



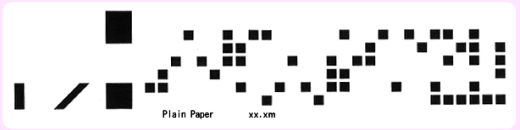
Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

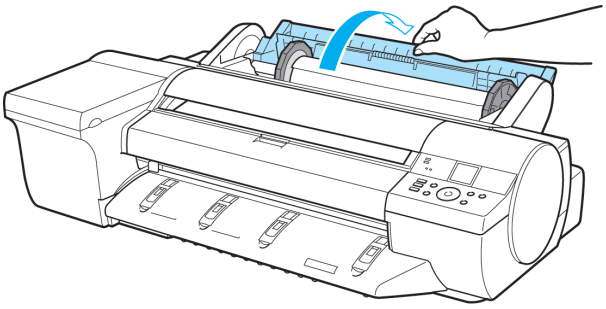
3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
The roll is rewound.

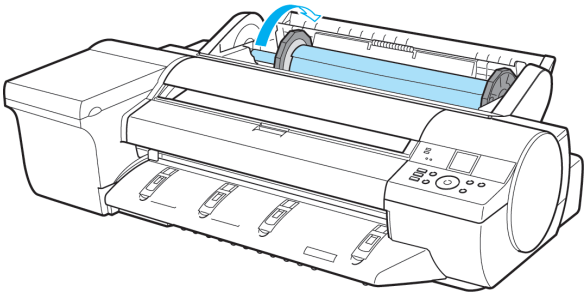
Important
- If you have selected **ManageRemainRoll** > **On** in the Control Panel menu, a barcode is printed on the leading edge of the roll.
Do not remove the roll before the barcode is printed. You will be unable to keep track of the amount of roll paper left. (See "**Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left.**") ➔P.514



5 Open the Roll Feed Unit Cover.



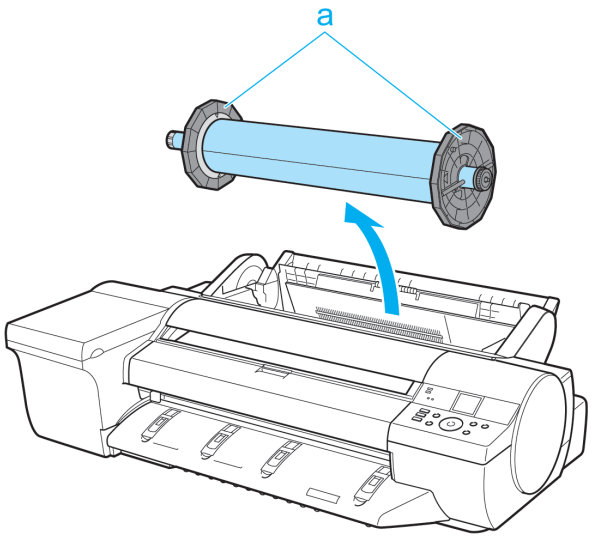
6 Using both hands, rotate the Roll Holder toward the back to rewind the roll.



Note

- If it is difficult to perform operations from the front of the printer, perform operations from the back of the printer.
  If the printer has a Spectrophotometer Unit (option), lowering the Up-down Unit makes it easier to perform operations from the front of the printer. (See "**Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually**.") ➔P.527

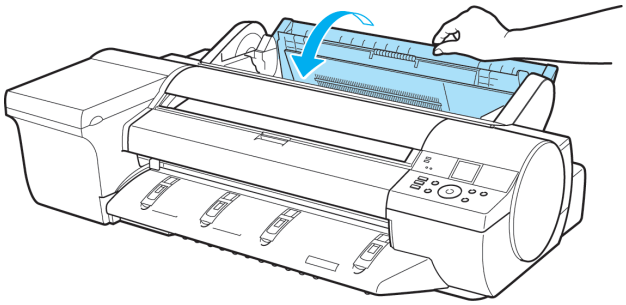
7 Holding the Roll Holder flange (a), remove the holder from the Roll Holder Slot.



Note

- For instructions on removing rolls from the Roll Holder, see "**Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder.**" ➔P.512

8 Close the Roll Feed Unit Cover.

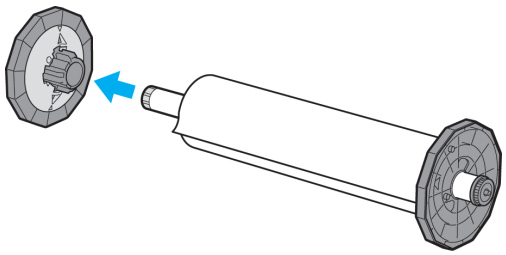


Note

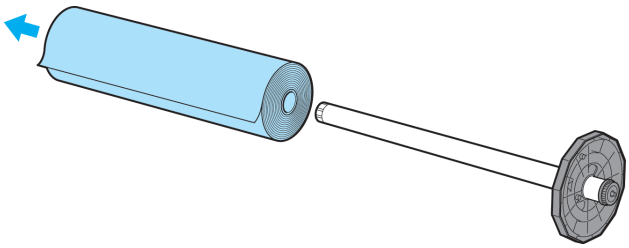
- To load new paper in the printer at this point, see "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**" →P.505

Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder

1 Remove the Holder Stopper from the Roll Holder.

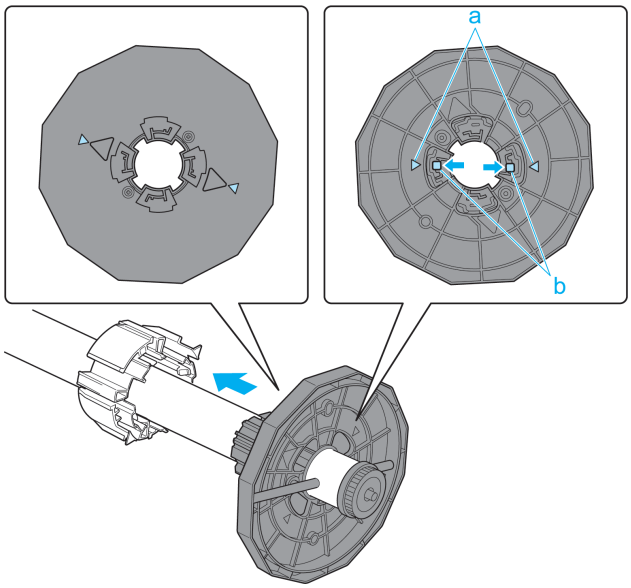


2 Remove the roll from the Roll Holder.

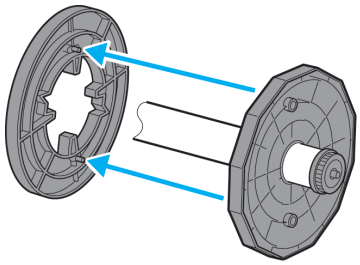


3 Remove any attachments as follows.

- 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment
  Spread the tips (b) of the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment that protrude by the triangular label (a) of the Roll Holder as shown and remove the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment.



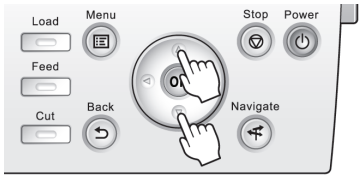
- Spacer for Borderless Printing
  Remove the Spacer for Borderless Printing from the Roll Holder as shown.



Important
- Store the roll in the original bag or box, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight. If paper is not stored properly, the printing surface may become scratched, which may affect the printing quality when you use it again.

Feeding Roll Paper Manually

After a roll has been advanced, you can press the **Feed** button to feed or retract the roll with the ▲ and ▼ buttons.



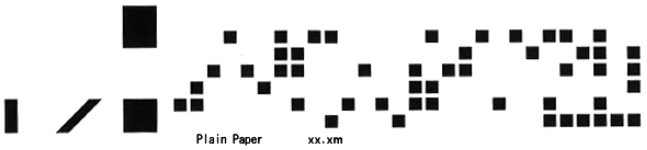
1 Press the **Feed** button.

2 Press the ▲ or ▼ button to advance or retract the roll.
Press ▲ to retract the roll manually.
Press ▼ to advance the roll manually.

Note
- If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for less than a second, the roll will move about 1 mm (0.04 in).
  If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for more than a second, the roll will move until you release the button. Release the button when the Display Screen indicates "**End of paper feed. Cannot feed paper more.**".

Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left

Setting **ManageRemainRoll** to **On** in the **Paper Menu** of the Control Panel will print a barcode with text on the roll when the roll is removed that identifies the type of paper and amount left. When **ManageRemainRoll** is **On** and you load rolls with printed barcodes, the type of paper and amount left are automatically detected after rolls are loaded. The barcode will be cut off after it has been read.

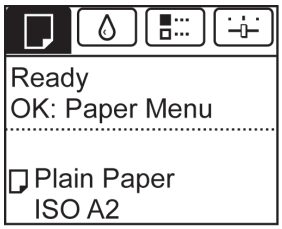


Important

- If the barcode on the roll is not detected, enter the type and length of paper on the Control Panel.

Follow these steps to set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On** as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **ManageRemainRoll**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls

When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere, ink may be transferred onto the paper surface during ejection, soiling it. In that case, you may be able to improve the condition by setting the time to wait for the ink to dry after printing.

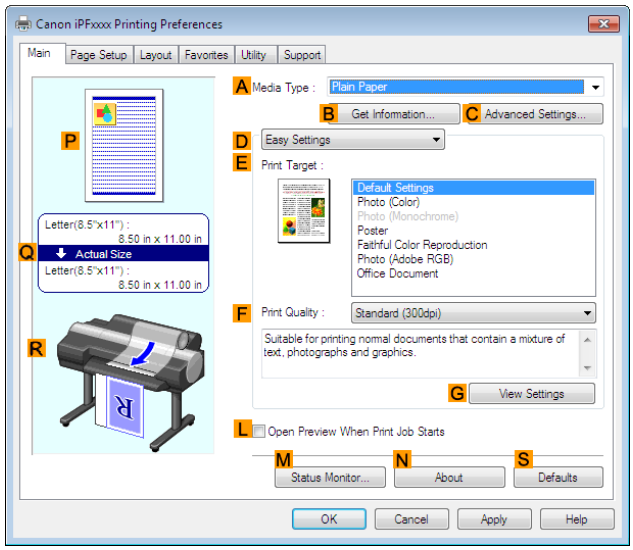
Note

- If the Cutter touches the print surface on which the ink is not dry, the paper surface may become scratched or soiled, or the paper surface may rub when the paper falls and the surface may become soiled.
To wait for the ink to dry without allowing printed documents to fall after printing, set **Cutting Mode** on the menu of the printer to **Eject**. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls**.") ➔P.516
- The settings can also be made from the Control Panel on the printer. Select the type of paper from **Paper Details** in **Paper Menu**. (See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632

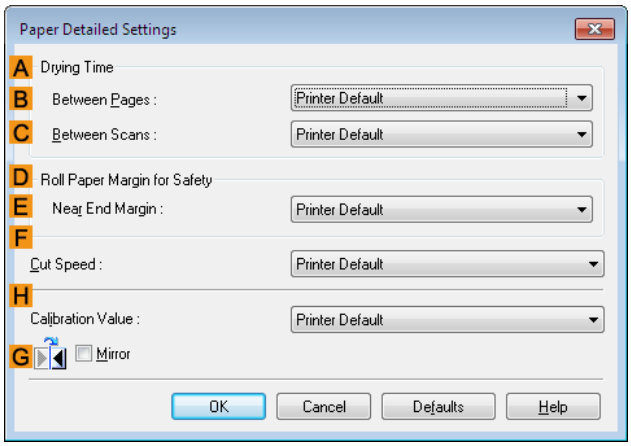
Windows

1. Display the printer driver dialog box.
(See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)**.") ➔P.167

2 Select the **Main** sheet and click **C Advanced Settings** in **A Media Type**.



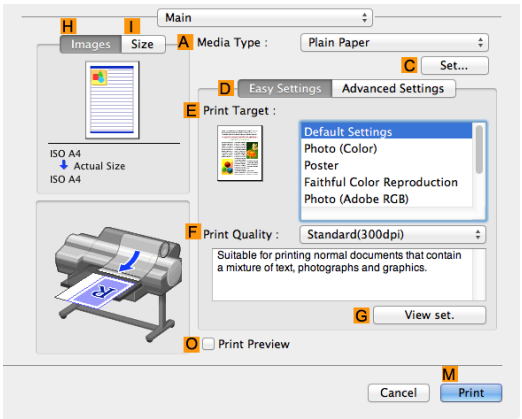
3 In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select the desired settings values in **B Between Pages** and **C Between Scans** in **A Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(See "**Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)**.") ➔P.171



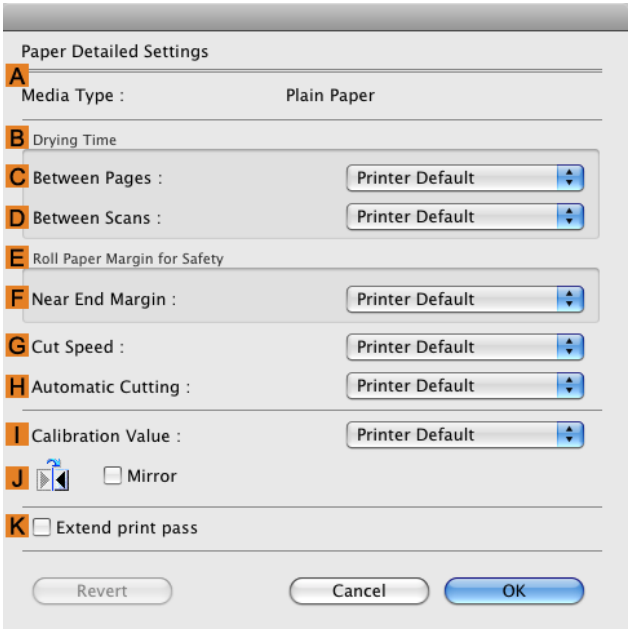
Mac OS

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the **Main** pane and click **C Settings** in **A Media Type**.



3 In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select the desired settings values in **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(See "**Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.352



Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls

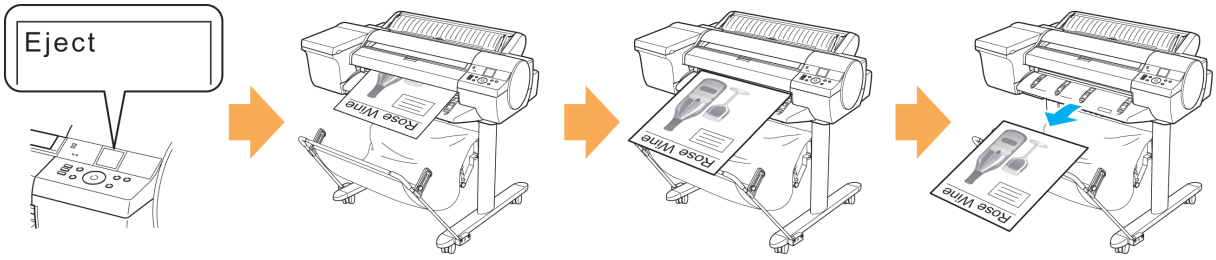
How rolls are cut after ejection varies depending on printer settings.

Cutting Method		Printer Setting		Driver Setting	
Automatic	The roll is automatically cut by the Cutter Unit following printer driver settings.	**Media Menu** > **Paper Details** > (Various Types of Paper) > **Cutting Mode**	**Automatic**	**Automatic Cutting** (See "Cutting Roll Paper After Printing.") ➔P.153	**Yes**
Eject (when the paper surface is being scratched / to wait for ink to dry)	Select this to move the cutter by key operation and cut paper. Although there are cases with **Automatic** in which the paper falls and the paper surface is scratched, you can avoid damaging the paper with this method since you can cut by holding the paper with your hand so that the paper does not fall when cutting. Also, since you can cut while visually confirming the drying of the ink, you can avoid ejecting paper before the ink has dried. To cut the roll with the Cutter Unit, press the **Cut** button.		**Eject**		**Yes**
Manual (when using media that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit)	Select this for paper that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit and for paper of which the leading edge curls strongly and rubs the printhead. Cut each page from the roll using scissors. For continuous printing (if you will cut each page later), select **Automatic Cutting** > **Yes** or select **Print Cut Guideline**.		**Manual**		**No**, **Yes**, **Print Cut Guideline**
Paper cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)	Choose this option if you want to cut pages by pressing Cutter Unit buttons for manual cutting after printing when **Automatic Cutting** > **No** is selected or **Print Cut Guideline** is selected in the printer driver. Otherwise choose this option if you want to cut the roll edge after loading a roll.	**Cut** button pressed	**Yes**		**No**, **Print Cut Guideline**

Note
- Automatic and Eject are valid only when you have selected **Automatic Cutting** > **Yes** in the printer driver.
- With Eject, printing does not resume after a series of jobs have been printed continuously until the roll is cut.
- **Eject** is the preset selection in **Cutting Mode** for some types of paper. For this paper, we recommend keeping the preset cutting mode.
- If documents printed using Automatic, Eject, or manual cutting are short, rolls are advanced a specific amount before cutting to prevent problems with cutting and paper ejection. This may create a wider bottom margin, in some cases.

Cut rolls manually in the following cases:

Eject (when the paper surface is being scratched / to wait for ink to dry)

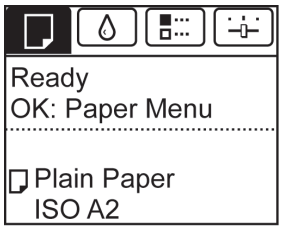


Select **Eject** | Print | Stopped automatically at the cut position | As you support the document to prevent it from dropping, cut by pressing the **Cut** button

Important
- When cutting wide printed documents after ejection, have two people support the documents. If the paper drops, printed documents may be damaged.
- Do not lift the paper when holding printed documents before cutting. If the paper rises, it may affect the printing quality or cause rough cut edges.

Note
- Once the following step has been performed, the procedure can be started from step 7 the next time.
  - Printing the second and subsequent times
  - Printing after replacing with the same type of paper

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button. The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

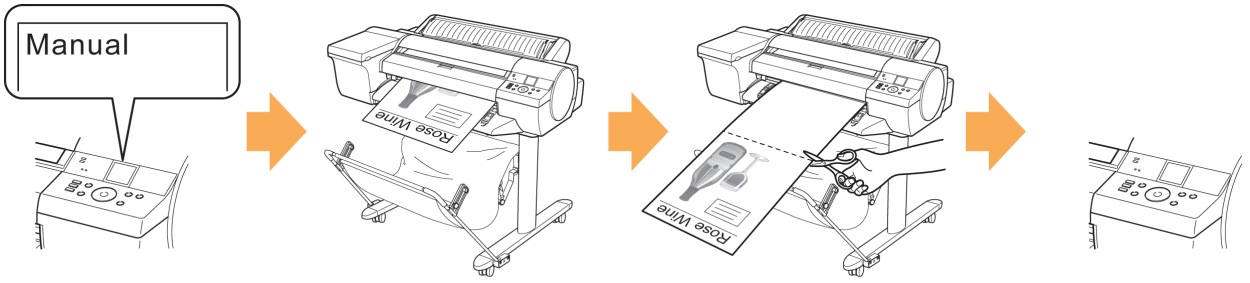
5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject**, and then press the **OK** button.

7 Print the job.
When printing is finished, the printer will stop without cutting.

8 Holding the printed document to prevent it from dropping, press the **Cut** button to cut the roll.

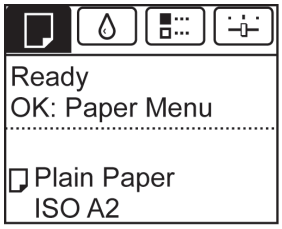
Manual (when using media that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit)



Select **Manual** | Print | Feed paper to the cut position by pressing the **Feed** button and cut manually | Rewind paper by pressing the **OK** button

Note
- Once the following step has been performed, the procedure can be started from step 8 the next time.
  - Printing the second and subsequent times
  - Printing after replacing with the same type of paper

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button. The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.

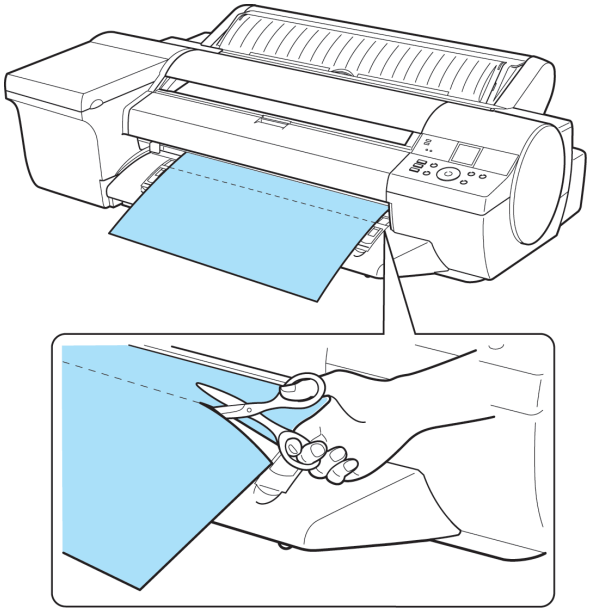
7 When "**Perform the detection of paper leading edge?**" is displayed, select **Perform(recommend)**.

8 Print the job.
The printer stops advancing the paper after printing.

9 Press the **Feed** button.

Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.

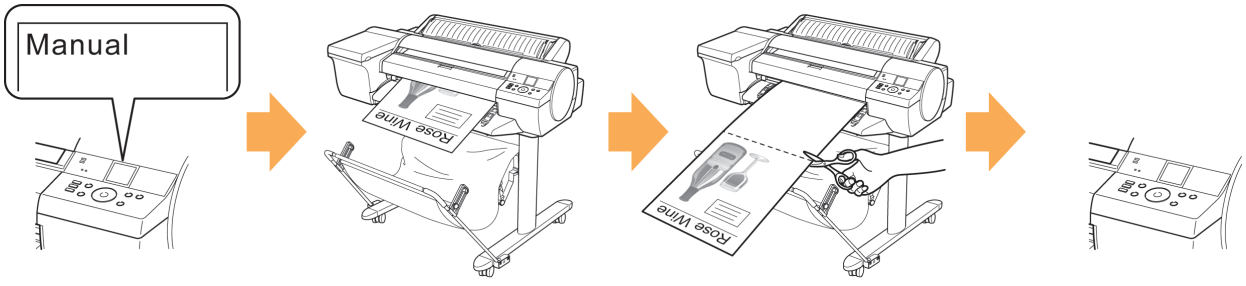
10 Cut the roll paper manually with scissors or the like.



11 Press the **OK** button.

After the roll is rewound, it stops automatically.

Manual (for paper of which the leading edge rubs the printhead)



Select **Manual**

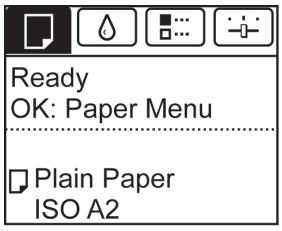
Print

Feed paper to the cut position by pressing the **Feed** button and cut manually

Rewind paper by pressing the **OK** button

Note
- Once the following step has been performed, the procedure can be started from step 10 the next time.
  - Printing the second and subsequent times
  - Printing after replacing with the same type of paper

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button. The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the **OK** button.

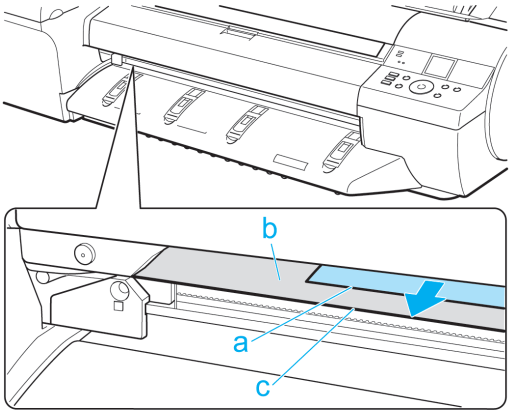
6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.

7 When "**Perform the detection of paper leading edge?**" is displayed, select **Do not perform**.

Note
- If you set the detection of paper leading edge to **Do not perform**, a margin of about 23 cm is created at the paper leading edge when printing starts.

8 Press the **Feed** button.

9 Press ▲ or ▼ to align the paper leading edge (a) with the leading edge (c) of the metal plate (b) on the output tray.



Caution
- Do not touch the metal plate (b) as doing so may cause injuries.

Note
- If the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) is mounted, align the paper leading edge with the leading edge (c) of the metal plate while looking from the output tray of the Spectrophotometer Unit.

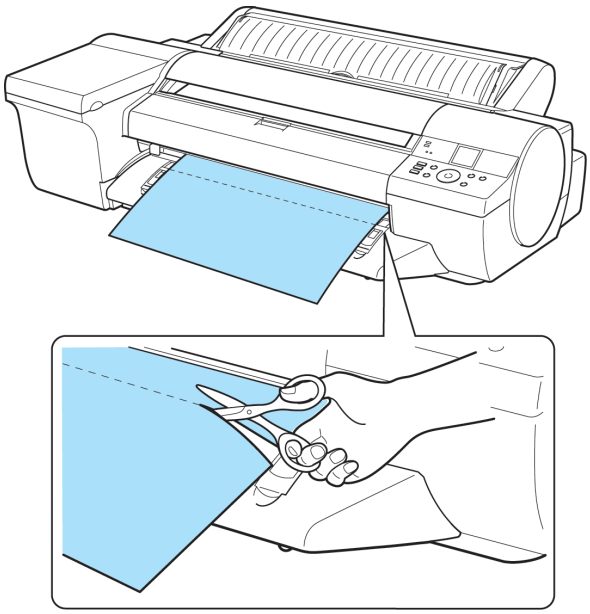
10 Print the job.
The printer stops advancing the paper after printing.

Note
- The printer can continue to receive print jobs from computers. If a print job is received and printed here, it can be printed without the margin of about 23 cm being created at the paper leading edge.

11 Press the **Feed** button.

Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.

12 Cut the roll paper manually with scissors or the like.

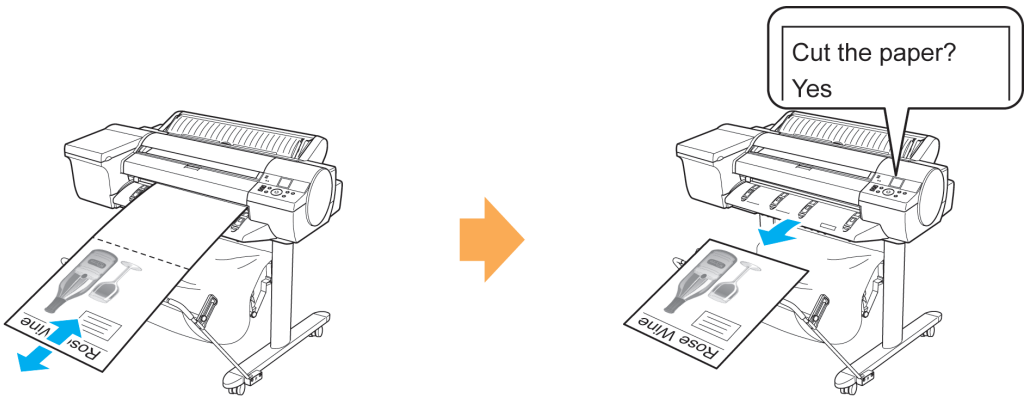


Important
- Cut at the dotted line printed on the paper. If you cut on the printer side of the dotted line, the paper leading edge may rub against the printhead and may deviate from the paper retainer.

13 Press the **OK** button.

After the roll is rewound, it stops automatically.

Paper cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)

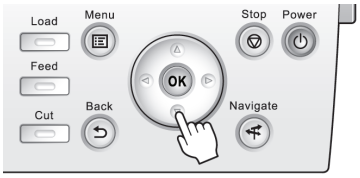


Feed paper the cutting position by pressing ▲ or ▼

Paper Cutting

1 Press the **Feed** button.

2 Press the ▼ button to advance the roll to the position for cutting.



3 Press the **Cut** button.

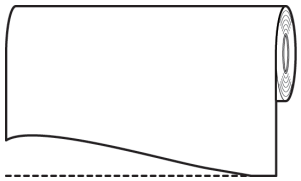
4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
After the roll paper is cut, it is rewound automatically.

Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically

If the leading edge of the paper is cut crooked or is not cut straight when roll paper is loaded, it will not print correctly. If this happens, you can cut the leading edge of the paper straight when loading a paper roll by using **Trim Edge First** in the Control Panel menu.
Trim Edge First offers the following options.

- **Automatic**

  If the leading edge of the paper is cut crooked and is not cut straight when loading roll paper, cut the leading edge straight and eject the fragment of paper to prevent printing on the platen and soiling the printer.



- **On (Preset Len)**

  The amount to cut from the leading edge of the paper varies depending on the media type, and is cut to a prescribed length. For more information on the prescribed length, see the leading edge precut length in the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

- **On(Input Length)**

  The amount to cut from the leading edge of paper is specified in the control panel. The amount to cut from the leading edge can be specified in the range of lengths displayed in the control panel. The range of lengths differs between each media type.

  Note
  - The amount to cut from the leading edge of paper cannot be set shorter than the length displayed in the control panel.

- **Manual**

  The amount to cut from the leading edge of the paper can be adjusted by pressing the ▲ and ▼ buttons.
  After making the adjustment, you can cut the paper by pressing the **Paper Cutting** button and selecting "**Cut paper**".
  After the paper has been cut, press "**Finish paper set**".

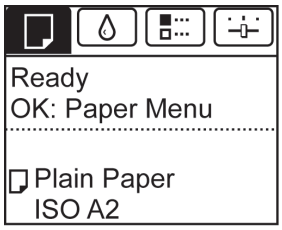
  Note
  - If you do not press "**Finish paper set**" after cutting the paper, you will not be able to print again.

- **Off**

  The edge is not cut and scraps are not removed.

Follow these steps to change the **Trim Edge First** setting.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).

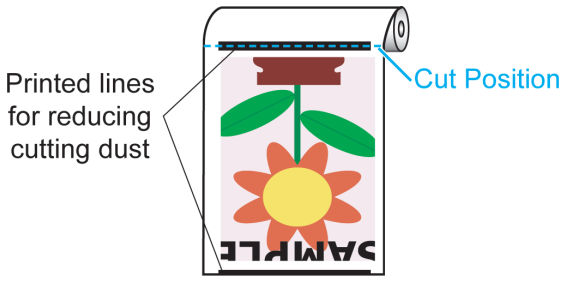


Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Trim Edge First**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button.
   This setting takes effect the next time you load a roll.

Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls

For media such as Backlit Film that are more likely to generate debris when cut, select **CutDustReduct.** > **On** in the **Paper Menu** of the Control Panel. This option reduces debris from cutting by printing black lines at the leading and trailing edges of documents. It may help prevent Printhead damage. You can specify for **CutDustReduct.** to be activated for particular types of paper.

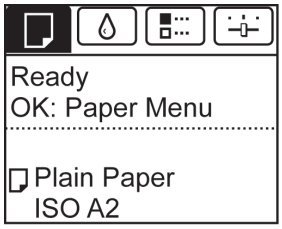


Important

- Do not set **CutDustReduct.** to **On** for paper that wrinkles easily, such as Plain Paper or lightweight paper. This may impair cutting and cause paper jams.
- Borderless printing is not available when **CutDustReduct.** is set to **On**. To use borderless printing, select **CutDustReduct.** > **Off**.

Set **CutDustReduct.** to **On** as follows.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **CutDustReduct.**, and then press the **OK** button.

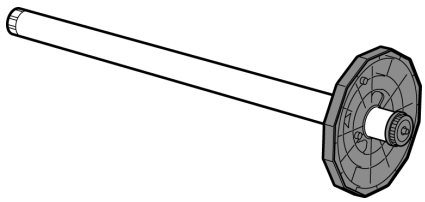
6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

Roll Holder Set

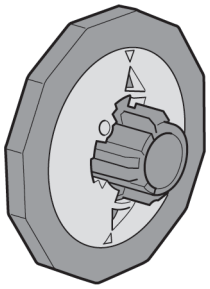
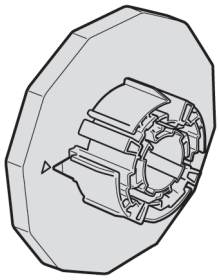
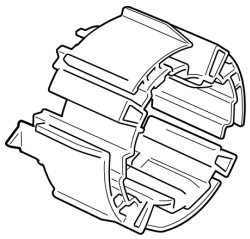
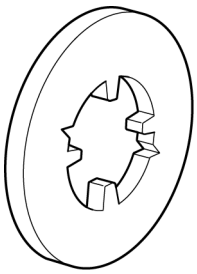
Load a roll on the roll holder and then load the holder in the printer. The Roll Holder in the Roll Holder Set RH2-25 is for use with both 2-inch and 3-inch paper cores. Use the correct attachment for the particular paper core. For borderless printing on A1 (594 mm) or A2 (420 mm) rolls, attach the included Spacer for Borderless Printing to the Roll Holder.
(See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") →P.503

- Roll Holder Set RH2-25

- Roll Holder (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores)



- Attachments

Using Rolls with a 2-inch Paper Core	Using Rolls with a 3-inch Paper Core	
Holder Stopper (for 2-inch paper cores)	Holder Stopper (for 3-inch paper cores)	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment
		
• Borderless Printing on A1 or A2 Rolls Spacer for Borderless Printing 		

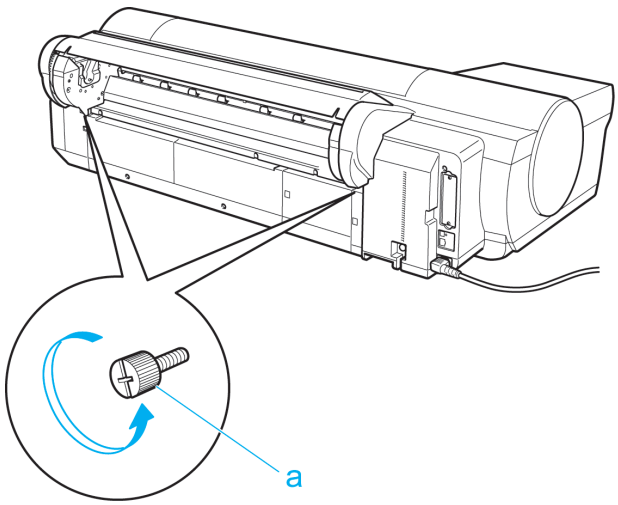
Removing the Roll Feed Unit

Important

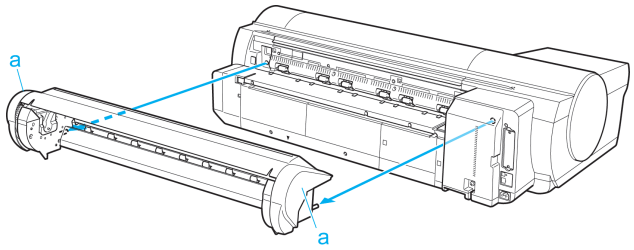
- Always turn off the printer before removing the Roll Feed Unit. The printer may be damaged if you do not turn it off first.

1 Remove the roll from the Roll Feed Unit. (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer.**") →P.510

2 Use a coin or screwdriver to loosen the screws (a) on both sides of the back of the Roll Feed Unit, and remove the screws.



3 Holding the Carrying Handles (a) of the Roll Feed Unit, remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer.

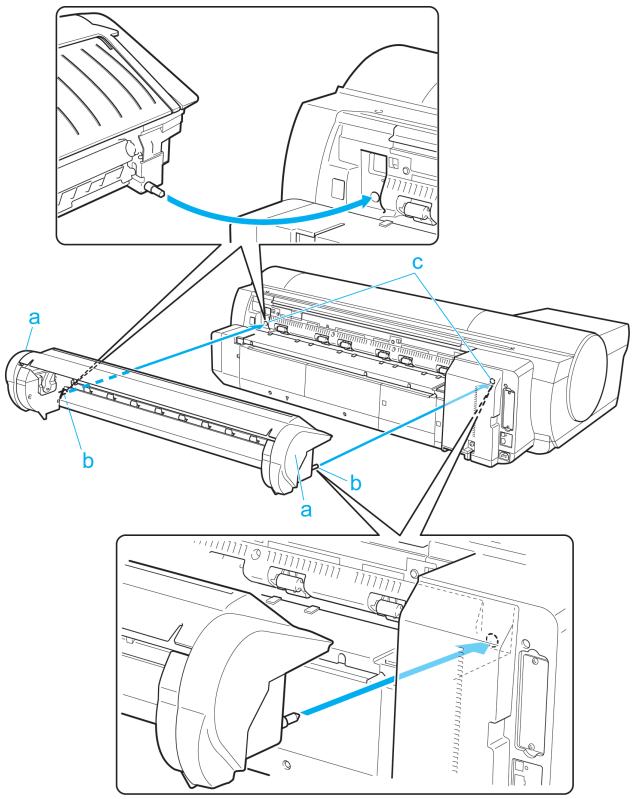


Installing the Roll Feed Unit

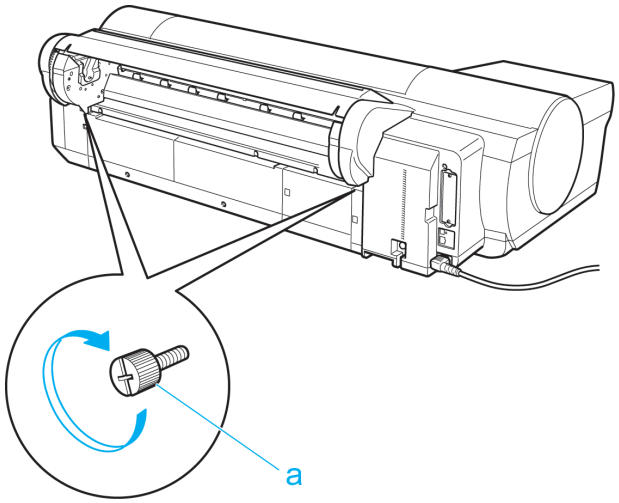
Important

- Always turn off the printer before attaching the Roll Feed Unit. The printer may be damaged if you do not turn it off first.

1 Holding the Roll Feed Unit by the Carrying Handles (a), insert the two pins of the Roll Feed Unit (b) into the each hole on the back of the printer (c).



2 Use a coin or screwdriver to tighten the two screws on the back of the Roll Feed Unit (a) to secure it to the printer.



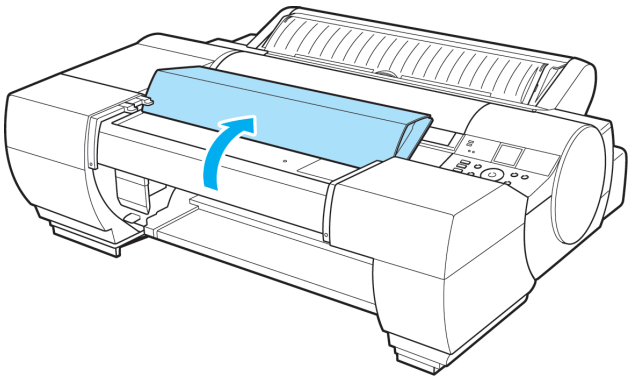
Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually

Lowering the Up-down Unit manually before printing makes it easier to handle paper from the front of a printer equipped with a Spectrophotometer Unit (option).

Note

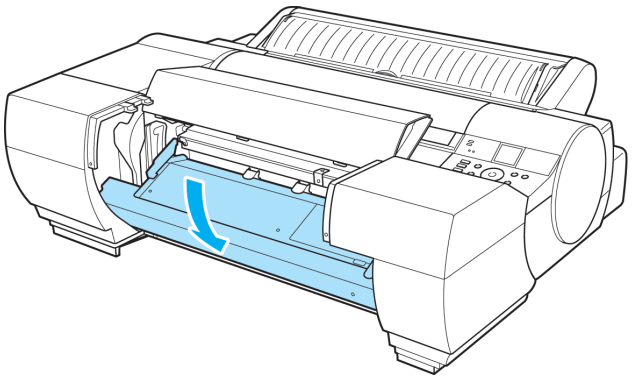
- You can also perform operations from the back of the printer without lowering the Up-down Unit manually.

1 Open the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover.



2 Press down on the center (near the blue label) of the Up-down Unit to lower the Up-down Unit.

Perform the target operation in this state.



3 Close the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover.

Note

- When pressing down on the Up-down Unit, handle the central part (near the blue label). Handling the ends may cause damage.
- After the paper operations are complete, the Up-down Unit will automatically return to its original position.

Handling sheets

Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot 529
Changing the Type of Paper 508
Removing Sheets 540
➔ Clearing a Jammed Sheet, Fed Manually 945
➔ Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot) 948
Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually 527

Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot

When printing on individual sheets, load the sheet in the Top Paper Feed Slot. However, for heavyweight paper such as POP board, load the sheet in the Front Paper Feed Slot.

Selecting the Paper Source and Type of Paper

- If a print job was received

  Sheets are automatically selected, and the media type and size specified by the print job are shown on the Display Screen.

1 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Load Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.

2 Load the sheet in the Top Paper Feed Slot or Front Paper Feed Slot, depending on the type of paper specified by the print job.

- If a type of paper other than **POP Board** is selected
  Loading Sheets in the Top Paper Feed Slot ➔P.530
- If **POP Board** is selected
  Loading Heavyweight Sheets in the Front Paper Feed Slot ➔P.532

- If no print job was received

1 Press the **Load** button.

2 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.

Note
- If any paper has been advanced that will not be used, a message is shown requesting you to remove it. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button. Remove the paper and go to the next step.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
When printing on heavyweight paper, select **POP Board** and load the sheet in the Front Paper Feed Slot. (See "Loading Heavyweight Sheets in the Front Paper Feed Slot.") ➔P.532
When printing on other types of paper, select the type of paper and load the sheet in the Top Paper Feed Slot. (See "Loading Sheets in the Top Paper Feed Slot.") ➔P.530

Note
- Refer to **Paper Reference Guide** for details on type of paper to select. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

Loading Sheets in the Top Paper Feed Slot

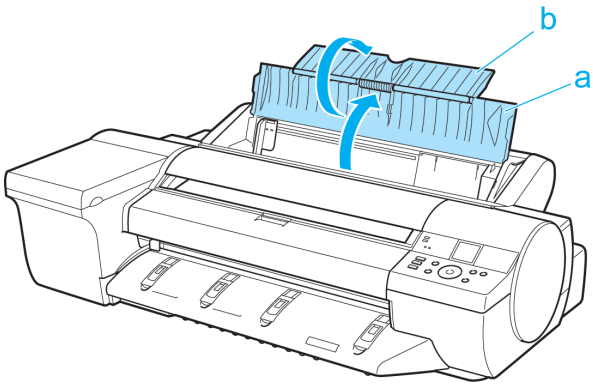
Important

- One sheet of paper can be loaded at a time. Do not load multiple sheets. This may cause paper jams.
- Before feeding the paper and before printing, check that the paper has not curled over towards the front of the printer. The sheet may jam if it curls before feeding or printing and the trailing edge drops toward the front.
- Paper that is wrinkled or warped may jam. If necessary, straighten the paper and reload it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error. (See "**Paper loaded askew.**.") ➔P.981

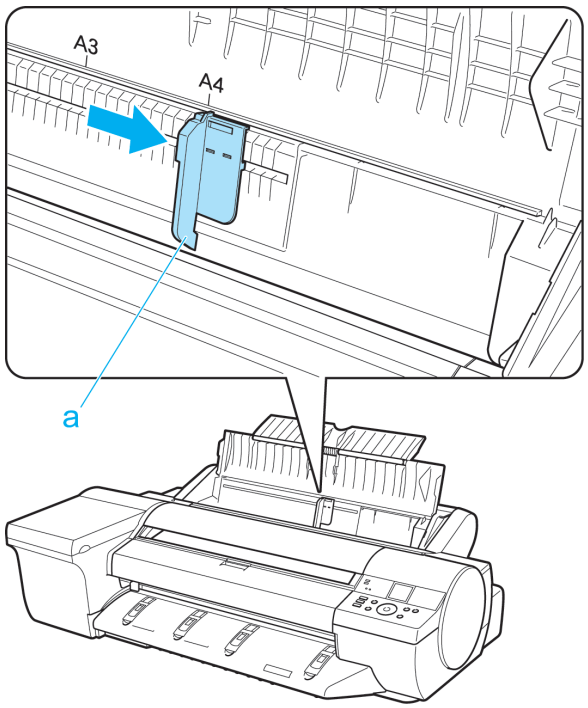
Note

- The loading method for a printer with a Spectrophotometer Unit (option) is the same as for a printer with no Spectrophotometer Unit (option). If it is difficult to perform operations from the front of the printer, lower the Up-down Unit. (See "**Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually**.") ➔P.527
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.

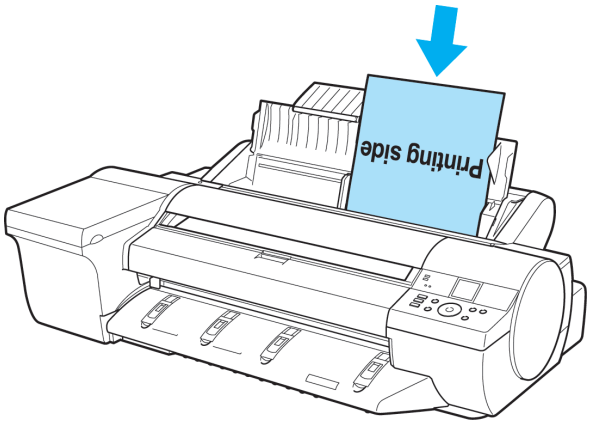
1 Open the Paper Tray Cover (a), and then open the Tray Extension (b).



2 Slide the Width Guide (a) to align it with the mark for the size of paper you will load.



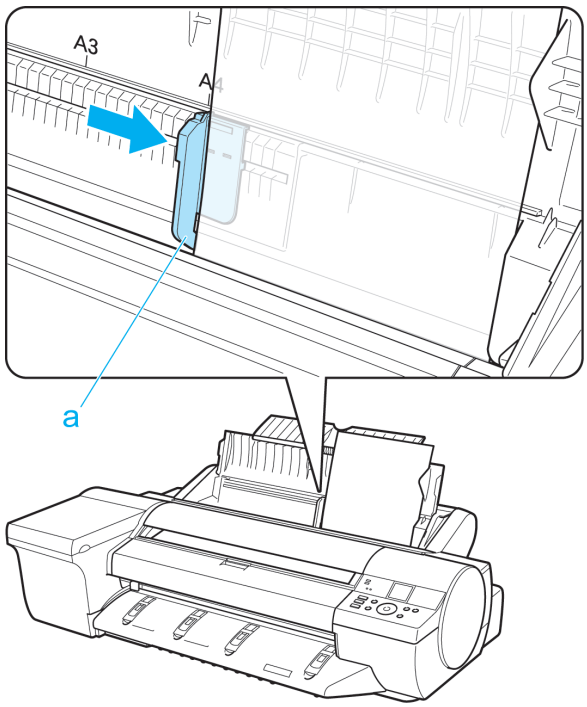
3 Load one sheet, printing-side up, in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
Insert the paper until it touches the far end of the tray lightly.



Important
- If you load a sheet larger than A2, the sheet may fall behind the printer under its own weight. Put your hand under the sheet to support it and prevent it from falling.

Note
- If it is difficult to load rolls from the front of the printer, load them from the back of the printer.
If the printer has a Spectrophotometer Unit (option), lowering the Up-down Unit makes it easier to perform operations from the front of the printer. (See "**Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually**.") ➔P.527

4 Move the Width Guide (a) to match the size of paper loaded.
Set the Width Guide against the edge of the paper to prevent the paper from becoming crooked or wrinkled.



5 Press the **OK** button.

- If a print job was received
  After the paper is advanced, the printer starts printing the print job.
- If no print job was received
  The printer now starts feeding the paper.

Loading Heavyweight Sheets in the Front Paper Feed Slot

Important

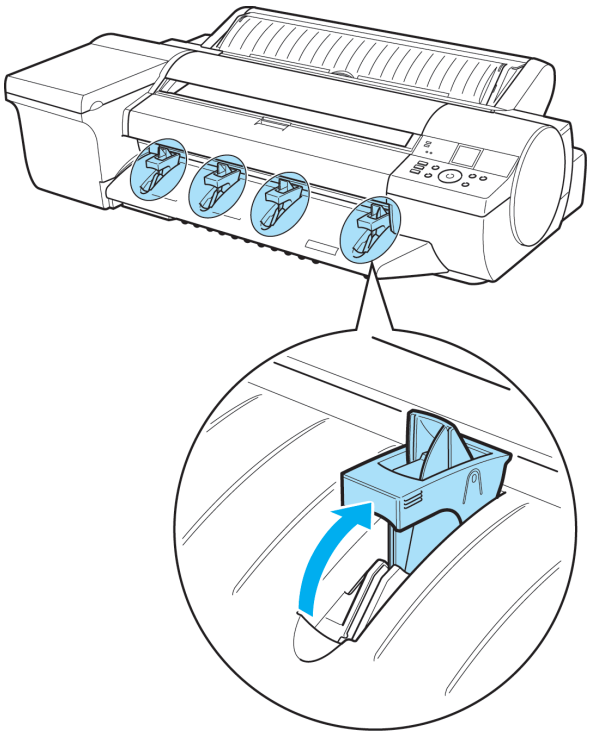
- Always load **POP Board** in the Front Paper Feed Slot for printing. Loading it in other ways may impair operation and damage the printer.
- One sheet of paper can be loaded at a time. Do not load multiple sheets. This may cause paper jams.
- Straighten paper if it is warped before loading it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error. (See "**Paper loaded askew.**.") ➔P.981
- Once you load the paper, you cannot shift it sideways. Load the paper straight.
- If paper other than **POP Board** is loaded in the Front Paper Feed Slot, you might not be able to shift the paper or pull it out from the front.

Note

- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.

Follow the steps below to perform loading procedures in a printer with no Spectrophotometer Unit (option).
When using a printer with a Spectrophotometer Unit (option), {G:anc3,i:For Printers with a Spectrophotometer Unit (option)}

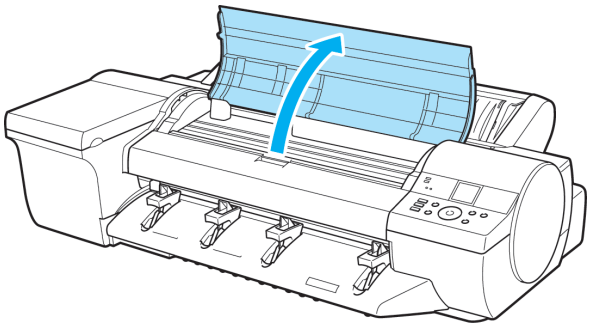
1 If the message "**Leave 70cm (28") space behind printer.**" is displayed, check the space behind the printer, pull up the four Front Tray Guides above the Ejection Guide, and press the **OK** button.



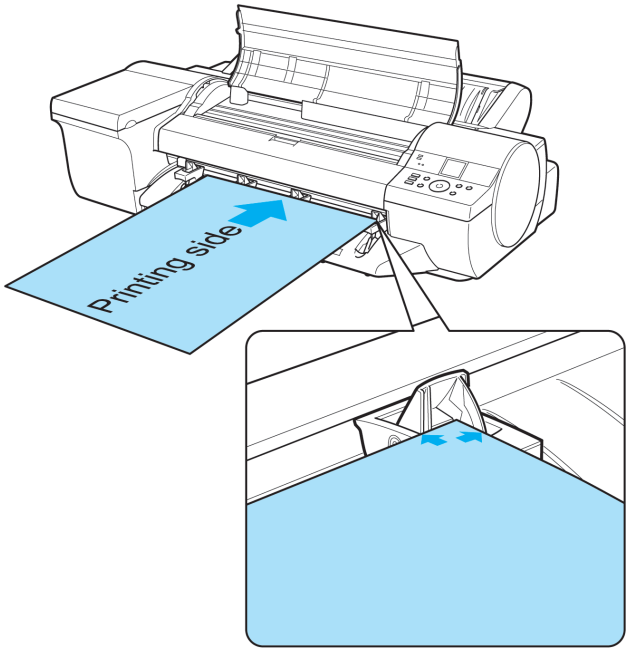
Note

- Sufficient space behind the printer is required when loading paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot. For details on the installation space required, see "**Specifications**." ➔P.1000

2 After "**Open top cover.**" is displayed, open the Top Cover.



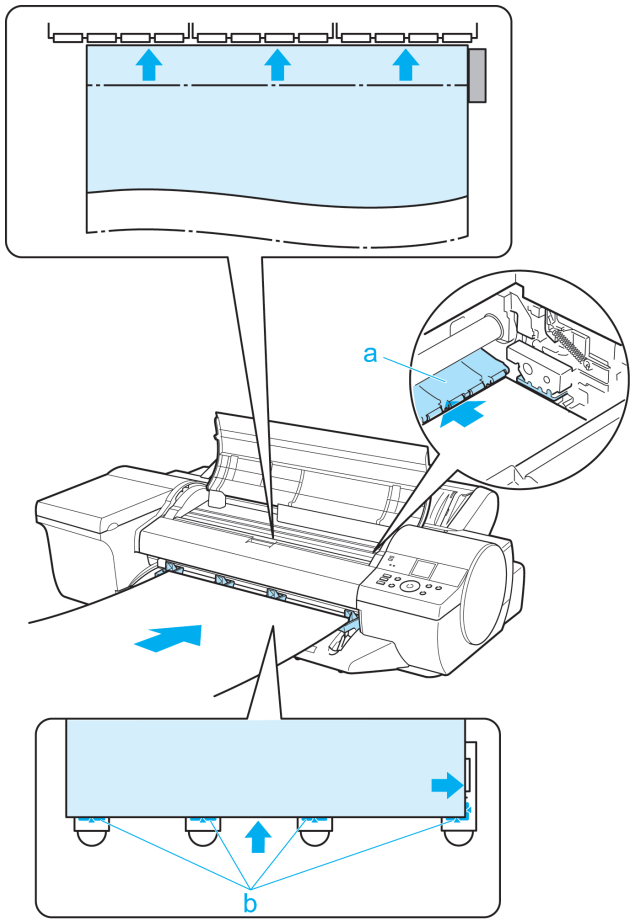
3 Set the leading edge of one sheet, printing-side up, on the Front Tray Guides, and insert the sheet in the Front Paper Feed Slot, keeping it level.



Important

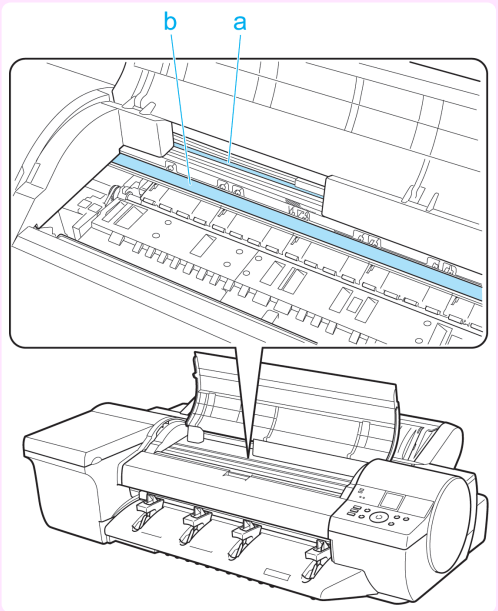
- When you insert the sheet in the Front Paper Feed Slot, keep the sheet level, relative to the paper feed slot. Failure to do this may scratch the printing surface.

4 As you look inside the Top Cover, insert the leading edge of the sheet between the Platen and Paper Retainer (a), keeping it parallel to the Paper Retainer (a), and align the paper with the Paper Alignment Line (b) of the Front Tray Guides.



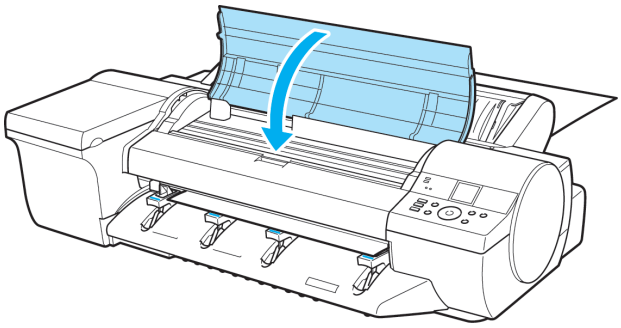
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



5 When "**Close top cover.**" is displayed, close the Top Cover and press the **OK** button.

The sheet is held between the Platen and Back Cover, and feeding begins.



- If a print job was received

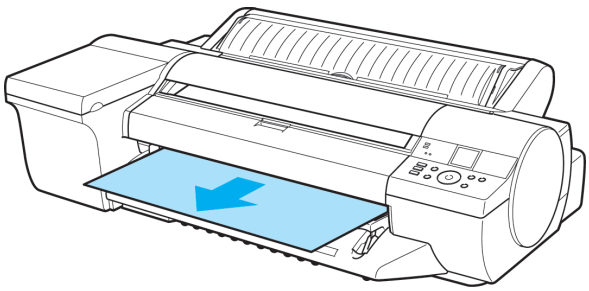
  After the paper is advanced, the printer starts printing the print job.

- If no print job was received

  The printer now starts feeding the paper.

6 After printing, the printer will temporarily stop advancing the paper while the trailing edge is still in the rollers to prevent the sheet from dropping.
Once you press the **OK** button, the paper can be removed.

7 Remove the sheet, keeping the front edge level as you pull it out.

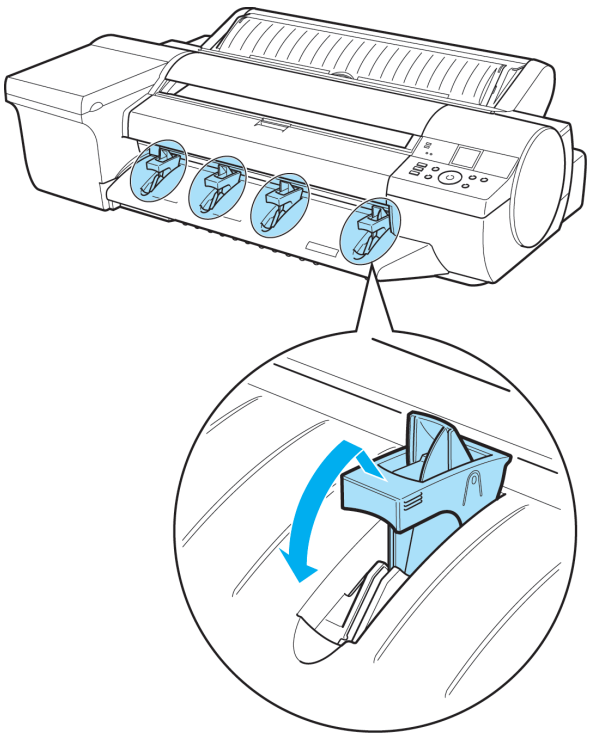


Important

- If **POP Board** is accidentally removed at an angle, it may scratch the printed surface.

8 Press the **OK** button.

9 Lift the four Front Tray Guides above the Ejection Guide, store them toward the front, and then press the **OK** button.

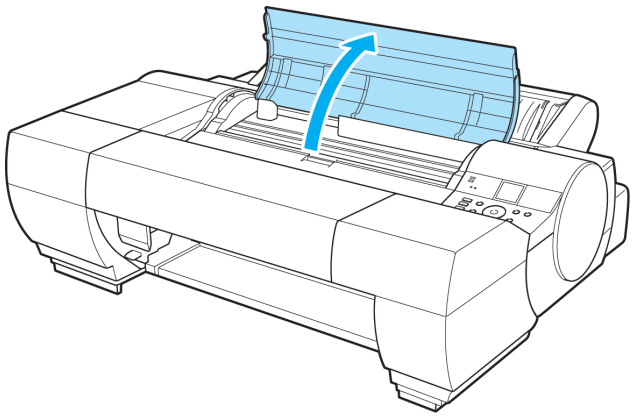


- When using the Spectrophotometer Unit(option)

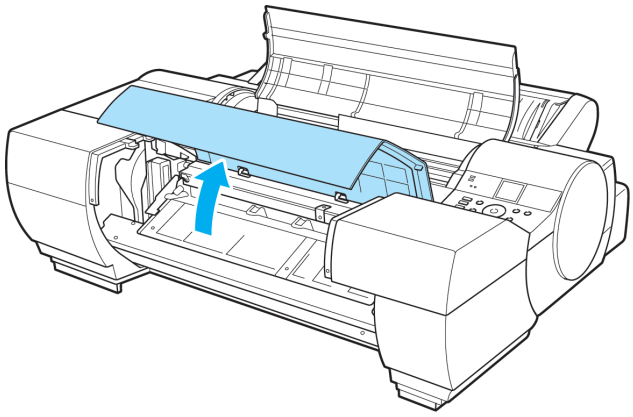
1 When the "**Leave 70cm (28") space behind printer.**" message appears, make sure that there is sufficient space behind the printer and press the **OK** button.

Note
- There needs to be sufficient space behind the printer to load paper into the Front Paper Feed Slot. For more information on installation space, see "**Specifications**." ➔P.1000

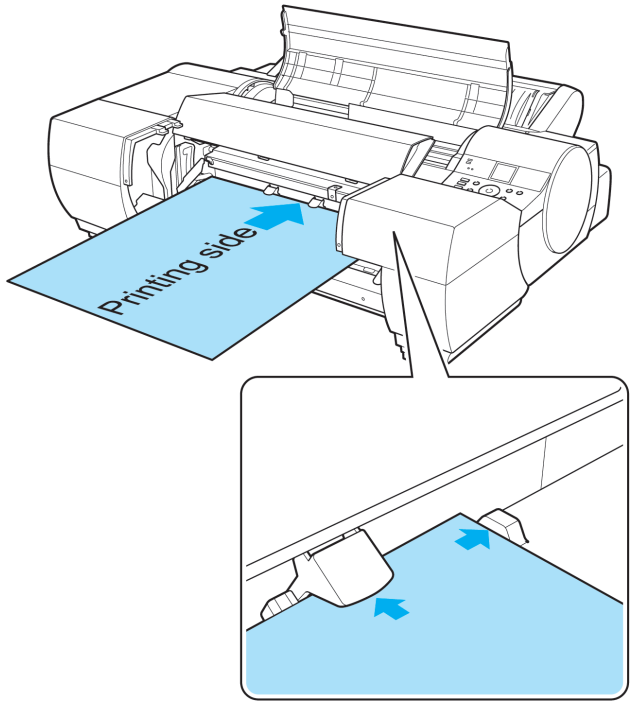
2 When the "**Open top cover.**" message appears, open the Top Cover.



3 When the "**Open the Spectrophotometer Unit cover.**" message appears, open the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover.



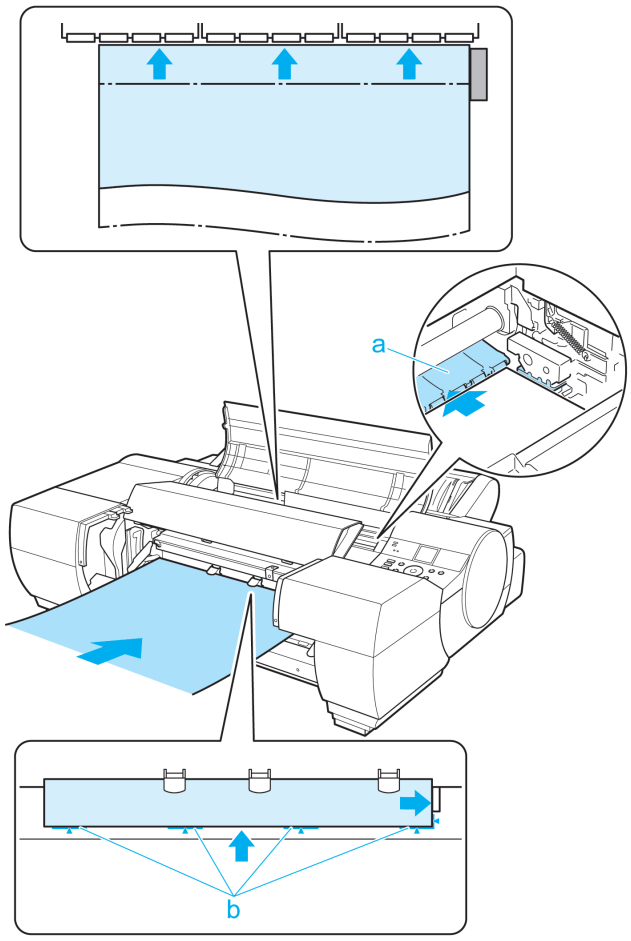
4 Insert one sheet of paper along the guide side of the Up-down Unit, making sure it is level.



Important

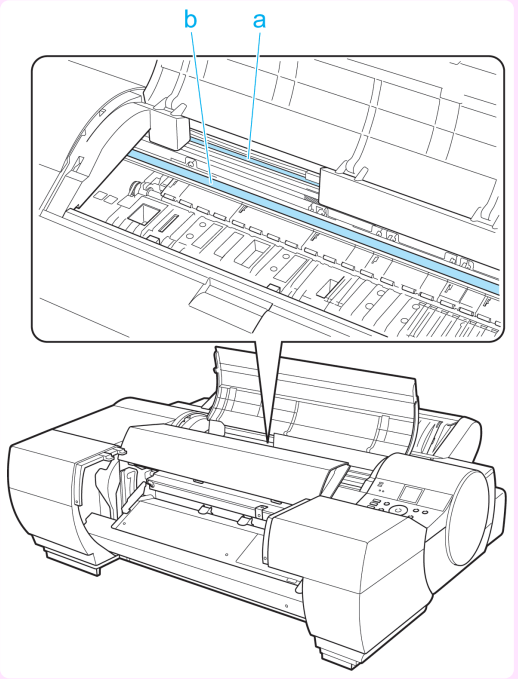
- When you insert the paper into the Front Paper Feed Slot, keep it level as it goes into the paper feed slot. Failure to do so may scratch the printed surface.

5 Looking at the inside of the Top Cover, hold the paper parallel to the Paper Retainer (a), place it between the Platen and the Paper Retainer (a), and then align it with the orange Paper Alignment Line (b).

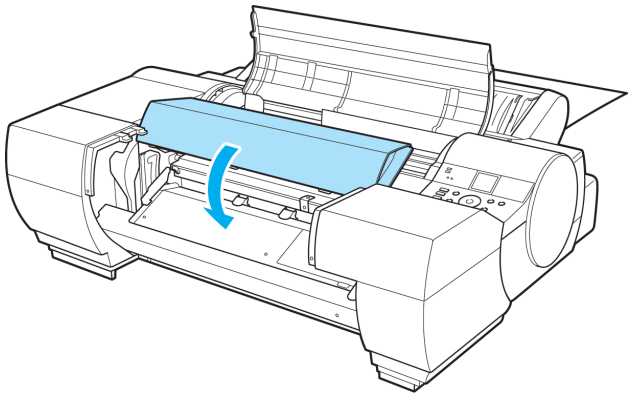


Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.

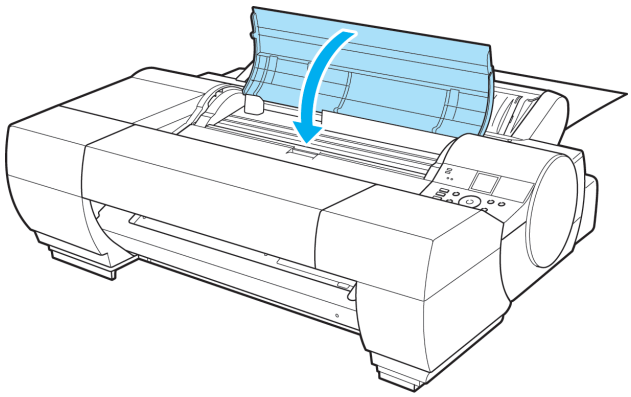


6 When the "**Close Spectrophotometer Unit cover.**" message appears, close the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover.



7 When the "**Close top cover.**" message appears, close the Top Cover and press the **OK** button.

The paper will then be fixed and fed between the Platen and the Back Cover.



- If a print job was received

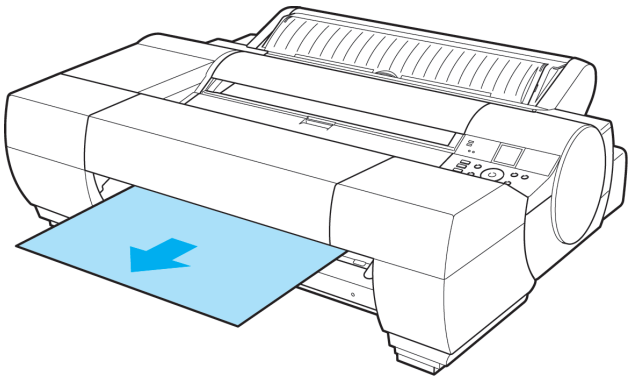
  After the paper is advanced, the printer starts printing the print job.

- If no print job was received

  The printer now starts feeding the paper.

8 After printing, the paper is stopped momentarily with the trailing edge still held in the rollers to prevent it from falling.
Press the **OK** button to release the paper.

9 Remove the sheet, keeping the front edge level as you pull it out.



Important

- If **POP Board** is accidentally removed at an angle, it may scratch the printed surface.

10 Press the **OK** button.

Removing Sheets

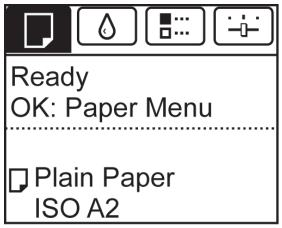
Remove sheets from the printer as follows.

- Removing sheets from the top paper feed slot ➔P.540
- Removing heavyweight sheets from the front paper feed slot ➔P.540

Note
- The operations for a printer with a Spectrophotometer Unit (option) are the same as for a printer with no Spectrophotometer Unit (option).

Removing sheets from the top paper feed slot

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

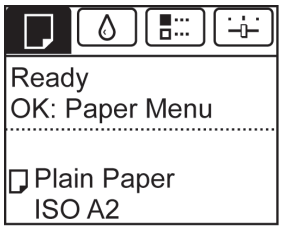
3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
The paper is ejected from the front of the printer.

Important
- If the trailing edge of a sheet is not ejected, pull the sheet out, keeping the front edge level. Accidentally removing the sheet at an angle may scratch the printed surface.

Removing heavyweight sheets from the front paper feed slot

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

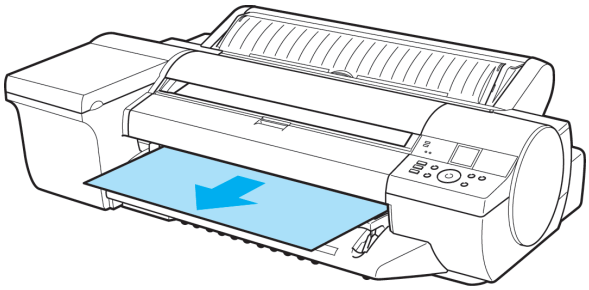
2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
As the printer ejects the paper, the paper is stopped momentarily with the trailing edge still held in the rollers.

5 Press the **OK** button.
The sheet can now be removed.

6 Remove the sheet, keeping the front edge level as you pull it out.

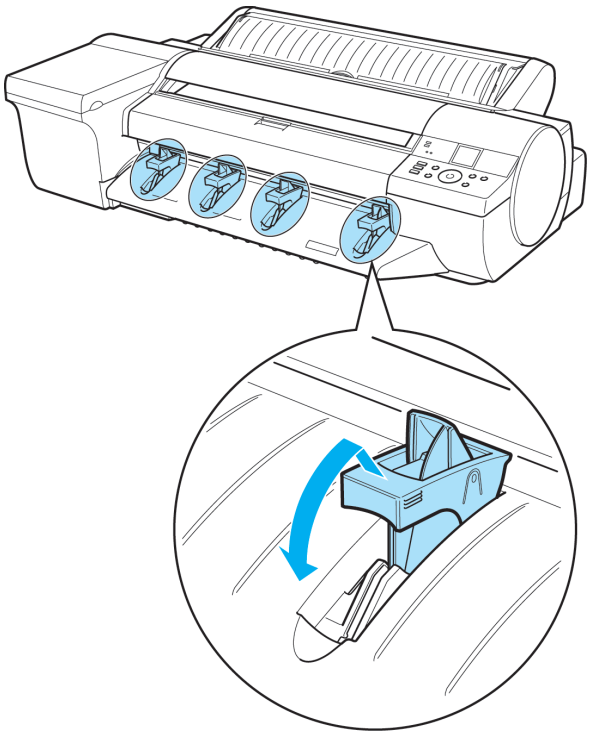


Important
- If **POP Board** is accidentally removed at an angle, it may scratch the printed surface.

7 Press the **OK** button.

Important
- Always remove the sheet before pressing the **OK** button. If you do not remove the sheet before step 7, it may go back inside the printer, leaving roller marks across the trailing edge of paper.

8 Lift the four Front Tray Guides above the Ejection Guide, store them toward the front, and then press the **OK** button.

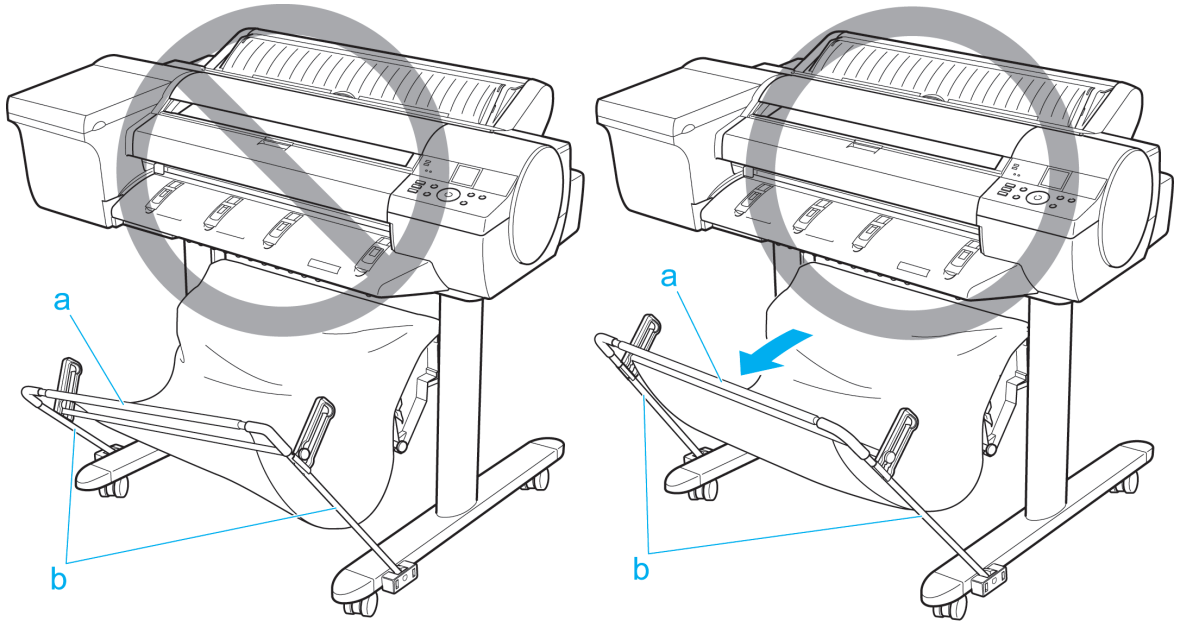


Output Stacker

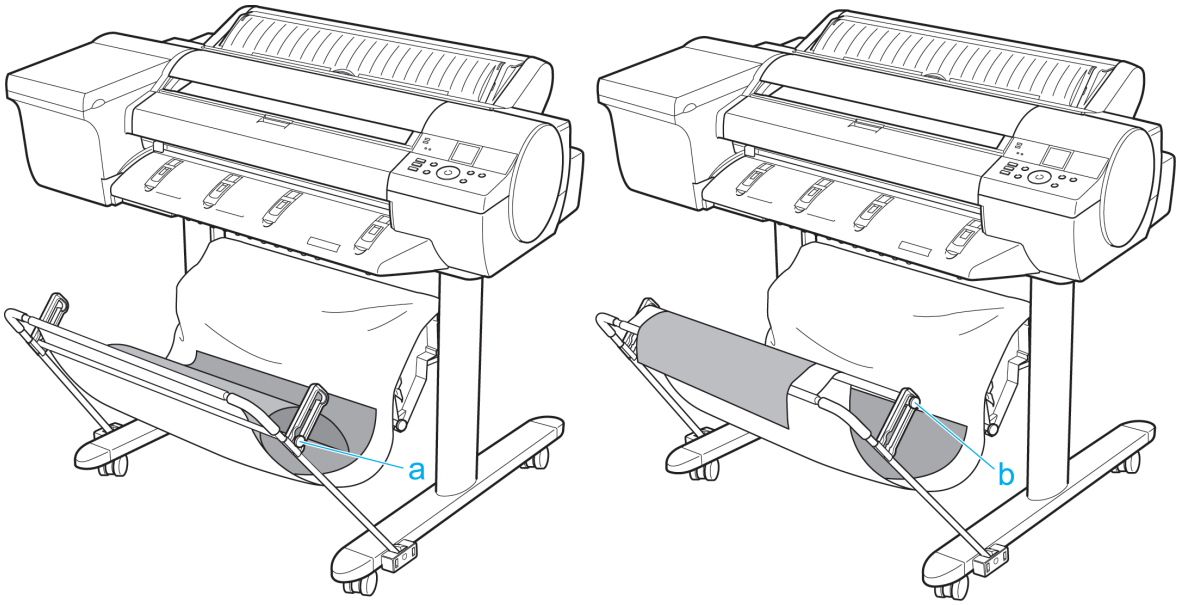
Output Stacker Precautions 542
Using the Output Stacker 543

Output Stacker Precautions

Documents can be stored in the Output Stacker after printing from rolls.
To use the Output Stacker, push down Basket Rod #1 (b) fully toward the front, keeping it even on the left and right so that Basket Rod #2 (a) is not slanted.



The Output Stacker can hold one sheet. When printing multiple pages, remove each sheet after it is printed.
Use the Output Stacker in the regular position (a). The stacker may also be used in the extended position (b) for some types of paper. The extended position enables easy removal after printing. For information on types of paper you can use with the stacker in extended position, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Types of Paper.**") ➔P.492

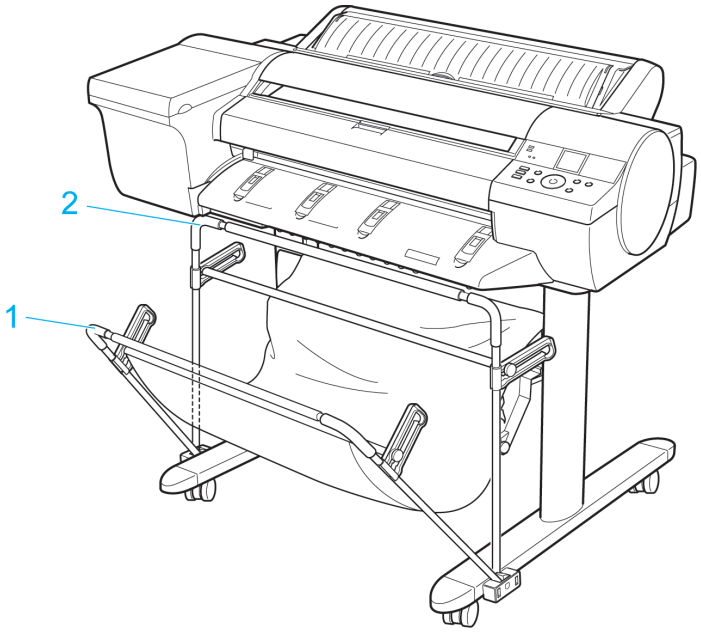


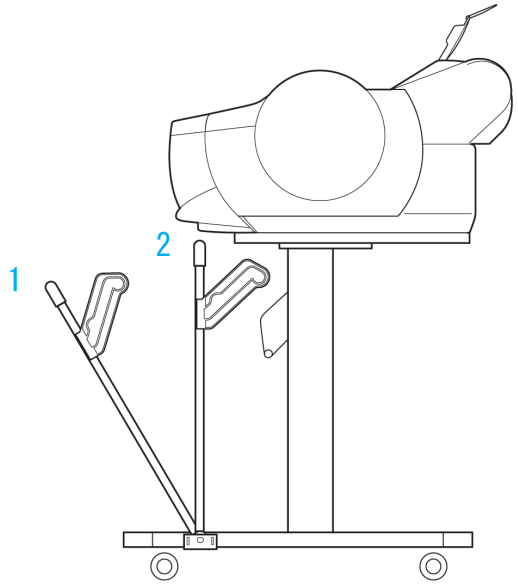
Important

- When performing color measurement using the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional), use it in the regular position (a). Do not use the extended position (b).

Using the Output Stacker

This topic describes how to use the Output Stacker.
Use the Output Stacker in position (1) when storing printed documents.
When the Output Stacker is not used, fold the stacker to stow it in position (2).

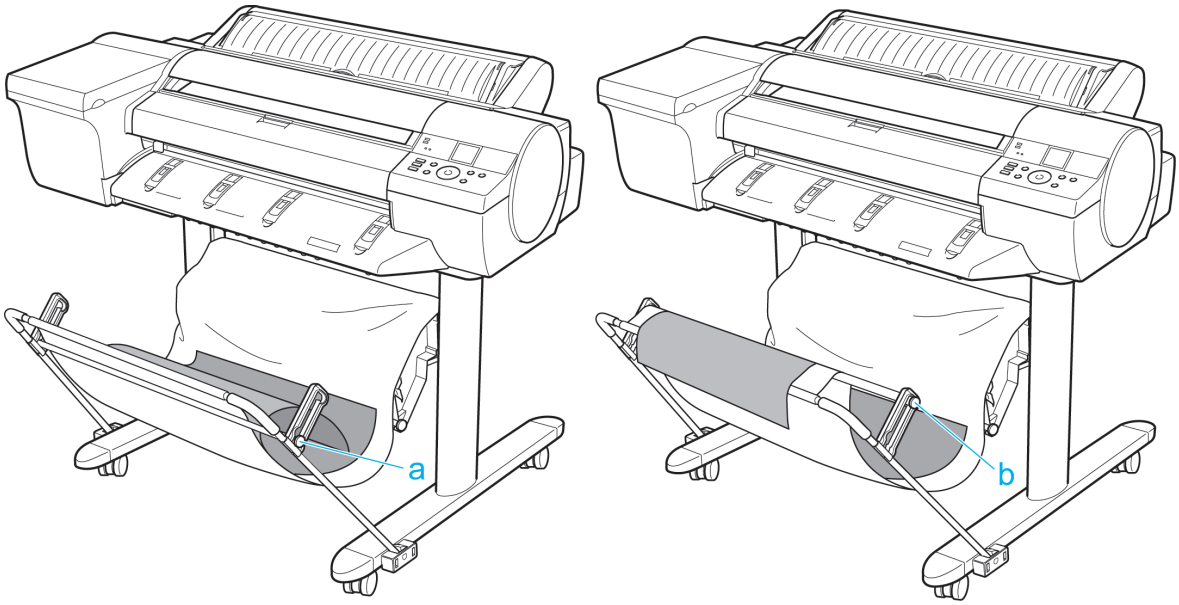


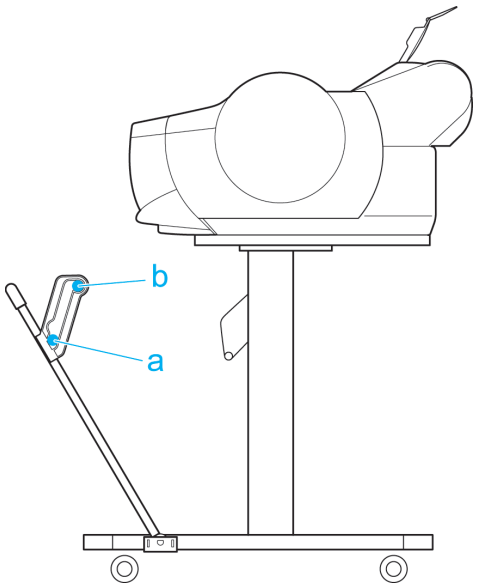


Important

- The Output Stacker can stack paper that is up to 36 inches (914.4 mm) in length. However, performing color measurement using the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) should be performed using paper of length 730 mm or less.
- The number of sheets that can fit in the Output Stacker is one sheet. When printing multiple pages, remove each sheet after it is printed.
- Before printing banners or other long documents, tap the Output Stacker. We recommend that you spread a clean cloth or paper on the floor and select **Eject** as the cutting method for rolls to prevent the printed surface from becoming dirty or scratched. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls**.") ➔P.516
- If you perform high density printing on thin paper, the paper may become warped and might not stack correctly in the Output Stacker. If this happens, use the Output Stacker folded up.

Use the Output Stacker in the regular position (a).
The stacker may also be used in the extended position (b) for some types of paper. To switch to the extended position, move the Support Rod to position (b). The extended position enables easy removal after printing.
For information on types of paper you can use with the stacker in extended position, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Types of Paper**.") ➔P.492





Important

- When performing color measurement using the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional), use it in the regular position (a). Do not use the extended position (b).

Media Configuration Tool (Windows)

The Features of Media Configuration Tool 546
Installation Procedures 547
Starting Method 549

Media Configuration Tool Main Window 550

Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper 551
Adding Media Types 552
Changing Media Names 555
Deleting Media Types You Have Added 557
Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide 558
Changing the Display Order of Media Types 560

Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper 561
Compatible Paper 563
Add Custom Paper 564
Delete Custom Paper 570
Edit Custom Paper 571
Export Custom Media Information 572
Import Custom Media Information 573
Create Calibration Target 574
Warnings 575

Checking the update 576

The Features of Media Configuration Tool

In imagePROGRAF, the best printer settings for each paper are collected together in media information files in order to give the highest quality printing results. Settings for Canon genuine paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are provided by Canon in these media information files.

Note

- Canon genuine paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are detailed in the Paper Reference Guide. Any other paper is called custom paper.

The Media Configuration Tool allows you to perform the following tasks.

- When supported paper has been newly added to the printer, you can add that media type to the printer control panel and printer driver by using the media information file provided by Canon.
- You can customize Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper media information files to create a media information file for custom paper (paper that is neither Canon genuine paper or feed confirmed paper), and add that media type to the printer control panel and printer driver.
  Furthermore, you can also import the created media information file into other computers and printers, and add media types to the printer drivers and printers of the computers where the data was imported.
- You can rearrange lists of the types of paper on the printer control panel and in printer driver dialog boxes and rename them, in addition to other functions.
- You can create a calibration target for performing color calibration using the custom paper, and register the calibration target in the printer.

Important

- Normally, the Media Configuration Tool is installed and the media information is configured when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM. Use this software if you want to add new media information or edit existing media information.
- Administration of paper information using the Media Configuration Tool should be performed by the printer administrator.

Drivers Applicable with Media Configuration Tool

- imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

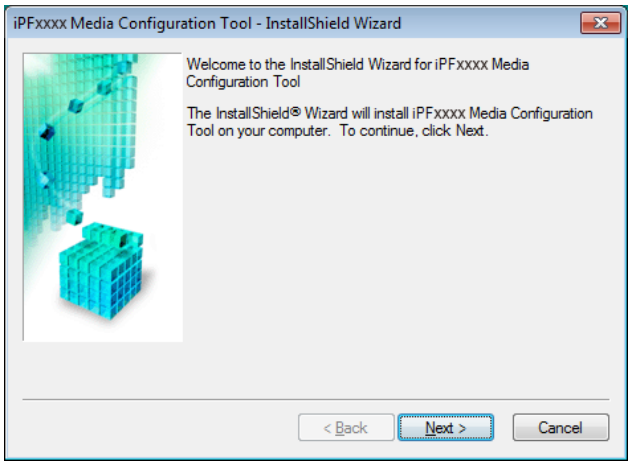
Installation Procedures

The Media Configuration Tool installation screen appears when you start the installation of a new version of the Media Configuration Tool. The installation procedure started from this screen is described below.

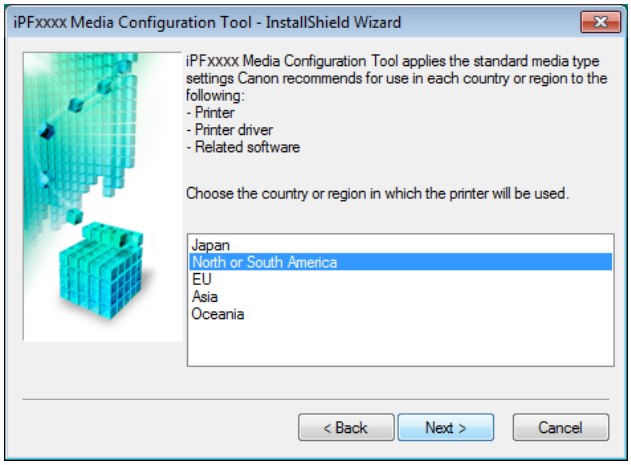
Important

- When you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM, the Media Configuration Tool is also installed and the media information is also configured. The following procedure is therefore not normally needed. Perform the following procedure if you are installing the Media Configuration Tool without using the User Software CD-ROM, such as by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the Canon website.
- You must be logged in as Administrator when installing software in Windows.

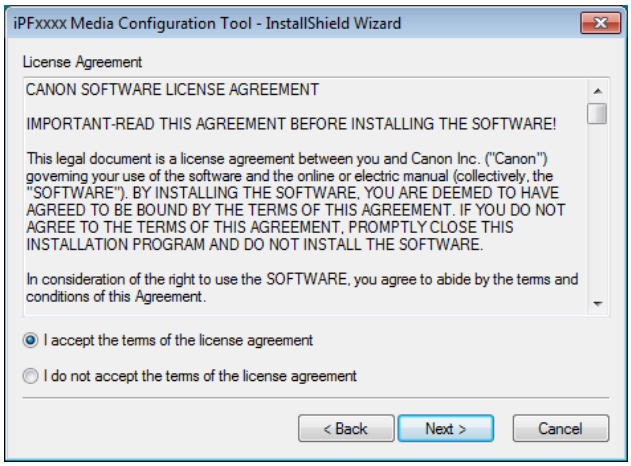
1 Start the Media Configuration Tool installer.
Click the **Next** button.



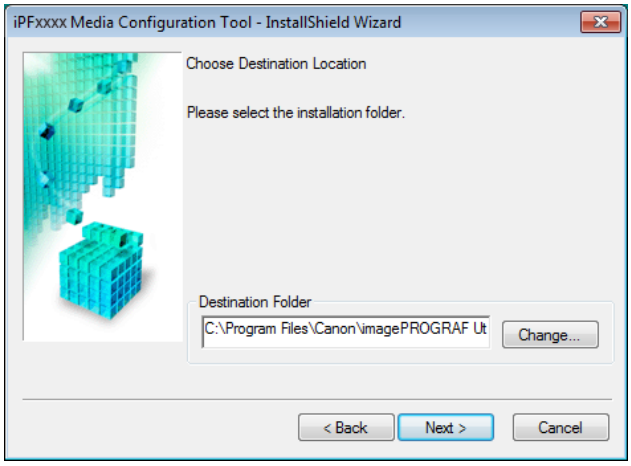
2 The next screen presents selections for the country or area where the printer is used.
Select a country or territory then click the **Next** button.



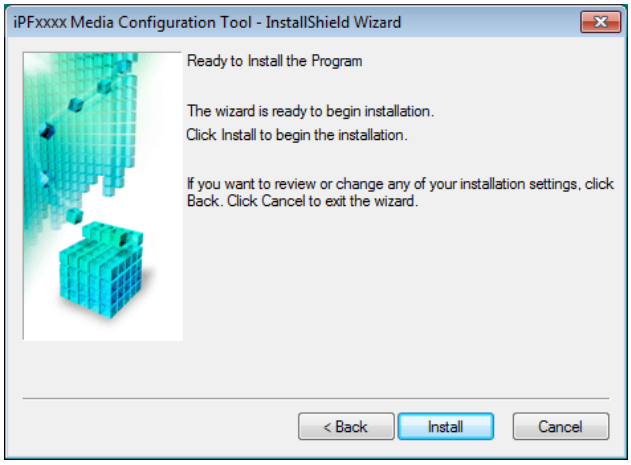
3 The **License Agreement** is displayed.
Select **I accept the terms of the license agreement** and click the **Next** button.



4 The **Choose Destination Location** screen appears.
Select the destination folder then click the **Next** button.

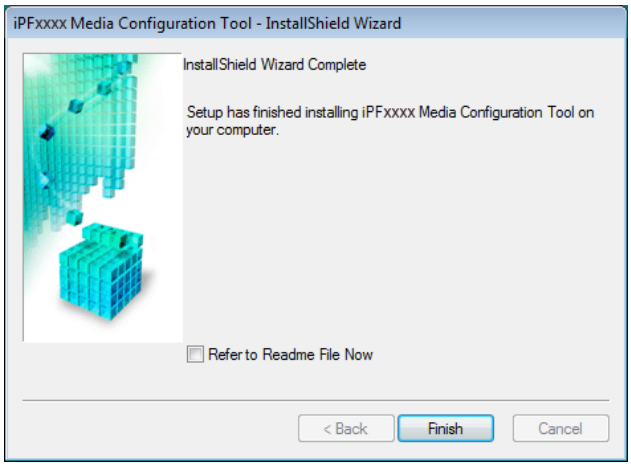


5 The **Ready to Install the Program** screen appears.
Click the **Install** button.



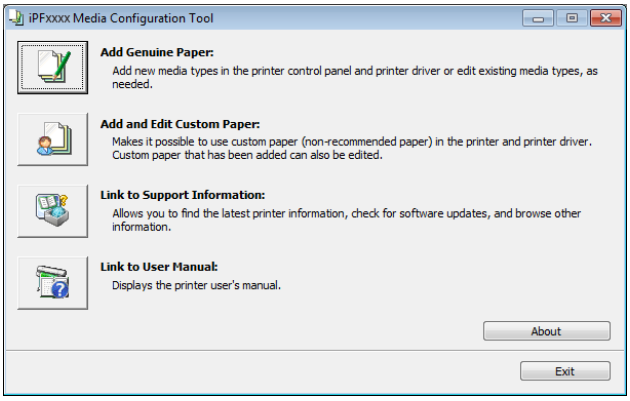
6 All the required files are copied to your computer and **InstallShield Wizard Complete** screen appears. Click the **Finish** button.

This completes the installation of Media Configuration Tool.



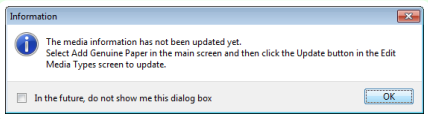
Starting Method

Follow the procedure below to start Media Configuration Tool.
From the **start** menu go to **All Programs** > **iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool** > **iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool**.
Media Configuration Tool main window is displayed.



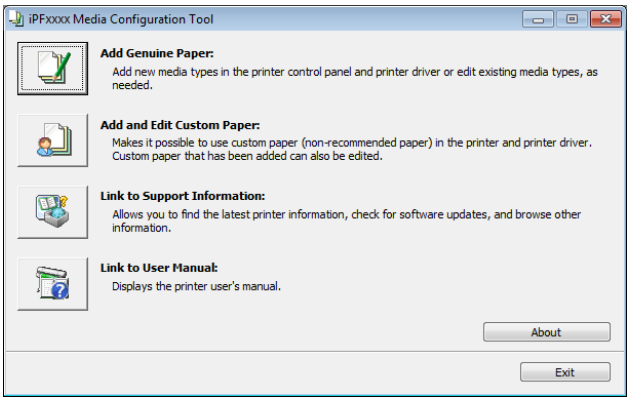
Note

- If you only start the Media Configuration Tool, the media information on the printer control panel and in the printer driver is not updated. If this screen is displayed, select **Add Genuine Paper** in the main window, and click the **Update** button in the **Edit Media Types** screen to update the media information.



Media Configuration Tool Main Window

The explanation below is on the Media Configuration Tool main window.



Note

- For the step to open the Media Configuration Tool main window, see "**Starting Method.**" →P.549

- **Add Genuine Paper** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Edit Media Types** dialog box is displayed, which allows you to add media information files released by Canon to the printer control panel and printer driver. You can also change names, toggle between displaying and hiding, and delete added media types.

  You can also change the display order of Canon genuine paper and custom paper.

  Refer to "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper**" →P.551 for details on **Add Genuine Paper**.

- **Add and Edit Custom Paper** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box is displayed, which allows you to added custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver.

  You can also create a calibration target for performing color calibration on added custom paper from the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box that opens when you click this button.

  Refer to "**Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper**" →P.561 for details on **Add and Edit Custom Paper**.

- **Link to Support Information** button

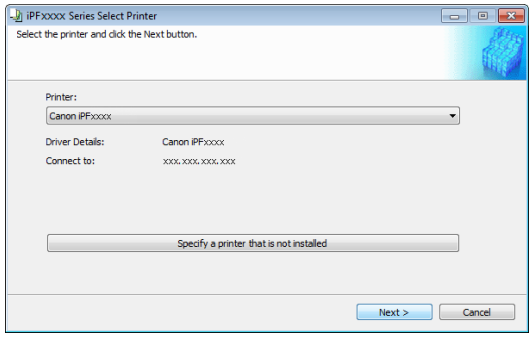
  You can check information such as the latest information for the product and software version upgrade information.

- **Link to User Manual** Button

  Displays the printer user's manual

Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper

To add genuine paper and feed confirmed paper to the printer control panel and printer driver and edit the media type information, click the **Add Genuine Paper** button in the Media Configuration Tool main window.
Confirm the printer, where media type information is to be updated, to be displayed in **Printer** in the **Select Printer** dialog box, and then click the **Next** button.

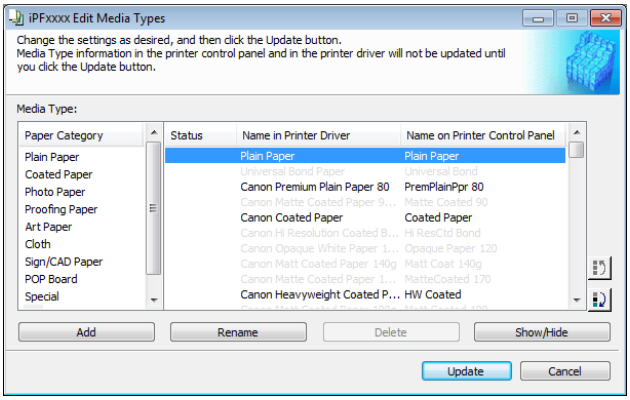


Communication with the printer begins.

Important
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

The **Edit Media Types** dialog box is displayed.

Note
- In the following screens, you cannot change the printer where media type information is to be updated.



Note
- Paper that is displayed grayed out does not appear in the printer driver or printer panel.

- **Add** Button

To add genuine paper or feed confirmed paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, click this button.
For details on the procedure for adding media types, see "**Adding Media Types**." →P.552

Important
- To add media types, download the media information file (.amf file) in advance from the Canon website.

- **Rename** Button

To change the name on the printer control panel and the name in the printer driver for genuine paper and feed confirmed paper, select the paper to change and click this button.

For details on the procedure for changing paper display names, see "**Changing Media Names.**" ➔P.555

- **Delete** Button

To delete added genuine paper and feed confirmed paper from the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to delete and click this button.

For details on the procedure for deleting added media types, see "**Deleting Media Types You Have Added.**" ➔P.557

- **Show/Hide** Button

To change whether or not genuine paper or feed confirmed paper is displayed in the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to change and click this button.

For details on the procedure for changing whether or not to display media types, see "**Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide.**" ➔P.558

- Change Display Order button (or)

To change the display order of a media type in the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to change and click this button.

For details on the procedure for changing the display order of media types, see "**Changing the Display Order of Media Types.**" ➔P.560

Note
- The display order for custom paper can also be changed.

Important
- When you update the media type information, perform the same update on all of the PCs that are using that printer.

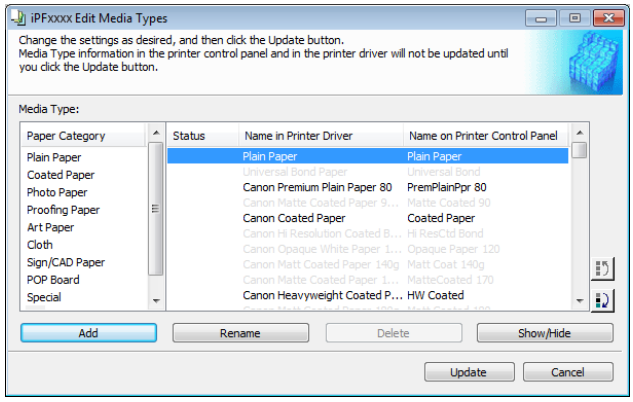
Note
- It may not be possible to deleting, showing/hiding, and changing the display order under some conditions.

Adding Media Types

Media information files (.amf files) released by Canon are registered in the printer control panel and printer driver.

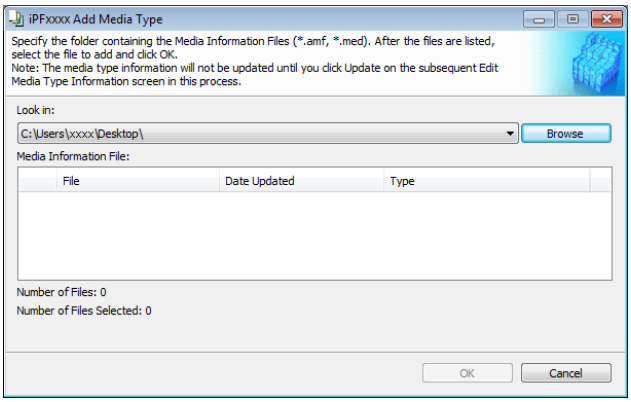
Important
- Do not perform printing on the target printer while adding the media types.
- Reinstalling Media Configuration Tool after registering a media information file may delete the registered media information file.In this case, first download and install latest Media Configuration Tool, then download and register the required media information file.

1 Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, and then click the **Add** button.

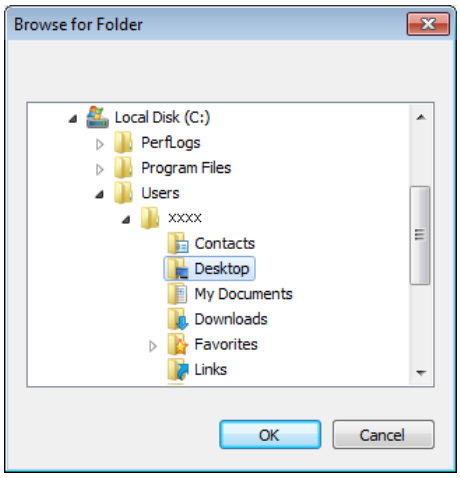


Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, see "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" ➔P.551

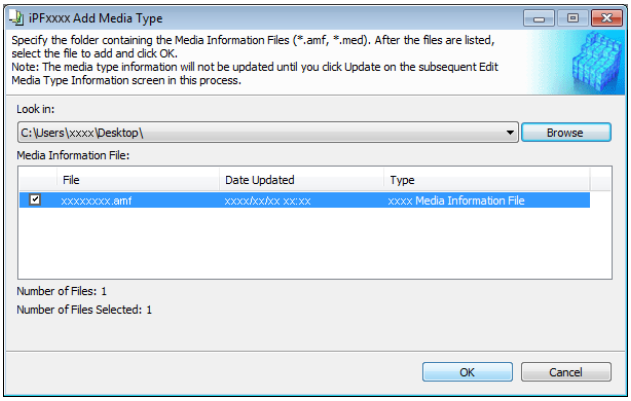
2 The **Add Media Type** dialog box displays. Click the **Browse** button.



3 Open the folder that contains the media information files (.amf files).



4 The names of the media information files contained in the selected folder are displayed in **Media Information File** in the **Add Media Type** dialog box. Select the check box for the paper you want to add and click the **OK** button.

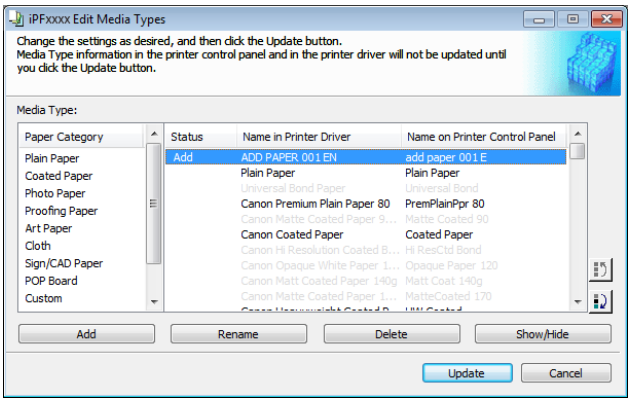


Note

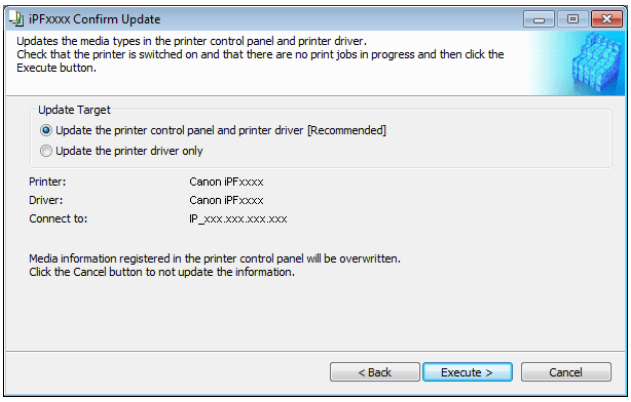
- If **Master Media Information File** is displayed as the **Type** of the **Media Information File**, the media type display order and media type display/non-display settings are initialized. Reconfigure these after added the master media information file.

5 Click **OK** when the confirmation message is displayed.

6 In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



7 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button. Communication with the printer begins.



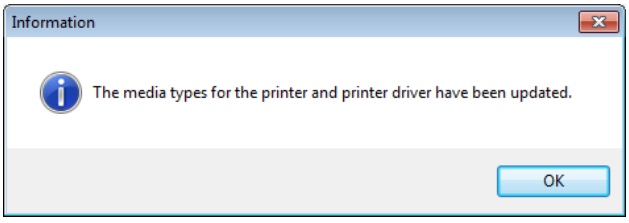
Note

- You should normally select **Update the printer control panel and printer driver**.

Important

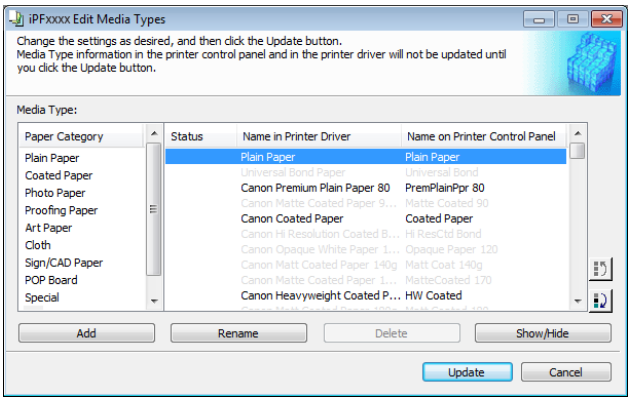
- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

8 Click the **OK** button.



Changing Media Names

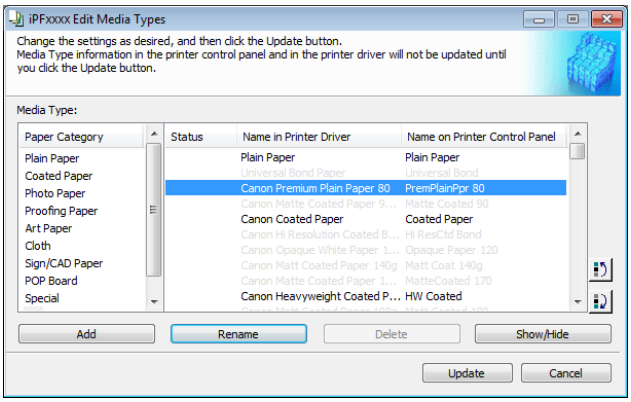
1 Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



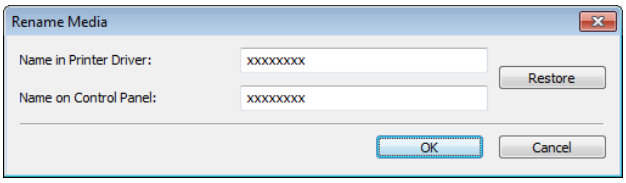
Note

- For details on the procedure for opening the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, see "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" ➔P.551

2 In the **Media Type** list, select the name to change. Click the **Rename** button.



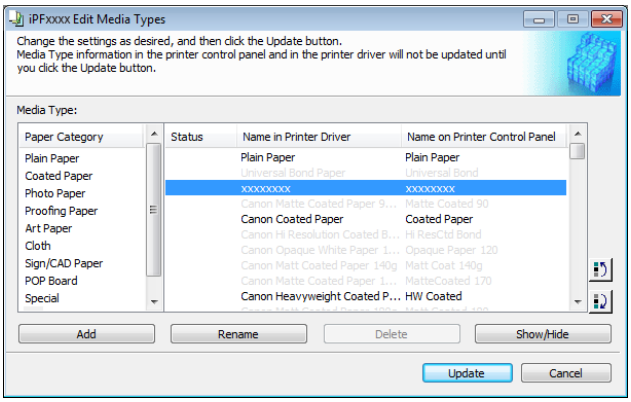
3 The **Rename Media** dialog box is displayed. Edit the names in **Name in Printer Driver** and **Name on Control Panel** and click the **OK** button.



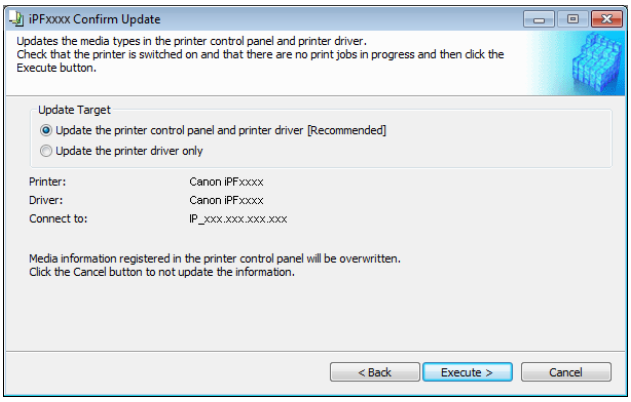
Note

- To restore the original names, click the **Restore** button.
- The characters that can be entered for **Name in Printer Driver** and **Name on Control Panel** are stated below.
  alphanumeric, space, "-", ".", "_", "(", ")", "+", "%", ",", "/"
- For **Name in Printer Driver** up to 32 one Byte characters can be entered, and for **Name on Control Panel** up to 16 one Byte characters can be entered.

4 In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



5 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button. Communication with the printer begins.



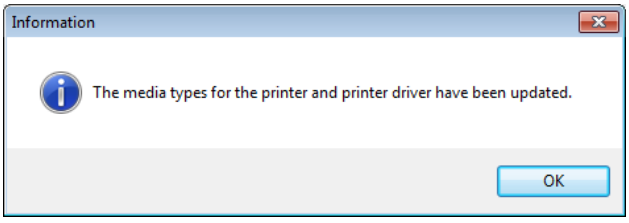
Note

- You should normally select **Update the printer control panel and printer driver**.

Important

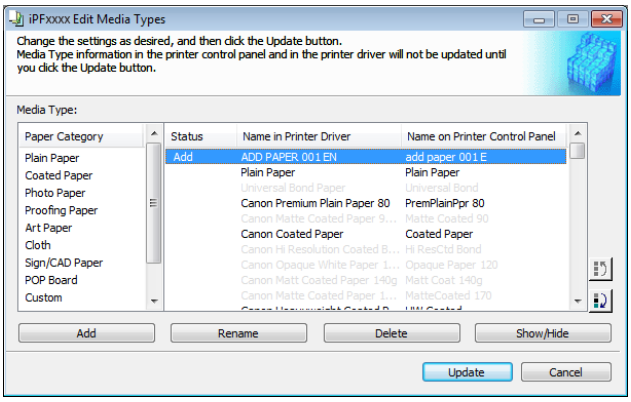
- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

6 Click the **OK** button.



Deleting Media Types You Have Added

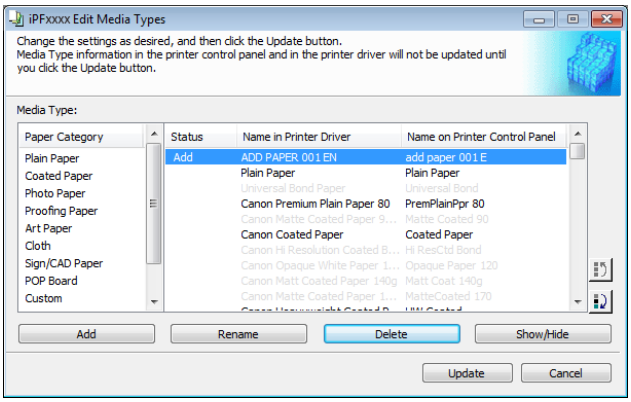
1 Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



Note

- For details on the procedure for opening the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, see "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" ➔P.551

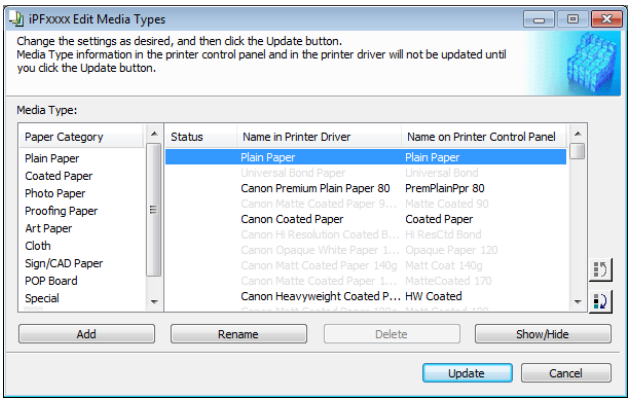
2 In the **Media Type** list, select the name of the media to delete.
Click the **Delete** button.



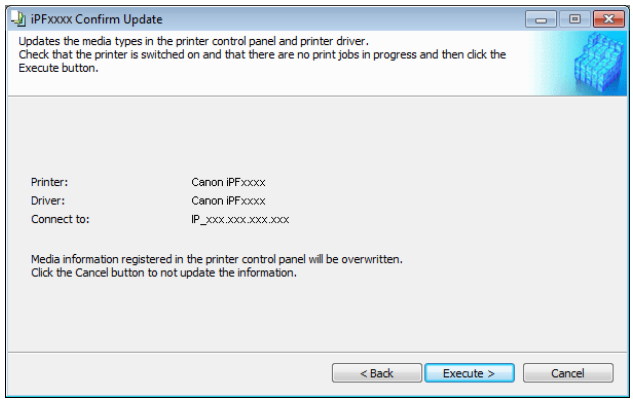
Note

- Only paper for which **Status** in the **Media Type** is **Add** can be deleted.

3 In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.

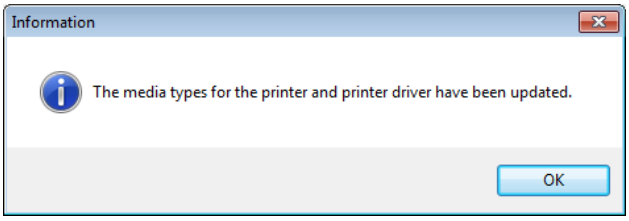


4 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed.
Click the **Execute** button.
Communication with the printer begins.



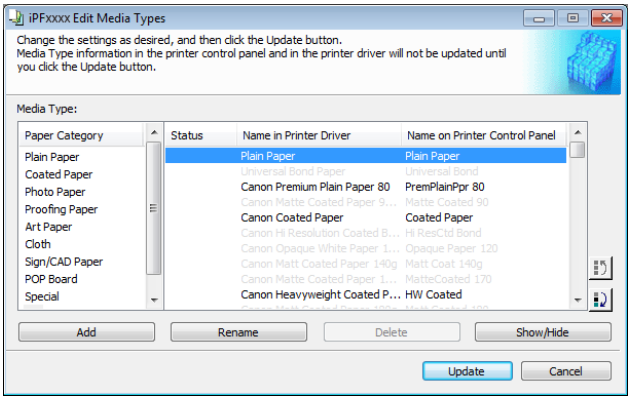
Important
- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

5 Click the **OK** button.



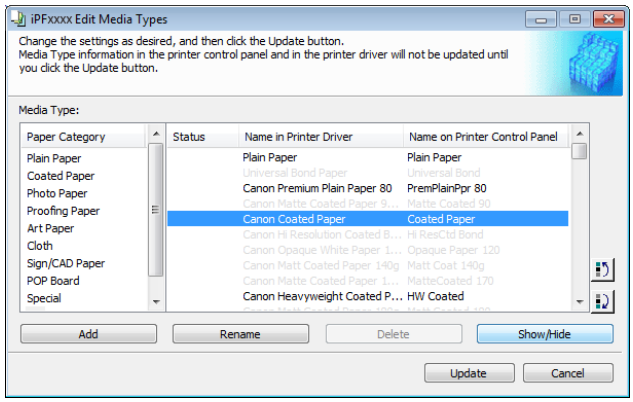
Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide

1 Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



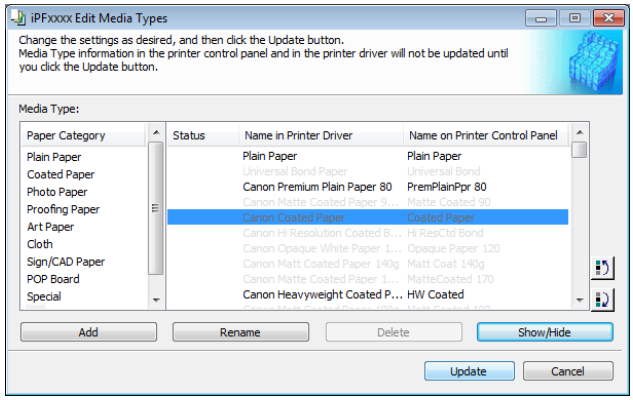
Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, see "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" →P.551

2 In the **Media Type** list, select the name of the media to switch off or on for display.
Click the **Show/Hide** button.
The selected paper is alternately shown or hidden.

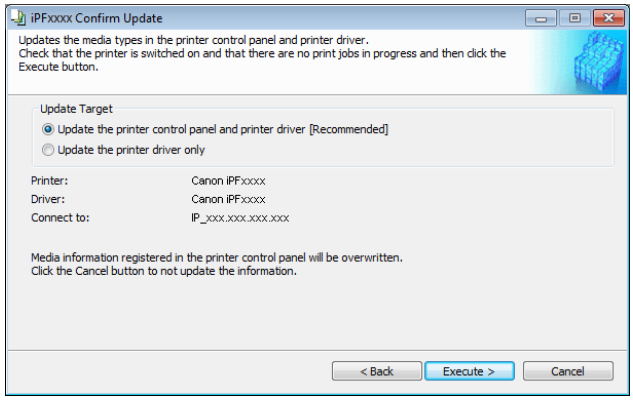


Note
- You can select multiple paper.
- The names of media switched for non-display appear grayed out in the **Media Type** list.
- Each time you click the **Show/Hide** button, the display mode cycles from showing both the printer driver and printer panel, to hiding both the printer driver and printer panel, and then to showing only the printer panel.

3 In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



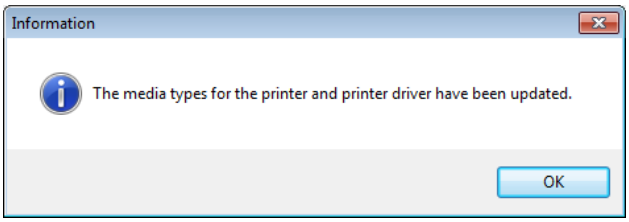
4 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed.
Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button.
Communication with the printer begins.



Note
- You should normally select **Update the printer control panel and printer driver**.

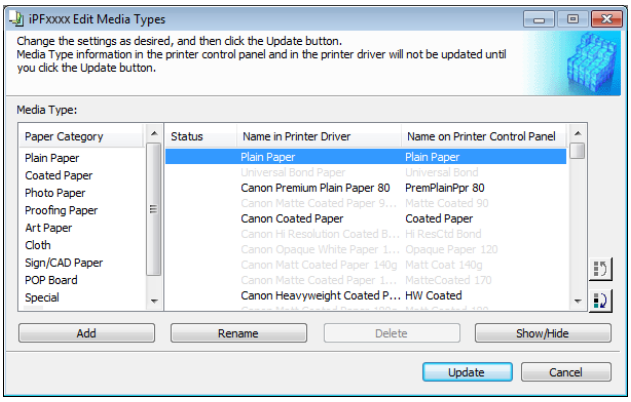
Important
- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

5 Click the **OK** button.



Changing the Display Order of Media Types

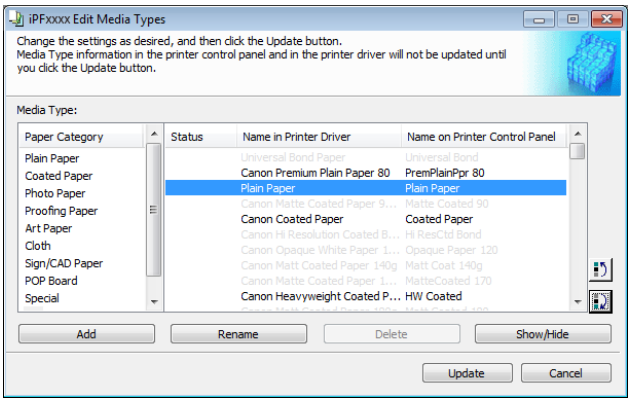
1 Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



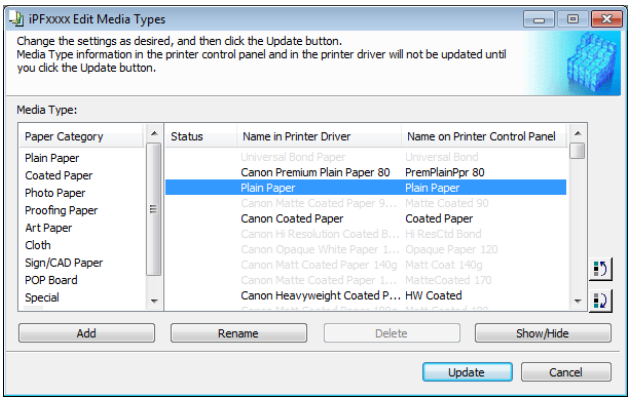
Note

- For details on the procedure for opening the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, see "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" →P.551

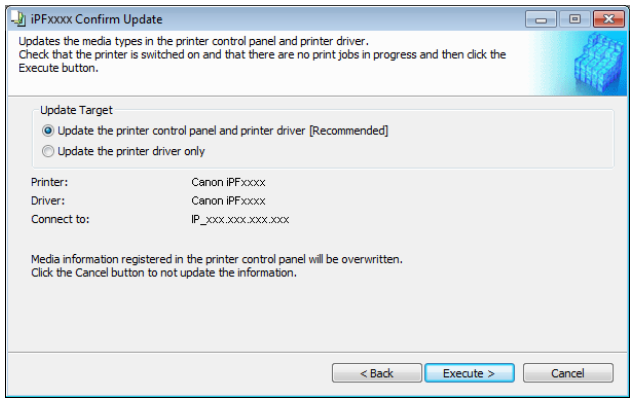
2 Select the paper in the **Media Type** list for which to change the display order, and then click the buttons to move the item (or).
The selected item moves one line up or down for every button click.



3 In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



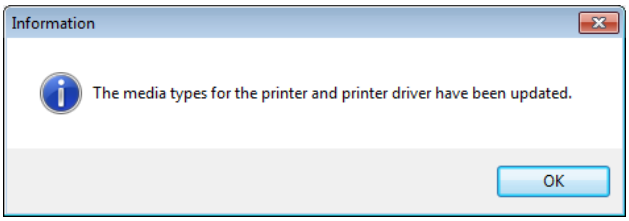
4 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed.
Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button.
Communication with the printer begins.



Note
- You should normally select **Update the printer control panel and printer driver**.

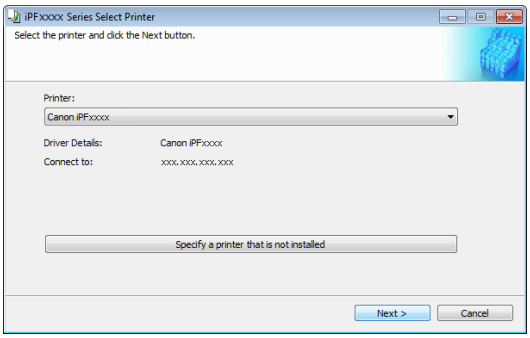
Important
- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

5 Click the **OK** button.



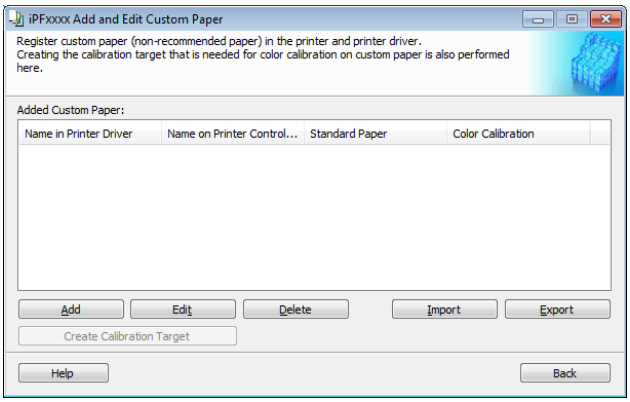
Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper

To add paper other than Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, and export and import the media information file for that paper, click the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** button in the Media Configuration Tool main window.
Confirm the printer, where media type information is to be updated, to be displayed in **Printer** in the **Select Printer** dialog box, and then click the **Next** button.



Communication with the printer begins.
The **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box is displayed.

Note
- In the following screens, you cannot change the printer where media type information is to be updated.
- Custom paper is paper other than Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper (paper that is detailed in the Paper Reference Guide).



- **Added Custom Paper**

Added custom paper is displayed here.

- **Name in Printer Driver**
  Added custom paper is displayed in the printer driver using this name.
- **Name on Printer Control Panel**
  Added custom paper is displayed on the printer control panel using this name.
- **Standard Paper**
  Displays the paper selected as the standard paper when the custom paper was added.
- **Color Calibration**
  Displays whether or not color calibration can be executed in the control panel and imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console.
  In order to perform color calibration, you need to create a calibration target and register the calibration target in the printer in advance.

Setting	Details
Can execute	Color calibration **Auto Adjust** and **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** can be executed.
Only Auto Adjust (High Precision) allowed	Color calibration **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** can be executed. **Auto Adjust** cannot be executed.
Target not registered	Color calibration cannot be executed because the calibration target is not registered in the printer.
Cannot execute	Color calibration cannot be executed on this paper.

Note

- The optional spectrophotometer unit is required in order to create a calibration target.

- **Add** Button

To add new custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, click this button.
For details on the procedure for adding custom paper, see "**Add Custom Paper**." →P.564

- **Edit** Button

To change the settings of added custom paper, select the paper to edit and click this button.
For details on the procedure for changing custom paper settings, see "**Edit Custom Paper**." →P.571

- **Delete** Button

To delete added custom paper from the printer control panel and printer driver in your computer, select the paper to delete and click this button.
For details on the procedure for deleting custom paper, see "**Delete Custom Paper**." →P.570

- **Import** Button

To add custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver by importing a Custom Media Information File saved in a folder, click this button.

The Custom Media Information File is common to the iPF6400S, iPF8400S, and iPF9400S.

If an imported custom media information file contains calibration target information, the calibration target is also registered in the printer main unit.

For details on the procedure for importing a Custom Media Information File, see "**Import Custom Media Information.**" ➔P.573

- **Export** Button

To export media information for added custom paper to a file, select the paper to export and click this button.

For custom paper where a calibration target has been created, the calibration target information is also exported to the file.

For details on the procedure for exporting media information for custom paper, see "**Export Custom Media Information.**" ➔P.572

- **Create Calibration Target** Button

To create a calibration target for added custom paper, select the paper and click this button.

For details on the procedure for creating a calibration target, see "**Create Calibration Target.**" ➔P.574

Important

- When adding custom paper, designate a computer for managing paper in advance and always add custom paper from that computer. To use that custom paper on other computers, first export the Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) for that custom paper from the computer for managing paper, and then import it into another computer for use.
- To use a Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) created outside of the network where the target printer is being used, first import it into the computer for managing paper. If you also want to use it on other computers, import and use a Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) newly exported from the computer for managing paper.
- When importing a Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) that was created on the computer for managing paper, first delete custom paper that does not exist on the computer for managing paper.
- When deleting custom paper, make the same changes on all of the other PCs that use the target printer.
- When using custom paper in another printer, always add the custom paper to that printer before use.

Note

- Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper cannot be changed from this dialog box. Refer to "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper**" ➔P.551 .
- Changing the display order of media types displayed in the printer control panel and printer driver is performed from the **Edit Media Types** dialog box regardless of whether it is Canon genuine paper or custom paper. Refer to "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper**" ➔P.551 .

Compatible Paper

Paper specifications

Refer to "Specifications" and "Paper" for specifications such as thickness and size of paper that can be added as custom paper (See "**Specifications.**") ➔P.1000

Notes on the operating environment

In low humidity environments (below 40%), your printer may develop the following problems.

- Paper becomes curled or wrinkled.
- Paper and the printhead are more likely to touch each other, resulting in a scratched print surface or damaged printhead.
- The cut printed matter sticks to the printer and will not fall down (film media).
- Paper sticks to the printer, making its transfer impossible and preventing its normal ejection (film media).
- Uneven printing (film media)

In high humidity environments (over 60%), your printer may develop the following problems.

- Printed matter will not dry.
- Wavy paper surface
- Cut edges are ragged (fabric media).
- Margins remain due to borderless printing.

Important
- Canon offers absolutely no guarantees regarding the print quality or paper feed properties of customer paper (paper that is not Canon genuine paper or Canon feed confirmed paper).

Add Custom Paper

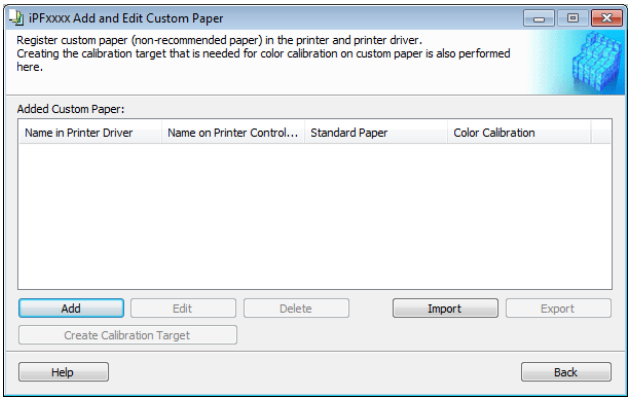
In order to add new custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, first select the media type to use as the basis from among the Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper. Add this as custom paper after making various changes to the standard paper as necessary.

Important
- Canon offers absolutely no guarantees regarding the print quality or paper feed properties of customer paper.
- For genuine Canon paper and Canon feed confirmed paper, print using the media type as recommended in the Paper Reference Guide. The print quality and feed properties are not guaranteed if you use Add Custom Paper in the Media Configuration Tool.
- Do not execute printing on the target printer while adding custom paper.
- When adding custom paper, check the specifications of paper that can be added using **"Compatible Paper"** ➔P.563 .

1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

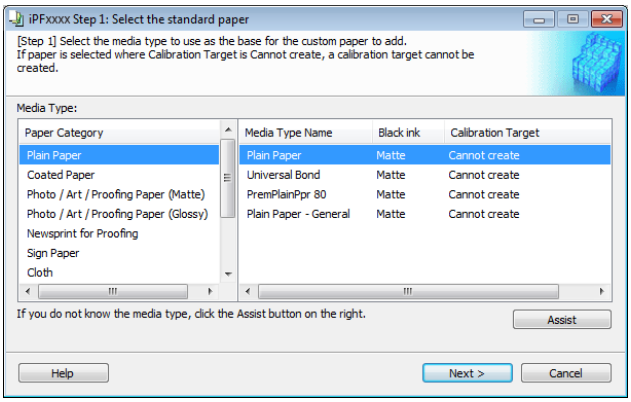
Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see **"Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper."** ➔P.561

2 Click the **Add** button.



3 The **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box is displayed. In **Paper Category**, select the category of media type to use as the basis of the custom paper you are adding.

Important
- Select the category that you think is the closest to the custom paper you are adding.

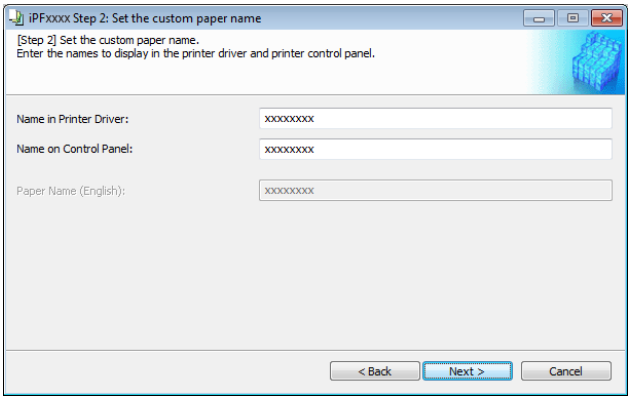


4 The media type names of the Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper within the selected category are shown in **Media Type Name**. Select the media type to use as the basis of the custom paper, and click the **Next** button.

Note

- If you do not know which media type to use as the basis of the custom paper, click the **Assist** button to open the **Media Type Selection Assistance** dialog box, and then set either the **Weight (grammage)** or the **Thickness**. The Media Configuration Tool automatically selects the appropriate paper from the selected paper category. Alternatively, select the media type called **General** from among the displayed **Media Type Name**.
- Depending on the selected category, there might not be a media type called **General**.
- Depending on the selected category, the **Assist** button may be disabled.
- Standard paper where **Cannot create** is displayed in **Calibration Target**, the calibration target for executing color calibration cannot be created in the control panel and imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console.
- For custom paper added using standard paper where **Can create for Auto Adjust (High Precision)** is displayed in **Calibration Target**, the calibration target for executing color calibration **Auto Adjust** cannot be created in the control panel and imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console. A calibration target can only be created for executing **Auto Adjust (High Precision)**.

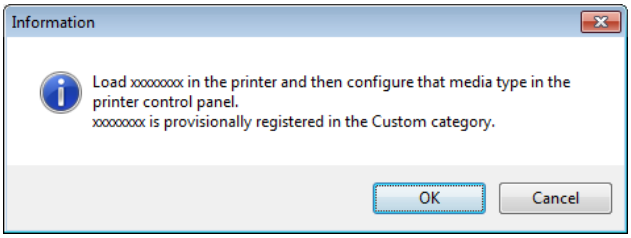
5 The **Step 2: Set the custom paper name** dialog box is displayed.
Enter an arbitrary name to display in the printer control panel and printer driver, and then click the **Next** button.



Note

- Depending on the selected standard paper, you might not be able to input the **Name in Printer Driver** and add the created custom paper to the printer driver. To use the custom paper in the printer driver, create it by changing the standard paper to another paper.
- The characters that can be entered for **Name in Printer Driver** and **Name on Control Panel** are stated below.
  alphanumeric, space, "-", ".", "_", "(", ")", "+", "%", ",", "/"
- For **Name in Printer Driver** up to 32 one Byte characters can be entered, and for **Name on Control Panel** up to 16 one Byte characters can be entered.
- **Paper Name (English)** is used in keeping track of the amount of roll paper left, in status print, etc.
  For **Paper Name (English)** up to 16 one Byte characters can be entered.

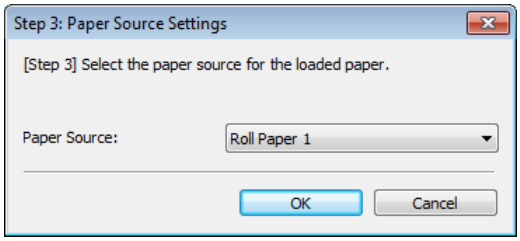
6 Load the custom paper in the printer and then click the **OK** button.



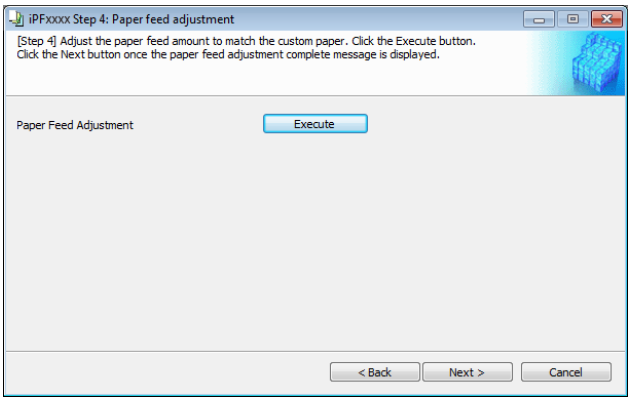
Important

- Do not load paper that is curled or that has already been printed on.

7 The **Step 3: Paper Source Settings** dialog box is displayed. Select the paper source where the custom paper is loaded and then click the **OK** button.



8 The **Step 4: Paper feed adjustment** dialog box is displayed. Click the **Execute** button to execute paper feed adjustment.
The adjustment pattern is printed, and the paper feed is automatically adjusted based on the printing result.
Once the paper feed adjustment is complete, click the **Next** button.



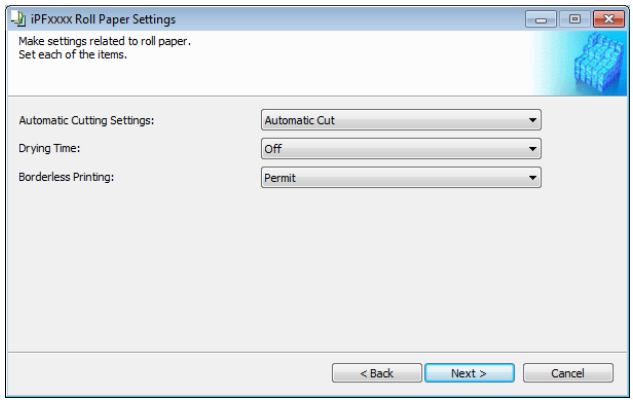
Important

- Check that there is no paper left on the ejection guide.
- If **Paper Feed Adjustment** is not executed, horizontal stripes with different color tones may appear in the printed material. Paper feed adjustment does not need to be executed more than once. Execute paper feed adjustment only once each time you add a custom paper.

9 The **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box is displayed.

Note

- If a paper source other than **Roll Paper** is selected in the **Step 3: Paper Source Settings** dialog box, this screen is not displayed.



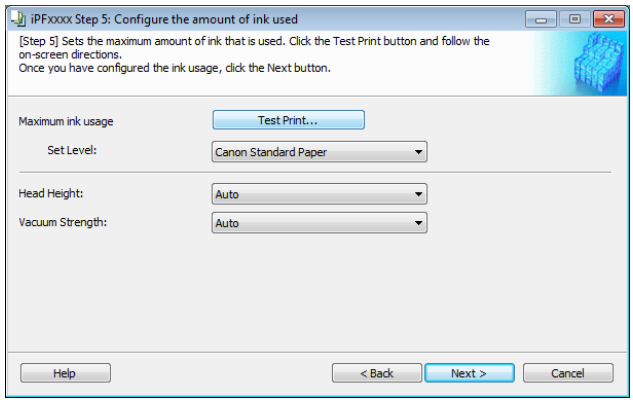
Configure the following settings as necessary, and then click the **Next** button.

Setting	Details
Automatic Cutting Settings	Configures the method for cutting roll paper when it is ejected after printing. • **Automatic Cut**:Roll paper is automatically cut by the cutter unit. • **Eject Cut**:When the **Cut** key is pressed on the printer control panel, the roll paper is cut by the cutter unit. Select this if you do not want the printed material to drop immediately after printing, such as to wait for the ink to dry. • **User Cut**:Cutting is not performed by the cutter unit. Cut the roll paper using scissors after each sheet. Select this for paper that cannot be cut by the cutter unit.
Drying Time	Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. • **Off**:Ejects immediately after printing finishes. • **30 sec./1 min./3 min./5 min./10 min./30 min./60 min.**:Ejects after the specified time has elapsed after printing finishes.
Borderless Printing	Configures whether or not to permit borderless printing. • **Permit**: Borderless printing is permitted. • **Deny**: Borderless printing is denied.

Important

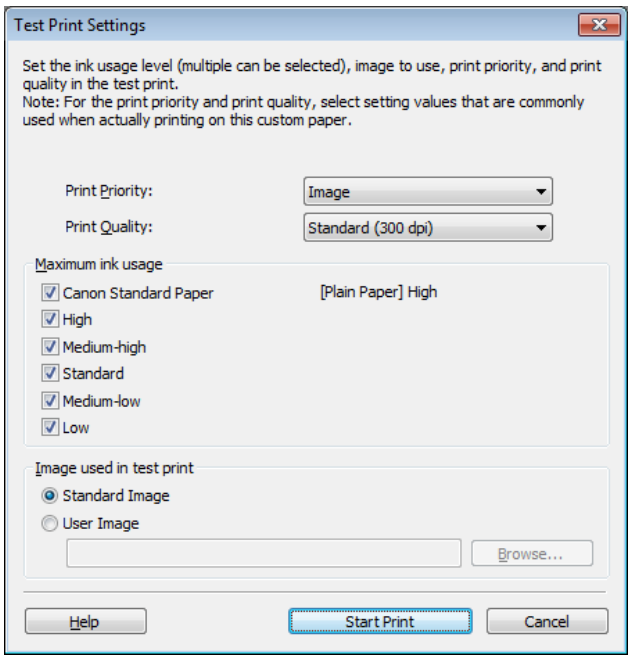
- Depending on the paper, there are types that cannot be cut by the cutter unit, and types that speed deterioration of the blade and cause damage to the cutter. For thick paper, hard paper, etc. do not use the cutter unit, and instead cut the roll paper using scissors, etc. after printing. In this case, select **User Cut** as the **Automatic Cutting Settings**.
- If borderless printing is performed on paper where the ink drying is poor, the cutter unit may leave scratches where it touches the printed surface, or may not cut correctly. In this kind of situation, configure the amount of time to wait for the ink to dry after printing using **Drying Time**. Alternatively, if the paper cannot be cut well by the cutter, set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut** and cut the roll paper using scissors, etc.
- Paper where borderless printing can be performed is limited by the media type and roll paper width. Refer to "**Compatible Paper**" →P.563 .
- For custom paper where there is a need to set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut**, set the **Borderless Printing** to **Deny**.

10 The **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box is displayed.
The upper limit on the amount of ink used to print to the custom paper is set on this screen by selecting from among several levels.
First, click the **Test Print** button to perform a test print of each level.

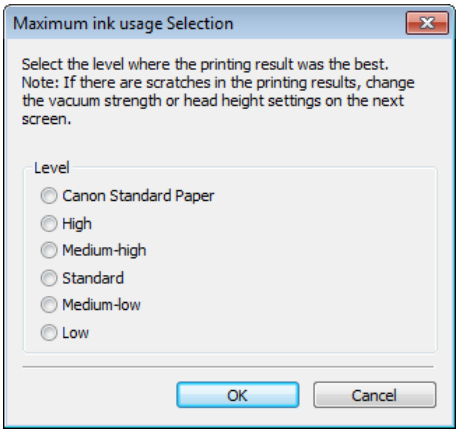


Note
- If a standard paper that does not display the **Name in Printer Driver** is selected in the screen in Step 5, you cannot perform test prints or configure the maximum amount of ink to use.

11 The **Test Print Settings** dialog box is displayed.
Select the print priority and print quality of the test print using **Print Priority** and **Print Quality**.
Set the level to test print using **Maximum ink usage** and the image to use using **Image used in test print**, and then click the **Start Print** button.



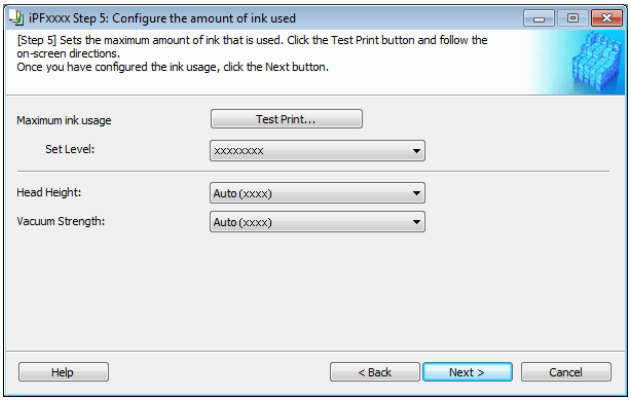
12 Determine and set the ink level that is thought to give the best visual test print results with no bleeding or scraping of ink.



Note

- Select the optimal ink level by referring to the help.
- If you cannot obtain sufficiently high quality printing no matter which maximum ink usage level you select, use the **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box to change the paper that is the basis of the custom paper to another paper.
- Because this settings imposes an upper limit on the amount of ink used during printing, the printing result might not change even if the level is changed depending on the image.
- The color tone cannot be configured using the Media Configuration Tool. Although the color tone may change when the maximum ink usage is changed, at this point you should select the optimal level by only focusing on bleeding and scraping of ink. If the color tone needs to be adjusted, provide an ICC color profile that matches the paper you are using, and select that ICC color profile in your software. For details on how to specify the ICC profile in the printer driver, see "**Matching Sheet** ." ➔P.175
- Depending on the maximum ink usage setting, some of the print qualities in the printer driver may become unselectable.

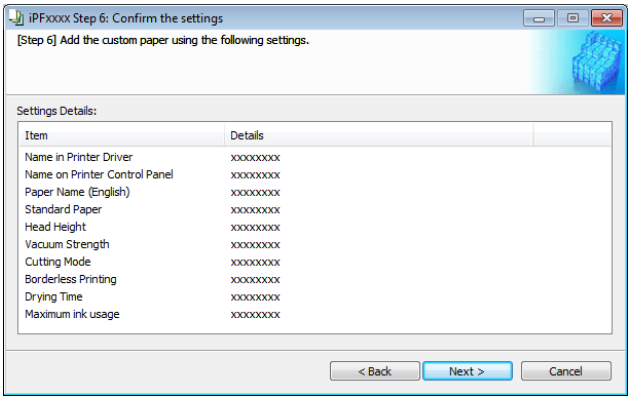
13 Configure **Head Height** and **Vacuum Strength** as required and click the **Next** button.
Usually, these do not need to be set.



Important

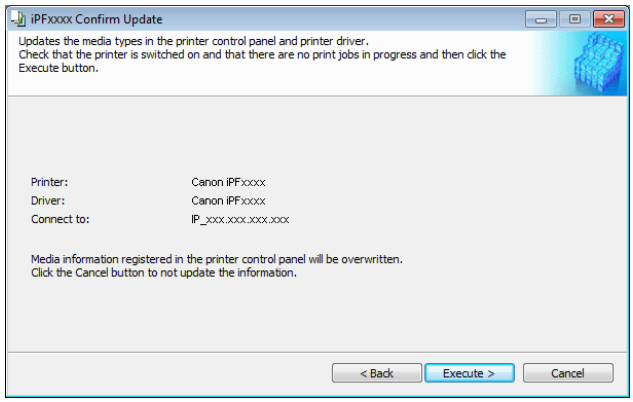
- If you set the **Head Height** lower than the automatically set height in parentheses ( ), check that the printhead does not rub against the paper. (If the printhead rubs against the paper, there will be scratches in the printing results.) If the printhead rubs against the paper, this can cause damage to the printhead.
- If you change the **Vacuum Strength**, check that the printhead is not rubbing against the paper. (If the printhead rubs against the paper, there will be scratches in the printing results.) If the printhead rubs against the paper, this can cause damage to the printhead.
- For details on the **Head Height** and **Vacuum Strength**, refer to the help.

14 The **Step 6: Confirm the settings** dialog box is displayed.
Configure the settings of the custom paper, and then click the **Next** button.



15 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Confirm the updates and then click the **Execute** button.

The custom paper is added to the control panel of the printer and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.



Important
- If you have added custom paper with the **POP Board / Cardboard** category as the Standard Paper, remove the loaded custom paper from the printer.

Note
- When the custom paper is correctly added to the printer driver, the name of the added custom paper is displayed in the **Edit Media Types** dialog box that is opened by **Add Genuine Paper** in the Media Configuration Tool window.

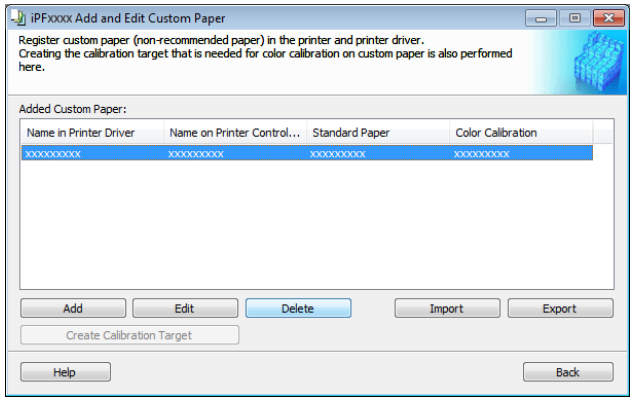
Delete Custom Paper

You can delete custom paper that you have already added from printer control panel and from the printer driver of the PC you are using.

1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see **"Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper."** ➔P.561

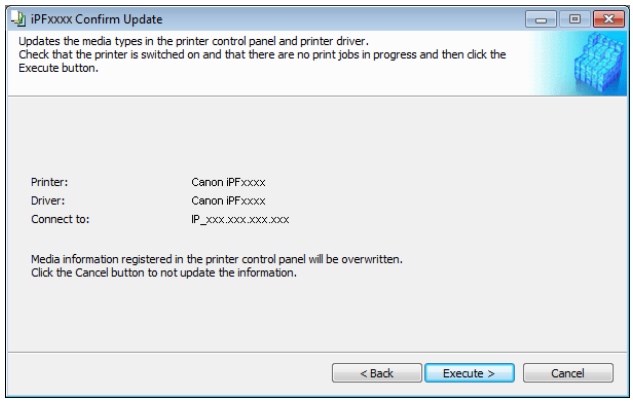
2 Select the paper you want to delete from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Delete** button.



Note
- You can select multiple paper.

3 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Confirm the updates and then click the **Execute** button.

The custom paper is deleted from the control panel of the printer and from the printer driver of the PC you are using.



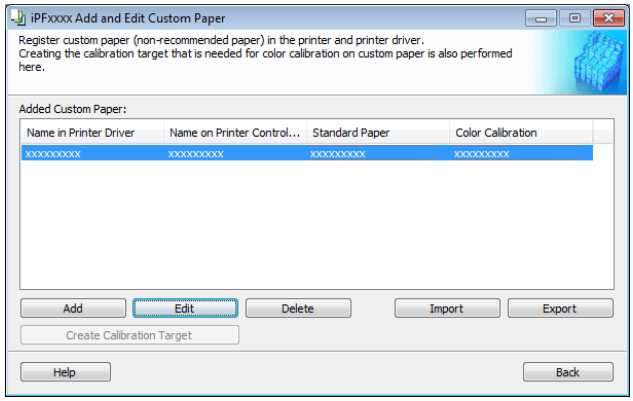
Edit Custom Paper

You can change the settings of custom paper you have already added.

1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

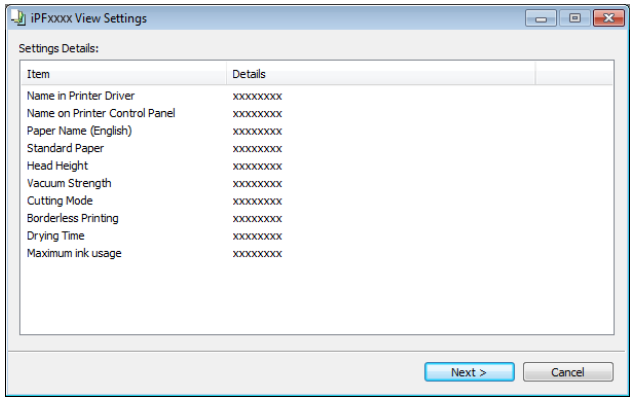
Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see "**Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" ➔P.561

2 Select the paper you want to edit from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Edit** button.



3 The View Settings dialog box is displayed.

Follow the on-screen directions and change the settings as required.



Note
- Refer to Steps 5 to 15 of the "**Add Custom Paper**" ➔P.564 for details on how to configure each setting.

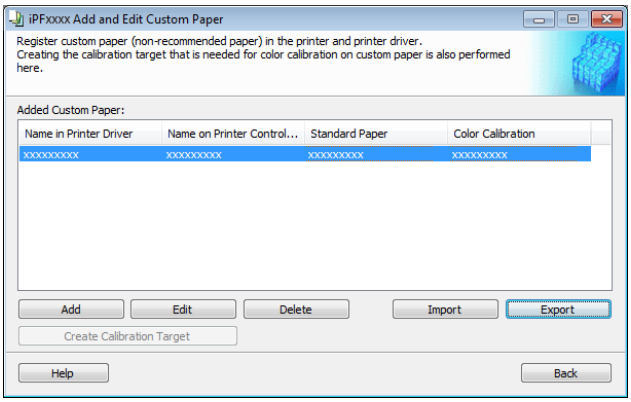
Export Custom Media Information

You can export to file and save media information about custom paper that you have added.
The saved Custom Media Information File can be used by importing it into another printer or PC. Refer to "**Import Custom Media Information**" ➔P.573 for details on "importing custom media information".

1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

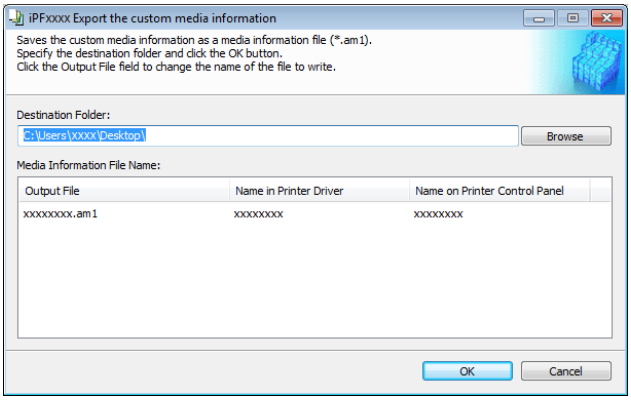
Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see "**Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" ➔P.561

2 Select the paper you want to export to media information file from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Export** button.



Note
- You can select multiple paper.

3 Specify the location to save the Custom Media Information File.



Note
- You can change the file name by selecting and editing the File.
  A Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) is saved.
- The Custom Media Information File is common to the iPF6400S, iPF8400S, and iPF9400S.
- For custom paper where a calibration target has been created, the calibration target information is also exported to the file.

Import Custom Media Information

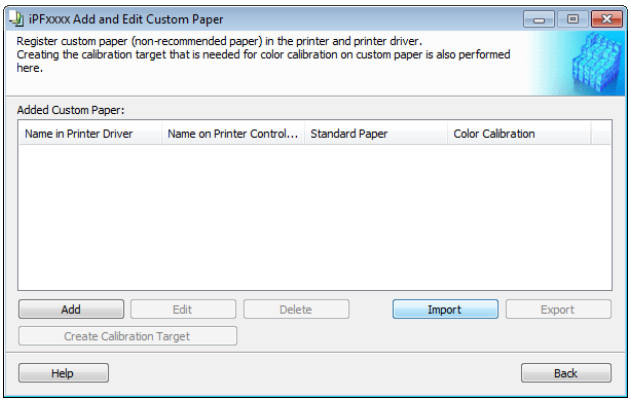
You can import a Custom Media Information File that has been saved in a folder, and add the file to the printer control panel and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.

1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

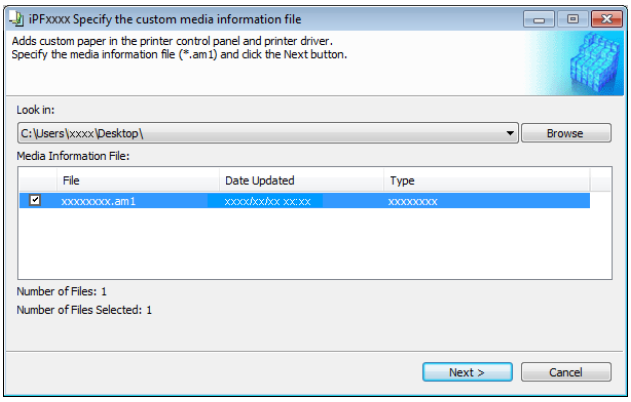
Note

- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see "**Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" ➔P.561

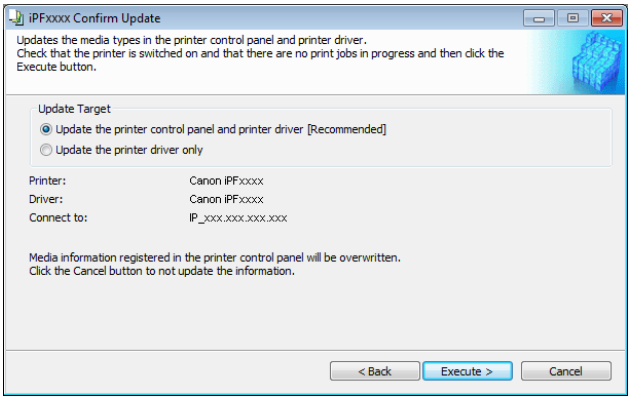
2 Click the **Import** button.



3 Select the Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) to import.



4 The **Confirm Update** dialog box opens. Click the **Execute** button.



Note

- You should normally select **Update the printer control panel and printer driver**.
  The custom paper is added to the control panel of the printer and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.
- When the custom paper is correctly added to the printer driver, the name of the added custom paper is displayed in the **Edit Media Types** dialog box that is opened by **Add Genuine Paper** in the Media Configuration Tool window.
- After importing custom paper, adjust the paper feed amount for that custom paper. For details on the method for adjusting the paper feed amount, see "**Automatic Banding Adjustment**." ➔P.771
- The Custom Media Information File is common to the iPF6400S, iPF8400S, and iPF9400S.
- If the imported custom media information file contains calibration target information, the calibration target is also registered in the printer.

Create Calibration Target

To perform color calibration on custom paper, a calibration target needs to be created for that custom paper and registered in the printer.
There are two types of calibration targets, calibration targets for executing color calibration **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** on the control panel and imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console and calibration targets for executing **Auto Adjust**.

Note

- The optional spectrophotometer unit is required in order to create a calibration target.
- In order to create a calibration target, roll paper of width 406.4 mm (16.00 inches) or more is required.
- In order to create a calibration target, you need to add the custom paper in advance. For details on the procedure for adding custom paper, see "**Add Custom Paper**." ➔P.564

1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

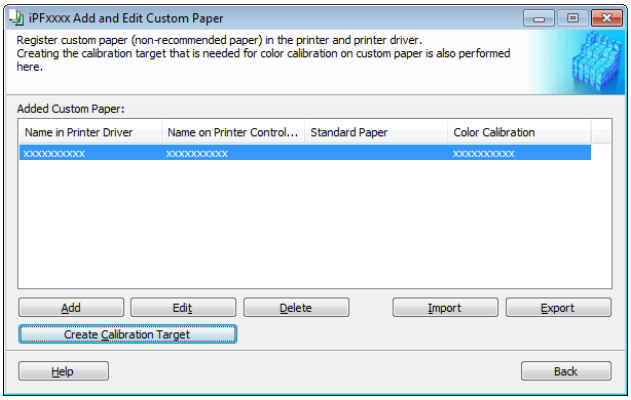
Note

- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see "**Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper**." ➔P.561

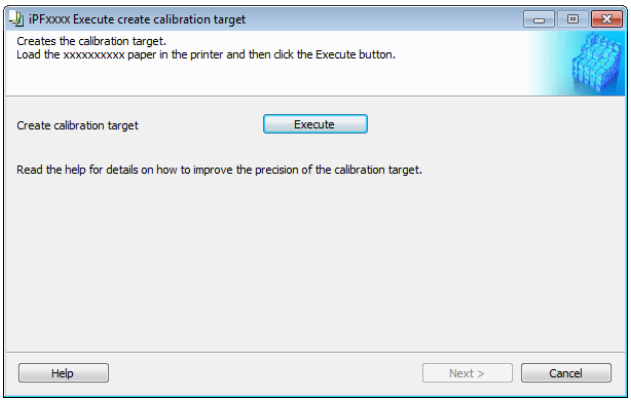
2 Select the paper that you want to create the calibration target for from the **Added Custom Paper** list and click the **Create Calibration Target** button.

Note

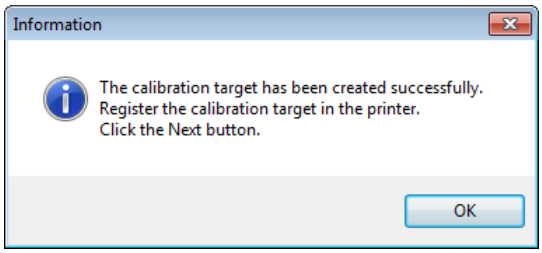
- If **Color Calibration** is **Can execute**, then the calibration target is already registered in the printer. If you perform color calibration using a recreated calibration target, the color tones may change.
- If **Color Calibration** is **Only Auto Adjust (High Precision) allowed**, then the calibration target for executing color calibration **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** in the control panel and imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console is already registered in the printer. A calibration target is not registered for executing **Auto Adjust**.
- If **Color Calibration** is Cannot execute, then a calibration target cannot be created for this custom paper.



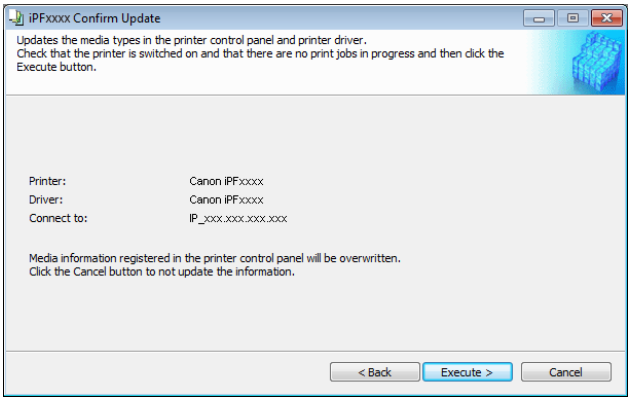
3 Load the custom paper into the printer and click the **Execute** button in **Create Calibration Target**.



4 Once the calibration target is registered in the printer, click the **Next** button in the **Execute create calibration target** dialog box.



5 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Confirm the update and click the **Execute** button.



Note
- If creating the calibration target fails, **Target not registered** is displayed in **Color Calibration** in the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box. If creating the calibration target fails, it might be able to be created by changing the environment where the printer is located.

Warnings

Take note of the following warnings when added custom paper other than Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper to the printer driver and the printer itself.

About the Cutter

- Depending on the paper, there are types that cannot be cut by the cutter unit, and types that speed deterioration of the blade and cause damage to the cutter. For thick paper, hard paper, etc. do not use the cutter unit, and instead cut the roll paper using scissors, etc. after printing. In this case, select **User Cut** as the **Automatic Cutting Settings** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box.

Note
- If the cutter is damaged, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.
- For details on the methods for cutting roll paper, see "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**" →P.516

About the Printhead

- If the printhead rubs against the paper during printing, this may cause damage to the printhead. If the printhead is rubbing against the paper, configure the **Vacuum Strength** in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box as follows.
  - For paper-based media such as Heavyweight Coated Paper: Set to **Strong** or **Strongest**
  - For film-based media such as CAD Tracing Paper: Set to **Standard**, **Strong**, or **Strongest**
  - For thin paper of thickness 0.1mm or less: Set to **Weakest**

Note

- If the printhead still rubs even after changing the **Vacuum Strength**, set the **Head Height** to be higher in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box.
- For details on how to handle the printhead rubbing against the paper, see "**Paper rubs against the printhead.**" ➔P.955

About Borderless Printing

- When performing borderless printing on paper where the ink does not dry well, the cutter unit may leave scratches where it touches the printed surface, or may not cut correctly. In this kind of situation, configure the amount of time to wait for the ink to dry after printing using **Drying Time** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box.
  Alternatively, if the paper cannot be cut well by the cutter, set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box, and cut the roll paper using scissors, etc.

About the Color Tone

- The color tone cannot be configured using the Media Configuration Tool. If the color tone needs to be adjusted, provide an ICC color profile that matches the paper you are using, and select that ICC color profile in your software. For details on how to specify the ICC color profile in the printer driver, see "**Matching Sheet** ." ➔P.175
- Custom paper cannot be used with the ambient light adjustment function or Monitor Matching in Color-Matching Method.

Checking the update

After updating the media information using the Media Configuration Tool, you can check whether the update has been applied to the printer in the control panel of the printer.

1. Click the **About** button in the Media Configuration Tool main window to open the **About** dialog box.
2. Check the value **xx.xx (xxxx)** of **MIT DB Version**.
3. Check the value **xx.xx (xxxx)** of **MIT** in **Set./Adj. Menu** > **Printer Info** > **System Info** in the printer control panel.
   If the values in Steps 2 and 3 are the same, the update has been applied to the printer.

Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)

The Features of Media Configuration Tool 577
Procedures for Installing 578
Starting Method 579

Media Configuration Tool Main Window 580

Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper 581
Adding Media Types 583
Changing Media Names 585
Deleting Media Types You Have Added 587
Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide 589
Changing the Display Order of Media Types 591

Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper 592
Compatible Paper 594
Add Custom Paper 595
Delete Custom Paper 602
Edit Custom Paper 602
Export Custom Media Information 603
Import Custom Media Information 604
Create Calibration Target 606
Warnings 608

Checking the update 608

The Features of Media Configuration Tool

In imagePROGRAF, the best printer settings for each paper are collected together in media information files in order to give the highest quality printing results. Settings for Canon genuine paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are provided by Canon in these media information files.

Note

- Canon genuine paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are detailed in the Paper Reference Guide. Any other paper is called custom paper.

The Media Configuration Tool allows you to perform the following tasks.

- When supported paper has been newly added to the printer, you can add that media type to the printer control panel and printer driver by using the media information file provided by Canon.
- You can customize Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper media information files to create a media information file for custom paper (paper that is neither Canon genuine paper or feed confirmed paper), and add that media type to the printer control panel and printer driver.
  Furthermore, you can also import the created media information file into other computers and printers, and add media types to the printer drivers and printers of the computers where the data was imported.
- You can rearrange lists of the types of paper on the printer control panel and in printer driver dialog boxes and rename them, in addition to other functions.
- You can create a calibration target for performing color calibration using the custom paper, and register the calibration target in the printer.

Important

- Normally, the Media Configuration Tool is installed and the media information is configured when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM. Use this software if you want to add new media information or edit existing media information.
- Administration of paper information using the Media Configuration Tool should be performed by the printer administrator.

Drivers Applicable with Media Configuration Tool

- imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

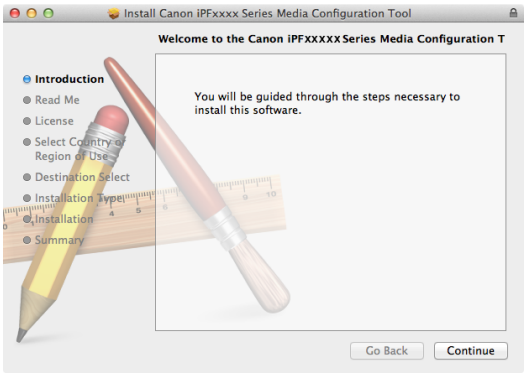
Procedures for Installing

Start the installer in the new version of Media Configuration Tool, and follow procedures below to install the Media Configuration Tool.

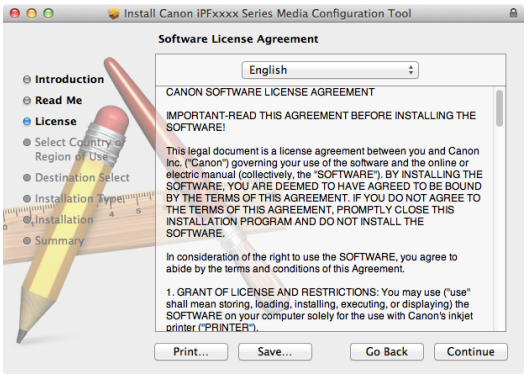
Important

- When you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM, the Media Configuration Tool is also installed and the media information is also configured. The following procedure is therefore not normally needed. Perform the following procedure if you are installing the Media Configuration Tool without using the User Software CD-ROM, such as by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the Canon website.

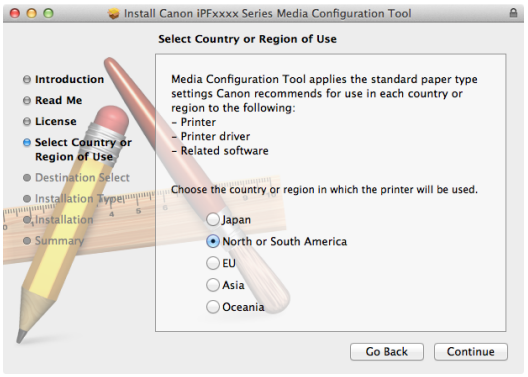
1 Double-click **Canon iPFxxxx Series Media Configuration Tool.pkg** to start the Media Configuration Tool installer.



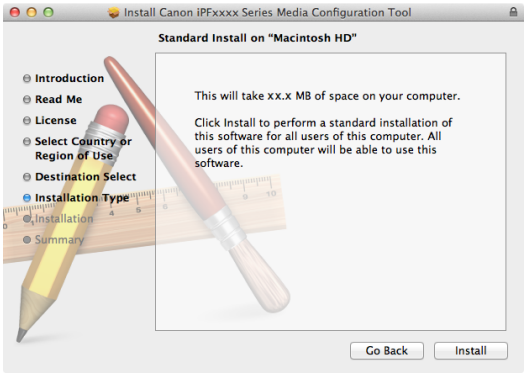
2 The **Software License Agreement** is displayed.
After you have read Canon Software License Agreement, click the **Continue** button.



3 The next screen presents selections for the country or area where the printer is used.
Select a country or territory then click the **Continue** button.



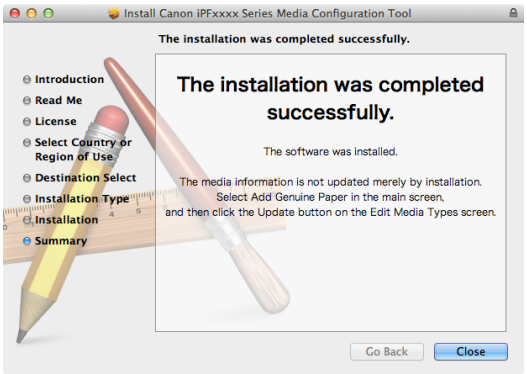
4 Click the **Install** button.



5 Enter an administrator name/password and click the **Install Software** button.

6 Click the **Close** button.

The installation of Media Configuration Tool is complete.



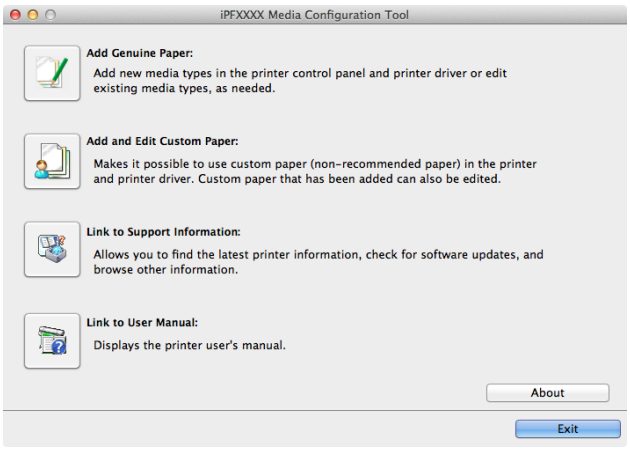
Note

- When the installation is completed properly, the Media Configuration Tool folder is saved in the following folder.
  Applications > **Canon Utilities** > **iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool**
- The **iPFxxxx** in the folder above will be the printer name in use.

Starting Method

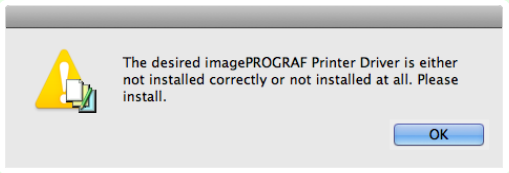
Follow the procedure below to start the Media Configuration Tool.
From the **Applications** menu > **Canon Utilities** >**iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool** > **MCTxxxx.app**.

Media Configuration Tool main window is displayed.



Note

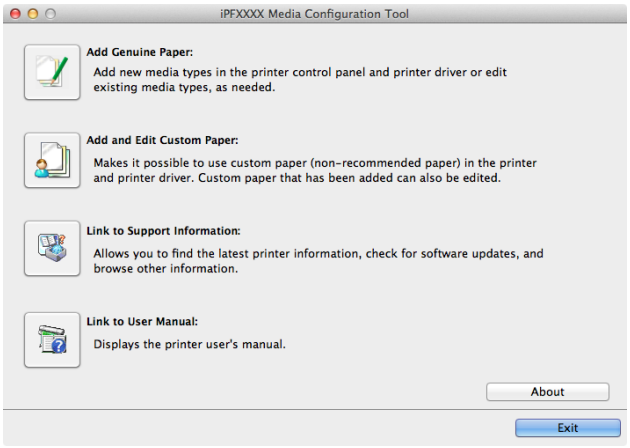
- If a compatible printer driver is not installed, the Media Configuration Tool will not start. If you attempt to start the Media Configuration Tool when a printer driver is not installed, the warning message below is displayed.



- If you only start the Media Configuration Tool, the media information on the printer control panel and in the printer driver is not updated. If this screen is displayed, select **Add Genuine Paper** in the main window, and click the **Update** button in the **Edit Media Types** screen to update the media information.

Media Configuration Tool Main Window

The explanation below is on the Media Configuration Tool main window.



Note

- For the step to open the Media Configuration Tool main window, see "**Starting Method.**" →P.579

- **Add Genuine Paper** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Edit Media Types** dialog box is displayed, which allows you to add media information files released by Canon to the printer control panel and printer driver. You can also change names, toggle between displaying and hiding, and delete added media types.

  You can also change the display order of Canon genuine paper and custom paper.

  Refer to "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper**" →P.581 for details on **Add Genuine Paper**.

- **Add and Edit Custom Paper** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box is displayed, which allows you to added custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver.

  You can also create a calibration target for performing color calibration on added custom paper from the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box that opens when you click this button.

  Refer to "**Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper**" →P.592 for details on **Add and Edit Custom Paper**.

- **Link to Support Information** button

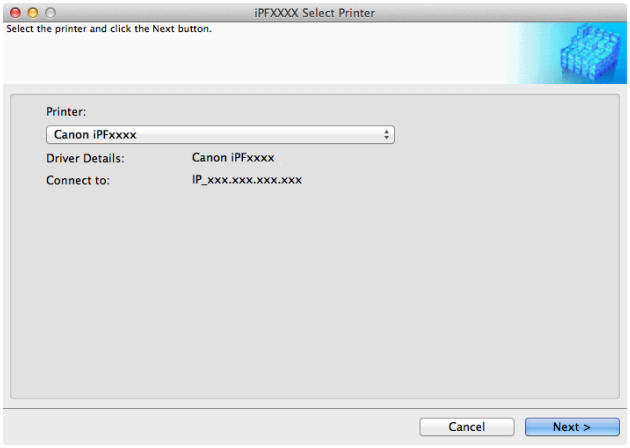
  You can check information such as the latest information for the product and software version upgrade information.

- **Link to User Manual** Button

  Displays the printer user's manual

Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper

To add genuine paper and feed confirmed paper to the printer control panel and printer driver and edit the media type information, click the **Add Genuine Paper** button in the Media Configuration Tool main window.
Confirm the printer, where media type information is to be updated, to be displayed in **Printer** in the **Select Printer** dialog box, and then click the **Next** button.



Communication with the printer begins.

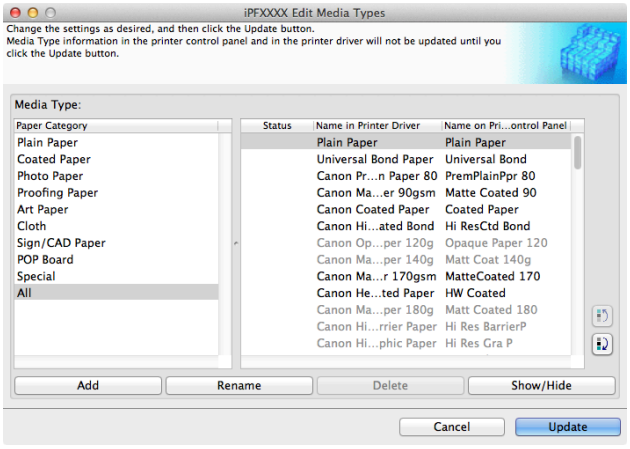
Important

- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

The **Edit Media Types** dialog box is displayed.

Note

- In the following screens, you cannot change the printer where media type information is to be updated.



Note

- Paper that is displayed grayed out does not appear in the printer driver or printer panel.

- **Add** Button

To add genuine paper or feed confirmed paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, click this button.

For details on the procedure for adding media types, see "**Adding Media Types.**" ➔P.583

Important

- To add media types, download the media information file (.amf file) in advance from the Canon website.

- **Rename** Button

To change the name on the printer control panel and the name in the printer driver for genuine paper and feed confirmed paper, select the paper to change and click this button.

For details on the procedure for changing paper display names, see "**Changing Media Names.**" ➔P.585

- **Delete** Button

To delete added genuine paper and feed confirmed paper from the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to delete and click this button.

For details on the procedure for deleting added media types, see "**Deleting Media Types You Have Added.**" ➔P.587

- **Show/Hide** Button

To change whether or not genuine paper or feed confirmed paper is displayed in the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to change and click this button.

For details on the procedure for changing whether or not to display media types, see "**Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide.**" ➔P.589

- Change Display Order button (or)

To change the display order of a media type in the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to change and click this button.

For details on the procedure for changing the display order of media types, see "**Changing the Display Order of Media Types.**" ➔P.591

Note

- The display order for custom paper can also be changed.

Important

- When you update the media type information, perform the same update on all of the PCs that are using that printer.

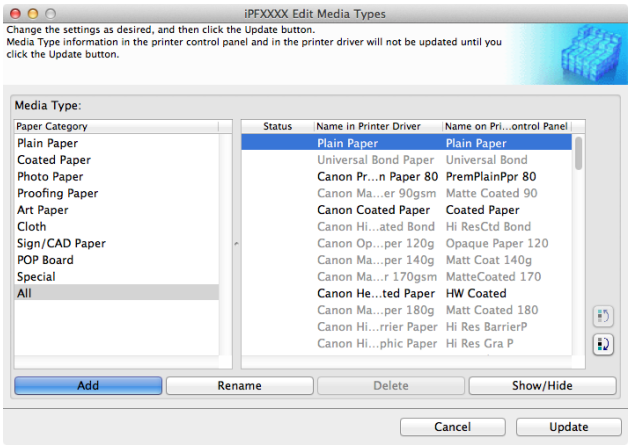
Note
- It may not be possible to deleting, showing/hiding, and changing the display order under some conditions.

Adding Media Types

Media information files (.amf files) released by Canon are registered in the printer control panel and printer driver.

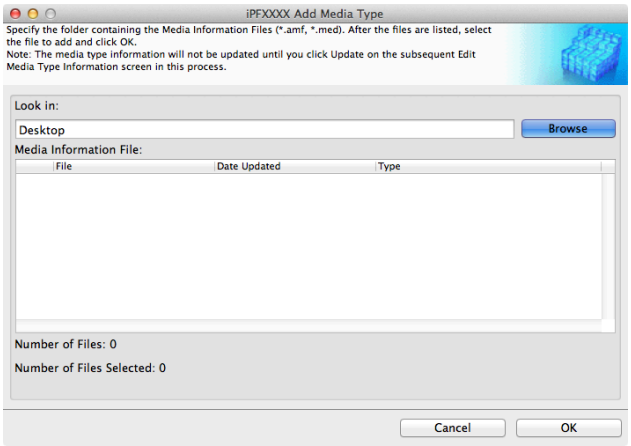
Important
- Do not perform printing on the target printer while adding the media types.
- Reinstalling Media Configuration Tool after registering a media information file may delete the registered media information file.In this case, first download and install latest Media Configuration Tool, then download and register the required media information file.

1 Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, and then click the **Add** button.

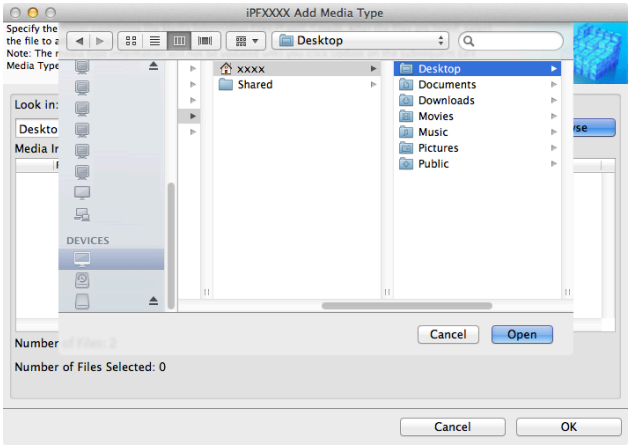


Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, see "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" ➔P.581

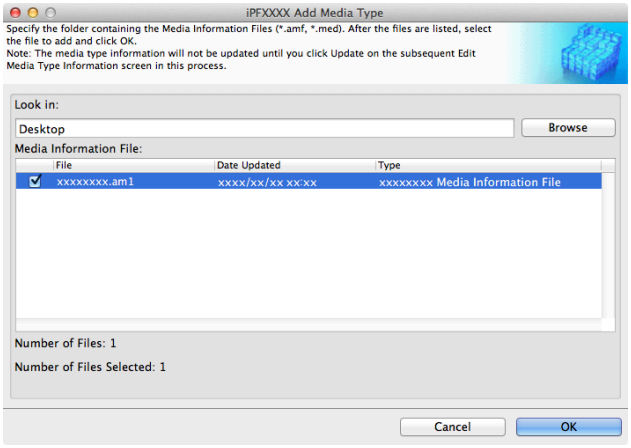
2 The **Add Media Type** dialog box displays. Click the **Browse** button.



3 Open the folder that contains the media information files (.amf files).



4 The names of the media information files contained in the selected folder are displayed in **Media Information File** in the **Add Media Type** dialog box. Select the check box for the paper you want to add and click the **OK** button.

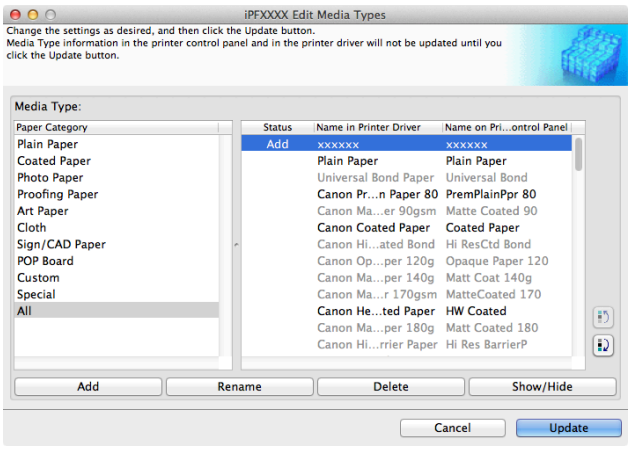


Note

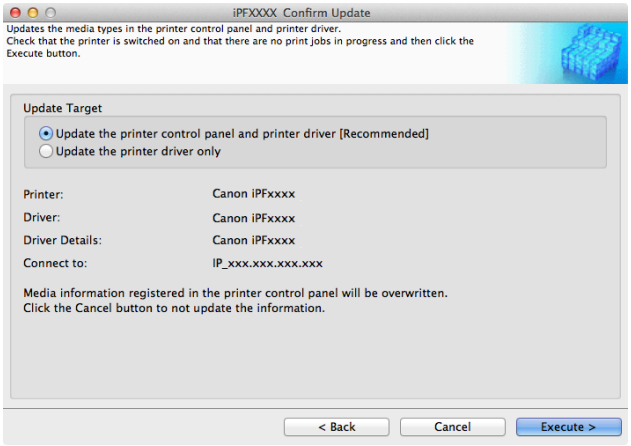
- If **Master Media Information File** is displayed as the **Type** of the **Media Information File**, the media type display order and media type display/non-display settings are initialized. Reconfigure these after added the master media information file.

5 Click **OK** when the confirmation message is displayed.

6 In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



7 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button. Communication with the printer begins.



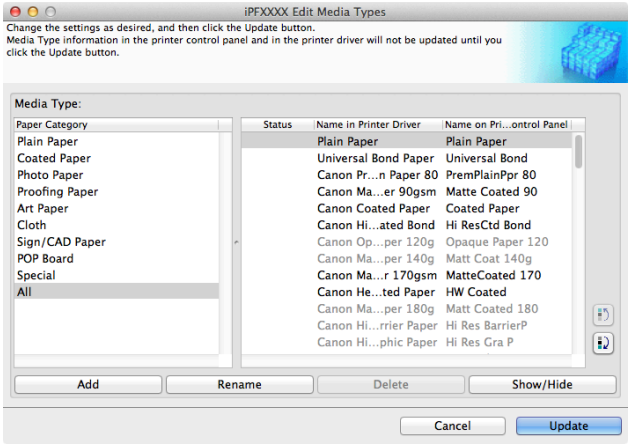
Note
- You should normally select **Update the printer control panel and printer driver**.

Important
- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

8 Click the **OK** button.

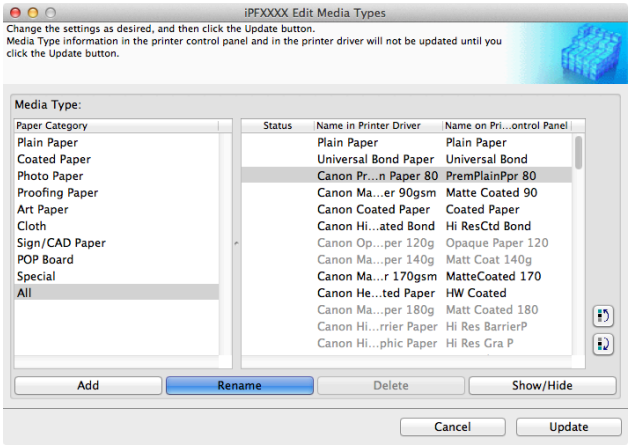
Changing Media Names

1 Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.

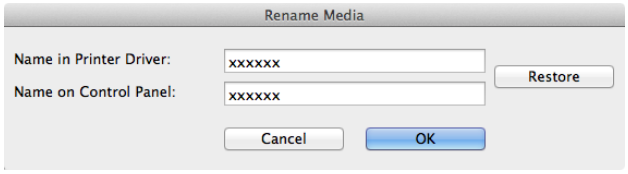


Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, see "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" →P.581

2 In the **Media Type** list, select the name to change. Click the **Rename** button.



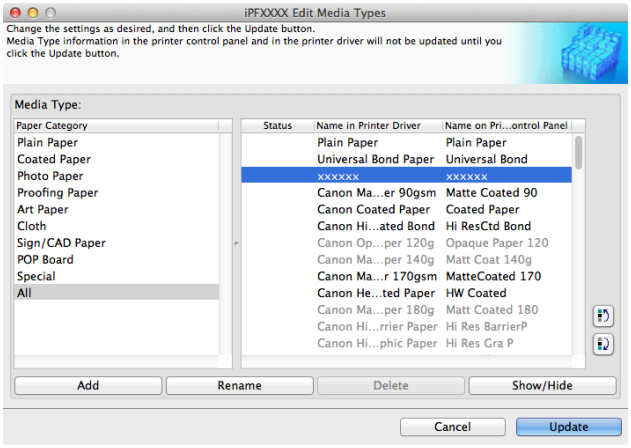
3 The **Rename Media** dialog box is displayed. Edit the names in **Name in Printer Driver** and **Name on Control Panel** and click the **OK** button.



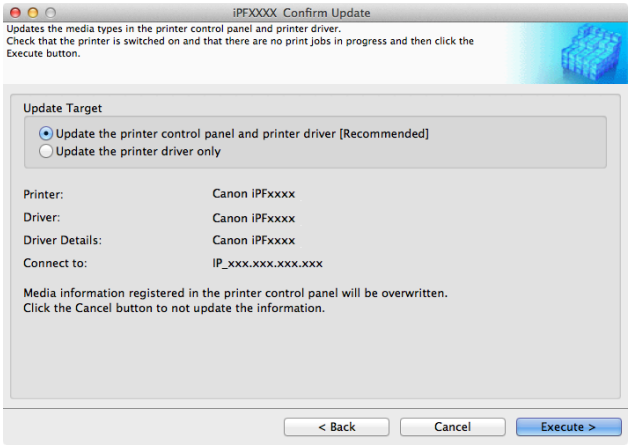
Note

- To restore the original names, click the **Restore** button.
- The characters that can be entered for **Name in Printer Driver** and **Name on Control Panel** are stated below.
  alphanumeric, space, "-", ".", "_", "(", ")", "+", "%", ",", "/"
- For **Name in Printer Driver** up to 32 one Byte characters can be entered, and for **Name on Control Panel** up to 16 one Byte characters can be entered.

4 In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



5 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button. Communication with the printer begins.



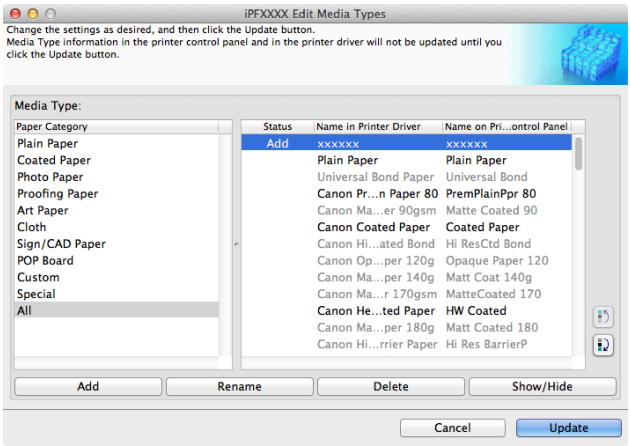
Note
- You should normally select **Update the printer control panel and printer driver**.

Important
- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

6 Click the **OK** button.

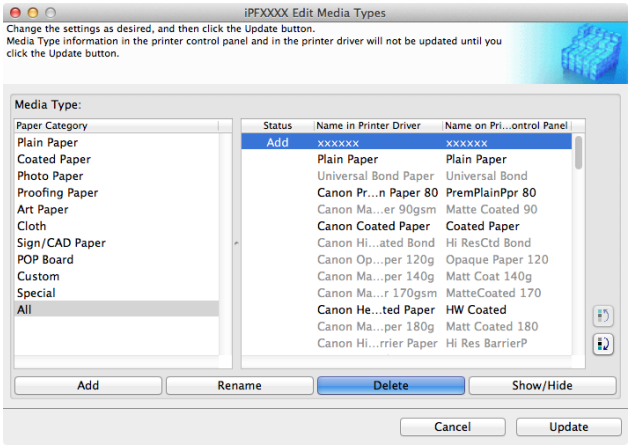
Deleting Media Types You Have Added

1 Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, see "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" →P.581

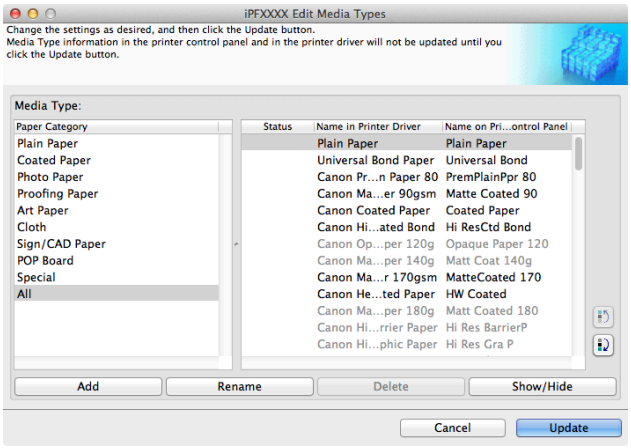
2 In the **Media Type** list, select the name of the media to delete.
Click the **Delete** button.



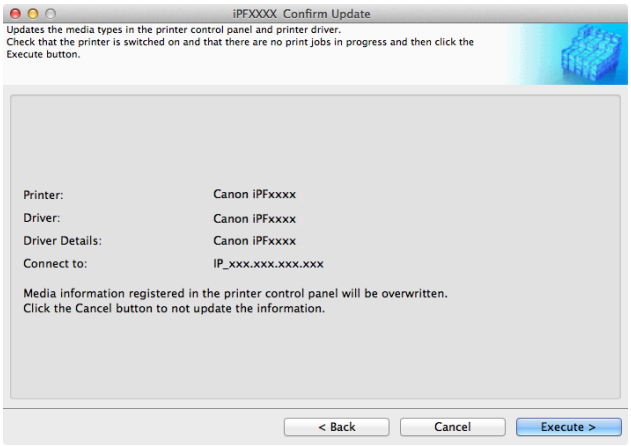
Note

- Only paper for which **Status** in the **Media Type** is **Add** can be deleted.

3 In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



4 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed.
Click the **Execute** button.
Communication with the printer begins.



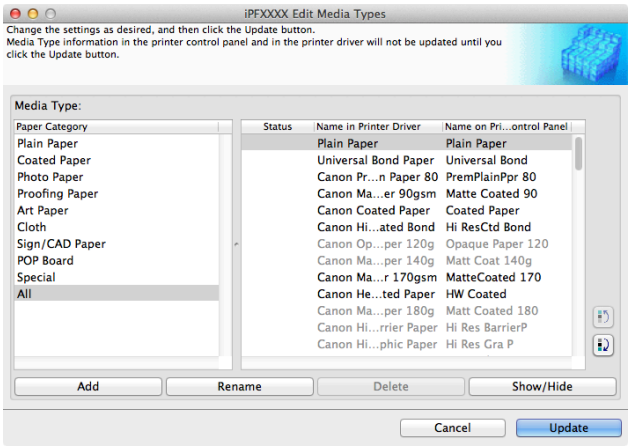
Important

- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

5 Click the **OK** button.

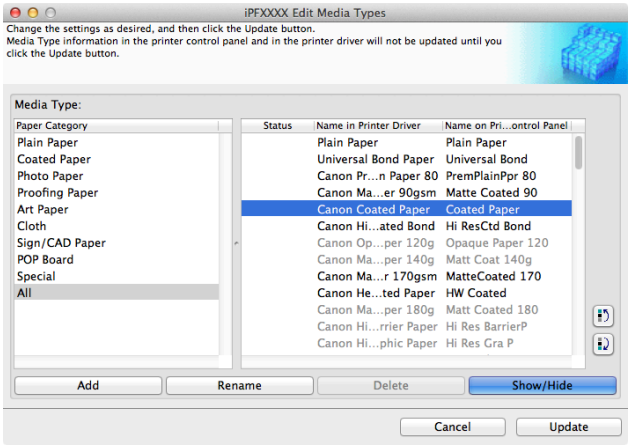
Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide

1 Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



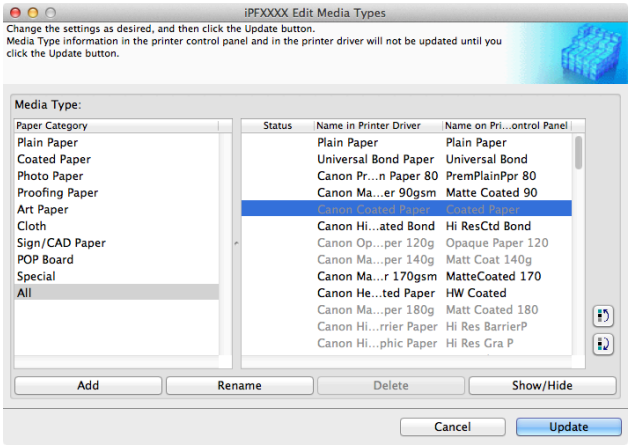
Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, see "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" →P.581

2 In the **Media Type** list, select the name of the media to switch off or on for display.
Click the **Show/Hide** button.
The selected paper is alternately shown or hidden.

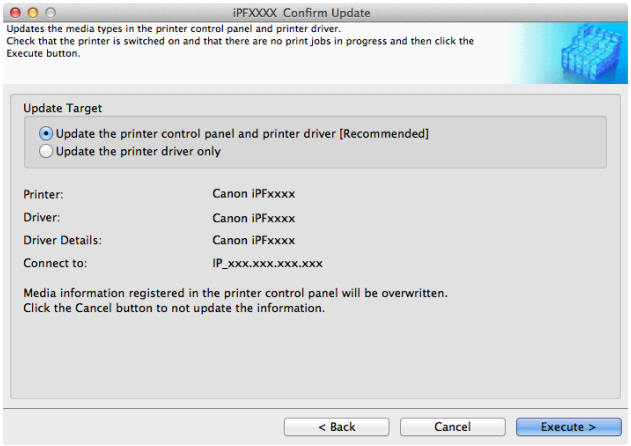


Note
- You can select multiple paper.
- The names of media switched for non-display appear grayed out in the **Media Type** list.
- Each time you click the **Show/Hide** button, the display mode cycles from showing both the printer driver and printer panel, to hiding both the printer driver and printer panel, and then to showing only the printer panel.

3 In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



4 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button. Communication with the printer begins.



Note

- You should normally select **Update the printer control panel and printer driver**.

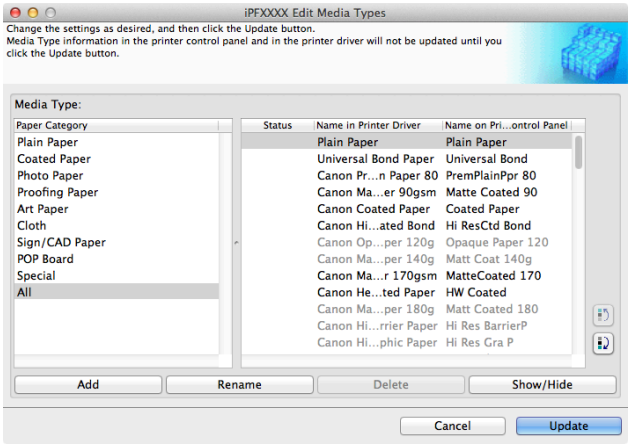
Important

- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

5 Click the **OK** button.

Changing the Display Order of Media Types

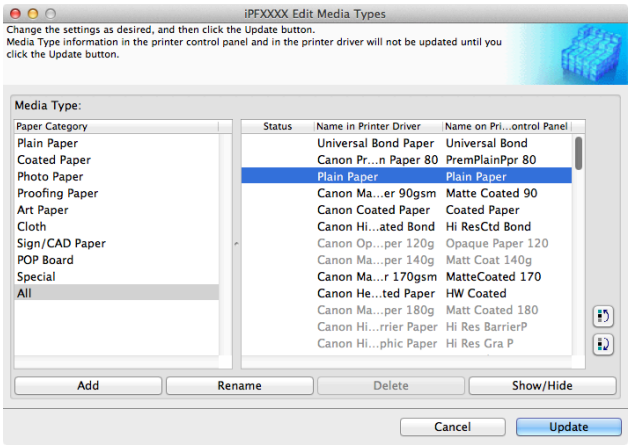
1 Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



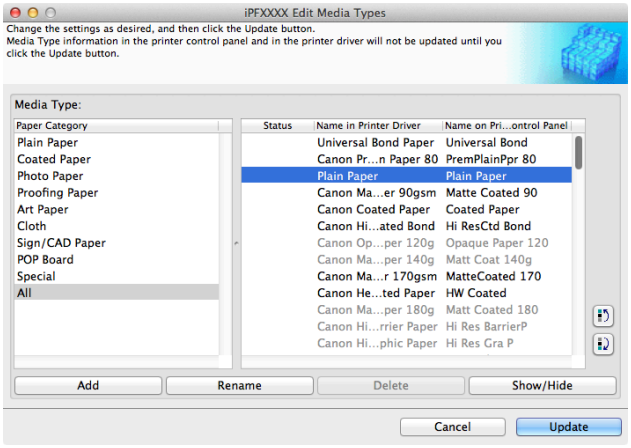
Note

- For details on the procedure for opening the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, see "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" ➔P.581

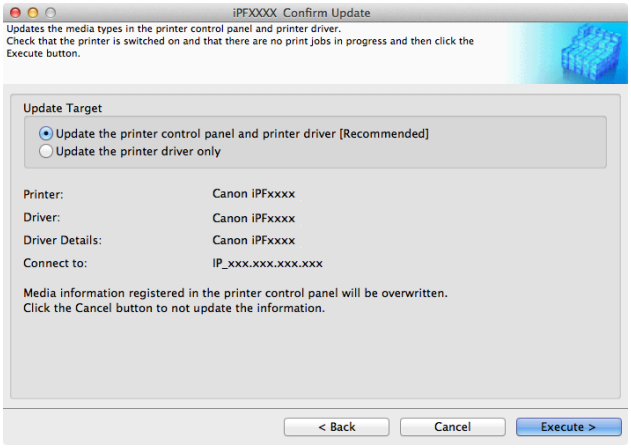
2 Select the paper in the **Media Type** list for which to change the display order, and then click the buttons to move the item (or).
The selected item moves one line up or down for every button click.



3 In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



4 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed.
Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button.
Communication with the printer begins.



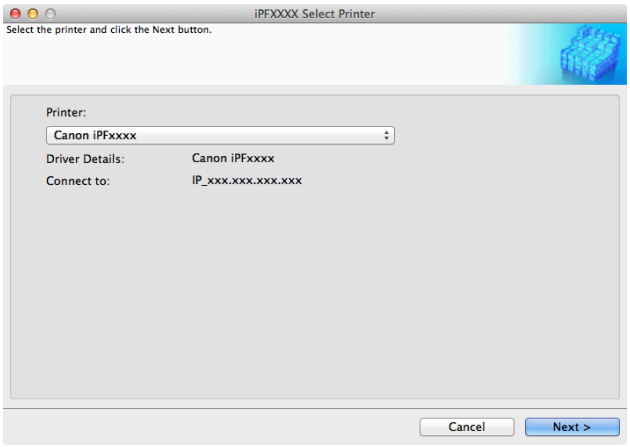
Note
- You should normally select **Update the printer control panel and printer driver**.

Important
- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

5 Click the **OK** button.

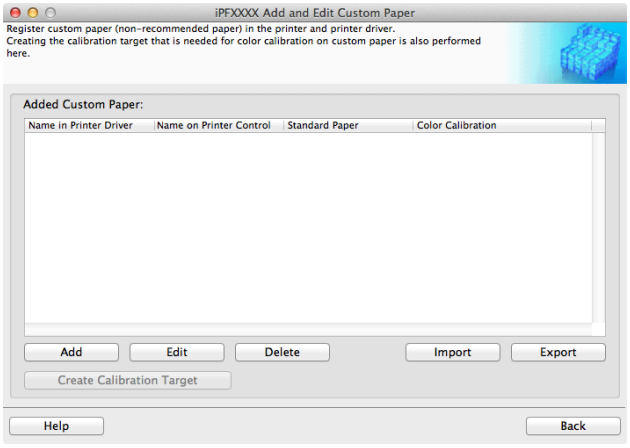
Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper

To add paper other than Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, and export and import the media information file for that paper, click the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** button in the Media Configuration Tool main window.
Confirm the printer, where media type information is to be updated, to be displayed in **Printer** in the **Select Printer** dialog box, and then click the **Next** button.



Communication with the printer begins.
The **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box is displayed.

Note
- In the following screens, you cannot change the printer where media type information is to be updated.
- Custom paper is paper other than Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper (paper that is detailed in the Paper Reference Guide).



- **Added Custom Paper**

Added custom paper is displayed here.

- **Name in Printer Driver**
  Added custom paper is displayed in the printer driver using this name.
- **Name on Printer Control Panel**
  Added custom paper is displayed on the printer control panel using this name.
- **Standard Paper**
  Displays the paper selected as the standard paper when the custom paper was added.
- **Color Calibration**
  Displays whether or not color calibration can be executed in the control panel and imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console.
  In order to perform color calibration, you need to create a calibration target and register the calibration target in the printer in advance.

Setting	Details
Can execute	Color calibration **Auto Adjust** and **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** can be executed.
Only Auto Adjust (High Precision) allowed	Color calibration **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** can be executed. **Auto Adjust** cannot be executed.
Target not registered	Color calibration cannot be executed because the calibration target is not registered in the printer.
Cannot execute	Color calibration cannot be executed on this paper.

Note
- The optional spectrophotometer unit is required in order to create a calibration target.

- **Add** Button

To add new custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, click this button.
For details on the procedure for adding custom paper, see "**Add Custom Paper**." ➔P.595

- **Edit** Button

To change the settings of added custom paper, select the paper to edit and click this button.
For details on the procedure for changing custom paper settings, see "**Edit Custom Paper**." ➔P.602

- **Delete** Button

  To delete added custom paper from the printer control panel and printer driver in your computer, select the paper to delete and click this button.

  For details on the procedure for deleting custom paper, see "**Delete Custom Paper.**" ➔P.602

- **Import** Button

  To add custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver by importing a Custom Media Information File saved in a folder, click this button.

  The Custom Media Information File is common to the iPF6400S, iPF8400S, and iPF9400S.

  If an imported custom media information file contains calibration target information, the calibration target is also registered in the printer main unit.

  For details on the procedure for importing a Custom Media Information File, see "**Import Custom Media Information.**" ➔P.604

- **Export** Button

  To export media information for added custom paper to a file, select the paper to export and click this button.

  For custom paper where a calibration target has been created, the calibration target information is also exported to the file.

  For details on the procedure for exporting media information for custom paper, see "**Export Custom Media Information.**" ➔P.603

- **Create Calibration Target** Button

  To create a calibration target for added custom paper, select the paper and click this button.

  For details on the procedure for creating a calibration target, see "**Create Calibration Target.**" ➔P.606

Important

- When adding custom paper, designate a computer for managing paper in advance and always add custom paper from that computer. To use that custom paper on other computers, first export the Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) for that custom paper from the computer for managing paper, and then import it into another computer for use.
- To use a Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) created outside of the network where the target printer is being used, first import it into the computer for managing paper. If you also want to use it on other computers, import and use a Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) newly exported from the computer for managing paper.
- When importing a Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) that was created on the computer for managing paper, first delete custom paper that does not exist on the computer for managing paper.
- When deleting custom paper, make the same changes on all of the other PCs that use the target printer.
- When using custom paper in another printer, always add the custom paper to that printer before use.

Note

- Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper cannot be changed from this dialog box. Refer to "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper**" ➔P.581 .
- Changing the display order of media types displayed in the printer control panel and printer driver is performed from the **Edit Media Types** dialog box regardless of whether it is Canon genuine paper or custom paper. Refer to "**Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper**" ➔P.581 .

Compatible Paper

Paper specifications

Refer to "Specifications" and "Paper" for specifications such as thickness and size of paper that can be added as custom paper (See "**Specifications.**") ➔P.1000

Notes on the operating environment

In low humidity environments (below 40%), your printer may develop the following problems.

- Paper becomes curled or wrinkled.

- Paper and the printhead are more likely to touch each other, resulting in a scratched print surface or damaged printhead.
- The cut printed matter sticks to the printer and will not fall down (film media).
- Paper sticks to the printer, making its transfer impossible and preventing its normal ejection (film media).
- Uneven printing (film media)

In high humidity environments (over 60%), your printer may develop the following problems.

- Printed matter will not dry.
- Wavy paper surface
- Cut edges are ragged (fabric media).
- Margins remain due to borderless printing.

Important
- Canon offers absolutely no guarantees regarding the print quality or paper feed properties of customer paper (paper that is not Canon genuine paper or Canon feed confirmed paper).

Add Custom Paper

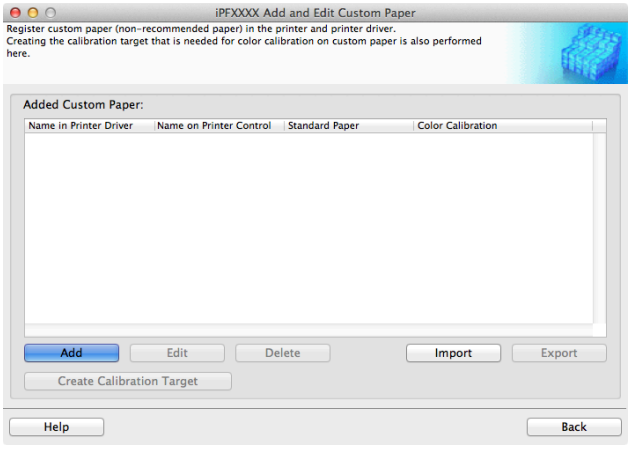
In order to add new custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, first select the media type to use as the basis from among the Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper. Add this as custom paper after making various changes to the standard paper as necessary.

Important
- Canon offers absolutely no guarantees regarding the print quality or paper feed properties of customer paper.
- For genuine Canon paper and Canon feed confirmed paper, print using the media type as recommended in the Paper Reference Guide. The print quality and feed properties are not guaranteed if you use Add Custom Paper in the Media Configuration Tool.
- Do not execute printing on the target printer while adding custom paper.
- When adding custom paper, check the specifications of paper that can be added using "**Compatible Paper**" →P.594 .

1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

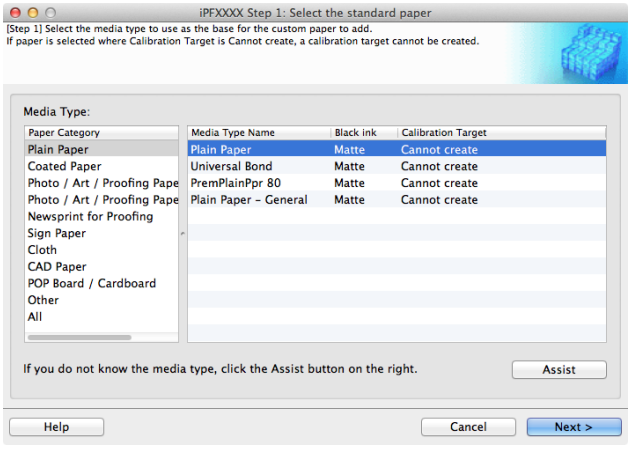
Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see "**Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" →P.592

2 Click the **Add** button.



3 The **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box is displayed. In **Paper Category**, select the category of media type to use as the basis of the custom paper you are adding.

Important
- Select the category that you think is the closest to the custom paper you are adding.

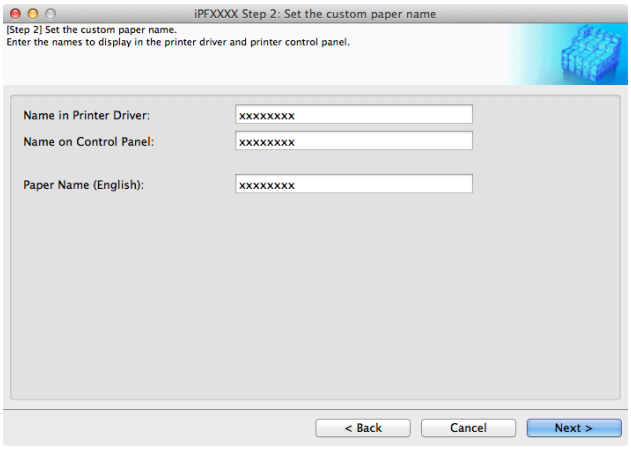


4 The media type names of the Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper within the selected category are shown in **Media Type Name**. Select the media type to use as the basis of the custom paper, and click the **Next** button.

Note

- If you do not know which media type to use as the basis of the custom paper, click the **Assist** button to open the **Media Type Selection Assistance** dialog box, and then set either the **Weight (grammage)** or the **Thickness**. The Media Configuration Tool automatically selects the appropriate paper from the selected paper category. Alternatively, select the media type called **General** from among the displayed **Media Type Name**.
- Depending on the selected category, there might not be a media type called **General**.
- Depending on the selected category, the **Assist** button may be disabled.
- Standard paper where **Cannot create** is displayed in **Calibration Target**, the calibration target for executing color calibration cannot be created in the control panel and imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console.
- For custom paper added using standard paper where **Can create for Auto Adjust (High Precision)** is displayed in **Calibration Target**, the calibration target for executing color calibration **Auto Adjust** cannot be created in the control panel and imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console. A calibration target can only be created for executing **Auto Adjust (High Precision)**.

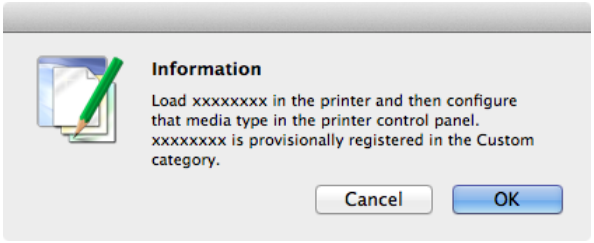
5 The **Step 2: Set the custom paper name** dialog box is displayed.
Enter an arbitrary name to display in the printer control panel and printer driver, and then click the **Next** button.



Note

- Depending on the selected standard paper, you might not be able to input the **Name in Printer Driver** and add the created custom paper to the printer driver. To use the custom paper in the printer driver, create it by changing the standard paper to another paper.
- The characters that can be entered for **Name in Printer Driver** and **Name on Control Panel** are stated below.
  alphanumeric, space, "-", ".", "_", "(", ")", "+", "%", ",", "/"
- For **Name in Printer Driver** up to 32 one Byte characters can be entered, and for **Name on Control Panel** up to 16 one Byte characters can be entered.
- **Paper Name (English)** is used in keeping track of the amount of roll paper left, in status print, etc.
  For **Paper Name (English)** up to 16 one Byte characters can be entered.

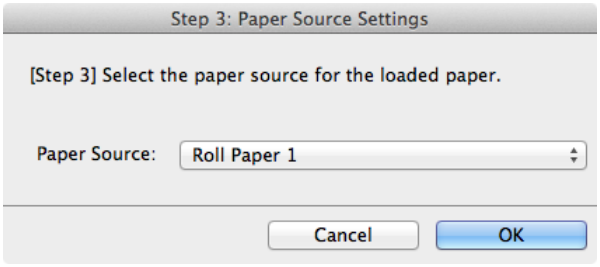
6 Load the custom paper in the printer and then click the **OK** button.



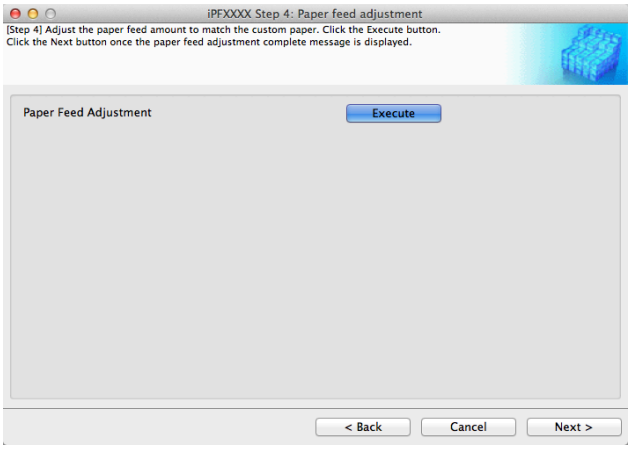
Important

- Do not load paper that is curled or that has already been printed on.

7 The **Step 3: Paper Source Settings** dialog box is displayed. Select the paper source where the custom paper is loaded and then click the **OK** button.



8 The **Step 4: Paper feed adjustment** dialog box is displayed. Click the **Execute** button to execute paper feed adjustment.
The adjustment pattern is printed, and the paper feed is automatically adjusted based on the printing result.
Once the paper feed adjustment is complete, click the **Next** button.



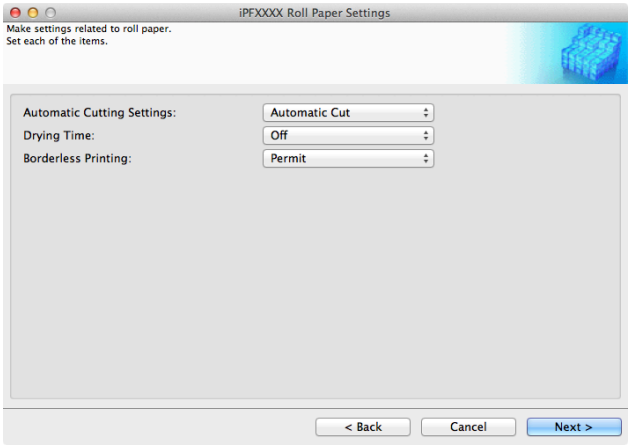
Important

- Check that there is no paper left on the ejection guide.
- If **Paper Feed Adjustment** is not executed, horizontal stripes with different color tones may appear in the printed material. Paper feed adjustment does not need to be executed more than once. Execute paper feed adjustment only once each time you add a custom paper.

9 The **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box is displayed.

Note

- If a paper source other than **Roll Paper** is selected in the **Step 3: Paper Source Settings** dialog box, this screen is not displayed.



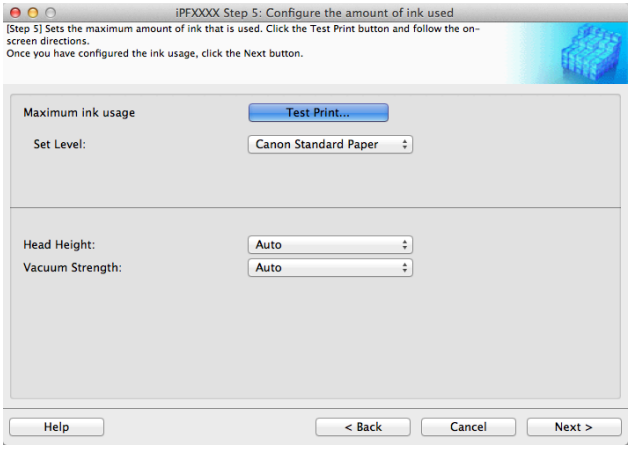
Configure the following settings as necessary, and then click the **Next** button.

Setting	Details
Automatic Cutting Settings	Configures the method for cutting roll paper when it is ejected after printing. • **Automatic Cut**:Roll paper is automatically cut by the cutter unit. • **Eject Cut**:When the **Cut** key is pressed on the printer control panel, the roll paper is cut by the cutter unit. Select this if you do not want the printed material to drop immediately after printing, such as to wait for the ink to dry. • **User Cut**:Cutting is not performed by the cutter unit. Cut the roll paper using scissors after each sheet. Select this for paper that cannot be cut by the cutter unit.
Drying Time	Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. • **Off**:Ejects immediately after printing finishes. • **30 sec./1 min./3 min./5 min./10 min./30 min./60 min.**:Ejects after the specified time has elapsed after printing finishes.
Borderless Printing	Configures whether or not to permit borderless printing. • **Permit**: Borderless printing is permitted. • **Deny**: Borderless printing is denied.

Important

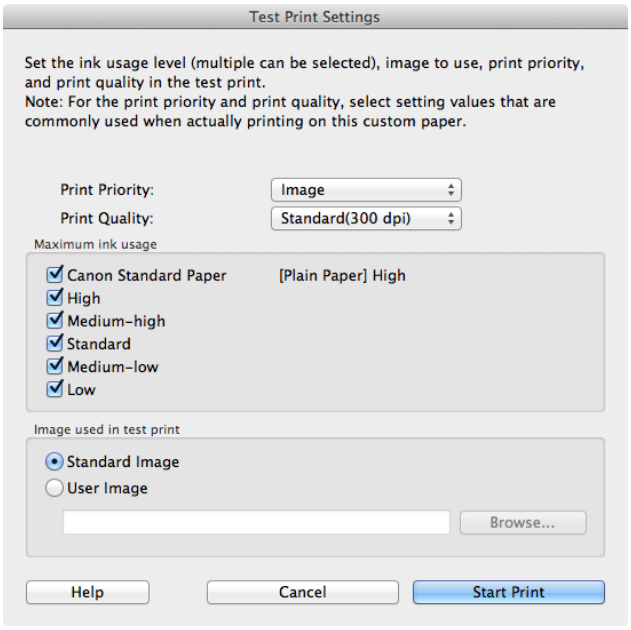
- Depending on the paper, there are types that cannot be cut by the cutter unit, and types that speed deterioration of the blade and cause damage to the cutter. For thick paper, hard paper, etc. do not use the cutter unit, and instead cut the roll paper using scissors, etc. after printing. In this case, select **User Cut** as the **Automatic Cutting Settings**.
- If borderless printing is performed on paper where the ink drying is poor, the cutter unit may leave scratches where it touches the printed surface, or may not cut correctly. In this kind of situation, configure the amount of time to wait for the ink to dry after printing using **Drying Time**. Alternatively, if the paper cannot be cut well by the cutter, set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut** and cut the roll paper using scissors, etc.
- Paper where borderless printing can be performed is limited by the media type and roll paper width. Refer to "Compatible Paper" ➔P.594 .
- For custom paper where there is a need to set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut**, set the **Borderless Printing** to **Deny**.

10 The **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box is displayed.
The upper limit on the amount of ink used to print to the custom paper is set on this screen by selecting from among several levels.
First, click the **Test Print** button to perform a test print of each level.

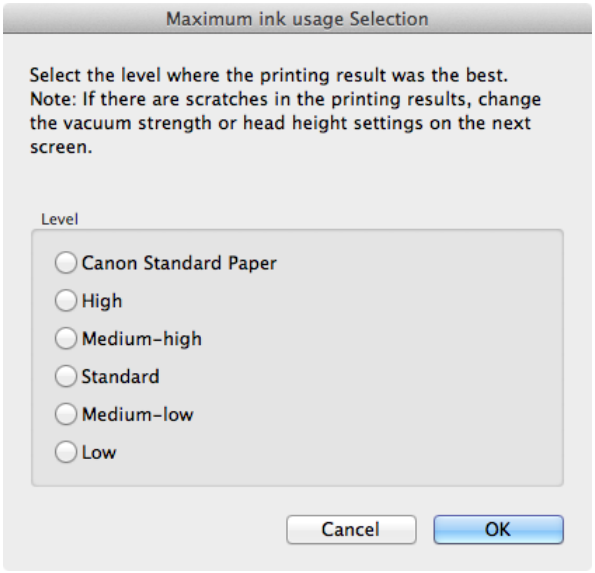


Note
- If a standard paper that does not display the **Name in Printer Driver** is selected in the screen in Step 5, you cannot perform test prints or configure the maximum amount of ink to use.

11 The **Test Print Settings** dialog box is displayed.
Select the print priority and print quality of the test print using **Print Priority** and **Print Quality**.
Set the level to test print using **Maximum ink usage** and the image to use using **Image used in test print**, and then click the **Start Print** button.



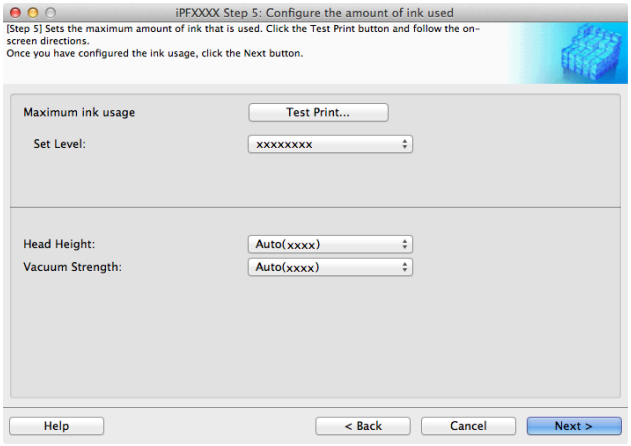
12 Determine and set the ink level that is thought to give the best visual test print results with no bleeding or scraping of ink.



Note

- Select the optimal ink level by referring to the help.
- If you cannot obtain sufficiently high quality printing no matter which maximum ink usage level you select, use the **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box to change the paper that is the basis of the custom paper to another paper.
- Because this settings imposes an upper limit on the amount of ink used during printing, the printing result might not change even if the level is changed depending on the image.
- The color tone cannot be configured using the Media Configuration Tool. Although the color tone may change when the maximum ink usage is changed, at this point you should select the optimal level by only focusing on bleeding and scraping of ink. If the color tone needs to be adjusted, provide an ICC color profile that matches the paper you are using, and select that ICC color profile in your software. For details on how to specify the ICC profile in the printer driver, see "**Matching Sheet** ." ➔P.175
- Depending on the maximum ink usage setting, some of the print qualities in the printer driver may become unselectable.

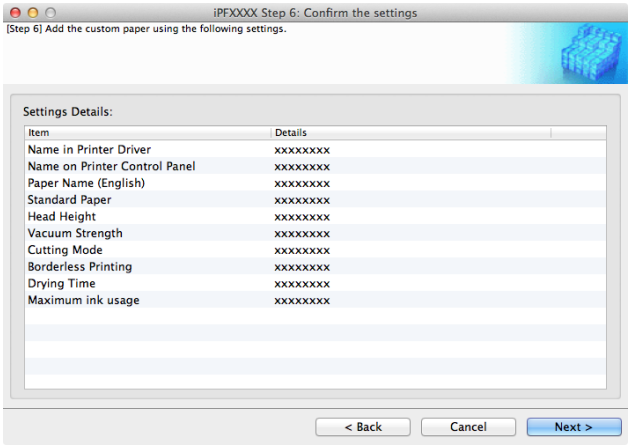
13 Configure **Head Height** and **Vacuum Strength** as required and click the **Next** button.
Usually, these do not need to be set.



Important

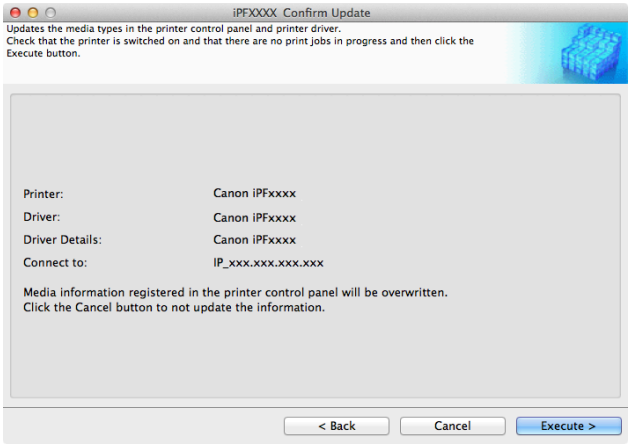
- If you set the **Head Height** lower than the automatically set height in parentheses ( ), check that the printhead does not rub against the paper. (If the printhead rubs against the paper, there will be scratches in the printing results.) If the printhead rubs against the paper, this can cause damage to the printhead.
- If you change the **Vacuum Strength**, check that the printhead is not rubbing against the paper. (If the printhead rubs against the paper, there will be scratches in the printing results.) If the printhead rubs against the paper, this can cause damage to the printhead.
- For details on the **Head Height** and **Vacuum Strength**, refer to the help.

14 The **Step 6: Confirm the settings** dialog box is displayed.
Configure the settings of the custom paper, and then click the **Next** button.



15 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed.
Confirm the updates and then click the **Execute** button.

The custom paper is added to the control panel of the printer and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.



Important

- If you have added custom paper with the **POP Board / Cardboard** category as the Standard Paper, remove the loaded custom paper from the printer.

Note

- When the custom paper is correctly added to the printer driver, the name of the added custom paper is displayed in the **Edit Media Types** dialog box that is opened by **Add Genuine Paper** in the Media Configuration Tool window.

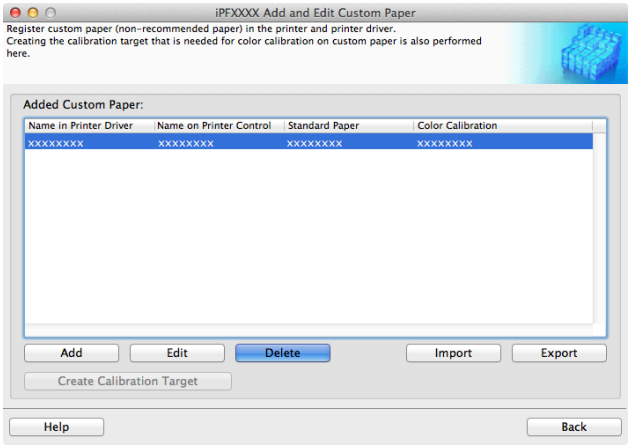
Delete Custom Paper

You can delete custom paper that you have already added from printer control panel and from the printer driver of the PC you are using.

1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see "**Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" ➔P.592

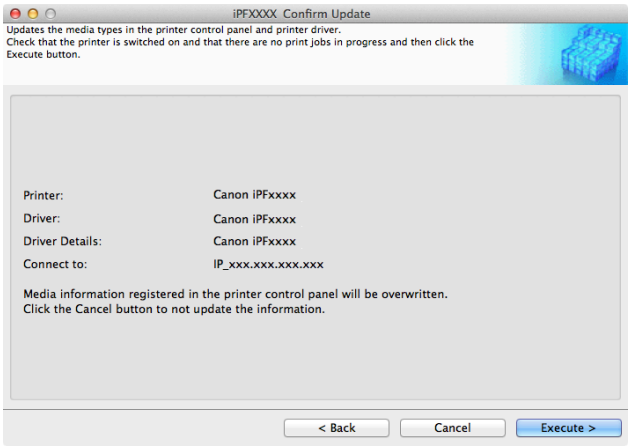
2 Select the paper you want to delete from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Delete** button.



Note
- You can select multiple paper.

3 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Confirm the updates and then click the **Execute** button.

The custom paper is deleted from the control panel of the printer and from the printer driver of the PC you are using.



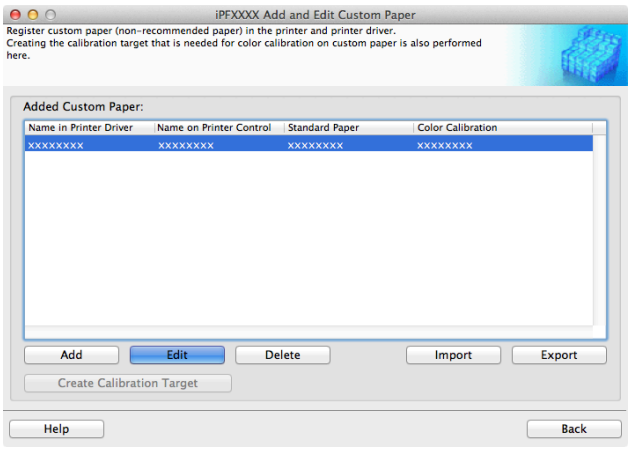
Edit Custom Paper

You can change the settings of custom paper you have already added.

1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

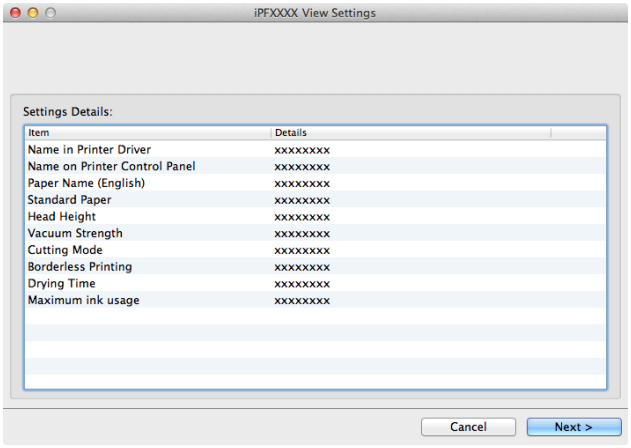
Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see "**Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" ➔P.592

2 Select the paper you want to edit from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Edit** button.



3 The View Settings dialog box is displayed.

Follow the on-screen directions and change the settings as required.



Note

- Refer to Steps 5 to 15 of the "**Add Custom Paper**" →P.595 for details on how to configure each setting.

Export Custom Media Information

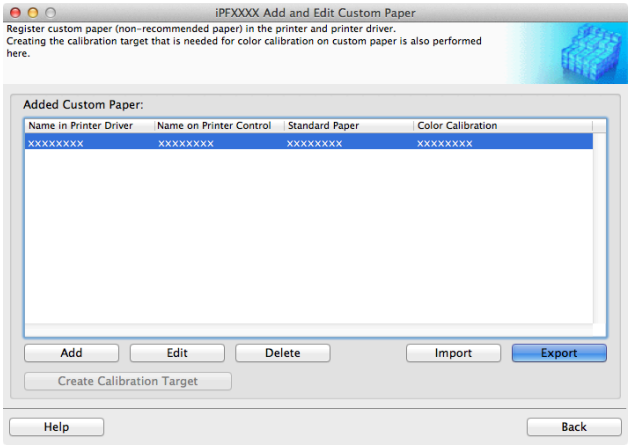
You can export to file and save media information about custom paper that you have added.
The saved Custom Media Information File can be used by importing it into another printer or PC. Refer to "**Import Custom Media Information**" →P.604 for details on "importing custom media information".

1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

Note

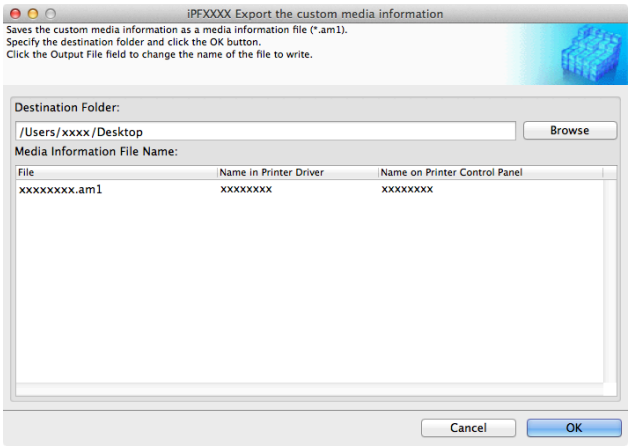
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see "**Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper.**" →P.592

2 Select the paper you want to export to media information file from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Export** button.



Note
- You can select multiple paper.

3 Specify the location to save the Custom Media Information File.



Note
- You can change the file name by selecting and editing the File.
  A Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) is saved.
- The Custom Media Information File is common to the iPF6400S, iPF8400S, and iPF9400S.
- For custom paper where a calibration target has been created, the calibration target information is also exported to the file.

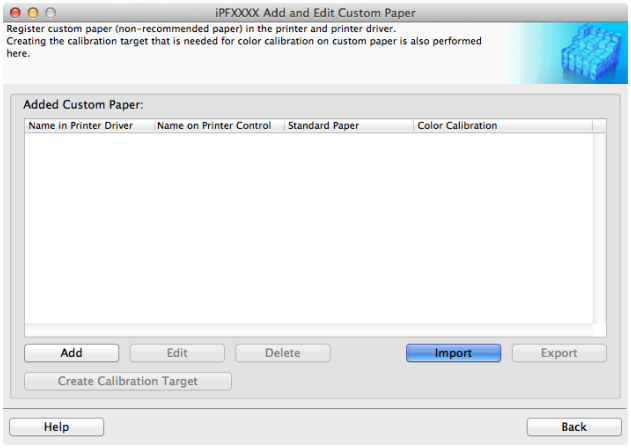
Import Custom Media Information

You can import a Custom Media Information File that has been saved in a folder, and add the file to the printer control panel and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.

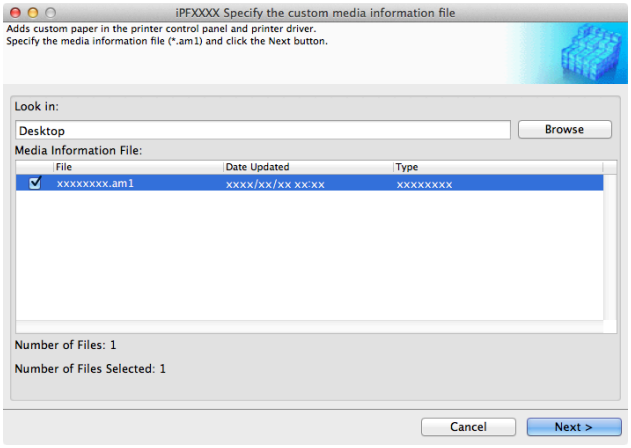
1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

Note
- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see **"Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper."** →P.592

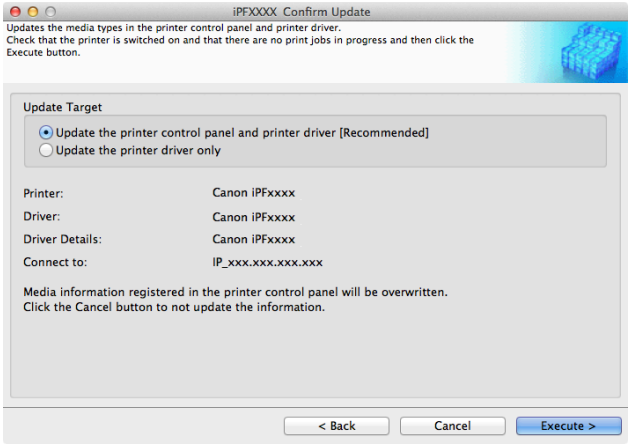
2 Click the **Import** button.



3 Select the Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) to import.



4 The **Confirm Update** dialog box opens.
Click the **Execute** button.



Note

- You should normally select **Update the printer control panel and printer driver**.
  The custom paper is added to the control panel of the printer and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.
- When the custom paper is correctly added to the printer driver, the name of the added custom paper is displayed in the **Edit Media Types** dialog box that is opened by **Add Genuine Paper** in the Media Configuration Tool window.
- After importing custom paper, adjust the paper feed amount for that custom paper. For details on the method for adjusting the paper feed amount, see "**Automatic Banding Adjustment**." ➔P.771
- The Custom Media Information File is common to the iPF6400S, iPF8400S, and iPF9400S.
- If the imported custom media information file contains calibration target information, the calibration target is also registered in the printer.

Create Calibration Target

To perform color calibration on custom paper, a calibration target needs to be created for that custom paper and registered in the printer.
There are two types of calibration targets, calibration targets for executing color calibration **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** on the control panel and imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console and calibration targets for executing **Auto Adjust**.

Note

- The optional spectrophotometer unit is required in order to create a calibration target.
- In order to create a calibration target, roll paper of width 406.4 mm (16.00 inches) or more is required.
- In order to create a calibration target, you need to add the custom paper in advance. For details on the procedure for adding custom paper, see "**Add Custom Paper**." ➔P.595

1 Open the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box.

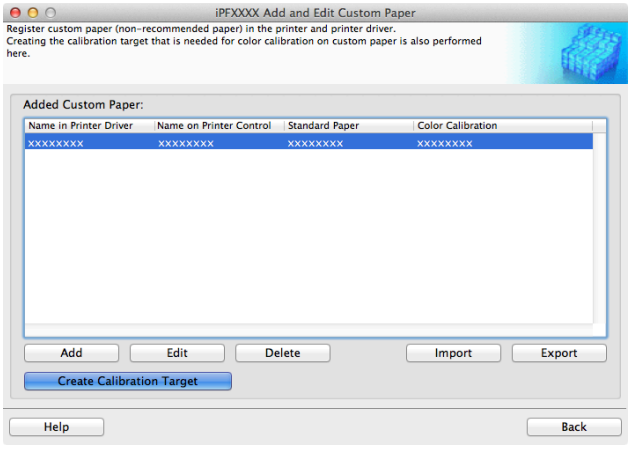
Note

- For details on the procedure for opening the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box, see "**Using Paper Other than Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper**." ➔P.592

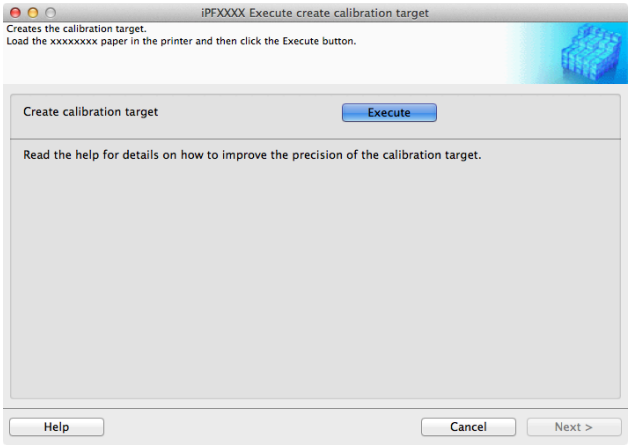
2 Select the paper that you want to create the calibration target for from the **Added Custom Paper** list and click the **Create Calibration Target** button.

Note

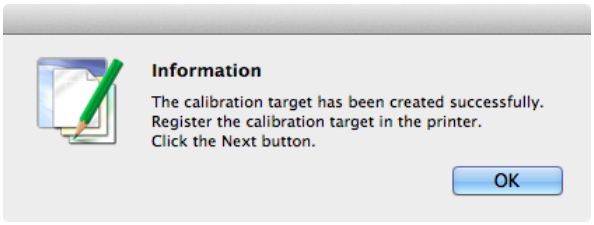
- If **Color Calibration** is **Can execute**, then the calibration target is already registered in the printer. If you perform color calibration using a recreated calibration target, the color tones may change.
- If **Color Calibration** is **Only Auto Adjust (High Precision) allowed**, then the calibration target for executing color calibration **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** in the control panel and imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console is already registered in the printer. A calibration target is not registered for executing **Auto Adjust**.
- If **Color Calibration** is Cannot execute, then a calibration target cannot be created for this custom paper.



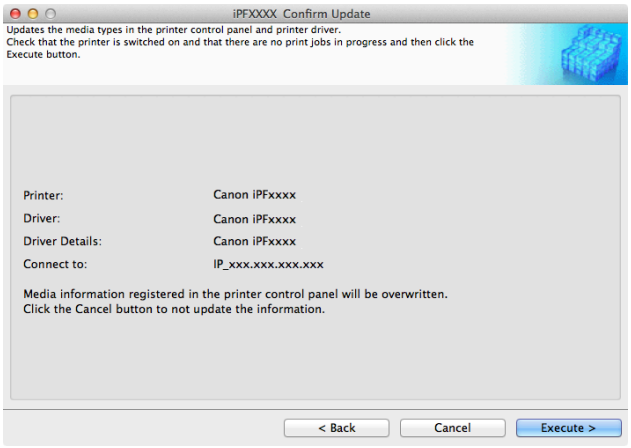
3 Load the custom paper into the printer and click the **Execute** button in **Create Calibration Target**.



4 Once the calibration target is registered in the printer, click the **Next** button in the **Execute create calibration target** dialog box.



5 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Confirm the update and click the **Execute** button.



Note
- If creating the calibration target fails, **Target not registered** is displayed in **Color Calibration** in the **Add and Edit Custom Paper** dialog box. If creating the calibration target fails, it might be able to be created by changing the environment where the printer is located.

Warnings

Take note of the following warnings when added custom paper other than Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper to the printer driver and the printer itself.

About the Cutter

- Depending on the paper, there are types that cannot be cut by the cutter unit, and types that speed deterioration of the blade and cause damage to the cutter. For thick paper, hard paper, etc. do not use the cutter unit, and instead cut the roll paper using scissors, etc. after printing. In this case, select **User Cut** as the **Automatic Cutting Settings** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box.

Note
- If the cutter is damaged, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.
- For details on the methods for cutting roll paper, see "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**" ➔P.516

About the Printhead

- If the printhead rubs against the paper during printing, this may cause damage to the printhead. If the printhead is rubbing against the paper, configure the **Vacuum Strength** in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box as follows.
  - For paper-based media such as Heavyweight Coated Paper: Set to **Strong** or **Strongest**
  - For film-based media such as CAD Tracing Paper: Set to **Standard**, **Strong**, or **Strongest**
  - For thin paper of thickness 0.1mm or less: Set to **Weakest**

Note
- If the printhead still rubs even after changing the **Vacuum Strength**, set the **Head Height** to be higher in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box.
- For details on how to handle the printhead rubbing against the paper, see "**Paper rubs against the printhead.**" ➔P.955

About Borderless Printing

- When performing borderless printing on paper where the ink does not dry well, the cutter unit may leave scratches where it touches the printed surface, or may not cut correctly. In this kind of situation, configure the amount of time to wait for the ink to dry after printing using **Drying Time** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box.
  Alternatively, if the paper cannot be cut well by the cutter, set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box, and cut the roll paper using scissors, etc.

About the Color Tone

- The color tone cannot be configured using the Media Configuration Tool. If the color tone needs to be adjusted, provide an ICC color profile that matches the paper you are using, and select that ICC color profile in your software. For details on how to specify the ICC color profile in the printer driver, see "**Matching Sheet .**" ➔P.175
- Custom paper cannot be used with the ambient light adjustment function or Monitor Matching in Color-Matching Method.

Checking the update

After updating the media information using the Media Configuration Tool, you can check whether the update has been applied to the printer in the control panel of the printer.

1 Click the **About** button in the Media Configuration Tool main window to open the **About** dialog box.

2 Check the value **xx.xx (xxxx)** of **MIT DB Version**.

3 Check the value **xx.xx (xxxx)** of **MIT** in **Set./Adj. Menu** > **Printer Info** > **System Info** in the printer control panel.
If the values in Steps 2 and 3 are the same, the update has been applied to the printer.

Memo

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491

Control Panel

Operations and Display Screen 612
Printer Menu 623

Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

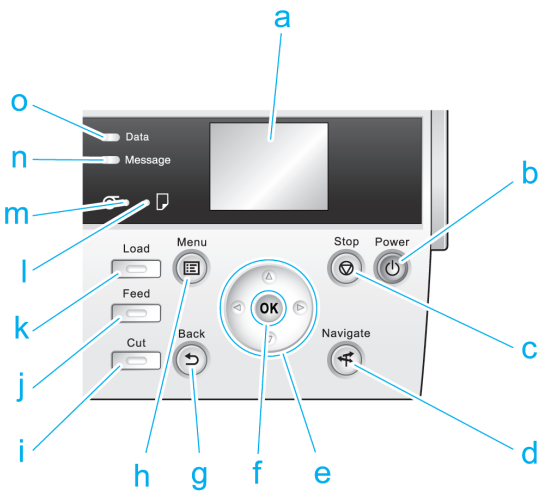
User's Guide

Operations and Display Screen

Control Panel 612

Control Panel Display 614
How to View Instructions with Navigate 619
Checking Instructions During Printer Operations 621

Control Panel



a Display Screen

Shows printer menus, as well as the printer status and messages.

b **Power** button (green)

Turns the printer on and off. (See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") ➔P.21

The **Power** button is lit when the printer is on or in Sleep mode.

c **Stop** button

Cancels print jobs in progress and ends the ink drying period.

d **Navigate** button

Enables you to check instructions for loading and removing paper or replacing ink tanks or printheads, as well as other operations. (See "**How to View Instructions with Navigate.**") ➔P.619

e Arrow buttons

- ◀ button

  Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to move to another tab.

  In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to move to another digit.

- ▲ button

  Press this button when viewing menus to display the next menu item or setting value.

- ▶ button

  Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to move to another tab.

  In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to move to another digit.

- ▼ button

  Press this button when viewing menus to display the next menu item or setting value.

f **OK** button

Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to display the menu of the tab shown.

Pressing this button in menu items of each tab for which ⊞ is displayed at left will move to the lower level of the menu item, enabling you to execute menu commands or set menu values.
Also press this button if the Display Screen indicates to press the **OK** button.

g Back button
Displays the screen before the current screen.

h Menu button
Displays the **Tab Selection screen**. (See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632

i Cut button
Pressing this button when rolls are loaded cuts the paper, if you have specified **Automatic** or **Eject** in **Cutting Mode** in the Control Panel menu. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls**.") ➔P.516

j Feed button
Pressing this button when rolls are loaded enables you to reposition the paper. (See "**Feeding Roll Paper Manually**.") ➔P.513

k Load button
Press this button when loading or replacing paper.
(See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer**.") ➔P.505
(See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot**.") ➔P.529

l Cut Sheet lamp (green)
Lit when sheets are selected as the paper source.

m Roll Media lamp (green)
Lit when rolls are selected as the paper source.

n Message Lamp (orange)

- On
  A warning message is displayed.
- Flashing
  An error message is displayed.
- Off
  The printer is off or is operating normally.

o Data Lamp (green)

- Flashing
  During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. Otherwise, this lamp flashes when the print job is paused or the printer is updating the firmware.
- Off
  There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

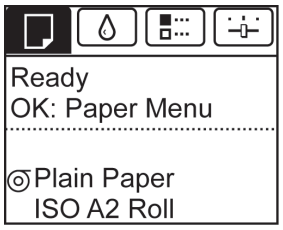
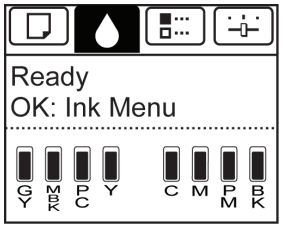
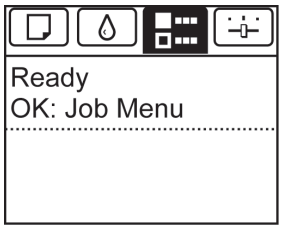
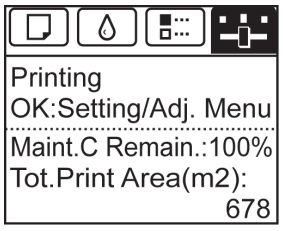
Note
- To recover from Sleep mode, any button can be pressed on the Control Panel.

Control Panel Display

After the printer starts up, the **Tab Selection screen** is displayed.
Each of the four tabs presents status, menus, and error information related to the particular tab.

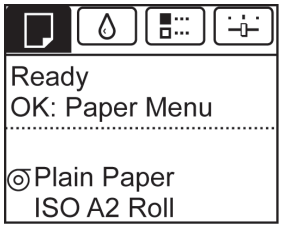
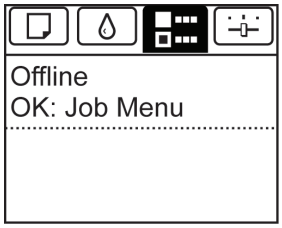
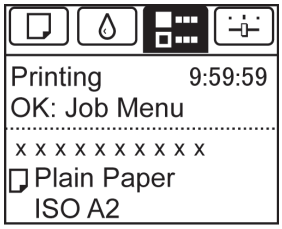
Types of tabs

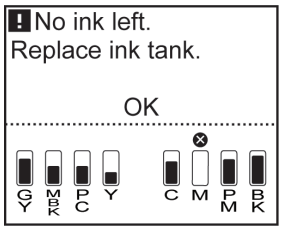
The **Tab Selection screen** presents four tabs. Each tab is represented by an icon in the top row. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to access other tabs.

Paper tab 	A tab indicating status and showing menus related to paper. Pressing the **OK** button when this tab is highlighted will display the **Paper Menu**. • Top line displayed The paper icon is highlighted. • Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names. • Bottom line displayed The first and second lines display the paper type and size.
Ink tab 	A tab indicating status and showing menus related to ink. Pressing the **OK** button when this tab is highlighted will display the **Ink Menu**. • Top line displayed The ink icon is highlighted. • Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names. • Bottom line displayed Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (See "**Checking Ink Tank Levels.**") ➔P.888
Job tab 	A tab indicating status and showing menus related to print jobs. Pressing the **OK** button when this tab is highlighted will display the **Job Menu** menu. • Top line displayed The job icon is highlighted. • Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names.
Settings/Adj. tab 	A tab indicating status and showing menus related to settings and adjustment. Pressing the **OK** button when this tab is highlighted will display the **Set./Adj. Menu**. • Top line displayed The settings/adjustment icon is highlighted. • Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names. • Bottom line displayed The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is shown on the first line and **Tot.Print Area** on the second. The display unit for **Tot.Print Area** can be specified in the **Length Unit** menu. (See "**Menu Settings.**") ➔P.632

Printer status and modes

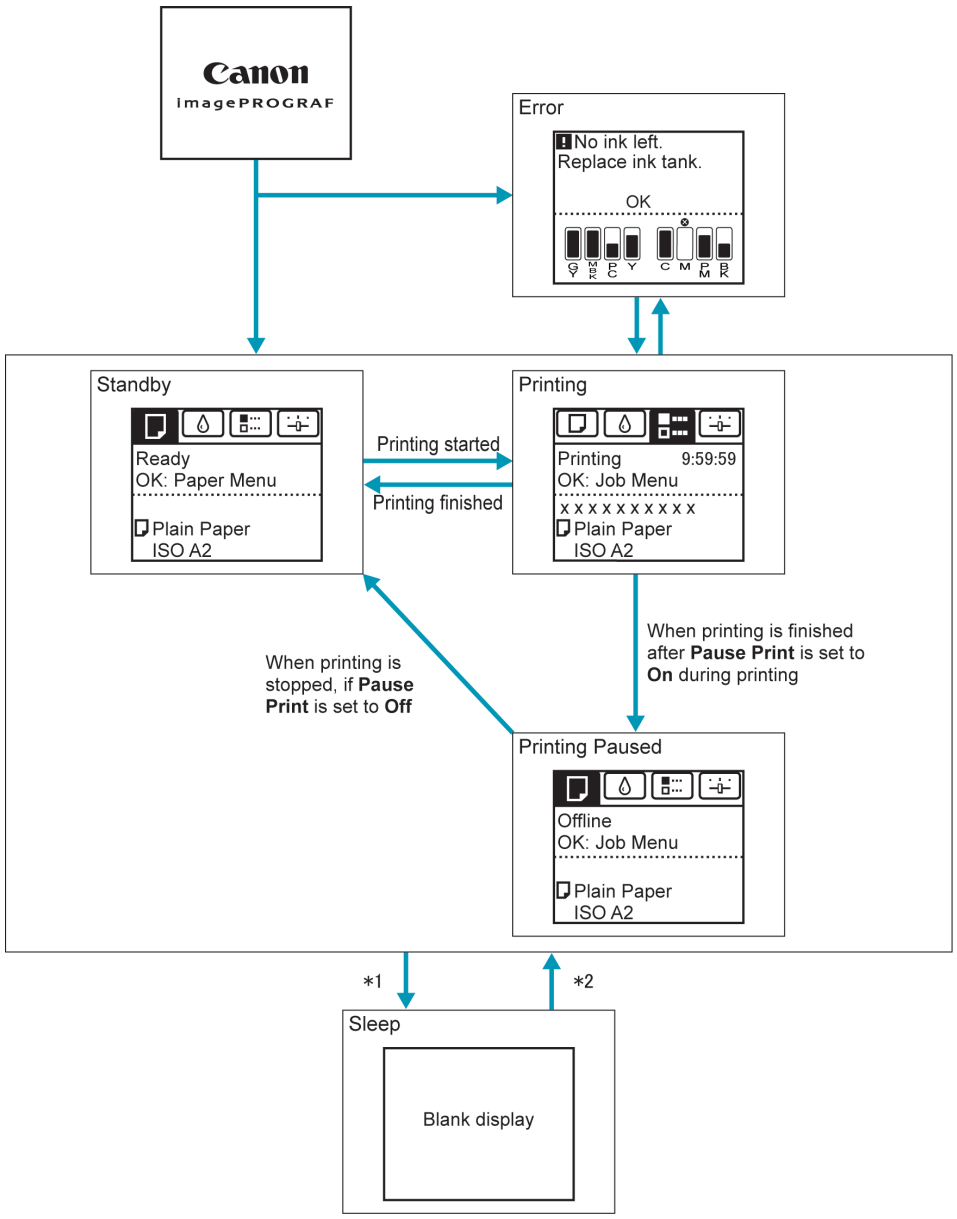
Printer status is classified according to the following five modes.

Standby 	The printer is ready to receive jobs sent from the computer. Jobs sent from the computer are printed immediately.
Printing Paused 	Printing is paused on the printer. Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed.
Printing 	Printing is in progress on the printer. Jobs sent from the computer are printed after the current job. The time left until printing is finished is indicated in the upper-right corner of the screen. (Values exceeding 10 hours are not shown.)
Sleep Blank display	The printer is in power-saving mode. The printer automatically enters Sleep mode to conserve power when idle for a specific period (by default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. You can specify the period before the printer enters **Sleep** mode in the **Sleep Timer** menu. (See "**Menu Settings**.") →P.632 After entering **Sleep** mode from **Standby** mode, the printer automatically recovers if print jobs are received, and the jobs are printed.
Off Blank display	The printer is not on. If no operations are performed on the printer for the duration of the time set in **Shut Down Timer** after entering Sleep mode, the printer automatically turns off. (See "**Menu Settings**.") →P.632

Error	The printer requires your attention. Any jobs sent from the computer cannot be processed. The tab related to the error is displayed. For information about the display in the case of multiple errors, see "Display Transitions in Error Status."
	

Display Transitions in Normal Status

The display transitions while the printer is in the normal status (the status where no errors have occurred) are shown below.

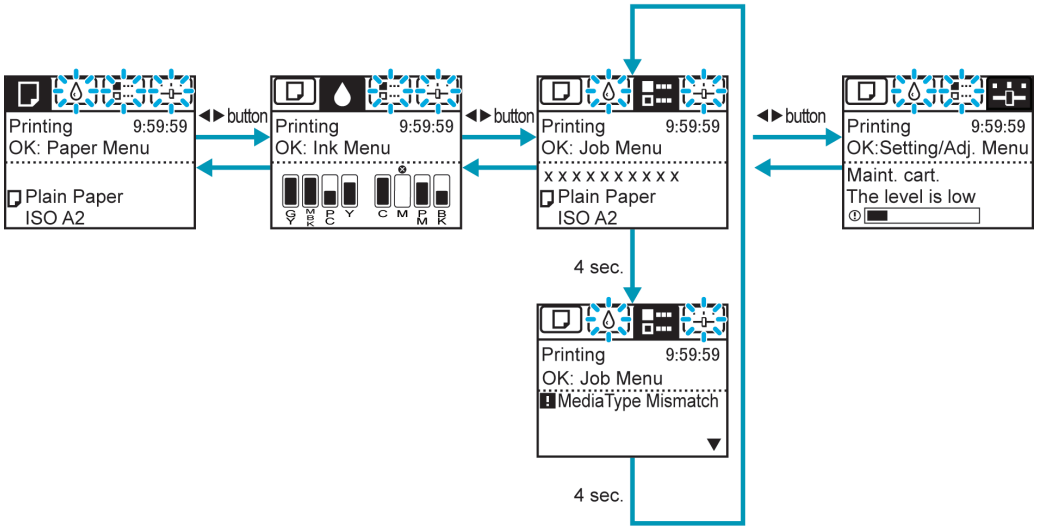


*1: The printer automatically enters **Sleep** mode when idle for a specific period (by default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. However, it does not enter **Sleep** mode while error messages are displayed or when a roll can be manually advanced by pressing the **Feed** button.

*2: When the printer is in **Sleep** mode, you can press any button except the **Power** button to recover from **Sleep** mode. **Sleep** mode is also terminated if a print job is received or a command is issued from RemoteUI.

Display Transitions in Error Status

The display transitions while an error has occurred on the printer are shown below.
If multiple errors have occurred, the tabs for errors that have occurred other than the currently displayed error are displayed flashing. You can move between the tabs to check the errors by pressing the ◀ and ▶ keys. If multiple errors have occurred in the Job tab and Settings/Adj. tab, the error message switches every four seconds within each tab.

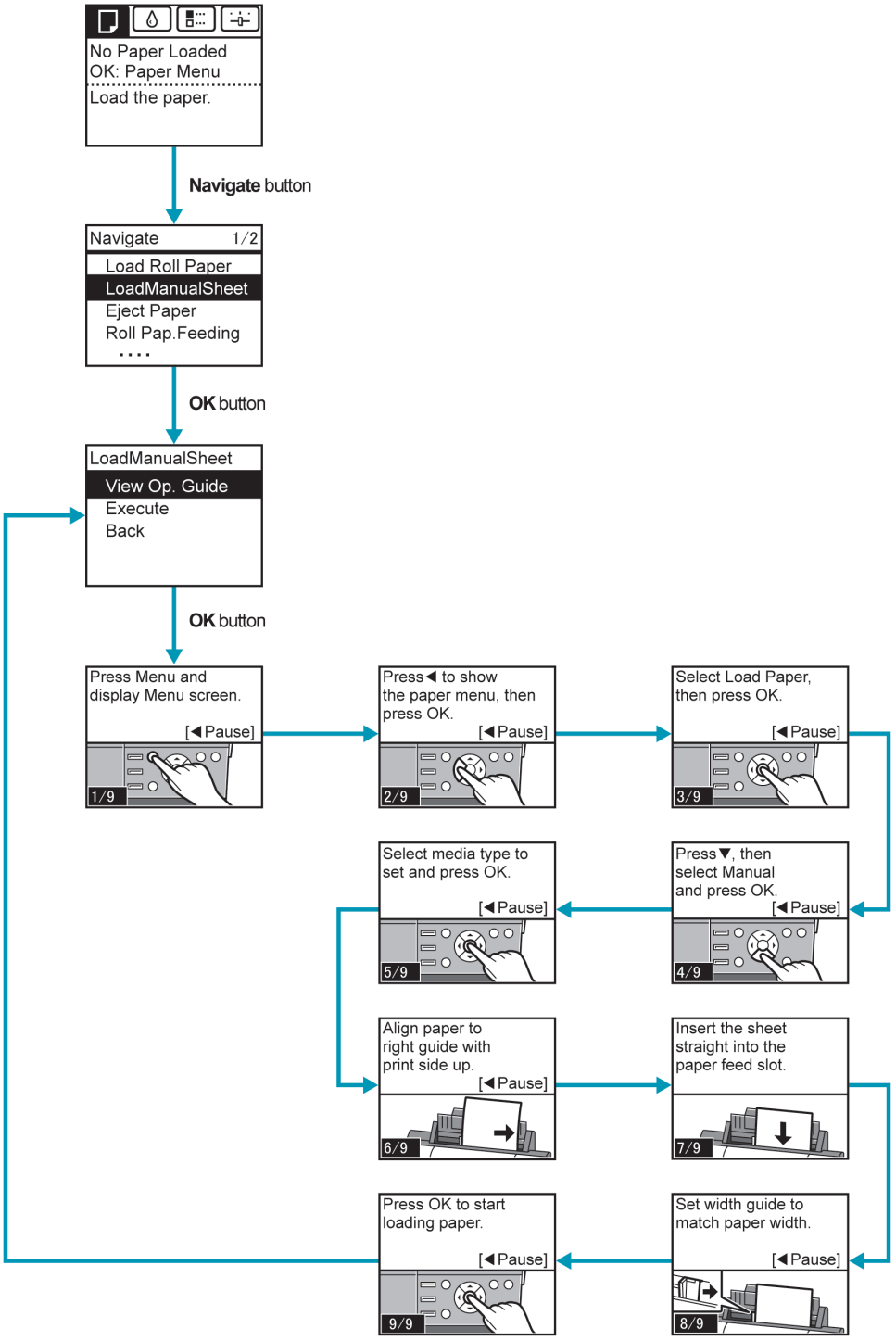


How to View Instructions with Navigate

You can refer to instructions for loading paper, replacing ink tanks, and performing other operations on the printer control panel.

1. Press the **Navigate** button.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired navigation menu.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **View Op. Guide**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Instructions are now displayed.

Example: Loading sheets



Checking Instructions During Printer Operations

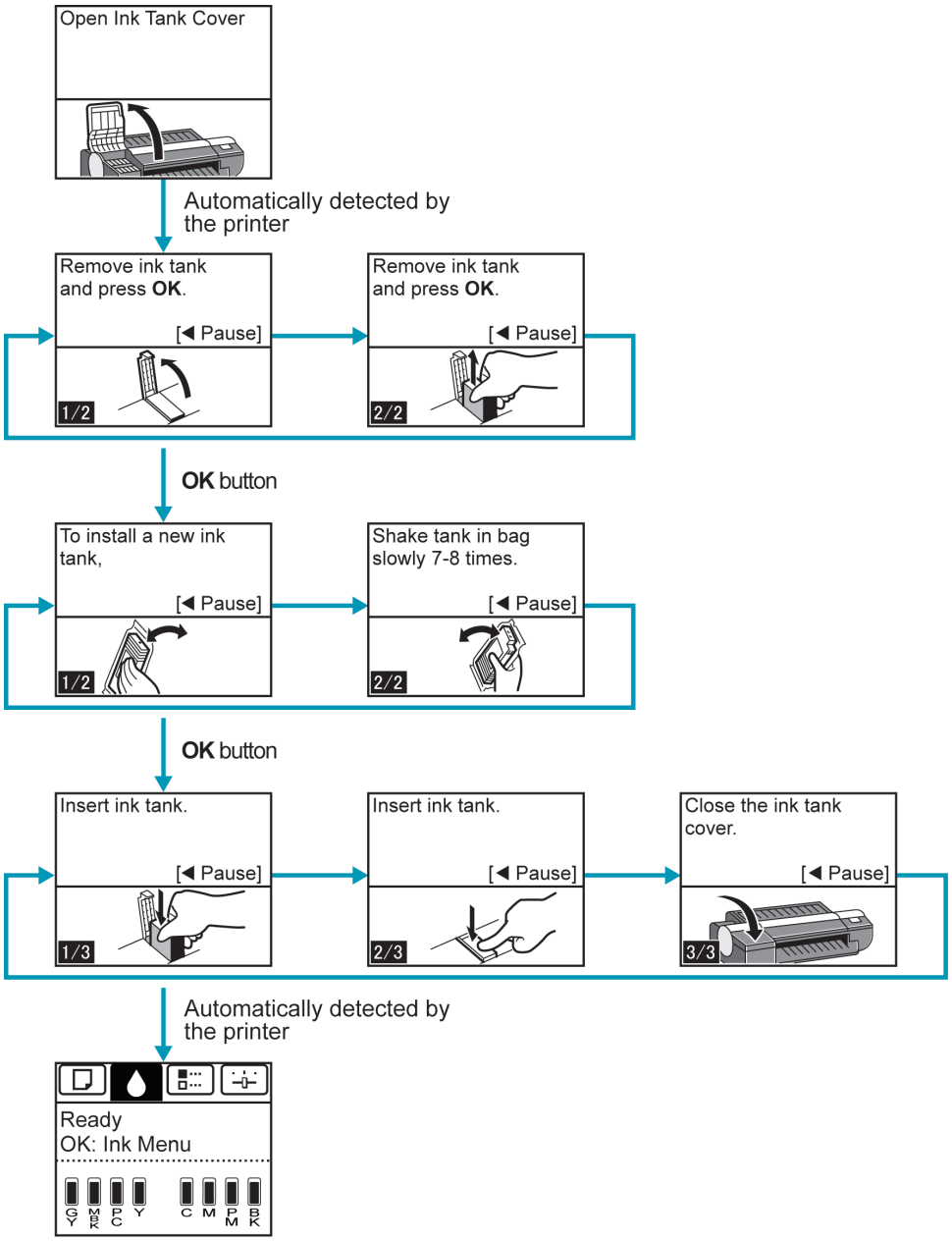
You can refer to instructions on the printer control panel when loading paper, replacing ink tanks, or performing other operations.

How to view instructions

Once you complete an action described in the instructions, the printer detects the action and switches to the next instruction screen.

In the case of actions the printer cannot detect, instruction screens are switched every four seconds, and the sequence of operations is shown repeatedly.
When all actions in the sequence are finished, the instruction screen for the next step is displayed.

Example: Ink tank replacement



Note

- During a continuous display of instructions, you can press the ◀ button to pause the instructions on the current screen. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to display the previous or next screens. If you do not press the ◀ or ▶ button within 30 seconds, continuous display is resumed.
  Press the **OK** button to display the instruction screen for the next step.

Printer Menu

Printer Menu Operations 623

Menu Operations 624
Menu Structure 627
Menu Settings 632

Status Print 642
Printing Interface Setting Reports 645

Printer Menu Operations

The printer menu is classified into regular menu items available when no print job is in progress and menu during printing items only available while printing is in progress.

- Regular menu operations →P.623
- Menu operations during printing →P.623

Regular menu operations

To view available menus organized on tabs, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** and press the **OK** button.

Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, pressing **OK** will not display menus.
  Menus can be selected after you resolve the problem.

The following operations are available from the menu.

- **Paper Menu**
  Paper menu settings
- **Ink Menu**
  Ink menu operations
- **Job Menu**
  Menu operations to manage print jobs
- **Set./Adj. Menu**
  Menu operations for printer adjustment and maintenance

For a description of specific menu items available, see "**Menu Settings**." →P.632
For instructions on selecting menu items, see "**Menu Operations**." →P.624

Note
- By default, menu settings apply to all print jobs. However, for settings that are also available in the printer driver, the values specified in the printer driver take priority.

Menu operations during printing

During printing, only a limited set of menu items are displayed. Menu items that are not displayed during printing should be operated after printing has finished.
To display menus during printing, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel, and then press the **OK** button.

Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, pressing **OK** will not display menus.
  Menus can be selected after you resolve the problem.

The following operations are available from the menu during printing.

- **Ink Menu**

Ink menu operations

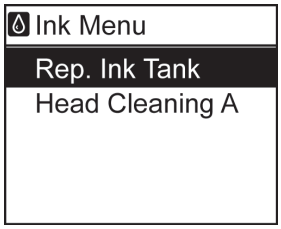
- **Job Menu**
  Menu operations to manage print jobs
- **Set./Adj. Menu**
  Fine-tuning paper feeding
  Display of printer-related information

For a description of specific menu items available, see "**Menu Settings**." ➔P.632
For instructions on selecting menu items during printing, see "**Menu Operations**." ➔P.624

Menu Operations

To view available menus organized on tabs, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** and press the **OK** button. For details, see "**Menu Settings**." ➔P.632

- Menus (when the Ink tab is selected and the **OK** button is pressed)



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

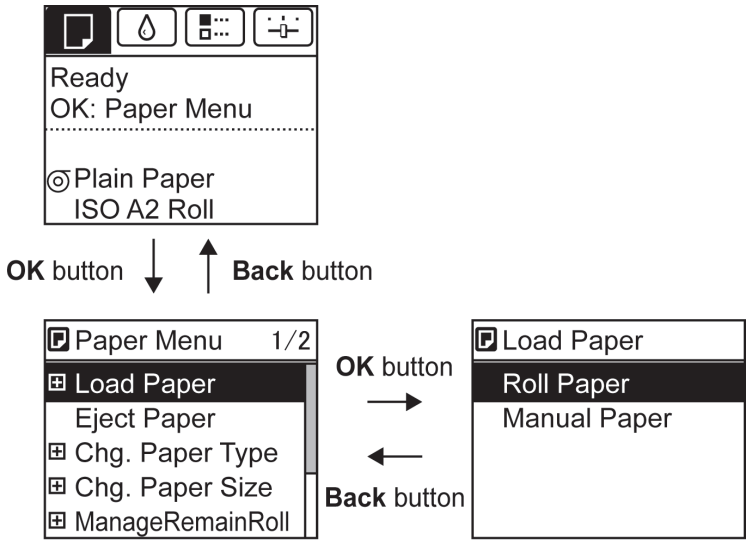
Simply press buttons on the Control Panel to access menus on various tabs from the **Tab Selection screen** and set or execute **Menu** items.
The following section describes menu operations.

- Accessing menus ➔P.624
- Specifying menu items ➔P.626
- Specifying numerical values ➔P.626
- Executing menu commands ➔P.626

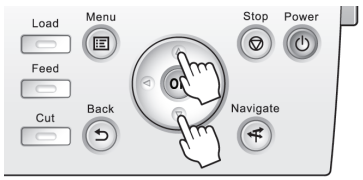
Accessing menus

Printer menus are grouped by function.

Menus are displayed with the upper line selected. You can use the buttons on the Control Panel to access each menu.

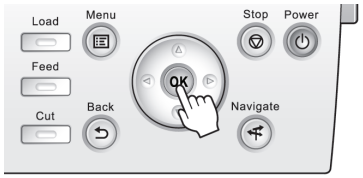


- Press **Back** to access a higher menu in the menu list, and press **OK** to access a lower one. If not all menu items are displayed, hold down ▲ or ▼ to scroll through higher and lower menu items. Items you select are highlighted.



The scroll bar at right indicates the current position in the overall menu.

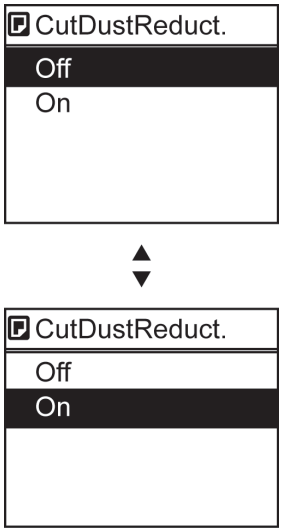
- Lower menus are available if ⊞ is displayed at left next to the second and subsequent rows. To access the lower menus, select the menu and press the **OK** button.



Specifying menu items

Menu items can be set as follows.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting, and then press the **OK** button.
   After two seconds, the display reverts to the upper level menu.

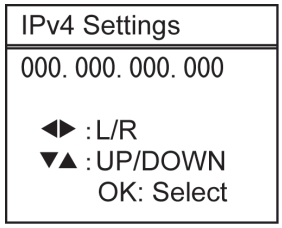


Note
- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer is now in **Standby**.

Specifying numerical values

Follow these steps to enter numbers. In this example, network settings items are entered.

1. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to move to the next field for input.



2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.

Note
- Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to complete the settings, and then press the **OK** button.

Note
- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer is now in **Standby**.

Executing menu commands

Menu commands can be executed as follows.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the action to execute, and then press the **OK** button.
   The menu command is now executed.

Menu Structure

The menu structure is shown categorized by tab. The * on the right side of an item indicates the default value.
The printer menu is classified into regular menu items available when no print job is in progress and menu during printing items only available while printing is in progress. see "**Printer Menu Operations**." ➔P.623

Regular menu	Menu during printing
Paper Menu	Not displayed
Ink Menu	The same **Ink Menu** as normal is displayed.
Job Menu	The same **Job Menu** as normal is displayed.
Set./Adj. Menu	A limited **Set./Adj. Menu** containing the following items is displayed. • **Adj. Fine Feed**(*1) • **Printer Info**

*1: Only displayed in the menu during printing. Not displayed in the regular menu.

For instructions on menu operations, see "**Menu Operations**." ➔P.624
For details on menu items, see "**Menu Settings**." ➔P.632
Menus may change according to the optional products in use.

Paper Menu

The **Paper Menu** is not displayed during printing.

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Load Paper	Roll Paper | Manual Paper			
Eject Paper				
Chg. Paper Type(*1)	Roll Paper	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*1)		
	Manual Paper			
Chg. Paper Size	Manual PaperSize	(The size of paper is displayed here.) (*2)		
		CustomPaperSize	(Set the length and width)	
	Roll Length(*3)	(Set the length)		
ManageRemainRoll	Off* | On			
Paper Details	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*1)	Head Height	Automatic* | Highest | High | Standard | Low | Lowest | Super Low	
		Skew Check Lv.	High Accuracy | Standard* | Loose | Off	
		Cutting Mode(*5)	Automatic | Eject | Manual	
		Cut Speed	Fast | Standard | Slow	
		Trim Edge First	Automatic | Off | On (Preset Len) | On(Input Length) | Manual	
		CutDustReduct.	Off | On	
		VacuumStrngth	Automatic* | Strongest | Strong | Standard | Weak | Weakest	
		Scan Wait Time	Dry time	Off* | 1 sec. | 3 sec. | 5 sec. | 7 sec. | 9 sec.
			Area(*4)	Entire area* | Leading edge
		Roll DryingTime	Off | 30 sec. | 1 min. | 3 min. | 5 min. | 10 min. | 30 min. | 60 min.	
		NearEnd RollMrgn	3mm | 20mm	
		NearEnd Sht Mrgn	3mm | 20mm	
		BordlessOversize	Standard* | Little	

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		Manual Feed	Front | Top	
		Return Defaults		
Paper Details				
Keep Paper Type	Off* | On			

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") ➔P.496 Types of paper in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information with the Media Configuration Tool. (See "**Updating paper information**.") ➔P.499

*2: For information on the sizes of paper the printer supports, see "**Paper Sizes**." ➔P.492

*3: Available only if **ManageRemainRoll** is **On**.

*4: **Leading edge** is not available as a setting option in the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box of the printer driver.

*5: see "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls**." ➔P.516

Ink Menu

First Level
Rep. Ink Tank
Head Cleaning A

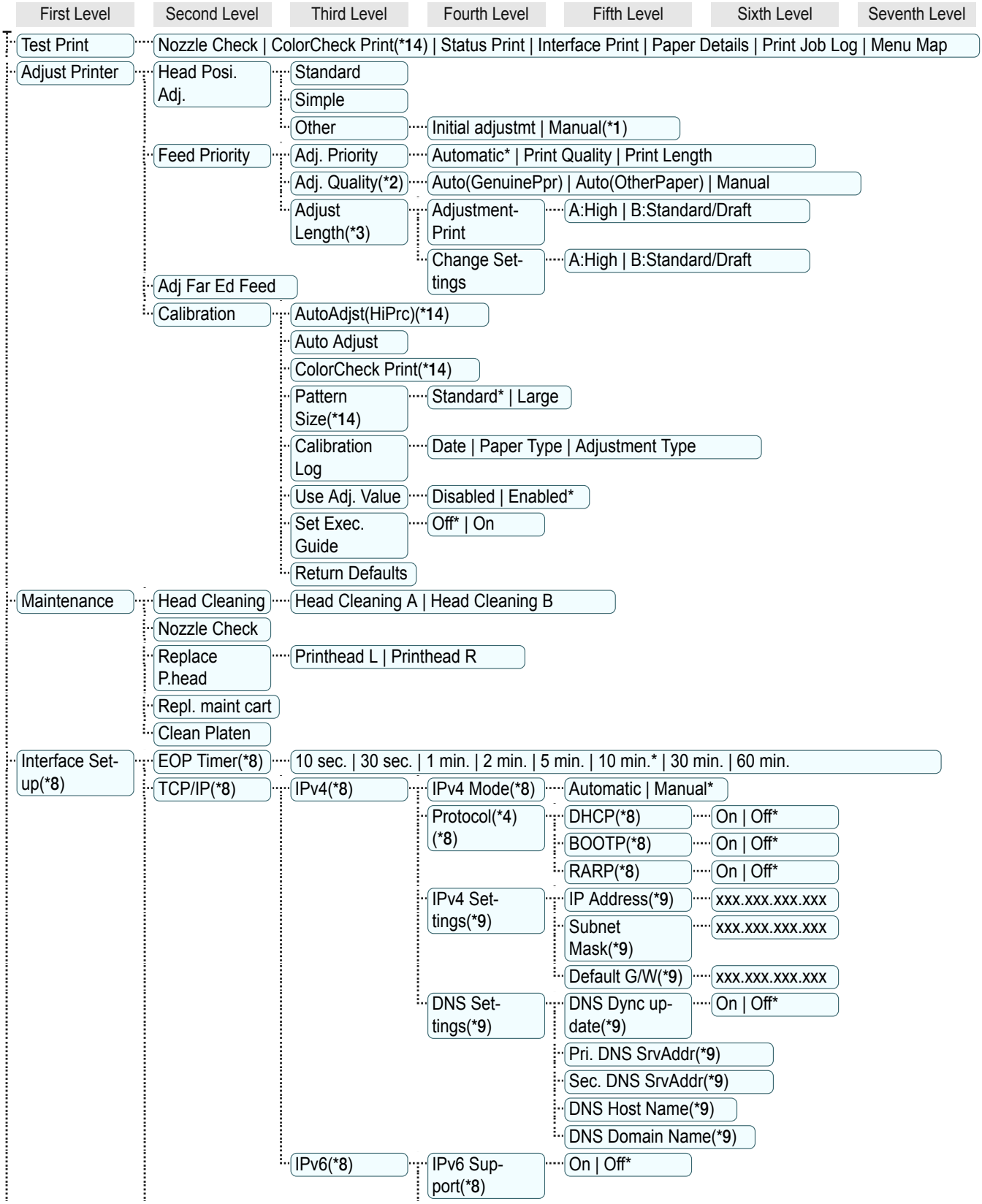
Job Menu

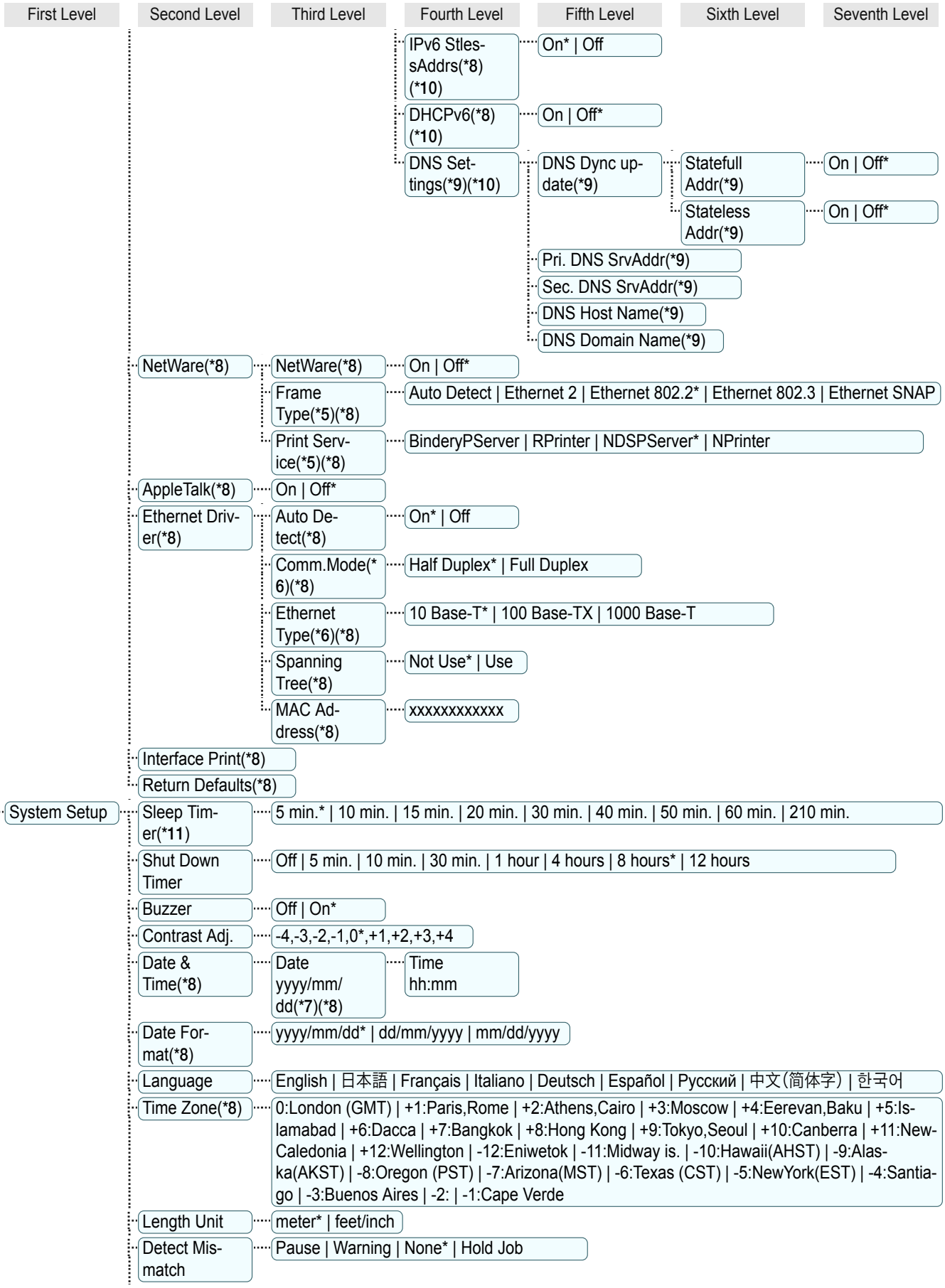
First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Print Job	Job List	(Choose a print job.)	Delete | Preempt Jobs(*1)	
Stored Job	Mailbox List	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	Job List	Print | Delete
			Print Job List	
Job Log(*2)	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	Document Name		
		User Name		
		Page Count		
		Job Status	OK | CANCELED	
		Print Start Time	yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm:ss	
		Print End Time	yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm:ss	
		Print Time	xxxsec.	
		Output Img. Size	(The image size is displayed)	
		Media Type		
		Paper Consumed		
		Paper Length		
		Paper Width		
		Interface	USB | Network | HDD	
		Ink Consumed	Tot.Ink Consumed	xxx.xxx ml
			(The ink color is displayed here.)	xxx.xxx ml
		Print settings		
		Head Height		
		Temp./Humidity		
		Adjustment req.		
Print Job Log				
Pause Print	Off* | On			
HDD Information	Total capacity | Box free space			

*1: If a pending job is selected, **Print Anyway** is displayed.

Set./Adj. Menu

Limited items are displayed during printing. The displayed items are indicated by annotations.




First Level
Second Level
Third Level
Fourth Level
Fifth Level
Sixth Level
Seventh Level
IPv6 Stles-sAddrs(*8)(*10)
On* | Off
DHCPv6(*8)(*10)
On | Off*
DNS Set-tings(*9)(*10)
DNS Dync up-date(*9)
Statefull Addr(*9)
On | Off*
Stateless Addr(*9)
On | Off*
Pri. DNS SrvAddr(*9)
Sec. DNS SrvAddr(*9)
DNS Host Name(*9)
DNS Domain Name(*9)
NetWare(*8)
NetWare(*8)
On | Off*
Frame Type(*5)(*8)
Auto Detect | Ethernet 2 | Ethernet 802.2* | Ethernet 802.3 | Ethernet SNAP
Print Serv-ice(*5)(*8)
BinderyPServer | RPrinter | NDSPServer* | NPrinter
AppleTalk(*8)
On | Off*
Ethernet Driv-er(*8)
Auto De-tect(*8)
On* | Off
Comm.Mode(*6)(*8)
Half Duplex* | Full Duplex
Ethernet Type(*6)(*8)
10 Base-T* | 100 Base-TX | 1000 Base-T
Spanning Tree(*8)
Not Use* | Use
MAC Ad-dress(*8)
xxxxxxxxxxxx
Interface Print(*8)
Return Defaults(*8)
System Setup
Sleep Tim-er(*11)
5 min.* | 10 min. | 15 min. | 20 min. | 30 min. | 40 min. | 50 min. | 60 min. | 210 min.
Shut Down Timer
Off | 5 min. | 10 min. | 30 min. | 1 hour | 4 hours | 8 hours* | 12 hours
Buzzer
Off | On*
Contrast Adj.
-4,-3,-2,-1,0*,+1,+2,+3,+4
Date & Time(*8)
Date yyyy/mm/dd(*7)(*8)
Time hh:mm
Date For-mat(*8)
yyyy/mm/dd* | dd/mm/yyyy | mm/dd/yyyy
Language
English | 日本語 | Français | Italiano | Deutsch | Español | Русский | 中文(简体字) | 한국어
Time Zone(*8)
0:London (GMT) | +1:Paris,Rome | +2:Athens,Cairo | +3:Moscow | +4:Eerevan,Baku | +5:Is-lamabad | +6:Dacca | +7:Bangkok | +8:Hong Kong | +9:Tokyo,Seoul | +10:Canberra | +11:New-Caledonia | +12:Wellington | -12:Eniwetok | -11:Midway is. | -10:Hawaii(AHST) | -9:Alas-ka(AKST) | -8:Oregon (PST) | -7:Arizona(MST) | -6:Texas (CST) | -5:NewYork(EST) | -4:Santia-go | -3:Buenos Aires | -2: | -1:Cape Verde
Length Unit
meter* | feet/inch
Detect Mis-match
Pause | Warning | None* | Hold Job

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
	Paper Size Basis	Roll Selection 1	ISO A3 (297mm)* | 300mm Roll			
		Roll Selection 2	10in. (254mm)* | JIS B4 (257mm)			
	Keep Paper Size	Off* | On				
	TrimEdge Re-load	Automatic | Off* | On				
	Rep.P.head Print	Off | On*				
	Nozzle Check	Frequency	Standard* | 1 page | 10 pages | Off			
		Warning	Off* | On			
	Use Remo-teUI(*8)	On* | Off				
	Reset PaprSetngs(*8)					
	Erase HDD Data	High Speed(*8) | Secure High Spd.(*8) | Secure(*8)				
	Output Method	Print* | Print (Auto Del) | Save: Box XX				
	Print After Recv	Off* | On				
	Common Box Set.(*4)(*8)	Print* | Print (Auto Del)				
	Show Job Log(*8)	Off | On*				
Prep.MovePrinter						
Admin. Menu(*8)	Change Pass-word(*9)	(The screen for setting the password is displayed)				
	Init.Admin.Pswd(*9)					
Adj. Fine Feed(*12)(*13)						
Printer In-fo(*12)	Paper Info | Ink Info | System Info | Error Log | Other Counter					

*1: Available after you have used **Standard** or **Initial adjustmt** in **Head Posi. Adj.** once.

*2: Available if **Adj. Priority** is **Automatic** or **Print Quality**.

*3: Available if **Adj. Priority** is **Automatic** or **Print Length**.

*4: Not displayed if **IPv4 Mode** is **Manual**.

*5: Not displayed if **NetWare** is **Off**.

*6: Not displayed if **Auto Detect** is **On**.

*7: Follows the setting in **Date Format**.

*8: Restrictions apply if a password is configured using **Change Password** in the **Admin. Menu**.
Viewing and configuration is possible for administrators, and only viewing for other users.

*9: Restrictions apply if a password is configured using **Change Password** in the **Admin. Menu**.
Viewing and configuration is possible for administrators only.

*10: Not displayed if **IPv6 Support** is **Off**.

*11: Default setting for the time to enter the power save mode/Sleep mode is recommended.

*12: Displayed as the menu during printing while printing is in progress.

*13: Not displayed in the regular menu.

*14: This is displayed when the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) is mounted.

Menu Settings

Menu items are as follows.
The printer menu is classified into regular menu items available when no print job is in progress and menu during printing items only available while printing is in progress. see "**Printer Menu Operations**." ➔P.623

Regular menu	Menu during printing
Paper Menu	Not displayed
Ink Menu	The same **Ink Menu** as normal is displayed.
Job Menu	The same **Job Menu** as normal is displayed.
Set./Adj. Menu	A limited **Set./Adj. Menu** containing the following items is displayed. • **Adj. Fine Feed** (*1) • **Printer Info**

*1: Only displayed in the menu during printing. Not displayed in the regular menu.

For instructions on selecting menu items, see "**Menu Operations**." ➔P.624
For details on the displayed menu hierarchy, see "**Menu Structure**." ➔P.627
Menus may change according to the optional products in use.

Paper Menu

The **Paper Menu** is not displayed during printing.

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
Load Paper			Select either manually loaded sheets or rolls and load the paper.
Eject Paper			Choose this item before removing loaded paper.
Chg. Paper Type (*1)			Change the type of paper loaded. (See "**Changing the Type of Paper.**") ➔P.508
Chg. Paper Size			Change the size of paper loaded. (See "**Specifying the Paper Length.**") ➔P.509 (See "**Paper Sizes.**") ➔P.492
ManageRemainRoll			Choose **On** to print a barcode at the end of a roll before you remove it. The printed barcode can be used in managing the amount of roll paper left. Choose **Off** if you prefer not to print the barcode. (See "**Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left.**") ➔P.514
Paper Details	(The type of paper is displayed here.) (*1)	**Head Height**	Adjust the Printhead height. (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") ➔P.769
		Skew Check Lv.	If you print on Japanese paper (washi) or other handmade paper that has an irregular width, choose **Loose** for a higher skew detection threshold, or choose **Off** to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is **Off**, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
		Cutting Mode	Specify whether or not to cut with the standard round-bladed cutter. If you choose **Automatic**, the roll will be cut automatically using the Cutter Unit, depending on the printer driver settings. Select **Eject** to prevent printed documents from falling immediately after printing such as when you wait for the ink to dry, etc. **Manual** prints lines at the cut position instead of cutting after printing. If you select **Manual**, the setting screen for detection of the paper leading edge is displayed. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**") ➔P.516
		Cut Speed	Choose the cutting speed. The preset selection represents the optimal cutting speed for the type of paper. We recommend keeping the preset cutting speed. If you use adhesive paper, choosing **Slow** helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp.

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
Paper Details	(The type of paper is displayed here.) (***1**)	**Trim Edge First**	Selects whether or not to automatically cut the leading edge of the roll paper when roll paper is loaded. (See "**Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically.**") ➔P.522
		CutDustReduct.	If you choose **On**, a line will be printed at the cut position when paper cutting is selected. This option reduces the amount of debris given off after cutting. It also helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you use adhesive paper. (See "**Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls.**") ➔P.524
		VacuumStrngth	Specify the level of suction that holds paper against the Platen. (See "**Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.**") ➔P.777
		Scan Wait Time	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry between each scan (after the printhead finishes moving in one direction), in consideration of how quickly the ink dries. Also specify the applicable area for the ink drying time. Select **Entire area** to apply the ink drying time after each scan until the document is fully printed. Select **Leading edge** to apply the ink drying time after each scan only in the area 110–140 mm from the leading edge. (The applicable length varies depending on the **Print Quality** setting.) Note that printing will take longer if you specify the **Scan Wait Time** setting. In particular, when **Leading edge** is selected, colors may be uneven in the boundary between the areas with and without a drying time.
		Roll DryingTime	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry for each sheet.
		NearEnd RollMrgn	Specify the minimum margin at the leading edge of roll paper to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **3mm**, it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge. It may also cause the Platen to become soiled.
		NearEnd Sht Mrgn	Specify a margin at the leading edge of sheets to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **3mm**, it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge.
		BordlessOversize	Select the amount of oversize extension of the original during borderless printing. Normally, we recommend that you set this to **Standard**. If it is set to **Little**, although it will reduce soiling on the back surface, white patches may remain on the printed surface.
		Manual Feed	Select the Paper Feed Slot to use when printing on sheets. Normally, select **Top**. When printing on heavyweight paper such as **POP Board**, select **Front**.
		Return Defaults	Choose **OK** to restore **Paper Details** to the default values.
Paper Details			Print the paper settings as specified in **Paper Details**.
Keep Paper Type			Select **On** when printing on a particular type of paper regularly. (See "**Changing the Type of Paper.**") ➔P.508

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496 Types of paper in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information with the Media Configuration Tool. (See "**Updating paper information.**") ➔P.499

Ink Menu

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Rep. Ink Tank	Replace the Ink Tank at this point. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (See "**Replacing Ink Tanks.**") →P.882
Head Cleaning A	Printhead cleaning options. (See "**Cleaning the Printhead.**") →P.891 Execute **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances.

Job Menu

Setting Item					Description, Instructions
Print Job	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Delete**		Delete the current job or queued jobs. (See "**Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).**") →P.724
			Preempt Jobs		Print the job first after the current print job is finished. (See "**Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).**") →P.724
Stored Job	**Mailbox List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	**Print**	Print the saved job.
				Delete	Delete the saved job.
			Print Job List		Print a list of saved print jobs.
Job Log	(Choose from information about the last three print jobs.)		**Document Name**		Indicates the document name of the selected print job.
			User Name		Indicates the name of the user who sent the print job.
			Page Count		Indicates the number of pages in the job.
			Job Status		Indicates the printing results.
			Print Start Time		Indicates when the print job was started.
			Print End Time		Indicates when the print job was finished.
			Print Time		Indicates the time required to print the job.
			Output Img. Size		Indicates the image size in the print job.
			Media Type		Indicates the type of paper in the print job.
			Paper Consumed		Indicates the total amount of paper consumed.
			Paper Length		Indicates the length of paper.
			Paper Width		Indicates the width of paper.
			Interface		Indicates the interface used for the print job.
			Ink Consumed		Indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per job.(***1**)
			Print settings		A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates job print settings.
			Head Height		A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates the head height when jobs wereprinted.
			Temp./Humidity		A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates the temperature and humiditywhen jobs were printed.
			Adjustment req.		A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates adjustment conditions appliedto jobs.
Print Job Log					Print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink consumed, and so on. Ink consumption indicates a rough estimate of the amount of ink consumed per print job.(***1**)
Pause Print					Choose **On** to stop printing.

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
HDD Information	Indicates the total hard disk capacity and the mail box free space.

*1: A rough estimate of the amount of ink consumed per print job is displayed. Actual ink consumption may be different. The average margin of error for estimates calculated according to Canon measurement conditions for ink costs is ±15%. Canon does not guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. Estimates may vary depending on conditions of use. Calculation of these estimates does not include ink consumed when cleaning printheads by forceful ejection of ink.

Set./Adj. Menu

Limited items are displayed during printing. The displayed items are indicated by annotations.

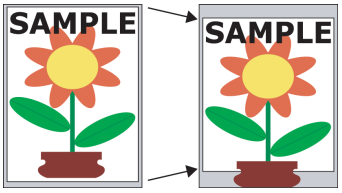
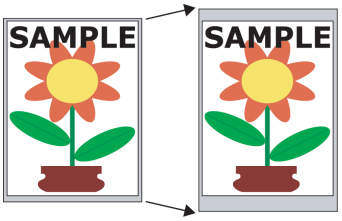
Setting Item				Description, Instructions
Test Print	**Nozzle Check**			Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.
	ColorCheck Print (*2)			Executes a color check on the printer using the optional Spectrophotometer Unit. Color check is a function that prints and automatically measures the colors of a test pattern, and calculates the color difference from a calibration target (standard color values registered in the printer). (See "**Color Checks Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") ➔P.802 This is the same as **ColorCheck Print** in the level under **Calibration** in **Adjust Printer**.
	Status Print			Print information about the setting values and condition of the printer.
	Interface Print			Print interface settings information.
	Paper Details			Print the paper settings as specified in **Paper Details**.
	Print Job Log			Print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink consumed, and so on. Ink consumption indicates a rough estimate of the amount of ink consumed per print job.(***1**)
	Menu Map			Print the menu structure.
Adjust Printer	**Head Posi. Adj.**	**Standard**		An adjustment pattern is printed and the print position is automatically adjusted to fix misaligned printing. Select **Standard** if vertical lines in printed material are warped or colors are out of alignment. Select **Standard** also if the printing results are not improved by executing **Simple**. (See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors**.") ➔P.764
		Simple		An adjustment pattern is printed and the print position is automatically adjusted to fix misaligned printing. **Simple** executes a simple adjustment in a short time. Select **Simple** when frequently adjusting the printhead, such as during daily maintenance. (See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors**.") ➔P.764
		Other	**Initial adjustmt**	Printhead position adjustment is executed during the initial setup. If adjusting the printhead position has not been performed such as due to an error during initial setup or the state of the operating settings when replacing the printhead, select **Initial adjustmt**. (See "**Adjustment When Installing the Printhead**.") ➔P.767

Setting Item					Description, Instructions
Adjust Printer	**Head Posi. Adj.**	**Other**	**Manual**		Input the setting values from the adjustment pattern printing results and adjust the printing position to fix misaligned printing. Normally, select **Standard**. However, when printing on special paper, or if printing is not improved after **Standard**, try **Manual**. (See "**Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.**") ➔P.766
	Feed Priority	**Adj. Priority**	**Automatic**		Specify exact paper feeding, if desired. Normally, select **Automatic**. Choose **Print Quality** for attractive printing. Choosing **Print Quality** also makes banding less noticeable. Choose **Print Length** if you prefer to feed the paper an exact amount.
			Print Quality		
			Print Length		
		Adj. Quality	**Auto(GenuinePpr)**		Specify this mode with paper identified in the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496 The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. (See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.771
			Auto(OtherPaper)		Specify this mode with paper not in the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496 The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. Note that this function takes more time and consumes more ink than **Auto(GenuinePpr)**. (See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.771
			Manual		Use this mode with highly transparent media or other paper for which **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)** cannot be used. Print a test pattern for adjustment of the feed amount based on the type of paper. (See "**Manual Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.772
		Adjust Length	**Adjustment-Print**	**A:High**	Print a test pattern for particular types of paper to compensate for paper stretching or shrinkage, after which you enter the amount of adjustment. (See "**Adjusting Line Length.**") ➔P.775
				B:Standard/Draft	
			Change Settings	**A:High**	Displayed when you have selected **Feed Priority** > **Adj. Priority** > **Print Length**. Adjustment relative to the amount of stretching or shrinkage of the current paper. Enter either the adjustment results from **AdjustmentPrint** or the discrepancy that you measured (as a percentage). For paper that tends to stretch, increase the feed amount by choosing a higher adjustment value. For paper that tends to shrink, decrease the feed amount by choosing a lower adjustment value. (See "**Adjusting Line Length.**") ➔P.775
				B:Standard/Draft	
	Adj Far Ed Feed				Choose **Yes** to adjust the feed amount for the trailing edge.
	Calibration	**AutoAdjst(HiPrc)** (*2)			Perform color calibration using the optional Spectrophotometer Unit. A test pattern for color calibration is printed and the adjustment values are set automatically. (See "**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option).**") ➔P.799
		Auto Adjust			Execute color calibration using the printer sensor. A test pattern for color calibration is printed and the adjustment values are set automatically.

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
Adjust Printer	**Calibration**	**Auto Adjust**	(See "**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor**.") →P.793
		ColorCheck Print (*2)	Perform a printer color check using the optional Spectrophotometer Unit. Color check is a function that prints and automatically measures the colors of a test pattern, and calculates the color difference from a calibration target (standard color values registered in the printer). (See "**Color Checks Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") →P.802 The same as **ColorCheck Print** in the hierarchy under **Test Print**.
		Pattern Size (*2)	Select the size of the adjustment pattern printed during color calibration using the optional Spectrophotometer Unit and during **ColorCheck Print**. Normally, set to **Standard**. We recommend that you set it to **Large** if you want to prioritize measurement accuracy.
		Calibration Log	The **Date**, **Paper Type**, and **Adjustment Type** for which color calibration was executed are displayed on the Display Screen where you can confirm them. Common calibration and unique calibration are the **Adjustment Type** of color calibration. When paper is set in the printer, the history of effective color calibration for the set paper is displayed. When paper is not set in the printer, the latest history among common calibration or unique calibration is displayed. Also, a hyphen (-) is displayed when there are no execution results. (See "**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor**.") →P.793
		Use Adj. Value	Choose **Disabled** > **OK** if you prefer not to apply the color calibration adjustment value in print jobs. However, printer driver settings are given priority. Choose **Enabled** > **OK** to apply the color calibration adjustment value in print jobs. However, printer driver settings are given priority.
		Set Exec. Guide	If you select **On**, a message is displayed on the control panel at the timing recommended for executing color calibration.
		Return Defaults	Clear the color calibration adjustment value and the execution log.
Maintenance	**Head Cleaning**		Clean the Printhead. (See "**Cleaning the Printhead**.") →P.891 Choose **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose **Head Cleaning B** if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by **Head Cleaning A**.
	Nozzle Check		Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.
	Replace P.head		Execute when replacing the Printhead. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (See "**Replacing the Printhead**.") →P.892 Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low.

Setting Item					Description, Instructions
Maintenance	**Repl. maint cart**				Execute when replacing the Maintenance Cartridge. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (See "**Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.**") →P.899
	Head Info	**Printhead L**			Indicates information about the printhead.
		Printhead R			
	Clean Platen				Move the Carriage in preparation for cleaning the Platen.
Interface Setup	**EOP Timer**				Specify the timeout period before cancellation of print jobs that cannot be received by the printer.
	TCP/IP	**IPv4**	**IPv4 Mode**		Choose whether the printer IP address is configured automatically or a static IP address is entered manually.
			Protocol	**DHCP**	Specify the protocol used to configure the IP address automatically.
				BOOTP	
				RARP	
			IPv4 Settings	**IP Address**	Specify the printer network information when using a static IP address. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer, as well as the network subnet mask and default gateway. The value that was automatically configured is displayed if you have set **IPv4 Mode** to **Automatic**.
				Subnet Mask	
				Default G/W	
			DNS Settings	**DNS Dync update**	Specify whether DNS server registration is updated automatically.
				Pri. DNS SrvAddr	Specify the DNS server address.
				Sec. DNS SrvAddr	
				DNS Host Name	Specify the DNS host name.
				DNS Domain Name	Specify the DNS domain name.
		IPv6	**IPv6 Support**		Specify whether to connect via IPv6.
			IPv6 StlessAddrs		Specify whether a IPv6 stateless address is used.
			DHCPv6		Specify whether DHCPv6 settings are used.
			DNS Settings	**DNS Dync update** **Statefull Addr**	Specify whether DNS server registration is updated automatically.
				DNS Dync update **Stateless Addr**	
				Pri. DNS SrvAddr	Specify the DNS server address.
				Sec. DNS SrvAddr	
				DNS Host Name	Specify the DNS host name.
				DNS Domain Name	Specify the DNS domain name.
	NetWare	**NetWare**			Specify the NetWare protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**.
		Frame Type			Specify the frame type to use.
		Print Service			Choose the print service.
	AppleTalk				Specify whether to use the AppleTalk protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**.
	Ethernet Driver	**Auto Detect**			Specify the communication method. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**.

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
Interface Setup	**Ethernet Driver**	**Auto Detect**	Choose **On** for automatic configuration of the LAN communication protocol. Choose **Off** to use settings values of **Comm.Mode** and **Ethernet Type**.
		Comm.Mode	Choose the LAN communication method.
		Ethernet Type	Choose the LAN transfer rate.
		Spanning Tree	Choose whether spanning-tree packets are supported over the LAN.
		MAC Address	Indicates the MAC address.
	Interface Print		Print interface settings information.
	Return Defaults		Choose **OK** to restore **Interface Setup** settings to the default values.
System Setup	**Sleep Timer**		Specify the period before the printer enters sleep mode.
	Shut Down Timer		Sets the time until the printer turns off automatically. If no operations are performed on the printer for the duration of the time set in **Shut Down Timer** after entering Sleep mode, the printer automatically turns off.
	Buzzer		Choose **On** for the buzzer to sound once for warnings and three times for errors.
	Contrast Adj.		Adjust the Display Screen contrast level.
	Date & Time	**Date**	Set the current date.
		Time	Set the current time. Available only if the **Date** setting is specified.
	Date Format		Specify the date format.
	Language		Specify the language used on the Display Screen.
	Time Zone		Specify the time zone. Time zone options indicate a main city in this time zone and the difference from Greenwich Mean Time.
	Length Unit		Choose the display unit for length. Change the unit displayed for the remaining amount of roll paper, **Tot.Print Area**, and so on.
	Detect Mismatch		Specify printing behavior if the type and size of paper specified in the printer menu does not match the type and size in the printer driver. Choose **Pause** to have printing paused under these circumstances. Choose **Warning** to continue printing after notification. Choose **None** to continue printing without notification. Choose **Hold Job** to store jobs with mismatched types and sizes of paper on the printer hard disk, in a print queue awaiting processing. (See "**Using the Printer Hard Disk**.") ➔P.719
	Paper Size Basis	**Roll Selection 1**	If roll size detection is activated, choose whether **ISO A3 (297mm)** or **300mm Roll** is applied when a roll of an intermediate width is detected.
		Roll Selection 2	If roll size detection is activated, choose whether **10in. (254mm)** or **JIS B4 (257mm)** is applied when a roll of an intermediate width is detected.

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
System Setup	**Keep Paper Size**	Choose **On** to use the paper size setting as the basis for printing instead of other settings. The margin setting of the printer menu will be used instead of the margin setting of the printer driver if the latter is smaller, which may prevent text or images in the margin from being printed.  Choose **Off** to give priority to margin settings. The larger value is used if the margin specified in the printer driver does not match the margin in the printer menu. 
	TrimEdge Reload	Specify whether to trim the leading edge of the currently retracted roll when the roll is advanced. Cut the edge if you are concerned about any marks left on the roll when the roll is left in the retracted position. Specify **On** to have rolls cut when printing begins after Sleep mode or when the power is restored. Selecting **Automatic** will trim the edge when the roll has been in the retracted position for two days or more.
	Rep.P.head Print	Choose **On** to have the printer automatically execute the **Advanced Adj.** operations after you replace the Printhead. (See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.**") →P.764
	Nozzle Check	In **Frequency**, specify the timing for automatic checks of nozzle clogging. Choose **Standard** to have the printer adjust the timing for checks based on the frequency of nozzle use. Choose **1 page** to check once per page. Choose **10 pages** to check once per 10 pages. Choose **Off** to not execute check. If **On** is selected in **Warning**, a warning may be displayed on the Control Panel depending on the result of the nozzle check.
	Use RemoteUI	Choosing **Off** prohibits access from RemoteUI. Settings can only be configured from the control panel.
	Reset PaprSetngs	Restores settings that you have changed with Media Configuration Tool to the default values.
	Erase HDD Data – **High Speed**	Erases file management data for print job data stored on the printer's hard disk. (See "**Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk.**") →P.659
	Secure High Spd.	Overwrites the entire hard disk with random data. (See "**Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk.**") →P.659

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
System Setup	**Erase HDD Data**	**Secure**	Overwrites the entire hard disk with 00, FF, and random data (one time each). Verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. (See "**Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk**.") ➔P.659
	Output Method	**Print**	Select the printing method for jobs received from software other than the printer driver. When using the printer driver, configure settings on the printer. To print as usual, select **Print**. Selecting **Print (Auto Del)** will print the job and then delete the data from the printer's hard disk. Selecting **Save: Box 01** will only save the print job in the box, without printing it.
		Print (Auto Del)	
		Save: Box XX	
	Print After Recv		A setting for jobs received from software other than the printer driver. When using the printer driver, configure settings on the printer. Select **On** to print the job after it has been saved.
	Common Box Set.		Select **Print (Auto Del)** to print without saving jobs in the box shared among multiple users.
	Show Job Log		Selecting **Off** prevents display of the log in **Job Menu** > **Job Log**. Additionally, the log is not printed if you choose **Job Menu** > **Print Job Log**. Note that because job logs are not collected, the Status Monitor accounting functions will not work correctly.
Prep.MovePrinter			When transferring the printer to another location, choose the level of transfer and follow the instructions on the screen. (See "**Preparing to Transfer the Printer**.") ➔P.923 Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low.
Admin. Menu	**Change Password**		The password that can be entered is a number from 0 to 9999999. The restriction states and main items are shown below. For more specific information on restricted items, see "**Menu Structure**." ➔P.627 • Viewing and configuration by administrators only **Change Password** **Init.Admin.Pswd** Etc. • Viewing and configuration by administrators, and only viewing by other users **Date & Time** **Time Zone** **Use RemoteUI** Etc.
	Init.Admin.Pswd		Choose **OK** to restore the **Admin. Menu** password to the default values.
Adj. Fine Feed (*3) (*4)			Displayed when you have selected **Feed Priority** > **Adj. Priority** > **Automatic** or **Print Quality**. Fine-tune the feed amount manually.
Printer Info (*3)	**Paper Info**		Indicates the current paper size, type, and related printer settings.
	Ink Info		Indicates ink levels and maintenance cartridge capacity.

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
Printer Info (*3)	**Head Info**	**Printhead L**	Indicates information about the printhead.
		Printhead R	
	System Info		Indicates the firmware version, serial number, and interface information.
	Error Log		Indicates the most recent error messages (up to five).
	Other Counter		Indicates the total printing volume of the printer.

*1: A rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per job is displayed. Actual ink consumption may be different. The average margin of error for estimates calculated according to Canon measurement conditions for ink costs is ±15%. Canon does not guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. Estimates may vary depending on conditions of use. Calculation of these estimates does not include ink consumed when cleaning printheads by forceful ejection of ink.

*2: Displayed only when the Spectrophotometer Unit is present.

*3: Displayed as the menu during printing while printing is in progress.

*4: Not displayed in the regular menu.

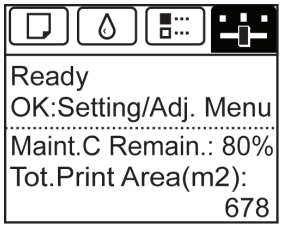
Status Print

You can print a **Status Print** report indicating the current status of the printer.
With **Status Print**, information is printed regarding the printer firmware version, various settings, and the status of consumables.

Printing **Status Print** reports

1. Load paper.
When using sheets, load paper of A4/Letter size. You will need at least four sheets.
The required sheet quantity varies depending on the execution log quantity of unique calibration.

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Status Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

Checking the information in **Status Print** reports

The following information is included in **Status Print** reports.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Status Print	Printer model
Firm	Firmware version
Boot	Boot ROM version

MIT(DBF)	MIT database format version
MIT(DB)	MIT database version
S/N	Printer serial number
Date	Indicates when the status print report was printed.

Paper Menu			Information on the loaded paper.
	Paper Type		
		Roll Media	
		Cut Sheet	
	ManageRemainRoll		
	Keep Paper Type		

Job Menu			Job-related information.
	Job Log		A counter for maintenance purposes. Various information about previous jobs.
	HDD Information		Indicates the total hard disk capacity and the mail box free space.
		Total capacity	
		Box free space	

Set./Adj. Menu				Settings and adjustment information.
	System Setup			Printer system settings, as well as settings regarding warnings and errors.
		Sleep Timer		
		Shut Down Timer		
		Buzzer		
		Contrast Adj.		
		Date Format		
		Language		
		Time Zone		
		Length Unit		
		Detect Mismatch		
		Paper Size Basis		Paper-related settings.
			Roll Selection 1	
			Roll Selection 2	
		Keep Paper Size		
		TrimEdge Reload		
		Rep.P.head Print		Settings after a test pattern was printed following head replacement.
		Nozzle Check		Nozzle-check settings.
			Frequency	
			Warning	
		Use RemoteUI		Settings used by RemoteUI.
		Output Method		Print job settings.
		Print After Recv		
		Common Box Set.		

	Show Job Log			Print job settings.
Adjust Printer				Adjustment settings.
	Head Posi. Adj.			A counter for maintenance purposes. Head position adjustment values for previous jobs.
		Adjust Log		
	Calibration			Color calibration settings.
		Calibration Log (Common Calibration)		A record of when common calibration was performed.
			Date	Indicates the date when calibration was performed and the type of paper used.
			Paper Type	
		Use Adj. Value		A setting value indicating whether color calibration adjustment values are to be applied to printing.
		Set Exec. Guide		A setting value indicating whether to display a message recommending the execution of color calibration.
Printer Info				Ink information, RAM usage, and a record of errors.
	Ink Info			Ink-related information.
		MC		Maintenance Cartridge capacity (%)
		GY, MBK, PC, Y, C, M, PM, BK		Ink levels. The remaining ink is displayed in a five-level scale.
	System Info			Indicates the total amount of RAM.
		RAM		
	Error Log			The past five error codes.

HEAD LOT NUMBER			Printhead lot number.
	LOT L: R:		
PARTS STATUS			Utilization status of replacement parts that require servicing.
	COUNTER		
COUNTER			Utilization status of the cutter, media, and other items (indicating how much they have been used).
	CUTTER		
	MEDIA		
		LIFE TTL	
		LIFE ROLL	
		LIFE CUTSHEET	
	MEDIA 1-7,OTHER		
		NAME	
		TTL	
		ROLL	
		CUTSHEET	
	AFTER INSTALLATION		

DUTY		Counters for maintenance purposes. Needed when service is requested.
	UNIT:m2	
	UNIT:sq.f	

	UNIT:A4 Sheet	Counters for maintenance purposes. Needed when service is requested.
	UNIT:Letter Sheet	

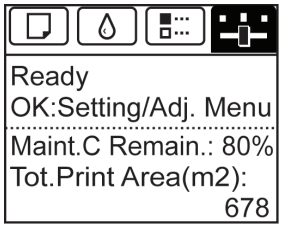
Set./Adj. Menu					Settings and adjustment information.
	Adjust Printer				Adjustment settings.
		Calibration			Color calibration settings.
			Calibration Log (Unique Calibration)		A record of when unique calibration was performed.
				No.	Log number.
				Paper Type	Indicates the date when calibration was performed and the type of paper used.
				Date	
				AdjType	The adjustment type.
				PatternSize	The pattern size.
				Temp/Humid	The temperature and humidity when executed.
				Backing	Information on the backing plate when executed.

Printing Interface Setting Reports

You can print an **Interface Print** report indicating the current interface settings values of the printer.

Printing **Interface Print** reports

1. Load the paper.
   If using sheets, load paper A4/Letter-sized, you will need at least three sheets.
2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

Confirming **Interface Print** information

The following information is included in the **Interface Print** report.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Interface Print	Printer model

Firm	Firmware Version

Boot	Boot ROM Version
MIT(DBF)	MIT Database Format Version
MIT(DB)	MIT Database Version
S/N	Printer serial number
Date	The date when the interface setup print report was printed.

EOP Timer		Specify the timeout period before cancellation of print jobs that cannot be received by the printer.
TCP/IPv4	Frame Type	**IPv4** settings values.
	Use DHCP	
	Use BOOTP	
	Use RARP	
	Enable DNS Dynamic Update	
	Use Zeroconf Function	
	IP Address	
	Subnet Mask	
	Gateway Address	
	LPD Printing	
	IPP Printing	
	IPP Printer URI	
	RAW Printing	
	Raw Mode Bi-direction	
	FTP Printing	
	WSD Printing	
	Use Discovery	
	Scope	
	Primary DNS Server Address	
	Secondary DNS Server Address	
	DNS Host Name	
	DNS Domain Name	
	MulticastDNS ServiceName	
	SNMPv1	
	SNMPv3	

TCP/IPv6	Use IPv6		**IPv6** settings values.
	Use DHCPv6	Stateful Address	
		Prefix Length	
		Primary DNS Server Address	
		Secondary DNS Server Address	
	Use a stateless address	Stateless Address 1	
		Prefix Length 1	
		Stateless Address 2	

TCP/IPv6	Use a stateless address	Prefix Length 2	**IPv6** settings values.
		Stateless Address 3	
		Prefix Length 3	
		Stateless Address 4	
		Prefix Length 4	
		Stateless Address 5	
		Prefix Length 5	
		Stateless Address 6	
		Prefix Length 6	
	Use a link-local Address	Link-Local Address	
		Prefix Length	
	Use a manual address	IP Address	
		Prefix Length	
		Default Router Address	
		Prefix Length	
		Primary DNS Server Address	
		Secondary DNS Server Address	
	Use the same host name and domain name as IPv4	DNS Host Name	
		DNS Domain Name	
	Perform dynamic updating of stateful addresses		
	Dynamically update the stateless address		
	Dynamically update the manual address		

NetWare	Frame Type		**NetWare** settings values.
	IPX External Network Number		
	Node Number		
	Print Application		
	Bindery PServer	File Server Name	
		Print Server Name	
		Print Server Password	
		Polling Interval	
	RPrinter	Print Server Name	
		Printer Number	
	NDS PServer	Tree Name	
		Context Name	
		Print Server Name	
		Print Server Password	
		Polling Interval	
	NPrinter	Print Server Name	
		Printer Number	
AppleTalk	Phase Type		**AppleTalk** settings values.
	Name		

AppleTalk	Network Number	**AppleTalk** settings values.
	Zone	
Network Interface	Physical Interface	Network interface settings values.
	Transmission Rate	
	MAC Address	
	Auto Detect	
	Communication	
	Ethernet Type	
	Spanning Tree	
	Use the Jumbo Frame Function	

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611

Printer Parts

Printer parts 650
Hard Disk 657
Optional accessories 661

Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

User's Guide

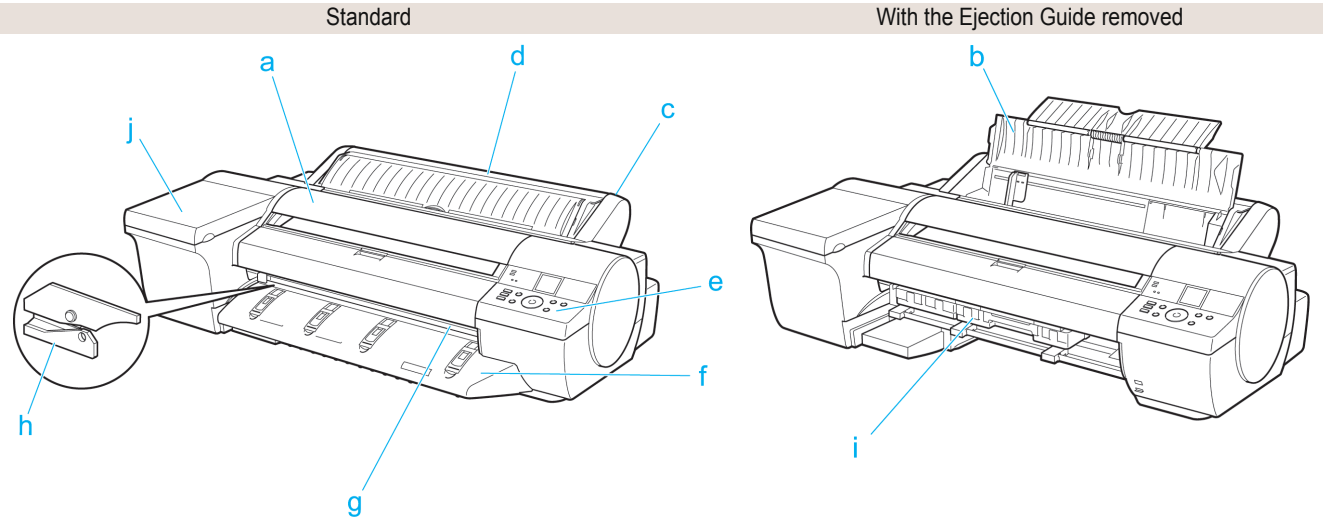
Printer parts

Front 650
Back 651

Top Cover (Inside) 652
Paper Feed Slots 653
Inside the Roll Feed Unit Cover 654
Carriage 654
Ink Tank Cover (Inside) 655
Vents 656

Control Panel 612

Front



a Top Cover

Open this cover to install the Printhead and remove any jammed paper from inside the printer, as needed. (See "**Top Cover (Inside)**.") ➔P.652

b Paper Tray Cover

Open this cover to load a sheet in the Top Paper Feed Slot. (See "**Paper Feed Slots**.") ➔P.653

c Roll Feed Unit

Load rolls in this unit. You can also load sheets manually.

d Roll Feed Unit Cover

Open this cover to load rolls. (See "**Inside the Roll Feed Unit Cover**.") ➔P.654

e Control Panel

Use this panel to operate the printer and check the printer status. (See "**Control Panel**.") ➔P.612

f Ejection Guide

Supports output paper.

g Output Tray (Front Paper Feed Slot)

All printed documents are ejected from this slot. When loading heavyweight paper, insert it here. (See "**Paper Feed Slots**.") ➔P.653

h Cutter Unit

A round-bladed cutter for automatic roll cutting.

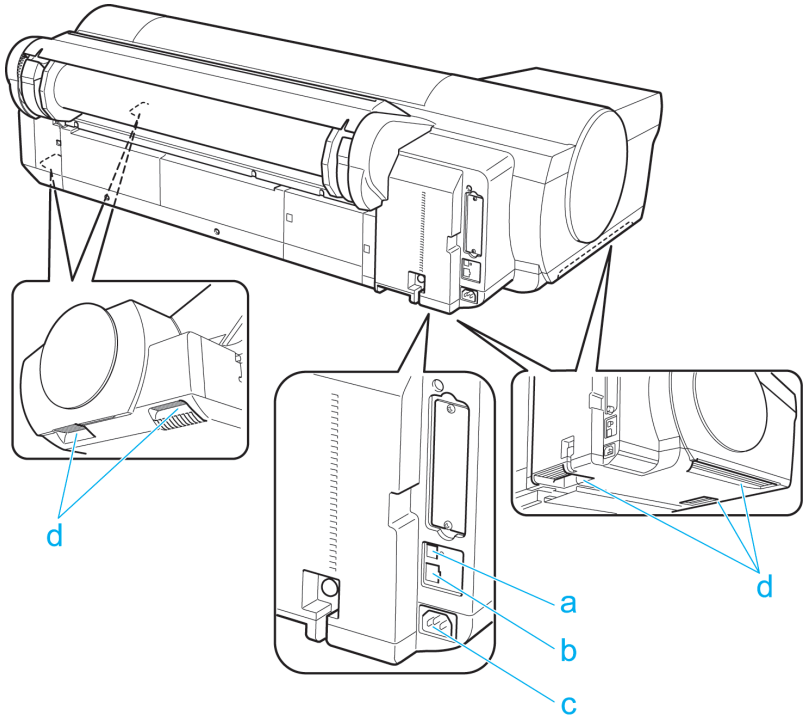
i Maintenance Cartridge

Absorbs excess ink.

j Ink Tank Cover

Open this cover to replace an Ink Tank. (See "**Ink Tank Cover (Inside)**.") ➔P.655

Back



a USB Port

Connect a USB cable to this port. The printer is compatible with Hi-Speed USB connections.

b LAN connector (Gigabit Ethernet)

Connect a LAN cable to this port.

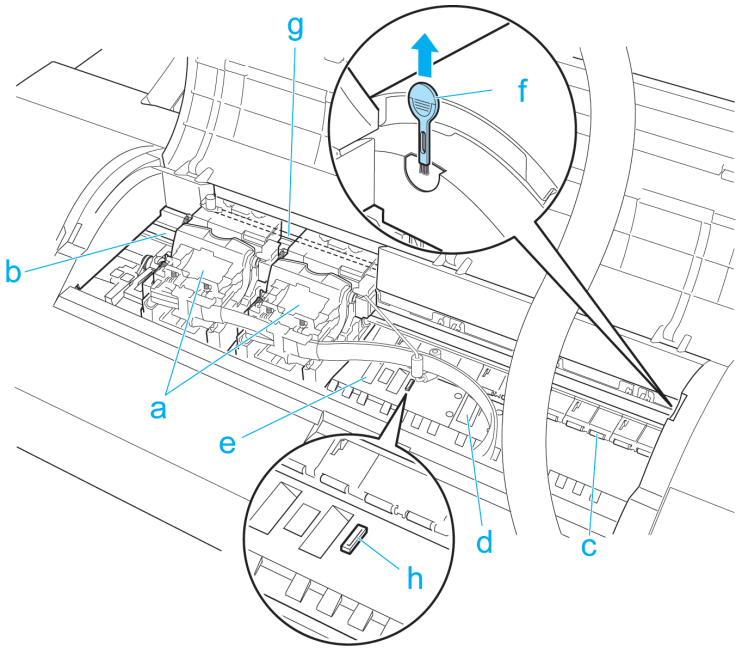
c Power Supply Connector

Connect the power cord to this connector.

d Carrying Handles (5)

When carrying the printer, hold it by these handles under both sides.

Top Cover (Inside)



a Carriage

Mounts the Printhead, and moves to the left and right. This is an important part for printing. (See "**Carriage**.") →P.654

b Carriage Shaft

The Carriage slides along this shaft.

c Paper Retainer

Important in supplying the paper. This retainer holds paper as it is fed.

d Platen

The Printhead moves across the platen to print. Vacuum holes on the platen hold paper in place.

e Borderless Printing Ink Grooves

For catching ink outside the edges of paper during borderless printing.

f Cleaning Brush

When cleaning inside the printer under the Top Cover, use this brush to sweep away paper dust on the Platen. Also use the brush to move the blue Switch on the Platen.

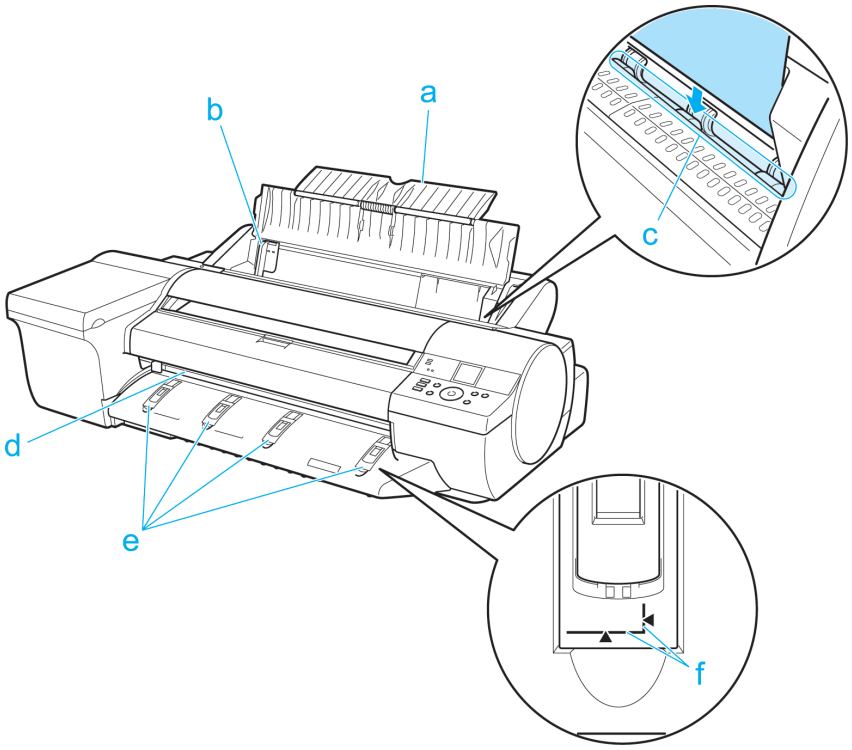
g Linear Scale

The linear scale serves a key role in detecting the Carriage position. Be careful not to touch this part when cleaning inside the Top Cover or clearing paper jams.

h Switch

Set the switch to the side opposite ● if the edges of printed images are blurred. Set the switch to the ● side before borderless printing. (See "**Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.**") →P.960

Paper Feed Slots



a Tray Extension

When loading a sheet manually, open this tray after opening the Paper Tray Cover.

b Width Guide

When loading a sheet, move the guide to match the paper size.

c Top Paper Feed Slot

When loading a sheet, insert it here.

d Front Paper Feed Slot (Output Tray)

When loading a heavyweight sheet, insert it here. All printed documents are ejected from this slot.

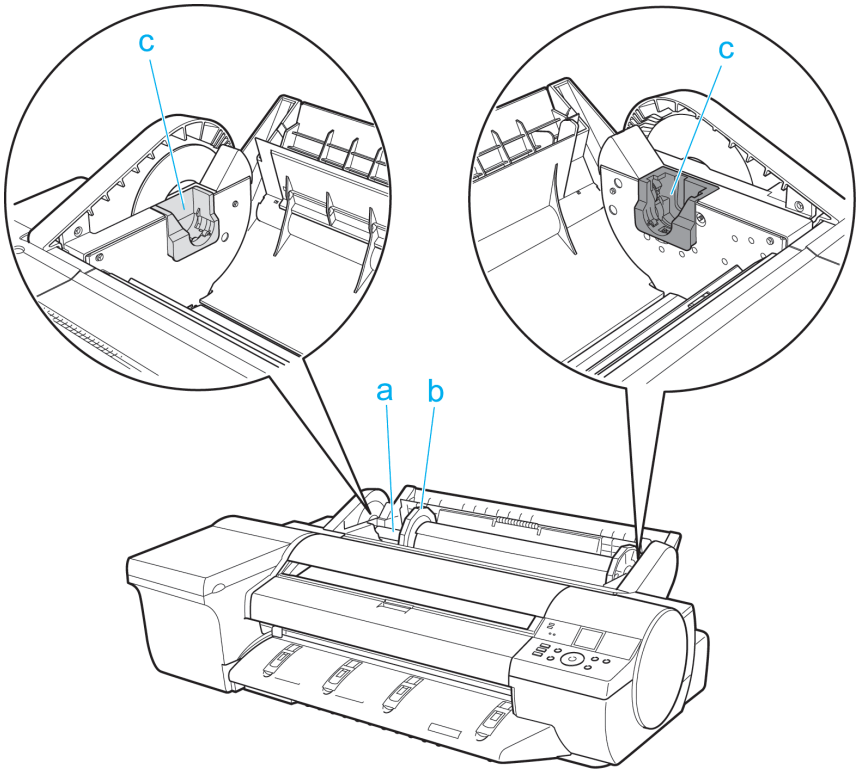
e Front Tray Guides

Lift all of the guides before printing on heavyweight paper. When feeding heavyweight paper, rest the sheet on these guides, align it to the right, and insert the leading edge up to the Paper Alignment Line.

f Paper Alignment Line

Load heavyweight sheets parallel to this line.

Inside the Roll Feed Unit Cover



a Roll Holder

Load the roll on this holder.

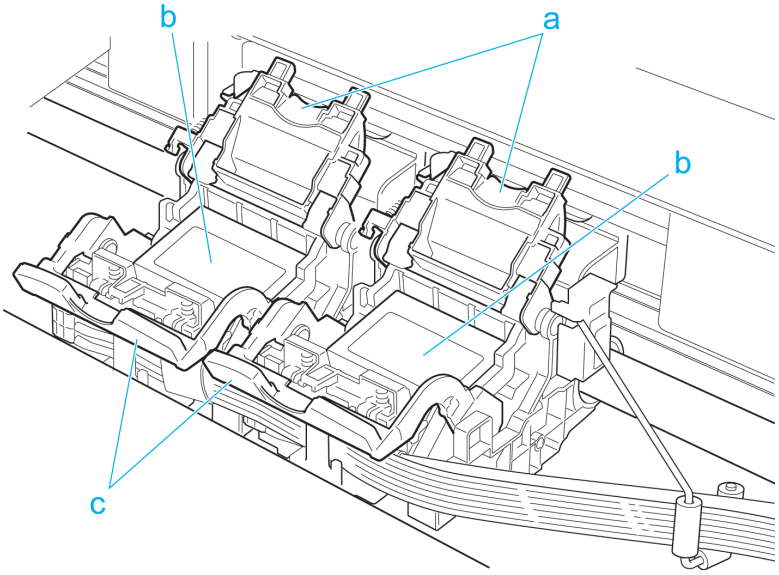
b Holder Stopper

Secure rolls on the Roll Holder with this part.

c Roll Holder Slot

Slide the Roll Holder into this slot.

Carriage



a Printhead Fixer Cover

Holds the Printhead in place. Do not open this part except during Printhead replacement.

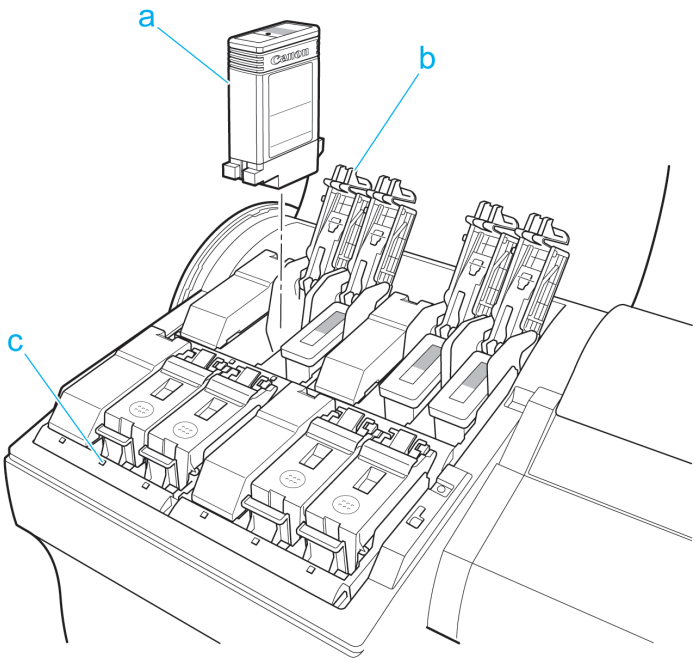
b Printhead

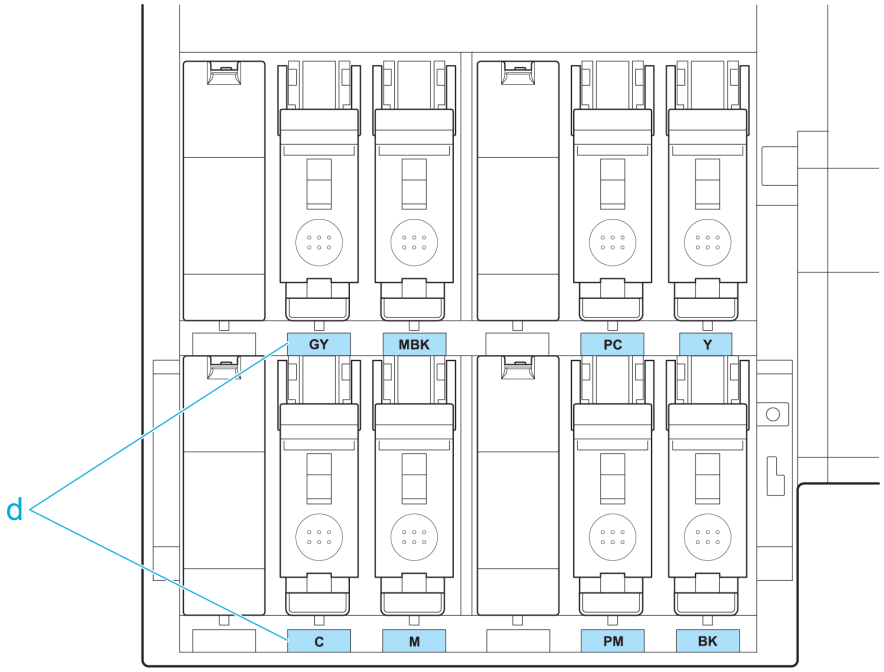
The printhead is equipped with ink nozzles. It serves a key role in printing.

c Printhead Fixer Lever

Locks the Printhead Fixer Cover. Do not open this part except during Printhead replacement.

Ink Tank Cover (Inside)





a Ink Tank

Cartridges of ink in various colors.

b Ink Tank Lock Lever

A lever that locks the Ink Tank in place and protects it. Lift and press down the lever when replacing an Ink Tank.

c Ink Lamp (Red)

Indicates the state of the Ink Tank as follows when the Ink Tank Cover is opened.

- On

  The Ink Tank is installed correctly.

- Off

  No Ink Tank is installed, or the ink level detection function is off.

- Flashing Slowly

  Not much ink is left.

- Flashing Rapidly

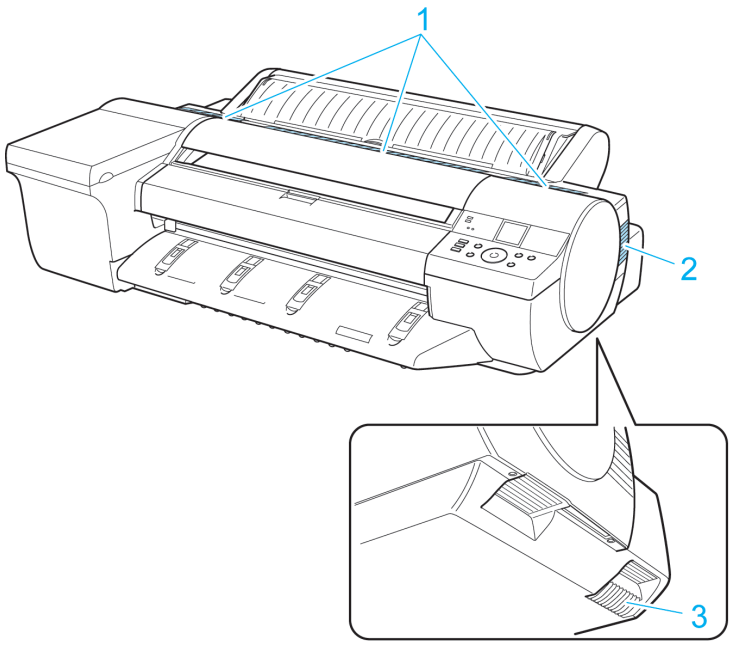
  Ink tank is empty.

d Ink Color Label

Load an Ink Tank that matches the color and name on this label.

Vents

There are vents at three positions of the printer as shown: on top (1), on the right (2), and on the bottom on the right (3).



Important

- Do not block these vents.
- Also, avoid setting paper or other light objects near the vents.

Hard Disk

Printer Hard Disk Operations 657
Checking the Free Hard Disk Space 658
Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk 659

Printer Hard Disk Operations

Printer hard disk operations are available from the following programs and interfaces.

- Printer driver
- **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In**
- **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**
- imagePROGRAF Printmonitor
- RemoteUI
- Control Panel

The hard disk operations available through each interface are as follows.

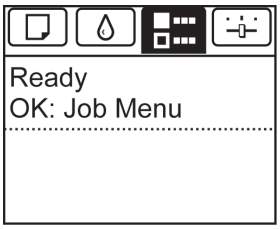
Operation		• Printer driver • **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In**	• **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** • imagePROGRAF Printmonitor	RemoteUI	Control Panel
Saving print jobs	Save in mail box	Yes	No	No	No
	Do Not Save Print Jobs in the Common Box	No	No	No	Yes
	Save print jobs sent from sources other than the printer driver	No	No	No	Yes
Operations with saved jobs	Print saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Delete saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Job queue management	Display job queue	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Delete	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Preempt Jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Operations with held jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Mail box management	Move saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify mail boxes	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Print a list of saved jobs	No	No	No	Yes
	Display a list of saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Other operations	Display free hard disk space	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Initialize hard disk	No	No	No	Yes
	Display the time of printing	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Display error messages		No	Yes	Yes	Yes

Checking the Free Hard Disk Space

Check the space available on the printer's hard disk as follows.
This operation is available from the Control Panel, in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using the Control Panel

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ( ).



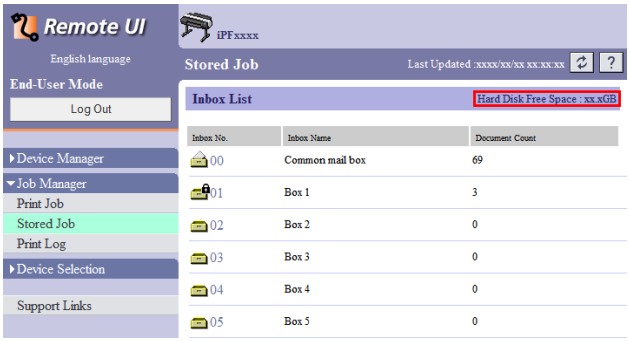
Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **HDD Information**, and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

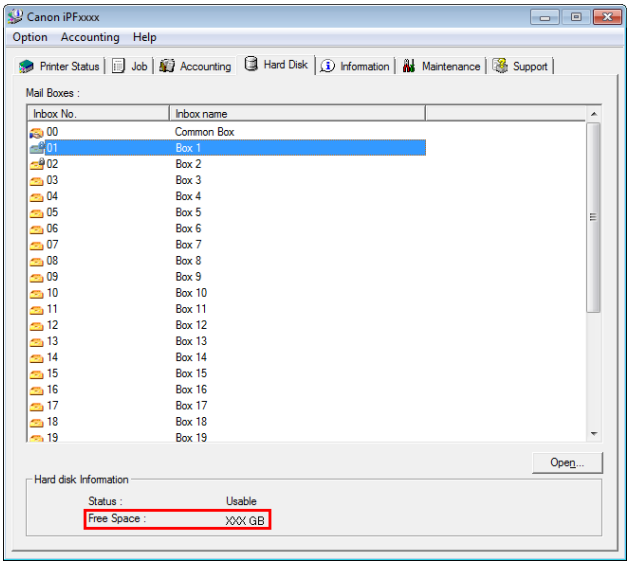
To view the box list, select **Stored Job** in Job Management. On the **Stored Job** page, the free hard disk space is shown in the upper-right corner when boxes are listed.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

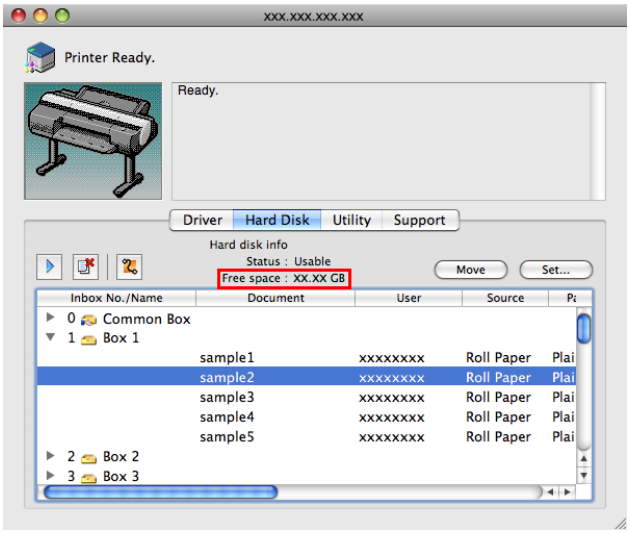
The **Hard Disk** sheet shows the free hard disk space.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

The **Hard Disk** pane shows the free hard disk space.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk

When erasing all data on the hard disk, choose from the following three options.
This operation is only available from the Control Panel.

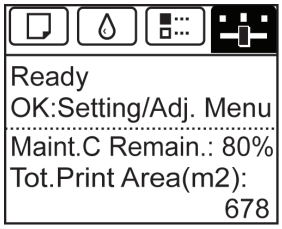
Erasure Method	Details
High Speed	Erases file management data for print job data stored on the printer's hard disk. Choose this method for relatively fast erasure. Because only the file management data is erased, the print job data itself is not erased. Note that it may be possible to read this data using commercial data recovery software.

Erasure Method	Details
Secure High Spd.	Overwrites the entire hard disk with random data. No verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. Choose this method to erase highly confidential data. Note that it may be possible to read the overwritten data using specialized data recovery tools.
Secure	Overwrites the entire hard disk with 00, FF, and random data (one time each). Verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. Choose this method to erase especially confidential data. It is virtually impossible to recover the overwritten data. Conforms to the DoD5220.22-M standard of the U.S. Department of Defense.

Important

- For a more secure method of preventing data recovery, we recommend physically or magnetically destroying the hard disk. In this case, the hard disk can no longer be used.
- **Erase HDD Data** is not available if there is a job queue.
  Additionally, print jobs are not processed during execution of **Erase HDD Data**.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Erase HDD Data**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **High Speed**, **Secure High Spd.**, or **Secure**, and then press the **OK** button to display the confirmation screen.

Note

- If a password has been set on the printer, the **Admin.Pswd** screen is displayed. In this case, enter the password and press the **OK** button to go to the next step.
- As for the time required for deletion, confirm it on the Control Panel. However, when **High Speed** is selected, this finishes in several seconds.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button to start erasure.
After the printer hard disk is erased, the printer automatically restarts.

Optional accessories

Stand 661
Stand Parts 662

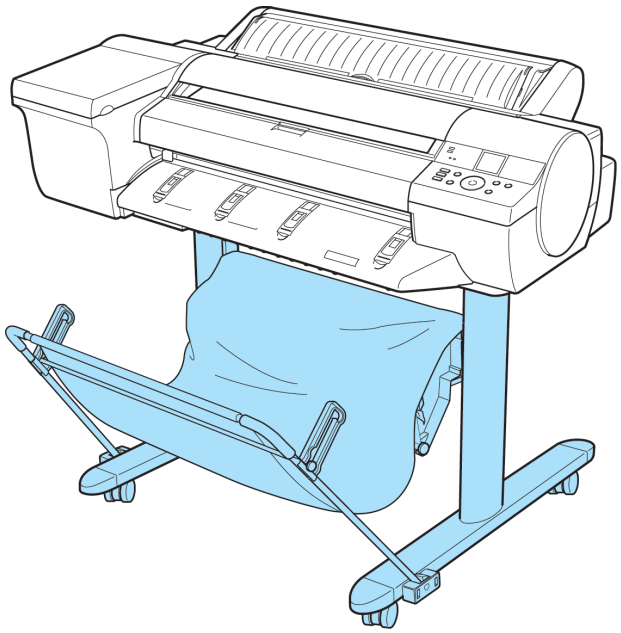
Roll Holder Set 524

Spectrophotometer Unit 662
Spectrophotometer Unit Parts - 1 664
Spectrophotometer Unit Parts - 2 665

Stand

The following Stand can be used with the printer.

- Printer Stand ST-28



For more information on the main parts of the Stand, see **"Stand Parts."** ➔P.662

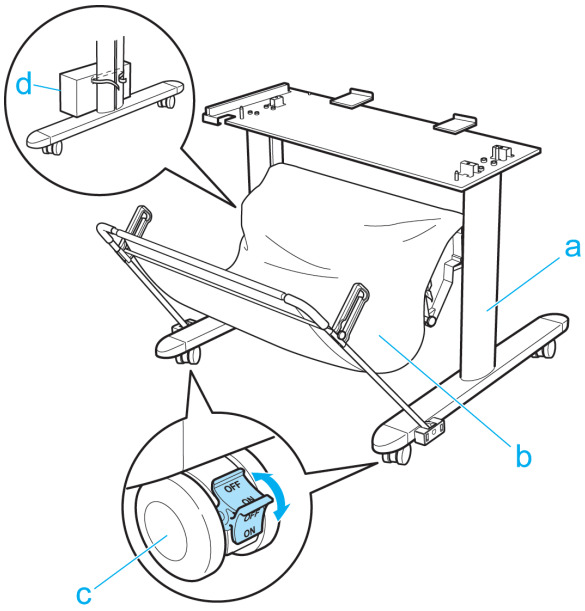
Important

- Always unlock the locking casters before moving the Stand, by moving the switch to OFF. Accidentally moving the Stand while the locking casters are locked may scratch the floor.

Note

- For instructions on installing the Stand, refer to the instructions provided with the Stand.

Stand Parts



a Stand

A stand that holds the printer. It is equipped with casters to facilitate movement.

b Output Stacker

Printed documents are ejected into the output tray.

For more information on using the Output Stacker, refer to **"Using the Output Stacker"** ➔P.543 and the **"Output Stacker Precautions"** ➔P.542 .

c Locking Caster

A locking caster that, when the lock is in the ON position, immobilizes the printer.

Always set the Locking Caster to the OFF side to unlock it before moving the Stand.

Accidentally moving it while the Locking Caster is locked may scratch the floor.

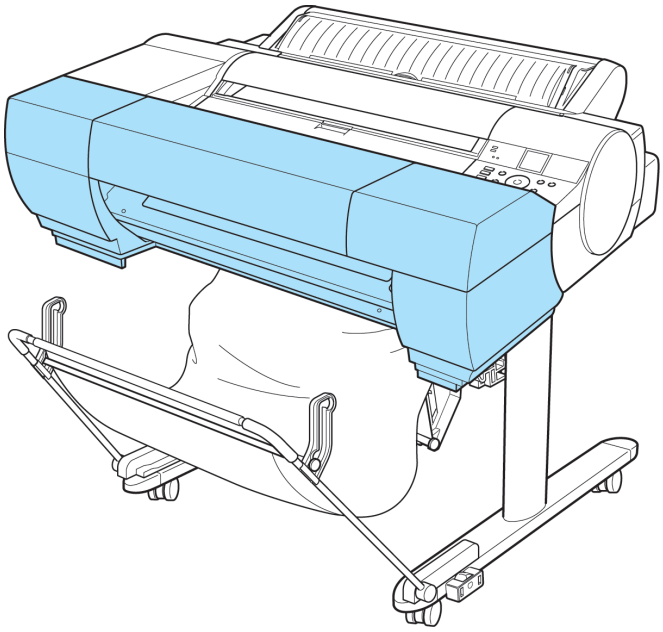
d Accessory Pocket

Store printer manuals, assembly tools, and other items in this pocket.

Spectrophotometer Unit

This printer can be used with the following Spectrophotometer Unit.

- Spectrophotometer Unit SU-21



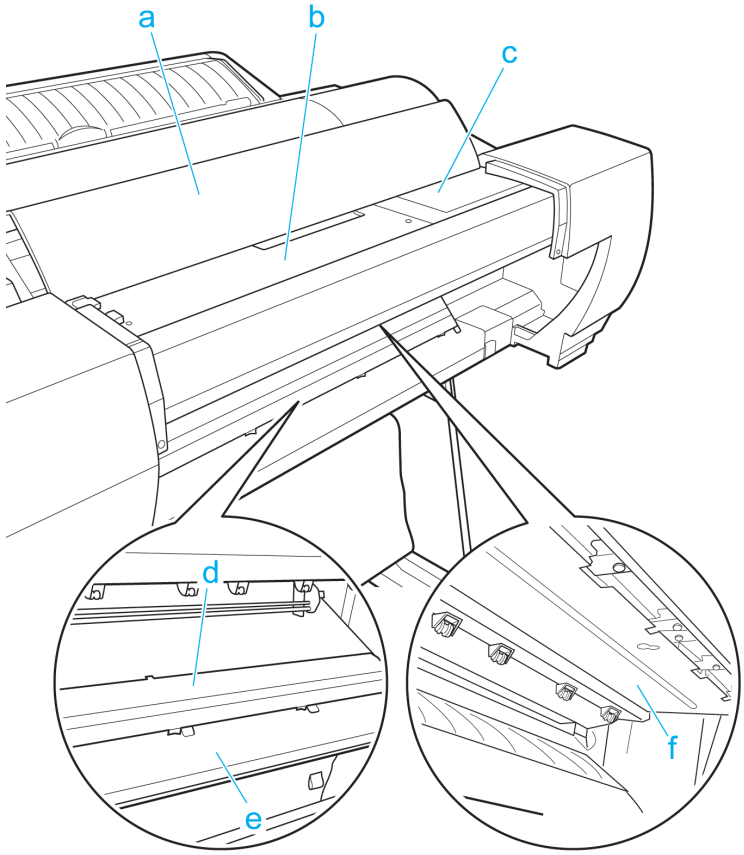
For more information on the main parts of the Spectrophotometer Unit, refer to the following topics.

- **Spectrophotometer Unit Parts - 1** ➔P.664
- **Spectrophotometer Unit Parts - 2** ➔P.665

Note

- For instructions on installing the Spectrophotometer Unit, refer to the instructions provided with the Spectrophotometer Unit.
- For more information on managing colors with the Spectrophotometer Unit, refer to see "**Managing Colors**." ➔P.786

Spectrophotometer Unit Parts - 1



a Spectrophotometer Unit Cover

This cover keeps out unnecessary outside light during color measurement. Open this cover to clean inside the Spectrophotometer Unit.

b Up-down Unit

The Spectrophotometer Carriage moves left and right inside the Up-down Unit.

c Up-down Unit Cover

This item covers the Spectrophotometer Carriage for safety purposes. Open this cover to replace the Spectrophotometer Sensor and perform other tasks.

d White/Black Backing Plate

Provides a backing (either white or black) for color measurement.

(See "**Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color**.") →P.804

e Spectrophotometer Eject Guide

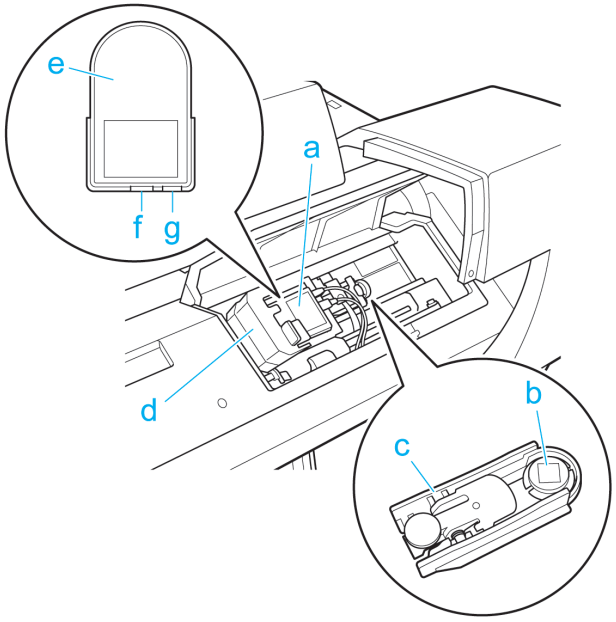
Supports output paper.

The White/Black Backing Plate attaches to this guide.

f Paper presser

Holds the paper in place during color measurement.

Spectrophotometer Unit Parts - 2



a Spectrophotometer Carriage
Moves the Spectrophotometer Sensor to the left and right.

b White Calibration Tile
A white color plate used as the basis for color measurement.

c White Calibration Tile Holder
A case that fixes the White Calibration Tile in place.

d Spectrophotometer Sensor Cover
Open this cover to replace the Spectrophotometer Sensor.

e Spectrophotometer Sensor
Reads the colors of color measurement patterns.

f Mini USB Connector
Connects the cable for transmitting data read by the Spectrophotometer Sensor.

g Power Supply Connector
Connects the Spectrophotometer Sensor to a power supply.

Memo

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649

Network Setting

Network Environment 668
Using RemoteUI 671
Initial Settings 673
NetWare Settings 681
Mac OS Settings 689
Other Settings 692
Device Setup Utility (Windows) 695

Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

User's Guide

Network Environment

Network Environment

System requirements

The system requirements, which vary depending on your network, are as follows.

- Printing over a TCP/IP network (when using IPv4)
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Windows XP
    - Windows Server 2003
    - Windows Vista
    - Windows Server 2008
    - Windows 7
    - Windows 8
    - Windows Server 2003 x64
    - Windows Vista x64
    - Windows Server 2008 x64
    - Windows Server 2012 x64
    - Windows 7 x64
    - Windows 8 x64
    - Mac OS X v10.2.8 or later
    - Unix (Solaris 9)
    - Unix (Red Hat 9)
- Printing over a TCP/IP network (when using IPv6)
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Windows Vista
    - Windows Server 2008
    - Windows 7
    - Windows 8
    - Windows Vista x64
    - Windows Server 2008 x64
    - Windows Server 2012 x64
    - Windows 7 x64
    - Windows 8 x64
    - Mac OS X v10.3.8 or later

Note
- When using IPv6, you must specify IPv6 on the Control Panel or in RemoteUI. For instructions, "**Configuring TCP/IPv6 Network Settings**" →P.676 or see "**Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI.**" →P.677
- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is supported in Mac OS X v10.6.8 or later.
- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is not compatible with Unix.

- Printing over an AppleTalk network
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Mac OS X v10.2.8–10.4

Note
- The printer cannot be used over a LocalTalk network.
- Compatible with EtherTalk Phase 2.
- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is not compatible with AppleTalk.

- Printing over a NetWare network
  - Compatible servers
    - Novell NetWare 4.2/5.1/6.0
  - Compatible clients
    - Windows XP (Professional)

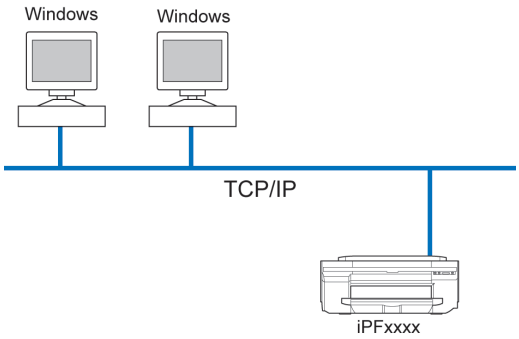
Note
- In NetWare 6.0, iPrint is not supported.

Network Environment

After confirming what type of network environment you will connect the printer to, set up the printer and computers as needed. For the specifications of the network interface, see "**Specifications**." ➔P.1000

- Example of a Windows network

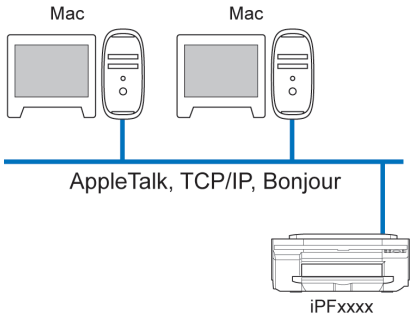
  In Windows networks, print over TCP/IP.



Note
- NetBIOS is not supported.

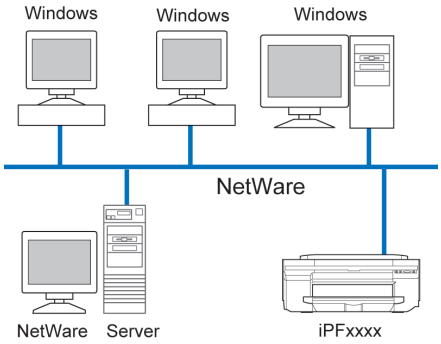
- Example of a Mac OS network

  In Mac OS networks, print over TCP/IP using the Bonjour function.



Note
- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is not compatible with AppleTalk.

- Example of a NetWare network



Note

- Even if there is a NetWare server in your network environment, you can use it in conjunction with TCP/IP or AppleTalk. In this case, complete the settings for each protocol you will use.

Using RemoteUI

Using RemoteUI

RemoteUI is software with which you can access the printer via the network from your Web browser to confirm the printer status, operate jobs, and configure the settings. Since the software (Web server) for using RemoteUI is built in the printer, preparing software other than a Web browser is unnecessary. You can use RemoteUI if an imagePROGRAF printer on a network is connected to your computer. If you start your Web browser and specify the IP address of the printer, the RemoteUI screen is displayed, and you can use RemoteUI.

Important

- To use RemoteUI, an IP address must be set on the printer in advance. For the method of setting an IP address, see **"Configuring the IP Address on the Printer."** ➔P.673

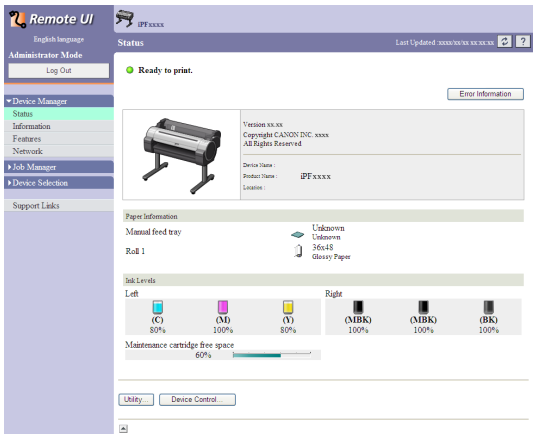
What You Can Do With RemoteUI

With RemoteUI, you can access the printer via a network, configure network settings, and display the current status of the printer, various types of information, the processing status of jobs, etc.

Starting RemoteUI

Start RemoteUI by the following operations.

1. Start your Web browser.
2. Enter the following URL in **Address** or **Location**.
   http://printer IP address or name/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
3. The RemoteUI screen is displayed.



Note

- The screen slightly differs depending on the model of printer.

Configuring the Network With RemoteUI

For details on configuring printer settings for networks, refer to the following topics.

- **Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI** ➔P.677
- **Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings** ➔P.691
- **Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings With RemoteUI** ➔P.686
- **Specifying Printer-Related Information** ➔P.692

Important

- For the Web browser, use Netscape Navigator 6.0 or later, Internet Explorer 5.01 or later, or Firefox 1.5 or later. For Mac OS X, Safari 1.32 or later or 2.03 or later also is supported.
- This cannot be used connected via a proxy server. In environments where a proxy server is used, add the printer's IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses accessed without a proxy server) in the web browser proxy server settings. (Settings may vary depending on the network environment.)
- Enable JavaScript and cookies in the web browser.
- If you access RemoteUI with the printer name instead of its IP address, make sure the DNS settings are correctly configured.
- Depending on the network environment, you may not be able to start RemoteUI.
- Confirm whether **System Setup** > **Use RemoteUI** is set to **On** on the Control Panel of the printer.

Note

- RemoteUI also offers many other features. You can display the ink levels, check error messages and other status information, and cancel print jobs.
- By factory default, the English screen is displayed. To change the display language, select the desired language under **Language** before logging on in administrator mode.
- If you login in Administrator Mode, you can configure to use the Jumbo Frame function in the **Network** page. However, this function might not be able to be used depending on the network environment.

Initial Settings

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer 673
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 695
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel 673
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands 674
Configuring TCP/IPv6 Network Settings 676
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) 676
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Mac OS) 677
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI 677

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer

You must configure the printer's IP address before using the printer in a TCP/IP network.
The printer's IP address is configured automatically when you install the printer driver following the instructions in the Setup Guide.
Configure the IP address by using **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**, the printer Control Panel, or ARP or PING commands, if the IP address is changed, or if you change the printer connection mode to a network connection. For details on configuring the IP address, refer to the following topics.

- **Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** ➔P.695 (Windows)
- **Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel** ➔P.673
- **Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands** ➔P.674

Important

- If you use a DHCP server for automatic assignment of the printer's IP address, printing may no longer be possible after the printer is turned off and on. This is because an IP address different from before has been assigned. Thus, when using DHCP server functions, consult your network administrator and configure the settings in one of the following ways.
- Configure the setting for dynamic DNS updating
  In the printer menu, either set **DNS Dync update** to **On**, or activate the setting **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** in RemoteUI.
  (See "**Menu Settings.**") ➔P.632
  (See "**Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI.**") ➔P.677
- Configure the setting for assignment of the same IP address each time the printer starts up

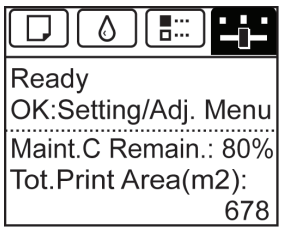
Note

- We recommend configuring the printer's IP address even if you will use the printer in networks other than TCP/IP networks. Configuring the printer's IP address enables you to use RemoteUI to configure the network settings and manage the printer with a web browser.
  For details on RemoteUI, see "**Using RemoteUI.**" ➔P.671

Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel

This topic describes how to configure the printer's IP address on the Control Panel.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv4**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv4 Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Address**, and then press the **OK** button.

8 After you press ◀ or ▶ to select the input field, numerical input is possible.

9 Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.

Note
- Hold down ▲ to increase the value continuously. However, 0 follows 2 for digits of 100 and 0 follows 9 for digits of 10 and 1.
- Hold down ▼ to decrease the value continuously. However, 2 follows 0 for digits of 100 and 9 follows 0 for digits of 10 and 1.
- Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.
- Make sure the IP address you enter for the printer is not the same as any computer IP address in your network.

10 Repeat steps 8 and 9 to complete the settings, and then press the **OK** button.

11 Press the **Menu** button.
If you have changed the settings, a confirmation message is displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Important
- Be sure to complete step 11. This will activate the values you have entered.
- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.

Note
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway on the Control Panel.
- The DNS can also be configured from the printer Control Panel.

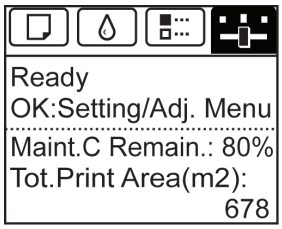
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands

This topic describes how to configure the IP address using ARP and PING commands.

To use the ARP and PING commands, you will need to know the printer's MAC address. You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel.

1 Check the printer's MAC address.
You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel as follows:

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **MAC Address**, and then press the **OK** button.

Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.
- You can investigate the MAC address by printing an interface setting report.
(See "**Printing Interface Setting Reports**.") ➔P.645

2 In Windows, open a command prompt, or in Mac OS X, start Terminal.

3 Execute the following command to add entries to the ARP table for managing IP addresses and corresponding MAC addresses.
arp -s [IP address] [the printer's MAC address you have verified]
Example: arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx

Note
- In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the arp command in the format
arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx.
For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

4 Execute the following command to send the IP address to the printer and configure it.
ping [IP address as specified in the ARP command] -l 479
Example: ping xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx -l 479

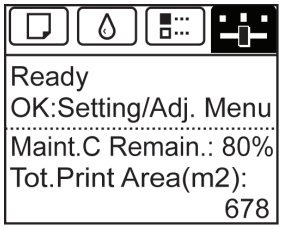
Note
- In **-l**, the **l** is the letter **l**.
- In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the ping command in the format
ping -s 479 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.
For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

Note
- The subnet mask and default gateway are set to 0.0.0.0. Use RemoteUI to change the subnet mask and default gateway to match your network settings.
For details on RemoteUI, see "**Using RemoteUI**." ➔P.671

Configuring TCP/IPv6 Network Settings

When printing in a TCP/IPv6 network, you must configure the TCP/IPv6 settings on the Control Panel.
Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IPv6 network settings.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv6**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv6 Support**, and then press the **OK** button.

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

Important
- Once you set **IPv6 Support** to **On**, the **IPv6 StlessAddrs** setting takes effect.

Note
- You can also configure **IPv6 StlessAddrs** and **DHCPv6** from the printer Control Panel.
- The DNS can also be configured from the printer Control Panel.

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)

This topic describes how to specify the printer driver destination if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.
The procedure described below is the configuration based on the LPR or Raw protocol using the standard TCP/IP port in Windows (**Standard TCP/IP Port**).

Important
- If you will use the printer in a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
- **Configuring the IP Address on the Printer** ➔P.673

Note
- This section describes the procedure in Windows 7.

1 Open the **Devices and Printers** window.

2 Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Printer Properties** to open the printer properties window.

3 Click the **Port** tab to display the **Port** sheet.

4 Click **Add Port** to display the **Printer Ports** dialog box.

5 In the **Available Port** list, select **Standard TCP/IP Port**.

6 Click **New Port**.
After the wizard starts, a window is displayed for the **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard**.

7 Click **Next**.

8 In **Printer Name or IP Address**, enter the printer's IP address. If the DNS is configured, you can also enter the DNS Domain Name.

9 Follow the instructions on the screen to add a printer port.

10 Click **Close** to close the **Printer Ports** dialog box.

11 Make sure the printer port you added is displayed under **Ports**, and that the port is selected.

12 Click **Close** to close the printer properties window.

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Mac OS)

Specify the printer driver destination as follows if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

- If you switch to printing in a TCP/IP network, or if the printer's IP address is changed, see "**Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks** ." ➔P.689
- If you switch to printing in a Bonjour network, see "**Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network** ." ➔P.689

Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI

Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IP network settings.

When using an IPv4 IP address

1 Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://**printer IP address or name**/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2 Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.

Note
- If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

3 Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.

4 Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **TCP/IPv4** group to display the **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings** page.

5 Refer to the TCP/IP Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IP Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Use DHCP	Activate this setting to use DHCP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use BOOTP	Activate this setting to use BOOTP for configuring the IP address.	Off

Item	Details	Default Setting
Use RARP	Activate this setting to use RARP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Enable DNS Dynamic Update	Activate this setting to perform DNS server registration automatically.	Off
Use Zeroconf Function	Activate this setting to use Bonjour.	On
IP Address	Specify the printer's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	Specify the printer's subnet mask.	0.0.0.0
Gateway Address	Specify the printer's default gateway.	0.0.0.0
LPD Printing	Activate this setting to use LDP Printing.	On
IPP Printing	Activate this setting to use IPP Printing.	On
IPP Printer URI	Specify the URI of the printer used for IPP printing using up to 252 characters.	printer
RAW Printing	Activate this setting to use Raw Printing.	On
RAW Mode Bi-direction	Activate this setting to use Raw mode bidirectional communication.	Off
FTP Printing	Activate this setting to use FTP Printing.	On
Use Discovery	Activate this setting to use SLP Discovery function.	On
Scope	Enter the SLP search range.	default
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server's IP address. You can also specify the SMTP server domain name, if desired.	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
DNS Host Name	Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1–63 characters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and **-** (hyphens). Do not use numbers or **-** for the first character or **-** for the last character.	NB-18GBipxxxxxx
DNS Domain Name	Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, **-** (hyphens), and **.** (periods). Do not use numbers, **-**, or **.** for the first character, or **-** or **.** for the last character.	blank
Multicast DNS Service Name	Specify the printer's Multicast DNS service name. (1–63 characters) This name will be displayed when Bonjour functions are used.	Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)

6 Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Note

- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, there must be a server that supports such protocol running in the network.
- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, the IP address obtained by this method is used first. If you cannot obtain the IP address, the address specified in **IP Address** is used.
- It takes up to two minutes to determine whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP are available. We recommend clearing check boxes of options you will not use.
- If you are using a DNS server, select **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** and enter the IP Address for DNS servers and DNS domain name in **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address** and **DNS Domain Name**, respectively.

When using an IPv6 IP address

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://**printer IP address or name**/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.

Note
- If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

3. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.

4. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **TCP/IPv6** group to display the **Edit TCP/IPv6 Protocol Settings** page.

5. Refer to the TCP/IPv6 Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IPv6 Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Use IPv6		Activate to enable IPv6.	Off
Use DHCPv6		Activate when using a DHCPv6 server to acquire the IP address.	Off
Use a stateless address		Activate when using an IPv6-compatible router to acquire the IP address.	On
Use a manual address		Activate when configuring the IP address manually.	Off
	IP Address	Enter the printer's IP address.	::
	Prefix Length	Enter the IP address prefix length.	
	Default Router Address	Enter the default router address.	::
	Prefix Length	Enter the prefix length of the default router address.	
Primary DNS Server Address		Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.	::
Secondary DNS Server Address		Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.	::
Use the same host name and domain name as IPv4		Activate when using the same DNS host and domain names as for IPv4.	Off
	DNS Host Name	Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1–63 characters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and **-** (hyphens). Do not use numbers or **-** for the first character or **-** for the last character.	NB-18GBip6xxxxxx
	DNS Domain Name	Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, **-** (hyphens), and **.** (periods). Do not use numbers, **-**, or **.** for the first character, or **-** or **.** for the last character.	blank
Perform dynamic updating of stateful addresses		Activate this setting to automatically register the stateful address with the DNS server.	Off
Dynamically update the stateless address		Activate this setting to automatically register the stateless address with the DNS server.	Off
Dynamically update the manual address		Activate this setting to automatically register the manual address with the DNS server.	Off

6. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Note

- If you are using a DNS server, select **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** and enter the IP Address for DNS servers and DNS domain name in **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address** and **DNS Domain Name**, respectively.

NetWare Settings

Configuring NetWare Network Settings 681
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type 681
Specifying NetWare Print Services 684
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings With RemoteUI 686

Configuring NetWare Network Settings

To print over a NetWare network, configure the network environment as follows.

Important
- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as Administrator account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.

Note
- This section describes the procedure in Windows 7.

1. Specify the Ethernet frame type for communication between the printer and computers.
For instructions, see "**Specifying the Printer's Frame Type**." ➔P.681

2. Specify the NetWare print services, including the print server and queue.
For instructions, see "**Specifying NetWare Print Services**." ➔P.684

3. Specify NetWare protocol details besides the frame type.
For details on how to configure the settings, see "**Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings With RemoteUI**." ➔P.686
After you have completed the steps above, configure each computer for printing over the NetWare network.

4. Connect to the NetWare network.
Install NetWare client software on each computer to be used for printing over the network, and log in to the NetWare server or tree. For instructions on connection, refer to the NetWare and operating system documentation.

5. Install the printer driver.
Follow the instructions of your network administrator to install the printer driver on each computer to be used for printing. When installing the printer driver, choose **Network Printer** as the printer destination, and then choose the print queue created from the NetWare print service settings.

6. Follow these steps to configure the printer port. This step is not necessary if you specified the printer destination during installation of the printer driver.

    1. Open the **Devices and Printers** window.
    2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Printer Properties** to open the printer properties window.
    3. Click the **Port** (or **Advanced**) tab to display the **Port** (or **Advanced**) sheet.
    4. As the destination port, specify the print queue created by configuring the NetWare print service settings.

Specifying the Printer's Frame Type

To enable communication between the printer and computers on your network, specify the Ethernet frame type in your NetWare environment.
Follow the steps below to specify the frame type by using **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** or the printer Control Panel.

Important

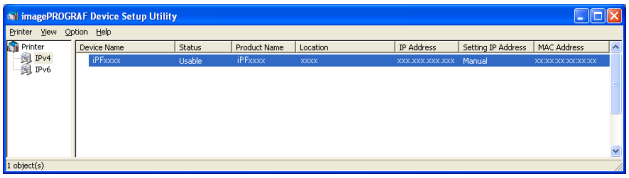
- Before specifying the frame type, make sure the printer is on and connected to the network.

Note

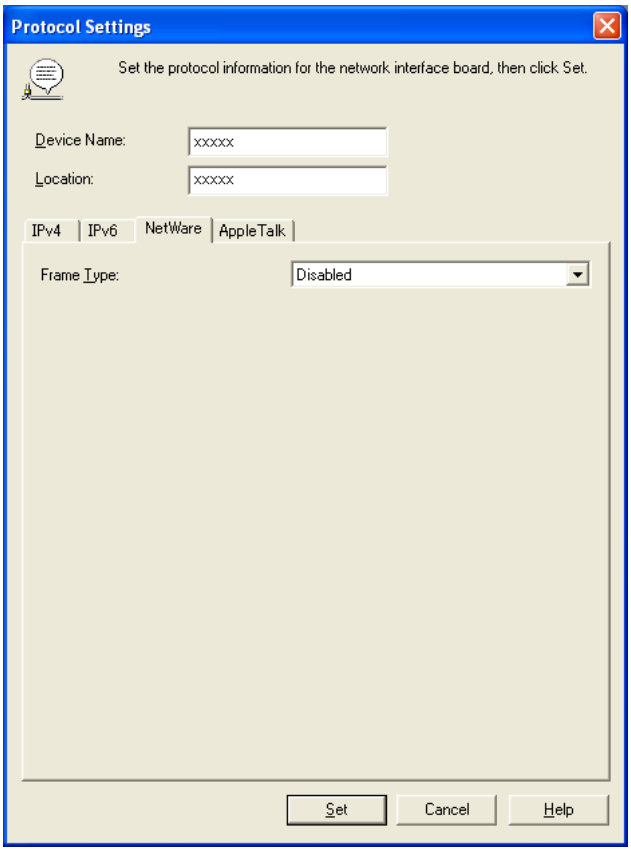
- You can specify the frame type by using RemoteUI if the printer's IP address is configured.
- For instructions on installing **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility." ➔P.695 .

Specifying the frame type using **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**

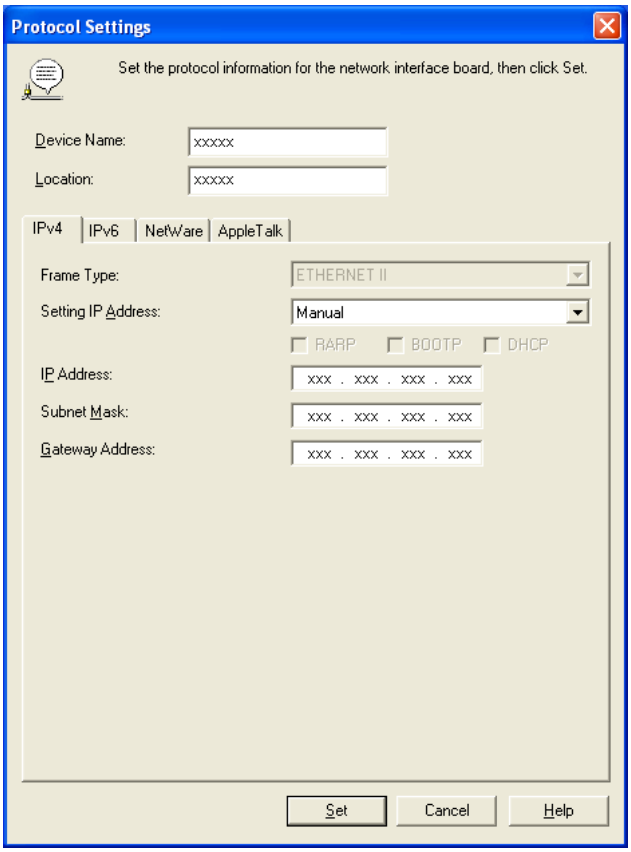
1. Start **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**.



2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. Click the **NetWare** tab and select the frame type in the **NetWare Frame Type** list.



5 Select the **IPv4** tab. In **IP Address**, enter the IP address assigned to the printer, and then enter the subnet mask in **Subnet Mask** and the default gateway in **Gateway Address**.



Important
- You must specify the IP address here to be able to configure NetWare protocol settings using RemoteUI.

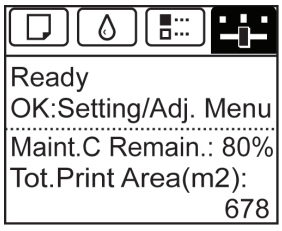
6 Click **Set**.

7 Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.

8 Exit **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**.

Specifying the frame type using the printer Control Panel

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
The display reverts to the **NetWare** menu.

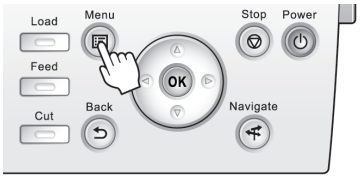
7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Frame Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

8 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the frame type to use, and then press the **OK** button.
The display reverts to the **NetWare** menu.

9 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Service**, and then press the **OK** button.

10 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired print service, and then press the **OK** button.
The display reverts to the **NetWare** menu.

11 Press the **Menu** button.
If you have changed any settings, a confirmation message is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Important
- Be sure to complete step 11. This will activate the values you have entered.

Note
- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel this process, press the **Back** button.

Specifying NetWare Print Services

Before printing in a NetWare network, you must configure print services such as print servers, print queues, and so on. You can configure the print service settings from a computer using any of the following Novell software provided with NetWare.

- NWADMIN
- PCONSOLE

Important
- If you use NWADMIN to configure the print service settings, Novell Client (the Novell NetWare client software) must be installed as the client software application.
- NetWare networking is unsupported in Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008 and Windows 7.

This topic gives instructions for configuring NetWare print services. The order of this procedure may vary depending on the environment.

Choosing the type of print services

Before completing print service settings, choose the type of print service. Refer to the following descriptions as needed.

Note
- In NetWare 5.1 or 6.0, NDPS may also be used as the print service. If you use NDPS, use the Novell printer gateway included with NetWare. For details on configuring NDPS, refer to the NetWare documentation.

- NDS (Novell Directory Service) and bindery

NDS and bindery are both supported. Use the mode that is compatible with your network environment.

- Queue server mode and remote printer mode
  Queue server mode and remote printer mode are both supported.
  - Queue server mode
    When using queue server mode, all print server functions are supported, so there is no need for other print server software or hardware. In NDS queue server mode (NDS PServer), the NDS print server is used for printing. In bindery queue server mode (Bindery PServer), the bindery print server is used for printing. Note that if you use queue server mode, a NetWare user license is required for each network interface.
  - Remote printer mode
    In remote printer mode, the printer is controlled by the NetWare print server. Thus, a NetWare print server is required. In NDS remote printer mode (NPrinter), the NDS print server is used for printing, and in bindery remote printer mode (RPrinter), the bindery print server is used for printing.

Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server

Use NWADMIN to set up the print server if NDS queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1 Log into NetWare as Administrator or with equivalent rights, and then start NWADMIN.

2 Run Quick Setup.

1. Choose **Print Services Quick Setup** in the **Tools** menu.
2. Enter a desired name in **Print Server Name**. To use an existing print server, click the button at right and choose the name from the list.
3. Enter a desired printer name in **Name**.
4. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use the printer in remote printer mode, choose **Parallel** in **Type**, click **Communications**, and set **Ports** to **LPT1** and **Connection Type** to **Manual Load**.
5. Enter a desired queue name in **Name**.
6. In **Volume**, enter the volume object (that is, the object representing the physical volume on the network) where the print queue will be created. Click the button at right to choose from a list.
7. Complete other settings as needed and click **OK**.

Note
- The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Write down the print server name for future reference.
- When running Quick Setup, the printer is assigned printer number 0. When using the printer in queue server mode, do not change the printer number from 0.

3 Set a password.

1. Right-click the print server created in step 2 and choose **Details**.
2. Click **Change Password** to open the password input dialog box. Enter the password.
3. Click **OK** to close the password input dialog box.
4. Click **OK** or **Cancel** to close the details dialog box.

4 To use the printer in remote printer mode, start the print server.
To use the NetWare file server as the print server, enter **LOAD PSERVER.NLM** at the file server and press the Enter key.

Note
- This procedure is not required when using queue server mode.

Use PCONSOLE to set up the print server if bindery queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1 Log into NetWare as Admin and start PCONSOLE.

2 Switch to bindery mode.

3 If the print server has not been created, create it.

1. In **Available Options**, select **Quick Setup**, and press the Enter key.
2. Enter the name of the new print server, the new printer, and the queue.

Note
- The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Write down the print server name for future reference.

4 Specify the printer type.

1. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use remote printer mode, set **Printer Type** to **Parallel** and **Position** to **Manual Load**.
2. Press the Esc key.
3. After the confirmation message is displayed, choose **Yes** and press the Enter key.

5 Set a password.

1. In **Available Options**, select **Print Servers** and press the Enter key.
2. Select the print server created in step 2 and press the Enter key.
3. Select **Password**, and press the Enter key to display the password input dialog box.
4. Enter the password and press the Enter key.

6 Press the Esc key several times to display the dialog box for confirming that PCONSOLE is finished.

7 Click **Yes** to exit PCONSOLE.

Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings With RemoteUI

Follow the steps below to configure NetWare protocol settings other than the frame type by using RemoteUI.

Note
- For details on RemoteUI, see "**Using RemoteUI**." ➔P.671

1 Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://printer IP address or name/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2 Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.

3 If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

4 Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.

5 Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.

6 Refer to the NetWare Settings Items table to complete the settings.

NetWare Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Frame Type		Specify the type of frame to use in NetWare.	Disabled
NCP Burst Mode		Activate this setting to use NCP Burst Mode. This mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, leave the setting On.	On
Print Application		Choose the print service. The print service selected here is enabled. Multiple print services cannot be enabled simultaneously. • **Bindery PServer** • **RPrinter** • **NDS PServer** • **NPrinter**	NDS PServer
Packet Signature		Select **If Requested by Server** to use packet signature.	**If Requested by Server**
Bindery PServer	**File Server Name**	Specify the name of a file server that has a NetWare print server. (0–47 characters)	—
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0–47 characters)	—
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0–20 characters)	—
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1–15 seconds)	5
RPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0–47 characters)	—
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-15)	0
NDS PServer	**Tree Name**	Specify the name of an NDS tree that has a NetWare print server. (0–32 characters)	—
	Context Name	Specify the name of a context that has a NetWare print server. (0–255 characters)	—
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0–64 characters)	—
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0–20 characters)	—
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1–255 seconds)	5
NPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0–47 characters)	—
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-254)	0

7 Complete the following settings based on the selected service.

- If you have selected Bindery PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)

  1. In **File Server Name**, enter the file server name.
  2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "**Specifying NetWare Print Services**" →P.684 .
  3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "**Specifying NetWare Print Services**" →P.684 .
  4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.

- If you have selected RPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)

  1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "**Specifying NetWare Print Services**" →P.684 .
  2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "**Specifying NetWare Print Services**" →P.684 .

- If you have selected NDS PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using an NDS Print Server)

  1. In **Tree Name** and **Context Name**, enter the tree and context name of the print server.
  2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "**Specifying NetWare Print Services**" →P.684 .
  3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "**Specifying NetWare Print Services**" →P.684 .
  4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.

- If you have selected NPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a NDS Print Server)

  1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "**Specifying NetWare Print Services**" →P.684 . Usually, the advertising name is the same as the name of the print server.
  2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "**Specifying NetWare Print Services**" →P.684 .

8 Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Mac OS Settings

Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks 689
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network 689
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks 689
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings 691

Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks

If you use the printer in a TCP/IP network, register the printer in **Print & Scan** (or **Print & Fax**) in the Mac OS **System Preferences**.

Note
- For details on how to register a printer using a TCP/IP network, see the OS User Manual.

Important
- If you use the printer in a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. (See "**Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel.**") ➔P.673

Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network

If you use the printer in a network that uses the Bonjour function, register the printer in **Print & Scan** (or **Print & Fax**) in the Mac OS **System Preferences**.

Note
- For details on how to register a printer using Bonjour, see the OS User Manual.

Important
- Bonjour and IP Print (Auto) do not support printing to a printer on other network groups that require a router for connection. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.
- By default, Bonjour is activated on the printer. You can activate or deactivate the Bonjour function or change the printer name by using RemoteUI. For instructions on changing it, see "**Using RemoteUI.**" ➔P.671

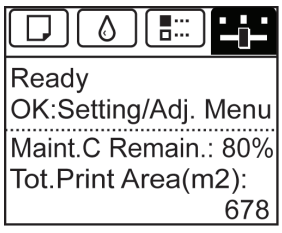
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks

To print over an AppleTalk network, activate the AppleTalk protocol and configure the destination as follows.

Activating AppleTalk on the printer

Important
- By default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

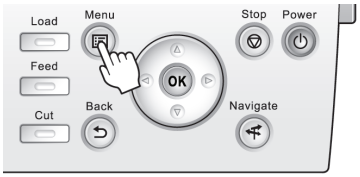
2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AppleTalk**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press the **Menu** button.
If you have changed any settings, a confirmation message is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Important
- Be sure to complete step 6. This will activate the values you have entered.

Note
- By using RemoteUI, you can also specify the object name used for AppleTalk, as well as the printer zone name. For details on RemoteUI, see "**Using RemoteUI**." →P.671

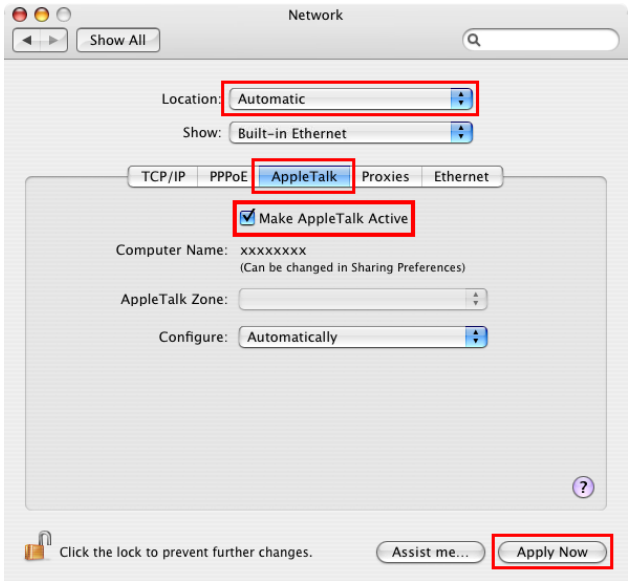
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS)

Important
- AppleTalk is supported in Mac OS X 10.2.8–10.4.

Note
- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS.
- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is not compatible with AppleTalk.

1 In **System Preferences**, click **Network** to display the **Network** window.

2 In **Show**, choose **Built-in Ethernet**. Next, click **AppleTalk**, select **Make AppleTalk Active**, and click **Apply now**.



3 Close the **Network** window and save the settings.

Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the AppleTalk network settings.

1 Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://printer IP address or name/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2 Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.

3 If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

4 Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.

5 Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **AppleTalk** group to display the **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page.

6 Refer to the AppleTalk Settings Items table to complete the settings.

AppleTalk Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Phase Type	Specify whether to use AppleTalk. If you will use AppleTalk, choose **Phase 2**. If you will not use AppleTalk, choose **Disabled**.	Disabled
Name (*1)	Specify the object name used by AppleTalk (in up to 31 single-byte or 15 double-byte characters). However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @, *, :, and =.	Canon NB-18GB (xxxxxx)
Zone (*2)	Specify the printer zone name, up to 31 single-byte characters. However, do not use the following single-byte characters: Also avoid using * (which represents the default zone) in the middle of a string.	*

*1: The object name you have specified in **Name** is displayed in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X 10.2.8–10.4. If you use multiple printers in the same zone, assign a unique name to each printer. By default, the network interface name is **Canon NB-18GB (xxxxxx)**. (Here, xxxxxx is the last six digits of the printer's MAC address.)

*2: If zones have been created on the network, enter the name of the printer's zone. If there are no zones, leave the asterisk * entry (for the default zone) as it is. If you enter a network zone name that does not match created zones, the printer will not be detected by Mac OS computers. Consult your network administrator for information on zone names.

7 Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Other Settings

Specifying Printer-Related Information 692
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually 693
Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur 694
Initializing the Network Settings 694

Specifying Printer-Related Information

Follow the steps below to specify device information and security settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://printer IP address or name/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.

Note
- If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

3. Click **Information** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Information** page.

4. To display the relevant settings page, click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of **Device Information** or **Security**, depending on what information you want to specify.
To change the administrator password, click the **Change Password** button in the **Security** group.

5. Refer to the table of settings for device information and security as you complete these settings.
Security setting items are displayed when you click the **Change Password** button in the **Security** group.

Device Information Settings

Item	Details	Default Setting
Device Name	Enter a device name. (0–32 characters)	blank
Location	Enter the location where the device is installed. (0–32 characters)	blank
Administrator	Enter the administrator's name. (0–32 characters)	blank
Phone	Enter the administrator's contact information. (0–32 characters)	blank
Comments(E-mail)	Enter any comments regarding the administrator. (0–32 characters)	blank

Security Settings

Item	Details	Default Setting
New Password	Enter the new password. (0-9999999)	blank
Confirm	Enter the new password again to confirm it. (0-9999999)	blank

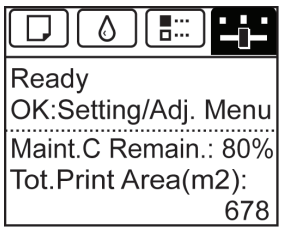
*1:On the **Security** settings screen, besides entering a password, you can specify other security-related information, such as IP address-based SNMP or TCP usage restrictions, MAC address-based access restrictions, or IPP and FTP authentication settings.

6 Click **OK** to activate the settings.

Configuring the Communication Mode Manually

This topic gives instructions for configuring the communication mode manually.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Detect**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.
The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Comm.Mode**, and then press the **OK** button.

8 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the communication mode, and then press the **OK** button.
The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

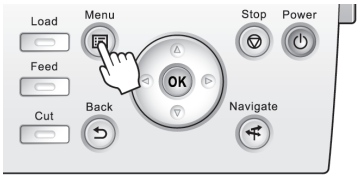
9 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

10 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Ethernet type, and then press the **OK** button.
The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

11 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Spanning Tree**, and then press the **OK** button.

12 Press ▲ or ▼ to enable or disable spanning tree support, and then press the **OK** button.
The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

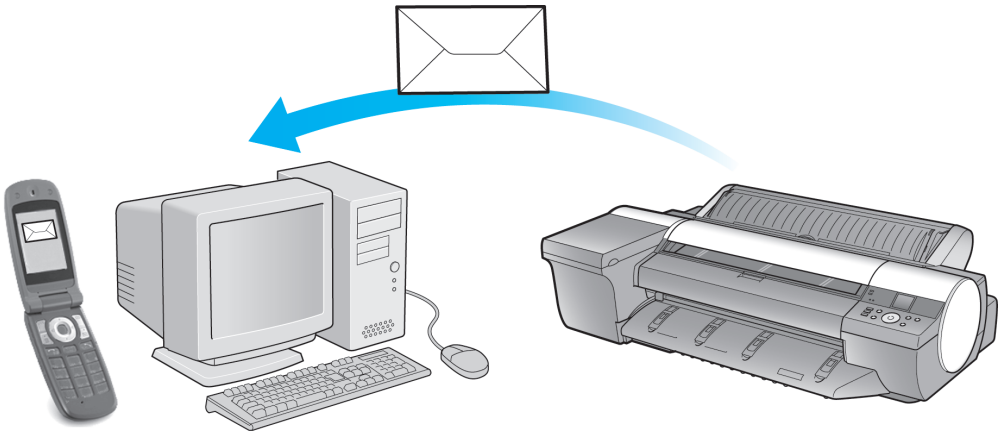
13 Press the **Menu** button.
After the confirmation message is displayed, press the **OK** button.
The new settings will take effect after the printer restarts.



Note
- Communication can also be configured on the **Network** page in RemoteUI.

Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur

The printer can notify you of the printer status by email. Even when you are away from the printer, you can know when printing is finished or if errors occur. Receive notification via email on your mobile phone or at your computer.



Use the **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** (Windows) function to set up email recipients and message timing. Besides being informed of finished print jobs or errors, you can also complete settings for email notification when service is needed or it's time to replace consumables. For detailed instructions,see "**Specifying Printer-Related Information.**" →P.692

Note

- For details on email notification using **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** (in Windows), refer to the **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** help.
- Mail server authentication is only supported with **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**.

Initializing the Network Settings

Use RemoteUI to restore the network settings to the default values as follows.

Important

- Initializing the network settings will also restore the default value of the printer's IP address. As a result, the RemoteUI page cannot be displayed in the web browser after this procedure.
- For instructions on reconfiguring the IP address, see "**Configuring the IP Address on the Printer.**" →P.673
- For details on RemoteUI, see "**Using RemoteUI.**" →P.671

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://printer IP address or name/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.

   Note

   - If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

3. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.

4. Click **Reset to Default settings** in the lower-right corner of the **Network Interface** group.

5. After confirming the message, click **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.

Note

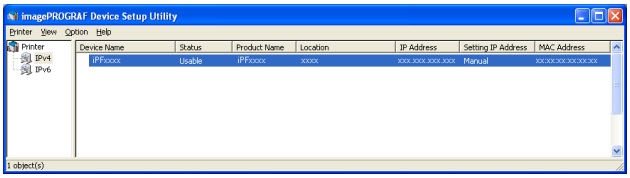
- You can also use **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** or the Control Panel to restore the default network settings.

Device Setup Utility (Windows)

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 695
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 695
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 695

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility is a utility to establish communication between the printer and your computer by completing relevant settings. After the printer is installed, for example, you can use **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** to complete the network settings initially.



- Starting **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** will show a list of printers found on the network. In this list, select the printer (specifically, the printer's MAC address) that you want to set up, and then configure the basic settings from your computer, such as the printer's IP address and the network frame type.
- You can see which printers are online in the network by checking the printer list. Communication between your computer and these printers is possible.

Note
- We recommend that your network or printer administrator complete the setup work using **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**.
- For details, refer to the **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** help.

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

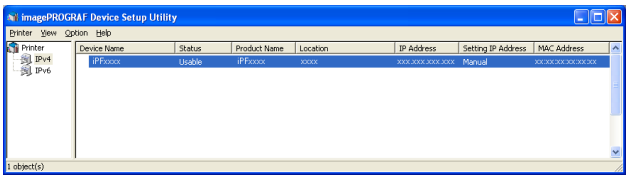
On a computer running Windows, you can use **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**.

Important
- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as **Administrator** account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.

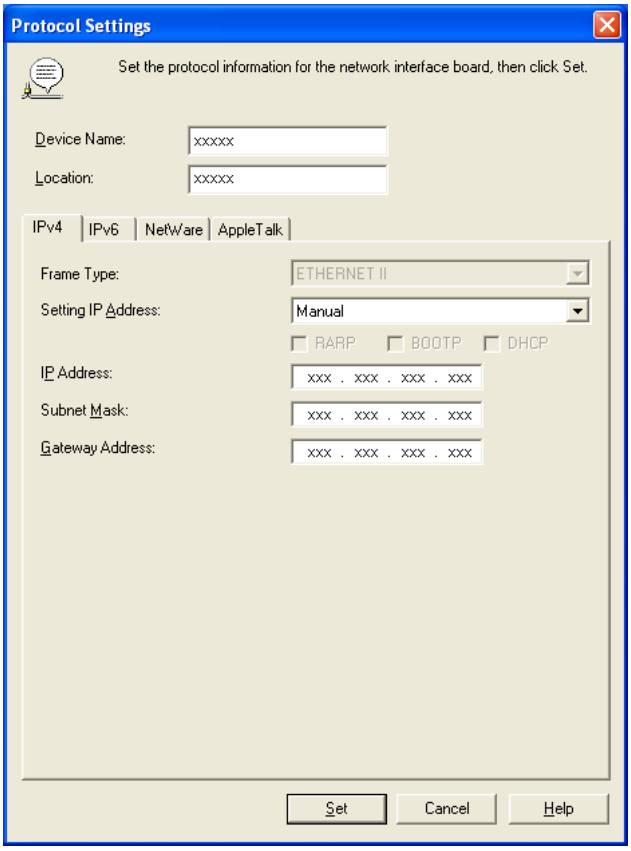
Note
- For instructions on installing **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility." →P.695

When specifying an IPv4 IP address

1. Start **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** from the **start** menu.



2. In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. Select the **IPv4** tab.



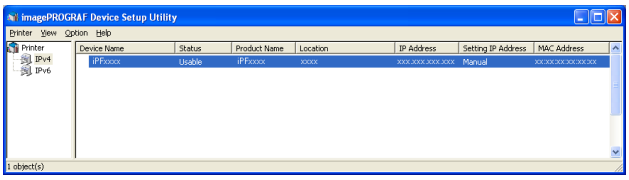
5. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
6. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
7. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.
8. Exit **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**.

Note

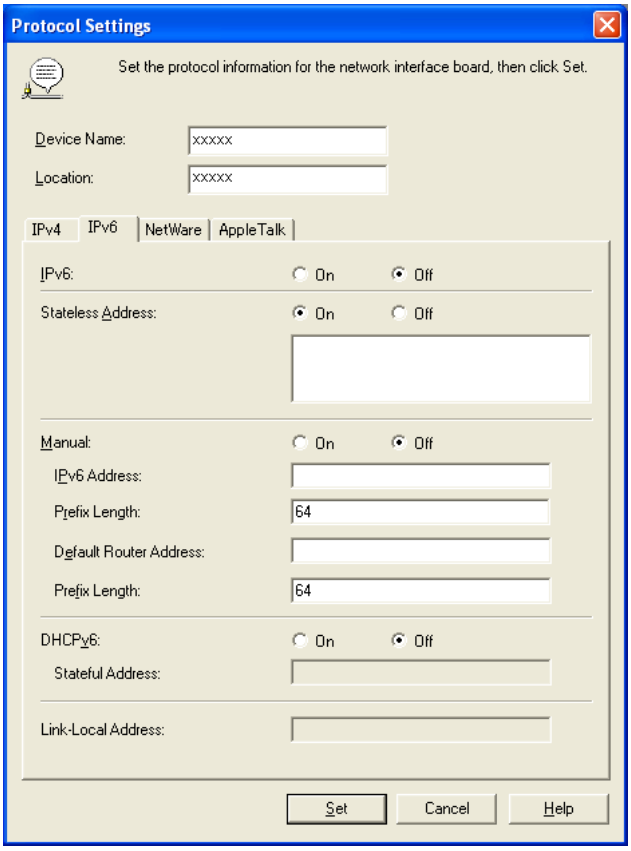
- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

When specifying an IPv6 IP address

1. Start **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** from the **start** menu.



2. In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. Select the **IPv6** tab.



5. In **IPv6**, select **On**.
6. When there is an IPv6-compatible router in the network environment, select **On** in **Stateless Address**. Additionally, when there is an DHCPv6-compatible server in the network environment, select **On** in **DHCPv6**.

Note
- When there is no IPv6-compatible router or DHCPv6-compatible server, select **On** in **Manual** and enter the **IPv6 Address** and **Prefix Length**.

7. Click **Set**.
8. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.
9. Exit **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**.

Memo

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667

Print Job Management

Status Monitor (Windows) 700
Printmonitor (Mac OS) 703
Accounting (Windows) 705
Basic Print Job Operations 719
Advanced Print Job Operations 741

Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

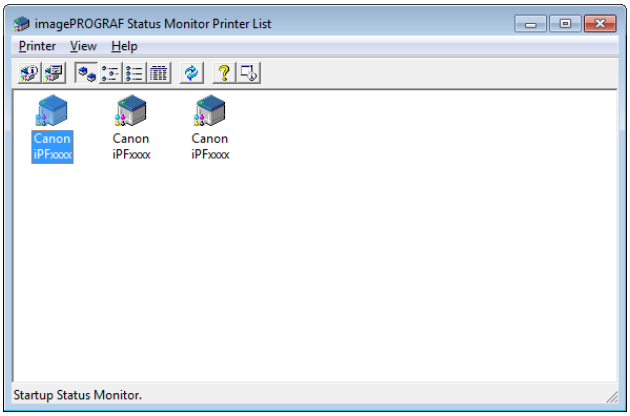
User's Guide

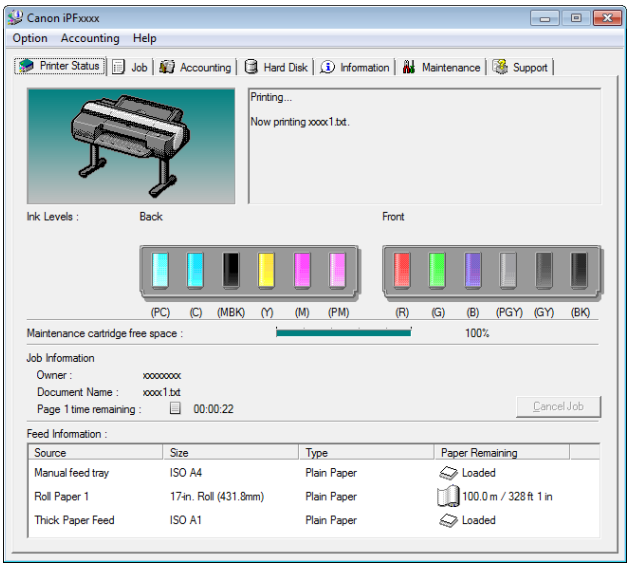
Status Monitor (Windows)

The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 700
Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 701

The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.
Two screens are available in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor : **Printer List** shows a list of printers, and **Status Monitor** shows details for each printer.





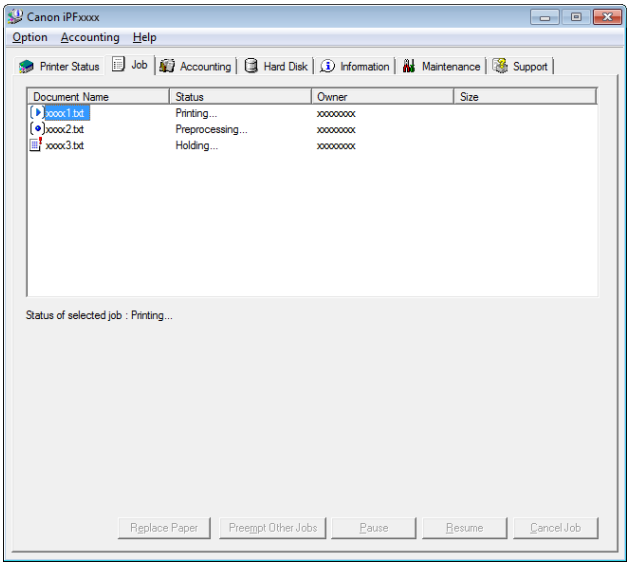
- You can view a list of the printers for which printer drivers have been installed on your computer, printers connected to your computer, and printers found on the network.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- Displays the ink level of every color in the printer. An icon and warning message will notify you when ink levels are low.
- The type of paper loaded in each media source is identified. You can also check to see if paper has run out.
- This way, the utility enables you to check printer information and take care of printer maintenance for optimal printing results.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

- You can check the status of the hard disk and the documents saved on the hard disk.
- You can use the Accounting Manager to collect the print job logs for the printers and check information such as the printing costs.
  For details of the Accounting Manager, see "**Accounting Manager**." ➔P.705

Note
- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

You can use the **Job** sheet in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor for operations such as pausing and canceling print jobs.



- Preempting Other Jobs

  If you select a print job and click the **Preempt Other Jobs** button, the selected job is printed ahead of the job that currently precedes it in the print queue.

- Pausing/Resuming Print Jobs

  Selecting a print job and clicking the **Pause** button pauses printing of the selected job.
  To resume printing of a paused print job, select the print job and click the **Resume** button.

Note
- Once all the print data for a print job has been sent to the printer, the job can no longer be paused/resumed.

- Canceling Print Jobs

  Selecting a print job and clicking the **Cancel Job** button cancels printing of the selected job.

Note
- You cannot cancel other users' print jobs.

- Printing Held Jobs

  Printing of the job with a **Status** of **Holding** is paused because the paper specified by the driver does not match the paper currently loaded in the printer.
  Use the procedure below to print the held job.

1. Select the held job and click the **Replace Paper** button.
2. Replace the paper in the printer with the correct paper.

Note

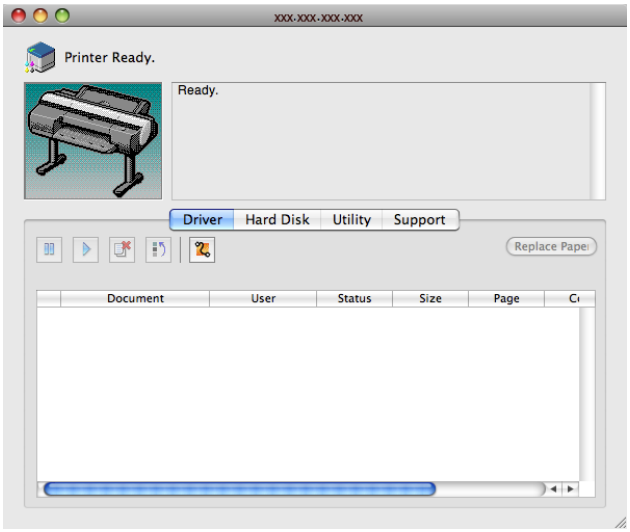
- To continue printing without changing the paper in the printer, select the held job and click **Continue to print** button.
- The printing behavior when the paper specified by the driver does not match the paper currently loaded in the printer can be changed by using **Detect Mismatch** in the operation panel menu. Refer to "**Menu Settings**" ➔P.632 for details.

Printmonitor (Mac OS)

The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 703
Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 704

The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.



- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.
- You can check the status of the hard disk and the documents saved on the hard disk.

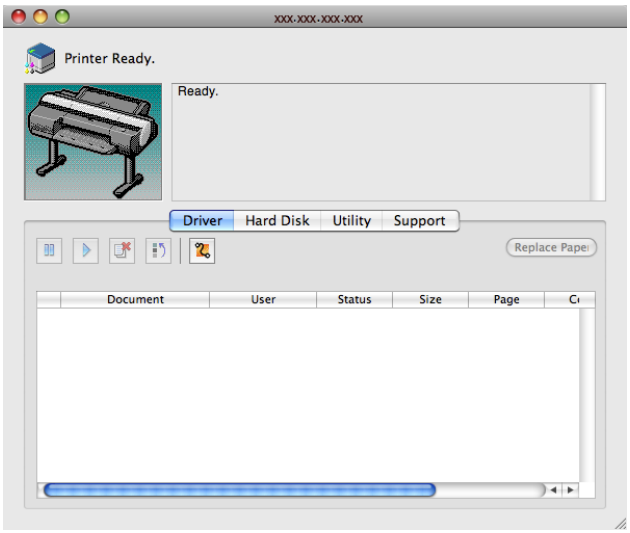
Note

- If the status of the desired printer is not shown in imagePROGRAF Printmonitor, select the printer again as follows.

1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer. After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu. Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
4. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer. After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

You can use the **Driver** Panel in imagePROGRAF Printmonitor for operations such as pausing and canceling print jobs.



- Pausing/Resuming Print Jobs

Selecting a print job and clicking the button pauses printing of the selected job.

To resume printing of a paused print job, select the print job and click the button.

Note
- Once all the print data for a print job has been sent to the printer, the job can no longer be paused/resumed.

- Canceling Print Jobs

Selecting a print job and clicking the button cancels printing of the selected job.

Note
- You cannot cancel other users' print jobs.

- Preempting Other Jobs

If you select a print job and click the button, the selected job is printed ahead of the job that currently precedes it in the print queue.

- Printing Held Jobs

Printing of the job with a **Status** of **Holding** is paused because the paper specified by the driver does not match the paper currently loaded in the printer.

Use the procedure below to print the held job.

1. Select the held job and click the **Replace Paper** button.
2. Replace the paper in the printer with the correct paper.

Note
- To continue printing without changing the paper in the printer, select the held job and click **Continue to print** button.

Accounting (Windows)

Accounting Manager 705
Launching the Accounting Manager 705
Accounting Manager Main Window 706
Job List Area 708

Accounting Manager Basic Procedures 709
Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager 710
Setting the Unit Cost for Ink 710
Setting the Unit Cost for Paper 711
Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper 713
Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager 714

Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals 714
Canceling Regular Print Job Log Acquisition 715
Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs 715

Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File 715
Displaying Job Properties or Period Properties 716
Showing, Saving and Loading Selected Unit Cost Data 717
Showing the Total Amount of Ink and Paper Consumed 717

Accounting Manager

The Accounting Manager stores the printer's print job logs so that you can use the information for checking printing costs, etc.
The benefits of using the Accounting Manager are outlined below.

- Print Job Log Collection
  This allows you to check which documents were printed from each printer, who printed them and when.
- Calculation of the Total Pages Used and the Total Cost
  This allows you to use the collected print job logs to calculate totals for items such as the number of pages printed, the amount of paper used and the printing costs incurred.
- Regular Data Acquisition for Print Jobs
  Job logs can be automatically collected periodically.
- Exporting Print Job Data
  This allows you to export collected print job data as a CSV file.

Important

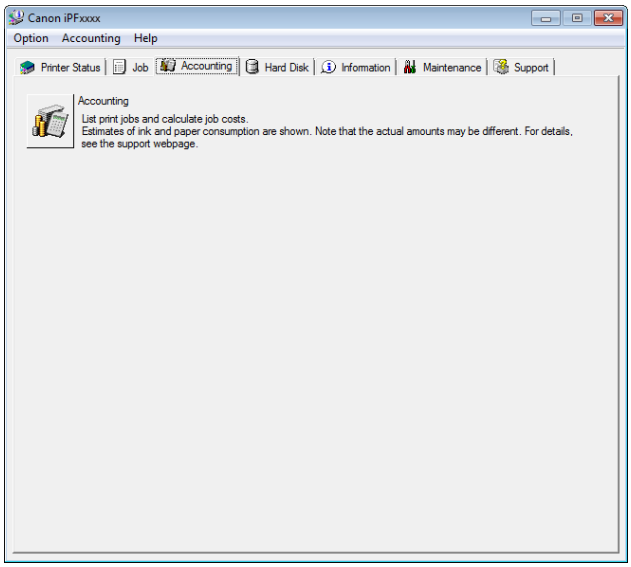
- The Accounting Manager in Status Monitor displays approximate estimates of the amount of paper consumed and the ink consumed per job. Canon cannot guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. These estimates will also vary depending on the conditions of printer use.
- Print job log collection is not performed when **Set./Adj. Menu** -> **System Setup** -> **Show Job Log** of the control panel is **Off**. However,
  - even if **Show Job Log** is set to **Off**, regularly acquired jobs that already have been retrieved at that time are displayed.
  - When **Show Job Log** has been set to **On** again, all jobs within the printer at that time are displayed.

Launching the Accounting Manager

The procedure for launching the Accounting Manager is shown below.

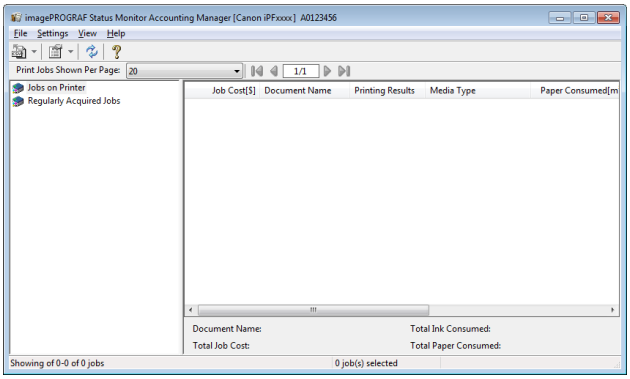
1 Open the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor window.

2 Select **Accounting** in the **Accounting** menu.
Or, open the **Accounting** sheet and click the **Accounting** button.



Accounting Manager Main Window

The Accounting Manager main window consists of a title bar, menu bar, toolbars, listed job selection area, job list area, totals area and status bar.



- Title Bar

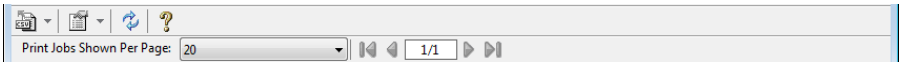
This displays the printer model, its serial number and the port number it is using.

- Menu Bar

Allows you to select the menu options required for operation.

- Toolbars

Provide tool buttons and pull-down menus for the main operations.



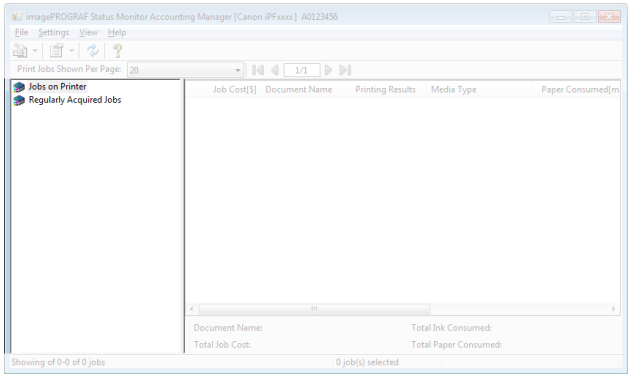
Note

- You can opt to either show or hide the toolbars in the **View** menu.

- **Listed Job Selection Area**

  You can use this area to select which job log is displayed.

  If you are using regular data acquisition, this area allows you to view the collective job logs for each specified period.

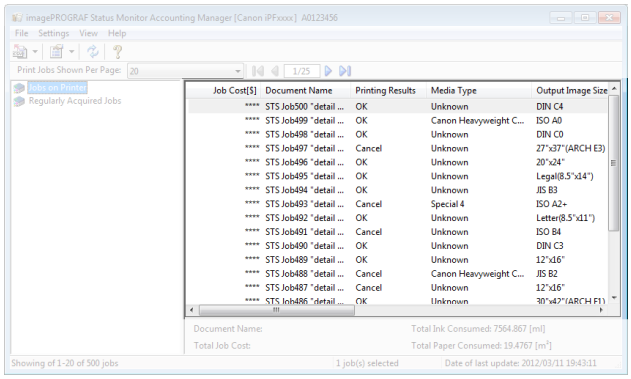


  For more information on how to select the job logs displayed, see **"Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs."** ➔P.715

- **Job List Area**

  This area lists the details of acquired jobs.

  Displays a list of the jobs in the printers or periodically acquired jobs. (See **"Job List Area."**) ➔P.708

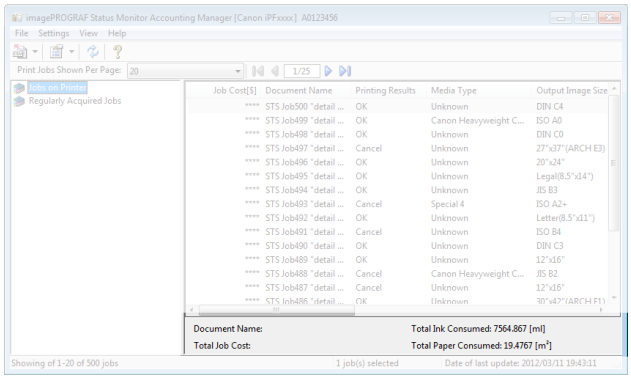


  Note

  - You can change the items that are displayed and the display order using the **Advanced Display Settings** dialog box. The **Advanced Display Settings** dialog box can be displayed by selecting **Advanced Display Settings** from the **Show** menu.

- **Totals Area**

  Displays the total costs for the selected job and the amounts of paper and ink consumed.

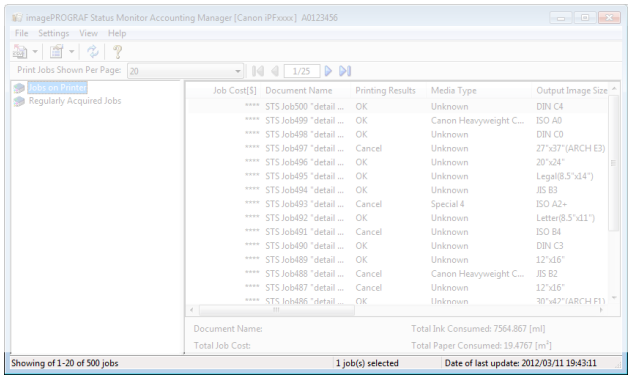


Note

- If you are viewing regularly acquired print jobs, selecting a period on the left side of the window displays the total costs for that period and the amounts of paper and ink consumed.

- Status Bar

  Displays messages and other information.



Job List Area

The job items and details that can be displayed in the job list area are as follows.

- **No.**

  The job serial number.

- **Job Cost**

  The cost of printing.

  Note

  - If the ink and paper unit costs are not set, ******** is displayed.

- **Document Name**

  This is the name of the printed document.

- **Printing Results**

  OK is displayed when the print process was executed, and **Cancel** is displayed if the print process was not executed.

- **Media Type**

  This is the type of paper used in printing.

- **Output Image Size**

  The size of the image used for printing.

  Note

  - If the job has multiple pages, the size of the last page is displayed.

- **Paper Consumed**

  The area of paper used for printing.

  Note

  - The **Paper Consumed** may differ from the product of **Paper Width** and **Paper Length**.

- **Paper Width**

  The width of paper used for printing.

Note
- If the job has multiple pages, the width of the last page is displayed.

- **Paper Length**
  The length of paper used for printing.
- **Ink Consumed**
  The amount of ink used for printing.
- **Owner**
  The sender of the job.
- **Print Job Start Time/Print Time**
  The time when printing started and the time taken to print.
- **Number of Pages**
  The number of pages printed.
- **Roll Paper Width**
  The width of roll paper used for printing.
- **Paper Cost**
  The cost of paper used for printing.

Note
- If the paper unit cost is not set, **** is displayed.

- **Total Ink Cost**
  The total value of the cost of ink used for printing.

Note
- If the ink unit cost is not set, **** is displayed.

- **Total of Other Costs**
  The total value of costs other than paper and ink.
- **Ink Cost Details**
  The cost of each ink color.
- **Ink Consumption Details**
  The amount of each color of ink used.

Accounting Manager Basic Procedures

The first time you use the Accounting Manager, use the following procedures to configure the settings.

1. Configure unit costs, including the costs of ink and paper.
   For details of the unit cost settings, see "**Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager.**" ➔P.710
2. Set options such as the units displayed.
   For details of the unit settings, see "**Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager.**" ➔P.714
3. If you are using Regular Data Acquisition, configure the Regular Data Acquisition settings.
   For details of the Regular Data Acquisition settings, see "**Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals.**" ➔P.714

4 Specify the jobs to be listed.
For details of how to select the job logs displayed, see **"Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs."** ➔P.715

This displays the required print job logs and lists the details.

Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager

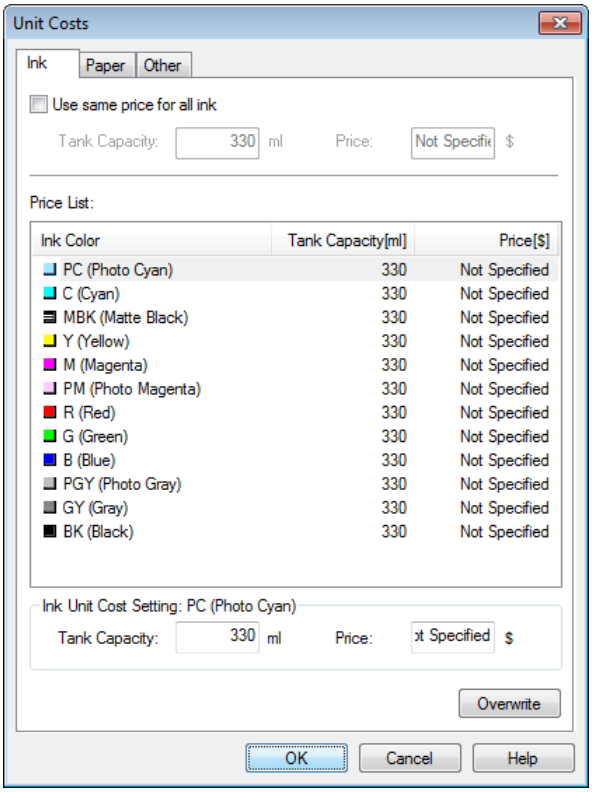
Select **Unit Costs** in the **Settings** menu to open the **Unit Costs** dialog box. Configure the unit cost settings in this dialog box.

Note
- When you select a job and then open the **Unit Costs** dialog box, items with unit costs that have not yet been configured for that job are shown highlighted.

- **Setting the Unit Cost for Ink** ➔P.710
- **Setting the Unit Cost for Paper** ➔P.711
- **Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper** ➔P.713

Setting the Unit Cost for Ink

Open the **Ink** sheet. Set the unit cost for ink in this sheet.



To set the same unit cost for all the inks

1 Select the **Use same price for all ink** checkbox.

2 Enter the **Tank Capacity** and corresponding **Price**.

3 Click the **OK** button.

Important

- Your settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

To set different unit costs for each ink color

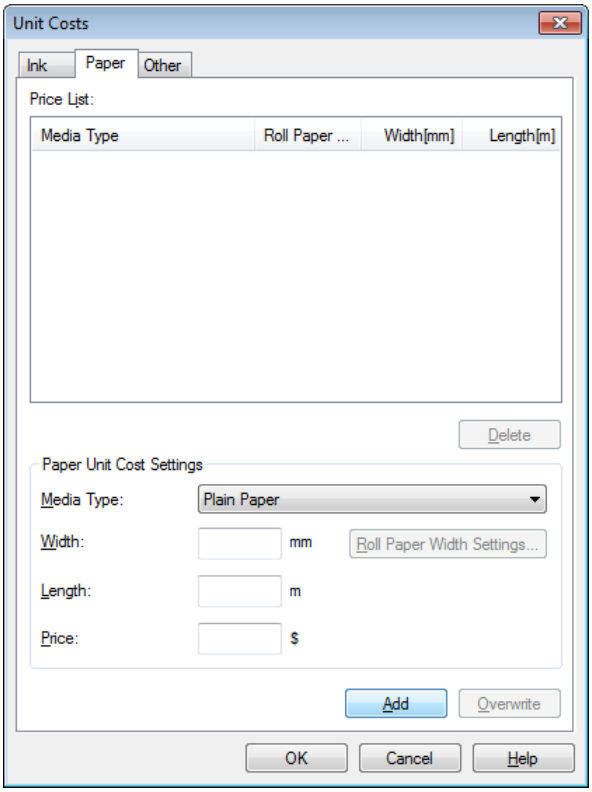
1. Select the ink color to be costed.
2. Enter the **Tank Capacity** and corresponding **Price**.
3. Click the **Overwrite** button.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 for all the inks.
5. Click the **OK** button.

Important

- Your settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

Setting the Unit Cost for Paper

Opens the **Paper** sheet. This sheet is used to configure the unit cost of paper.



Setting Standard Prices

1. Select the media type in **Media Type**.
2. Enter the **Width** and **Length** of the paper, as well as the **Price** for the area of the configured width x height.

3 Click the **Add** button. To change the unit cost of a media type that has already been configured, click the **Overwrite** button.

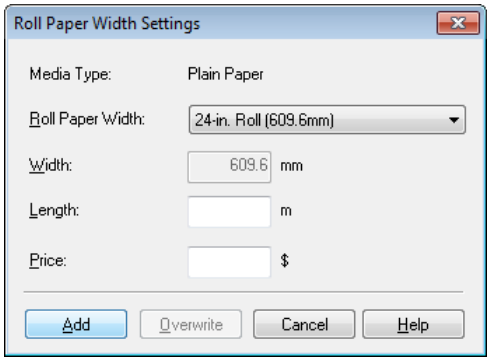
4 Click the **OK** button.

Important
- The settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

Specifying Price by Roll Paper

1 Select the media type in **Media Type**.

2 Click the **Roll Paper Width Settings** button to display the **Roll Paper Width Settings** dialog box.



3 Enter the **Roll Paper Width** and **Length** of the paper, as well as the **Price** for the configured length.

4 Click the **Add** button to return to the **Paper** sheet.

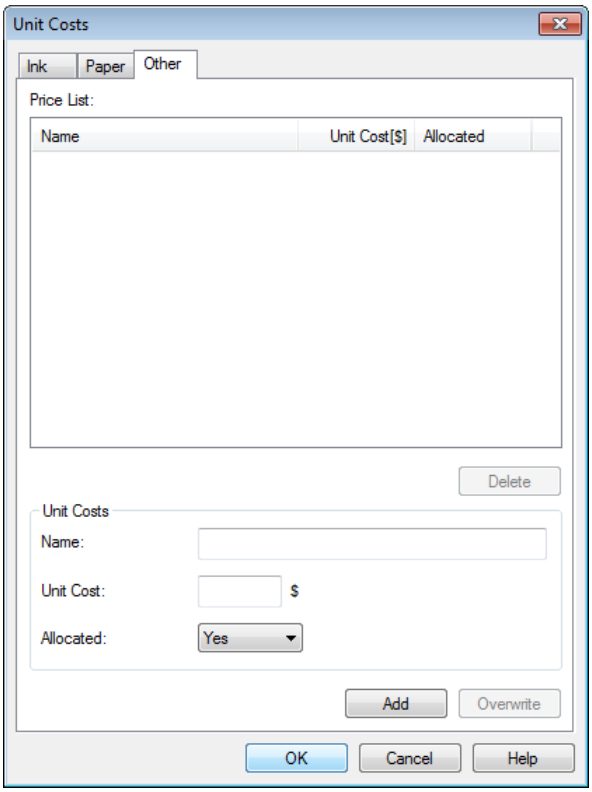
5 To change the unit cost of a media type that has already been configured, click the **Overwrite** button.

6 Click the **OK** button.

Important
- If you do not set the standard prices, you cannot set the price for each roll paper.
- If the **Roll Paper Width** is set to the same value as the **Width** of the paper configured in the standard prices, the cost is calculated using the price configured in the **Roll Paper Width Settings** dialog box.
- The settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper

Open the **Other** sheet. Use this sheet to set any price for items other than inks and paper.



1. Enter any name in the **Name** field.
2. Enter a value in **Unit Cost**.
3. Use **Allocated** to specify whether the costs are allocated as being incurred by the print job.
4. Click the **Add** button. To change the unit cost for a media type you have already set, click the **Overwrite** button.
5. Click the **OK** button.

Important

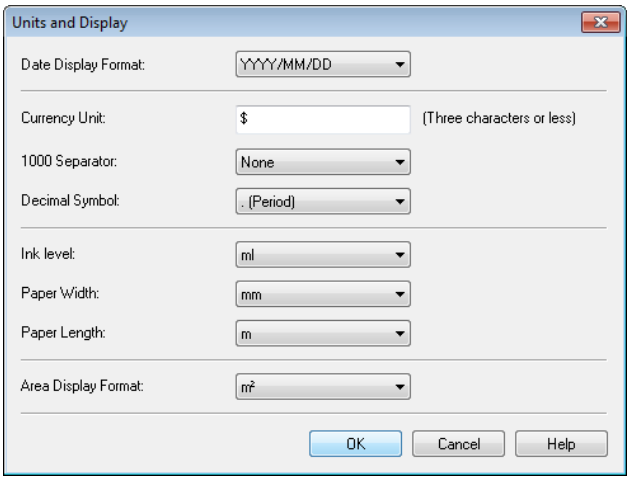
- Your settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

Note

- You can set unit costs for up to 5 items.

Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager

Select **Units and Display** in the **Settings** menu to open the **Units and Display** dialog box. Use this dialog box to configure the display settings.



- **Date Display Format**
  Use this option to select the display format for dates. "YYYY" indicates the year, "MM" the month and "DD" the day.
- **Currency Unit**
  Enter the currency unit. Enter a text string up to 3 characters long.
- **1000 Separator**
  Use this option to select the symbol used as a separator in numbers. The symbol is inserted every 3 digits.
- **Decimal Symbol**
  Use this option to select the symbol used as a decimal point.
- **Ink Consumed**
  Use this option to select the unit used for ink consumption.
- **Paper Width**
  Use this to select the unit used for paper width.
- **Paper Length**
  Use this to select the unit used for paper length.
- **Area Display Format**
  Use this to select the unit used for paper area.

Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals

This feature collects print job logs from the printer at regular intervals and saves the logs on your computer.

1. Select **Regular Data Acquisition** in the **Settings** menu.
2. Select **Acquire print job logs regularly**.
3. Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box.

Important

- Print job log collection is not performed when **Set./Adj. Menu** -> **System Setup** -> **Show Job Log** of the control panel is **Off**. However, even if **Show Job Log** is set to **Off**, regularly acquired jobs that already have been retrieved at that time are displayed.

Note
- Immediately after you configure Regular Data Acquisition, no print jobs are displayed. Wait a few moments and then select **Refresh** in the **View** menu to display the print jobs.
- A maximum of 10,000 records are saved in a print job log. If this number is exceeded, jobs are deleted from the log starting from the oldest record. To save old data, it is recommended that you export the data as a CSV file.
For details of how to export print job logs as CSV files, see "**Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File.**" →P.715

Canceling Regular Print Job Log Acquisition

You can use this procedure to cancel the regular acquisition of print job logs from printers.

1. Select **Regular Data Acquisition** in the **Settings** menu.
2. Uncheck the **Acquire print job logs regularly** option.
3. Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box.

Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs

The print job logs displayed by the Status Monitor Accounting Manager contain two types of job: Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs.
You can select whether to display Jobs on Printer or Regularly Acquired Jobs in the Listed Job Selection Area on the left side of the window.

- **Jobs on Printer**

  This shows a list of the print jobs currently held on printers.
  You can change the number of jobs displayed per page using the **Print Jobs Shown Per Page** setting in the **View** menu or the toolbar.
  You can skip to a particular page using the **Go to** option in the **View** menu or the toolbar.

  Note
  - For printers with built-in hard disks, you can view up to 500 print jobs per printer.
  - For printers without built-in hard disks, you can view up to 32 print jobs per printer. However, only 10 jobs can be displayed if the printer is switched off.

- **Regularly Acquired Jobs**

  This shows a list of regularly acquired print jobs.
  To view all the jobs in a set period, specify the period using **Calculate Total for Period** and then **Starting Date** (or **Starting Day of Week** or **Starting Month**) in the **View** menu or the toolbar.
  For example, to view monthly job logs starting on the 1st of each month, set **Calculate Total for Period** to **Monthly** and set **Starting Date** to **1**.

  Note
  - Up to 10,000 regularly acquired jobs are displayed for each printer.

Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File

You can export the collected print job data in the form of a CSV file by selecting **Export Job Cost Data** in the **File** menu.

Note
- You can also select **Export Job Cost Data** using the icon in the toolbar.

- **Selected Jobs**

  Exports the data for the selected print jobs in the job list as a CSV file.

  Note
  - You can select multiple jobs by holding down the Shift key or Ctrl key as you click the job names.

- **Listed Jobs**

  Exports the data for the print jobs currently displayed in the list as a CSV file.

Displaying Job Properties or Period Properties

You can display the **Job properties** dialog box or **Period Properties** dialog box to check detailed cost information and other items.
The **Job properties** dialog box displays detailed information about the selected job.
The **Period Properties** dialog box displays detailed information within the **Regularly Acquired Jobs** period.

- Displaying the **Job properties** Dialog Box

  Select a job from the job list, and then select **Show Job Properties** from **Job properties** in the **File** menu. You can also select multiple jobs at once.

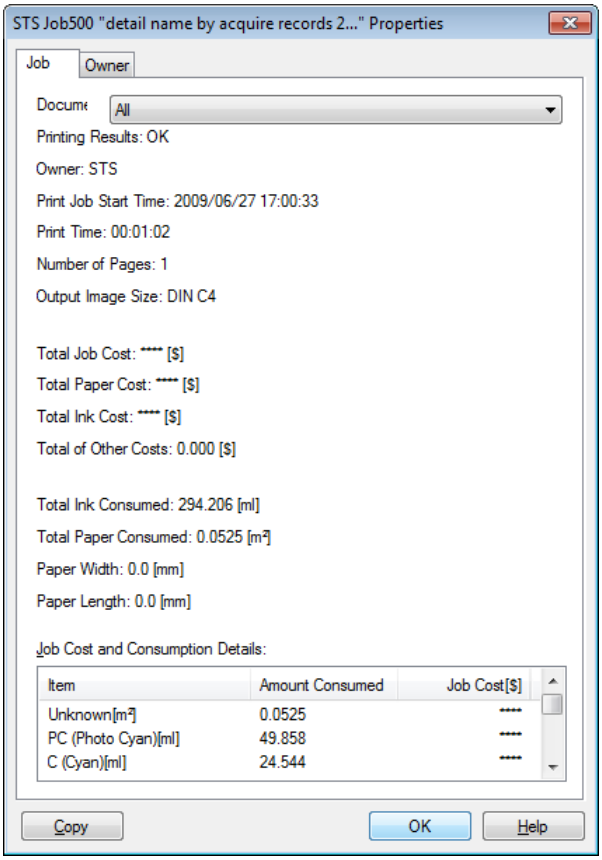
  Note
  - You can also display the dialog box by selecting a job, right-clicking it, and then selecting **Show Job Properties**, or by using the icon in the toolbar.

- Displaying the **Period Properties** Dialog Box

  Select a period from the **Regularly Acquired Jobs** list, and then select **Show Period Properties** from **Job properties** in the **File** menu. You can also select multiple periods at once.

  Note
  - You can also display the dialog box by selecting and right-clicking a period and then selecting **Show Period Properties**, or by using the icon in the toolbar.

- Components of the **Job properties** Dialog Box/**Period Properties** Dialog Box



- **Job** tab
  Displays detailed information about the selected job. You can display detailed information about each job by selecting the corresponding **Document Name**.
- **Owner** tab
  You can display detailed information about each owner by selecting the corresponding **Owner**.
- **Copy** button
  Click this button to copy the displayed text information to the clipboard.

Showing, Saving and Loading Selected Unit Cost Data

- **Show Unit Cost Data**

  Select **Show Unit Cost Data** in the **File** menu to open the **Unit Cost Data** dialog box. This lists the unit costs for items such as the selected ink and paper.

  You can copy text-based information in this dialog box to the clipboard by clicking the **Copy** button.

- **Save Unit Cost Data**

  Select a destination folder using **Save Unit Cost Data** in the **File** menu. The unit cost data for items such as the selected ink and paper is saved as a file.

- **Load Unit Cost Data**

  Selecting **Load Unit Cost Data** in the **File** menu loads saved unit cost data.

Showing the Total Amount of Ink and Paper Consumed

Select **Show Ink and Paper Consumed** in the **File** menu to open the **Show Ink and Paper Consumed** dialog box. This lists the total amounts of ink and paper consumed by the printer so far.
You can copy text-based information in this dialog box to the clipboard by clicking the **Copy** button.

Note

- Up to 7 types of media are listed in order of the amount consumed. The total consumption for other media types is shown as **Other**.

Basic Print Job Operations

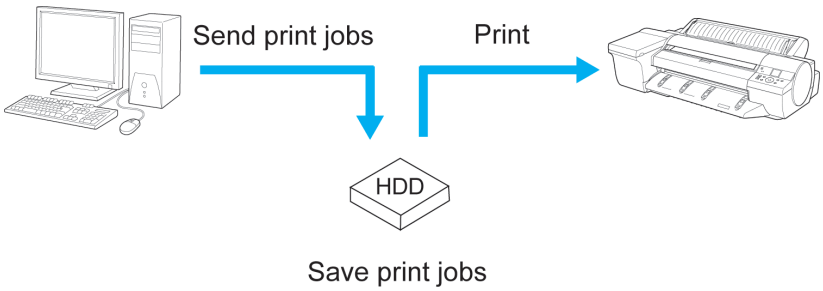
Using the Printer Hard Disk 719

Saving Print Jobs on the Printer Hard Disk 721
Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs) 724
Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold) 726

Printing Saved Jobs 728
Deleting Saved Jobs 732
Moving Saved Jobs 736

Using the Printer Hard Disk

The printer can save print jobs on the built-in hard disk.
Using print jobs stored on the printer enables you to print the jobs again as needed without using a computer.



Save print jobs

Saving print jobs offers the following benefits.

- Save the time spent using a computer

  When you send a print job to the printer, you can save it on the printer after printing or simply save it on the printer without printing it yet. Saved print jobs can be printed in the required quantity later without the need to use a computer again.

- Simplify reprinting, if any errors occur

  If errors occur in the middle of printing (as when paper runs out), you can resume printing after clearing the error without resending the print job from a computer.

- Streamline printing work

  Without using a computer, you can select print jobs and print in the desired quantity. You can also select multiple print jobs to print during the same period. This enables unattended operation at night, for example.

Output Method

To save print jobs on the printer's hard disk, configure the printer driver.
In Windows, this is set using the **Output Method** dialog box.
In Mac OS, this is set using the **Additional Settings** pane.

- **Print**

  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk after printing.

- **Save in mail box**

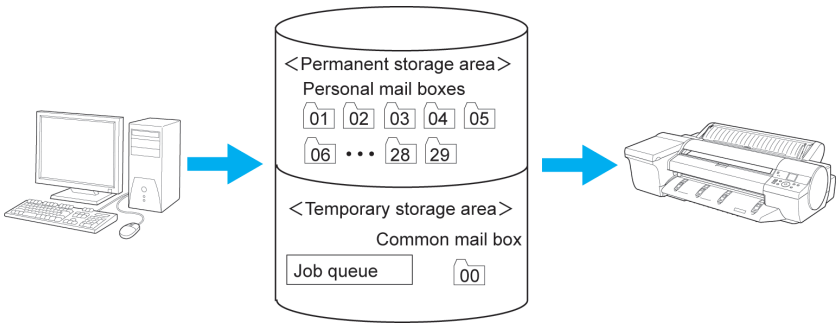
  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.

- **Print after reception is complete**

  This option is available in combination with **Print**. You can prevent degradation of print quality that occurs when receiving a print job is interrupted and printing is aborted in the middle.

Storage destination

The storage area on the printer's hard disk is divided into a temporary storage area and a permanent storage area. The temporary storage area stores print jobs in the job queue or shared mailbox. The permanent storage area stores jobs in personal boxes.



- Job queue

  The job queue refers to print jobs that are being processed by the printer (saved, received, prepared for processing, printed, deleted, or held). Up to 64 jobs can be stored in the temporary storage area.

  When the job queue is full, additional jobs sent from a computer are treated as "standby" jobs, to be processed when possible.

  However, if all queued jobs are simply being held, the oldest job is deleted and the print job sent from the computer is processed.

- Shared mailbox

  Jobs for which you have specified **Print** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS) are saved in the shared mailbox and classified as saved jobs.

  There is one shared mailbox, numbered **00**. A password cannot be set for the shared mailbox.

  Up to 100 print jobs can be saved here, but they will be deleted one after another starting with the oldest job in the following situations.

  - If there are more than 100 jobs queued and saved in the shared mailbox combined
  - If no more temporary storage space is available when jobs for which you have selected **Print** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS) are received
  - If there is not enough space in the temporary or permanent storage area when jobs for which you have selected **Save in mail box** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS) are received

- Personal boxes

  Jobs are classified as saved jobs and saved in personal boxes in the following situations.

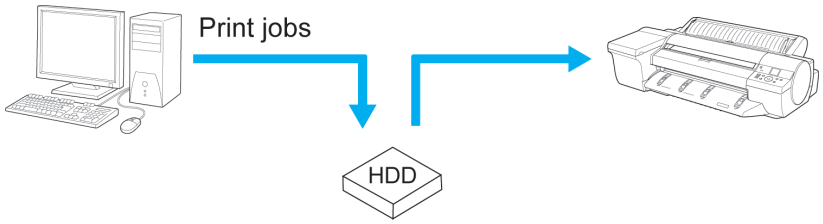
  - When a saved job stored in the shared mailbox is moved to a personal box
  - When you have selected **Save in mail box** as the option in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS)

  There are 29 personal boxes, numbered **01** to **29**. You can specify a name and password for each personal box.

  Up to 100 print jobs can be saved in all personal boxes combined.

Saving Print Jobs on the Printer Hard Disk

To save print jobs on the printer's hard disk, configure the printer driver.



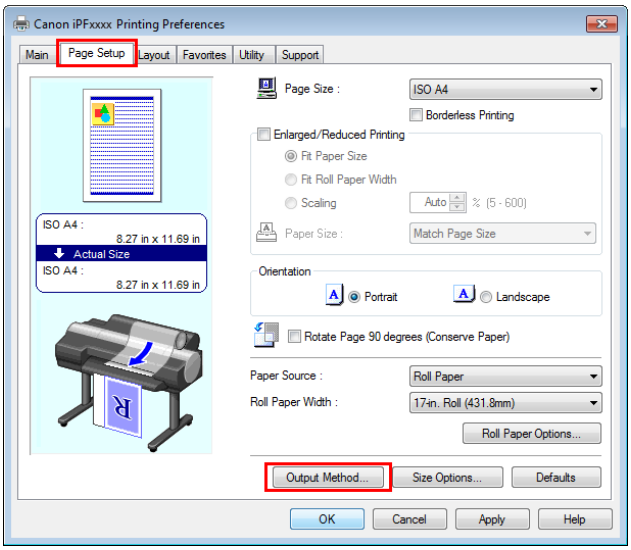
Note

- Printing from the following software also enables you to save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.
  Windows
  - **Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional** ➔P.238

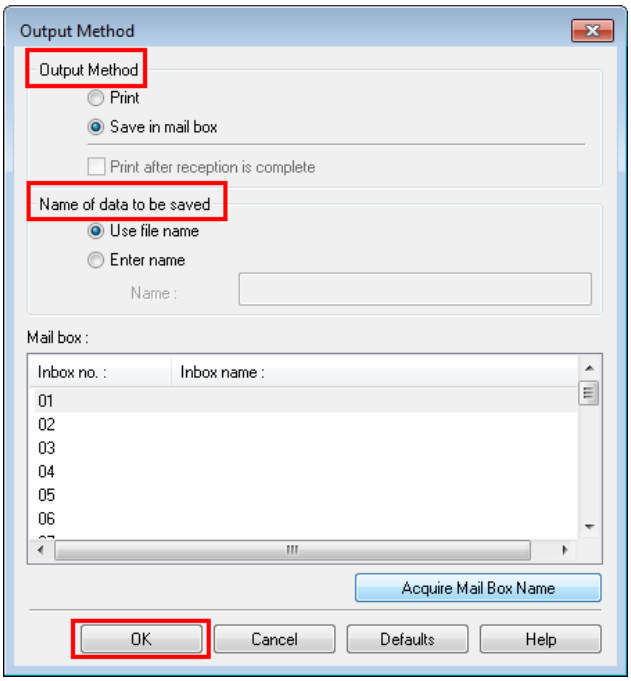
  Mac OS
  - **Print Plug-In for Photoshop / Digital Photo Professional** ➔P.430

Configuring the Printer Driver in Windows

1 Access the **Page Setup** sheet.



2 Click **Output Method** to display the **Output Method** dialog box.



3 Make your selection in **Output Method**.

- **Print**

  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk after printing.

- **Save in mail box**

  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.

  If you choose **Save in mail box**, also specify the destination personal box in the **Mail box** list.

- **Print after reception is complete**

  This option is available in combination with **Print**. You can prevent degradation of print quality that occurs when receiving a print job is interrupted and printing is aborted in the middle.

Note

- Click **Acquire Mail Box Name** to display personal box names in the **Mail box** list, as acquired from the printer.

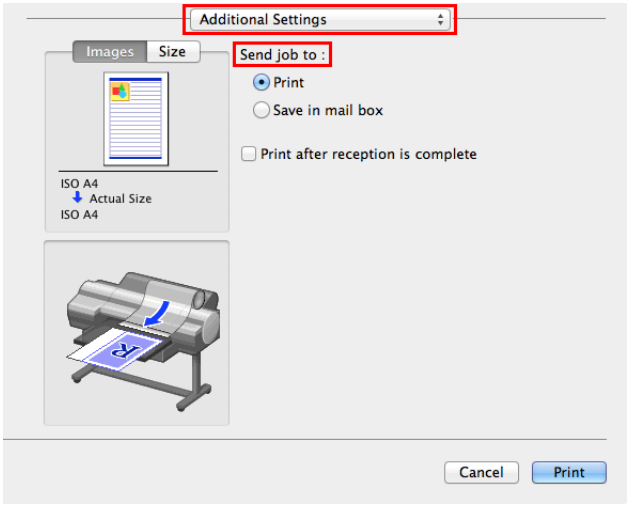
4 In **Name of data to be saved**, specify how to name saved print jobs.

- To use the file name, choose **Use file name**.
- Otherwise choose **Enter name** and enter a name in **Name**.

5 Click **OK** to close the **Output Method** dialog box.

Configuring the printer driver in Mac OS

1 Access the **Additional Settings** pane.



2 Make your selection in **Send job to**.

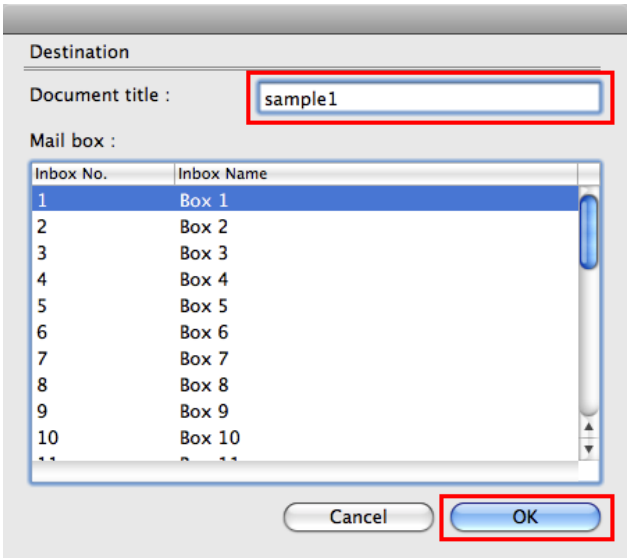
- **Print**

  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk after printing.

- **Save in mail box**

  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.

  The **Destination** dialog box is displayed if you select **Save in mail box**. Here, specify the name and personal box number for saved print jobs.



1. In **Document title**, enter a name to identify saved print jobs.

   Note
   - If printed from **Free Layout** or **Preview**, the **Document title** is saved under the name imagePROGRAF.

2. Select the personal box number in the **Mail box** list.
3. Click **OK** to close the **Destination** dialog box.

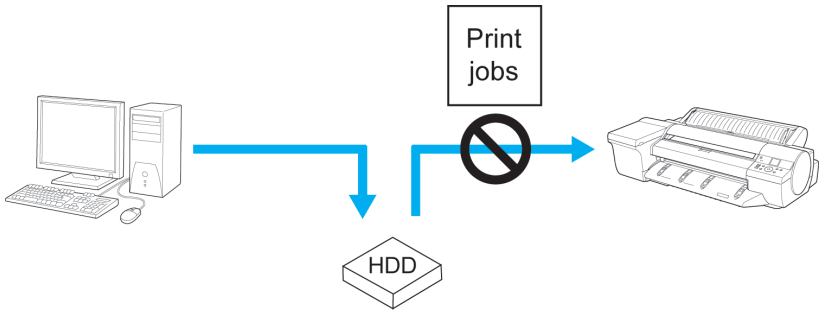
- **Print after reception is complete**

  This option is available in combination with **Print**. You can prevent degradation of print quality that occurs when receiving a print job is interrupted and printing is aborted in the middle.

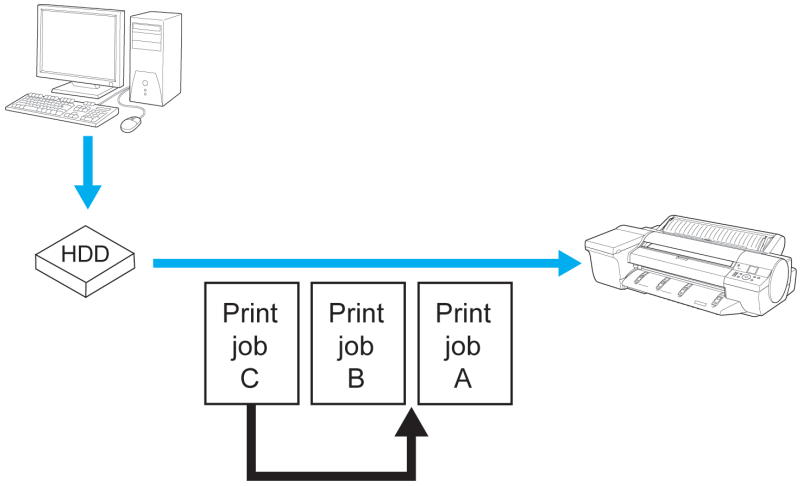
Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs)

Print jobs being processed by the printer are collectively called the job queue. You can delete or preempt jobs in the job queue as needed.
These operations are available from the Control Panel or in RemoteUI, **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

- Delete
  Note that only jobs that are not currently being deleted can be deleted from the job queue.



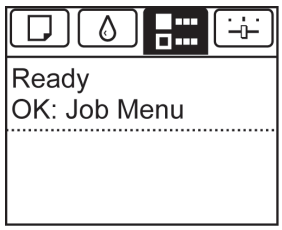
- Preempting other jobs
  You can preempt other jobs by printing jobs that are currently being received or prepared for processing first.



Note
- For information on managing jobs being held, see "**Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold)**." →P.726

Using the Control Panel

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3 Manage the job queue as needed.

- Deleting jobs

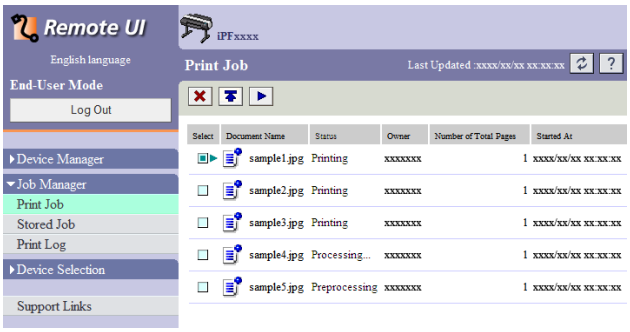
1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job**, and then press the **OK** button.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the print job to delete, and then press the **OK** button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the **OK** button.

- Preempting other jobs

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job**, and then press the **OK** button.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the job to print first, and then press the **OK** button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Preempt Jobs**, and then press the **OK** button.

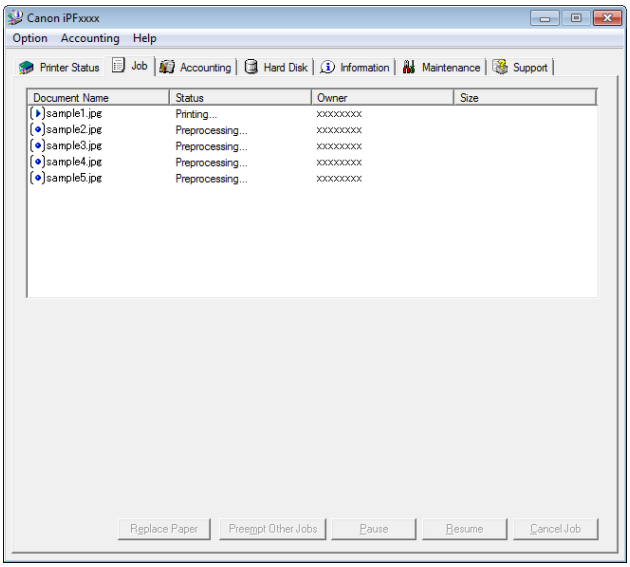
Using RemoteUI

Manage jobs as needed on the **Print Job** page. For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.



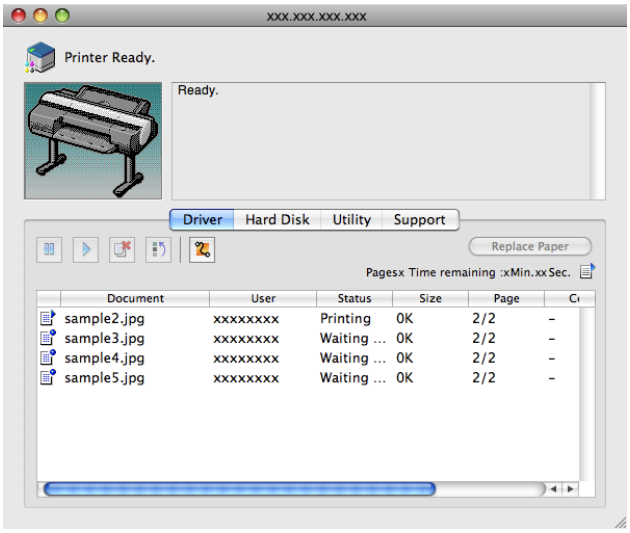
Using **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** (Windows)

Manage jobs as needed on the **Job** sheet. For details, refer to the **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** help file.



Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

Manage jobs as needed on the **Driver** sheet. For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.



Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold)

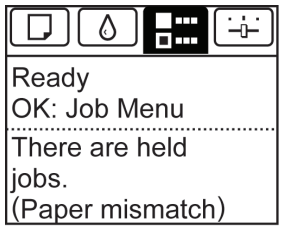
If the type or size of paper loaded does not match the settings in the print job received when you have set **Detect Mismatch** to **Hold Job** in the Control Panel menu, the print job is held on the printer as a pending job in the job queue. Manage held jobs such as these as follows.
These operations are available from the Control Panel or in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Note

- As long as you do not manage held jobs from the Control Panel, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor, they will remain in the job queue. In this case, the printer processes the next job in the queue without pausing.
- To print held jobs, replace the loaded paper with the paper specified in the print job.
  (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") →P.505
  (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") →P.529

Using the Control Panel

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ( ).
"**There are held jobs.**" is displayed if jobs are being held.



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Job Menu** menu is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job**, and then press the **OK** button.

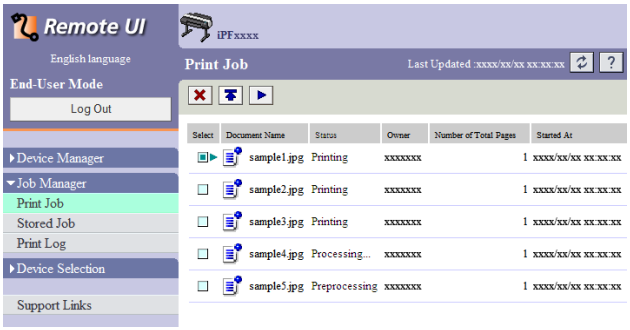
4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the print job to manage, and then press the **OK** button.
Held jobs are labeled with an icon.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Anyway** or **Delete**, and then press the **OK** button.

- If you choose **Print Anyway**
  Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes** or **No**, and then press the **OK** button.
- If you choose **Delete**
  Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes** or **No**, and then press the **OK** button.

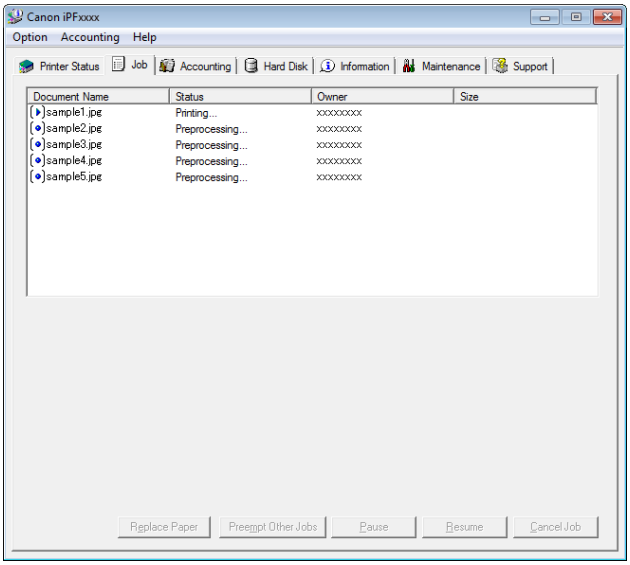
Using RemoteUI

Manage jobs as needed on the **Print Job** page. For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.



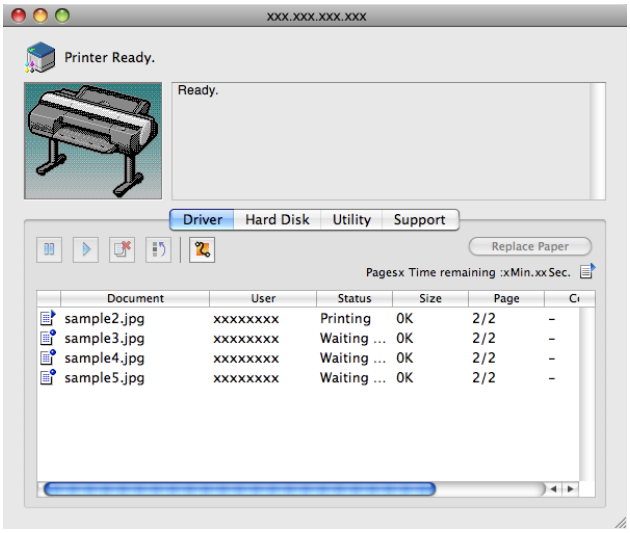
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

Manage jobs as needed on the **Job** sheet. For details, see **"Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor."** →P.701



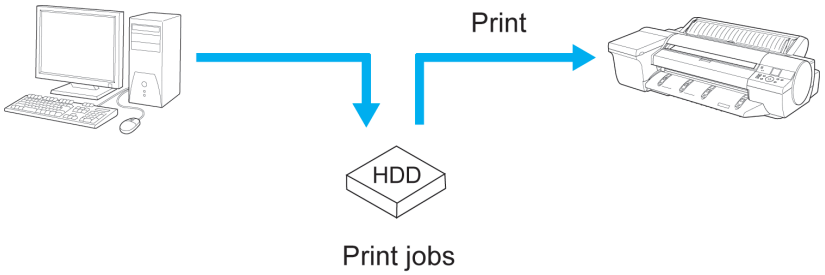
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

Manage jobs as needed on the **Driver** sheet. For details, see "**Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.**" ➔P.704



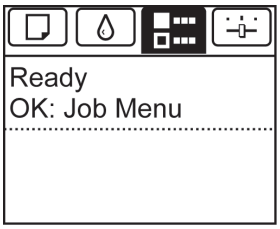
Printing Saved Jobs

Print saved print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk as follows.
These operations are available from the Control Panel or in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.



Using the Control Panel

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ( ).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Job Menu** menu is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00–29), and then press the **OK** button.

Note
- Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the **OK** button.

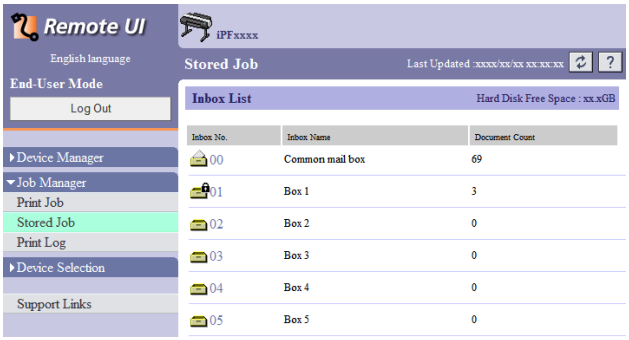
6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job, and then press the **OK** button.

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

8 Specify the number of copies and press the **OK** button.

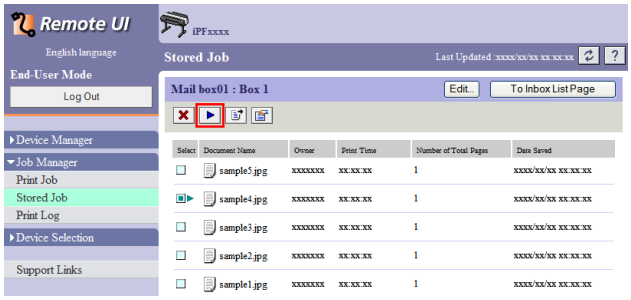
Using RemoteUI

1 On the **Stored Job** page, choose the box.

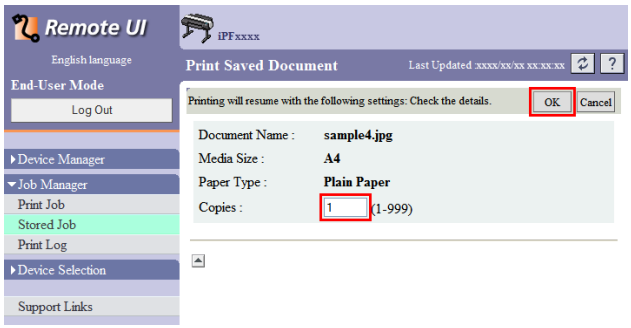


Note
- Enter a password if one has been set.

2 Select the print job and click **Resume**.



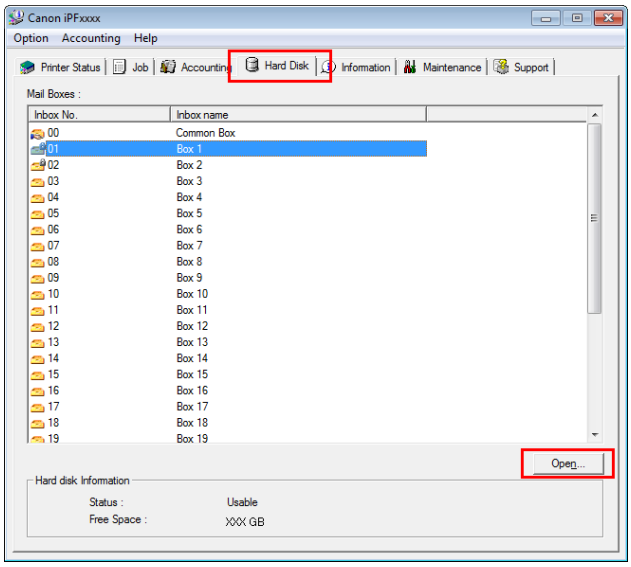
3 On the **Print Saved Document** page, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

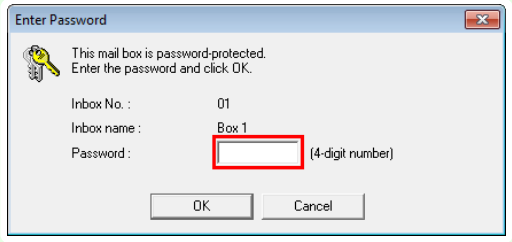
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

1 On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.

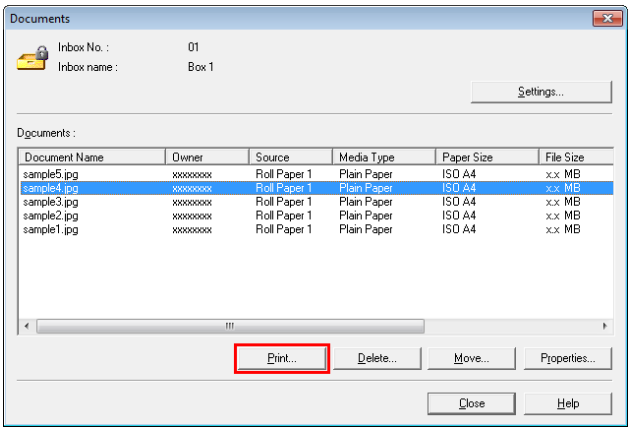


Note

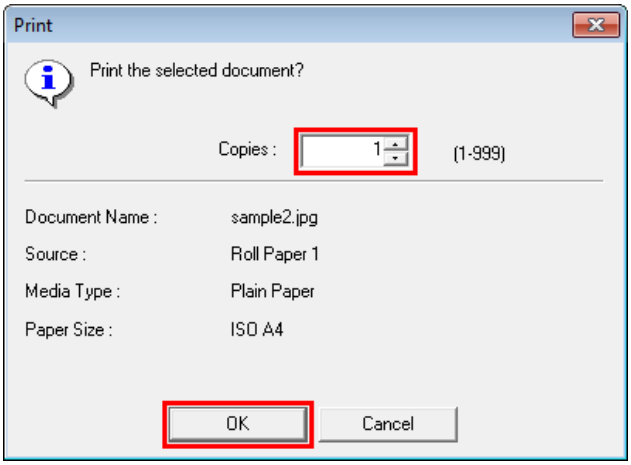
- Enter a password if one has been set.



2 In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Print**.



3 In the **Print** dialog box, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.



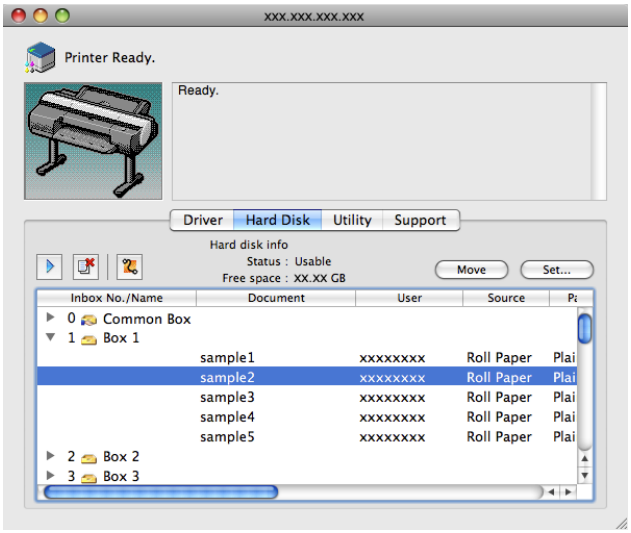
Note

- The printing time initially indicates how long it took to finish printing one copy during the previous print job. If you change the value in **Copies**, the printing time indicates the time it took to print one copy during the previous print job multiplied by the number of copies.

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

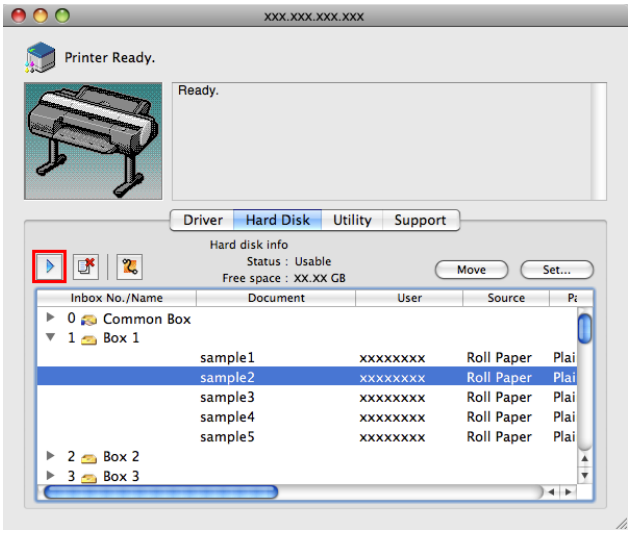
1 On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ by **Inbox No./Name**.



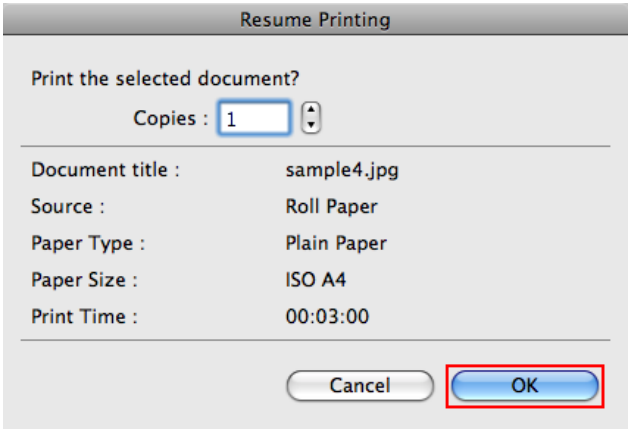
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

2 Select the saved job and click **Resume Printing**.



3 In the **Resume Printing** dialog box, enter the quantity to print and click **OK**.



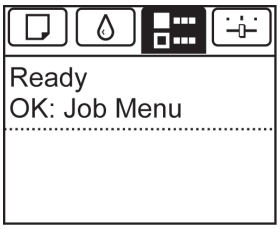
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Deleting Saved Jobs

Delete saved print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk as follows.
This operation is available from the Control Panel, in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using the Control Panel

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00–29), and then press the **OK** button.

Note
- Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the **OK** button.

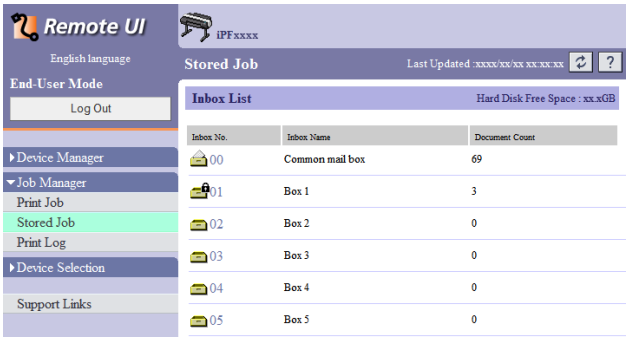
6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job, and then press the **OK** button.

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the **OK** button.

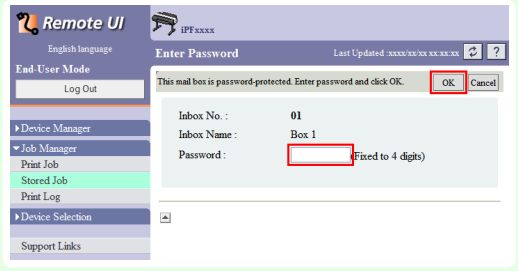
8 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

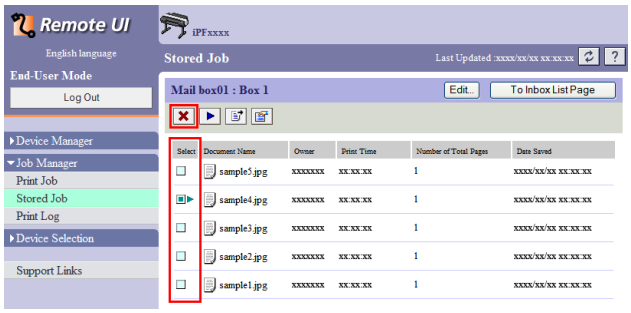
1 On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.



Note
- Enter a password if one has been set.



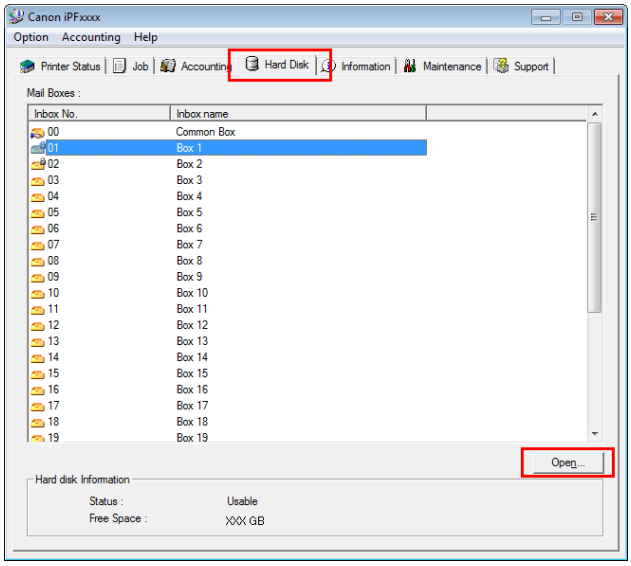
2 Select the print job and click **Delete**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

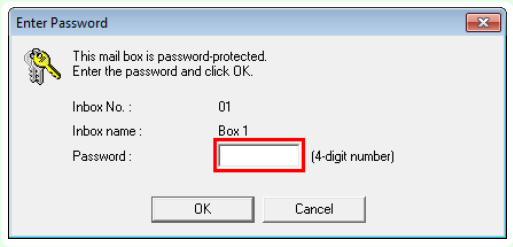
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

1 On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.

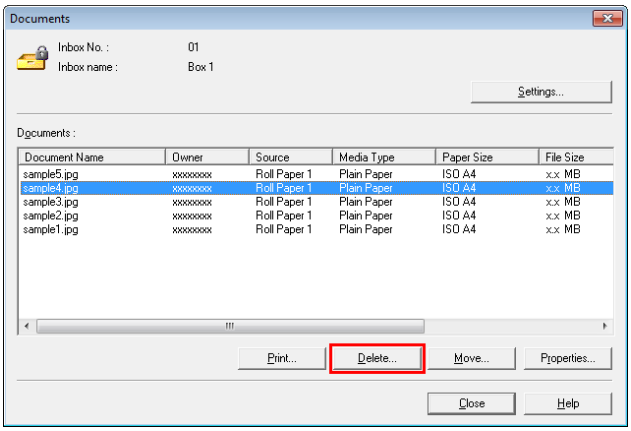


Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.



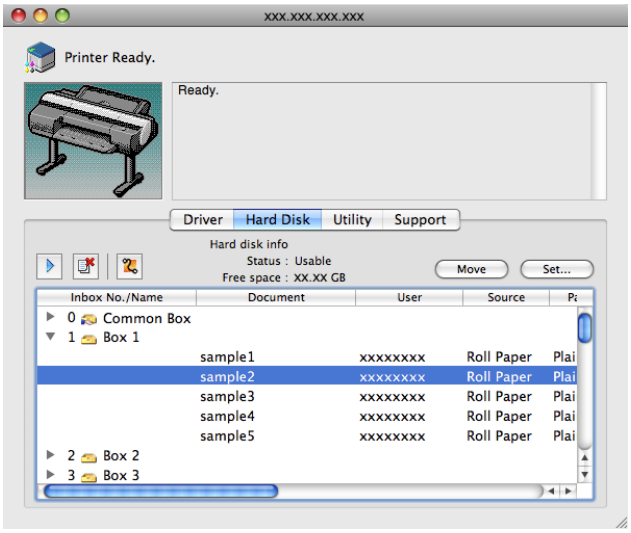
2 In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Delete**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

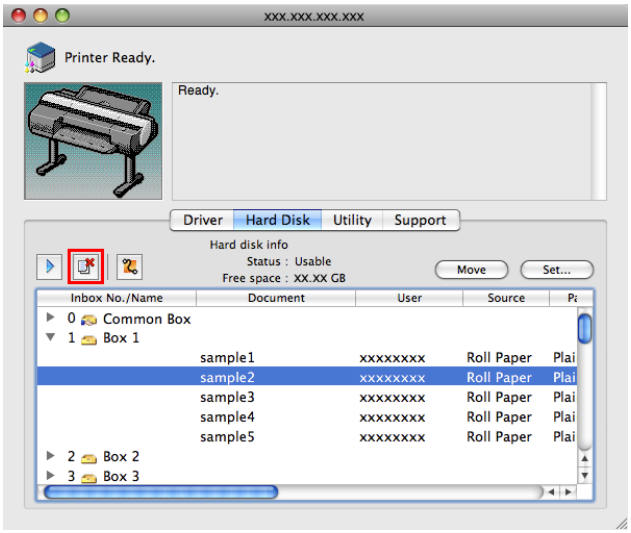
1 In the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ next to **Inbox No./ Name**.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set. The password is a four-digit number.

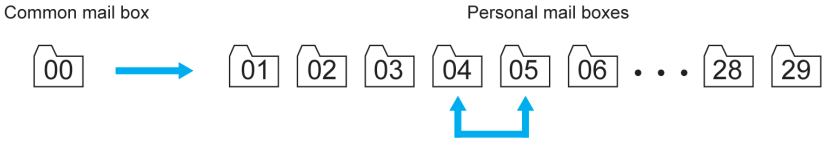
2 Select the print job and click the **Delete** button.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Moving Saved Jobs

Print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be moved from the current box to another box as follows. However, jobs saved in personal boxes cannot be moved to the shared mailbox.
This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

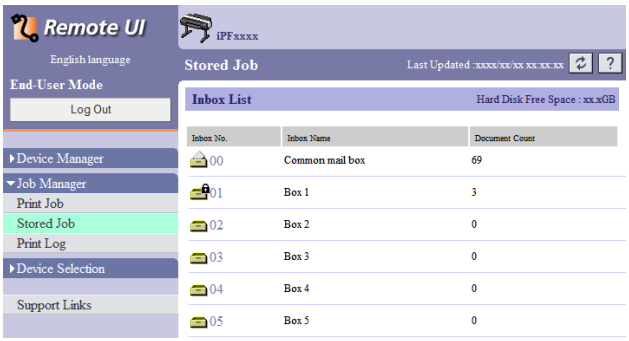


Important

- Jobs stored in the shared mailbox may be automatically deleted under some conditions. To prevent jobs from being deleted, move them from the shared mailbox to personal boxes. (See "**Using the Printer Hard Disk**.") ➔P.719

Using RemoteUI

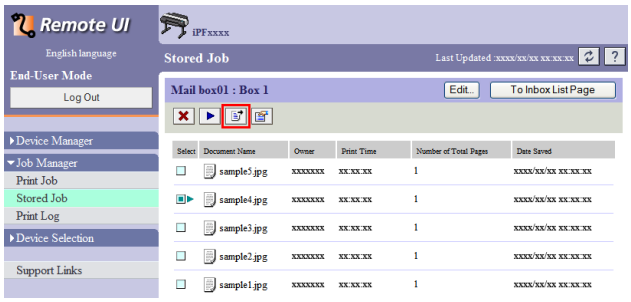
1 On the **Stored Job** page, choose the box.



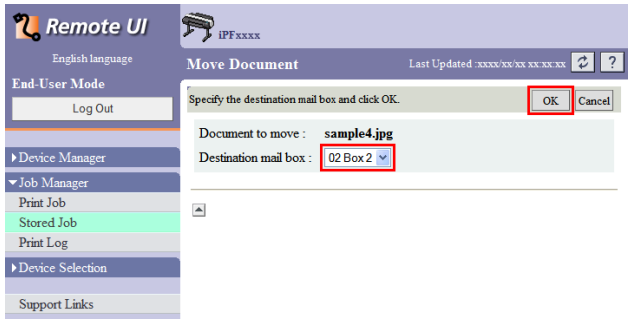
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2 Select the print job and click **Move Document**.



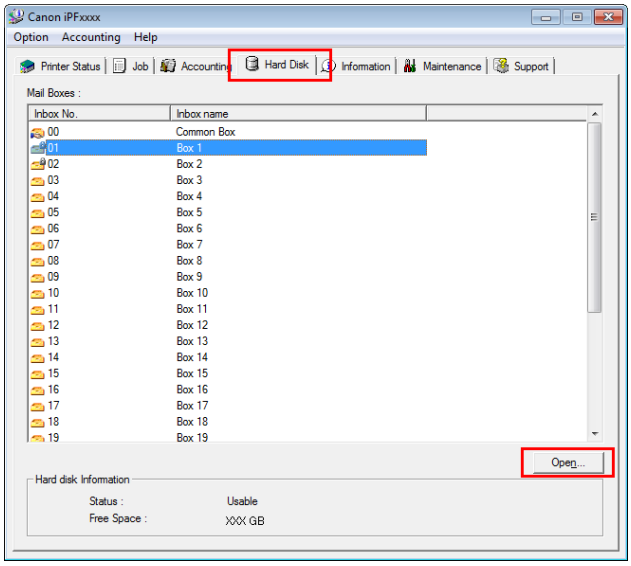
3 On the **Move Document** page, select the name or number of the destination personal box in the **Destination mail box** list and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

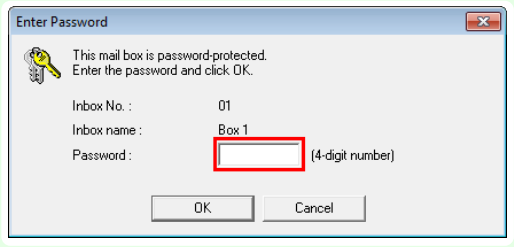
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1 On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.

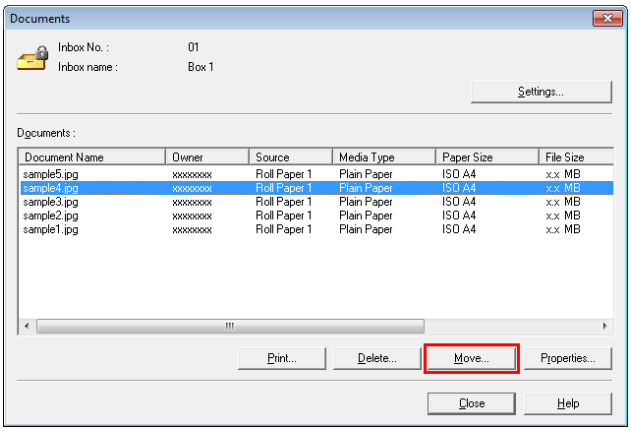


Note

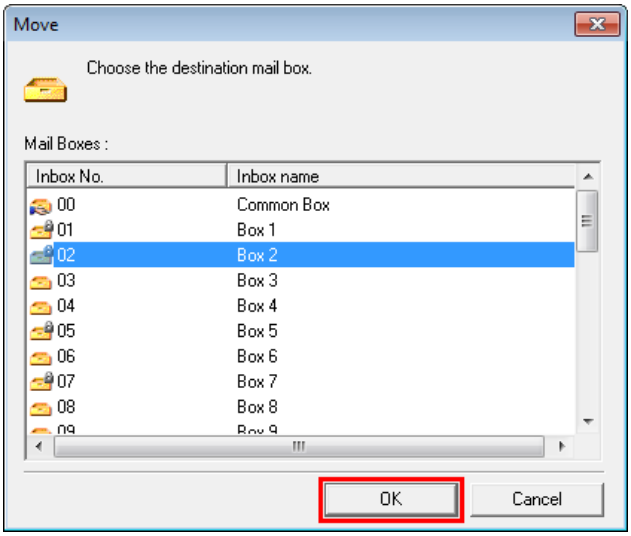
- Enter a password if one has been set.



2 In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Move**.



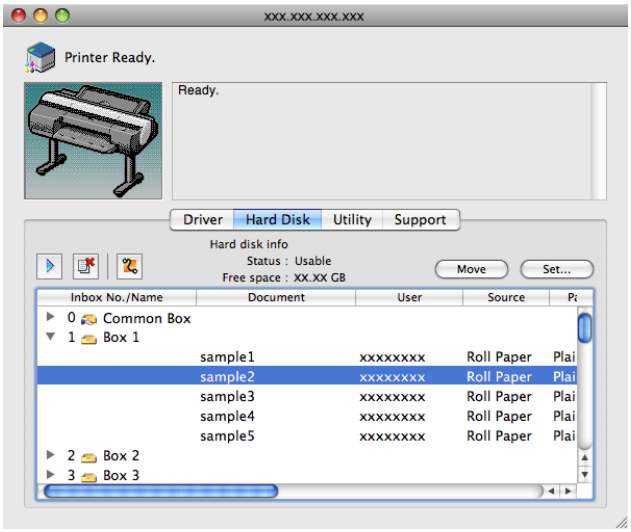
3 In the **Move** dialog box, select the destination personal box and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

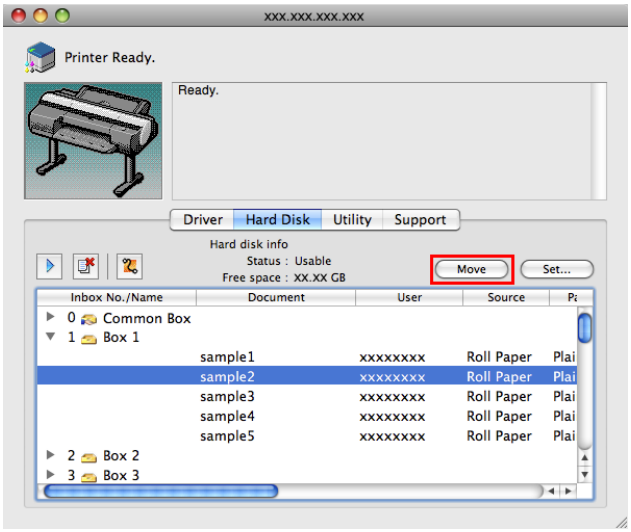
1 In the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ next to **Inbox No./ Name**.



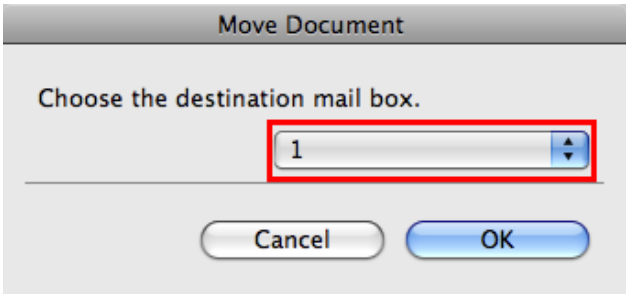
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set. The password is a four-digit number.

2 Select the print job and click **Move**.



3 In the **Move Document** dialog box, select the destination personal box and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Advanced Print Job Operations

Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver 741
Printing Without Saving Jobs in the Common Box 742

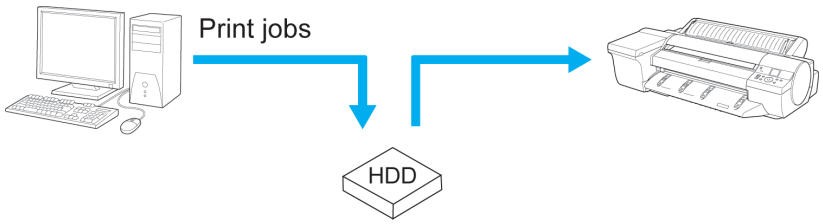
Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes 743
Naming Personal Boxes 746

Displaying a List of Saved Jobs 749
Printing a List of Saved Jobs 752
Displaying Details of Saved Jobs 753
Renaming Saved Jobs 756

➔ Printer Hard Disk Operations 657
➔ Checking the Free Hard Disk Space 658

Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver

To save print jobs sent from software or systems other than the printer driver or applications provided with the printer, complete the **Output Method** and **Print After Recv** settings in the Control Panel menu.



Note

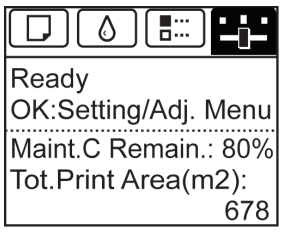
- Contact the software or system developer for information about support for this printer function.

Specifying **Output Method**

In **Output Method**, specify how to manage jobs, regarding printing and saving them.

- **Print**
  Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed. (This is the default format.)
- **Print (Auto Del)**
  Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
- **Save: Box 01** (Here, the number represents a box number)
  Save print jobs on the printer.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Output Method**, and then press the **OK** button.

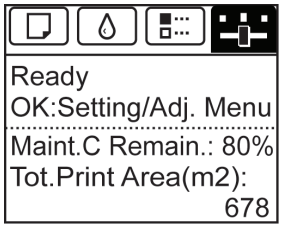
5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, **Print (Auto Del)**, or **Save: Box 01**.
Follow these steps only when you select **Save: Box 01**.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box, and then press the **OK** button.

Specify **Print After Recv**

To save print jobs on the hard disk before printing, specify **Print After Recv**.
Printing will start when **Print After Recv** is set to **On**, even if you have selected **Save: Box 01** in **Output Method**.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

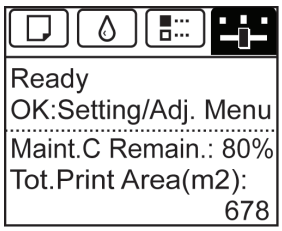
4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print After Recv**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On** or **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

Printing Without Saving Jobs in the Common Box

Jobs sent from a computer for which you have selected **Print** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS) in the printer driver are saved in the shared mailbox. (See "**Using the Printer Hard Disk.**") ➔P.719
When **Common Box Set.** is **Print (Auto Del)** in the Control Panel menu, print jobs for which you have selected **Print** in the **Output Method** dialog box of the printer driver are deleted from the shared mailbox after printing.
Use this function when printing highly confidential documents.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

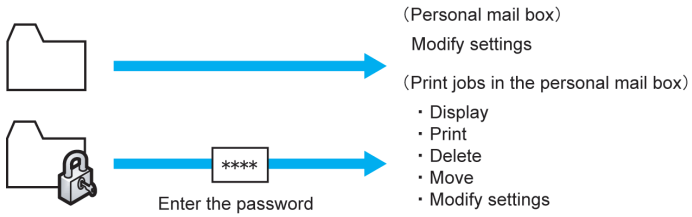
4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Common Box Set.**, and then press the **OK** button.

Note
- If a password has been set on the printer, the **Logon** screen is displayed.
To change the setting, select **Administrator** and press the **OK** button.
When the **Admin.Pswd** screen is displayed, enter the password and press the **OK** button to proceed to the next step.
If you select **User** and press the **OK** button, you can check settings values but cannot change them.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print (Auto Del)**, and then press the **OK** button.

Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes

For greater security, you can specify a password for personal boxes. After you set a password, it will be required to modify the personal box settings, as well as to display, print, delete, move, and modify jobs saved in the personal box. This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

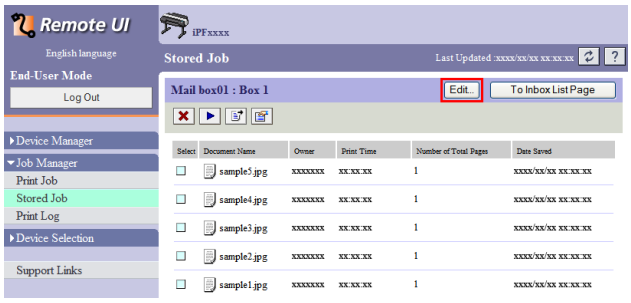


Note
- By default, no passwords are set for personal boxes.
- A password cannot be set for the shared mailbox.
- Enter a four-digit number as the password, in the range 0001–9999.
- Even if you have set passwords, they are not required to access personal boxes in Administrator Mode in RemoteUI.

Using RemoteUI

1 On the **Stored Job** page, choose the personal box.

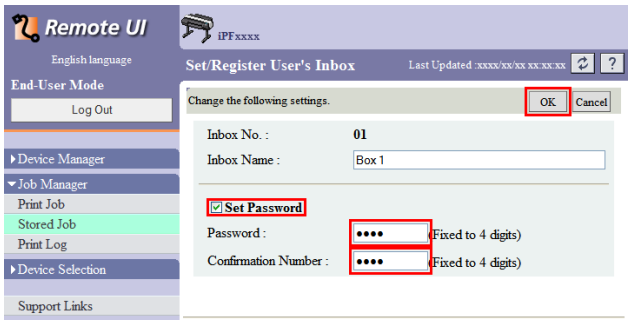
2 Click **Edit**.



3 In the **Set/Register User's Inbox** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.

- **Set Password**
Select the check box.
- **Password**
Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001–9999.)
- **Confirmation Number**

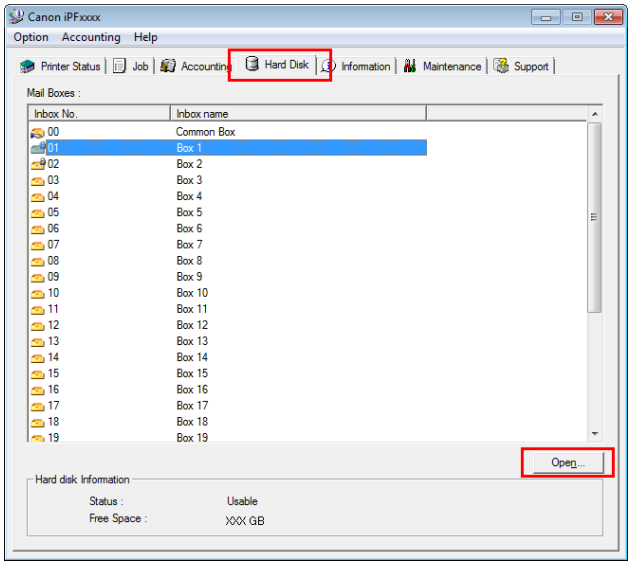
Re-enter the password to confirm it.



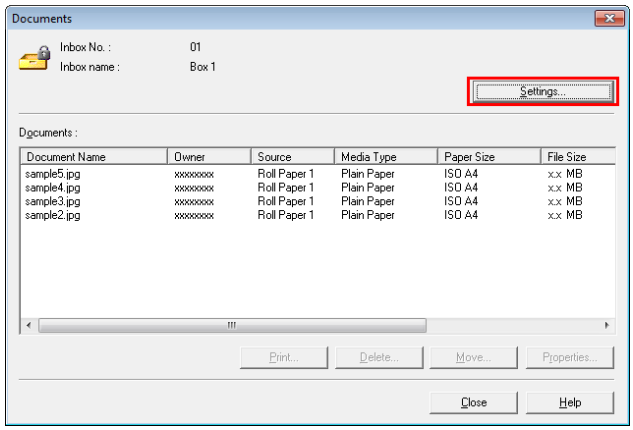
For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1 On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select the personal box and click **Open**.



2 In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.

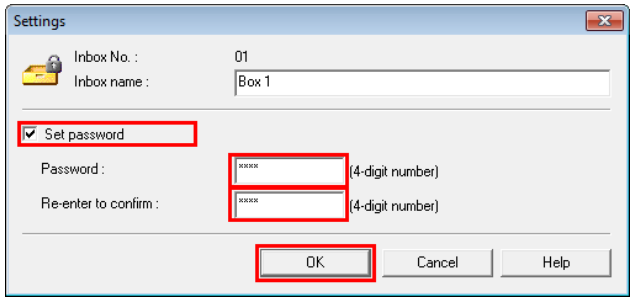


3 In the **Settings** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.

- **Set password**
  Select the check box.
- **Password**

Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001–9999.)

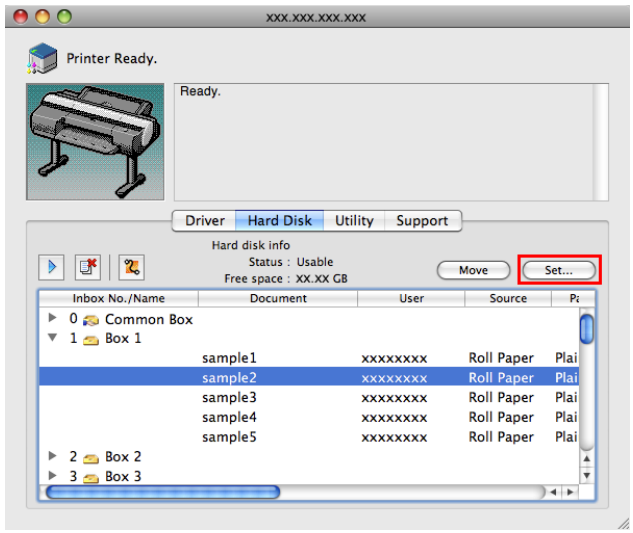
- **Re-enter to confirm**
  Re-enter the password to confirm it.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

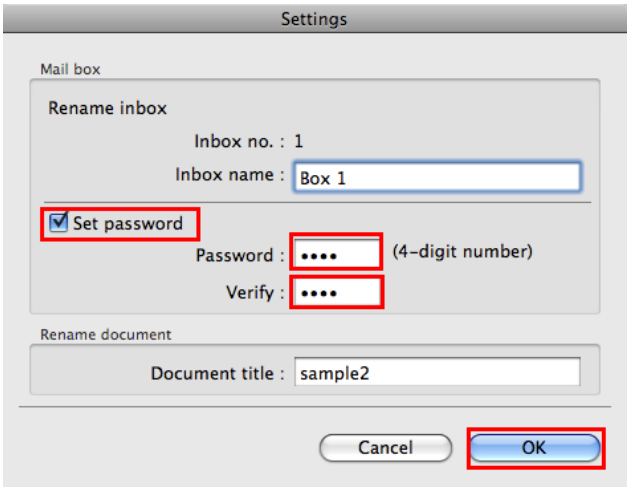
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1 On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ by **Inbox No./Name**. Select a saved job in the list and click **Set**.



2 In the **Settings** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.

- **Set password**
  Select the check box.
- **Password**
  Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001–9999.)
- **Verify**
  Re-enter the password to confirm it.



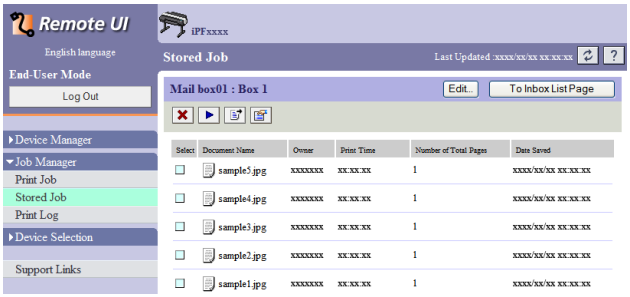
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Naming Personal Boxes

For easier identification, you can assign names to personal boxes.
This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

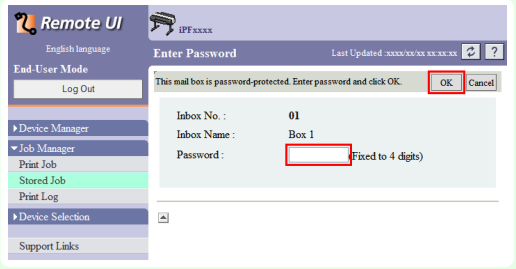
Using RemoteUI

1 On the **Stored Job** page, choose the personal box.

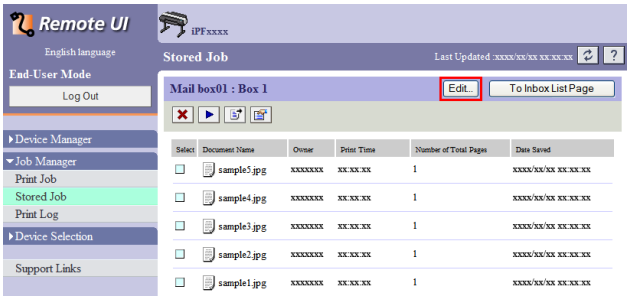


Note

- Enter a password if one has been set for the personal box.

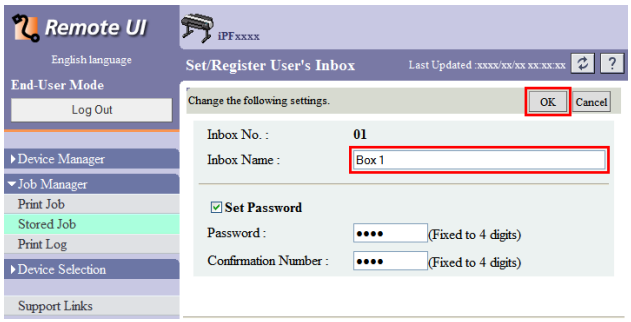


2 Click **Edit**.



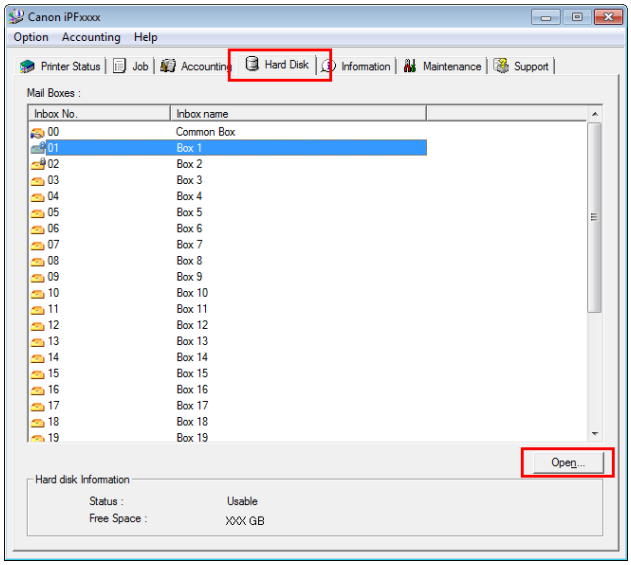
3 In the **Set/Register User's Inbox** dialog box, enter the name in **Inbox Name** and click **OK**.

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.



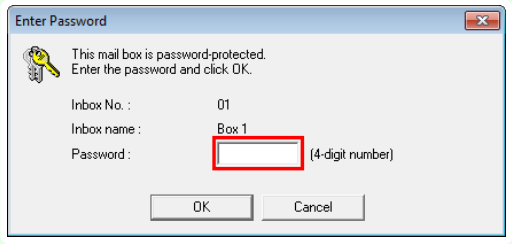
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1 On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select the personal box and click **Open**.

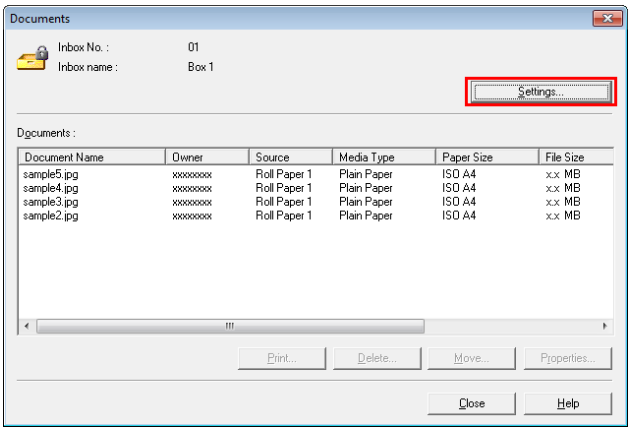


Note

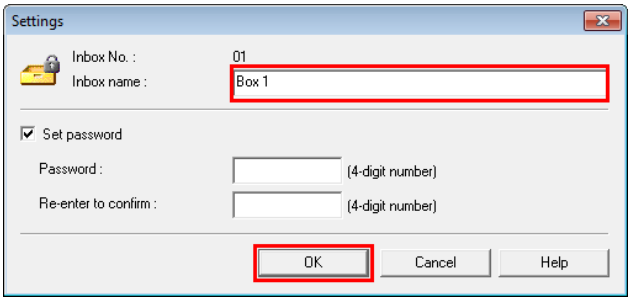
- Enter a password if one has been set for the personal box.



2 In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.



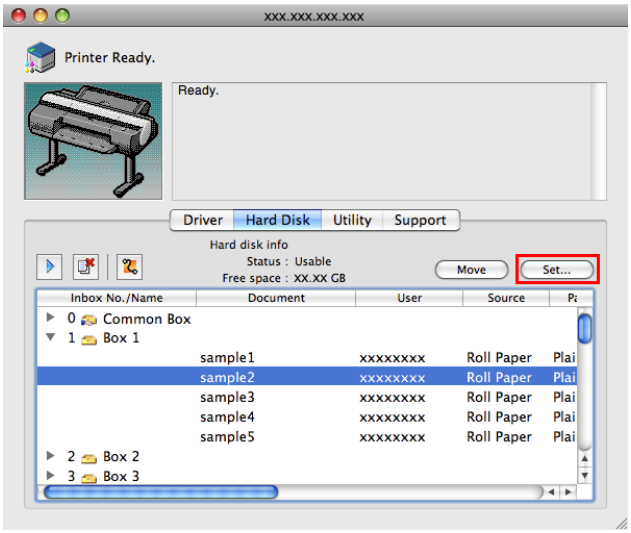
3 In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the name and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

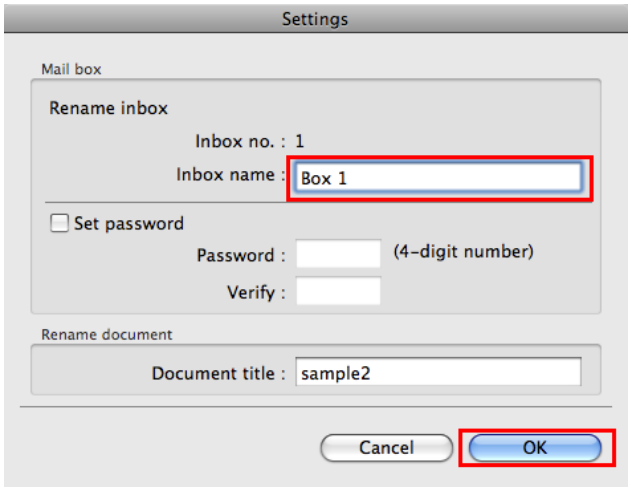
1 In the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ next to **Inbox No./ Name**. Select a saved job in the list and click **Set**.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

2 In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the name and click **OK**.



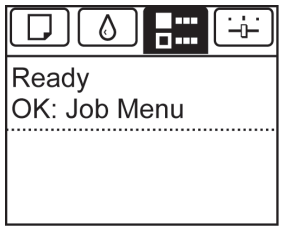
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Displaying a List of Saved Jobs

Print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be listed by box as follows.
These operations are available from the Control Panel or in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using the Control Panel

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ( ).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00–29), and then press the **OK** button.

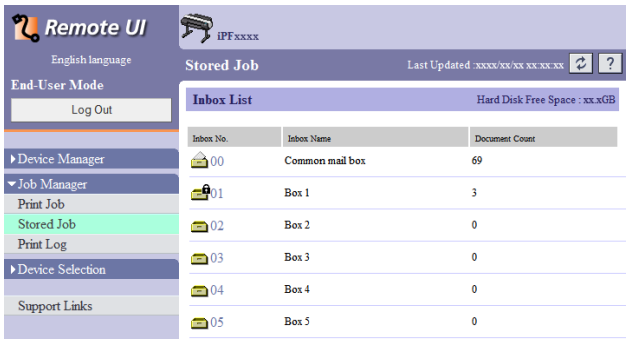
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the **OK** button.

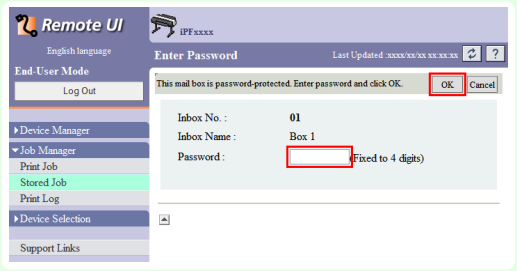
Using RemoteUI

On the **Stored Job** page, choose the box.

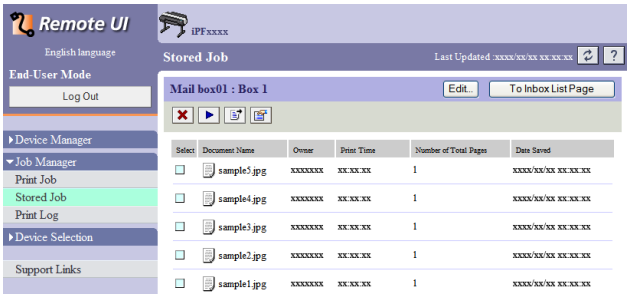


Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.



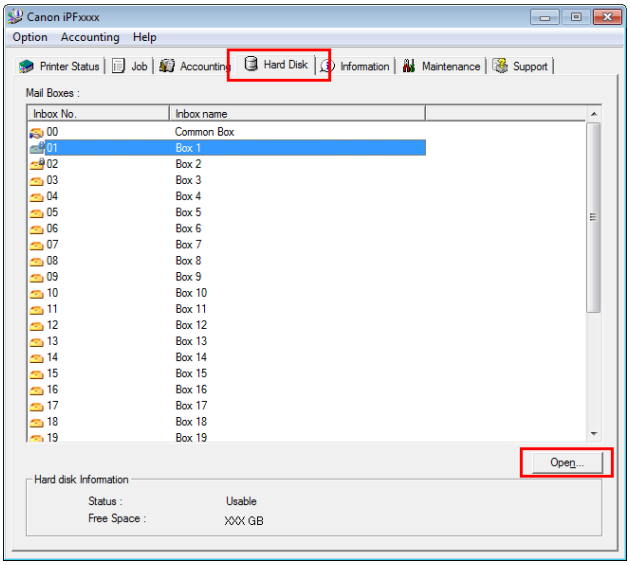
Jobs saved in the box are listed.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

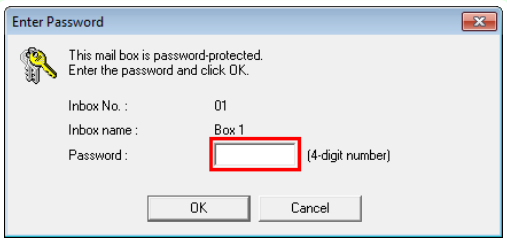
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.

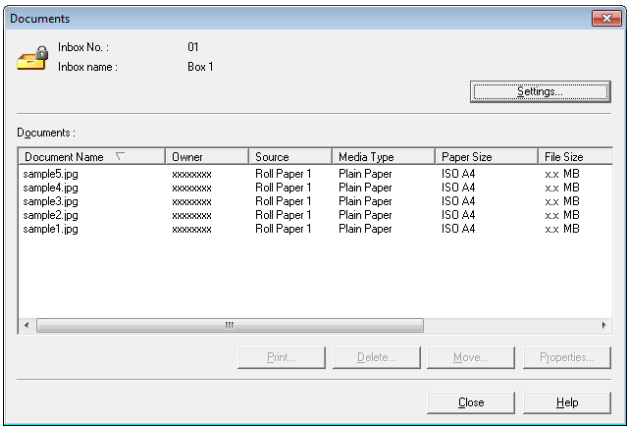


Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.



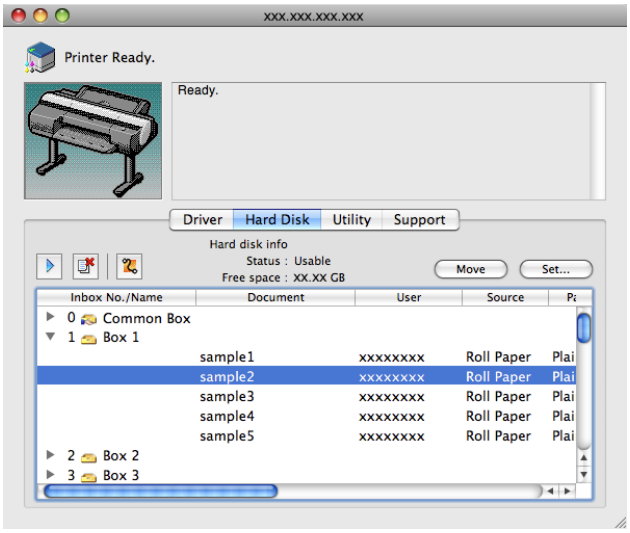
Jobs saved in that box are displayed in the **Documents** dialog box.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ by **Inbox No./Name**.



Note

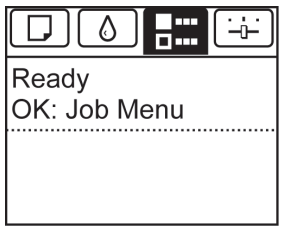
- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Printing a List of Saved Jobs

The list of print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be printed by box as follows.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ( ).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00–29), and then press the **OK** button.

Note
- Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job List**, and then press the **OK** button.

Displaying Details of Saved Jobs

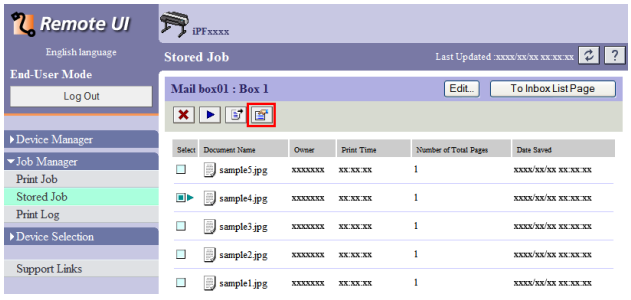
Details of print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be displayed as follows.
This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using RemoteUI

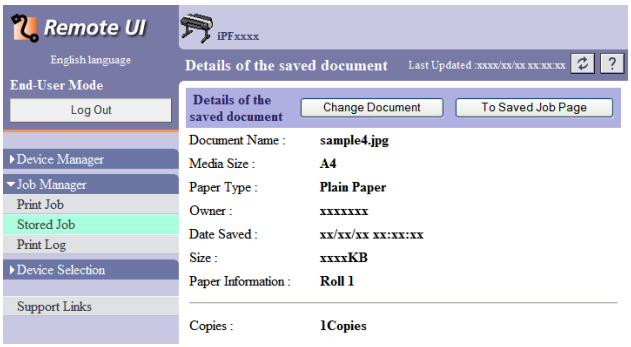
1 On the **Stored Job** page, choose the box.

Note
- Enter a password if one has been set.

2 Select the print job and click **Details**.



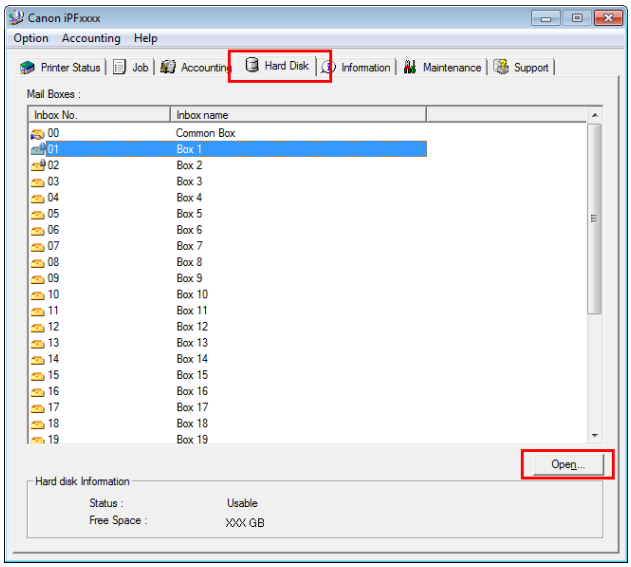
The **Details of the saved document** page is displayed.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

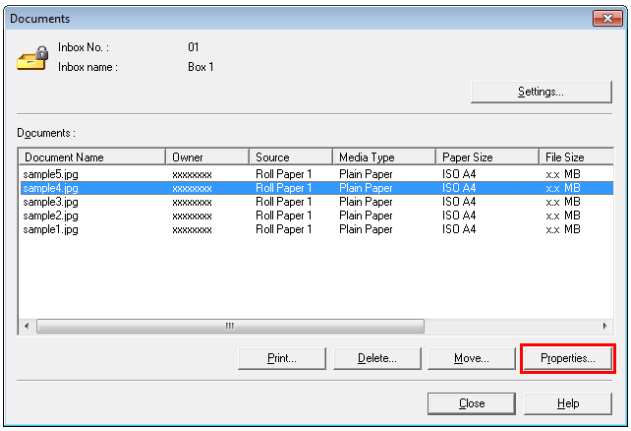
1 On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.



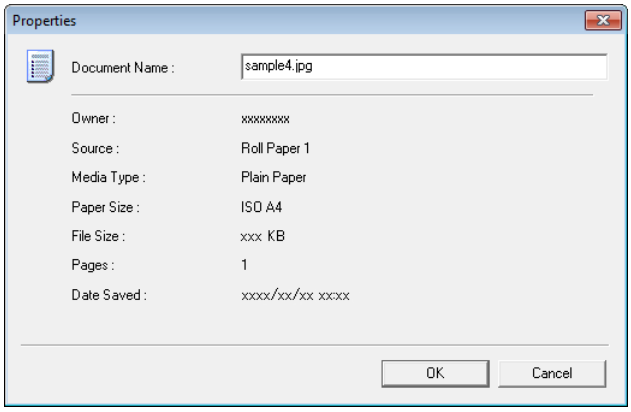
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2 In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Properties**.



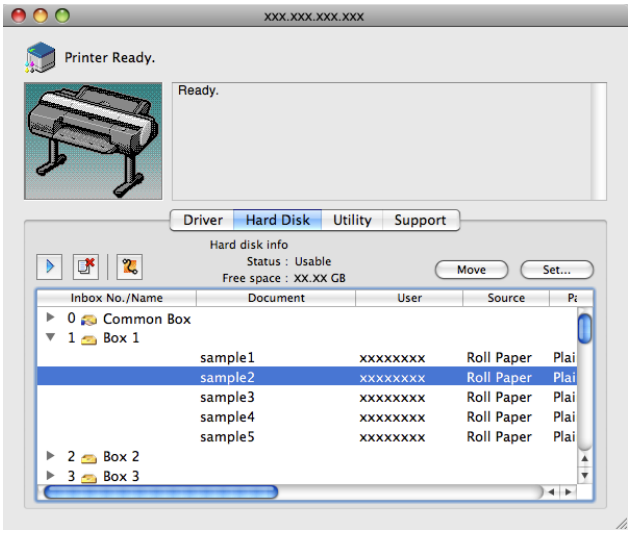
The **Properties** dialog box is displayed.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1 In the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ next to **Inbox No./ Name**.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

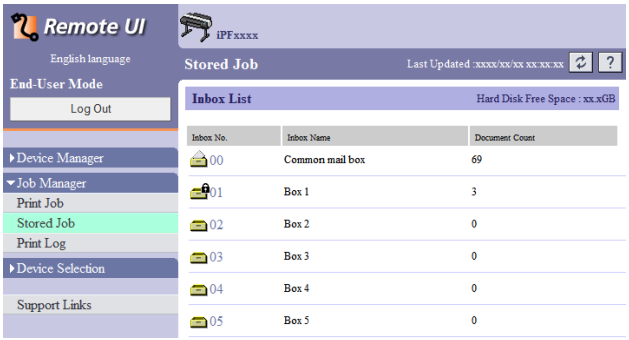
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Renaming Saved Jobs

Print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be renamed as follows.
This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

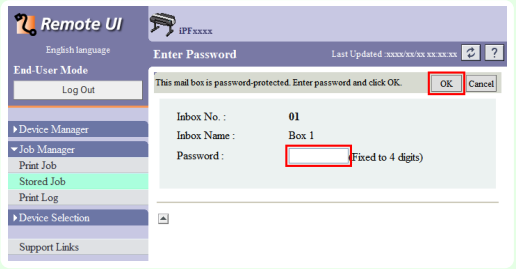
Using RemoteUI

1 On the **Stored Job** page, choose the box.

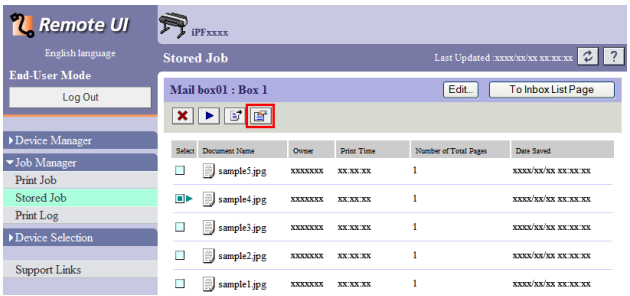


Note

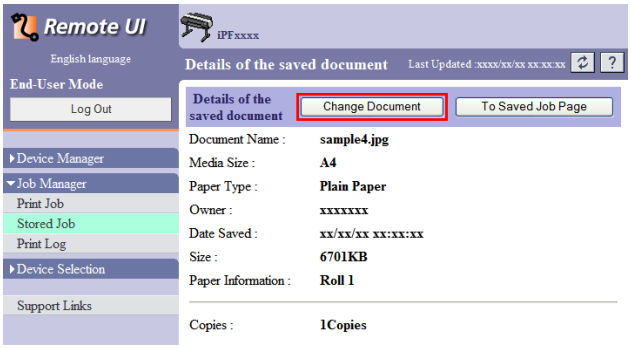
- Enter a password if one has been set.



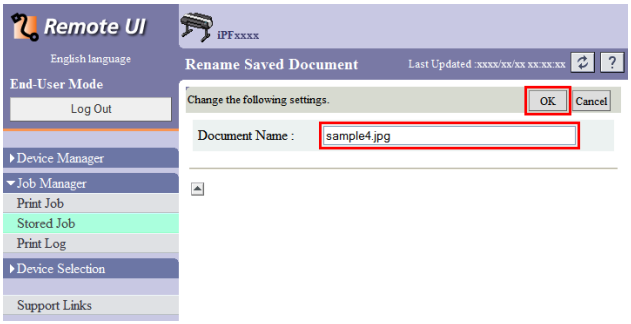
2 Select the print job and click **Details**.



3 On the **Details of the saved document** page, click **Change Document**.



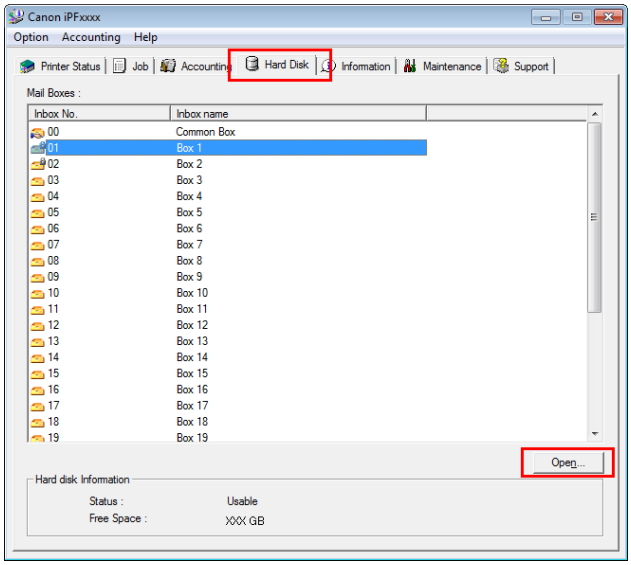
4 In the **Rename Saved Document** dialog box, enter the name and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

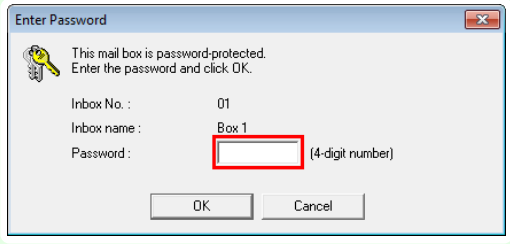
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1 On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.

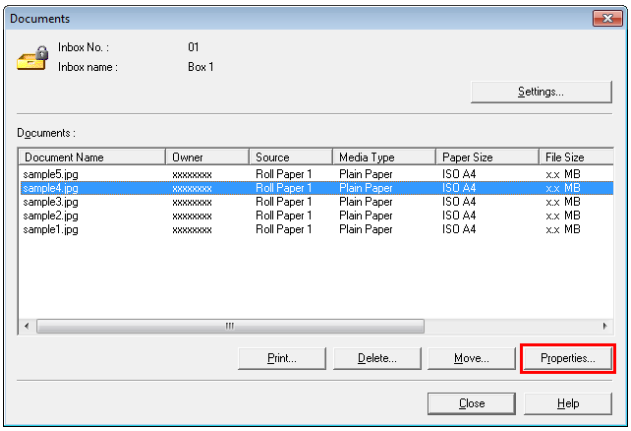


Note

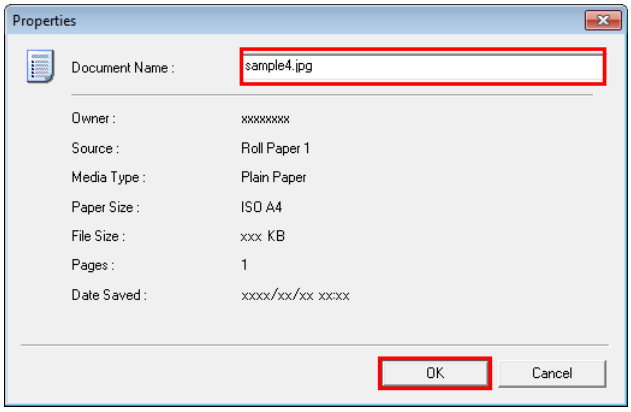
- Enter a password if one has been set.



2 In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Properties**.



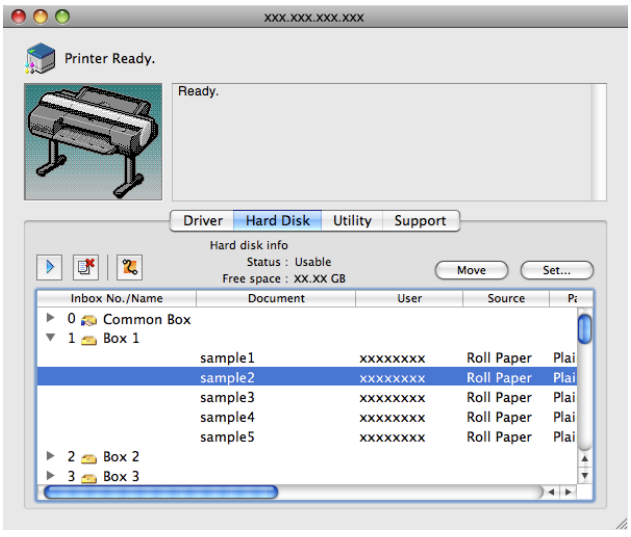
3 In the **Properties** dialog box, enter the new name and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

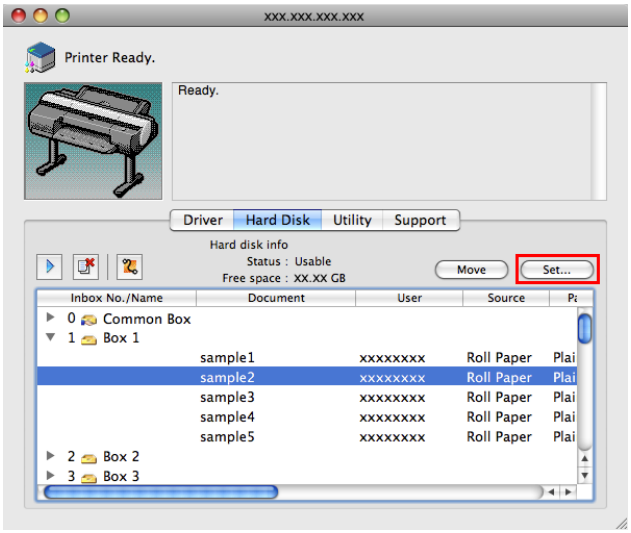
1 In the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ next to **Inbox No./ Name**.



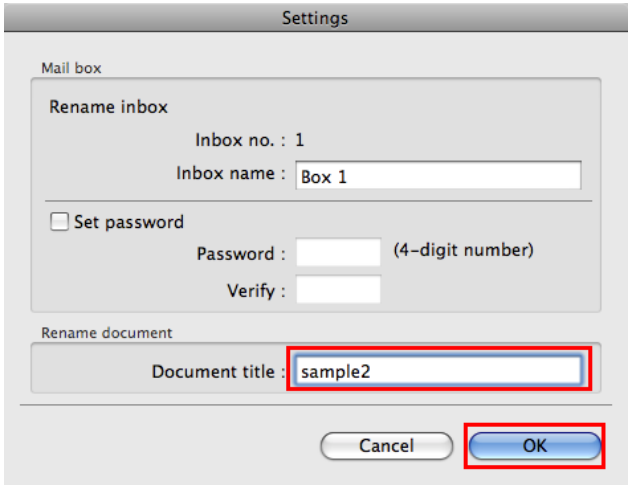
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

2 Select the print job and click **Set**.



3 In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the new name and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Memo

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699

Adjustments for Better Print Quality

Adjustment for high-precision printing 762
Adjusting the Printhead 764
Adjusting the feed amount 770

Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

User's Guide

Adjustment for high-precision printing

Enhancing Printing Quality

With some types of paper and under some conditions, adjusting the printer as follows with the paper to be used can enhance printing quality when printing fine lines/text or photos.
Two adjustment options are available: standard adjustment (with the Printhead height set to **Automatic**) and supplemental adjustment (used if standard adjustment is not effective).

Important
- Ideal temperature and humidity during adjustment and for printing in general when the Printhead height is set to **Automatic** are 20–30ºC and 30–60%. Under other environmental conditions, adjustment may not enhance printing quality.

Standard Adjustment

Perform standard adjustment with the Printhead height set to **Automatic**.

1. Load paper in the printer.
   - **Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder** ➔P.503
   - **Loading Rolls in the Printer** ➔P.505
2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).

Note
- **Auto(Expansion)** may be unavailable in some cases, even if it is displayed in the menu. If so, execute **Auto(Advanced)** once.
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Posi. Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto(Expansion)**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for adjustment. It takes about 15 minutes.

Note
- If standard adjustment does not enhance printing quality, next try supplemental adjustment, which may be helpful.

Supplemental Adjustment

Perform supplemental adjustment with the Printhead height set to **Super Low**.

Important
- Printing with **Head Height** set to **Super Low** may enhance printing quality, but it may also cause paper to rub against or become caught on the Printhead, which may cause paper jams or soiling on printed documents.

Note
- We recommend that additional adjustment be executed using paper matching the following criteria.
  Type: Glossy or semi-glossy photo paper, or proofing paper (in either case, roll paper only)
  Thickness/weight: 300 µm or less, or 300 g/m² or less
  Width: 420.0 mm (16.54 in.) or more

1 Set **Head Height** to **Super Low**. (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") ➔P.769

Note

- If **Super Low** is not available, select **Lowest**.

2 Execute **Standard** in **Head Posi. Adj.**.

Note

- If paper rubs against the Printhead or becomes jammed during Printhead height adjustment, try selecting a higher level in **Head Height** and performing **Standard** again.

Adjusting the Printhead

Adjusting the Printhead 764
Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors 764
Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors 766
Adjustment When Installing the Printhead 767
Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images 769

Adjusting the Printhead

If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the printhead.

- Printing is faint or affected by banding in different colors

  Execute **Nozzle Check** in the Control Panel menu to check for printhead nozzle clogging.
  For instructions, see "**Checking for Nozzle Clogging.**" ➔P.890

- Printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment

  Execute **Head Posi. Adj.** in the Control Panel menu to adjust the printhead position.

  - Normally, execute **Standard**.
    (See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.**") ➔P.764
  - When printing on special paper, or if printing is not improved after **Standard**, try **Manual**.
    (See "**Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.**") ➔P.766

  Note
  - In the next case, execute **Initial adjustmt**.
    (See "**Adjustment When Installing the Printhead.**") ➔P.767
    - If adjusting the printhead position has not been performed such as due to an error during initial setup
    - If **Rep.P.head Print** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Off** and adjusting the printhead position has not been performed when replacing the printhead

- Paper rubs against the printhead, or image edges are blurred

  Selecting **Head Height** in the Control Panel menu and changing the printhead height may improve the situation.
  (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") ➔P.769

Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors

If vertical lines in printed documents are warped or colors are out of alignment, execute **Head Posi. Adj.**. The printer will print and read a test pattern, and the Printhead position will be adjusted automatically.
There are two modes for automatic Printhead adjustment: **Standard** and **Simple**.

- **Standard**

  Execute if vertical lines in printed material are warped or colors are out of alignment.
  Furthermore, if **Simple** does not improve printing, try **Standard**.

- **Simple**

  Executes simple adjustment in a short time.
  Execute this when frequently adjusting the printhead, such as during daily inspection.

Important
- This function is not available with **CAD Tracing Paper**, **CAD Translucent Matte Film**, or **CAD Clear Film**.
- If adjustment is not possible as expected using special media, try another type of paper, or try **Manual** adjustment. (See "**Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors**.") ➔P.766

Note
- Because the results of adjustment vary depending on the type of paper used for adjustment, use the same type of paper as you will use for printing.
- If **Standard** does not improve printing, try adjusting the printhead manually. (See "**Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors**.") ➔P.766
- If the printhead position was not adjusted during initial setup or when the printhead was replaced, execute **Initial adjustmt**. (See "**Adjustment When Installing the Printhead**.") ➔P.767
- Advanced adjustment can enable superior printing quality when printing fine lines or text at high precision on glossy or semi-glossy photo or proofing paper. (See "**Enhancing Printing Quality**.") ➔P.762

Items to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 254.0 mm (10.00 in) wide
When Using Sheets	**Standard** : Six sheets of unused paper, A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2) **Simple**: One sheet of unused paper, A4/Letter size

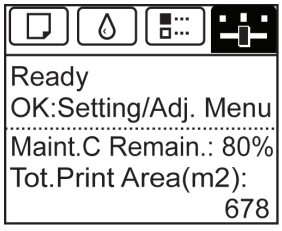
Perform adjustment as follows.

1 Load paper.

- **Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder** ➔P.503
- **Loading Rolls in the Printer** ➔P.505
- **Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot** ➔P.529

Important
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Posi. Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Standard** or **Simple**, and then press the **OK** button.
A test pattern is printed for adjustment.
Adjustment is now finished if you have printed on a roll.

7 If you are printing on cut sheets, a confirmation message is displayed on the Display Screen asking you whether to continue printing.
Press the **OK** button and follow the instructions on the Display Screen.

Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, execute **Head Posi. Adj.** to adjust the Printhead alignment.
Normally, execute **Standard**.
(See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors**.") →P.764
However, when printing on special paper, or if printing is not improved after **Standard**, try **Manual**.
Manual adjustment requires you to examine the printed test pattern and enter an adjustment value.

Note
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.
- If the printhead position was not adjusted during initial setup or when the printhead was replaced, execute **Initial adjustmt**.
(See "**Adjustment When Installing the Printhead**.") →P.767

Items to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 254.0 mm (10.00 in) wide
When Using Sheets	Two sheets of unused paper, A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2)

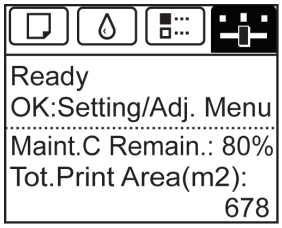
Perform adjustment as follows.

1 Load paper.

- **Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder** →P.503
- **Loading Rolls in the Printer** →P.505
- **Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot** →P.529

Important
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Posi. Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Other**, and then press the **OK** button.

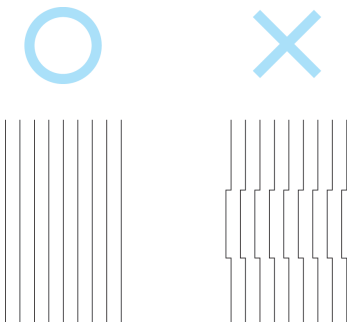
7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.
A test pattern is printed for adjustment.

Note
- **Manual** may be unavailable in some cases, even if it is displayed in the menu.
If so, execute **Standard** once.
(See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.**") ➔P.764

8 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D**, and then press the **OK** button.

9 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D-1**, and then press the **OK** button.

10 Examine adjustment test pattern **D-1** and determine the number with straight lines.



Note
- If two patterns seem equally good and you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value.
For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

11 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the pattern number you have decided, and then press the **OK** button.

12 Repeat steps 8–10 to specify the adjustment value for **D-1** to **D-5**, **D-7** to **D-12**, **D-25** to **D-29**, and **D-31** to **D-36**.

13 Press the **Back** button.

14 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Register Setting**, and then press the **OK** button.

15 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
The adjustment value is now registered, and adjustment is complete.

Adjustment When Installing the Printhead

Printhead position adjustment is executed when the printhead is first installed.
This adjustment should be executed in the following situations.

- If adjusting the printhead position has not been performed such as due to an error during initial setup

- If **Rep.P.head Print** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Off** and adjusting the printhead position has not been performed when replacing the printhead

Note
- We recommend that the same paper as the paper included with the printer is used for this adjustment.

Items to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 254.0 mm (10.00 in) wide
When Using Sheets	Seven sheets of unused paper, A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2)

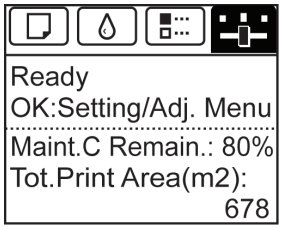
Perform adjustment as follows.

1 Load paper.

- **Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder** ➔P.503
- **Loading Rolls in the Printer** ➔P.505
- **Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot** ➔P.529

Important
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Posi. Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Other**, and then press the **OK** button.

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Initial adjustmt**, and then press the **OK** button.
A test pattern is printed for adjustment.
Adjustment is now finished if you have printed on a roll.

8 If you are printing on sheets, a confirmation message is displayed requesting you to continue printing. Press the **OK** button and follow the instructions.

Note
- Advanced adjustment can enable superior printing quality when printing fine lines or text at high precision on glossy or semi-glossy photo or proofing paper.
(See "**Enhancing Printing Quality.**") ➔P.762

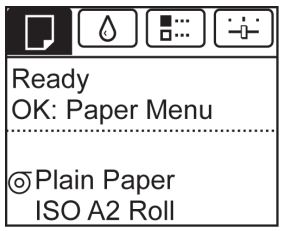
Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images

The Printhead height setting affects printing quality.
Specifying a low Printhead height makes images clearer and enhances printing quality but may cause paper to rub against the Printhead.
On the other hand, specifying a high Printhead height will prevent paper from rubbing against the Printhead but may reduce the printing quality.

Important
- Paper rubbing against or becoming caught on the Printhead may jam or result in printed documents that are soiled.

Note
- Raise or lower the printhead, depending on the nature of the problem.
  (See "**Paper rubs against the printhead.**") →P.955
  (See "**The edges of the paper are dirty.**") →P.956
  (See "**Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs.**") →P.959

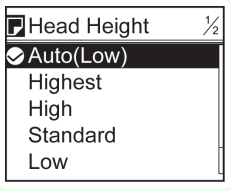
1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

Note
- When **Head Height** is set to **Automatic**, the setting value selected for the previous print job is displayed (to the right of **Automatic**) once you select the type of paper currently supplied.
  However, the value is cleared when the printer is turned off or the paper is replaced.



5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Height**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting value, and then press the **OK** button.

Note
- Using **Automatic** will ensure that the printer adjusts the Printhead height to the optimal level before printing, accounting for the ambient temperature and humidity. When a setting other than **Automatic** is used, that value will always be applied.
- Depending on the type of paper, some setting values may not be available.

Adjusting the feed amount

Adjusting the Feed Amount 770
Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method 770
Automatic Banding Adjustment 771
Manual Banding Adjustment 772
Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount 774
Adjusting Line Length 775
Adjusting Color on the Trailing Edge of Sheets 776
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength 777

Adjusting the Feed Amount

If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the feed amount.

- Banding in different colors
- Line length is not accurate in the direction paper is fed

To adjust the feed amount, do the following, in this order.

1. Depending on the issue, adjust **Adj. Priority** to suit the particular type of paper.
(See "**Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method.**") ➔P.770

2. Execute **Adj. Quality** or **Adjust Length**, depending on the selection in **Adj. Priority**.
(See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.771
(See "**Manual Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.772
(See "**Adjusting Line Length.**") ➔P.775

3. After executing **Adj. Quality**, execute **Adj. Fine Feed** for further adjustment as needed.
(See "**Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount.**") ➔P.774

Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method

There are two methods of adjusting the paper feed amount, **Print Quality** and **Print Length**, either of which will be applied during printing.
Since the method that is applied during printing is determined from the value of the **Adj. Priority** setting, configure the **Adj. Priority** to match the print target.

- **Print Quality**: Adjusts the feed amount to reduce banding across the sheet in printed documents.
Adj. Quality settings are applied. When **Adj. Fine Feed** is executed, the **Adj. Fine Feed** settings are applied in addition to the **Adj. Quality** settings.
- **Print Length**: Adjusts the feed amount for better accuracy of lines in printed documents.
The settings of **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft** in **Adjust Length** are applied.
- **Automatic**: **Print Quality** or **Print Length** is selected, depending on **Print Priority** as selected in the printer driver at the time of printing.

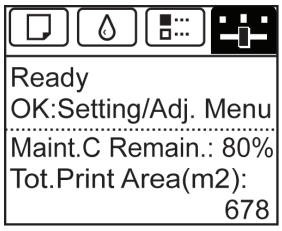
Note
- Either **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft** in the **Adjust Length** menu is applied, depending on printer driver settings at the time of printing.

Follow these steps to configure the settings.

1. Load the paper.
   - **Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder** ➔P.503
   - **Loading Rolls in the Printer** ➔P.505

- **Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot** ➔P.529

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Automatic**, **Print Quality**, or **Print Length**, and then press the **OK** button.

Automatic Banding Adjustment

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors across the sheet, execute **Adj. Quality** for automatic adjustment of the paper feed amount.
There are two modes of automatic adjustment to correct banding: **Auto(GenuinePpr)** and **Auto(OtherPaper)**. In either mode, the printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount.

- **Auto(GenuinePpr)**
  Use this mode with paper identified in the **Paper Reference Guide**.
  (See "**Types of Paper.**") ➔P.492
- **Auto(OtherPaper)**
  Use this mode with paper not in the **Paper Reference Guide**, or if **Auto(GenuinePpr)** does not eliminate banding.
  (See "**Types of Paper.**") ➔P.492

Important
- Adjustment is not possible with **Auto(GenuinePpr)** and **Auto(OtherPaper)** when using highly transparent media. In this case, use **Manual** adjustment.
  (See "**Manual Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.772

Note
- We recommend executing the adjustment if you have changed the paper type or paper size.
- Always check the **Adj. Priority** values before using **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)**.
  (See "**Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method.**") ➔P.770
- If additional fine-tuning is necessary after **Auto(GenuinePpr)** and **Auto(OtherPaper)**, execute **Adj. Fine Feed**.
  (See "**Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount.**") ➔P.774
- Use **Adjust Length** to ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length.
  (See "**Adjusting Line Length.**") ➔P.775
- This may take some time, depending on the type of paper.

Items to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 254.0 mm (10.00 in) wide
When Using Sheets	**Auto(GenuinePpr)** : One sheet of unused paper, A4/Letter size **Auto(OtherPaper)** : Two sheets of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2 or larger)

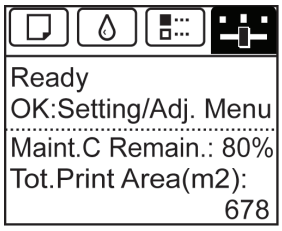
Perform adjustment as follows.

1 Load the paper.

- **Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder** ➔P.503
- **Loading Rolls in the Printer** ➔P.505
- **Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot** ➔P.529

Important
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified in the settings. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Quality**, and then press the **OK** button.

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)**, and then press the **OK** button.
A test pattern is printed for adjustment.
Adjustment is now finished if you have printed on a roll or a sheet of A2 size or larger.

8 If you are printing on sheets smaller than A2 size for **Auto(OtherPaper)**, a confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen requesting you to continue printing.
Press the **OK** button and follow the instructions on the Display Screen.

Manual Banding Adjustment

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, execute **Adj. Quality** for adjustment of the paper feed amount.
Use **Manual** adjustment with highly transparent media or other paper for which **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)** cannot be used.
(See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment**.") ➔P.771
Manual adjustment requires you to enter an adjustment value after a test pattern is printed.

Note
- We recommend executing the adjustment if you have changed the paper type or paper size.
- Always check the **Adj. Priority** values before using **Manual** adjustment.
  (See "**Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method.**") ➔P.770
- If additional fine-tuning is necessary after **Manual** adjustment, use **Adj. Fine Feed**
  (See "**Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount.**") ➔P.774
- Use **Adjust Length** to ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length.
  (See "**Adjusting Line Length.**") ➔P.775

Paper to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 254.0 mm (10.00 in) wide
When Using Sheets	Two sheets of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

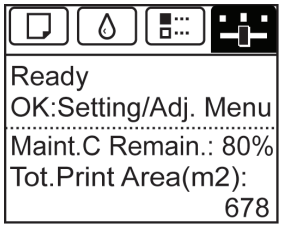
Perform adjustment as follows.

1 Load the paper.

- **Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder** ➔P.503
- **Loading Rolls in the Printer** ➔P.505
- **Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot** ➔P.529

Important
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

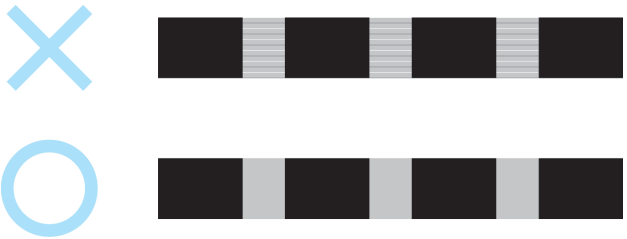
5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Quality**, and then press the **OK** button.

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.
Test pattern A is printed for manual adjustment.

Note
- When printing on sheets, follow the instructions on the Display Screen and remove the sheet.

8 Examine test pattern A for adjustment. Determine the pattern in which banding is least noticeable.



Note
- If banding seems least noticeable in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value.
For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

9 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the pattern number you have decided, and then press the **OK** button.
Test pattern B is printed for adjustment.

Note
- If you printed test pattern A on a sheet, follow the instructions on the Display Screen and use another sheet of the same type of paper.
Additionally, after test pattern B is printed, follow the instructions on the Display Screen and remove the sheet.

10 Examine test pattern B for adjustment. Determine the pattern in which banding is least noticeable.

11 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the pattern number you have decided, and then press the **OK** button.
The adjustment value is now registered, and adjustment is complete.

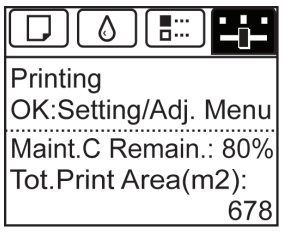
Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount

If the contrast is uneven or banding in different colors appears at 50 mm (2.0 in) intervals in printed documents, try executing **Adj. Fine Feed** during printing to fine-tune the feed amount.

Note
- The **Adj. Fine Feed** menu is only displayed during printing.
Additionally, it is displayed when you have selected **Automatic** or **Print Quality** in **Adj. Priority** in **Feed Priority**.
(See "**Menu Settings.**") ➔P.632
- Always execute **Adj. Quality** before **Adj. Fine Feed**.
Once you execute **Adj. Quality**, the **Adj. Fine Feed** value will revert to 0.
(See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.771
(See "**Manual Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.772

Perform adjustment as follows.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Fine Feed**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select a setting value in the range -5 to 5, and then press the **OK** button.
At this time, if banding in dark colors appears, select a setting value in the range 1 to 5, and if banding in light colors appears, select a setting value in the range -1 to -5.

Adjusting Line Length

To ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, use **Adjust Length** to adjust the amount that paper is advanced.
There are two options in **Adjust Length** : **AdjustmentPrint** and **Change Settings**.

- **AdjustmentPrint**
  After a test pattern is printed, you will measure the discrepancy based on the results of printing.
- **Change Settings**
  No test pattern is printed. Instead, you will measure a document already printed to determine the discrepancy.

Additionally, two modes are available in both **AdjustmentPrint** and **Change Settings** : **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft**. Choose the mode that suits your particular printing application.

- **A:High**
  This setting is applied when **Highest quality** or **High** is selected in **Print Quality** in the printer driver.
- **B:Standard/Draft**
  This setting is applied when **Standard** or **Fast** is selected in **Print Quality** in the printer driver.

Note
- We recommend executing the adjustment if you have changed the paper type or paper size.
- Always check the **Adj. Priority** values before using **Adjust Length**. (See "**Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method.**") →P.770

Paper to Prepare

When Using Rolls	• An unused roll at least 254.0 mm (10.00 in) wide • High-precision ruler
When Using Sheets	• One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size • High-precision ruler

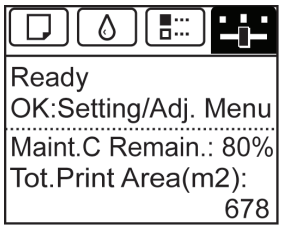
Perform adjustment as follows.

1 Load the paper.

- **Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder** →P.503
- **Loading Rolls in the Printer** →P.505
- **Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot** →P.529

Important
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

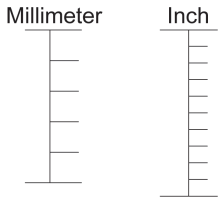
3 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Length**, and then press the **OK** button.

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AdjustmentPrint** or **Change Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.
When you select **AdjustmentPrint**, a test pattern is printed for you to measure the scale and calculate the discrepancy. The scale bar prints **Millimeter** in 50 mm increments and **Inch** in 1-inch increments.



Note
- A test pattern is printed in black when you choose **A:High** or in magenta if you choose **B:Standard/Draft**.
- To cancel printing the test pattern for adjustment, hold down the **Stop** button. When "**Stop printing?**" is displayed, press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

8 Press ▲ or ▼ to enter the amount of discrepancy, and then press the **OK** button.
If the scale is shorter than the actual size, use a positive setting value. If it is longer, use a negative value.
The feed amount can be adjusted in 0.02% increments.

Adjusting Color on the Trailing Edge of Sheets

If printed sheets are affected by banding in different colors by the trailing edge (about 20–30 mm (0.8–1.2 in) from the edge), try adjusting the feed amount of the trailing edge of sheets.

Important
- This adjustment is only possible when feeding paper from the Top Paper Feed Slot that can be set up with a margin on the trailing edge of 3 mm (0.12 in). Paper that does not allow a margin of 3 mm on the trailing edge is automatically ejected, and the adjustment is not available.

Note
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.
- For banding in different colors over the entire printed area of sheets or rolls (not only at the trailing edge of sheets), try adjusting the overall feed amount. (See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.771

Items to Prepare

Sheets	One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

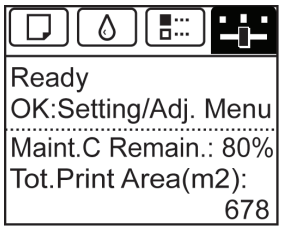
Perform adjustment as follows.

1 Load the paper.

- **Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot** ➔P.529

Important
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified in the settings. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

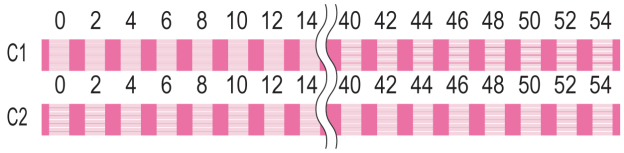
3 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj Far Ed Feed**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
A test pattern is printed for adjustment.

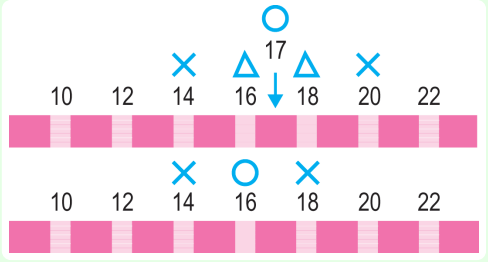
C1 is displayed on the Control Panel.



7 Examine test pattern **C1**. Determine the pattern in which banding is least noticeable. Press ▲ or ▼ to select this pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.
C2 is displayed on the Control Panel.

8 Examine test pattern **C2**. Again, determine the pattern in which banding is least noticeable. Press ▲ or ▼ to select this pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.
The adjustment value is now registered, and adjustment is complete.

Note
- If streaks seem least noticeable in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 17 if you cannot decide whether pattern 16 or 18 is better.

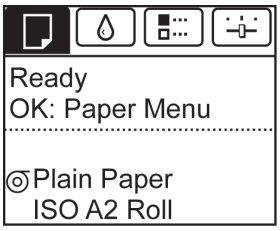


Adjusting the Vacuum Strength

When printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily, if the Printhead rubs against paper, adjusting the level of suction against paper on the Platen may improve results.

Important
- Paper rubbing against or becoming caught on the Printhead may jam or result in printed documents that are soiled.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



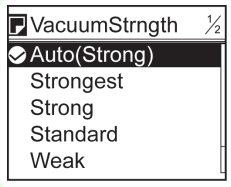
Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

Note
- When **VacuumStrngth** is set to **Automatic**, the setting value selected for the previous print job is displayed (to the right of **Automatic**) once you select the type of paper currently supplied.
However, the value is cleared when the printer is turned off or the paper is replaced.



5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **VacuumStrngth**, and then press the **OK** button.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting value, and then press the **OK** button.

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761

Color Management

Monitor Matching 780
Color Calibration 786
Color Calibration Management Console (Windows) 809
Color Calibration Management Console (Mac OS) 848

Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

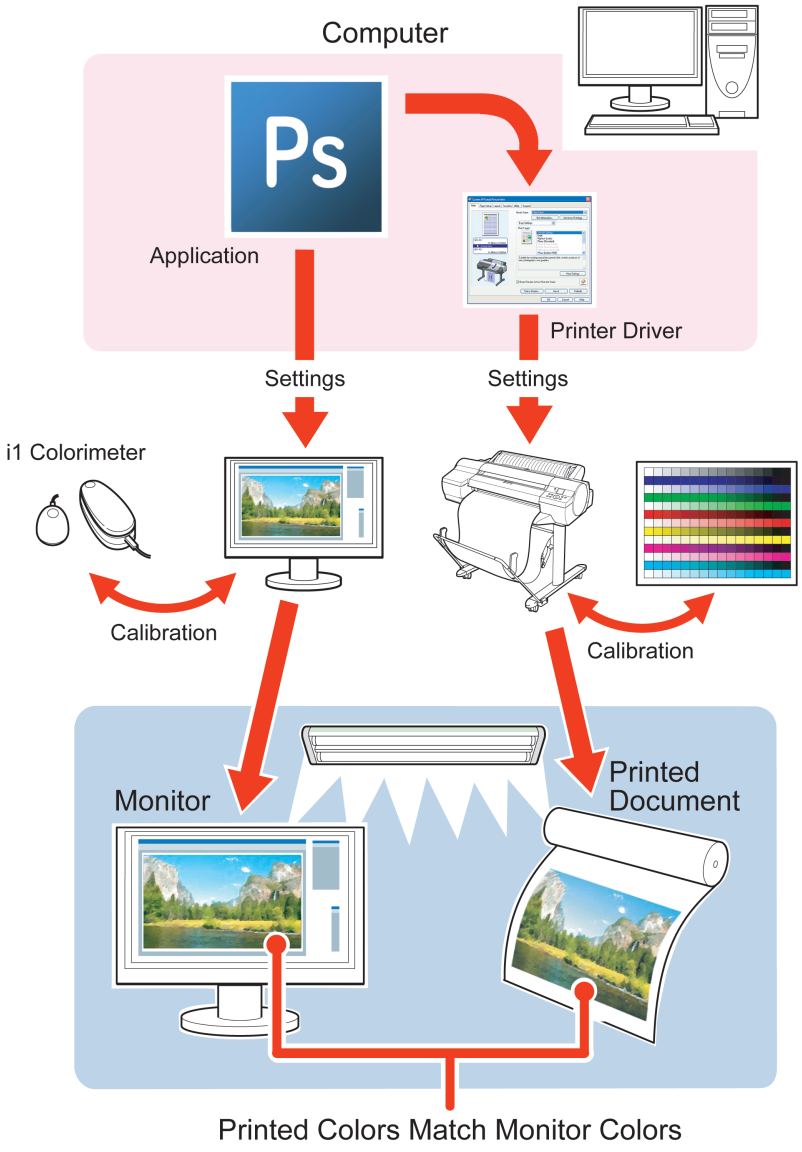
User's Guide

Monitor Matching

Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors 780
Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Windows) 781
Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Mac OS) 783

Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors

Adjusting the colors printed so that they more closely match the colors displayed on the monitor is called "monitor matching." Using this mode requires adjustment or configuration of the settings of your monitor, the source application, the file for printing, and the printer driver.



Important

- Monitor matching may not be applied, or these settings may not be configurable or adjustable, depending on your monitor and the source application.

Note
- Printing in exactly the same colors as displayed on the monitor may not be possible due to differences in the monitor and printer color gamuts.
- Calibrating your monitor requires a measuring device.
- Because colors appear different under sunlight at different times of day, we recommend following this procedure in a room not exposed to sunlight.

- Monitor Matching

The sequence in monitor matching is as follows.

1. Calibrate the printer.
Calibration improves color consistency by compensating for slight differences in how color appears due to individual variation among printheads or conditions in various printing environments.
(See "**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor**.") ➔P.793

2. Calibrate the monitor.
i1-Display and similar measurement devices are commonly used.
Set **white point** to **6500K** or **5000K**, **Gamma** to **2.2**, and **brightness** to **120 cd**.
The exact procedure varies depending on your monitor and measurement device.

3. Open the file to print and configure settings in the source application.
Display the file in the sRGB or Adobe RGB color space.
Configure settings to prevent color conversion by the application.
In Photoshop CS3, for example, select **Color Management** in the **Print** dialog box, and then select **No Color Management** in **Color Handling**.

4. Configure and adjust printer driver settings.
Select **Monitor Matching** using the **Matching Method**, and then select the **Monitor White Point** that you set up in monitor calibration.
In **Color Space**, select the color space used when displaying the file in the source application.

Note
- To print multiple times using the same value, we recommend opening the Printer Driver dialog box from the System menu and configuring the appropriate settings. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)**.") ➔P.167

For instructions on configuring printer driver settings for monitor matching, refer to the following topic, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- **Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Windows)** ➔P.781
- **Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Mac OS)** ➔P.783

Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Windows)

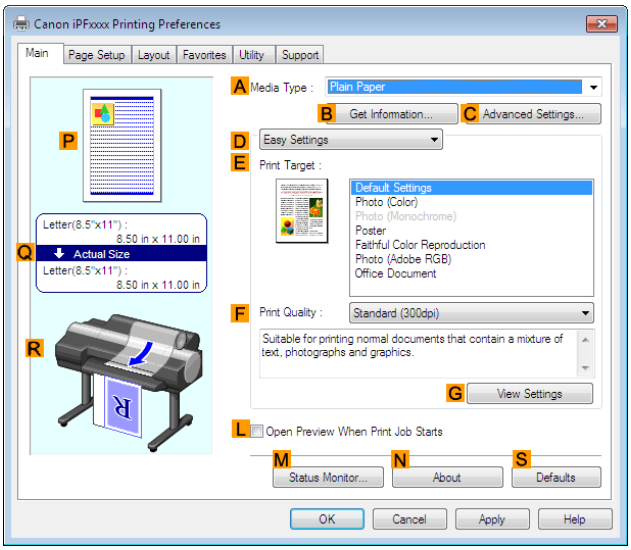
By calibrating your monitor and configuring settings in the source application in advance, you can complete settings to print in colors that are as close as possible to the colors displayed on the monitor.

Important
- Before using this feature, you must calibrate the monitor and configure settings in the source application. (See "**Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors**.") ➔P.780

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

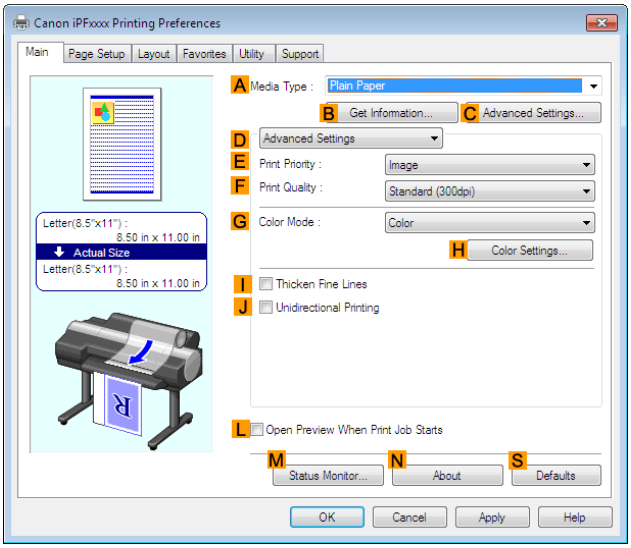
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") ➔P.165

3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, **Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280**).

5 Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

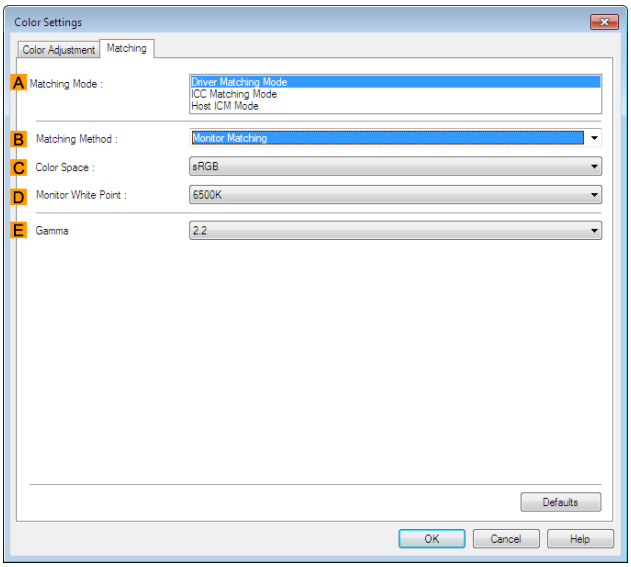


6 In **F Print Quality**, click **High**.

7 Click **Color** in the **G Color Mode** list.

8 Click **H Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

9 Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.



10 Make sure **Driver Matching Mode** is selected in **A Matching Mode**.

11 In **B Matching Method**, select **Monitor Matching**.

12 In **C Color Space**, select the color space used when displaying the file in the source application.

13 In **D Monitor White Point**, select the white point set on the monitor.

14 Click **OK**.

15 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Mac OS)

By calibrating your monitor and configuring settings in the source application in advance, you can complete settings to print in colors that are as close as possible to the colors displayed on the monitor.

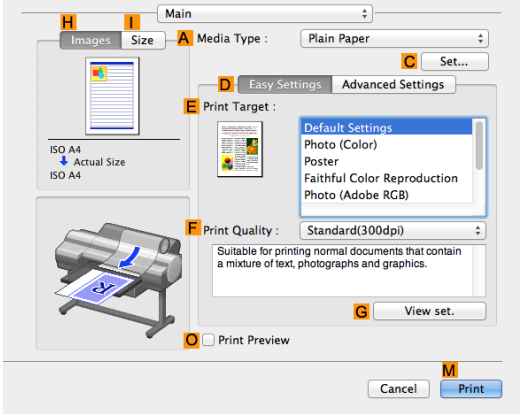
Important

- Before using this feature, you must calibrate the monitor and configure settings in the source application. (See "**Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors**.") →P.780

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

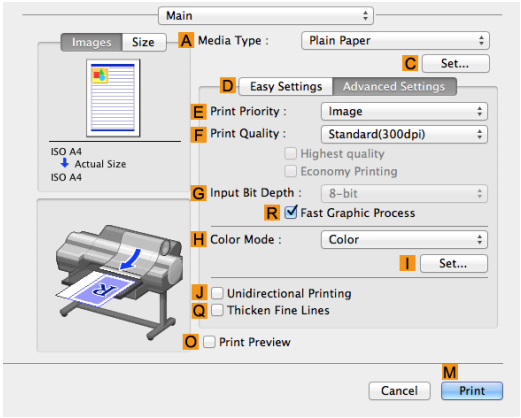
2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "**Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications** .") →P.349

3 Make sure the **Main** panel is displayed.



4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, **Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280**).

5 Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

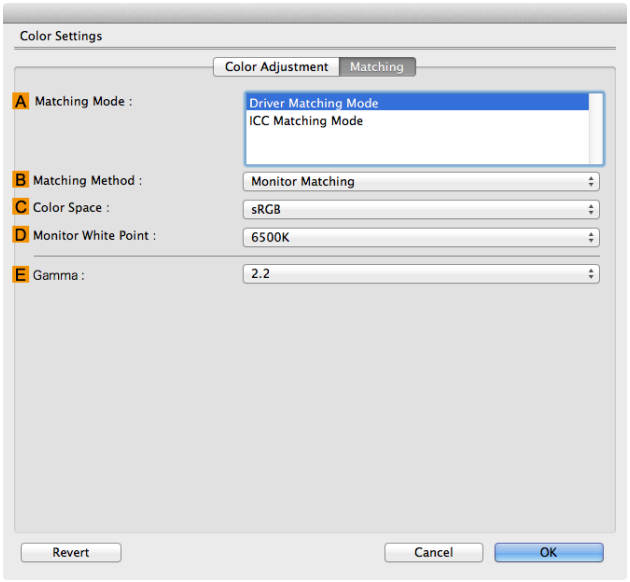


6 In **F Print Quality**, click **High**.

7 Click **Color** in the **H Color Mode** list.

8 Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

9 Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** panel.



10 Make sure **Driver Matching Mode** is selected in **A Matching Mode**.

11 In **B Matching Method**, select **Monitor Matching**.

12 In **C Color Space**, select the color space used when displaying the file in the source application.

13 In **D Monitor White Point**, select the white point set on the monitor.

14 Click **OK**.

15 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Color Calibration

Managing Colors 786

Managing Colors Using Printer Sensors 792
Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor 793

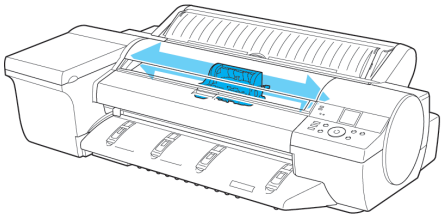
Color Management Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (Optional) 795
Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) 798
Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) 799
Color Checks Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) 802
Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color 804

Adjustment Types of Color Calibration 805

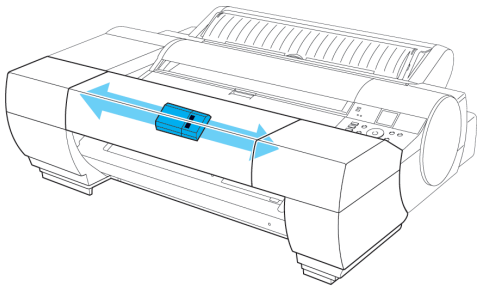
Managing Colors

Printer color management corrects for variations in color tones due to differences between printers and aging, and obtains continuously stable corrected color tones.

- Color management that can be performed by the printer
- The color tones of this printer can be corrected by executing color calibration. The printer also has a function for notifying when executing color calibration is recommended, allowing you to efficiently reduce color variations by executing color calibration by using this function.
- Using the Color Calibration Management Console (CCMC) color management utility included with this printer makes it possible to execute color calibration from computers in remote locations and to perform centralized management of the color calibration logs of multiple printers.
- Color management that can be performed using the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional)
- Using the optional Spectrophotometer Unit allows you to perform higher precision color calibration compared to the sensor built into the printer.Furthermore, there is a built-in function (color check) for self-diagnosing changes in color tones from the actual measured values that is able to automatically execute color calibration if needed.
- Color calibration can be executed by creating a **Calibration Target** (*1) for paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper by using the Media Configuration Tool (MCT) utility for adding media information that is included with the printer together with the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional).
- **Calibration Target**s for paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper (*1) can also be registered in printers that do not have a Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) mounted (*2) as a custom media information file. Since this makes it possible to execute color calibration on the paper you are using even on printers that do not have a Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) mounted (*2), it delivers efficient, low-cost color management.
*1: Standard values of the colors corrected by color calibration
*2:Only supported by printers (8-color models) that support calibration link



Printer sensor



Spectrophotometer unit sensor

For a detailed explanation, see the following.
Correcting Colors (Color Calibration) ➔P.787

Stabilizing Colors (Color Calibration Execution Guide Settings) →P.789
Outputting Color Measurement Data for Creating ICC Profiles →P.790
List of Color Management Functions →P.791

Correcting Colors (Color Calibration)

You can perform the following operations depending on the number of printers you are using.

- When operating with only one printer

  You can correct for variations in the color tones on the printer you are using by executing color calibration by using the printer sensor. If you are using the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional), you can perform color calibration with even higher precision.

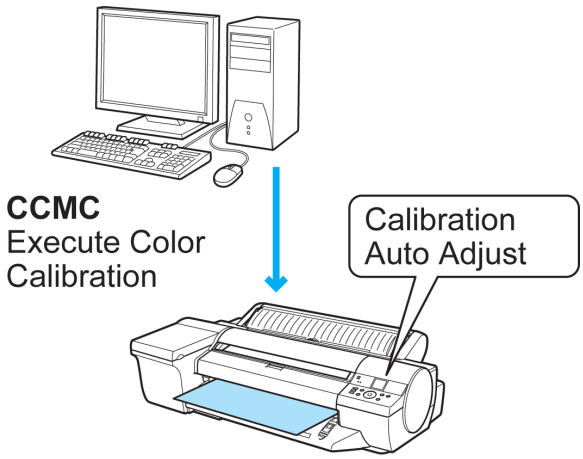
  You can create a **Calibration Target** for paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper by using the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) together with the included MCT. When you have a **Calibration Target**, it allows you to execute color calibration even on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper. Since you can execute color calibration on the paper you are using, this efficiently reduces variations in the color tones of the printing.

  In order to create a **Calibration Target** for paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper, you need to register a media information file in advance using **Add Custom Paper**.

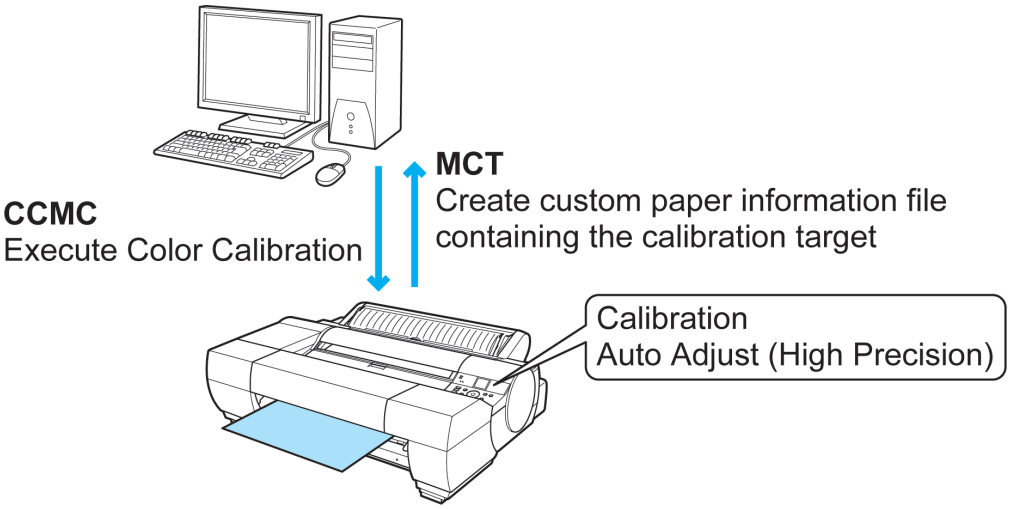
  Color calibration can be executed from the printer control panel or from the CCMC color management utility.

  For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Managing Colors Using Printer Sensors** →P.792



- **Color Management Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (Optional)** →P.795



- When operating with multiple printers

If you have multiple printers, you can make the color tones of the printers the same by executing color calibration on each of the printers.

Furthermore, using the CCMC color management utility allows an administrator to centrally manage multiple remotely connected printers from a single computer, and to reduce the variations in color tone between the printed material output from multiple printers.

For example, this lets you grasp the color management status (information on the date, time, and paper when color calibration was executed) of each printer, and allows you to execute color calibration on each printer from a remote location.

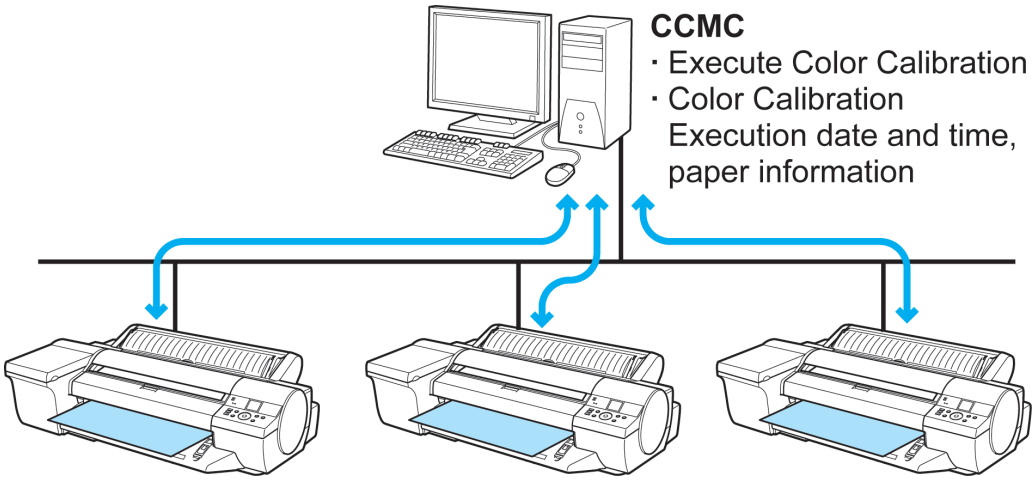
The CCMC color management utility is used to perform this kind of centralized management.

Furthermore, in CCMC, if you are printing on the same paper on multiple printers, you can manage the color differences between each printer to fit within a fixed range. This function is called calibration link, and is displayed in the same **Calibration group** in CCMC. The following conditions are required when using the calibration link function.

- The same paper is loaded in the printers
- Color calibration is executed on the paper loaded in the printers
- The printers are on
- The printers being color managed support the calibration link function

For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Managing Colors Using Printer Sensors** →P.792
- **Color Management Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (Optional)** →P.795



- When using paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper

You can also reduce the variations in printed color tones when using paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper by creating a **Calibration Target** by using this printer with a Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) mounted and the included MCT.

You can also execute color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper by registering a custom media information file that contains this **Calibration Target** using the included MCT on printers (8-color models) that support calibration link without a spectrophotometer unit mounted.

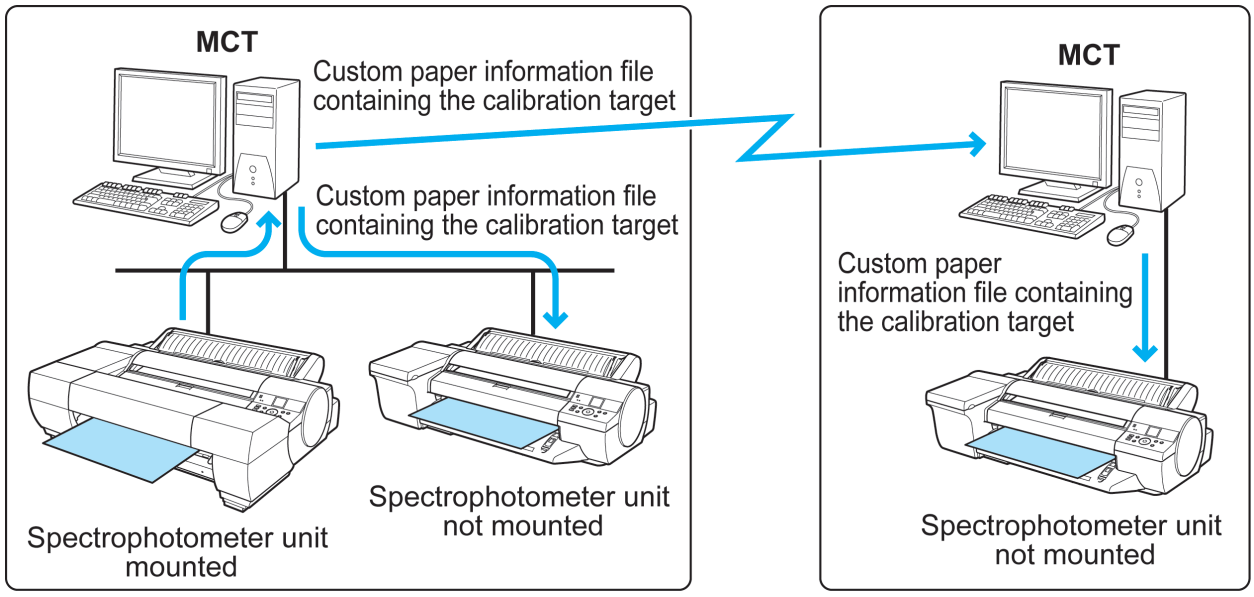
Furthermore, it is also possible to execute color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper even on remote printers (8-color models) that support calibration link by sending the Custom Media Information File that contains the **Calibration Target** by e-mail.

This allows you to operate efficiently and at reduced cost because you can perform calibration operations that unify color tones across workplaces.

For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Managing Colors Using Printer Sensors** →P.792

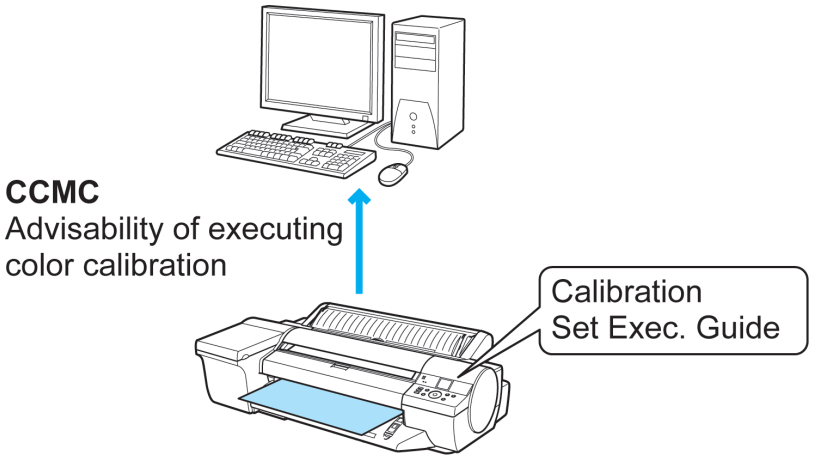
- **Color Management Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (Optional)** →P.795



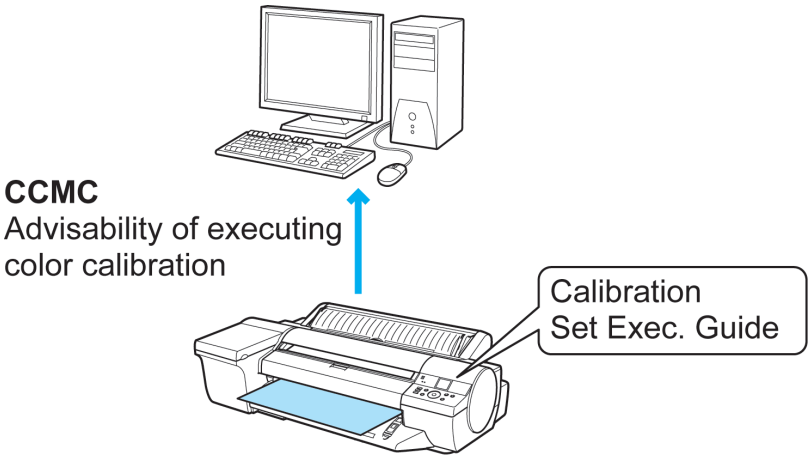
Stabilizing Colors (Color Calibration Execution Guide Settings)

It is important to carry out color calibration because color tones change as a printhead ages and the environment changes.
This printer has a function that notifies when it is recommended to execute color calibration. This prevents forgetting to carry out color calibration and allows you to continuously reduce variations in color tones.
In the CCMC color management utility, **Advisability of executing color calibration** is displayed as a progress bar. This allows you to manage color efficiently because you can visually check roughly how long until color calibration is executed next.
Furthermore, when if you are using both Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) and CCMC and have a color check schedule configured, Color Calibration can be executed automatically if needed. This makes it possible to perform color management efficiently by executing color checks at times when there are no people around, such as at night.
For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Managing Colors Using Printer Sensors** →P.792



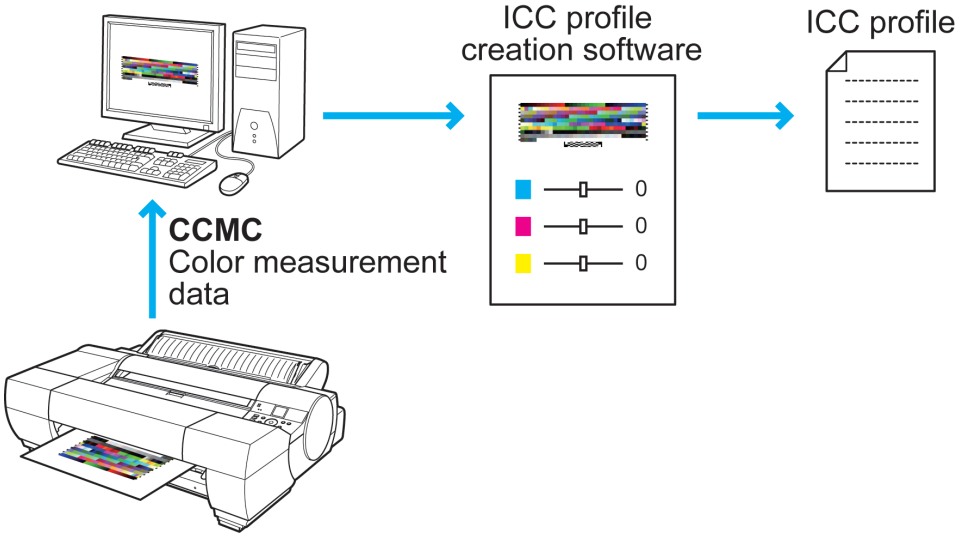
- **Color Management Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (Optional)** →P.795



Outputting Color Measurement Data for Creating ICC Profiles

If you want strict color management using paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper, use a dedicated ICC profile for that paper.
Dedicated ICC profiles (*1) for paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper need to be created using commercially available ICC profile creation software. (*1: Some paper manufacturers also distribute profiles from their websites.)
You can create a dedicated ICC profile by creating color measurement data using the CCMC color management utility and this printer with Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) mounted, and using this color measurement data in commercially available ICC profile creation software.
(This printer does not have a built-in ICC profile creation function.)
For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart (Windows)** →P.831
- **Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart (Mac OS)** →P.866



List of Color Management Functions

This is a list of the functions that can be used for color management in this printer.

Color management function	Printer + Spectrophotometer Unit	Printer only	Reference
Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor	Can execute	Can execute	**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor** →P.793
Color Calibration Execution Guide Settings	Can execute	Can execute	**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor** →P.793
Color calibration using the Spectrophotometer Unit	Can execute	Cannot execute	**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)** →P.799
Expanding the range of paper that supports color calibration	Can execute	Cannot execute	**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide** →P.496
Managing Color Precision Using Color Check	Can execute	Cannot execute	**Color Checks Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)** →P.802

This is a list of color management functions that require the MCT.

Color management function	Printer + Spectrophotometer Unit	Printer only	Reference
Creating a **Calibration Target** for paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper	Can execute	Cannot execute	**Create Calibration Target (Windows)** →P.574 **Create Calibration Target (Mac OS)** →P.606
Reading a Custom Media Information File that contains a **Calibration Target**	Can execute	Can execute	**Import Custom Media Information (Windows)** →P.573 **Import Custom Media Information (Mac OS)** →P.604

This is a list of color management functions that require the CCMC.

Color management function	Printer + Spectrophotometer Unit	Printer only	Reference
Remotely executing color calibration	Can execute	Can execute	**Executing Color Calibration (Windows)** →P.828 **Executing Color Calibration (Mac OS)** →P.863
Managing the color calibration execution logs of remotely connected printers	Can execute	Can execute	**Checking the Color Calibration Status (Windows)** →P.827 **Checking the Color Calibration Status (Mac OS)** →P.862
Displaying the **Advisability of executing color calibration**	Can execute	Can execute	**Calibration Sheet (Windows)** →P.822 **Calibration Sheet (Mac OS)** →P.858
Displaying the **Calibration group** (Calibration link)	Can execute	Can execute	**Features of Color Calibration Management Console (Windows)** →P.809 **Features of Color Calibration Management Console (Mac OS)** →P.848
Managing Color Precision Using Color Check	Can execute	Cannot execute	**Executing Color Check (Windows)** →P.838 **Executing Color Check (Mac OS)** →P.872
Outputting data for creating ICC profiles	Can execute	Cannot execute	**Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart (Windows)** →P.831 **Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart (Mac OS)** →P.866

Managing Colors Using Printer Sensors

You can correct for variations in color tones due to differences between individual printheads and changes with aging by executing the following functions using the color calibration function using the printer sensor.
Furthermore, you can execute color calibration and check the calibration logs of printers remotely by using the Color Calibration Management Console (CCMC) color management utility. If the printer is connected to a network, execution can be managed remotely from the computer.
Since this allows the color management status of printers to be centrally managed, it delivers efficient low-cost color management.

Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor

Although there are slight differences in how colors appear due to individual variations or aging among printers, there are only small variations in the printed color tones because the variations in color tones can be corrected by executing color calibration using the printer sensor.
For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor** →P.793

Color Calibration Execution Guide Settings

It is important to periodically carry out color calibration because color tones change as a printhead ages and the environment changes.
This printer has a function that notifies when it is recommended to execute color calibration. Using this function prevents you from forgetting to carry out color calibration and allows you to continuously reduce variations in color tones.
For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor** →P.793

Color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper

You can also reduce the variations in printed color tones when using paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper by creating a **Calibration Target** by using a printer with a Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) mounted and the included Media Configuration Tool (MCT).
You can also execute color calibration even if you are using paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper by registering a Custom Media Information File that contains this **Calibration Target** using the included MCT on a printer (8-color model) that supports calibration link without a Spectrophotometer Unit mounted.
Furthermore, it is also possible to execute color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper even on remote printers (8-color models) that support calibration link by sending the Custom Media Information File that contains the **Calibration Target** by e-mail.
This allows you to operate efficiently and at reduced cost because you can perform calibration operations on the paper you are using that unify color tones across workplaces.

The following procedure using MCT is needed in order to perform color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper.

1. Register the media information using **Add Custom Paper**.
2. Add the **Calibration Target** information in **Create Calibration Target** to the created custom paper.
3. Save as a Custom Media Information File that contains the **Calibration Target**.
4. Add the Custom Media Information File to a printer (8-color model) that supports calibration link without a Spectrophotometer Unit mounted.
5. Execute color calibration using the printer or the CCMC color management utility.

For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Media Configuration Tool (Windows)** →P.546

- **Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)** ➔P.577

Things That Can Be Done Using CCMC

You can execute the following functions by using the CCMC color management utility.
For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Color Calibration Management Console (Windows)** ➔P.809
- **Color Calibration Management Console (Mac OS)** ➔P.848

- Remotely Executing Color Calibration

  You can remotely execute color calibration from a remote location.

- Displaying the **Advisability of executing color calibration**

  Advisability of executing color calibration is displayed as a progress bar. This allows you to manage color efficiently because you can visually check roughly how long until color calibration is executed next.

- Managing the color calibration logs of remotely connected printers

  The printer calibration logs are displayed in a list, making it possible to grasp the color management status of multiple remotely connected printers.

  This makes it possible for administrators to identify, execute, and manage printers that require color calibration, and makes administrative work more efficient.

Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor

Features of Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor

Color calibration improves color consistency by compensating for slight differences in how color appears when printing due to individual variations or aging among the printers.
Executing color calibration with the printer sensor will print a test pattern (built into the printer) that is then read automatically by the printer sensor.
By this operation, calibration adjustment values reflecting the print result of the test pattern are set automatically.

Important

- In order to increase the color stability precision when executing color calibration, maintain a constant temperature and humidity environment each time within the range of temperatures of 15 to 30°C and within the range of humidities of 40 to 60%.
  Executing color calibration under various temperature and humidity conditions may prevent the printer from making the correct adjustments.
- Before color calibration, ensure the printer is not exposed to direct sunlight or other strong sources of light.
  If the printer is exposed to strong sources of light, correct adjustment may not be possible.

Note

- When executing color calibration using paper such as **LW Gloss Proof** and **LW Matte Proof** in which thin wrinkles occur easily, set **Head Height** to **Low** and **VacuumStrngth** to **Weak**.
  (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") ➔P.769
  (See "**Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.**") ➔P.777

Recommend Timing for Color Calibration

We recommend color calibration in the following situations.

- After initial printer installation
- After Printhead replacement
- If colors seem different from before, despite using the same printing environment, under the same conditions
- To ensure uniform colors when printing on multiple printers (however, be sure to use the same version of firmware and printer driver, under the same settings)
- When the Execution Guide is displayed (Specifying Execution Guide ➔P.795)

Executing Color Calibration from the Control Panel on the Printer

Execute color calibration from the Control Panel on the printer as follows.
Refer to the information on **Color Calibration Management Console** operations when executing color calibration from the computer.
(See "**Executing Color Calibration (Windows).**") ➔P.828
(See "**Executing Color Calibration (Mac OS).**") ➔P.863

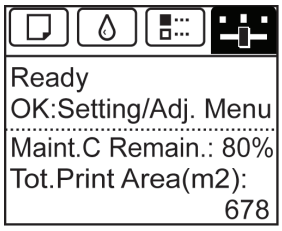
- Preparing the Printer

1. You can confirm whether the paper to be loaded can be used in color calibration.
(See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

2. Load the paper.
(See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503
(See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505
(See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") ➔P.529

- Executing Color Calibration from the Control Panel on the Printer

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select (Settings/Adj. tab).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Calibration**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Adjust**, and then press the **OK** button.
After the environment measurements and paper are confirmed, and color calibration is executed, the calibration adjustment value is set automatically.

Applying Calibration Adjustment Values During Printing

The application of the calibration adjustment values when printing can be set in the printer driver or on the menu of the Control Panel.
However, when the setting value of the printer driver and the setting value of the Control Panel differ, the setting of the printer driver is prioritized.

How to Apply	How to Operate
Configure on the printer driver menu. (Windows)	Configure **Calibration Value**. (See "**Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows).**") ➔P.171
Configure on the printer driver menu. (Mac OS)	Configure **Calibration Value**. (See "**Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS).**") ➔P.352
Configure on the menu of the Control Panel.	From **Set./Adj. Menu**, select **Adjust Printer** > **Calibration** > **Use Adj. Value**. (See "**Menu Settings.**") ➔P.632

Note

- After color calibration, you can use the printer driver to make further color adjustments as necessary. (See "**Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver**.") ➔P.53

Checking Color Calibration Execution Logs

You can confirm information of color calibration such as the execution date and executed paper type by the following method.

How to Check	How to Operate
Confirm it on the Control Panel of the printer.	From **Set./Adj. Menu**, select **Adjust Printer** > **Calibration** > **Calibration Log**. (See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632
Print information about the printer.	From **Set./Adj. Menu**, select **Test Print** > **Status Print**. (See "**Status Print**.") ➔P.642
Confirm with **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**. (Windows)	On the **Information** sheet of **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**, click the **View Calibration Log** button. (See "**The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**.") ➔P.700
Confirm this in the **Printer Information** dialog box of the printer driver. (Mac OS)	In the **Printer Information** dialog box, click the **Information** tab, and click the **View Calibration Log** button. (See "**Main Pane (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.349
Check in the **Color Calibration Management Console**.	Check in the **Calibration** sheet. (See "**Checking the Color Calibration Status (Windows)**.") ➔P.827 (See "**Checking the Color Calibration Status (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.862

Specifying Execution Guide

The Execution Guide function displays a guide on the Control Panel, **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** (Windows), imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS), RemoteUI, and/or the **Color Calibration Management Console**.
If you enable this function, an Execution Guide is displayed in the following cases.

- When a new Printhead has been installed
- When a certain amount of printing has been executed after color calibration is executed
- When the data of color calibration has been initialized

To enable the function, set **Set Exec. Guide** to **On** on the menu of the Control Panel.
(See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632

Using the **Color Calibration Management Console** Management Functions

The **Color Calibration Management Console** provides the following management functions.

- Detailed execution information
- Execution instructions from the computer
- Multiple printer management

For details, refer to the **Color Calibration Management Console** instructions.
(See "**Color Calibration Management Console (Windows)**.") ➔P.809
(See "**Color Calibration Management Console (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.848

Color Management Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (Optional)

Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) allows you to use much more functionality than the sensor built into the printer and delivers much higher precision color management.
Furthermore, you can execute color calibration and check the calibration logs of printers remotely by using the Color Calibration Management Console (CCMC) color management utility. If the printer is connected to a network, execution can be managed remotely from the computer.
Since this allows the color management status of printers to be centrally managed, it delivers efficient low-cost color management.

This section describes the color management tasks that are possible by using the spectrophotometer unit (optional).

Spectrophotometer Unit (Optional) Color Calibration

Although there are slight differences in how colors appear due to individual variations or aging among printers, there are only small variations in color tones because the variations in color tones can be corrected by executing color calibration using the printer sensor.
Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) allows you to perform higher precision color calibration than the sensor built into the printer.
For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)** ➔P.799

Managing Color Precision Using Color Check

Color check prints and automatically measures the colors of a built-in pattern, and calculates the color difference from a **Calibration Target** (standard color values registered in the printer). We recommend that you execute color calibration if the color difference exceeds the threshold value set by the customer.
By using the CCMC scheduler settings, color check can be executed at the designated time even at times when there are no people around, such as at night, and the need to execute color calibration can be self-diagnosed. Color calibration can be executed automatically depending on the diagnosis result.
For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Color Checks Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)** ➔P.802

Color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper

- When executing on a printer with a Spectrophotometer Unit mounted

  Although there are limitations on the paper that you can execute color calibration on using the printer sensor, if you use the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) you can execute color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper.

  In order to perform color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper, a **Calibration Target** needs to be created and registered in the printer and computer by using this printer with a Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) mounted and the included Media Configuration Tool (MCT).

  In order to create a **Calibration Target** for paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper, you need to register a media information file in advance using **Add Custom Paper**.

  For details on the supported paper, see the following.

  - **Types of Paper** ➔P.492

For details on creating a **Calibration Target**, see the following.

- **Create Calibration Target (Windows)** ➔P.574
- **Create Calibration Target (Mac OS)** ➔P.606

- When executing on a printer without a Spectrophotometer Unit mounted

  You can also reduce the variations in printed color tones when using paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper by creating a **Calibration Target** by using this printer with a Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) mounted and the included MCT.

  You can also execute color calibration even if you are using paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper by registering a Custom Media Information File that contains this **Calibration Target** using the included MCT on a printer (8-color model) that supports calibration link without a spectrophotometer unit mounted.

  Furthermore, it is also possible to execute color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper even on remote printers (8-color models) that support calibration link by sending the Custom Media Information File that contains the **Calibration Target** by e-mail.

  This allows you to operate efficiently and at reduced cost because you can perform calibration operations on the paper you are using that unify color tones across workplaces.

The following procedure using MCT is needed in order to perform color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper using a printer (8-color model) that supports calibration link without a Spectrophotometer Unit mounted.

1. Register the media information using **Add Custom Paper**.
2. Add the **Calibration Target** information in **Create Calibration Target** to the created custom paper.
3. Save as a Custom Media Information File that contains the **Calibration Target**.
4. Add the Custom Media Information File to a printer (8-color model) that supports calibration link without a Spectrophotometer Unit mounted.
5. Execute color calibration using the printer or the CCMC color management utility.

For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Media Configuration Tool (Windows)** →P.546
- **Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)** →P.577

Things That Can Be Done Using CCMC

You can execute the following functions by using the CCMC color management utility.
For a detailed explanation, see the following.

- **Color Calibration Management Console (Windows)** →P.809
- **Color Calibration Management Console (Mac OS)** →P.848

- Remotely executing color calibration

  You can remotely execute color calibration from a remote location.

- Displaying the **Advisability of executing color calibration**

  Advisability of executing color calibration is displayed as a progress bar. This allows you to manage color efficiently because you can visually check roughly how long until color calibration is executed next.

- Remotely Executing Color Check

  You can remotely execute color check from a remote location. Furthermore, by using the scheduler settings, color check can be executed at the designated time even at times when there are no people around, such as at night, and the need to execute color calibration can be self-diagnosed. Color calibration can be executed automatically depending on the diagnosis result.

- Managing the color calibration logs of remotely connected printers

  The printer calibration logs are displayed in a list, making it possible to grasp the color management status of multiple remotely connected printers.

  This makes it possible for administrators to identify, execute, and manage printers that require color calibration, and makes administrative work more efficient.

- Exporting Color Measurement Data

  You can save the color measurement data of any color chart on the computer by using the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional). This makes it possible to create ICC profiles for paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper by importing the color measurement data for that paper into commercially available ICC profile creation software.

  For details on the supported paper, see the following.

- **Displaying the Paper Reference Guide** →P.496

Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)

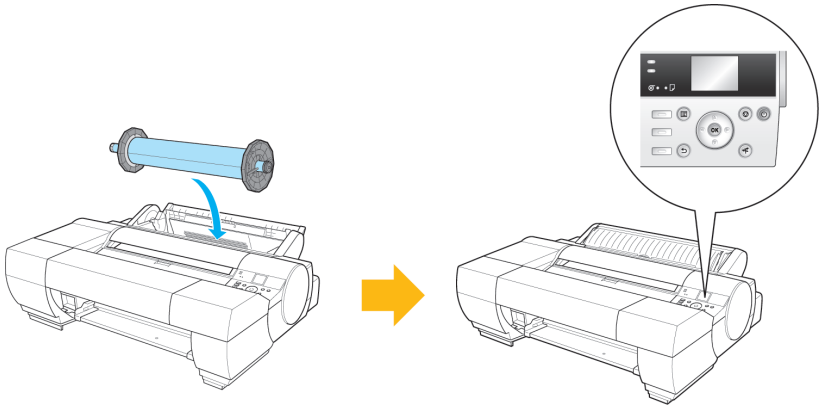
This section provides practical examples of using the Spectrophotometer Unit to execute color calibration and make printer adjustments.

- Items to Prepare
  - Printer
  - Spectrophotometer Unit
  - Paper that can be used for color calibration

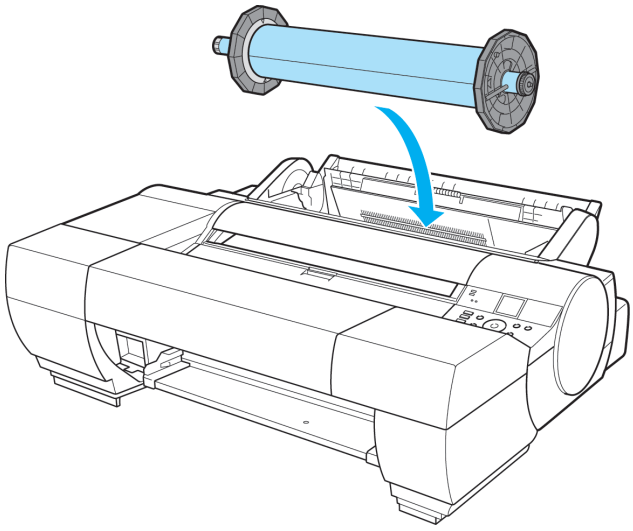
Note
- Make sure that your paper can be used for color calibration. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

Executing Color Calibration from the Control Panel on the Printer

Follow the steps below to execute color calibration from the Control Panel.
To execute color calibration, all you need to do is load paper and select the menu on the Control Panel.



1 Load paper in the printer.



2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select (Settings/Adj. tab) and then press **OK**.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

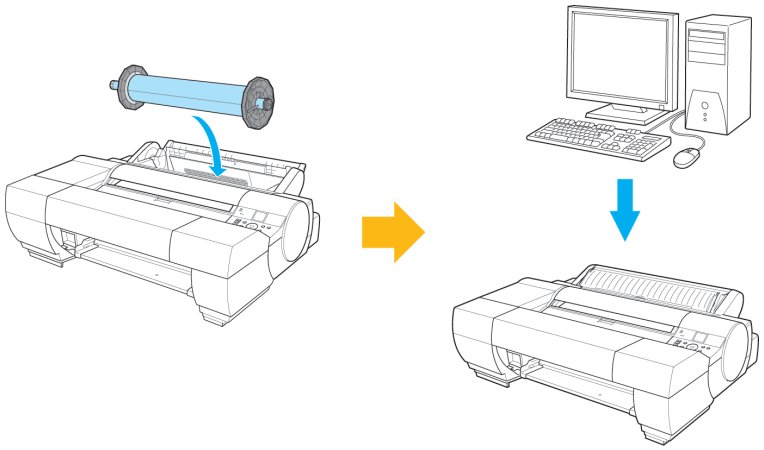
4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Calibration**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AutoAdjst(HiPrc)** and then press **OK** to execute color calibration.
The system then prints the test pattern built into the printer, performs color measurement, and automatically sets the adjustment value.

Note
- For details, see "**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option).**" ➔P.799

Executing Color Calibration from the Computer

With the **Color Calibration Management Console**, you can execute color calibration from the computer via the same process outlined above.



For details, refer to the **Color Calibration Management Console** instructions.
(See "**Executing Color Calibration (Windows).**") ➔P.828
(See "**Executing Color Calibration (Mac OS).**") ➔P.863

Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)

Features of Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit

Color calibration improves color consistency by compensating for slight differences in how color appears when printing due to individual variations or aging among the printers.
Executing color calibration from the Spectrophotometer Unit prints a test pattern (built into the printer), which will be measured automatically by the Spectrophotometer Sensor on the Spectrophotometer Unit.
The printer is then configured with calibration adjustment values reflecting the results of color measurement.
By using the Spectrophotometer Unit, you can execute color calibration with higher precision compared to using the printer sensor.

Important
- In order to increase the color stability precision when executing color calibration, maintain a constant temperature and humidity environment each time within the range of temperatures of 15 to 30°C and within the range of humidities of 40 to 60%.
  Executing color calibration under various temperature and humidity conditions may prevent the printer from making the correct adjustments.
- Before color calibration, ensure the printer is not exposed to direct sunlight or other strong sources of light.
  If the printer is exposed to strong sources of light, correct adjustment may not be possible.

Recommend Timing for Color Calibration

We recommend color calibration in the following situations.

- After initial printer installation
- After Printhead replacement

- If colors seem different from before, despite using the same printing environment, under the same conditions
- To ensure uniform colors when printing on multiple printers (however, be sure to use the same version of firmware and printer driver, under the same settings)
- When the Execution Guide is displayed (Specifying Execution Guide ➔P.801)
- The results of a Color Check exceed the threshold value.
  (See "**Color Checks Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") ➔P.802

Executing Color Calibration from the Control Panel on the Printer

Execute color calibration from the Control Panel on the printer as follows.
Refer to the information on **Color Calibration Management Console** operations when executing color calibration from the computer.
(See "**Executing Color Calibration (Windows)**.") ➔P.828
(See "**Executing Color Calibration (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.863

• Preparing the Printer

1 You can confirm whether the paper to be loaded can be used in color calibration.
(See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") ➔P.496

2 Load the paper.
(See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder**.") ➔P.503
(See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer**.") ➔P.505

Note
- If **Adj. Quality** has not been executed even once on the paper you are using, execute **Adj. Quality** in the Control Panel menu.
  (See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment**.") ➔P.771

3 Select the White/Black Backing Plate color.
We recommend white.
(See "**Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color**.") ➔P.804

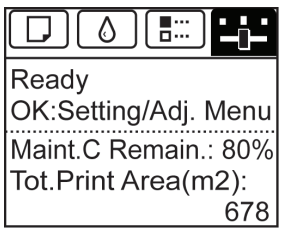
Note
- For the color of the White/Black Backing Plate, continue using the selected color without changing each time you execute color calibration.

4 Choose the size of the test pattern.
Set **Pattern Size** in the Control Panel menu.
(See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632

Note
- If you want to prioritize the color measurement precision, it is recommended that you set the **Pattern Size** to **Large**.

• Executing Color Calibration from the Control Panel on the Printer

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select (Settings/Adj. tab).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Calibration**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AutoAdjst(HiPrc)** and then press the **OK** button.
After the environment measurements and paper are confirmed, and color calibration is executed, the adjustment value is set automatically.

Applying Calibration Adjustment Values During Printing

The application of the calibration adjustment values when printing can be set in the printer driver or on the menu of the Control Panel.
However, when the setting value of the printer driver and the setting value of the Control Panel differ, the setting of the printer driver is prioritized.

How to Apply	How to Operate
Configure on the printer driver menu. (Windows)	Configure **Calibration Value**. (See "**Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)**.") ➔P.171
Configure on the printer driver menu. (Mac OS)	Configure **Calibration Value**. (See "**Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.352
Configure on the menu of the Control Panel.	From **Set./Adj. Menu**, select **Adjust Printer** > **Calibration** > **Use Adj. Value**. (See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632

Note
- After color calibration, you can use the printer driver to make further color adjustments as necessary. (See "**Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver**.") ➔P.53

Checking Color Calibration Execution Logs

You can confirm information of color calibration such as the execution date and executed paper type by the following method.

How to Check	How to Operate
Confirm it on the Control Panel of the printer.	From **Set./Adj. Menu**, select **Adjust Printer** > **Calibration** > **Calibration Log**. (See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632
Print information about the printer.	From **Set./Adj. Menu**, select **Test Print** > **Status Print**. (See "**Status Print**.") ➔P.642
Confirm with **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**. (Windows)	On the **Information** sheet of **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**, click the **View Calibration Log** button. (See "**The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**.") ➔P.700
Confirm this in the **Printer Information** dialog box of the printer driver. (Mac OS)	In the **Printer Information** dialog box, click the **Information** tab, and click the **View Calibration Log** button. (See "**Main Pane (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.349
Check in the **Color Calibration Management Console**.	Check in the **Calibration** sheet. (See "**Checking the Color Calibration Status (Windows)**.") ➔P.827 (See "**Checking the Color Calibration Status (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.862

Specifying Execution Guide

The Execution Guide function displays a guide on the Control Panel, **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** (Windows), imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS), RemoteUI, and/or the **Color Calibration Management Console**.
If you enable this function, an Execution Guide is displayed in the following cases.

- When a new Printhead has been installed

- When a certain amount of printing has been executed after color calibration is executed
- When the data of color calibration has been initialized

To enable the function, set **Set Exec. Guide** to **On** on the menu of the Control Panel.
(See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632

Using the **Color Calibration Management Console** Management Functions

The **Color Calibration Management Console** provides the following management functions.

- Detailed execution information
- Execution instructions from the computer
- Multiple printer management

For details, refer to the **Color Calibration Management Console** instructions.
(See "**Color Calibration Management Console (Windows)**.") ➔P.809
(See "**Color Calibration Management Console (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.848

Color Checks Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)

Features of Color Checks Using the Spectrophotometer Unit

A color check calculates the difference between the results of color measurement on the pattern built into the printer and the calibration target.
Executing a color check prints a pattern, which is then measured automatically by the Spectrophotometer Sensor on the Spectrophotometer Unit.
The resulting measurement value is then compared with the calibration target stored on the printer, and the corresponding difference is displayed on the Control Panel and **Color Calibration Management Console**.

Note

- When printing the color check pattern, the calibration adjustment values are applied even if **Use Adj. Value** is set to **Disabled** in the Control Panel menu.
(See "**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") ➔P.799

Setting Threshold Values

Threshold values are used in the Color Check process.
Set in the **Color Calibration Management Console**.
(See "**Executing Color Check (Windows)**.") ➔P.838
(See "**Executing Color Check (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.872

Executing Color Check from the Control Panel on the Printer

Follow the steps below to execute a Color Check from the Control Panel.
Refer to the information on **Color Calibration Management Console** operations when executing color check from the computer.
(See "**Executing Color Check (Windows)**.") ➔P.838
(See "**Executing Color Check (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.872

- Preparing the Printer

1 First, check whether the paper to be loaded can be used in a Color Check.
The types of paper that can be used in Color Checks are the same as those that can be used in **AutoAdjst(HiPrc)** using the Spectrophotometer Unit.
(See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") ➔P.496

2 Load the paper.
(See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder**.") ➔P.503
(See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer**.") ➔P.505

Note
- If **Adj. Quality** has not been executed even once on the paper you are using, execute **Adj. Quality** in the Control Panel menu.
(See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment**.") ➔P.771

3 Select the White/Black Backing Plate color.
(See "**Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color**.") ➔P.804

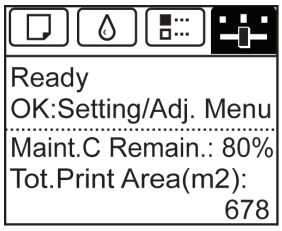
Note
- For the color of the White/Black Backing Plate, select the color from when color calibration was executed using the Spectrophotometer Unit.
(See "**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") ➔P.799

4 Select the pattern size.
Set **Pattern Size** in the Control Panel menu.
(See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632

Note
- To increase the precision of the color check, select the **Pattern Size** from when color calibration was executed using the Spectrophotometer Unit.
(See "**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") ➔P.799

- Executing a Color Check from the Control Panel

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select (Settings/Adj. tab).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Calibration**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **ColorCheck Print** and then press the **OK** button.
The printer then measures environmental conditions, checks the paper, and executes a Color Check.

6 The results of the Color Check are shown on the Control Panel.
If the color measurement results exceed the threshold values, we recommend executing color calibration.

Using the Color Calibration Management Console Management Functions

The **Color Calibration Management Console** provides the following management functions.

- Detailed execution information
- Execution instructions from the computer
- Multiple printer management

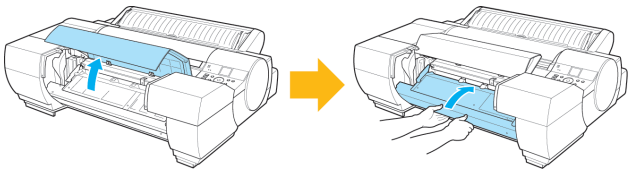
For details, refer to the **Color Calibration Management Console** instructions.
(See "**Color Calibration Management Console (Windows).**") ➔P.809
(See "**Color Calibration Management Console (Mac OS).**") ➔P.848

Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color

The Spectrophotometer Unit (option) uses the White/Black Backing Plate to measure colors. Choose white (white backing) or black (black backing) based on your particular printing application.

Important
- The White/Black Backing Plate is fragile. Do not bend or drop it.

1 If the Up-down Unit is lowered, open the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover and lift up the central part (near the blue label) of the Up-down Unit.

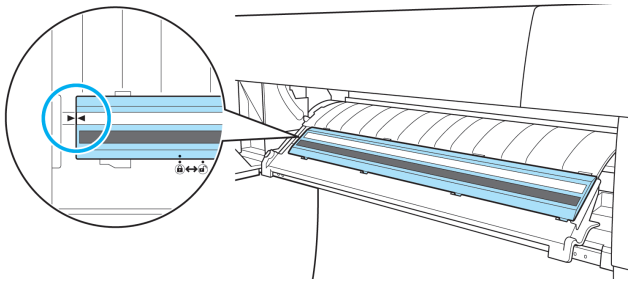


Important
- Lifting up the ends of the Up-down Unit may cause damage.

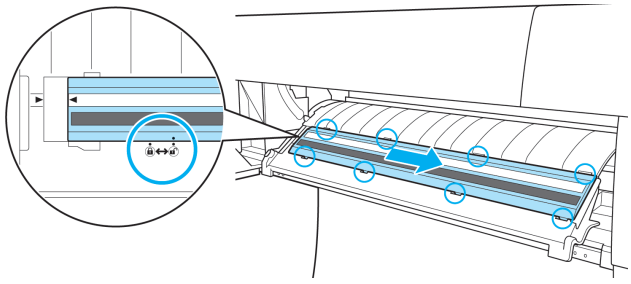
2 Turn the printer off.
(See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") ➔P.21

Important
- If you change the color of the White/Black Backing Plate while the printer is turned on, the printer will not recognize that the color has changed.

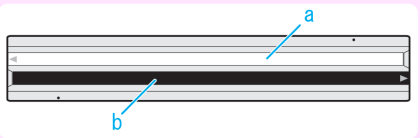
3 Check the selected color.
The selected color is the color where the triangle to the left of the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide and the triangle to the left of the White/Black Backing Plate meet.



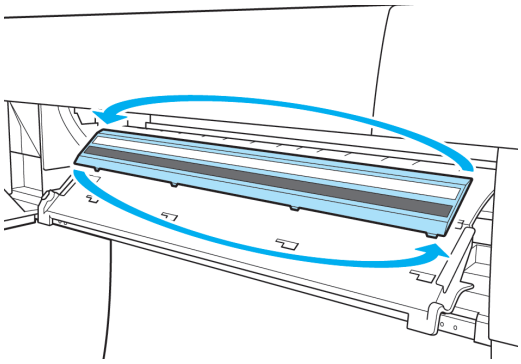
4 Hold the end of the White/Black Backing Plate attached to the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide and move it in the direction of the arrow to release it.



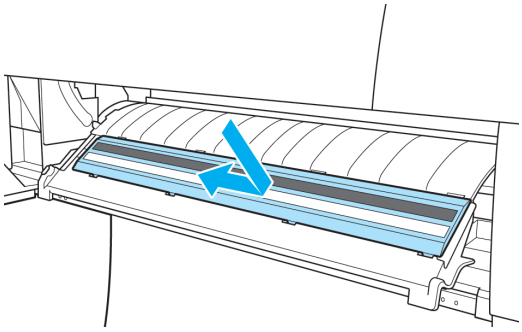
Important
- When handling the White/Black Backing Plate, do not touch the white backing plate (a) or black backing plate (b) directly with your hands.
If the surface becomes dirty or scratched, the printer may not be able to obtain the correct color measurement results.



5 Lift the White/Black Backing Plate, remove it, and rotate it 180 degrees.



6 Fit the protrusions of the White/Black Backing Plate into the grooves of the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide and move the backing in the direction of the arrow to fix it in place.



Adjustment Types of Color Calibration

Adjustment Types of Color Calibration

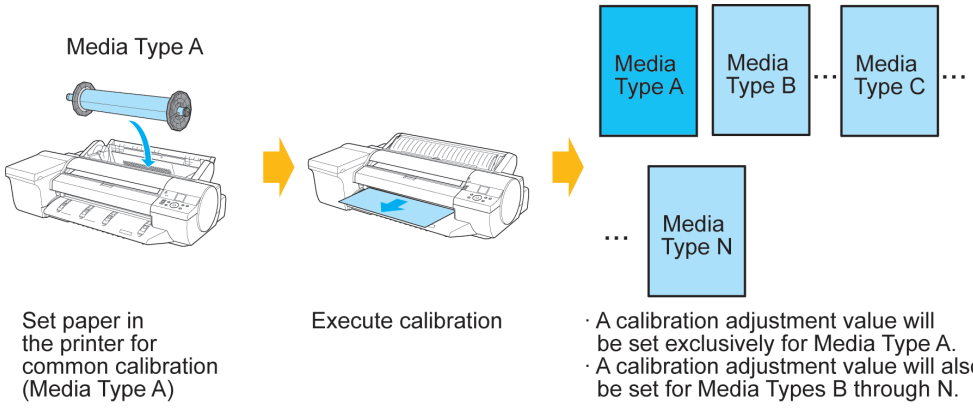
Color calibration has two adjustment types, Common calibration and Unique calibration, with one of these selected when color calibration is executed.
The selected adjustment type is determined from the media type that color calibration is executed on.

- Common calibration

  Common calibration is a feature that allows you to use multiple media types easily in a short time because it is not necessary to execute color calibration on each media type.

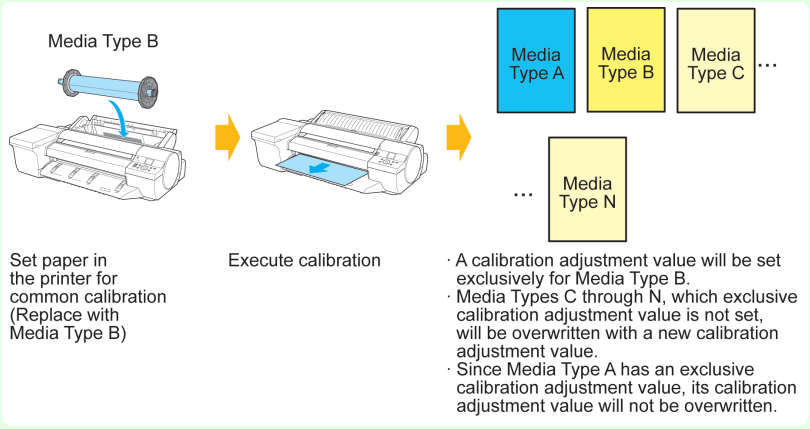
  If color calibration is executed on paper categorized as Common calibration, dedicated calibration adjustment values are set on the media type that Common calibration was executed on.

  Furthermore, calibration adjustment values are set on all print qualities for all media types where color calibration has not been executed.



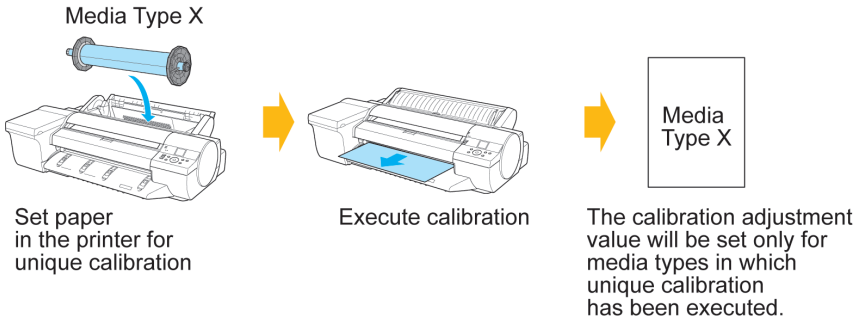
Note

- If the paper you are using does not support color calibration, execute color calibration using the paper where the adjustment type is Common calibration, then you can set the calibration adjustment values for the paper you are using.
- The calibration adjustment values are not overwritten for media types where color calibration has been executed once and dedicated calibration adjustment values have been set.



- Unique calibration

If color calibration is executed on paper categorized as Unique calibration, calibration adjustment values are set only for the media type that the color calibration was executed on.



Note

- Even if paper categorized as Unique calibration is used, if the media type has yet to execute color calibration even once and does not have any dedicated calibration adjustment values, the calibration adjustment values are overwritten when Common calibration is executed.
- Calibration values configured by color calibration using the printer sensor and calibration values configured by color calibration using the optional Spectrophotometer Unit are managed as separate data.
  Because of this, the calibration values configured using the Spectrophotometer Unit are not overwritten when Common calibration is executed using the printer sensor.

Checking the Applied Calibration Values

Depending on the paper type, it may be possible to execute color calibration using both the printer sensor and the Spectrophotometer Unit and to have two sets of calibration values.
In this case, the calibration values that were set when color calibration was executed the last time are applied when printing.
The currently applied calibration values can be checked using the **Color Calibration Management Console** or Control Panel menu.

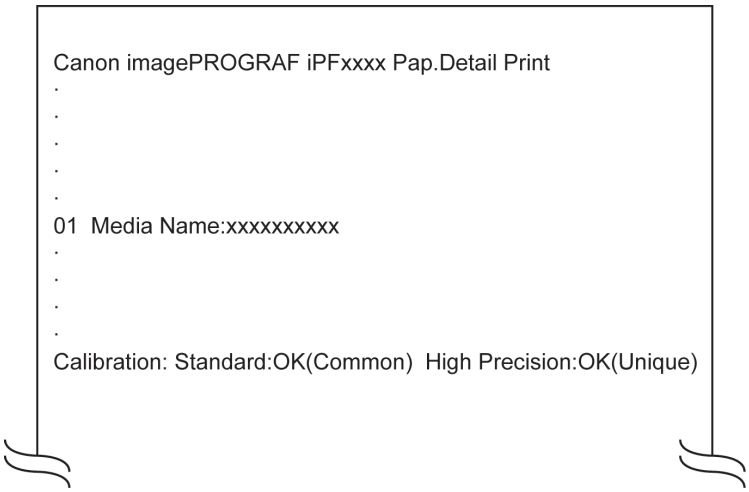
How to Check	How to Operate	Displayed Content
Check in the **Color Calibration Management Console**.	Display the **Paper Status** dialog box and view the **Type**. (See "**Calibration Sheet (Windows).**") →P.822	• **Auto Adjust**: Calibration values set using the printer sensor • **Auto Adjust (High Precision)**: Calibration values set using the Spectrophotometer Unit

How to Check	How to Operate	Displayed Content
Check in the **Color Calibration Management Console**.	(See "**Calibration Sheet (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.858	• **Auto Adjust**: Calibration values set using the printer sensor • **Auto Adjust (High Precision)**: Calibration values set using the Spectrophotometer Unit
Check in the menu of the Control Panel.	From **Set./Adj. Menu**, select **Adjust Printer** > **Calibration** > **Calibration Log** and then view **Adjustment Type**. (See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632	• **Common Calibration**: Calibration values set using the printer sensor (Common calibration) • **Unique Calibration**: Calibration values set using the printer sensor (Unique calibration) • **UniqCal HiPrec/Std**: Calibration values set using the Spectrophotometer Unit (**Pattern Size** is **Standard**) • **UniqCal HiPrec/Lge**: Calibration values set using the Spectrophotometer Unit (**Pattern Size** is **Large**)

To Confirm the Paper Information Registered on the Printer

- Refer to the **Calibration** sheet on the Color Calibration Management Console when checking details on the computer.
  (See "**Calibration Sheet (Windows)**.") ➔P.822
  (See "**Calibration Sheet (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.858
- To print media information, select **Paper Details** on the Control Panel menu.
  The following is displayed in the **Calibration** field.

Display	Meaning
Standard	Supports color calibration using the printer sensor
High Precision	Supports color calibration using the Spectrophotometer Unit
OK(Common)	Executes Common calibration
OK(Unique)	Executes Unique calibration
N/A	Color calibration cannot be executed
N/A(Colorimetry Only)	Color calibration cannot be executed, but it can be used for acquiring color measurement data



Important

- To restore the default settings, set **Reset PaprSetngs** to **Yes** in **System Setup** in the Control Panel menu.
  Because paper information added or modified by the Media Configuration Tool is deleted, if you have calibrated the printer using paper with information added by the Media Configuration Tool, color calibration executed this way can no longer be applied to any type of paper.
  If you wish to apply calibration results, prepare calibration-compatible paper that was in the original settings and perform calibration again.

Color Calibration Management Console (Windows)

Features of Color Calibration Management Console 809

Installation Procedure 810
Uninstallation Procedure 813
Startup 813

Main Window 814
File Menu 816
Tools Menu (When the Calibration Sheet is Displayed) 818
Tools Menu (When the Color Measurement Sheet is Displayed) 818
Help Menu 820
Printer List 820
Calibration Sheet 822
Color Measurement Sheet 823

Changing the Printers Displayed in the Printer List 825
Checking the Color Calibration Status 827
Executing Color Calibration 828

Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart 831
Executing Color Check 838
Scheduling Color Check 842
Registering Execution Logs in Favorites 843
Deleting Execution Logs From Favorites 845
Saving Execution Logs on the Computer 845

Switching Display Units 846
Getting Audio Notification of Color Calibration Finished 847

Features of Color Calibration Management Console

Color Calibration Management Console is software that allows you to view the color calibration status and execute color calibration on multiple printers. You can also acquire color measurement data and execute color checks on printers that have a spectrophotometer unit installed.

- Display Color Calibration Status
- Execute Color Calibration
- Acquire Color Measurement Data
- Execute Color Check

Display Color Calibration Status

The printers connected via the network and USB are displayed in a list in the main window.
If there are multiple printers, printers where color calibration has been executed on the same paper type and that paper is loaded in the printer are displayed in the same calibration group. Printers that are in the same calibration group can be corrected to give the same color tones by executing color calibration.
When a printer is selected from the main window, the color calibration status, execution logs, etc. of that printer are displayed.
For details on how to check the color calibration status, see "**Checking the Color Calibration Status**." ➔P.827

Execute Color Calibration

You can execute color calibration.
Executing color calibration improves color consistency by compensating for slight differences in how color appears due to individual variations or aging among the printers.
For the procedure for executing color calibration, see "**Executing Color Calibration**." ➔P.828

Note

- In order to execute color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper/feed certified paper, a calibration target is required for that paper. Calibration targets can be created on a printer with a spectrophotometer unit installed by using the Media Configuration Tool that is included with printers that support the spectrophotometer unit.
  For details on creating a calibration target, refer to the following topics.
  - **Create Calibration Target** →P.574

Acquiring Color Measurement Data from the Color Chart

You can measure the colors of any arbitrary color chart and save the color measurement data on your computer. You can then create an ICC profile by importing this data into commercially available ICC profile creation software.
For the procedure for acquiring color measurement data, see "**Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart**." →P.831

Note

- This function can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

Execute Color Check

You can execute a color check.
When a color check is executed, a built-in pattern is printed, the color difference from a calibration target registered in the printer is calculated, and the check results are displayed.
Execute a color check when you want to check the color status of a printer in detail.
For the procedure for executing color check, see "**Executing Color Check**." →P.838
You can also configure to automatically execute color check on a specified date and time.
For the procedure for configuring color check scheduler settings, see "**Scheduling Color Check**." →P.842

Note

- This function can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

Installation Procedure

The installation procedure for the Color Calibration Management Console is as follows.

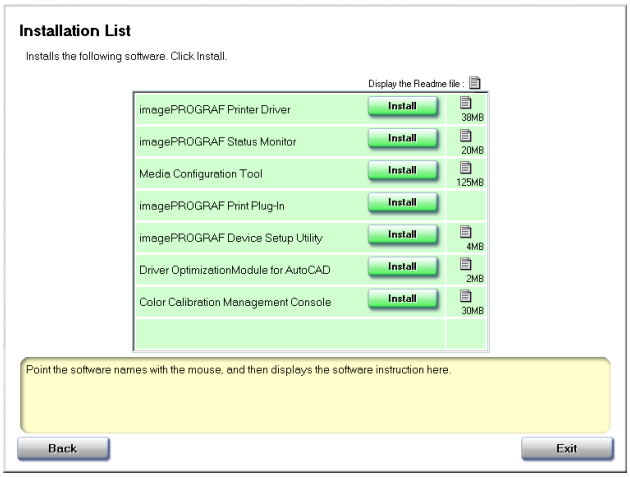
1 Place the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and start the installer.

Note

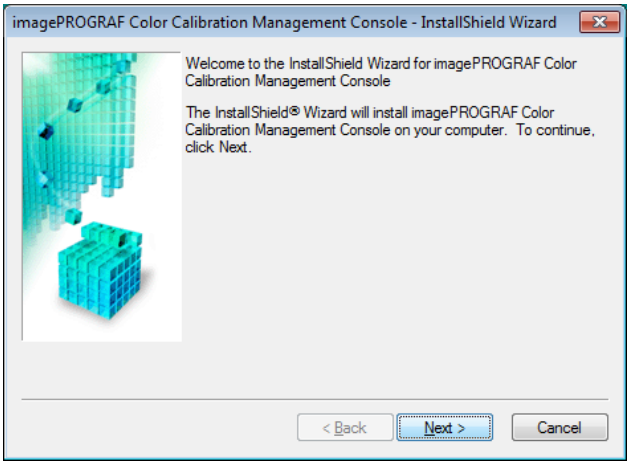
- If the installer screen does not appear automatically, open the CD-ROM from **My Computer** and click **iP-FInst.exe** to open the icon.

2 Click the **Install Individual Software** button.

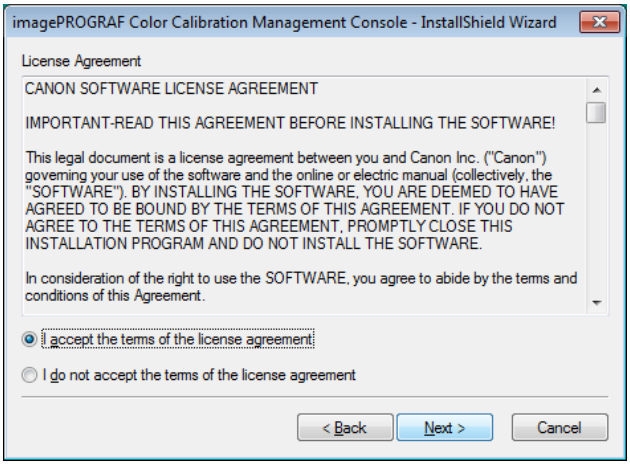
3 Click the **Install** button of **Color Calibration Management Console**.



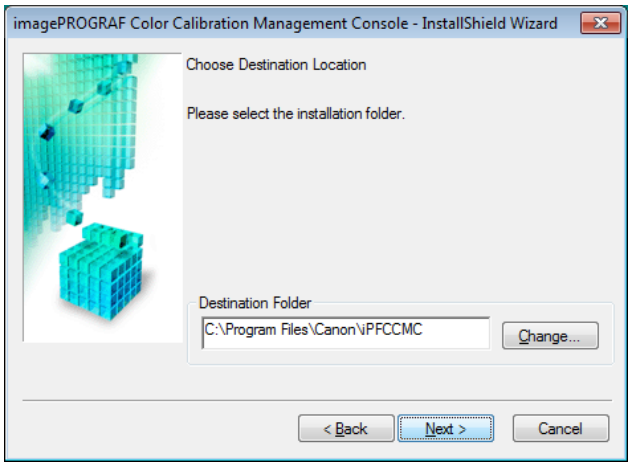
4 Click the **Next** button.



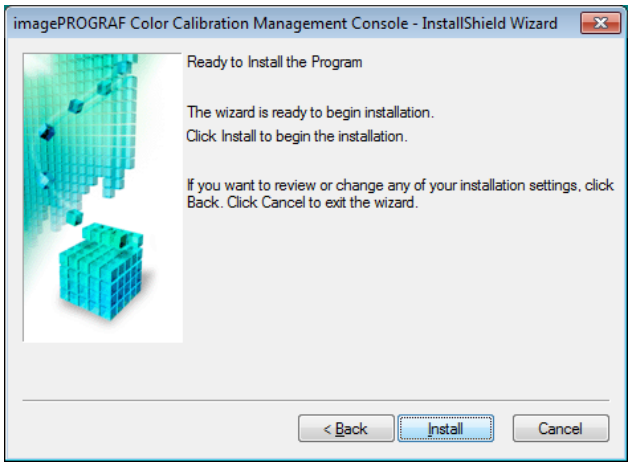
5 After reading the license agreement, select **I accept the terms of the license agreement** and click the **Next** button.



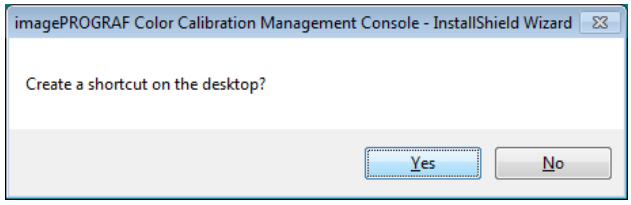
6 Choose a location to install the software and click the **Next** button.



7 Click the **Install** button.

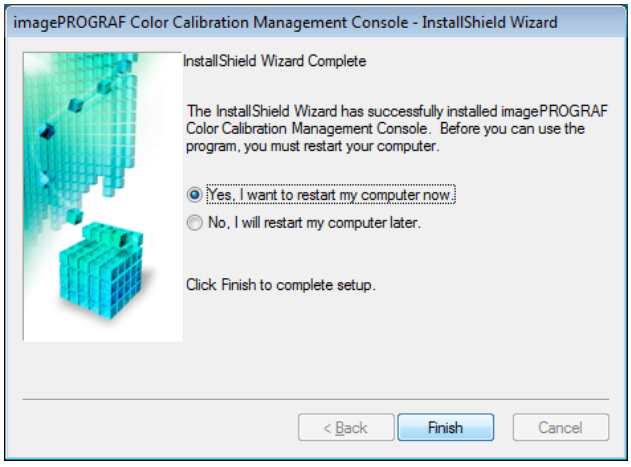


8 If you want to create a shortcut to Color Calibration Management Console on the Desktop, click the **Yes** button.



9 Select **Yes, I want to restart my computer now.** or **No, I will restart my computer later.** and click the **Finish** button.

To complete the installation of the Color Calibration Management Console, restart your computer.

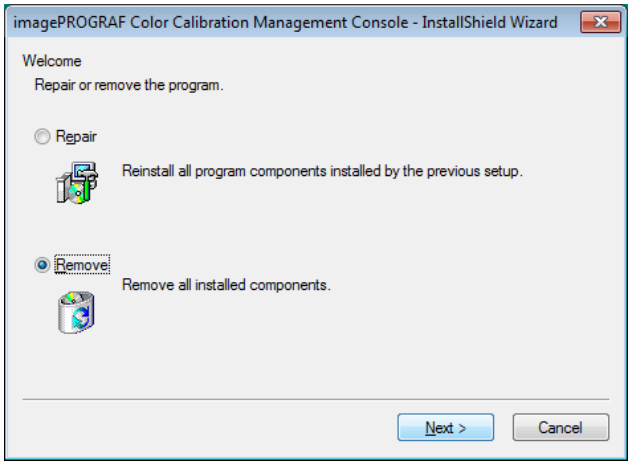


Uninstallation Procedure

The uninstallation procedure for the Color Calibration Management Console is as follows.

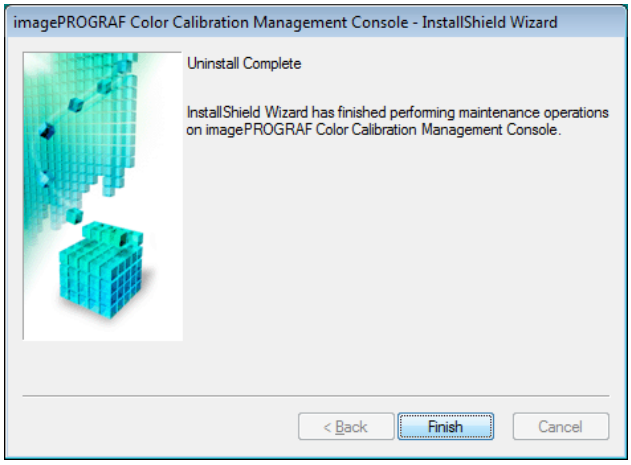
1. From the **start** menu, click **All Programs>imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console>Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console)**.

2. Select **Remove** and click the **Next** button.



3. Click the **Finish** button.

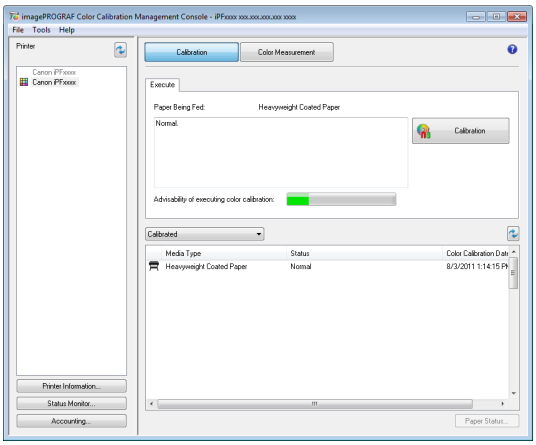
   This completes the uninstallation of the Color Calibration Management Console.



Startup

The startup procedure for the Color Calibration Management Console is as follows.
Double-click the **Color Calibration Management Console** icon on the desktop.

This displays the Color Calibration Management Console main window.



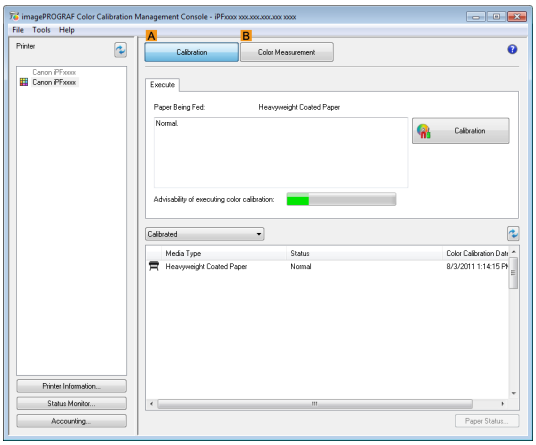
Note

- If there is no **Color Calibration Management Console** icon on the desktop, click **start** and navigate to **All Programs>imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console>imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console**.

Main Window

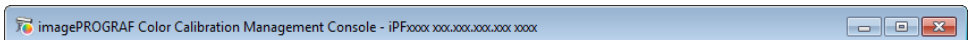
The Color Calibration Management Console main window consists of a title bar, menu bar, **Printer** list, **Calibration** sheet, and **Color Measurement** sheet.

You can switch between the **Calibration** sheet and **Color Measurement** sheet by clicking the **A Calibration** button or **B Color Measurement** button. You can also switch between the sheets from the **File** menu in the menu bar.



- Title bar

  Displays the model name, port name, and installation location of the printer selected in the **Printer** list.



- Menu bar

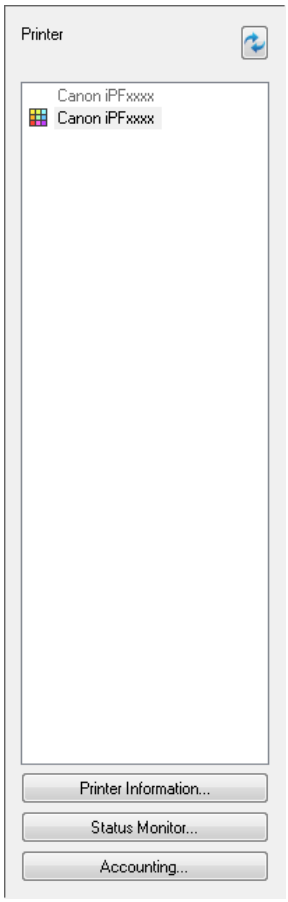
  Allows you to select the menu items for the necessary operations.

For details on each of the menu items, refer to the following topics.

- **File Menu** ➔P.816
- **Tools Menu (When the Calibration Sheet is Displayed)** ➔P.818
- **Tools Menu (When the Color Measurement Sheet is Displayed)** ➔P.818
- **Help Menu** ➔P.820

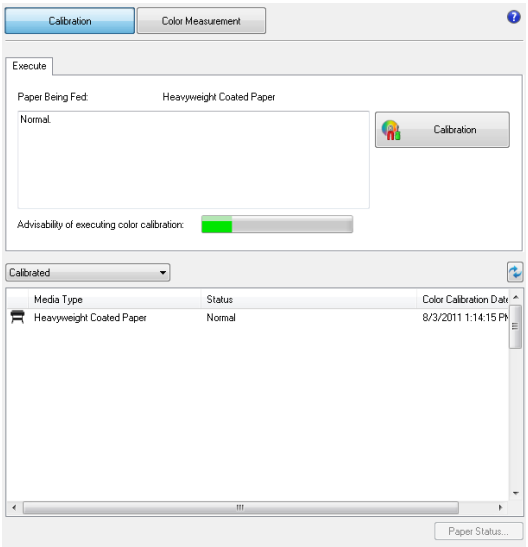
- **Printer** List

  Displays a list of printers that can be controlled. For details, see "**Printer List.**" ➔P.820



- **Calibration** Sheet

  This sheet allows you to execute color calibration. For details, see "**Calibration Sheet.**" ➔P.822

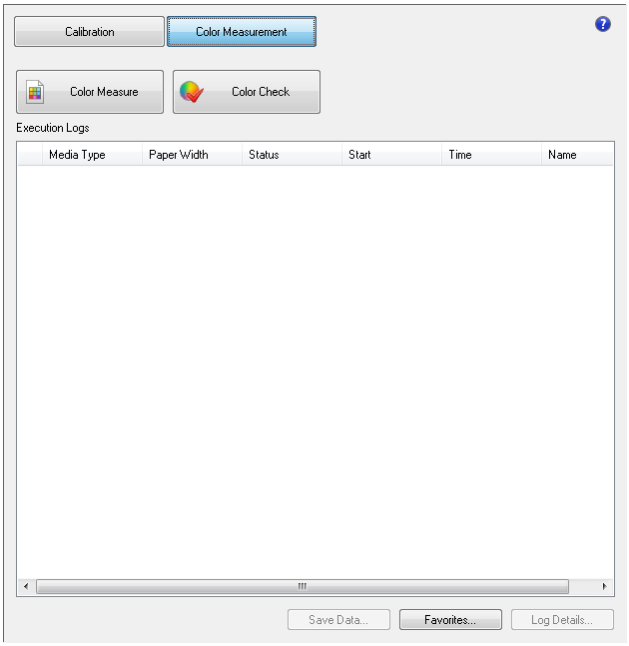


- **Color Measurement** Sheet

  This sheet allows you to acquire color chart measurement data and execute color check. For details, see "**Color Measurement Sheet.**" ➔P.823

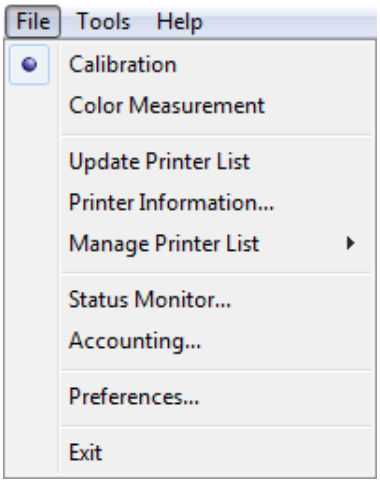
Note

- Enabled when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.



File Menu

This section describes each of the menu items in the **File** menu.



- **Calibration / Color Measurement**
  Selects the main window sheet.
- **Update Printer List**
  Refreshes the **Printer** list on the left side of the main window with the latest information.
- **Printer Information**
  Displays the **Printer Information** dialog box for the printer selected in the **Printer** list. This allows you to check detailed information about the printer.
- **Manage Printer List**
  A menu for managing the printers displayed in the **Printer** list is displayed.

- **Register**

  Displays the **Search Settings** dialog box and registers the printers displayed in the **Printer** list.

  For the procedure for registering a printer to display in the **Printer** list, see "**Changing the Printers Displayed in the Printer List**." ➔P.825

- **List and Delete**

  View details of the printers displayed in the **Printer** list and delete printers from the **Printer** list.

  For the procedure for deleting a printer from the **Printer** list, see "**Changing the Printers Displayed in the Printer List**." ➔P.825

- **Export**

  Saves the **Printer** list registration information in a file.

- **Import**

  Imports **Printer** list registration information.

  Registration information from a different OS cannot be imported.

- **Options**

  Displays the **Printer List Options** dialog box for configuring synchronization with the printers that use the printer driver.

  When the **Synchronize with Printers that Use the Printer Driver** check box is selected in this dialog box, printers that Color Calibration Management Console supports that are registered in the OS are displayed in the **Printer** list.

  When the check box is clear, printers need to be registered by executing **Register** from **Manage Printer List** in the **File** menu after the printer has been installed in order for the printer to appear in the **Printer** list.

- **Status Monitor**

  You can start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor for the printer selected in the **Printer** list, allowing you to confirm information such as the status of print jobs.

  For details on **Status Monitor**, see "**The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**." ➔P.700

  This menu might not be available when a printer that is connected via IPv6 is selected depending on how it was registered in the **Printer** list.

- **Accounting**

  You can start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor Accounting Manager main window for the printer selected in the **Printer** list, allowing you to confirm information such as the cost of printing.

  For details on the **Accounting**, see "**Accounting Manager**." ➔P.705

  This menu might not be available when a printer that is connected via IPv6 is selected depending on how it was registered in the **Printer** list.

- **Preferences**

  Displays the **Preferences** dialog box.

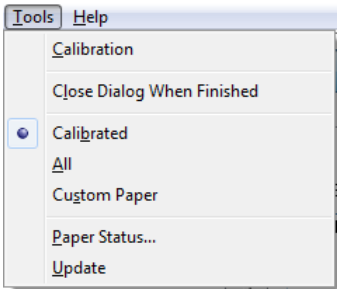
  This allows you to select the units displayed in the Color Calibration Management Console, configure the sound that is displayed when executing a color calibration, acquiring color measurement data, or executing a color check finishes, and configure other settings.

- **Exit**

  Exits Color Calibration Management Console.

Tools Menu (When the Calibration Sheet is Displayed)

This section describes each of the menu items in the **Tools** menu when the **Calibration** sheet is displayed in the main window.



- **Calibration**

  Displays the **Execute Color Calibration** dialog box.

  Executes color calibration on the selected printer.

  For the procedure for executing color calibration, see "**Executing Color Calibration.**" ➔P.828

- **Close Dialog When Finished**

  Selects whether or not to close the progress dialog box automatically when the color calibration finishes.

  When the check box is selected, the progress dialog box closes automatically.

- **Calibrated/All/Custom Paper**

  Selects the paper types displayed in the main window (**Calibration** sheet).

- **Paper Status**

  Displays the **Paper Status** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the color calibration and color check execution logs for the selected paper.

- **Update**

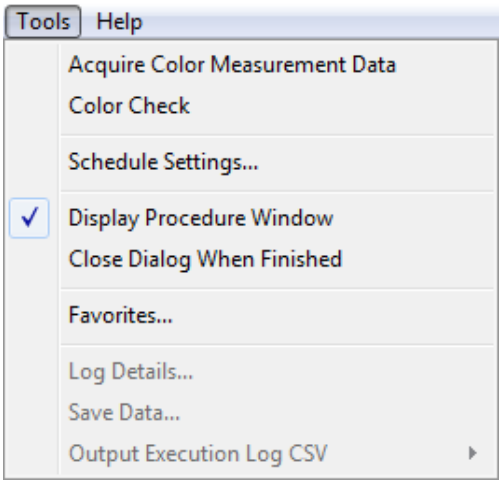
  Refreshes the paper list in the main window with the latest information.

Tools Menu (When the Color Measurement Sheet is Displayed)

This section describes each of the menu items in the **Tools** menu when the **Color Measurement** sheet is displayed in the main window.

Note

- Enabled when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.



- **Acquire Color Measurement Data**

  Displays the procedure description window or **Select Execution Log** window.

  This allows you to measure the colors of a color chart in the selected printer and acquire the color measurement data.

  For the procedure for acquiring color measurement data, see **"Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart."** →P.831

  Important

  - The printer driver needs to be installed in order to acquire color measurement data.
    Select a printer that uses the printer driver in the **Printer** list and acquire the color measurement data.

- **Color Check**

  Displays the **Execute Color Check** dialog box.

  Execute color check on the selected printer.

  For the procedure for executing color check, see **"Executing Color Check."** →P.838

- **Schedule Settings**

  Displays the **Schedule Settings** dialog box.

  You can configure to automatically execute color check.

  For the procedure for configuring color check scheduler settings, see **"Scheduling Color Check."** →P.842

- **Display Procedure Window**

  Selects whether or not to display the procedure description window when executing **Acquire Color Measurement Data**.

  When the check box is selected, the procedure description window is displayed.

- **Close Dialog When Finished**

  Selects whether or not to close the progress dialog box automatically when **Color Check** or **Acquire Color Measurement Data** finishes.

  When the check box is selected, the progress dialog box closes automatically.

- **Favorites**

  Displays the **Favorites Management** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the execution logs registered in the favorites.

- **Log Details**

  Displays the **Execution Log Details** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the details of the execution log selected in **Execution Logs** in the main window.

- **Save Data**

  Displays the **Output Color Measurement Data** dialog box.

  This saves the color measurement data of the execution log selected in **Execution Logs** in the main window on the computer.

  Note

  - This menu cannot be selected if multiple execution logs are selected.

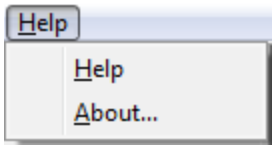
- **Output Execution Log CSV**

  When **Selected Logs** is selected, this saves the execution log selected in **Execution Logs** in the main window on the computer in a CSV format file.

  When **All Logs** is selected, this saves all of the execution logs displayed in **Execution Logs** in the main window on the computer in a CSV format file.

Help Menu

This section describes each of the menu items in the **Help** menu.



- **Help**

  Displays the Color Calibration Management Console help.

- **About**

  Displays the **About** dialog box, which allows you to check the version of Color Calibration Management Console.

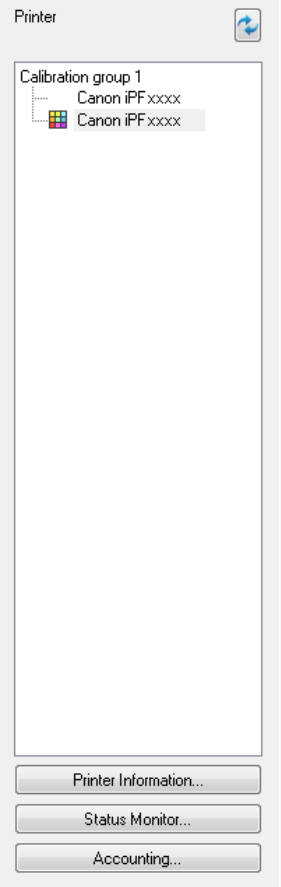
Printer List

The printers displayed in the **Printer** list are printers connected via the network or USB that satisfy the following conditions. However, printers that are connected via a server are not displayed.

- Printers that are compatible with the Color Calibration Management Console
- Printers where the printer driver is installed
- Printers registered using the Color Calibration Management Console

Important

- In order to display printers where the printer driver is installed, you either need to turn on the **Synchronize with Printers that Use the Printer Driver** setting in the **Printer List Options** dialog box or register the printers in the Color Calibration Management Console.
  The **Printer List Options** dialog box can be displayed by selecting **Manage Printer List** > **Options** from the **File** menu.
- For registration in the Color Calibration Management Console, click **Register** from **Manage Printer List** in the **File** menu.



- **Printer**

  If color calibration is executed on the paper being fed, printers that are being fed the same paper are displayed under the **Calibration group**.

  is displayed on printers that have a message related to color calibration.

  is displayed on printers where the spectrophotometer unit is installed.

  Double-click the printer name to display the **Printer Information** dialog box, allowing you to check the detailed printer information.

- button

  Click this button to refresh the **Printer** list with the latest information.

- **Printer Information** button

  Click this button to display the **Printer Information** dialog box for the selected printer, allowing you to check the detailed printer information.

- **Status Monitor** button

  Click this button to start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor for the selected printer, allowing you to confirm information such as the status of print jobs.

  For details on **Status Monitor**, see "**The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**." →P.700

  This button might not be available when a printer that is connected via IPv6 is selected depending on how it was registered in the **Printer** list.

- **Accounting** button

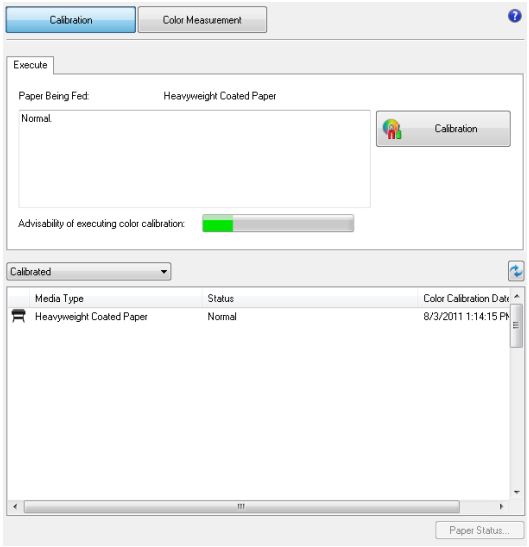
  Click this button to start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor Accounting Manager main window for the selected printer, allowing you to confirm information such as the cost of printing.

  For details on the **Accounting**, see "**Accounting Manager**." →P.705

This button might not be available when a printer that is connected via IPv6 is selected depending on how it was registered in the **Printer** list.

Calibration Sheet

This sheet allows you to execute color calibration and check the color calibration status of the printer selected in the **Printer** list.



- **Paper Being Fed**

  Displays the media type being fed in the printer.

- **Calibration** button

  Click this button to display the **Execute Color Calibration** dialog box.

  Executes color calibration on the selected printer.

  For the procedure for executing color calibration, see "**Executing Color Calibration.**" ➔P.828

- **Advisability of executing color calibration**

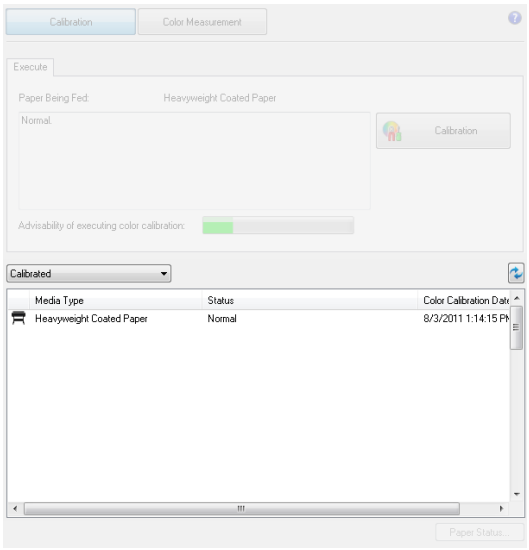
  Displays the status until it is recommended that you execute color calibration. The progress bar grows until the time when calibration is recommended.

- **Paper Status** button

  Click this button to display the **Paper Status** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the color calibration and color check execution logs for the selected paper.

Color calibration status for each paper



Click the button to refresh the list with the latest information. is displayed on the paper currently being fed in the printer.
The paper types displayed in the list are as follows.

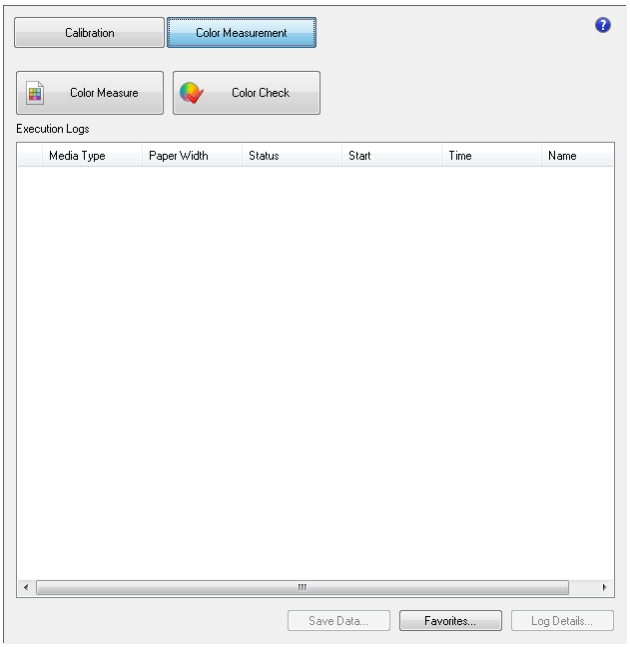
- When **Calibrated** is selected
  Paper types that are registered in a printer where color calibration has been executed are displayed.
- When **All** is selected
  Paper types registered in a printer are displayed.
- When **Custom Paper** is selected
  Paper types other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper that are registered in a printer are displayed.

Color Measurement Sheet

This sheet allows you to use the spectrophotometer unit to measure colors.

When color checks are configured to execute according to a schedule, is displayed in the bottom left of the sheet.
The schedule for executing color check is configured using the **Schedule Settings** dialog box.

For the procedure for configuring color check scheduler settings, see "**Scheduling Color Check.**" →P.842



- **Color Measure** button

  Click this button to display the procedure description window or **Select Execution Log** window.

  This allows you to measure the colors of a color chart in the selected printer and acquire the color measurement data.

  For the procedure for acquiring color measurement data, see "**Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart.**" →P.831

  Important

  - The printer driver needs to be installed in order to acquire color measurement data.
    Select a printer that uses the printer driver in the **Printer** list and acquire the color measurement data.

- **Color Check** button

  Click this button to display the **Execute Color Check** dialog box.

  Execute color check on the selected printer.

  For the procedure for executing color check, see "**Executing Color Check.**" →P.838

- **Execution Logs**

  Displays the execution logs of acquiring color measurement data.

  is displayed on the paper being fed.

  The name registered in the favorites is displayed in **Name**.

- **Save Data** button

  Click this button to display the **Output Color Measurement Data** dialog box.

  This saves the color measurement data from the selected execution log on the computer.

- **Favorites** button

  Click this button to display the **Favorites Management** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the execution logs registered in the favorites.

- **Log Details** button

  Click this button to display the **Execution Log Details** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the details of the selected execution log.

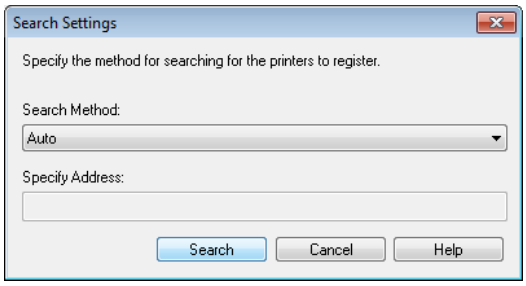
Changing the Printers Displayed in the Printer List

You can search for printers connected via the network or via USB and register them in the **Printer** list in the main window or delete printers displayed in the **Printer** list.

Adding a Printer to the **Printer** List

1. Select **Manage Printer List** > **Register** from the **File** menu.

2. In the **Search Settings** dialog box, select the method for searching for the printers to display in the list and click the **Search** button.

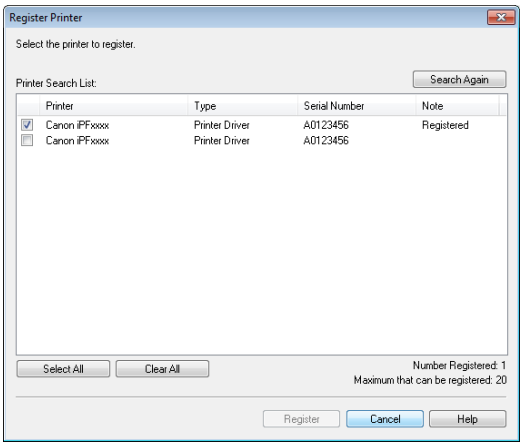


Setting Item	Details
Auto	Searches in the order **Printer Driver**, then **IPv4 - Broadcast**, then **USB**.
IPv4 - Specify Address	Searches by specifying the IPv4 IP address in **Specify Address**.
IPv4 - Broadcast	Searches using the IPv4 limited broadcast address.
IPv6 - Specify Address	Searches by specifying the IPv6 IP address in **Specify Address**.
IPv6 - Multicast	Searches by IPv6 link local scope multicast.
USB	Searches for printers connected via USB.
Printer Driver	Searches for printers for which the printer driver is installed.

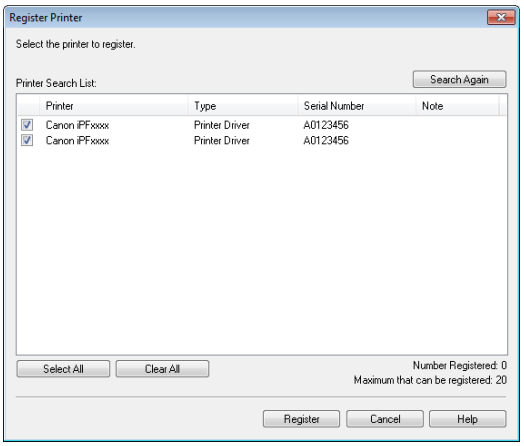
Note

- **IPv6 - Specify Address** and **IPv6 - Multicast** are not displayed on Windows XP.

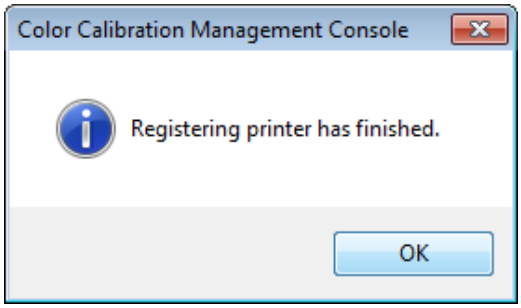
3. The printer search starts and the search results are displayed in the **Register Printer** dialog box.



4 Select the check box for the printer to register from **Printer Search List** and click the **Register** button.



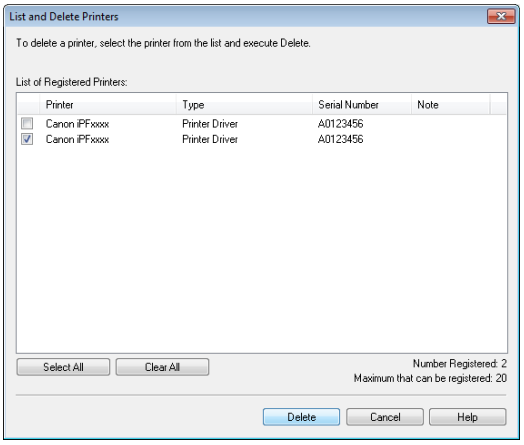
5 Click the **OK** button.



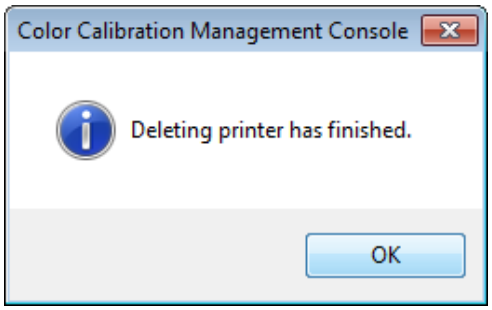
Deleting a Printer from the **Printer** List

1 Select **Manage Printer List** > **List and Delete** from the **File** menu.

2 In the **List and Delete Printers** dialog box, select the printer to delete from **List of Registered Printers** and click the **Delete** button.



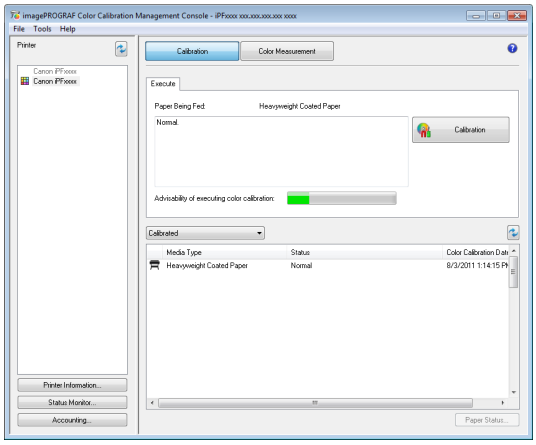
3 Click the **OK** button.



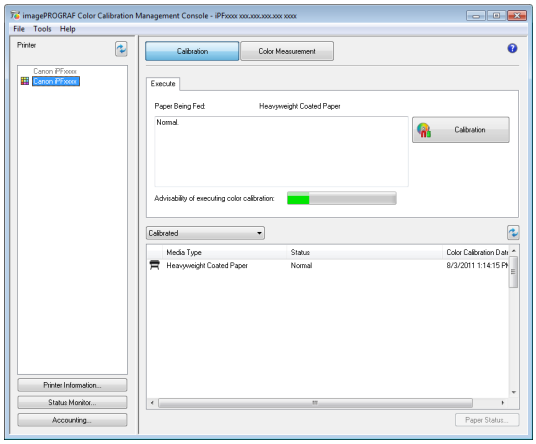
Checking the Color Calibration Status

You can check the color calibration status and execution logs on the **Calibration** sheet in the main window.

1 Open the **Calibration** sheet.



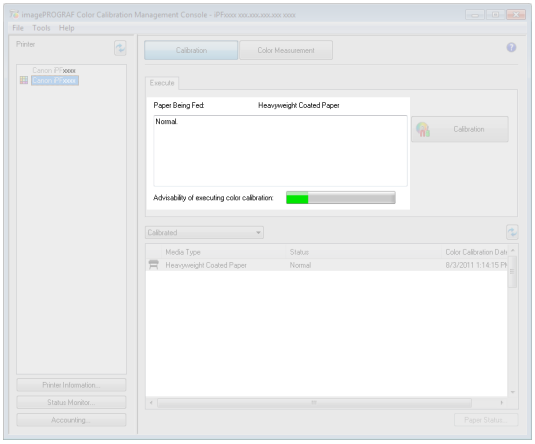
2 Select the printer you want to check the color calibration status of from the **Printer** list.



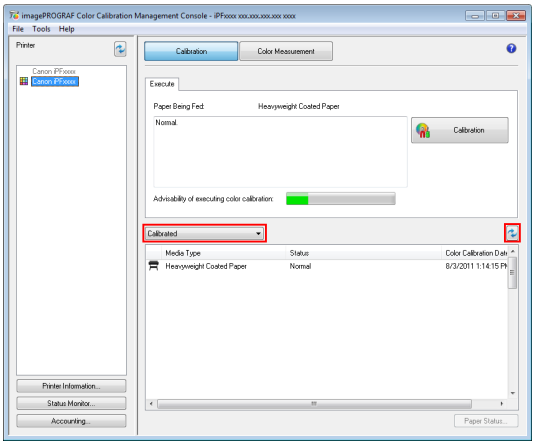
Note

- If there are multiple printers, printers that have the same paper type loaded and where color calibration has been executed on that paper are displayed in the same calibration group.

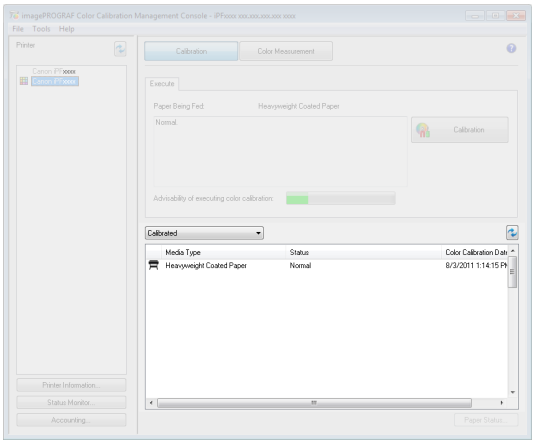
3 Check the color calibration status of the paper being fed in the upper part of the **Calibration** sheet.



4 Select **Calibrated** and click the button.



5 Check the color calibration logs in the lower part of the **Calibration** sheet.



Executing Color Calibration

The procedure for executing color calibration is as follows.

Getting the Printer Ready

1 You can confirm whether the paper to be loaded can be used in color calibration.
(See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

2 Load the paper.
(See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503
(See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505
(See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") ➔P.529

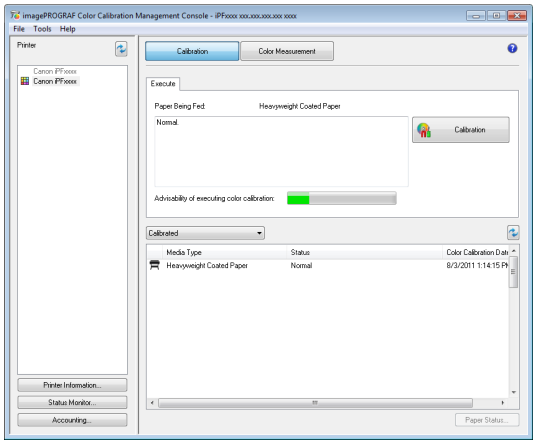
Note
- If **Adj. Quality** has not been executed even once on the paper you are using when you execute **Auto Adjust (High Precision)**, execute **Adj. Quality** in the control panel menu.
(See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.771

3 If a spectrophotometer unit is mounted, select the White/Black Backing Plate color.
We recommend white.
(See "**Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color.**") ➔P.804

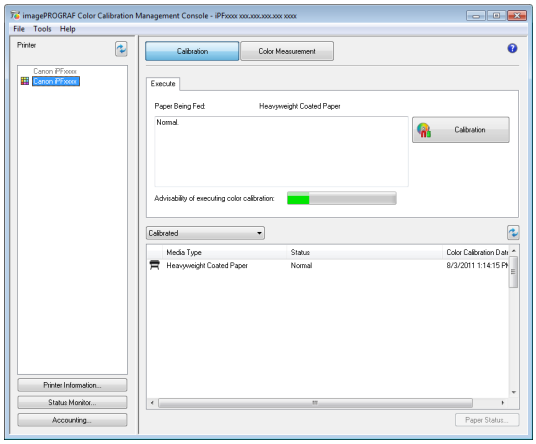
Note
- For the color of the White/Black Backing Plate, continue using the selected color without changing each time you execute color calibration.

Executing Color Calibration

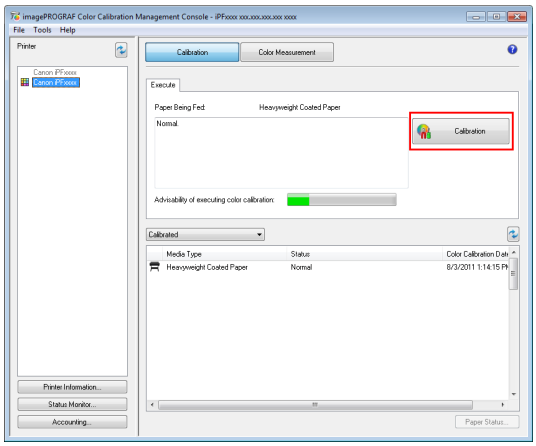
1 Open the **Calibration** sheet.



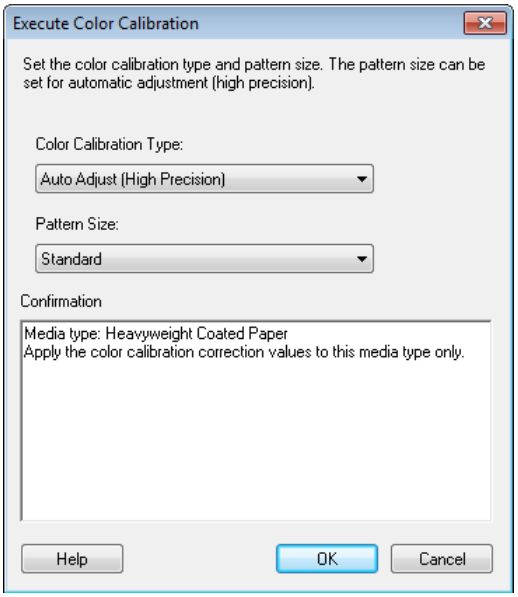
2 Select the printer you want to execute color calibration on from the **Printer** list.



3 Click the **Calibration** button.



4 The **Execute Color Calibration** dialog box is displayed.



- **Color Calibration Type**

  Select **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** to execute color calibration using the spectrophotometer unit, or select **Auto Adjust** to execute color calibration using the sensors in the printer.

  Note
  - Enabled when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

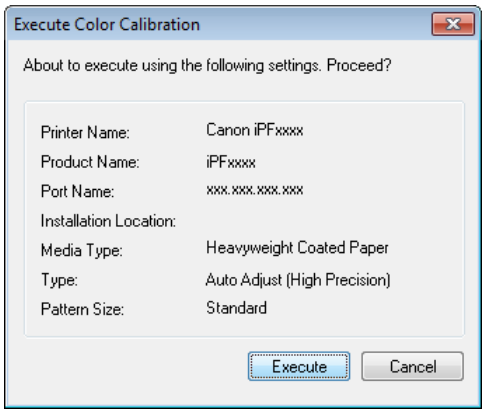
- **Pattern Size**

  You can select this setting when **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** is selected in **Color Calibration Type**. We recommend **Larger** when you want to prioritize the color measurement precision.

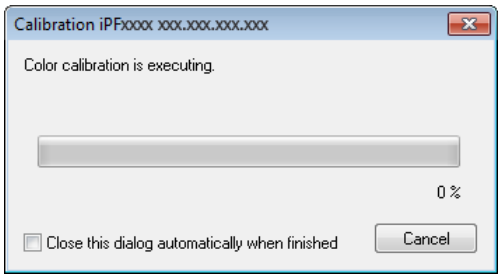
  Note
  - Enabled when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

5 Click the **OK** button.

6 When the **Execute Color Calibration** dialog box is displayed, check the details.

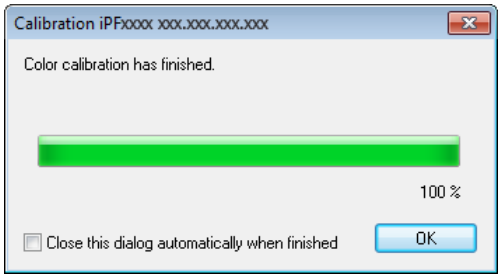


7 Click the **Execute** button.
Color calibration will be executed.



Note
- You can exit the color calibration in the middle by clicking the **Cancel** button. However, it may take some time to end.

8 Click the **OK** button.



Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart

The procedure for printing a color chart, measuring the colors, and saving the color measurement data on a computer is as follows.
The color measurement data saved on the computer can be used such as for creating ICC profiles. ICC profiles are created using commercially available software.
Created ICC profiles can be used by the printer driver. (See "**Matching Sheet** .") ➔P.175

Note
- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

Getting the Printer Ready

1 Confirm whether the paper to be loaded can be used for acquiring color measurement data.
(See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") ➔P.496

2 Load the paper.
(See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503
(See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505

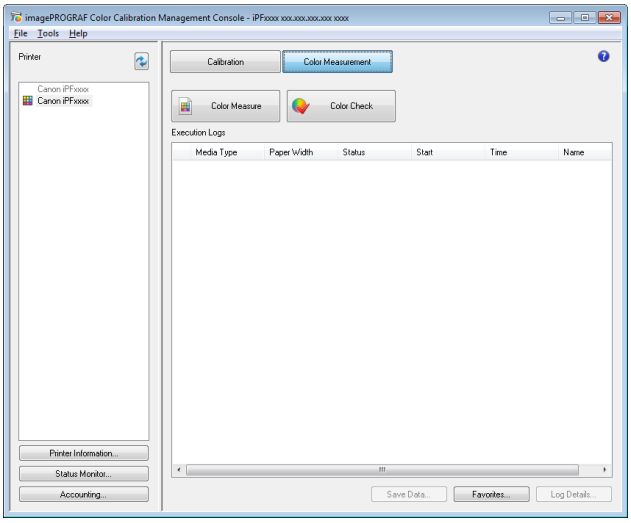
Note

- If **Adj. Quality** has not been executed even once on the paper you are using, execute **Adj. Quality** in the control panel menu.
(See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.771

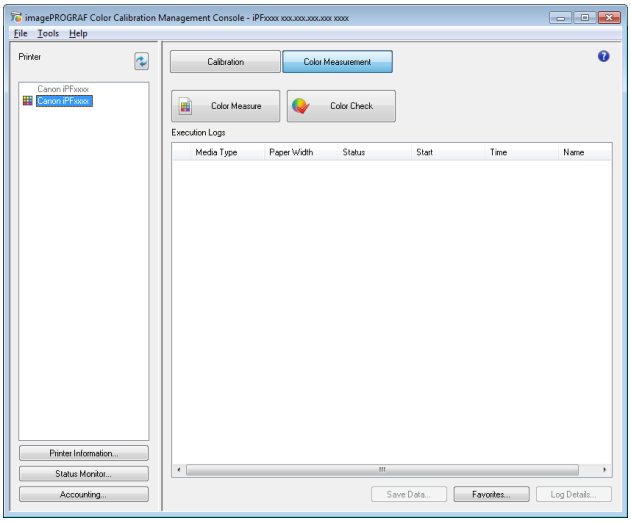
3 Select the White/Black Backing Plate color.
(See "**Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color.**") ➔P.804

Acquiring Color Measurement Data

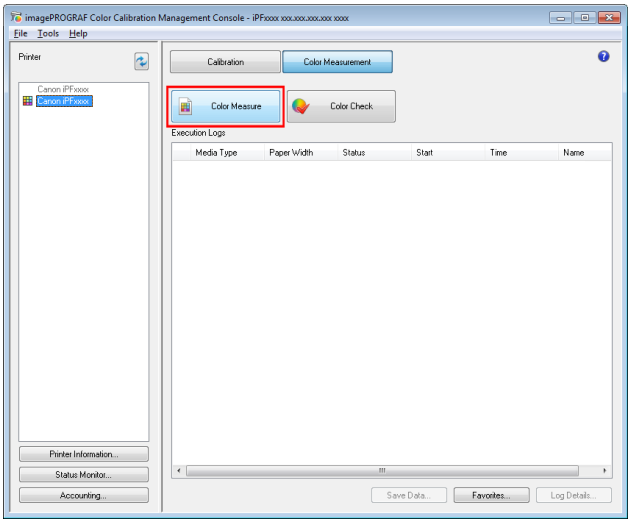
1 Open the **Color Measurement** sheet.



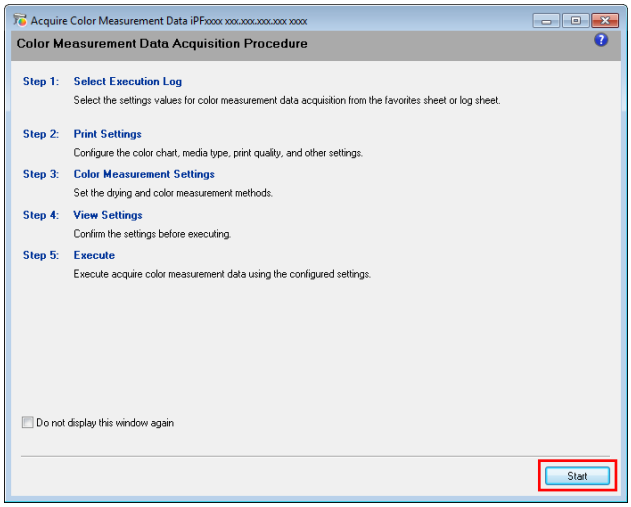
2 Select the printer you want to measure the color chart on from the **Printer** list.



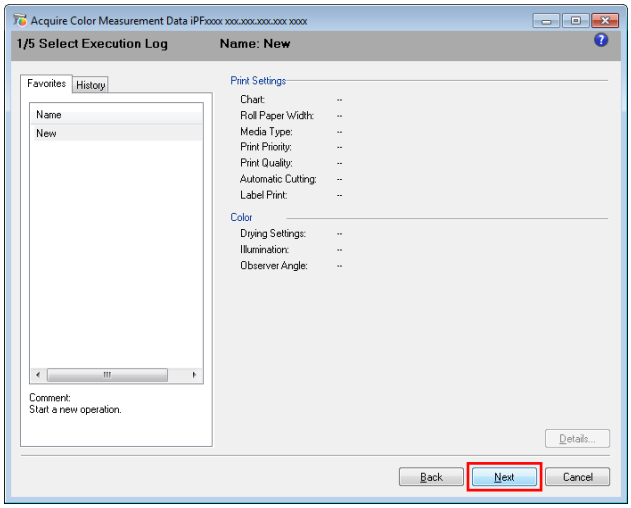
3 Click the **Color Measure** button.



4 Check the color chart measurement procedure in the procedure description window and then click **Start**.



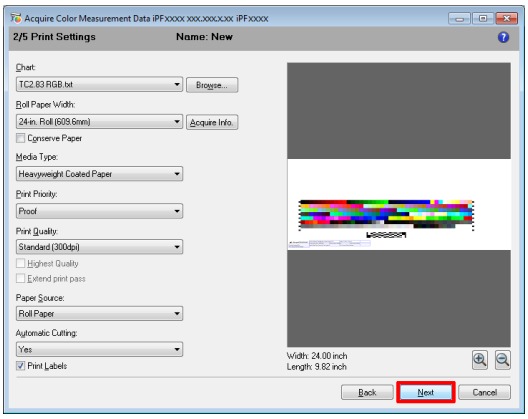
5 Select **New** in **Favorites** and then click **Next**.



Note

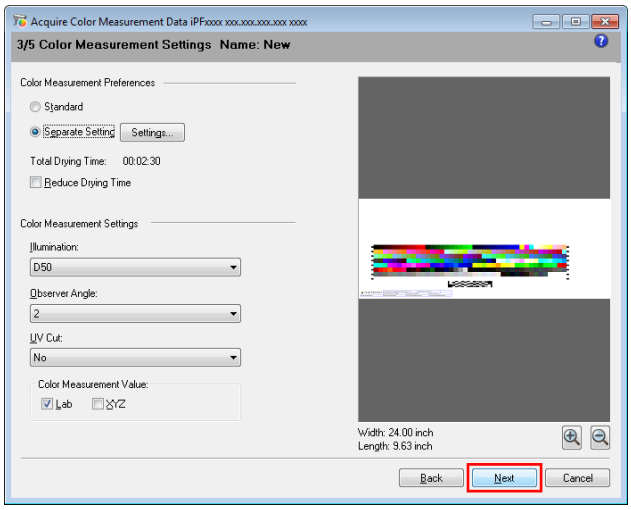
- To perform color chart measurement using the setting values when executed previously, select the execution log in the **Favorites** sheet or **History** sheet.

6 Select the color chart, configure the color chart print settings, and then click **Next**.



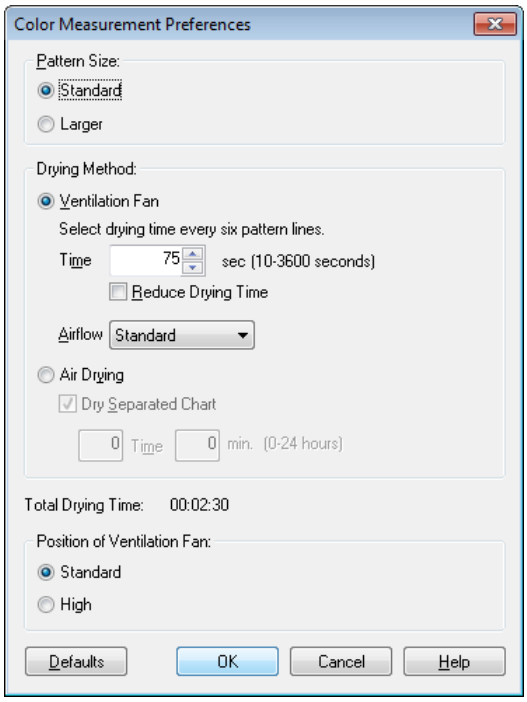
Setting Item	Details
Chart	Selects the color chart to print. If the color chart you want to print is not displayed in the list, click the **Browse** button and then select the color chart. You can only select color charts that are CGATS format RGB.
Roll Paper Width	Click the **Acquire Info.** button to display the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer.
Conserve Paper	Selecting this check box allows you to conserve paper by reducing the gap between the pieces of a color chart when the chart is printed split into pieces.
Media Type	Select the type of paper.
Print Priority	Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. For details on the settings, see "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**" →P.59
Print Quality	Choose the print quality. For details on the settings, see "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**" →P.59
Highest quality	If you select this option, the document will be printed with enhanced quality at the highest resolution. Compared to the other options, more time and ink are consumed in printing, however you will attain print results with the highest quality.
Extend print pass	Uneven printing may occur when printing with the **Highest** setting in **Print Quality**. Selecting this check box may improve the uneven printing. However, the printing speed will be reduced.
Paper Source	Selects the paper source.
Automatic Cutting	Selects how to cut the paper when **Acquire Color Measurement Data** finishes.
Print Labels	Select this check box to print the color chart printing information.

7 Configure the color measurement settings and drying settings, and then click **Next**.



Setting Item	Details
Color Measurement Preferences	Configures the pattern size to print the color charts and the drying settings for the printed color charts. Choose **Standard** to print at the standard pattern size and dry using the standard setting values. Click the **Settings** button to display the **Color Measurement Preferences** dialog box, which allows you to configure the pattern size and drying method in detail.(***1**)
Reduce Drying Time	Selecting this check box reduces the drying time. Once the time configured in the **Color Measurement Env.** sheet in the **Preferences** dialog box has elapsed, color measurement proceeds without performing any further drying with the ventilation fan. Specify a time that offers sufficient drying by air drying in the **Preferences** dialog box. If you perform color measurement while the ink is not dry, the measurements may not be correct. The **Preferences** dialog box is displayed when you click **Preferences** in the **File** menu. If the number of patterns is small, drying will finish in a shorter amount of time than the time configured in the **Preferences** dialog box. If this happens, the drying time will not be reduced even if the **Reduce Drying Time** check box is selected.
Illumination	Select the illumination from **D50**, **D65**, and **A**.
Observer Angle	Selects the observer angle.
UV Cut	Selects whether or not UV cut is used.
Color Measurement Value	Saves the color measurement data for the color measurement values where the check box is selected. The **Lab** check box cannot be cleared.

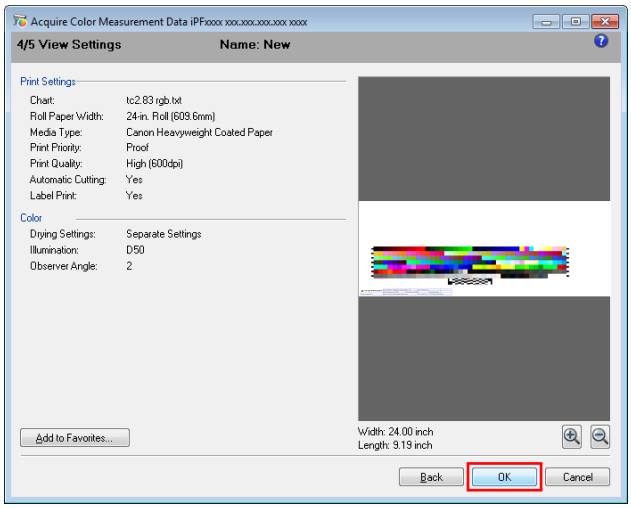
*1: If you want to enlarge the color chart pattern or configure the color chart drying settings in detail, click the **Settings** button to display the **Color Measurement Preferences** dialog box.



Setting Item	Details
Pattern Size	Selects the pattern size of the color chart. We recommend **Larger** when you want to prioritize the color measurement precision.
Drying Method	Choose **Ventilation Fan** to dry using the ventilation fan or **Air Drying** to dry without using the ventilation fan.
Ventilation Fan	Configures the drying time and airflow for the ventilation fan.
Time	Configures the drying time for the ventilation fan for each pattern. The number of lines that are dried at one time by the ventilation fan varies depending on the size selected in **Pattern Size**. As the time increases, the adhesion of the ink improves and the color tones become more stable.
Reduce Drying Time	Selecting this check box reduces the drying time. Once the time configured in the **Color Measurement Env.** sheet in the **Preferences** dialog box has elapsed, color measurement proceeds without performing any further drying with the ventilation fan. Specify a time that offers sufficient drying by air drying in the **Preferences** dialog box. If you perform color measurement while the ink is not dry, the measurements may not be correct. The **Preferences** dialog box is displayed when you click **Preferences** in the **File** menu. If the number of patterns is small, drying will finish in a shorter amount of time than the time configured in the **Preferences** dialog box. If this happens, the drying time will not be reduced even if the **Reduce Drying Time** check box is selected.
Airflow	Selects the airflow of the ventilation fan.
Air Drying	Sets the period between the color chart being printed and the color measurement starting. If the **Dry Separated Chart** check box is selected, printing and air drying are repeated for each separated color chart. This makes it harder for the color charts to become scratched or soiled, but also increases the time taken by the operation. If the **Dry Separated Chart** check box is clear, printing and air drying the color chart are performed once. This reduces the time taken by the operation, but may scratch or soil the end of the color chart and paper. However, this does not affect the color measurement results.
Position of Ventilation Fan	If you are using paper that has a tendency to curl or paper that does not dry easily, select **High** so that the paper does not come into contact with the paper presser.

Setting Item	Details
Position of Ventilation Fan	Note that when **High** is selected, we recommend that you set the **Time** longer and the **Airflow** stronger compared with when **Standard** is selected because of the larger distance between the ventilation fan and paper.

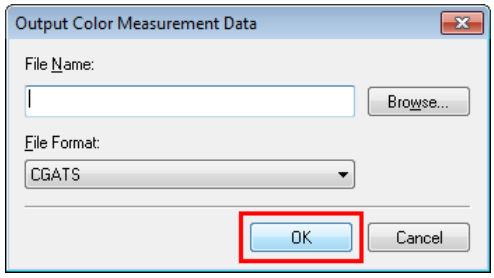
8 The **View Settings** window is displayed. Check the details of the settings and click the **OK** button.



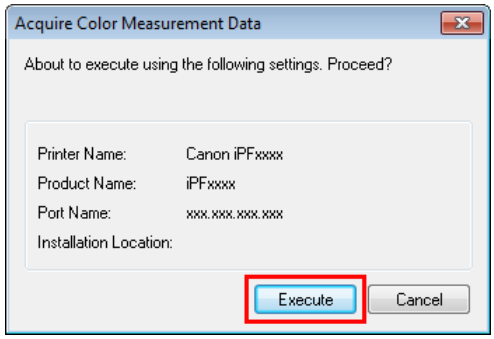
Note

- Click the **Add to Favorites** button to display the **Add to Favorites** dialog box, which allows you to add the setting details to favorites.

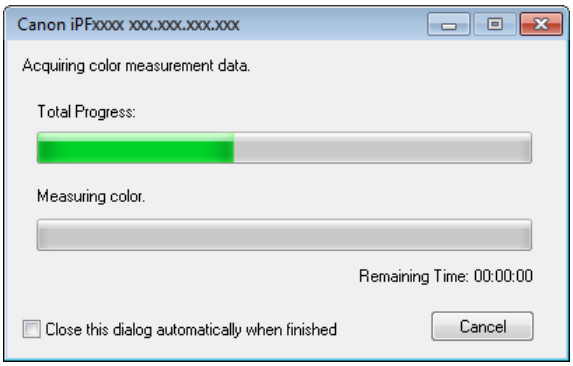
9 The **Output Color Measurement Data** dialog box is displayed. Select the file to save the color measurement data into and click the **OK** button.



10 The **Acquire Color Measurement Data** dialog box is displayed.
Click the **Execute** button.



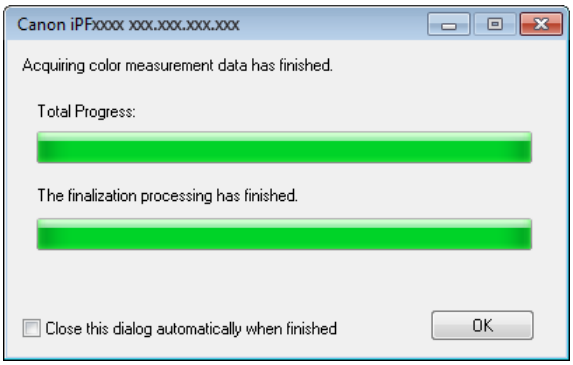
The color chart is printed and color measurement begins.



Note
- You can exit the acquire color measurement data operation in the middle by clicking the **Cancel** button. However, it may take some time to end.

11 Click the **OK** button.

Once the color measurement has finished, the color measurement data is saved on the computer.



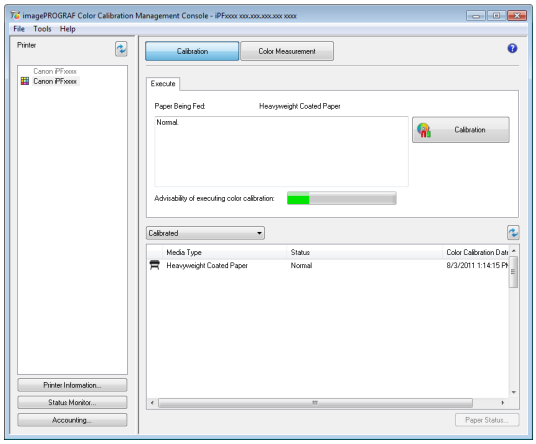
Executing Color Check

When a color check is executed, a built-in pattern is printed, the color difference from a calibration target registered in the printer is calculated, and the check results are displayed.

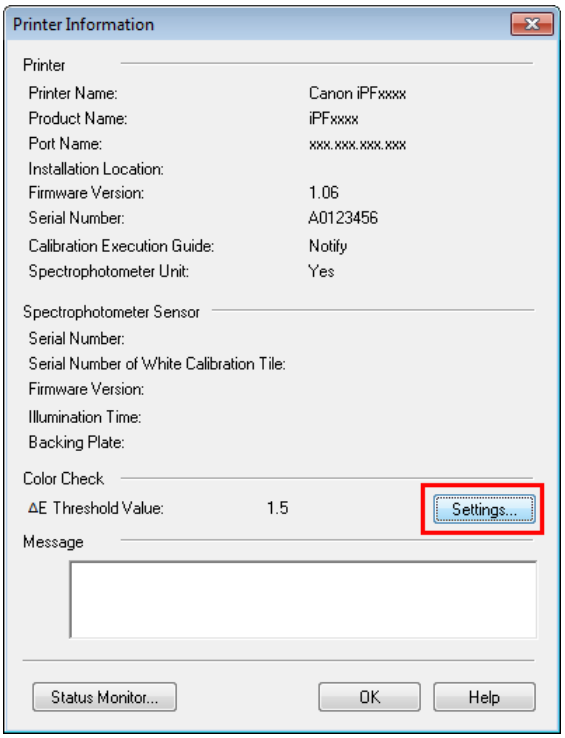
Note
- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.
- When printing the color check adjustment pattern, the calibration adjustment values are applied even if **Use Adj. Value** is set to **Disabled** in the Control Panel menu.
(See "**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") ➔P.799

Setting the Color Check Threshold Value

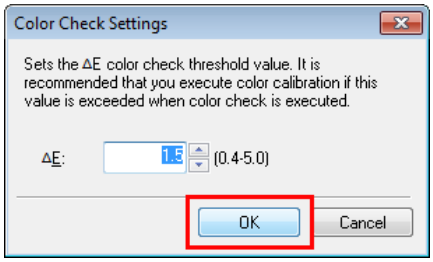
1 Double-click the printer you want to execute the color check on in the **Printer** list.



2 Click the **Settings** button for **Color Check** in the **Printer Information** dialog box.



3 Enter the color check threshold value in **ΔE** and click the **OK** button.



Getting the Printer Ready

1 Confirm whether the paper to be loaded can be used for color checks.
Paper for color check is paper that can be used with the **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** setting on the spectrophotometer unit.
(See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

2 Load the paper.
(See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503
(See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505

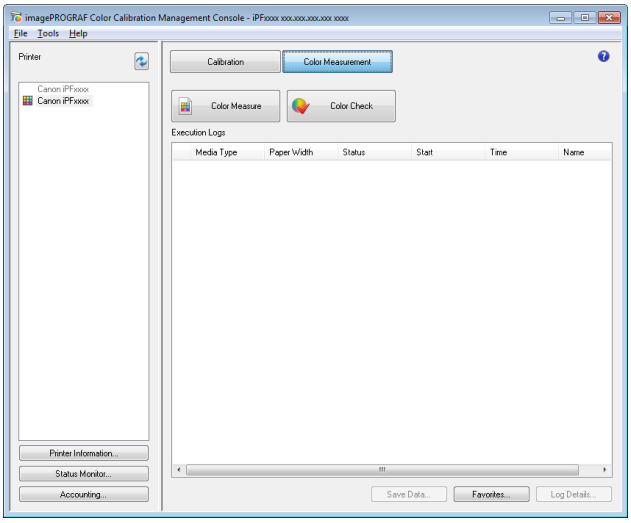
Note
- If **Adj. Quality** has not been executed even once on the paper you are using, execute **Adj. Quality** in the control panel menu.
(See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.771

3 Select the White/Black Backing Plate color.
(See "**Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color.**") ➔P.804

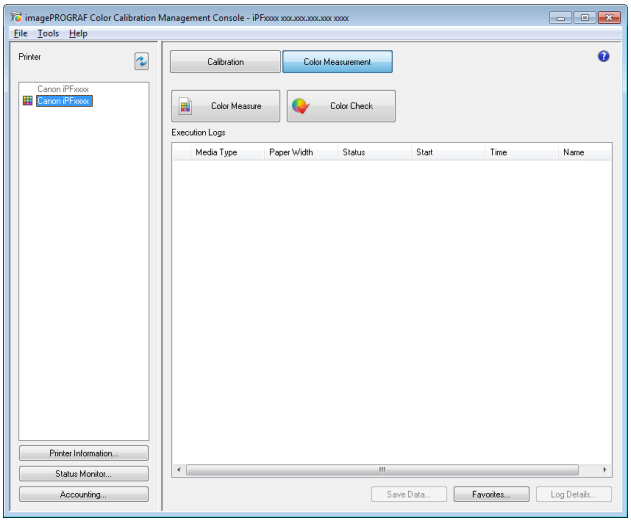
Note
- For the color of the White/Black Backing Plate, select the color from when color calibration was executed using the spectrophotometer unit.
(See "**Executing Color Calibration.**") ➔P.828

Executing Color Check

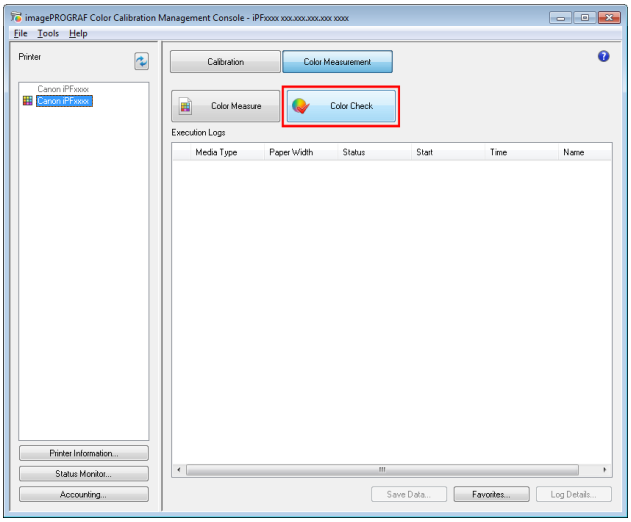
1 Open the **Color Measurement** sheet.



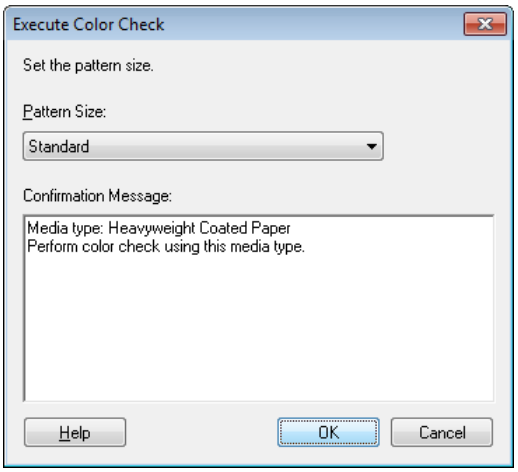
2 Select the printer you want to execute color check on from the **Printer** list.



3 Click the **Color Check** button.

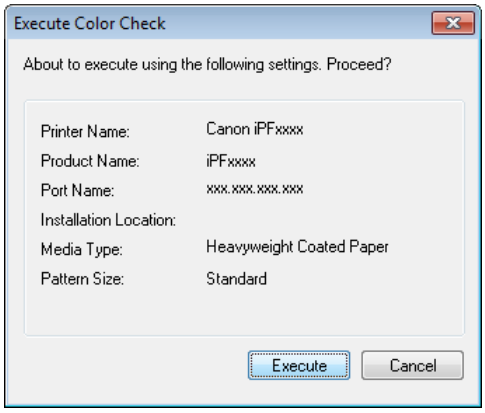


4 The **Execute Color Check** dialog box is displayed.
Select **Pattern Size**.
To increase the precision of the color check, we recommend that you configure the same settings as when **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** was executed in color calibration. (See "**Executing Color Calibration.**") →P.828

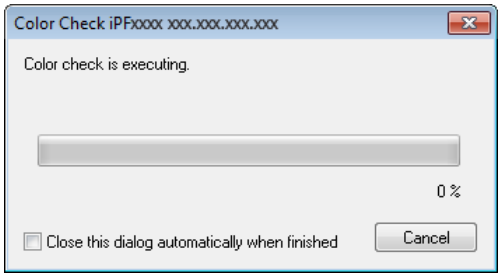


5 Click the **OK** button.

6 When the **Execute Color Check** dialog box is displayed, check the details.

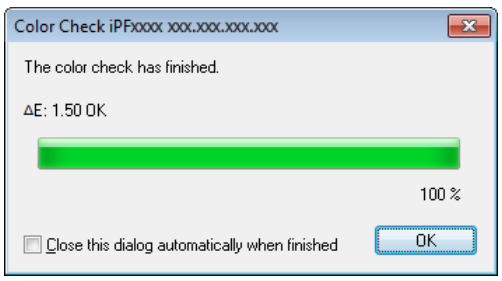


7 Click the **Execute** button.
The color check is executed.



Note
- You can exit the color check in the middle by clicking the **Cancel** button. However, it may take some time to end.

8 Check the results.



Note
- We recommend that you execute color calibration if the results exceed the threshold values. (See "**Executing Color Calibration.**") →P.828

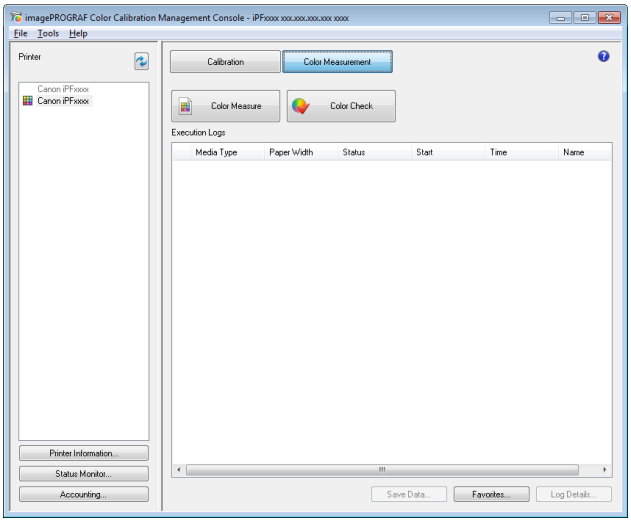
Scheduling Color Check

You can configure a schedule to automatically perform color check at the specified dates and times.
Once configured, the color check is executed on the paper that is loaded at the specified date and time.
You can also configure whether or not to execute color calibration if the result of the color check exceeds the color check threshold value.

Important
- The color check is not executed at the designated date and time if the printer is turned off.
- If the schedule settings are configured while the printer is in sleep mode, the schedule settings are applied when the printer recovers from sleep mode. The color check will not be executed by the configured schedule unless the printer recovers from sleep mode at least once.

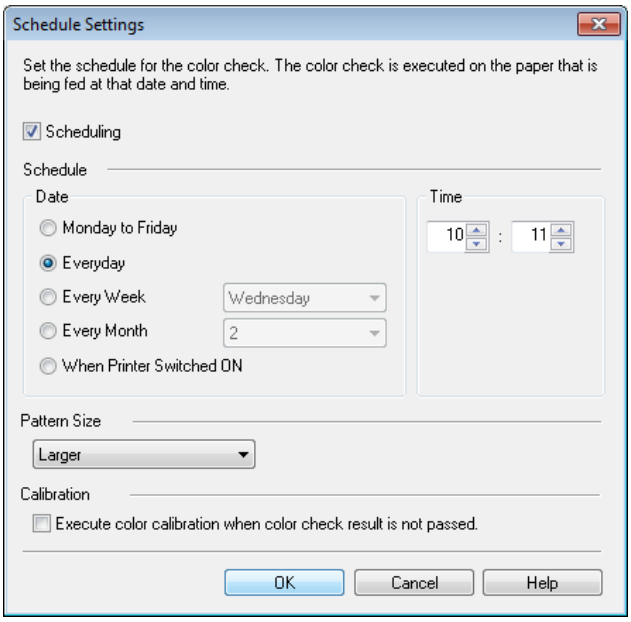
Note
- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

1 Open the **Color Measurement** sheet.



2 Select **Schedule Settings** from the **Tools** menu.

3 In the **Schedule Settings** dialog box, configure the settings such as the date and time to execute the color check and click the **OK** button.



Setting Item	Details
Scheduling	Select this check box to execute a color check at the date and time specified in **Schedule**.
Schedule	Sets the date and time to execute the color check. If **When Printer Switched ON** is selected, a color check is executed when the printer is turned on.
Pattern Size	To increase the precision of the color check, we recommend that you configure the same setting as when **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** was executed in color calibration.
Calibration	Select this check box to execute color calibration if the result of the color check exceeds the value of ΔE configured in the **Color Check Settings** dialog box.

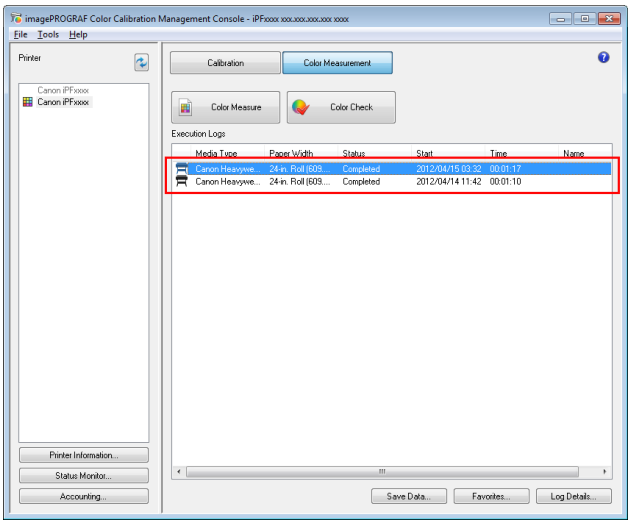
4 is displayed at the bottom left of the **Color Measurement** sheet.
This completes configuring the color check schedule.

Registering Execution Logs in Favorites

You can register frequently used execution logs in favorites for **Acquire Color Measurement Data**. Registering an operation in favorites allows you to attach a separate name for easily recalling the operation.

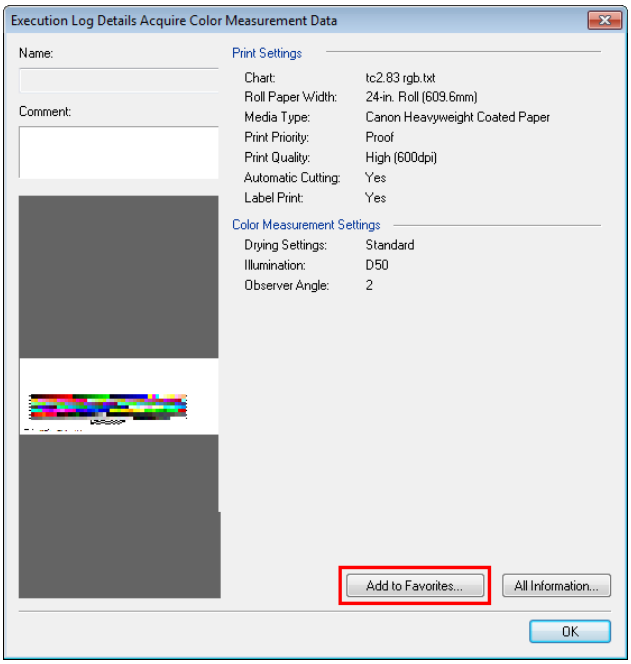
Note
- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.
- You can register up to 30 execution logs in the favorites.

1 Select the execution log to register in favorites in **Execution Logs** in the main window (**Color Measurement** sheet).

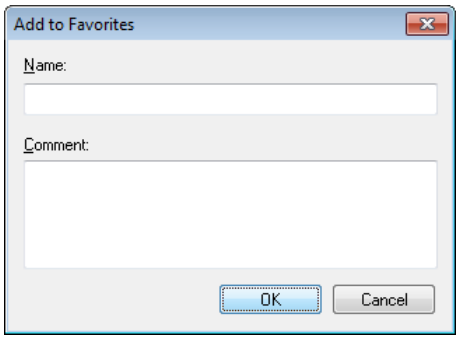


2 Click the **Log Details** button.

3 Click the **Add to Favorites** button in the **Execution Log Details** dialog box.



4 Enter the name in **Name**. Enter a comment in **Comment** if needed.



5 Click the **OK** button.

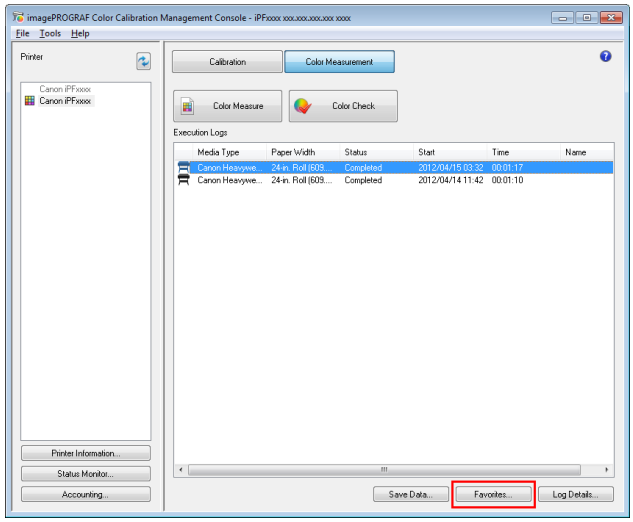
Deleting Execution Logs From Favorites

You can delete **Acquire Color Measurement Data** execution logs from the favorites.

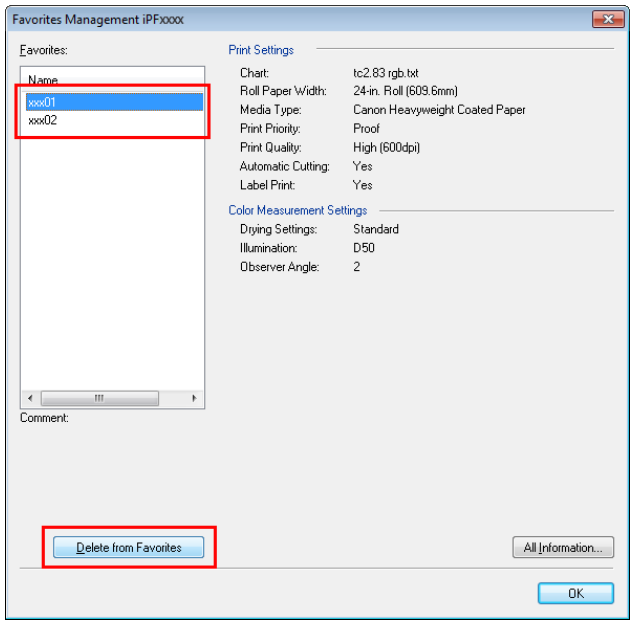
Note

- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

1 Click the **Favorites** button in the main window (**Color Measurement** sheet).



2 Select execution log that you want to delete in **Favorites** and click the **Delete from Favorites** button.



3 Click the **OK** button.

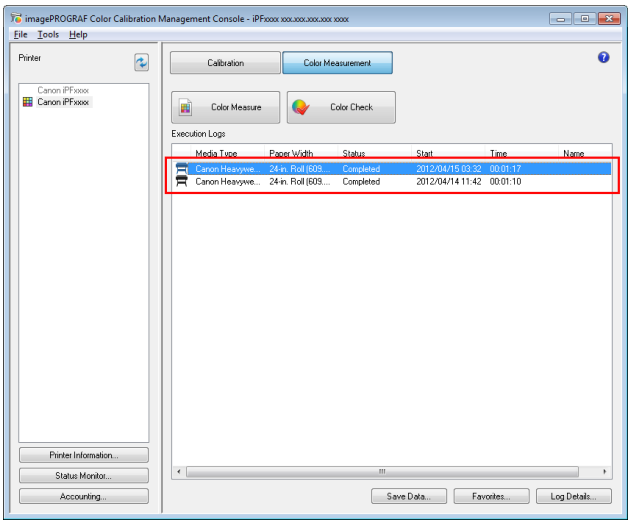
Saving Execution Logs on the Computer

You can save **Acquire Color Measurement Data** execution logs on the computer.

Note

- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

1 Select the execution log to save on the computer in **Execution Logs** in the main window (**Color Measurement** sheet).

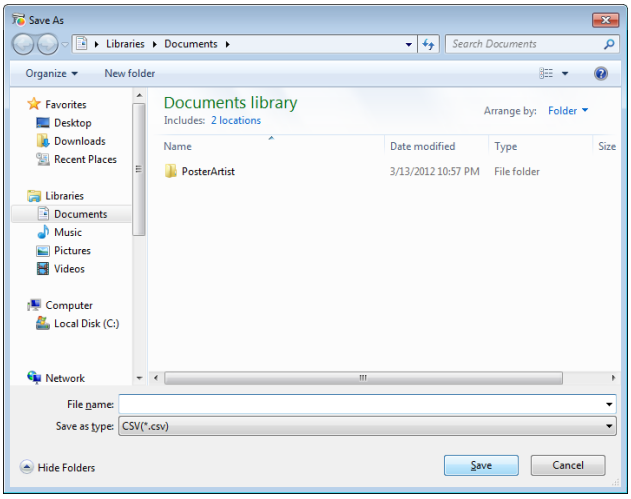


2 Select **Output Execution Log CSV** > **Selected Logs** from the **Tools** menu.

Note

- To save all of the execution logs, select **All Logs**.

3 Enter the file name and save.

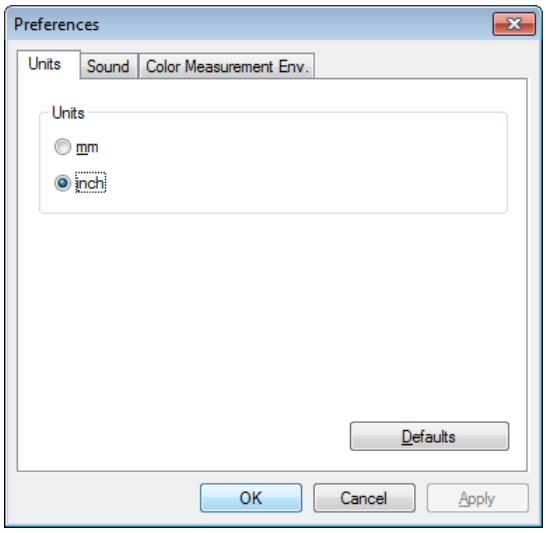


Switching Display Units

The units displayed in the Color Calibration Management Console can be switched between millimeters and inches.

1 Select **Preferences** from the **File** menu.

2 Select the display units in the **Units** sheet in the **Preferences** dialog box and then click the **OK** button.

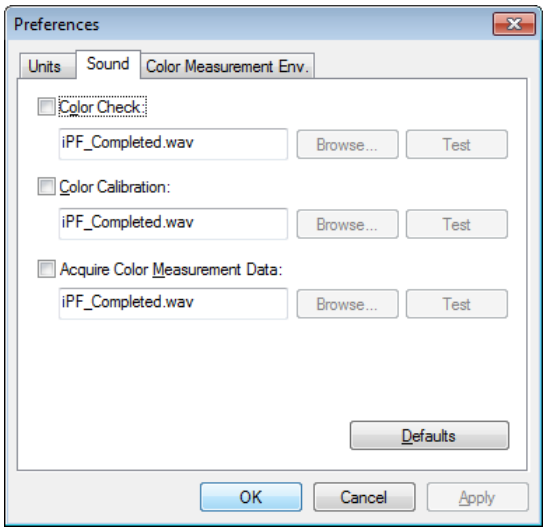


Getting Audio Notification of Color Calibration Finished

You can be notified by sound when color calibration finishes.

1 Select **Preferences** from the **File** menu.

2 Select the **Color Calibration** check box in the **Sound** sheet in the **Preferences** dialog box and then click the **Browse** button and select the audio file.



Note

- If you want to check the sound in the selected audio file, click the **Test** button.

3 Click the **OK** button.

Color Calibration Management Console (Mac OS)

Features of Color Calibration Management Console 848

Installation Procedure 849
Uninstallation Procedure 850
Startup 850

Main Window 850
imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console Menu 853
File Menu 853
Tools Menu (When the Calibration Sheet is Displayed) 854
Tools Menu (When the Color Measurement Sheet is Displayed) 855
Printer List 856
Calibration Sheet 858
Color Measurement Sheet 859

Changing the Printers Displayed in the Printer List 860
Checking the Color Calibration Status 862
Executing Color Calibration 863

Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart 866
Executing Color Check 872
Scheduling Color Check 876
Registering Execution Logs in Favorites 877
Deleting Execution Logs From Favorites 878
Saving Execution Logs on the Computer 878

Switching Display Units 879
Getting Audio Notification of Color Calibration Finished 879

Features of Color Calibration Management Console

Color Calibration Management Console is software that allows you to view the color calibration status and execute color calibration on multiple printers. You can also acquire color measurement data and execute color checks on printers that have a spectrophotometer unit installed.

- Display Color Calibration Status
- Execute Color Calibration
- Acquire Color Measurement Data
- Execute Color Check

Display Color Calibration Status

The printers connected via the network and USB are displayed in a list in the main window.
If there are multiple printers, printers where color calibration has been executed on the same paper type and that paper is loaded in the printer are displayed in the same calibration group. Printers that are in the same calibration group can be corrected to give the same color tones by executing color calibration.
When a printer is selected from the main window, the color calibration status, execution logs, etc. of that printer are displayed.
For details on how to check the color calibration status, see "**Checking the Color Calibration Status**." ➔P.862

Execute Color Calibration

You can execute color calibration.
Executing color calibration improves color consistency by compensating for slight differences in how color appears due to individual variations or aging among the printers.
For the procedure for executing color calibration, see "**Executing Color Calibration**." ➔P.863

Note

- In order to execute color calibration on paper other than genuine Canon paper/feed certified paper, a calibration target is required for that paper. Calibration targets can be created on a printer with a spectrophotometer unit installed by using the Media Configuration Tool that is included with printers that support the spectrophotometer unit.
  For details on creating a calibration target, refer to the following topics.
  - **Create Calibration Target** →P.606

Acquiring Color Measurement Data from the Color Chart

You can measure the colors of any arbitrary color chart and save the color measurement data on your computer. You can then create an ICC profile by importing this data into commercially available ICC profile creation software.
For the procedure for acquiring color measurement data, see "**Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart**." →P.866

Note

- This function can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

Execute Color Check

You can execute a color check.
When a color check is executed, a built-in pattern is printed, the color difference from a calibration target registered in the printer is calculated, and the check results are displayed.
Execute a color check when you want to check the color status of a printer in detail.
For the procedure for executing color check, see "**Executing Color Check**." →P.872
You can also configure to automatically execute color check on a specified date and time.
For the procedure for configuring color check scheduler settings, see "**Scheduling Color Check**." →P.876

Note

- This function can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

Installation Procedure

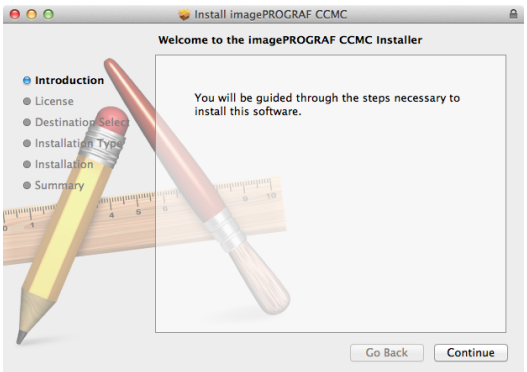
The installation procedure for the Color Calibration Management Console is as follows.

1. Place the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.

2. Open the **Set/CCMC** folder on the User Software CD-ROM and open the **iPF CCMC Installer.pkg** icon (CCMC stands for Color Calibration Management Console).

iPF CCMC Installer.pkg

3. Follow the instructions on the screen.



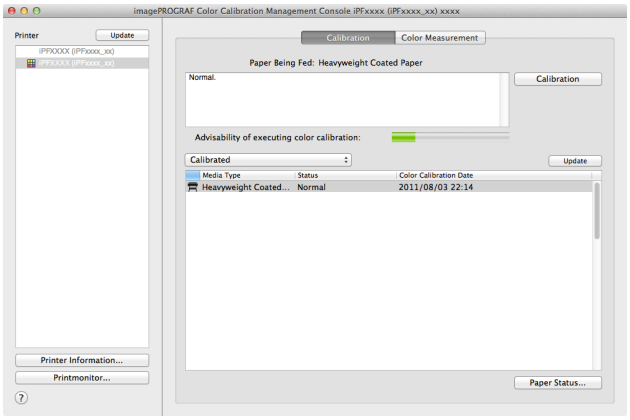
Uninstallation Procedure

The uninstallation procedure for the Color Calibration Management Console is as follows.

1. Close the Color Calibration Management Console.
2. In Finder, display the **Applications**>**Canon Utilities**>**imagePROGRAF CCMC** folder (CCMC stands for Color Calibration Management Console).
3. Delete the **imagePROGRAF CCMC** folder.

Startup

The startup procedure for the Color Calibration Management Console is as follows.
Click **Applications**>**Canon Utilities**>**imagePROGRAF CCMC**> and then the **imagePROGRAF CCMC** icon (CCMC stands for Color Calibration Management Console).
This displays the Color Calibration Management Console main window.

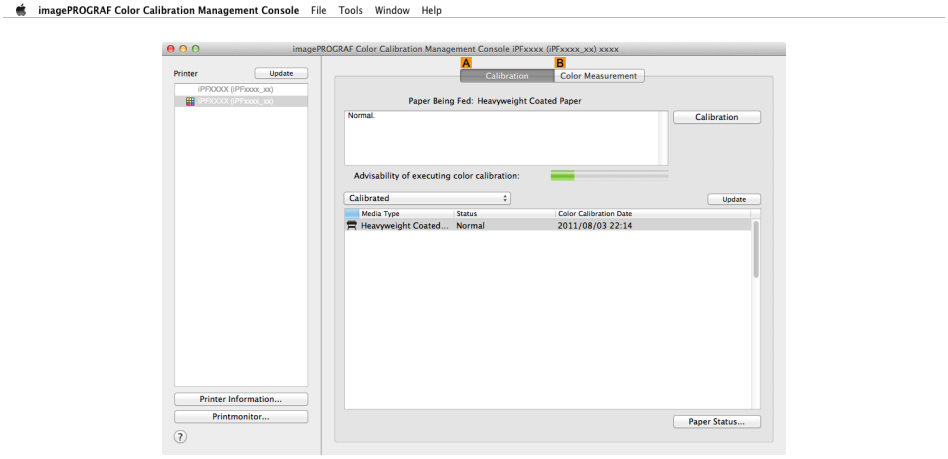


Important

- The printer driver for the printer that supports Color Calibration Management Console needs to be installed in order to run Color Calibration Management Console.

Main Window

The Color Calibration Management Console main window consists of a menu bar, title bar, **Printer** list, **Calibration** sheet, and **Color Measurement** sheet.
You can switch between the **Calibration** sheet and **Color Measurement** sheet by clicking the **A** **Calibration** tab or **B** **Color Measurement** tab. You can also switch between the sheets from the **File** menu in the menu bar.



- Menu bar

Allows you to select the menu items for the necessary operations.

For details on each of the menu items, refer to the following topics.

- **imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console Menu** →P.853
- **File Menu** →P.853
- **Tools Menu (When the Calibration Sheet is Displayed)** →P.854
- **Tools Menu (When the Color Measurement Sheet is Displayed)** →P.855

You can switch between displaying and hiding the Color Calibration Management Console using the **Window** menu.

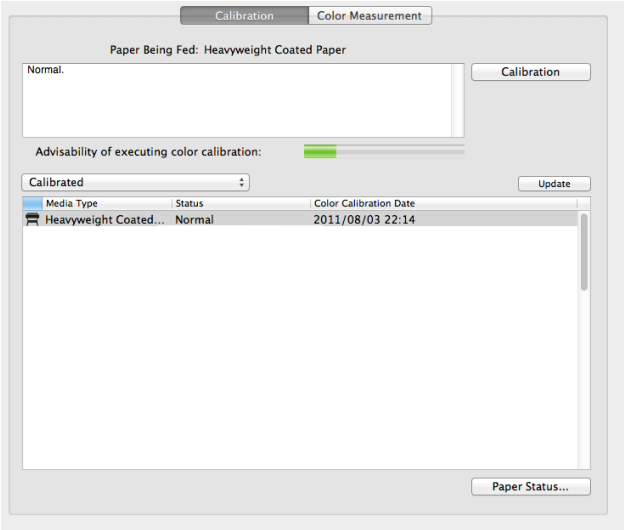
Clicking **imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console Help** in the **Help** menu displays the Color Calibration Management Console help.

- **Printer** List

Displays a list of printers that can be controlled. For details, see "**Printer List**." →P.856

- **Calibration** Sheet

This sheet allows you to execute color calibration. For details, see "**Calibration Sheet**." ➔P.858

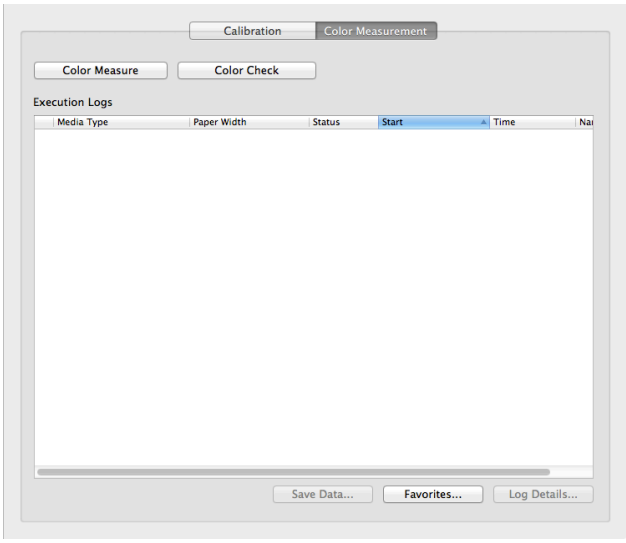


- **Color Measurement** Sheet

This sheet allows you to acquire color chart measurement data and execute color check. For details, see "**Color Measurement Sheet**." ➔P.859

Note

- Enabled when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.



imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console Menu

This section describes each of the menu items in the **imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console** menu.

- **About imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console**

  Displays the **About** dialog box, which allows you to check the version of Color Calibration Management Console.

- **Preferences**

  Displays the **Preferences** dialog box.

  This allows you to select the units displayed in the Color Calibration Management Console, configure the sound that is displayed when executing a color calibration, acquiring color measurement data, or executing a color check finishes, and configure other settings.

- **Services**

  You can use the functions of other applications while you are using Color Calibration Management Console. For details, refer to the Mac OS help.

- **Hide imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console/Hide Others/Show All**

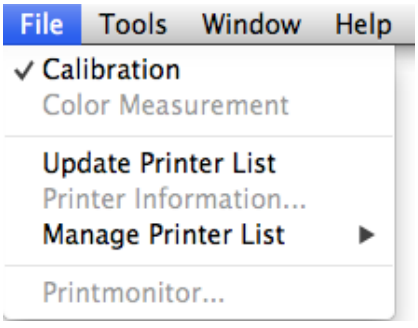
  Switches between displaying and hiding windows.

- **Quit imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console**

  Exits Color Calibration Management Console.

File Menu

This section describes each of the menu items in the **File** menu.



- **Calibration / Color Measurement**

  Selects the main window sheet.

- **Update Printer List**

  Refreshes the **Printer** list on the left side of the main window with the latest information.

- **Printer Information**

  Displays the **Printer Information** dialog box for the printer selected in the **Printer** list.

  This allows you to check detailed information about the printer.

- **Manage Printer List**

  A menu for managing the printers displayed in the **Printer** list is displayed.

  - **Register**

    Displays the **Search Settings** dialog box and registers the printers displayed in the **Printer** list.

    For the procedure for registering a printer to display in the **Printer** list, see "**Changing the Printers Displayed in the Printer List.**" →P.860

  - **List and Delete**

    View details of the printers displayed in the **Printer** list and delete printers from the **Printer** list.

    For the procedure for deleting a printer from the **Printer** list, see "**Changing the Printers Displayed in the Printer List.**" →P.860

  - **Export**

    Saves the **Printer** list registration information in a file.

  - **Import**

    Imports **Printer** list registration information.

    Registration information from a different OS cannot be imported.

  - **Options**

    Displays the **Printer List Options** dialog box for configuring synchronization with the printers that use the printer driver.

    When the **Synchronize with Printers that Use the Printer Driver** check box is selected in this dialog box, printers that Color Calibration Management Console supports that are registered in the OS are displayed in the **Printer** list.

    When the check box is clear, printers need to be registered by executing **Register** from **Manage Printer List** in the **File** menu after the printer has been installed in order for the printer to appear in the **Printer** list.

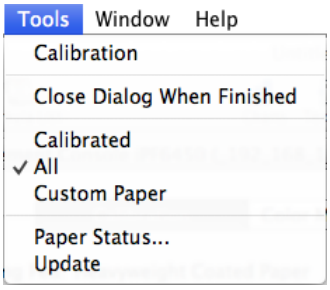
- **Printmonitor**

  You can start the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor for the printer selected in the **Printer** list, allowing you to confirm information such as the status of print jobs.

  For details on **Printmonitor**, see "**The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.**" →P.703

Tools Menu (When the Calibration Sheet is Displayed)

This section describes each of the menu items in the **Tools** menu when the **Calibration** sheet is displayed in the main window.



- **Calibration**

  Displays the **Execute Color Calibration** dialog box.

  Executes color calibration on the selected printer.

  For the procedure for executing color calibration, see "**Executing Color Calibration.**" →P.863

- **Close Dialog When Finished**

  Selects whether or not to close the progress dialog box automatically when the color calibration finishes.

  When the check box is selected, the progress dialog box closes automatically.

- **Calibrated/All/Custom Paper**

  Selects the paper types displayed in the main window (**Calibration** sheet).

- **Paper Status**

  Displays the **Paper Status** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the color calibration and color check execution logs for the selected paper.

- **Update**

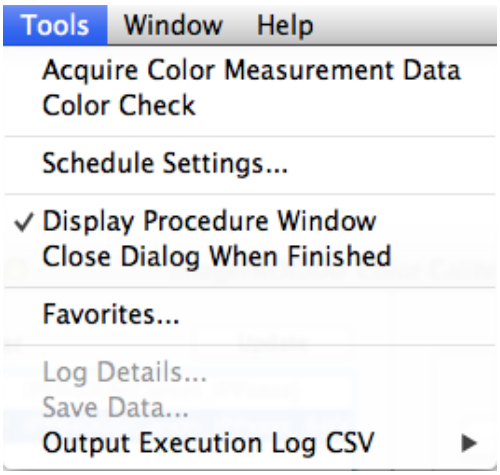
  Refreshes the paper list in the main window with the latest information.

Tools Menu (When the Color Measurement Sheet is Displayed)

This section describes each of the menu items in the **Tools** menu when the **Color Measurement** sheet is displayed in the main window.

Note

- Enabled when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.



- **Acquire Color Measurement Data**

  Displays the procedure description window or **Select Execution Log** window.

  This allows you to measure the colors of a color chart in the selected printer and acquire the color measurement data.

  For the procedure for acquiring color measurement data, see "**Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart.**" →P.866

Important

- The printer driver needs to be installed in order to acquire color measurement data.
  Select a printer that uses the printer driver in the **Printer** list and acquire the color measurement data.

- **Color Check**

  Displays the **Execute Color Check** dialog box.

  Execute color check on the selected printer.

  For the procedure for executing color check, see "**Executing Color Check.**" →P.872

- **Schedule Settings**

  Displays the **Schedule Settings** dialog box.

  You can configure to automatically execute color check.

  For the procedure for configuring color check scheduler settings, see "**Scheduling Color Check.**" →P.876

- **Display Procedure Window**

  Selects whether or not to display the procedure description window when executing **Acquire Color Measurement Data**.

When the check box is selected, the procedure description window is displayed.

- **Close Dialog When Finished**

  Selects whether or not to close the progress dialog box automatically when **Color Check** or **Acquire Color Measurement Data** finishes.

  When the check box is selected, the progress dialog box closes automatically.

- **Favorites**

  Displays the **Favorites Management** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the execution logs registered in the favorites.

- **Log Details**

  Displays the **Execution Log Details** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the details of the execution log selected in **Execution Logs** in the main window.

- **Save Data**

  Displays the **Output Color Measurement Data** dialog box.

  This saves the color measurement data of the execution log selected in **Execution Logs** in the main window on the computer.

  Note
  - This menu cannot be selected if multiple execution logs are selected.

- **Output Execution Log CSV**

  When **Selected Logs** is selected, this saves the execution log selected in **Execution Logs** in the main window on the computer in a CSV format file.

  When **All Logs** is selected, this saves all of the execution logs displayed in **Execution Logs** in the main window on the computer in a CSV format file.

Printer List

The printers displayed in the **Printer** list are printers connected via the network or USB that satisfy the following conditions. However, printers that are connected via a server are not displayed.

- Printers that are compatible with the Color Calibration Management Console
- Printers where the printer driver is installed
- Printers registered using the Color Calibration Management Console

Important
- In order to display printers where the printer driver is installed, you either need to turn on the **Synchronize with Printers that Use the Printer Driver** setting in the **Printer List Options** dialog box or register the printers in the Color Calibration Management Console.
  The **Printer List Options** dialog box can be displayed by selecting **Manage Printer List** > **Options** from the **File** menu.
- For registration in the Color Calibration Management Console, click **Register** from **Manage Printer List** in the **File** menu.

- **Printer**

  If color calibration is executed on the paper being fed, printers that are being fed the same paper are displayed under the **Calibration group**.

  is displayed on printers that have a message related to color calibration.

  is displayed on printers where the spectrophotometer unit is installed.

  Double-click the printer name to display the **Printer Information** dialog box, allowing you to check the detailed printer information.

- **Update** button

  Click this button to refresh the **Printer** list with the latest information.

- **Printer Information** button

  Click this button to display the **Printer Information** dialog box for the selected printer, allowing you to check the detailed printer information.

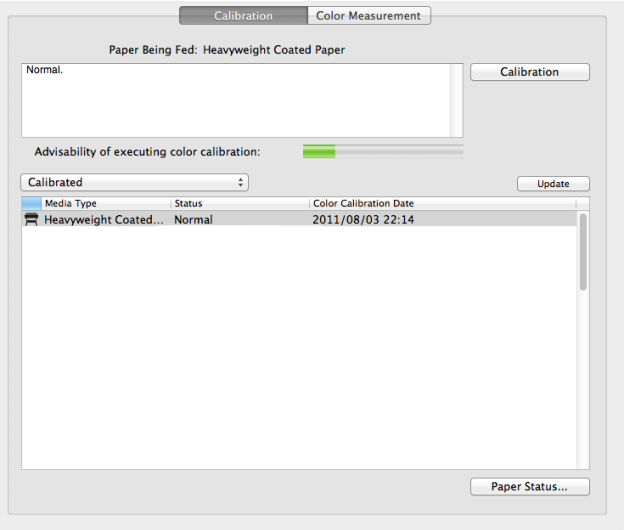
- **Printmonitor** button

  Click this button to start the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor for the selected printer, allowing you to confirm information such as the status of print jobs.

  For details on **Printmonitor**, see **"The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor."** →P.703

Calibration Sheet

This sheet allows you to execute color calibration and check the color calibration status of the printer selected in the **Printer** list.



- **Paper Being Fed**

  Displays the media type being fed in the printer.

- **Calibration** button

  Click this button to display the **Execute Color Calibration** dialog box.

  Executes color calibration on the selected printer.

  For the procedure for executing color calibration, see **"Executing Color Calibration."** ➔P.863

- **Advisability of executing color calibration**

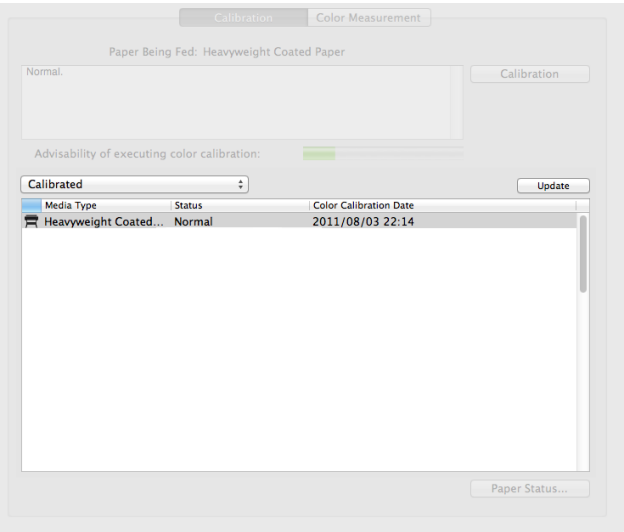
  Displays the status until it is recommended that you execute color calibration. The progress bar grows until the time when calibration is recommended.

- **Paper Status** button

  Click this button to display the **Paper Status** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the color calibration and color check execution logs for the selected paper.

Color calibration status for each paper



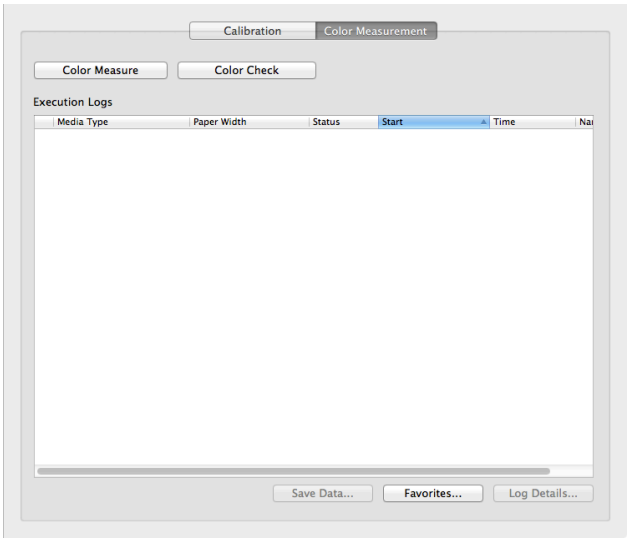
Click the **Update** button to refresh the list with the latest information. is displayed on the paper currently being fed in the printer.
The paper types displayed in the list are as follows.

- When **Calibrated** is selected
  Paper types that are registered in a printer where color calibration has been executed are displayed.
- When **All** is selected
  Paper types registered in a printer are displayed.
- When **Custom Paper** is selected
  Paper types other than genuine Canon paper and feed certified paper that are registered in a printer are displayed.

Color Measurement Sheet

This sheet allows you to use the spectrophotometer unit to measure colors.

When color checks are configured to execute according to a schedule, is displayed in the bottom left of the sheet.
The schedule for executing color check is configured using the **Schedule Settings** dialog box.
For the procedure for configuring color check scheduler settings, see "**Scheduling Color Check.**" →P.876



- **Color Measure** button
  Click this button to display the procedure description window or **Select Execution Log** window.
  This allows you to measure the colors of a color chart in the selected printer and acquire the color measurement data.
  For the procedure for acquiring color measurement data, see "**Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart.**" →P.866

  Important
  - The printer driver needs to be installed in order to acquire color measurement data.
    Select a printer that uses the printer driver in the **Printer** list and acquire the color measurement data.

- **Color Check** button
  Click this button to display the **Execute Color Check** dialog box.
  Execute color check on the selected printer.
  For the procedure for executing color check, see "**Executing Color Check.**" →P.872
- **Execution Logs**
  Displays the execution logs of acquiring color measurement data.

is displayed on the paper being fed.

The name registered in the favorites is displayed in **Name**.

- **Save Data** button

  Click this button to display the **Output Color Measurement Data** dialog box.

  This saves the color measurement data from the selected execution log on the computer.

- **Favorites** button

  Click this button to display the **Favorites Management** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the execution logs registered in the favorites.

- **Log Details** button

  Click this button to display the **Execution Log Details** dialog box.

  This allows you to check the details of the selected execution log.

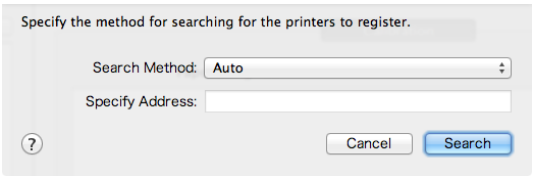
Changing the Printers Displayed in the Printer List

You can search for printers connected via the network or via USB and register them in the **Printer** list in the main window or delete printers displayed in the **Printer** list.

Adding a Printer to the **Printer** List

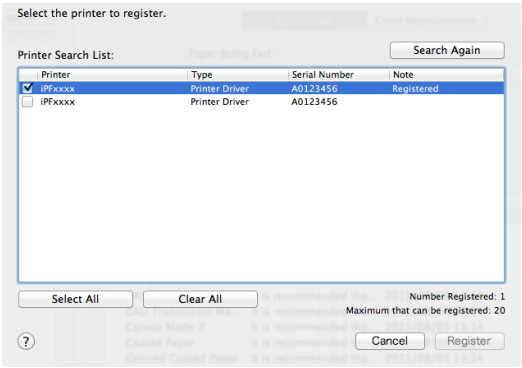
1. Select **Manage Printer List** > **Register** from the **File** menu.

2. In the **Search Settings** dialog box, select the method for searching for the printers to display in the list and click the **Search** button.

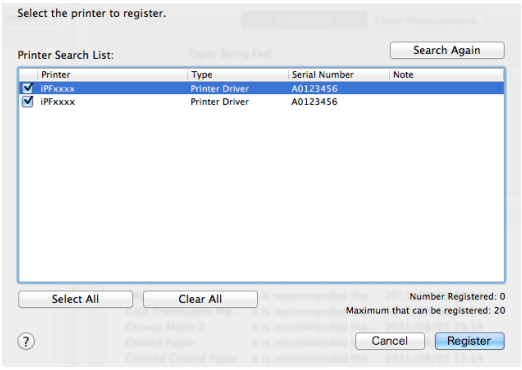


Setting Item	Details
Auto	Searches in the order **Printer Driver**, then **IPv4 - Broadcast**, then **USB**.
IPv4 - Specify Address	Searches by specifying the IPv4 IP address in **Specify Address**.
IPv4 - Broadcast	Searches using the IPv4 limited broadcast address.
USB	Searches for printers connected via USB.
Bonjour	Searches for printers connected by Bonjour.
Printer Driver	Searches for printers for which the printer driver is installed.

3. The printer search starts and the search results are displayed in the **Register Printer** dialog box.



4 Select the check box for the printer to register from **Printer Search List** and click the **Register** button.

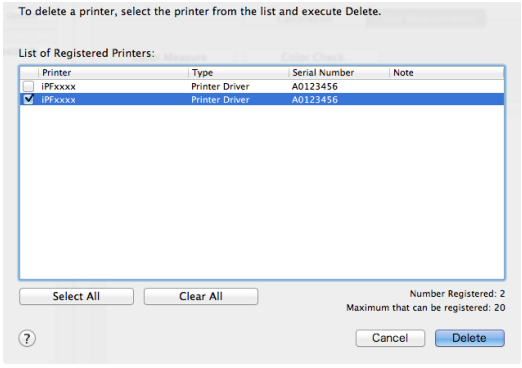


5 Click the **OK** button.

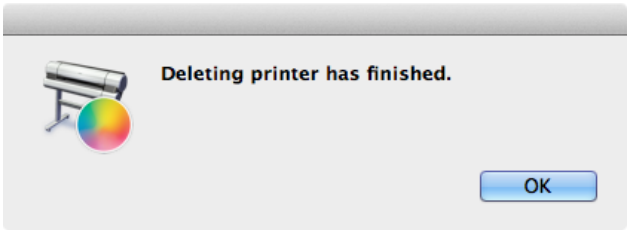
Deleting a Printer from the **Printer** List

1 Select **Manage Printer List** > **List and Delete** from the **File** menu.

2 In the **List and Delete Printers** dialog box, select the printer to delete from **List of Registered Printers** and click the **Delete** button.



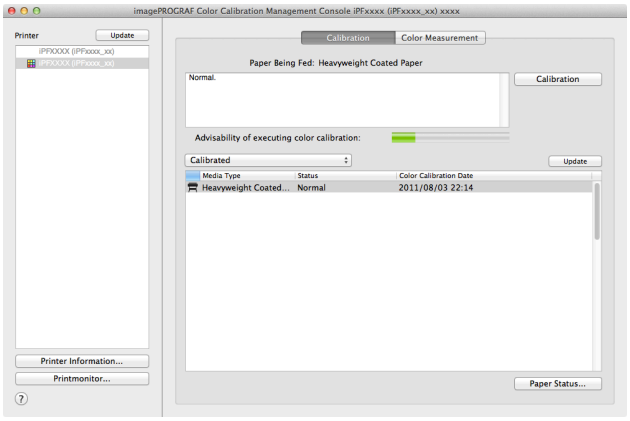
3 Click the **OK** button.



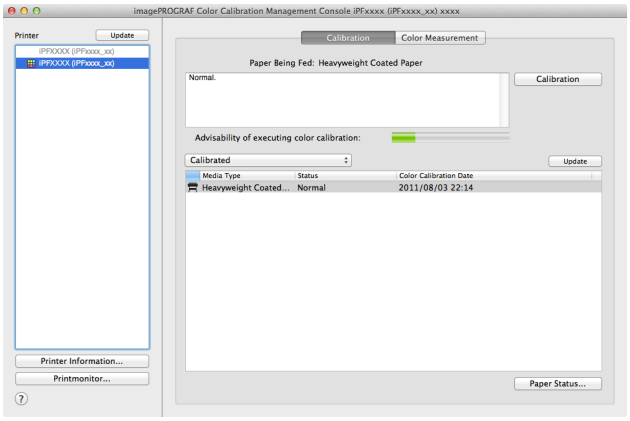
Checking the Color Calibration Status

You can check the color calibration status and execution logs on the **Calibration** sheet in the main window.

1 Open the **Calibration** sheet.



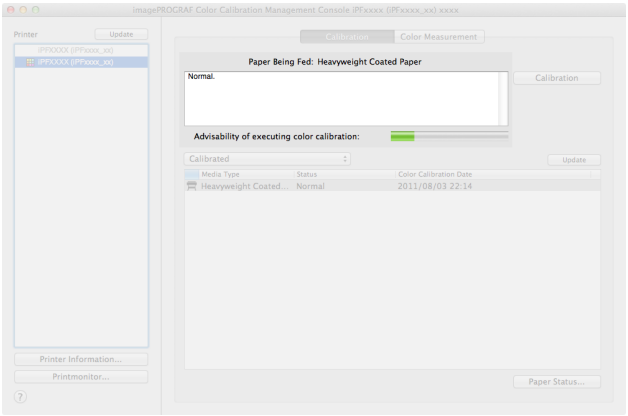
2 Select the printer you want to check the color calibration status of from the **Printer** list.



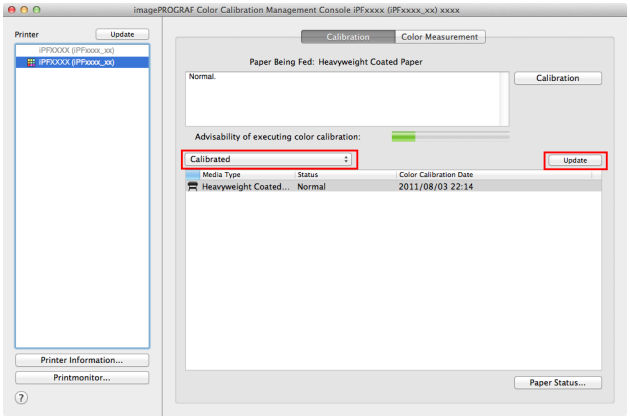
Note

- If there are multiple printers, printers that have the same paper type loaded and where color calibration has been executed on that paper are displayed in the same calibration group.

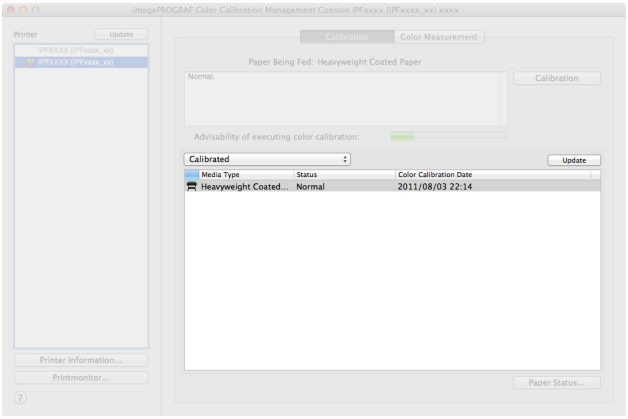
3 Check the color calibration status of the paper being fed in the upper part of the **Calibration** sheet.



4 Select **Calibrated** and click the **Update** button.



5 Check the color calibration logs in the lower part of the **Calibration** sheet.



Executing Color Calibration

The procedure for executing color calibration is as follows.

Getting the Printer Ready

1 You can confirm whether the paper to be loaded can be used in color calibration.
(See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

2 Load the paper.
(See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503
(See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505
(See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") ➔P.529

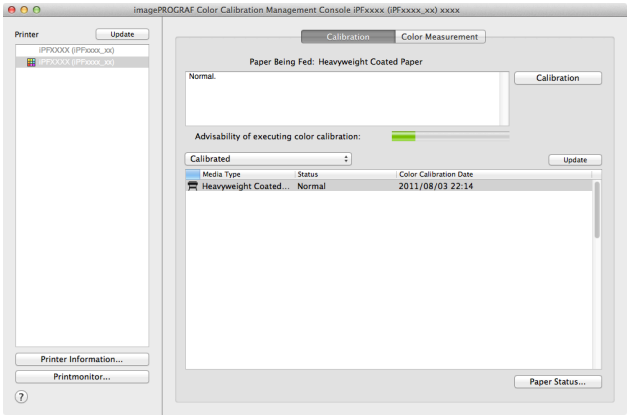
Note
- If **Adj. Quality** has not been executed even once on the paper you are using when you execute **Auto Adjust (High Precision)**, execute **Adj. Quality** in the control panel menu.
(See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.771

3 If a spectrophotometer unit is mounted, select the White/Black Backing Plate color.
We recommend white.
(See "**Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color.**") ➔P.804

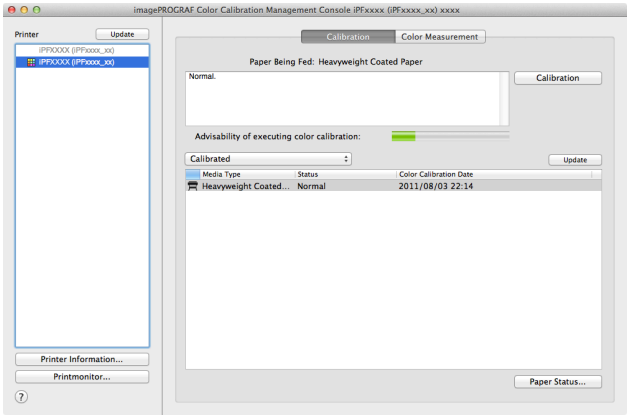
Note
- For the color of the White/Black Backing Plate, continue using the selected color without changing each time you execute color calibration.

Executing Color Calibration

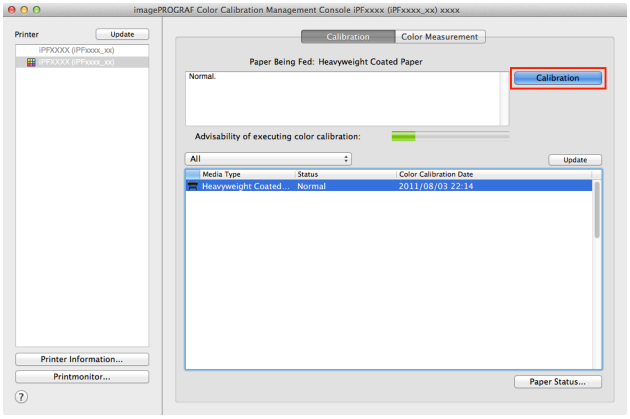
1 Open the **Calibration** sheet.



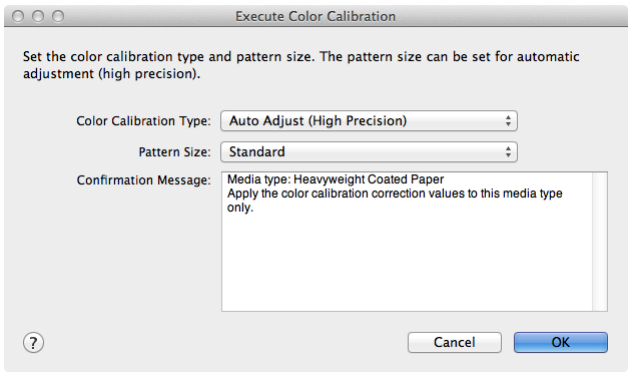
2 Select the printer you want to execute color calibration on from the **Printer** list.



3 Click the **Calibration** button.



4 The **Execute Color Calibration** dialog box is displayed.



- **Color Calibration Type**

  Select **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** to execute color calibration using the spectrophotometer unit, or select **Auto Adjust** to execute color calibration using the sensors in the printer.

  Note
  - Enabled when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

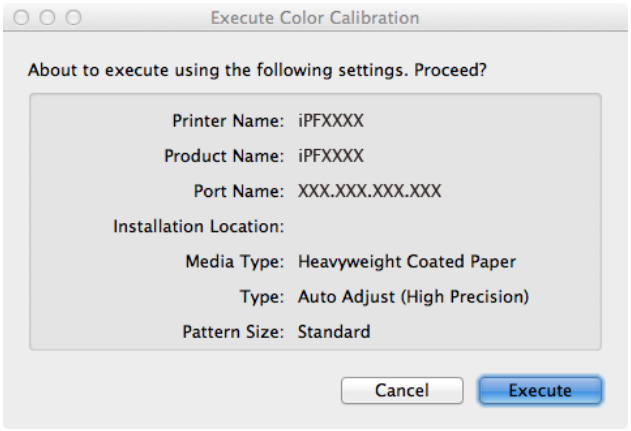
- **Pattern Size**

  You can select this setting when **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** is selected in **Color Calibration Type**. We recommend **Larger** when you want to prioritize the color measurement precision.

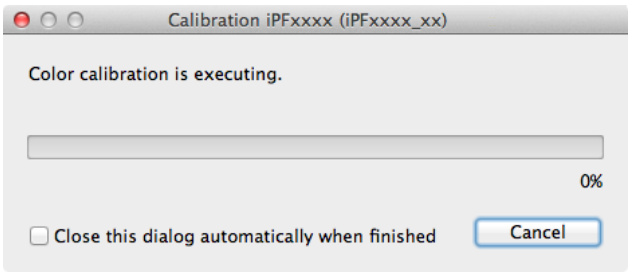
  Note
  - Enabled when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

5 Click the **OK** button.

6 When the **Execute Color Calibration** dialog box is displayed, check the details.

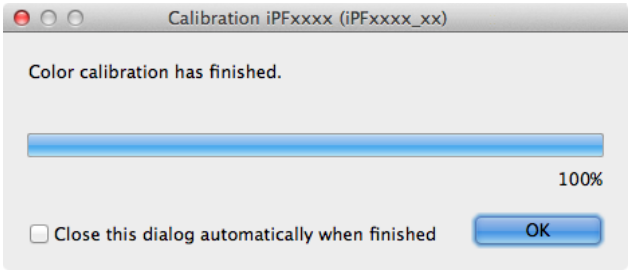


7 Click the **Execute** button.
Color calibration will be executed.



Note
- You can exit the color calibration in the middle by clicking the **Cancel** button. However, it may take some time to end.

8 Click the **OK** button.



Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart

The procedure for printing a color chart, measuring the colors, and saving the color measurement data on a computer is as follows.
The color measurement data saved on the computer can be used such as for creating ICC profiles. ICC profiles are created using commercially available software.
Created ICC profiles can be used by the printer driver. (See "**Matching pane.**") ➔P.354

Note
- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

Getting the Printer Ready

1 Confirm whether the paper to be loaded can be used for acquiring color measurement data.
(See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

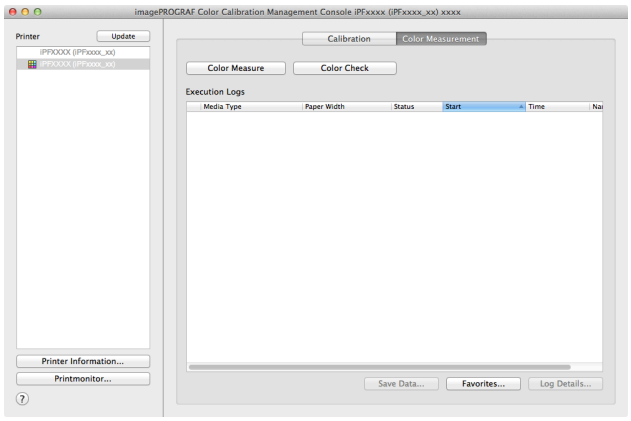
2 Load the paper.
(See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503
(See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505

Note
- If **Adj. Quality** has not been executed even once on the paper you are using, execute **Adj. Quality** in the control panel menu.
(See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.771

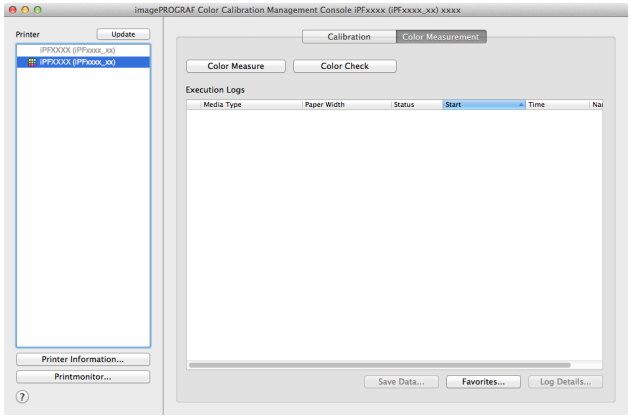
3 Select the White/Black Backing Plate color.
(See "**Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color.**") ➔P.804

Acquiring Color Measurement Data

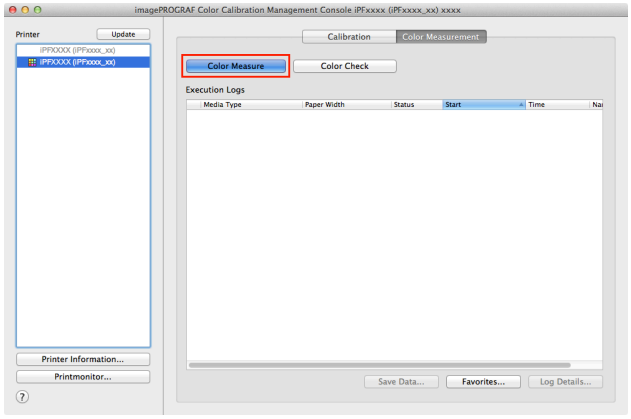
1 Open the **Color Measurement** sheet.



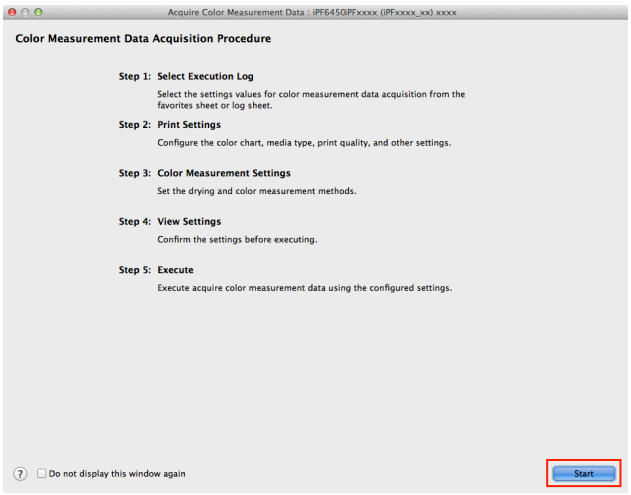
2 Select the printer you want to measure the color chart on from the **Printer** list.



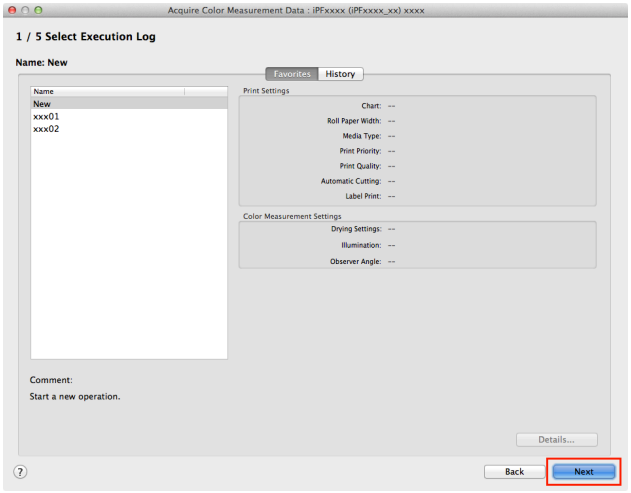
3 Click the **Color Measure** button.



4 Check the color chart measurement procedure in the procedure description window and then click **Start**.



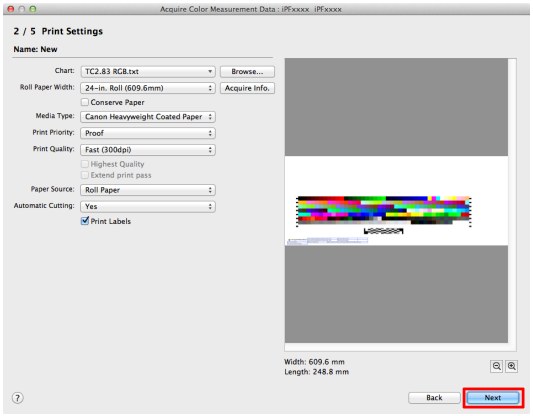
5 Select **New** in **Favorites** and then click **Next**.



Note

- To perform color chart measurement using the setting values when executed previously, select the execution log in the **Favorites** sheet or **History** sheet.

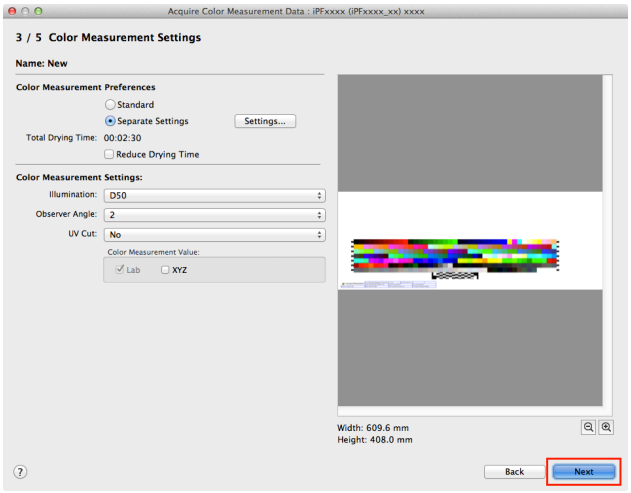
6 Select the color chart, configure the color chart print settings, and then click **Next**.



Setting Item	Details
Chart	Selects the color chart to print. If the color chart you want to print is not displayed in the list, click the **Browse** button and then select the color chart. You can only select color charts that are CGATS format RGB.
Roll Paper Width	Click the **Acquire Info.** button to display the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer.

Setting Item	Details
Conserve Paper	Selecting this check box allows you to conserve paper by reducing the gap between the pieces of a color chart when the chart is printed split into pieces.
Media Type	Select the type of paper.
Print Priority	Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. For details on the settings, see "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**" →P.59
Print Quality	Choose the print quality. For details on the settings, see "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**" →P.59
Highest quality	If you select this option, the document will be printed with enhanced quality at the highest resolution. Compared to the other options, more time and ink are consumed in printing, however you will attain print results with the highest quality.
Extend print pass	Uneven printing may occur when printing with the **Highest** setting in **Print Quality**. Selecting this check box may improve the uneven printing. However, the printing speed will be reduced.
Paper Source	Selects the paper source.
Automatic Cutting	Selects how to cut the paper when **Acquire Color Measurement Data** finishes.
Print Labels	Select this check box to print the color chart printing information.

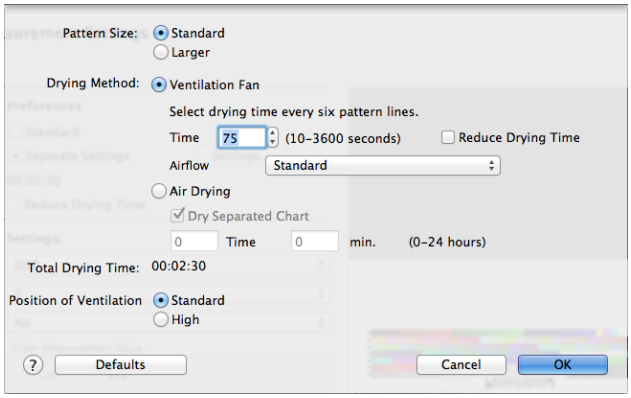
7 Configure the color measurement settings and drying settings, and then click **Next**.



Setting Item	Details
Color Measurement Preferences	Configures the pattern size to print the color charts and the drying settings for the printed color charts. Choose **Standard** to print at the standard pattern size and dry using the standard setting values. Click the **Settings** button to display the **Color Measurement Preferences** dialog box, which allows you to configure the pattern size and drying method in detail.(***1**)
Reduce Drying Time	Selecting this check box reduces the drying time. Once the time configured in the **Color Measurement Env.** sheet in the **Preferences** dialog box has elapsed, color measurement proceeds without performing any further drying with the ventilation fan. Specify a time that offers sufficient drying by air drying in the **Preferences** dialog box. If you perform color measurement while the ink is not dry, the measurements may not be correct. The **Preferences** dialog box is displayed when you click **Preferences** in the **imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console** menu.

Setting Item	Details
Reduce Drying Time	If the number of patterns is small, drying will finish in a shorter amount of time than the time configured in the **Preferences** dialog box. If this happens, the drying time will not be reduced even if the **Reduce Drying Time** check box is selected.
Illumination	Select the illumination from **D50**, **D65**, and **A**.
Observer Angle	Selects the observer angle.
UV Cut	Selects whether or not UV cut is used.
Color Measurement Value	Saves the color measurement data for the color measurement values where the check box is selected. The **Lab** check box cannot be cleared.

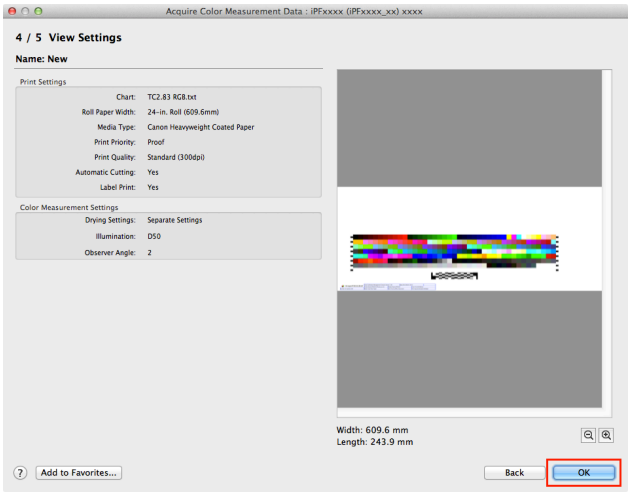
*1: If you want to enlarge the color chart pattern or configure the color chart drying settings in detail, click the **Settings** button to display the **Color Measurement Preferences** dialog box.



Setting Item	Details
Pattern Size	Selects the pattern size of the color chart. We recommend **Larger** when you want to prioritize the color measurement precision.
Drying Method	Choose **Ventilation Fan** to dry using the ventilation fan or **Air Drying** to dry without using the ventilation fan.
Ventilation Fan	Configures the drying time and airflow for the ventilation fan.
Time	Configures the drying time for the ventilation fan for each pattern. The number of lines that are dried at one time by the ventilation fan varies depending on the size selected in **Pattern Size**. As the time increases, the adhesion of the ink improves and the color tones become more stable.
Reduce Drying Time	Selecting this check box reduces the drying time. Once the time configured in the **Color Measurement Env.** sheet in the **Preferences** dialog box has elapsed, color measurement proceeds without performing any further drying with the ventilation fan. Specify a time that offers sufficient drying by air drying in the **Preferences** dialog box. If you perform color measurement while the ink is not dry, the measurements may not be correct. The **Preferences** dialog box is displayed when you click **Preferences** in the **imagePROG-RAF Color Calibration Management Console** menu. If the number of patterns is small, drying will finish in a shorter amount of time than the time configured in the **Preferences** dialog box. If this happens, the drying time will not be reduced even if the **Reduce Drying Time** check box is selected.
Airflow	Selects the airflow of the ventilation fan.
Air Drying	Sets the period between the color chart being printed and the color measurement starting. If the **Dry Separated Chart** check box is selected, printing and air drying are repeated for each separated color chart. This makes it harder for the color charts to become scratched or soiled, but also increases the time taken by the operation.

Setting Item	Details
Air Drying	If the **Dry Separated Chart** check box is clear, printing and air drying the color chart are performed once. This reduces the time taken by the operation, but may scratch or soil the end of the color chart and paper. However, this does not affect the color measurement results.
Position of Ventilation Fan	If you are using paper that has a tendency to curl or paper that does not dry easily, select **High** so that the paper does not come into contact with the paper presser. Note that when **High** is selected, we recommend that you set the **Time** longer and the **Airflow** stronger compared with when **Standard** is selected because of the larger distance between the ventilation fan and paper.

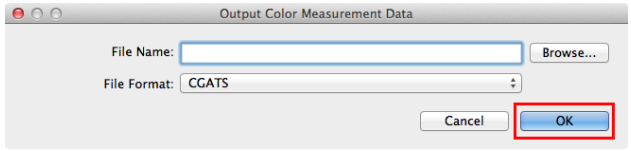
8 The **View Settings** window is displayed. Check the details of the settings and click the **OK** button.



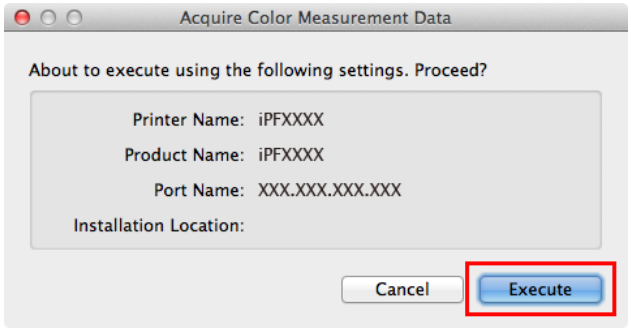
Note

- Click the **Add to Favorites** button to display the **Add to Favorites** dialog box, which allows you to add the setting details to favorites.

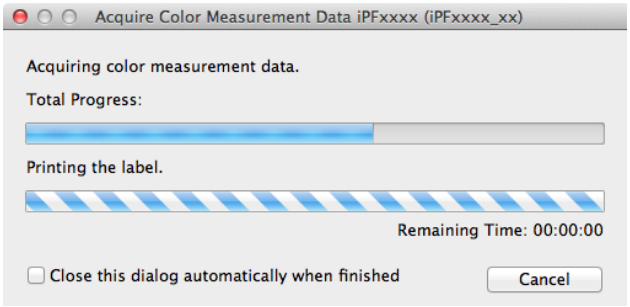
9 The **Output Color Measurement Data** dialog box is displayed.
Select the file to save the color measurement data into and click the **OK** button.



10 The **Acquire Color Measurement Data** dialog box is displayed.
Click the **Execute** button.



The color chart is printed and color measurement begins.

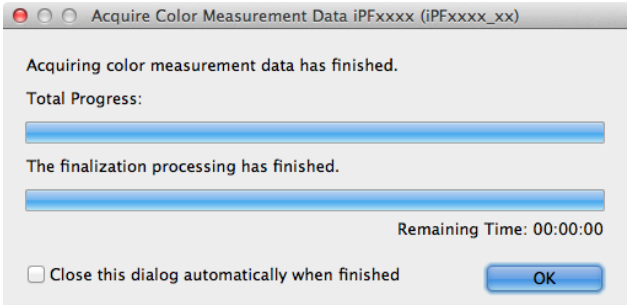


Note

- You can exit the acquire color measurement data operation in the middle by clicking the **Cancel** button. However, it may take some time to end.

11 Click the **OK** button.

Once the color measurement has finished, the color measurement data is saved on the computer.



Executing Color Check

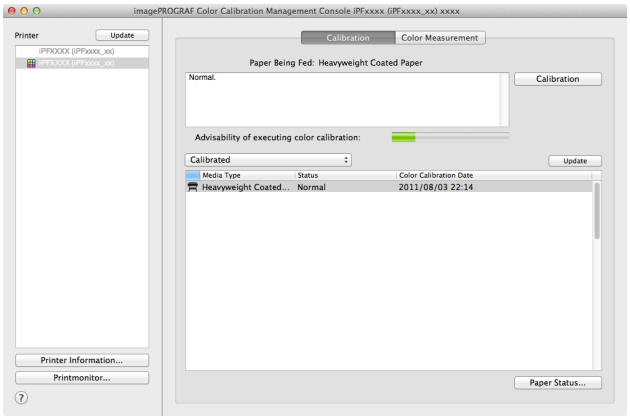
When a color check is executed, a built-in pattern is printed, the color difference from a calibration target registered in the printer is calculated, and the check results are displayed.

Note

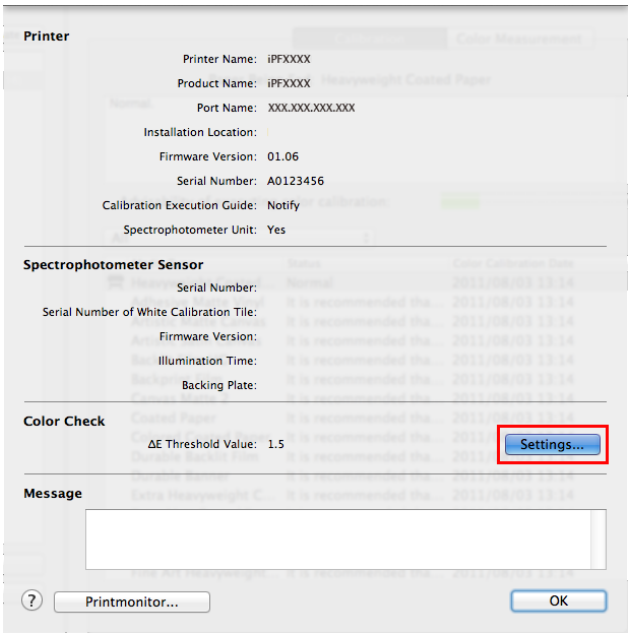
- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.
- When printing the color check adjustment pattern, the calibration adjustment values are applied even if **Use Adj. Value** is set to **Disabled** in the Control Panel menu.
  (See "**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") ➔P.799

Setting the Color Check Threshold Value

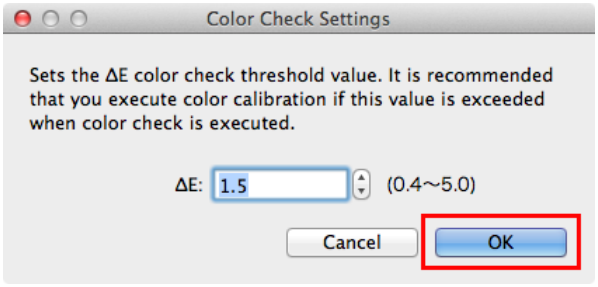
1 Double-click the printer you want to execute the color check on in the **Printer** list.



2 Click the **Settings** button for **Color Check** in the **Printer Information** dialog box.



3 Enter the color check threshold value in **ΔE** and click the **OK** button.



Getting the Printer Ready

1 Confirm whether the paper to be loaded can be used for color checks.
Paper for color check is paper that can be used with the **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** setting on the spectrophotometer unit.
(See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496

2 Load the paper.
(See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503
(See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505

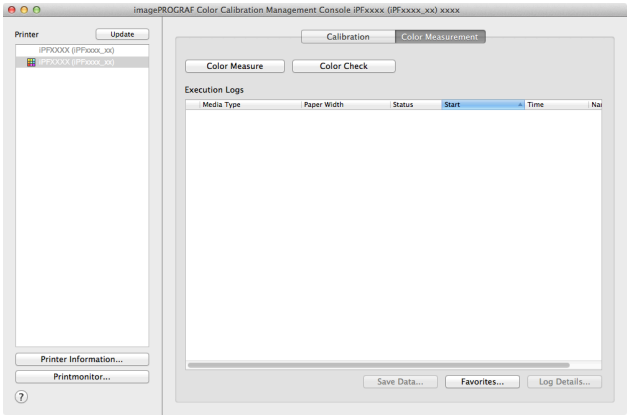
Note
- If **Adj. Quality** has not been executed even once on the paper you are using, execute **Adj. Quality** in the control panel menu.
(See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") ➔P.771

3 Select the White/Black Backing Plate color.
(See "**Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color.**") ➔P.804

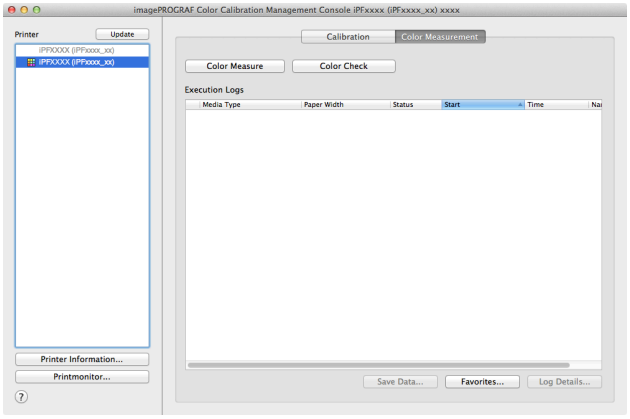
Note
- For the color of the White/Black Backing Plate, select the color from when color calibration was executed using the spectrophotometer unit.
(See "**Executing Color Calibration.**") ➔P.863

Executing Color Check

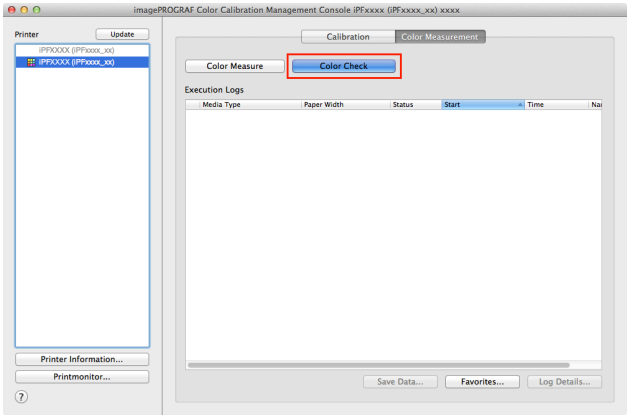
1 Open the **Color Measurement** sheet.



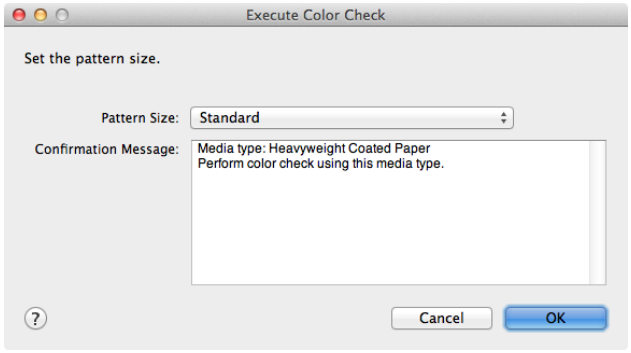
2 Select the printer you want to execute color check on from the **Printer** list.



3 Click the **Color Check** button.

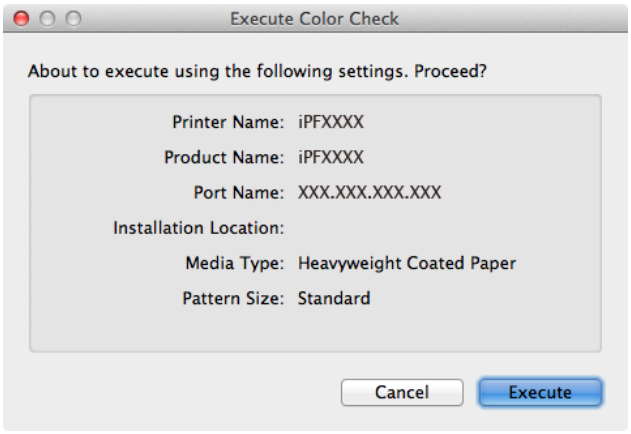


4 The **Execute Color Check** dialog box is displayed. Select **Pattern Size**.
To increase the precision of the color check, we recommend that you configure the same settings as when **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** was executed in color calibration. (See "**Executing Color Calibration.**") ➔P.863

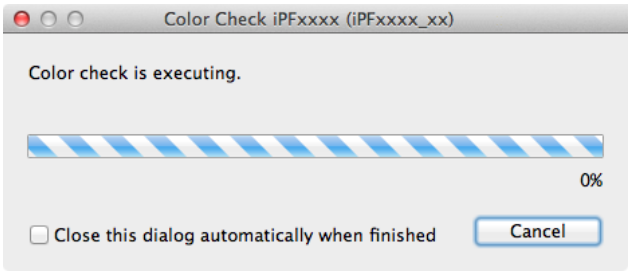


5 Click the **OK** button.

6 When the **Execute Color Check** dialog box is displayed, check the details.

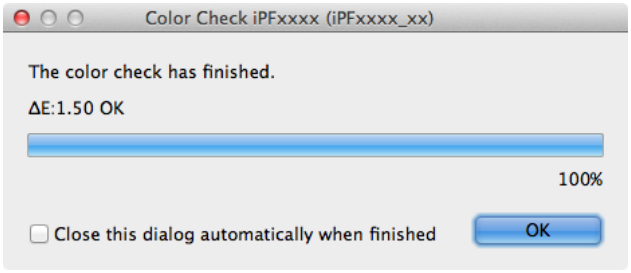


7 Click the **Execute** button.
The color check is executed.



Note
- You can exit the color check in the middle by clicking the **Cancel** button. However, it may take some time to end.

8 Check the results.



Note
- We recommend that you execute color calibration if the results exceed the threshold values. (See "**Executing Color Calibration.**") ➔P.863

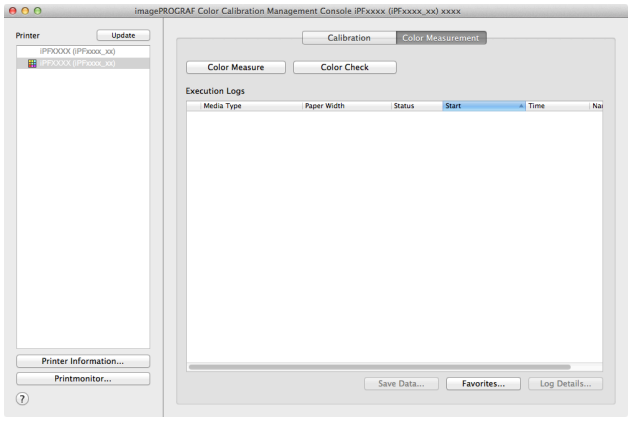
Scheduling Color Check

You can configure a schedule to automatically perform color check at the specified dates and times.
Once configured, the color check is executed on the paper that is loaded at the specified date and time.
You can also configure whether or not to execute color calibration if the result of the color check exceeds the color check threshold value.

Important
- The color check is not executed at the designated date and time if the printer is turned off.
- If the schedule settings are configured while the printer is in sleep mode, the schedule settings are applied when the printer recovers from sleep mode. The color check will not be executed by the configured schedule unless the printer recovers from sleep mode at least once.

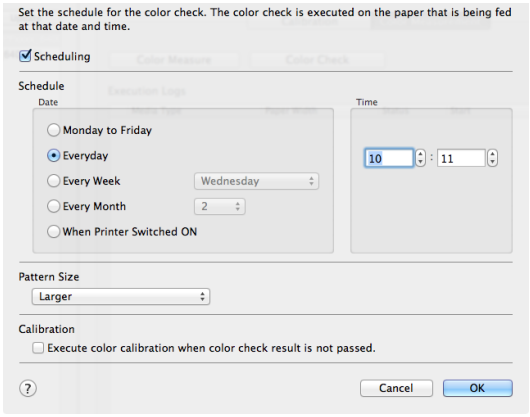
Note
- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

1 Open the **Color Measurement** sheet.



2 Select **Schedule Settings** from the **Tools** menu.

3 In the **Schedule Settings** dialog box, configure the settings such as the date and time to execute the color check and click the **OK** button.



Setting Item	Details
Scheduling	Select this check box to execute a color check at the date and time specified in **Schedule**.
Schedule	Sets the date and time to execute the color check. If **When Printer Switched ON** is selected, a color check is executed when the printer is turned on.
Pattern Size	To increase the precision of the color check, we recommend that you configure the same setting as when **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** was executed in color calibration.
Calibration	Select this check box to execute color calibration if the result of the color check exceeds the value of ΔE configured in the **Color Check Settings** dialog box.

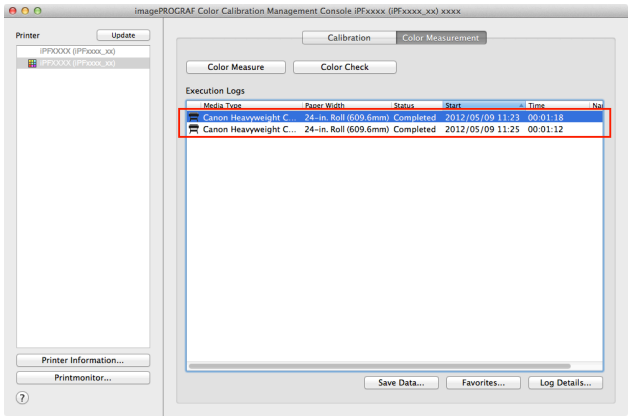
4 is displayed at the bottom left of the **Color Measurement** sheet.
This completes configuring the color check schedule.

Registering Execution Logs in Favorites

You can register frequently used execution logs in favorites for **Acquire Color Measurement Data**. Registering an operation in favorites allows you to attach a separate name for easily recalling the operation.

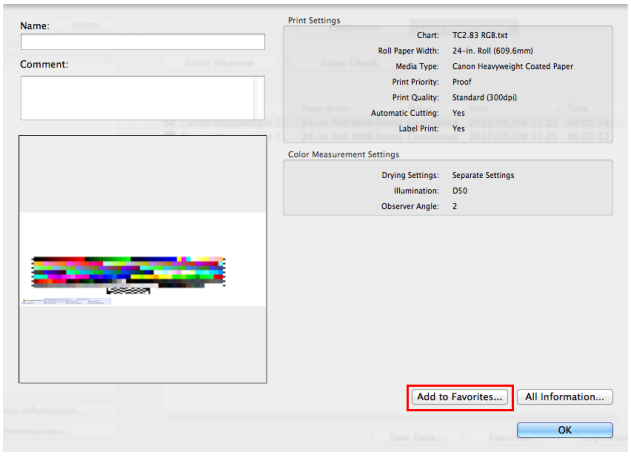
Note
- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.
- You can register up to 30 execution logs in the favorites.

1 Select the execution log to register in favorites in **Execution Logs** in the main window (**Color Measurement** sheet).

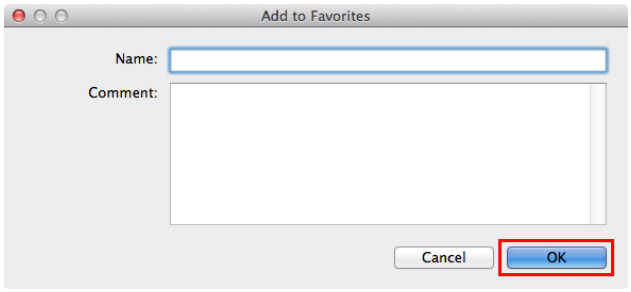


2 Click the **Log Details** button.

3 Click the **Add to Favorites** button in the **Execution Log Details** dialog box.



4 Enter the name in **Name**. Enter a comment in **Comment** if needed.



5 Click the **OK** button.

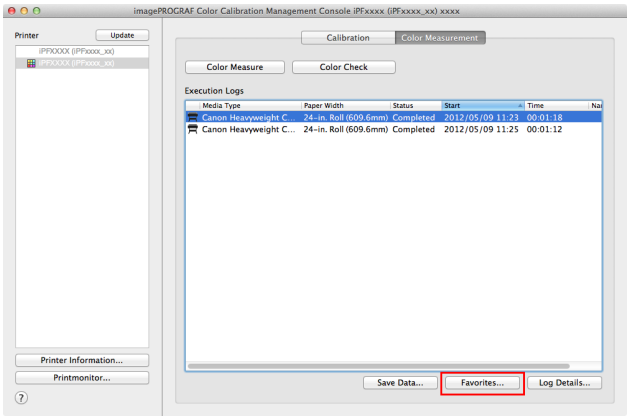
Deleting Execution Logs From Favorites

You can delete **Acquire Color Measurement Data** execution logs from the favorites.

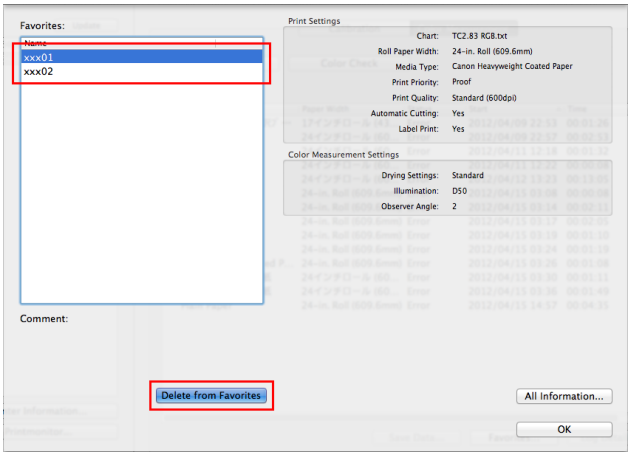
Note

- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

1 Click the **Favorites** button in the main window (**Color Measurement** sheet).



2 Select execution log that you want to delete in **Favorites** and click the **Delete from Favorites** button.



3 Click the **OK** button.

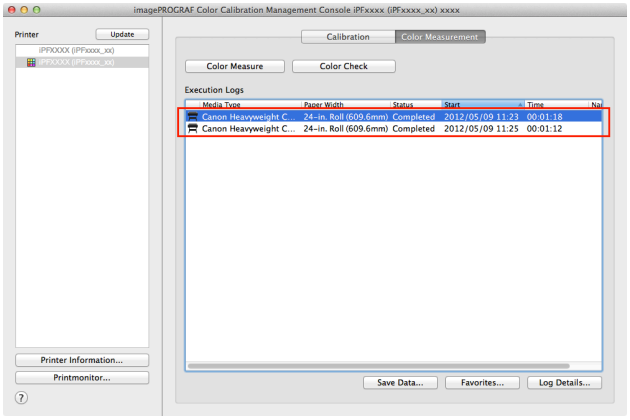
Saving Execution Logs on the Computer

You can save **Acquire Color Measurement Data** execution logs on the computer.

Note

- This step can be executed when a printer that has a spectrophotometer unit installed is selected.

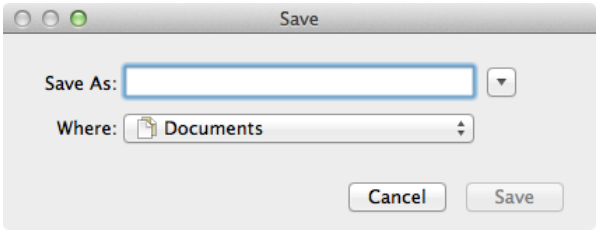
1 Select the execution log to save on the computer in **Execution Logs** in the main window (**Color Measurement** sheet).



2 Select **Output Execution Log CSV** > **Selected Logs** from the **Tools** menu.

Note
- To save all of the execution logs, select **All Logs**.

3 Enter the file name and save.

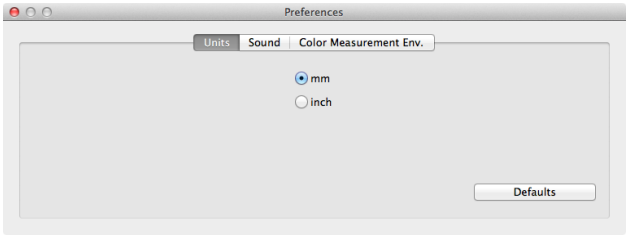


Switching Display Units

The units displayed in the Color Calibration Management Console can be switched between millimeters and inches.

1 Select **Preferences** in the **imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console** menu.

2 Select the display units in the **Units** sheet in the **Preferences** dialog box and then click the button.

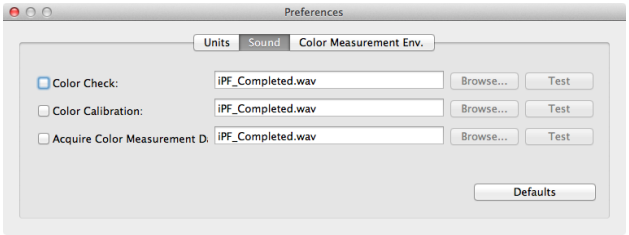


Getting Audio Notification of Color Calibration Finished

You can be notified by sound when color calibration finishes.

1 Select **Preferences** in the **imagePROGRAF Color Calibration Management Console** menu.

2 Select the **Color Calibration** check box in the **Sound** sheet in the **Preferences** dialog box and then click the **Browse** button and select the audio file.



Note

- If you want to check the sound in the selected audio file, click the **Test** button.

3 Click the button.

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779

Maintenance and Consumables

Ink Tanks 882
Printheads 890
Maintenance Cartridge 899
Cleaning the Printer 907
Other Maintenance 917

Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

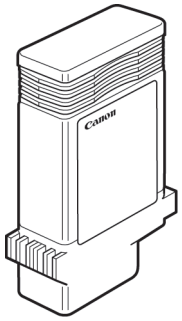
User's Guide

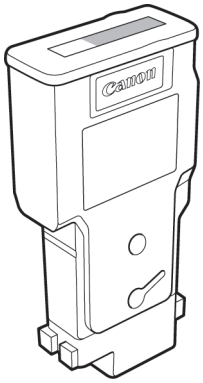
Ink Tanks

Ink Tanks 882
Replacing Ink Tanks 882
Checking Ink Tank Levels 888
When to Replace Ink Tanks 888

Ink Tanks

When purchasing, check the Model number.

Shape	Colors	Model number	Ink Type	Capacity
	Matte black	PFI-106 MBK	Pigment ink	130 ml (4.4 fl oz)
	Black	PFI-106 BK		
	Cyan	PFI-106 C		
	Magenta	PFI-106 M		
	Yellow	PFI-106 Y		
	Photo cyan	PFI-106 PC		
	Photo magenta	PFI-106 PM		
	Gray	PFI-106 GY		

Shape	Colors	Model number	Ink Type	Capacity
	Matte black	PFI-206 MBK	Pigment ink	300 ml (10.2 fl oz)
	Black	PFI-206 BK		
	Cyan	PFI-206 C		
	Magenta	PFI-206 M		
	Yellow	PFI-206 Y		
	Photo cyan	PFI-206 PC		
	Photo magenta	PFI-206 PM		
	Gray	PFI-206 GY		

Note

- For instructions on Ink Tank replacement, see "**Replacing Ink Tanks.**" ➔P.882

Replacing Ink Tanks

Compatible ink tanks

For information on supported ink tanks, see "**Ink Tanks.**" ➔P.882
Replacement ink tanks in 130 ml (4.4 fl oz) and 300 ml (10.2 fl oz) capacities are supported.

Note

- Depending on the color, you can also use ink tanks of different capacities.

Precautions when handling ink tanks

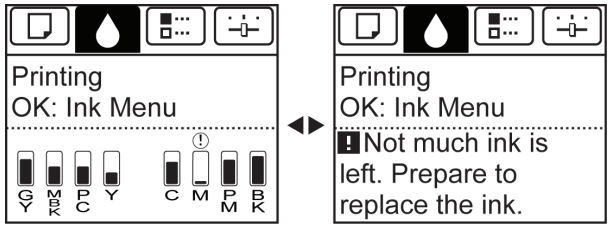
Take the following precautions when handling ink tanks.

Caution
- For safety, keep ink tanks out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

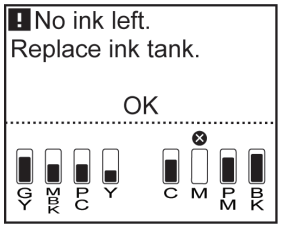
Important
- There may be ink around the ink supply section of ink tanks you removed. Handle ink tanks carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not install used ink tanks in another model of printer.
  This will prevent correct ink level detection, which may damage the printer or cause other problems.
- We recommend using up an Ink Tank in the course of printing within six months after breaking the seal. Printing quality may be affected if you use older ink tanks.
- Do not leave the printer without ink tanks installed for extended periods (a month or more). Residual ink may become clogged inside the printer and affect printing quality.

Confirm the message

When the ink level becomes low, a message is displayed on the Display Screen.
According to the message, replace the ink tank or prepare a new ink tank. (See **"When to Replace Ink Tanks."**) ➔P.888



If a message requests you to replace an Ink Tank, press the **OK** button. In this case, you can skip the step **Access the menu for ink tank replacement.** Follow the instructions in **Remove the ink tanks.**

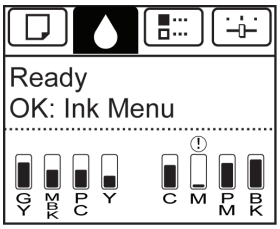


Important
- Do not remove an Ink Tank during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, or during printhead cleaning. Ink may leak out.

Note
- Ink Tank replacement is possible even during printing, when print jobs are being canceled, or when paper is being advanced.

Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Ink tab ( ).



Note

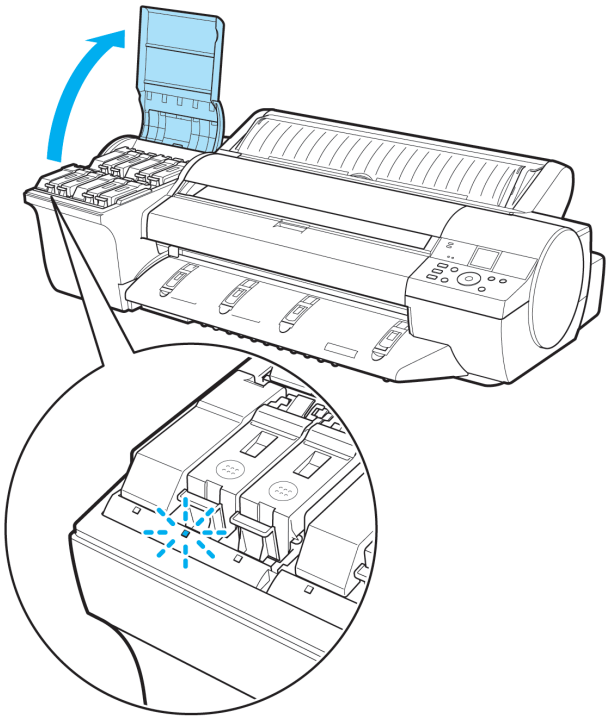
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Ink Menu** is displayed.

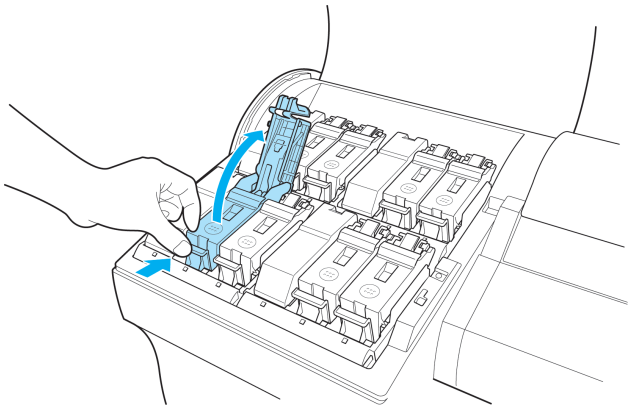
3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Rep. Ink Tank**, and then press the **OK** button.
A message on the Display Screen requests you to open the Ink Tank Cover. Remove the Ink Tank at this point.

Remove the Ink Tanks

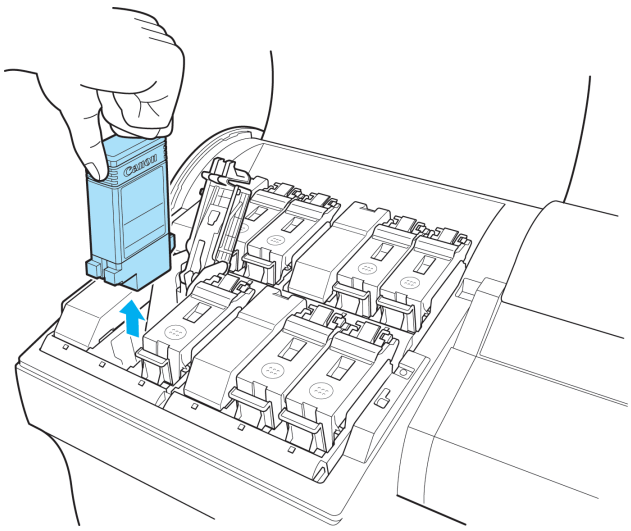
1 Open the Ink Tank Cover and check the ink lamps.
Ink lamps flash when there is little ink left.



2 Press the tip of the Ink Tank Lock Lever of the color for replacement horizontally and lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever to open it.

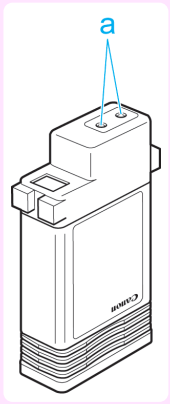


3 Hold the Ink Tank by the grips and remove it. Press the **OK** button.



Important

- If there is still ink in the Ink Tank you removed, store it with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains. Put the Ink Tank in a plastic bag and seal it.

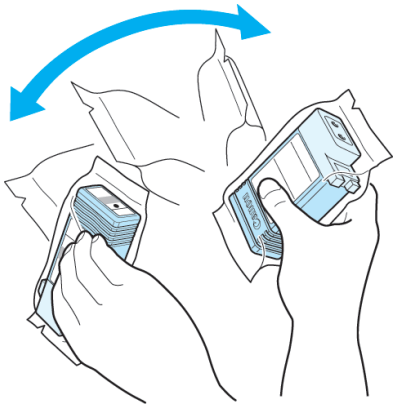


Note

- Dispose of used ink tanks according to local regulations.

Installing Ink Tanks

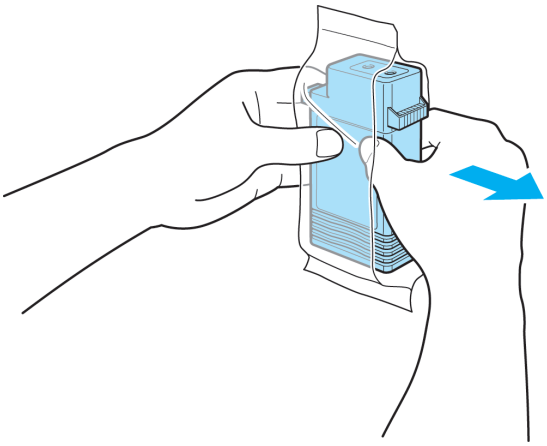
1 Before opening the pouch, gently agitate the Ink Tank seven or eight times. Agitate the ink in the Ink Tank by slowly rotating the Ink Tank upside-down and right side up repeatedly.



Important

- After installing an ink tank, do not remove and shake it. Doing so may cause the ink to leak out.
- If you do not agitate the Ink Tank, the ink may settle, which may affect printing quality.

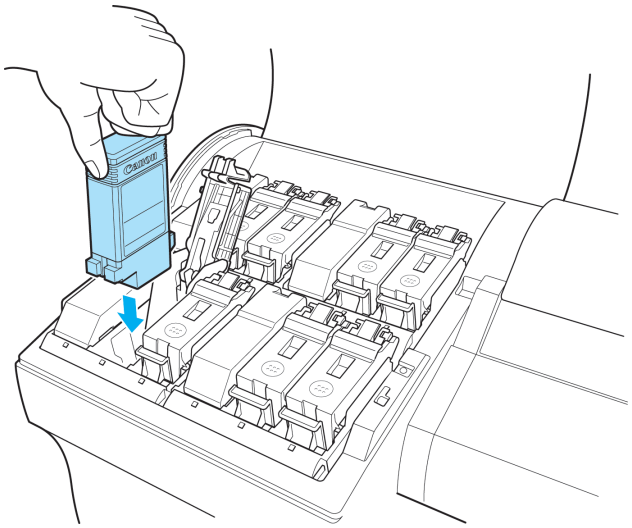
2 Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.



Important

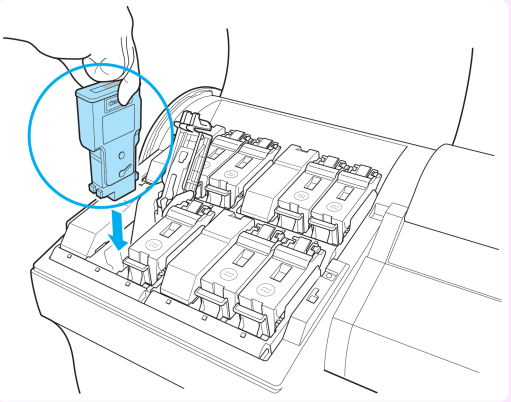
- Never touch the ink holes or electrical contacts. This may cause stains, damage the Ink Tank, and affect printing quality.

3 Press the **OK** button and install the Ink Tank into the holder as shown, with the ink holes facing down.

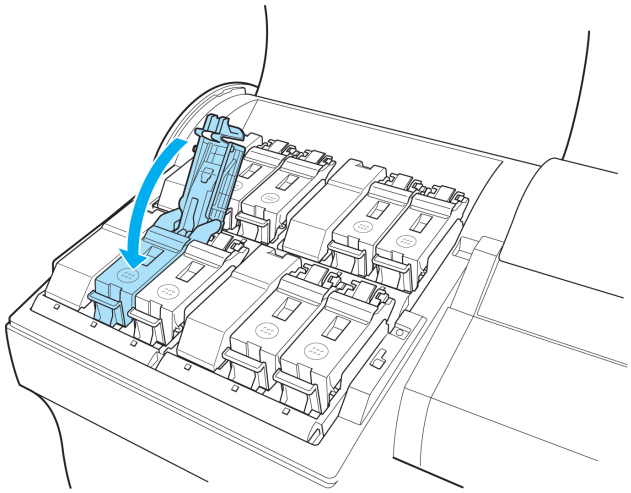


Important

- Ink tanks cannot be installed in the holder if the color or orientation is incorrect.
  If the Ink Tank does not fit in the holder, do not force it in. Make sure that the color of the Ink Color Label matches the color of the Ink Tank and check the orientation of the Ink Tank before reinstalling it.

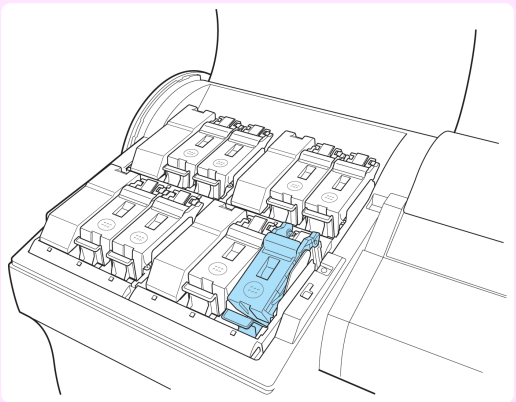


4 Push the Ink Tank Lock Lever closed until it clicks into place.

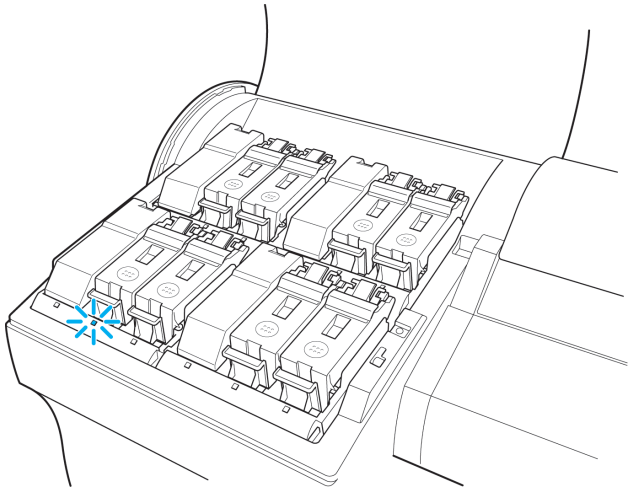


Important

- If a 130 ml (4.4 fl oz) ink tank is installed facing the wrong direction, the rotating part of the Ink Tank Lock Lever come out of place.
  If this happens, open the Ink Tank Lock Lever to return it to the proper position.



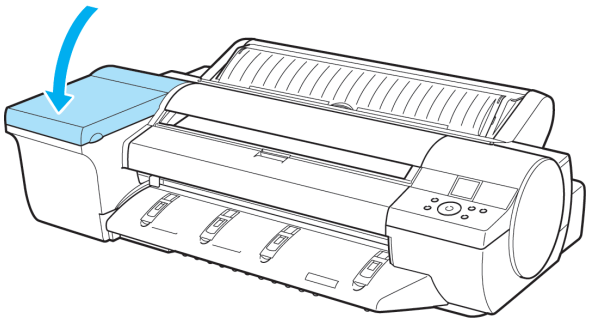
5 Make sure the Ink Lamp is lit in red.



Note

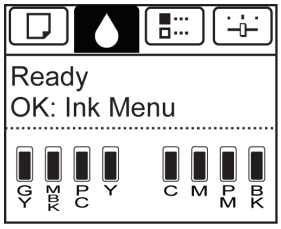
- If the Ink Lamp is not lit, reinstall the tank.

6 Close the Ink Tank Cover.



Checking Ink Tank Levels

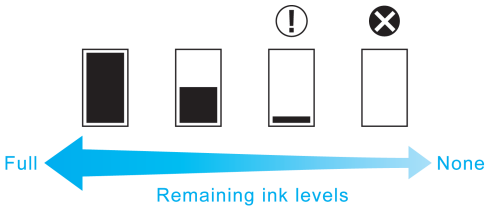
On the Display Screen, you can check how much ink is left in the ink tanks.
To check remaining Ink Tank levels, access the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel and press ◀ or ▶ to select the Ink tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.
- If an error has occurred and the **Tab Selection screen** cannot be displayed, display **Ink Info** as follows.

1. Press the **OK** button to display **Printer Info**.
2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select **Ink Info**.
3. Press the **OK** button.

The remaining ink levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the Color Label on the bottom of the Display Screen.
These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: **!** if ink is low, **×** if no ink is left, and **?** if you have deactivated ink level detection.
The remaining ink level is indicated as shown below.



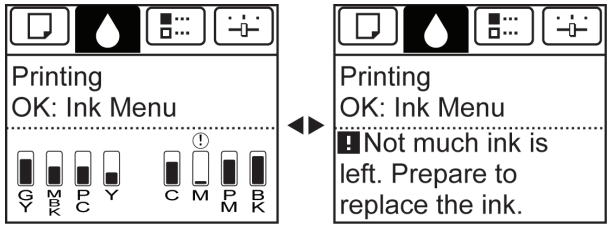
If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Ink Tank, replace the Ink Tank. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining ink levels, or after tasks that consume a lot of ink such as large-format printing or head cleaning, check the remaining levels and replace Ink Tank as needed. (See "**Replacing Ink Tanks**.") →P.882

When to Replace Ink Tanks

Replace or prepare to replace ink tanks in the following situations.

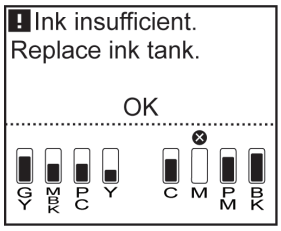
If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen

When there is little ink left, the **Message Lamp** is lit and "**Not much ink is left.**" is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but prepare to replace the Ink Tank. (See "**Checking Ink Tank Levels**.") →P.888



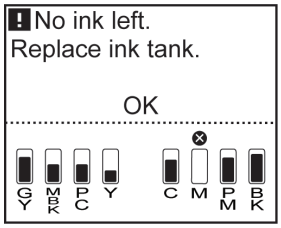
Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink

If little ink is left, there may not be enough for large-format printing, head cleaning, and maintenance, which require a lot of ink. Replace or prepare to replace the Ink Tank.



If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When ink runs out, the **Message Lamp** flashes, a message regarding Ink Tank replacement is shown on the Display Screen, and printing is disabled. Replace the Ink Tank at this point.

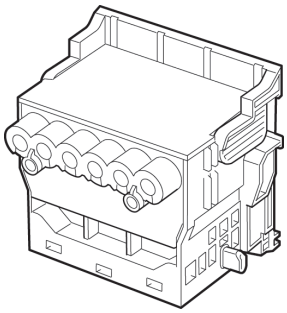


Printheads

Printhead 890
Checking for Nozzle Clogging 890
Cleaning the Printhead 891
Replacing the Printhead 892

Printhead

When purchasing, check the Model number.

Shape	Model number
	PF-05

Note

- For instructions on replacing the Printhead, see "**Replacing the Printhead.**" ➔P.892

Checking for Nozzle Clogging

If printing is faint or affected by banding in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.

Note

- By default, nozzles are checked at fixed intervals.
  Configure the settings on the Control Panel menu in **Nozzle Check**.
  (See "**Menu Settings.**") ➔P.632

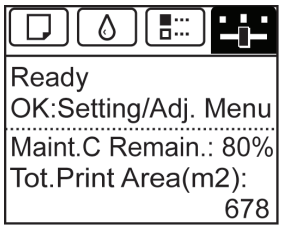
Paper to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 254.0 mm (10.00 in) wide
When Using Sheets	One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

1 Load paper.

- **Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder** ➔P.503
- **Loading Rolls in the Printer** ➔P.505
- **Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot** ➔P.529

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



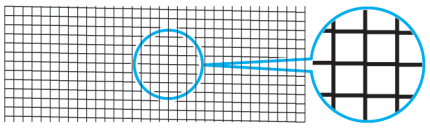
Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

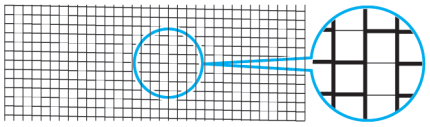
4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Nozzle Check**, and then press the **OK** button.
The printer now prints a test pattern for checking the nozzles.

6 Check the printing results.
If the horizontal lines are not faint or incomplete, the nozzles are clear.



If some sections of the horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, the nozzles for those colors are clogged.



If horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, follow the steps below and check again for nozzle clogging.

1. Clean the Printhead. (See "**Cleaning the Printhead**.") ➔P.891
2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.

Note
- If you repeat these steps several times but the horizontal lines are still faint or incomplete, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Cleaning the Printhead

If printing is faint, cleaning the Printhead may improve results.
Choose one of two Printhead cleaning modes (**Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**), depending on the problem to resolve.

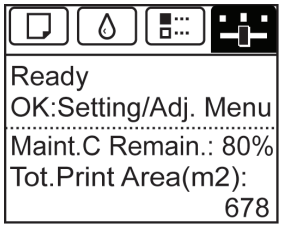
- **Head Cleaning A**
  Use this mode if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink.
  It takes about six minutes to complete.
- **Head Cleaning B**
  Use this mode if no ink is ejected at all, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem.
  It takes about seven minutes to complete.

Important
- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or ink tanks during either **Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**. Ink may leak or an error may occur.
- If printing does not improve even if you execute **Head Cleaning B**, try repeating **Head Cleaning B** once or twice. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Note
- By default, nozzles are checked at fixed intervals.
  Configure the settings on the Control Panel menu in **Nozzle Check**.
  (See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632

Perform cleaning as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**, and then press the **OK** button.
Head cleaning is now executed.

6. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (See "**Checking for Nozzle Clogging**.") ➔P.890

Replacing the Printhead

When to replace the Printhead

This printer is equipped with two printheads.
Replace one or both printheads in the following situations.

- If the printing quality does not improve even after one or two cycles of **Head Cleaning B** from the printer menu
  Replace any printheads with poor printing performance.
- If the Display Screen indicates "**Open top cover and replace the left printhead.**"
  Replace the Printhead on the left side.
- If the Display Screen indicates "**Open top cover and replace the right printhead.**"
  Replace the Printhead on the right side.
- If your Canon dealer has advised you to replace the Printhead
  Replace the Printhead as directed.

Compatible printheads

For information on compatible printheads, see "**Printhead**." ➔P.890

Precautions when handling the Printhead

Take the following precautions when handling the Printhead.

Caution
- For safety, keep the Printhead out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
- Do not touch the Printhead immediately after printing. The Printhead becomes extremely hot, and there is a risk of burns.

Important
- There may be ink around the nozzles of the Printhead you remove. Handle the Printhead carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not open the Printhead pouch until immediately before installation. After removing the Printhead from the pouch, install it right away. If the Printhead is left after the pouch is opened, the nozzles may dry out, which may affect printing quality.

Access the menu for Printhead replacement

Caution
- When replacing the Printhead immediately after printing, wait a few minutes before replacing it. The metal parts of the Printhead become hot during printing, and there is a risk of burns from touching these parts.

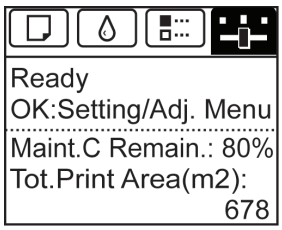
Important
- Your hands may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement.

Note
- Prepare a new Ink Tank when ink levels are low.
- When the remaining capacity of Maintenance cartridge is low, prepare a new Maintenance cartridge.

1 Remove any paper that has been advanced by selecting **Eject Paper** in the Control Panel menu.
- When using a roll, rewind it.
(See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer**.") ➔P.510
- When using sheets, remove the sheet.
(See "**Removing Sheets**.") ➔P.540

2 Clean inside the Top Cover. (See "**Cleaning Inside the Top Cover**.") ➔P.907

3 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

4 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.

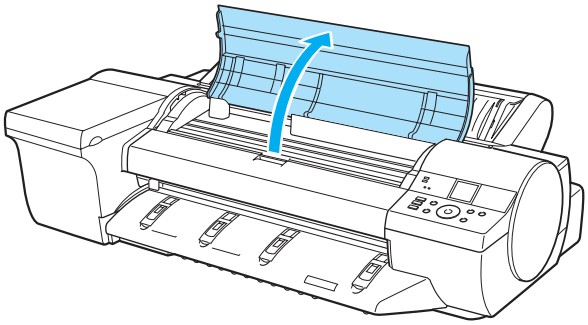
6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Replace P.head**, and then press the **OK** button.

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Printhead for replacement.
Select **Printhead L** when replacing the left printhead and **Printhead R** when replacing the right printhead.
Make sure your selection is correct.

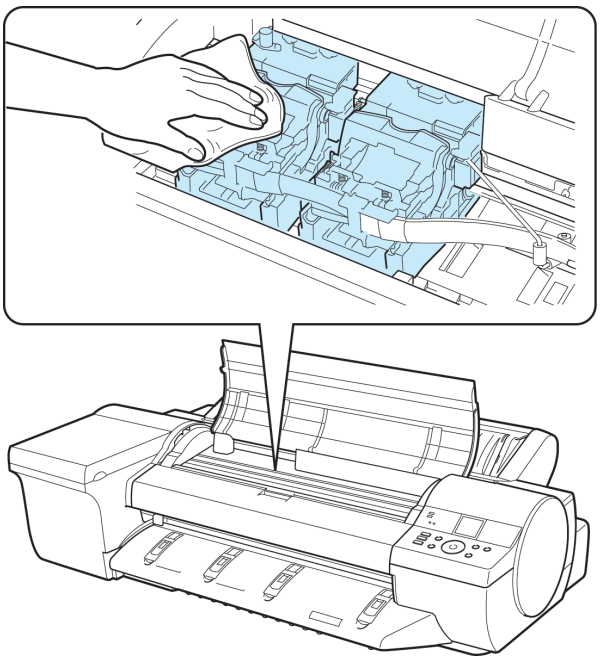
8 Press the **OK** button.
The ink begins to be drawn in, and instructions appear on the Display Screen after this has finished.
It takes about three minutes for the ink to be drawn in.

Replace the Printhead

1 Open the Top Cover.
Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Printhead replacement.

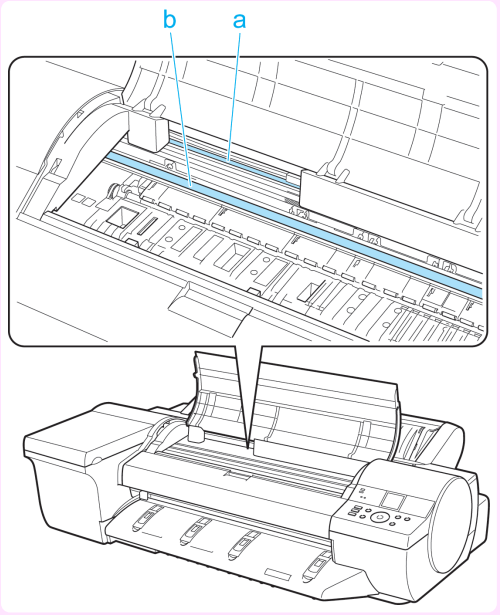


2 If the Printhead Fixer Cover or Printhead Fixer Lever is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.



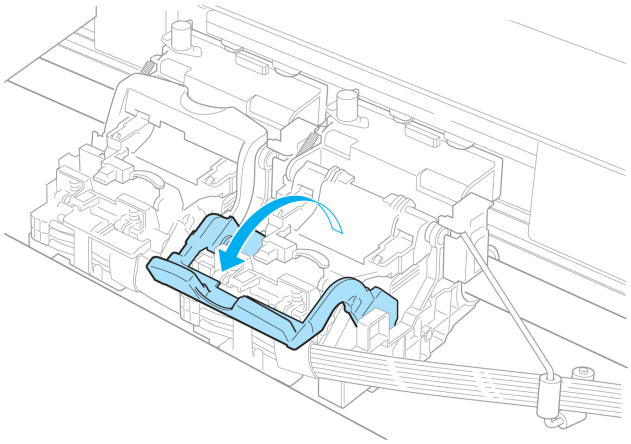
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). Touching these parts may damage them.

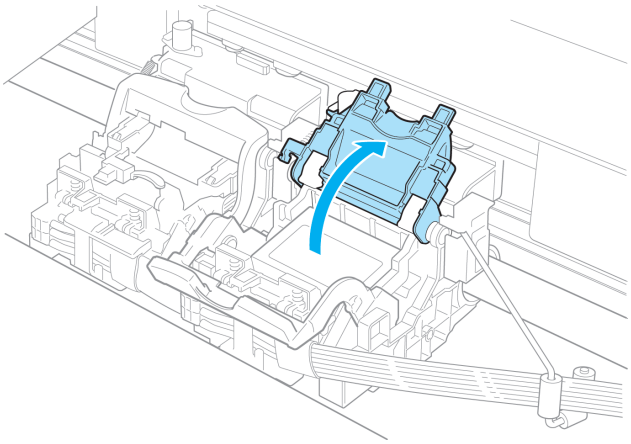


- Never touch the metal contacts of the Carriage. This may damage the printer.

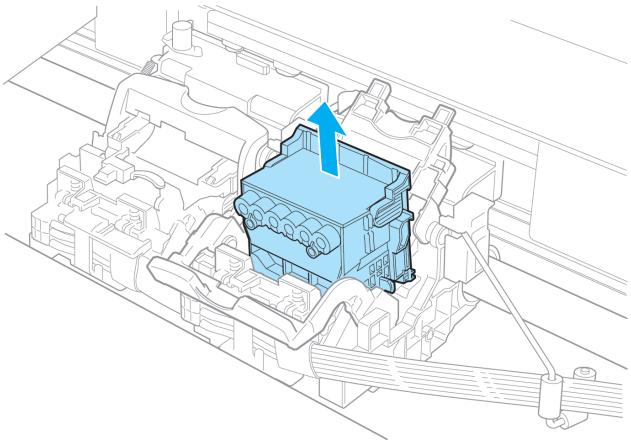
3 Pull the Printhead Fixer Lever forward all the way to open it completely.



4 Pull up the Printhead Fixer Cover to open it completely.



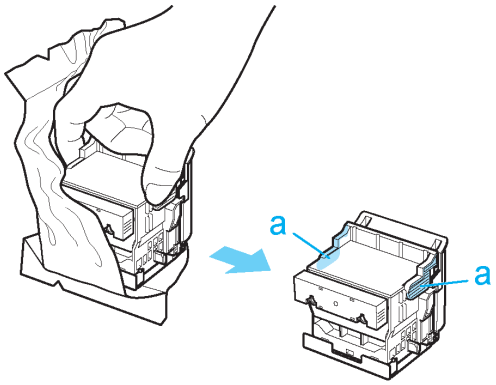
5 Remove the Printhead and press the **OK** button.



Note

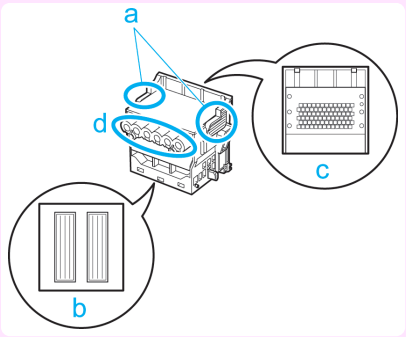
- Dispose of the used Printhead in accordance with local regulations.

6 Holding the new Printhead by the grips (a), remove it from the pouch.

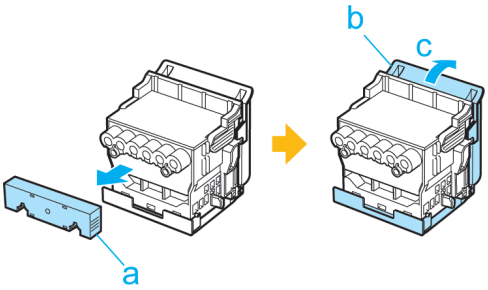


Important

- When handling the Printhead, always hold it by the grips (a). Never touch the nozzles (b) or metal contacts (c). This may damage the Printhead and affect printing quality.
- Never touch the ink supply section (d). This may cause printing problems.



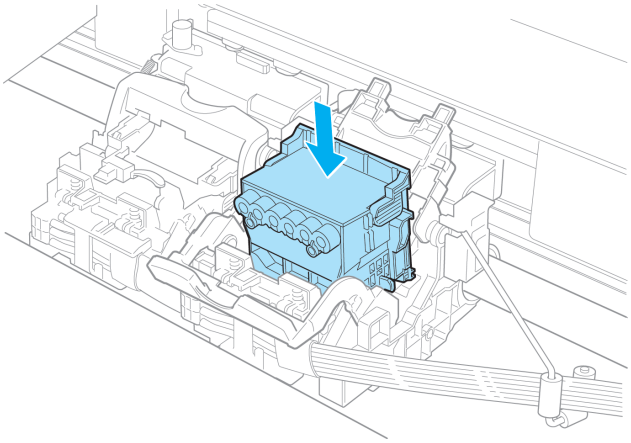
7 While firmly holding the Printhead you have removed, use your other hand to remove the orange Protective Part (a). Squeeze the grips (c) of Protective Part (b) and pull it down to remove it.



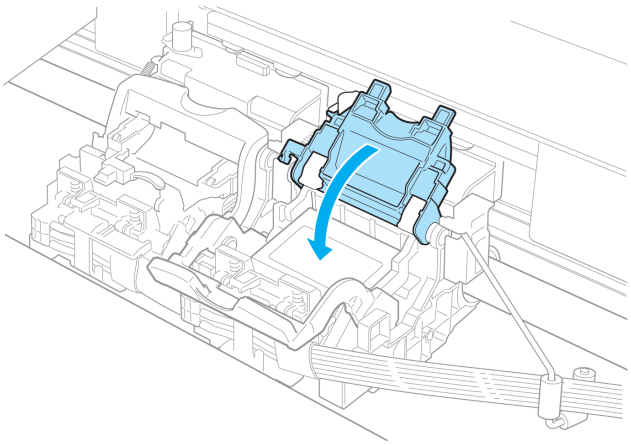
Important

- The inside surface of the Protective Part (a) and Protective Part (b) is coated with ink to protect the nozzles. Be careful not to touch these surfaces when removing the caps.
- The Printhead contains ink to protect the nozzles. We recommend removing Protective Part (b) as you hold it over the Printhead package or safely out of the way to avoid spilling ink and staining your clothes or the surrounding area. If ink accidentally spills, wipe off the ink with a dry cloth.
- If you need to put a Printhead somewhere temporarily before installation, do not keep the nozzles and metal contacts facing down. If the nozzles or metal contacts are damaged, it may affect the printing quality.
- Do not reattach the removed Protective Part. Dispose of these materials in accordance with local regulations.

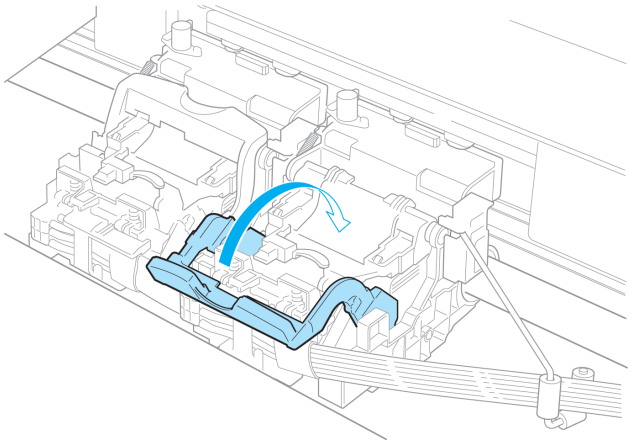
8 With the nozzles facing down and the metal contacts toward the back, insert the Printhead into the Carriage. Carefully push the printhead firmly into the Carriage, ensuring that the nozzles and metal contacts do not touch the carriage.



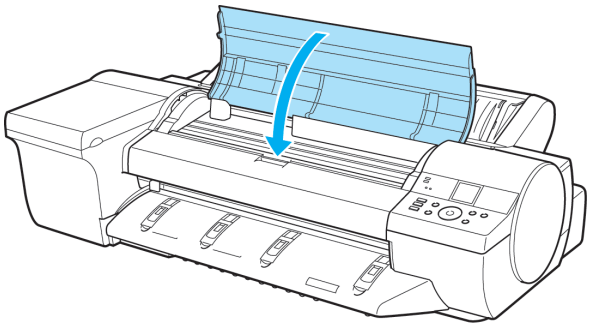
9 Pull the Printhead Fixer Cover down toward the front to lock the Printhead in place.



10 Push the Printhead Fixer Lever toward the back of the printer until it clicks.



11 Close the Top Cover.
Ink is being filled. It takes about nine minutes for ink to fill the system.



Important

- Never remove an Ink Tank while the system is filling with ink.

Note

- The procedure is now finished if you have set **Rep.P.head Print** to **Off** in the Control Panel menu.
  In this case, execute the **Initial adjustmt** of **Head Posi. Adj.** from the Control Panel menu.
  (See "**Adjustment When Installing the Printhead.**") ➔P.767

12 Follow the instructions on the Display Screen to advance the paper.
After the paper is advanced the **Initial adjustmt** of **Head Posi. Adj.** will be executed automatically.

Note

- When printing fine lines or text at high precision on glossy or semi-glossy photo or proofing paper, set the optimal Printhead height before aligning the printhead.
  (See "**Enhancing Printing Quality.**") ➔P.762

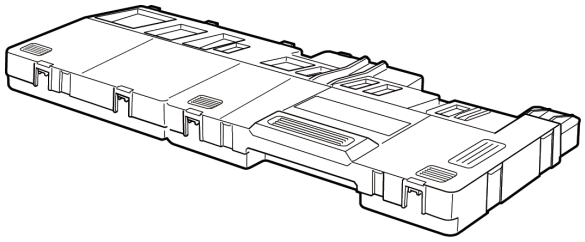
Maintenance Cartridge

Maintenance Cartridge 899
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 899
Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity 905

When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge 905

Maintenance Cartridge

When purchasing, check the Model number.

Shape	Model number
	MC-16

Note

- For instructions on replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, see "**Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.**" ➔P.899

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

Compatible maintenance cartridges

For information on compatible maintenance cartridges, see "**Maintenance Cartridge.**" ➔P.899

Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge

Take the following precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.

Caution

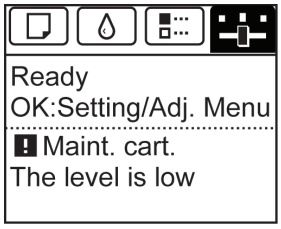
- For safety, keep the Maintenance Cartridge out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

Important

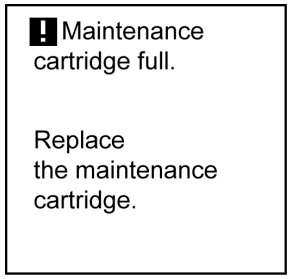
- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge except to replace it. Ink may leak out.
- Do not remove an Maintenance Cartridge during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, during Printhead cleaning, while ink is being drawn out, or during initialization immediately after replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.
  The Maintenance Cartridge may become damaged or ink may leak out.
- To prevent ink from leaking from a used Maintenance Cartridge, avoid dropping the cartridge or storing it at an angle. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Ink adheres to the top of the Maintenance Cartridge after it has been used. Handle the Maintenance Cartridge carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.

Confirm the message

When the Maintenance Cartridge is almost empty, a message is shown on the Display Screen. According to the message, replace the Maintenance Cartridge or prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge. (See "**When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge.**") ➔P.905

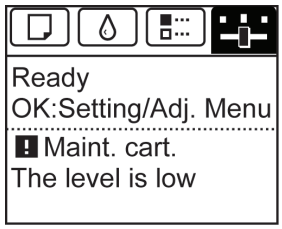


If a message is displayed requesting Maintenance Cartridge replacement, you can skip the step **Access the menu for Maintenance Cartridge replacement.** Follow the instructions in **Replace the Maintenance Cartridge.**



Access the menu for Maintenance Cartridge replacement

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

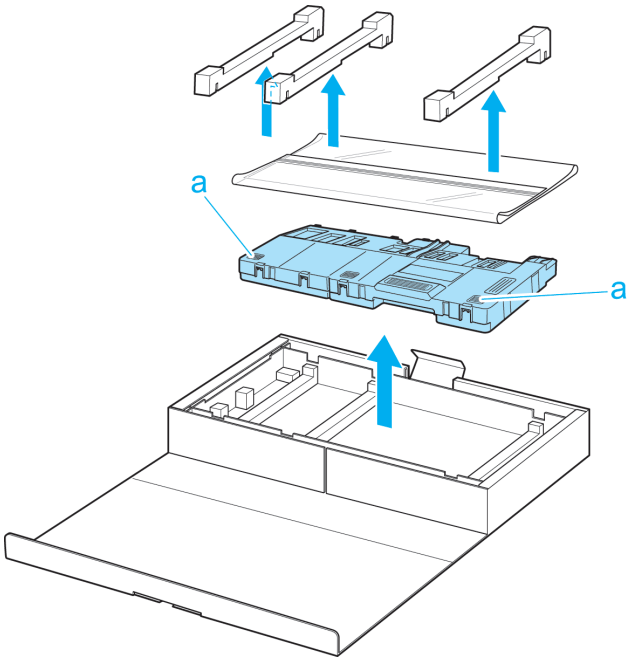
2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Repl. maint cart**, and then press the **OK** button.

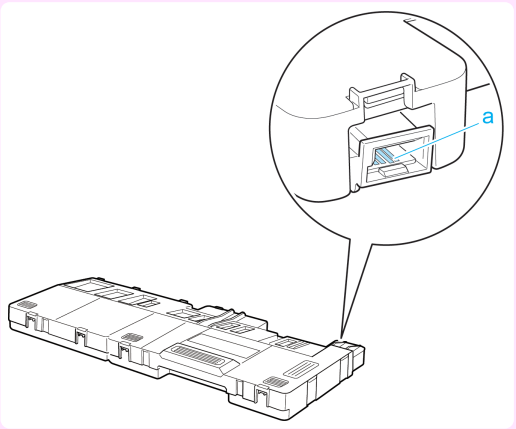
Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

1 Open the box of the new Maintenance Cartridge and remove the plastic bag and packaging material. Holding the handles (a) on both sides, pull out the cartridge.

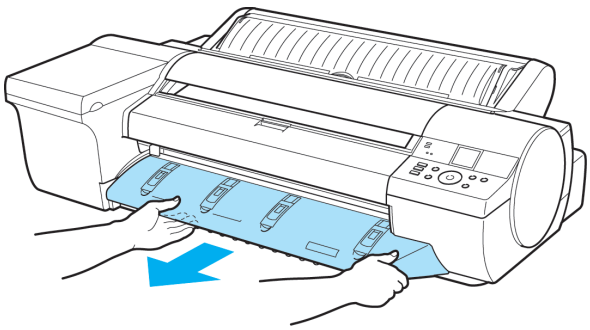


Important

- Never touch the metal contacts (a). This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.

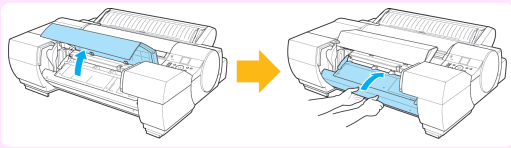


2 Remove the Ejection Guide.



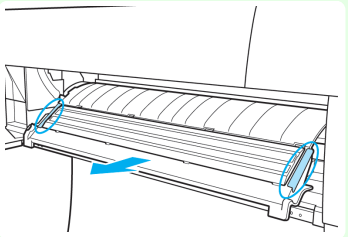
Important

- If the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide is lowered while the optional Spectrophotometer Unit is mounted, open the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover and lift up the central part (near the blue label) of the Up-down Unit. Lifting up the ends of the Up-down Unit may cause damage.

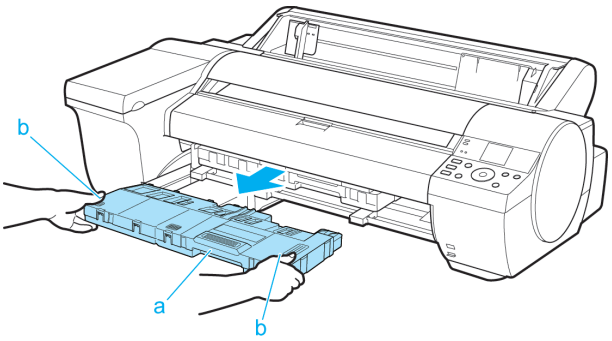


Note

- If the Spectrophotometer Unit is mounted, grasp the blue handles on the left and right sides of the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide and remove the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide from the Spectrophotometer Unit.



3 Pull out the used Maintenance Cartridge by the grip (a). Holding the cartridge by the handles (b) on both sides, keep the cartridge level as you remove it.

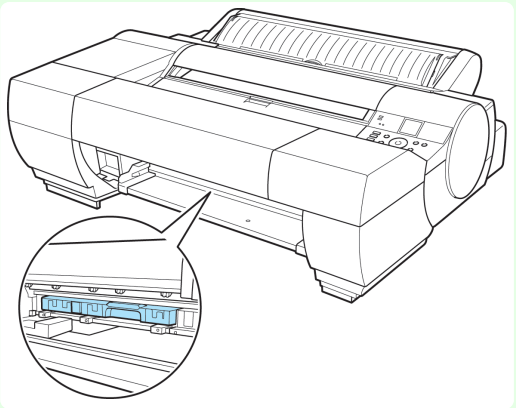


Important

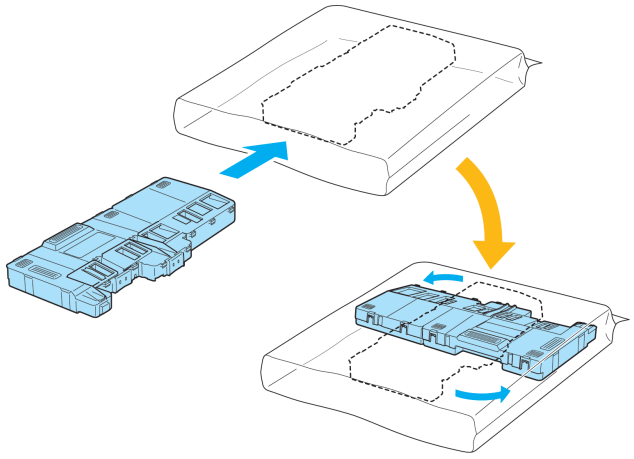
- Used maintenance cartridges are heavy. Always grasp the cartridge firmly and keep the cartridge level during removal and storage. If you drop a used Maintenance Cartridge or store it at an angle, ink may leak and cause stains.
- The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is recorded on each printer. Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

Note

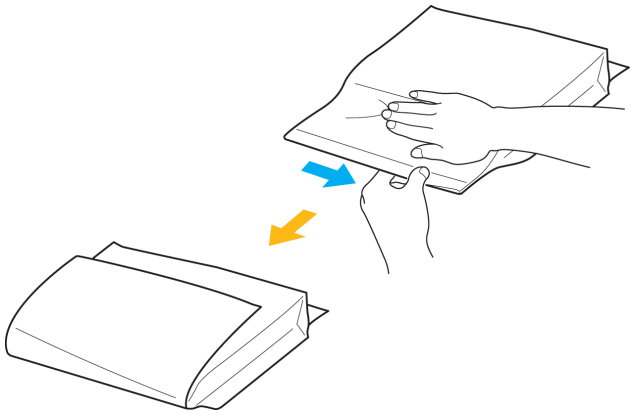
- If the printer has a Spectrophotometer Unit, look under the Spectrophotometer Unit to check the position of the Maintenance Cartridge before removing it.



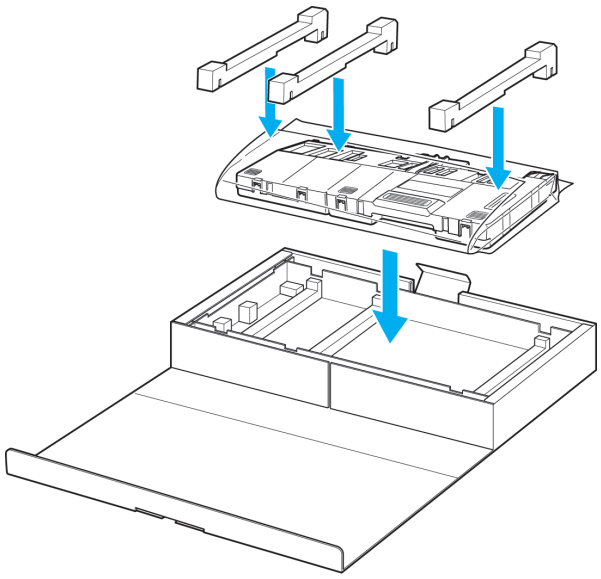
4 Keep the used Maintenance Cartridge level as you put it in the plastic bag that was in the box, as shown.



5 Expel excess air from the plastic bag as you seal the zipper. Fold the bag in half.



6 Put the used Maintenance Cartridge and packaging material in the box, just as the new Maintenance Cartridge was originally packaged, and store the used cartridge keeping it level.



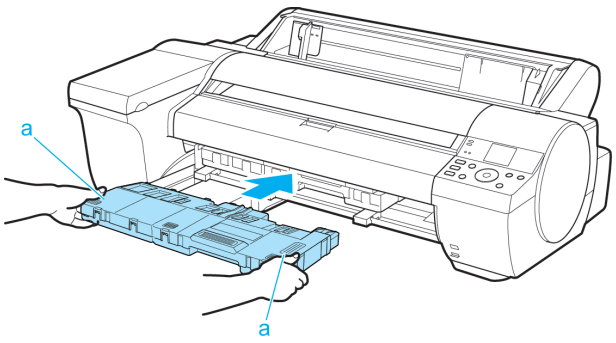
Important

- Always put the used Maintenance Cartridge back in the box and store the box on a flat surface. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.

Note

- In accordance with active and ongoing environmental programs, Canon supports recycling of used maintenance cartridges. Follow the instructions provided with the new Maintenance Cartridge that describe how to process the used Maintenance Cartridge.

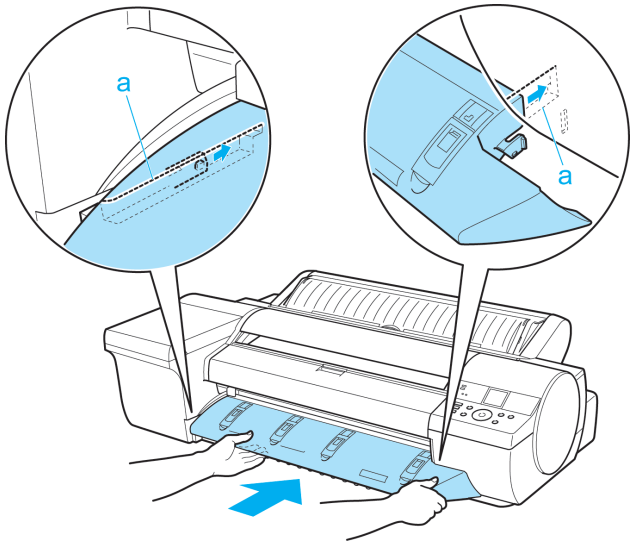
7 Holding the handles (a) on both sides of the new Maintenance Cartridge, insert it completely, keeping it level. The printer now initializes the Maintenance Cartridge.



Important

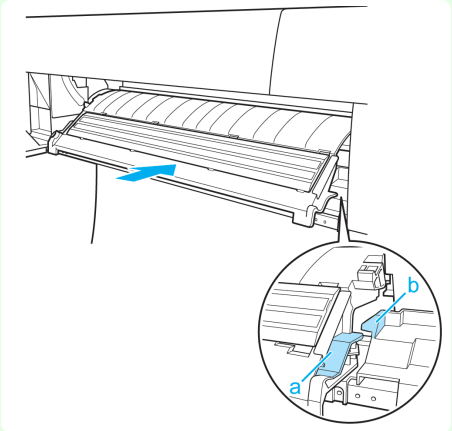
- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during initialization immediately after replacing the Maintenance Cartridge. The Maintenance Cartridge may become damaged.

8 Hold the Ejection Guide on both sides by the near end. Aligning the Ejection Guide with the guides (a), insert it into the printer until it locks in place.



Note

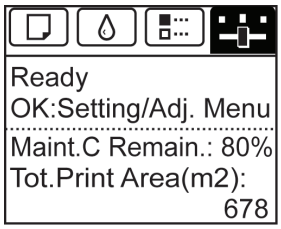
- If you did not perform the operation in **Access the menu for Maintenance Cartridge replacement**, this is the end of the procedure and you do not need to press the **OK** key in the next step.
- If the Spectrophotometer Unit is mounted, grasp the blue handles on the left and right sides of the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide, align the protruding parts of the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide (a) with the Spectrophotometer Unit guide (b), and push it in until it clicks.



9 Press the **OK** button.

Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity

The Maintenance Cartridge absorbs excess ink from borderless printing, printhead cleaning, and other processes. You can confirm the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge by checking the Maintenance Cartridge capacity shown on the Display Screen.
To check remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity, access the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel and press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

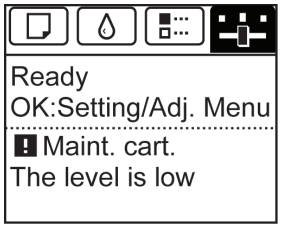
If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge, or before tasks that deplete much of the capacity such as head cleaning or preparations to move the printer, check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge as needed. (See "**Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge**.") →P.899

When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Replace or prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge in the following situations.

If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen

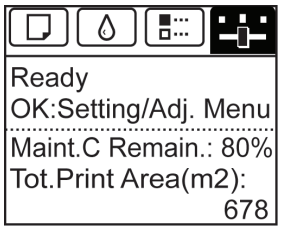
When the Maintenance Cartridge is almost full, the **Message Lamp** is lit and "**The level is low**" is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one. (See "**Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity**.") →P.905



When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted

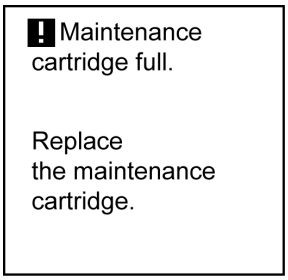
Printhead cleaning, Printhead replacement, and preparations to transfer the printer deplete much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity. (In particular, preparing to move the printer depletes a lot of the capacity.)

Check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity before this maintenance and replace the Maintenance Cartridge if necessary.



If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is almost empty, the **Message Lamp** lights, a message to replace the Maintenance Cartridge is displayed on the Display Screen, and you cannot print. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one.



Cleaning the Printer

Cleaning the Printer Exterior 907
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover 907
Cleaning the Paper Retainer 910
Cleaning the Printhead 891
Cleaning the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Parts 911

Cleaning the Printer Exterior

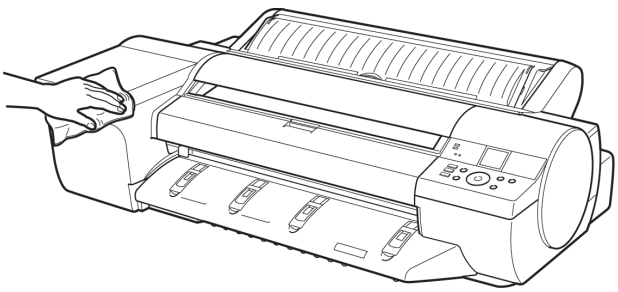
Clean the printer regularly to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.
About once a month, clean the printer exterior.

1 Turn the printer off. (See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") ➔P.21

2 Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Caution
- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3 Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe the exterior surfaces of the printer. Dry the surfaces with a dry cloth.



Warning
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

Important
- If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

4 Plug the power cord into the outlet.

Cleaning Inside the Top Cover

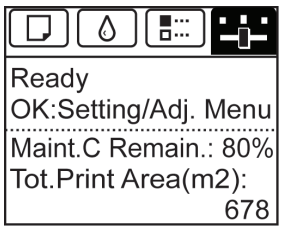
Clean inside the Top Cover about once a month to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.
Also clean inside the Top Cover in the following situations to ensure optimal operation.

- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After you have used up a roll
- After borderless printing
- After printing on small paper
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of cutting debris
- If you have replaced the roll
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of paper dust
- If the message "**Blue platen switch is dirty.**" is displayed

Important

- If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. We recommend cleaning the Platen after borderless printing or printing on small paper.
- If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note

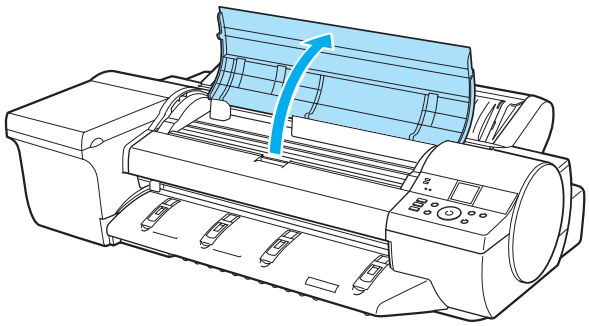
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

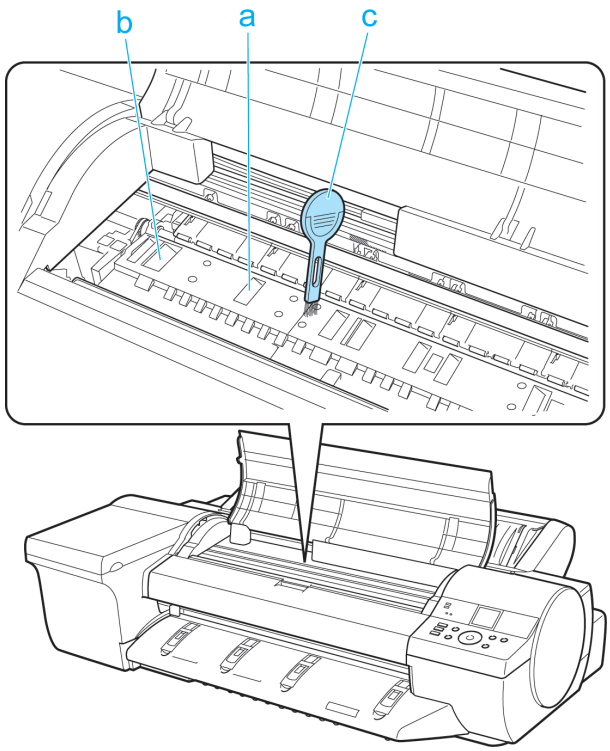
3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Clean Platen**, and then press the **OK** button.
A message on the Display Screen requests you to open the Top Cover.

5 Open the Top Cover.

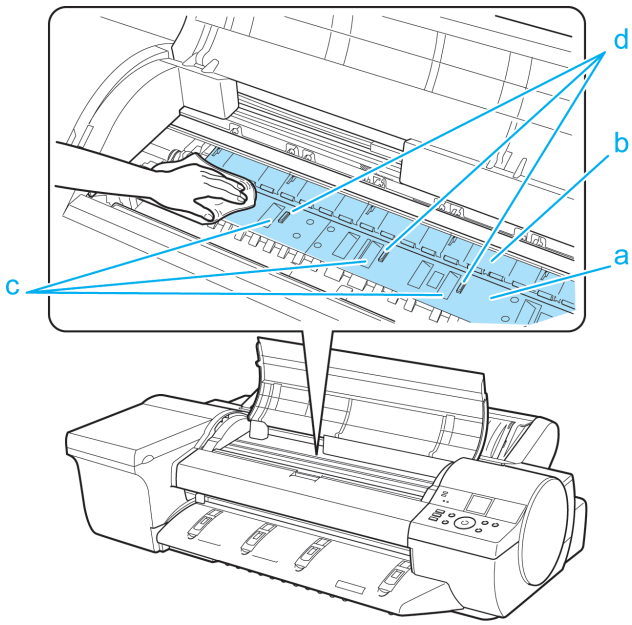


6 If paper dust has accumulated in the Vacuum holes (a) on the Platen or in the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (b), use the Cleaning Brush (c), provided with the printer, to wipe it away.



Note
- If the Cleaning Brush is dirty, rinse it in water.

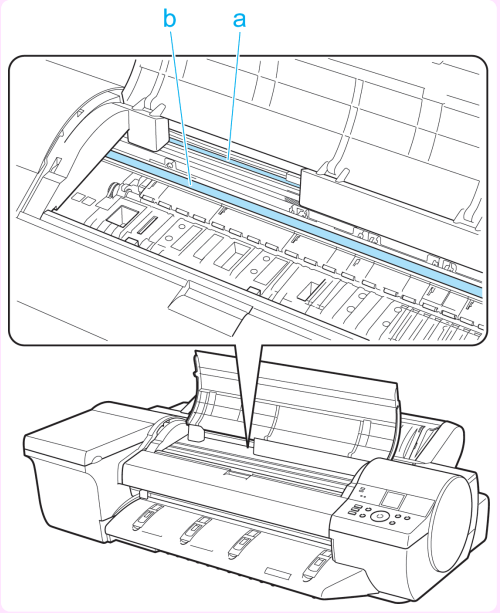
7 Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe inside the Top Cover to clean it. Wipe away any ink residue on the Platen(a) as a whole, on the Paper Retainer(b), Borderless Printing Ink Grooves(c), and blue Switch(d).



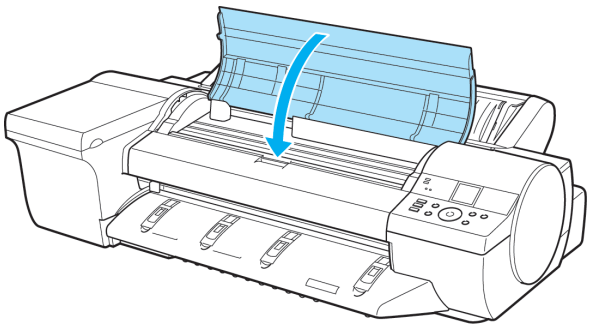
Warning
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

Important

- Do not use a dry cloth to wipe inside the Top Cover. This may create a static charge, which may attract dust and affect the printing quality.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



8 Close the Top Cover.



Cleaning the Paper Retainer

Clean the Paper Retainer about once a month to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.
Also clean the Paper Retainer in the following situations to ensure optimal operation.

- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After printing on small paper

Important

- During cleaning, use paper that does not generate much cutting dust, such as Plain Paper. It may affect printing quality if you use film or other media that are more likely to generate debris when cut, or that have a surface finish that may come off.

1 Turn the printer off. (See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") ➔P.21

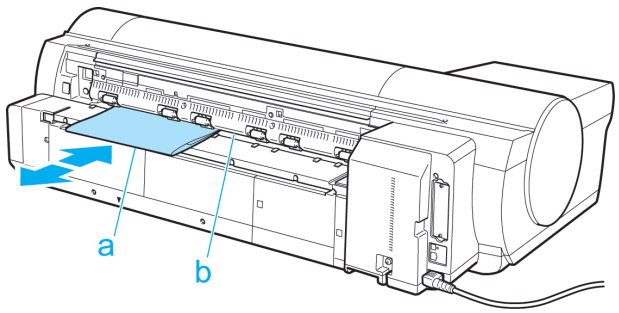
2 Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Caution

- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3 Remove the Roll Feed Unit. (See "**Removing the Roll Feed Unit.**") ➔P.525

4 Fold a sheet of Plain Paper two or three times (a) and insert it under the Paper Retainer (b) from behind the printer to wipe the entire surface of the Paper Retainer clean.



5 Attach the Roll Feed Unit. (See "**Installing the Roll Feed Unit.**") ➔P.526

6 Plug the power cord into the outlet.

Cleaning the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Parts

Clean the Spectrophotometer Unit parts as follows.

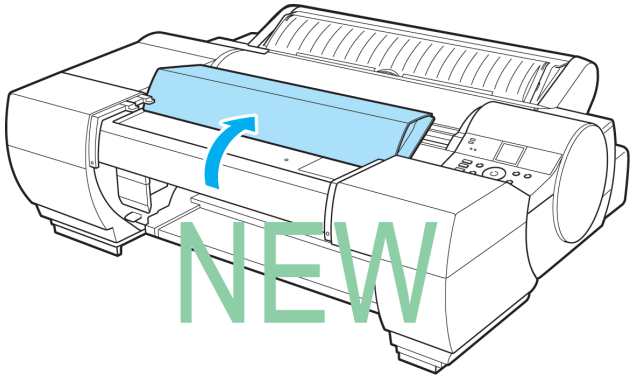
Cleaning the White Calibration Tile

1 Turn the printer off.
(See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") ➔P.21

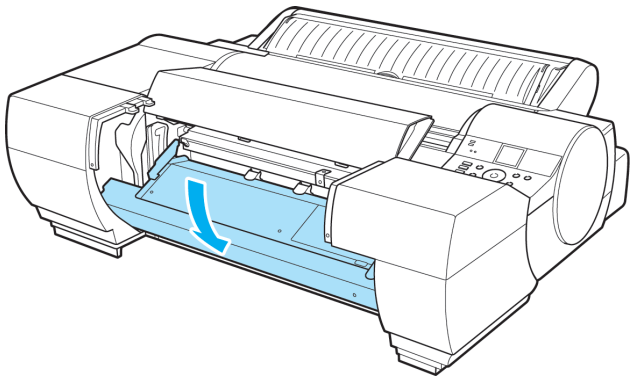
2 Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Caution
- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

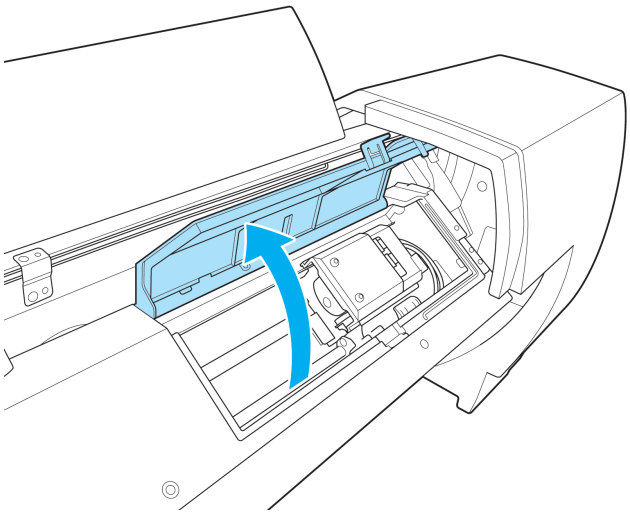
3 Open the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover.



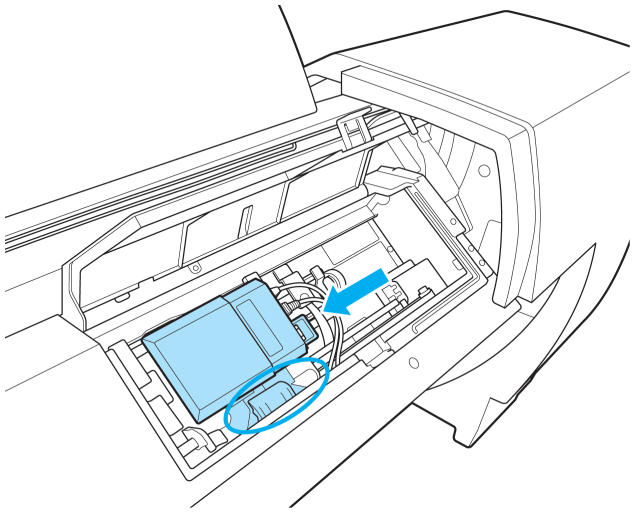
4 Press down on the center (near the blue label) of the Up-down Unit to lower the Up-down Unit.



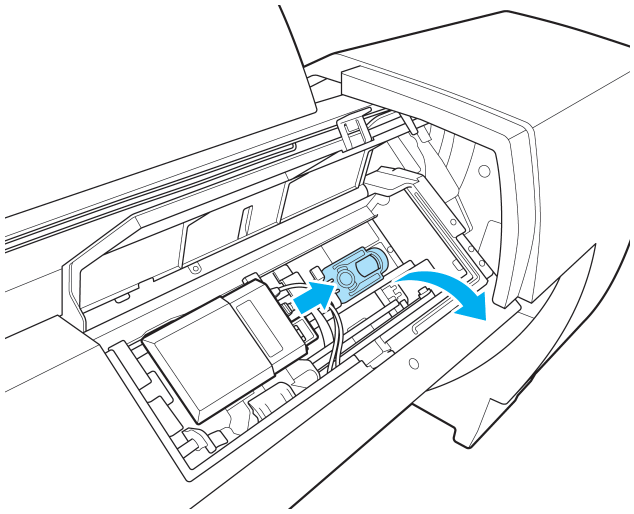
5 Open the Up-down Unit cover.



6 Grasp the part with the blue label in the central part of the Spectrophotometer Carriage and move it to the position shown in the diagram.

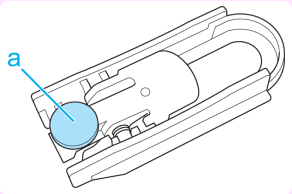


7 Move the White Calibration Tile Holder in the direction of the arrow and remove it from the Up-down Unit.

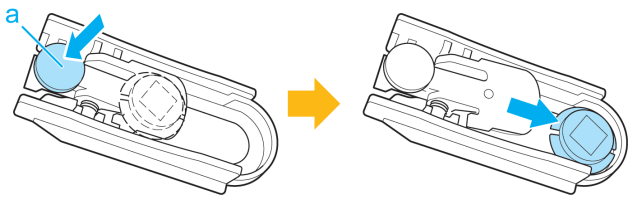


Important

- Do not touch the (a) part of the White Calibration Tile Holder except when removing the White Calibration Tile.
  Doing so may cause the White Calibration Tile to fall, which can lead to damage.

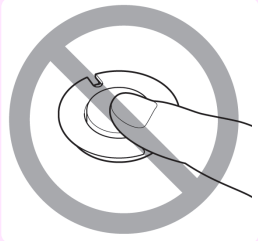


8 Push the (a) part of the White Calibration Tile Holder and remove the White Calibration Tile.



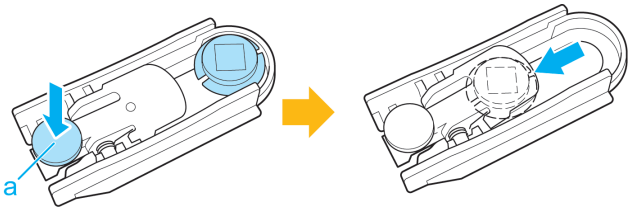
Important

- Never touch the white part of the White Calibration Tile.
  If the white part is dirty, the printer may not be able to obtain the correct color measurement results.

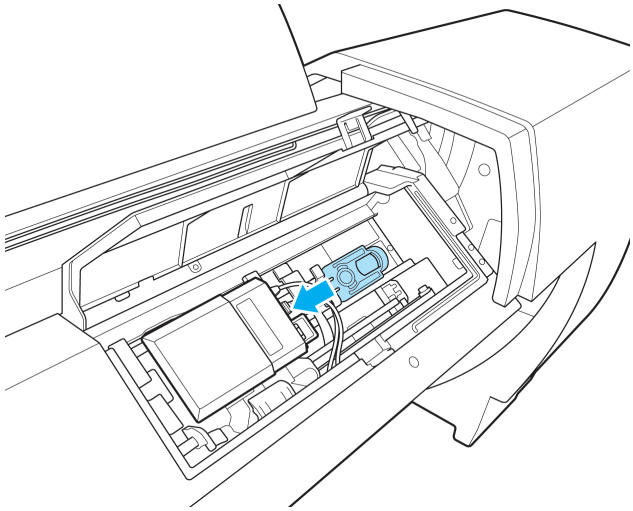


9 Wipe the surface of the White Calibration Tile clean with a dry, soft cloth.
If the white part is particularly dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe the surface of the White Calibration Tile clean and use a dry cloth to dry the surface.

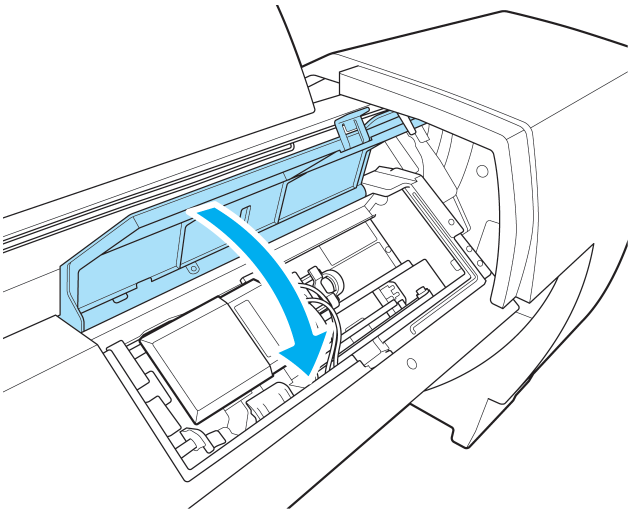
10 Place the White Calibration Tile in the White Calibration Tile Holder and mount it in the position shown in the diagram while pushing down on the (a) part.
When installing the White Calibration Tile, make sure it is facing the appropriate direction.



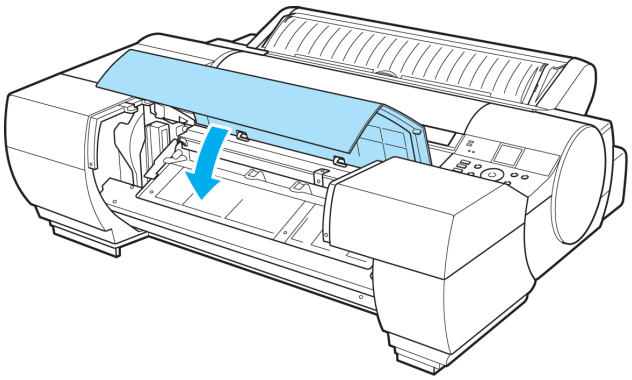
11 Install the White Calibration Tile Holder on the Up-down Unit as shown in the figure and move the holder in the direction of the arrow to fix it in place.



12 Close the Up-down Unit cover.



13 Close the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover.



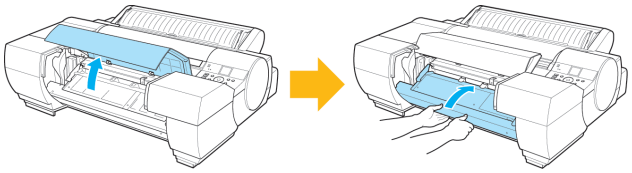
Cleaning the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide

1 Turn the printer off.
(See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") →P.21

2 Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

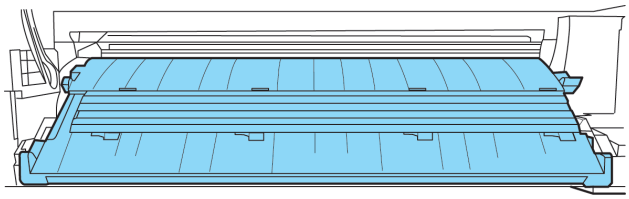
Caution
- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3 If the Up-down Unit is lowered, open the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover and lift up the central part (near the blue label) of the Up-down Unit.



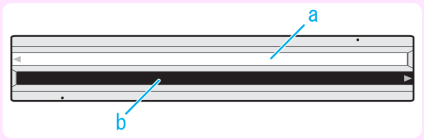
Important
- Lifting up the ends of the Up-down Unit may cause damage.

4 Wipe the surface of the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide and the surface of the White/Black Backing Plate clean with a dry, soft cloth.
If it is particularly dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe clean and use a dry cloth to dry the surface.

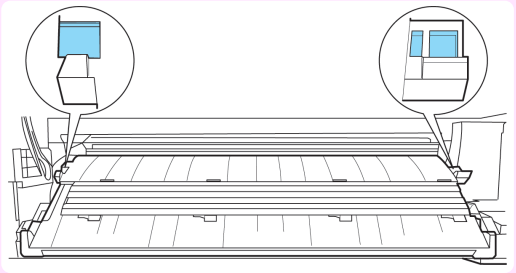


Warning
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

Important
- When handling the White/Black Backing Plate, do not touch the white backing plate (a) or black backing plate (b) directly with your hands.
If the surface becomes dirty or scratched, the printer may not be able to obtain the correct color measurement results.



- Make sure that no dirt remains in the grooves on both ends of the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide.
If any dirt remains, the printer may not be able to obtain the correct color measurement results.



Cleaning the Paper presser

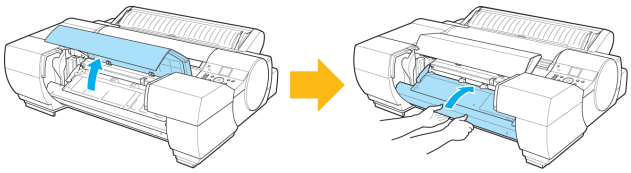
Dirt on the surface of the Paper presser may be transferred onto the paper or the White/Black Backing Plate.

1 Turn the printer off.
(See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") ➔P.21

2 Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

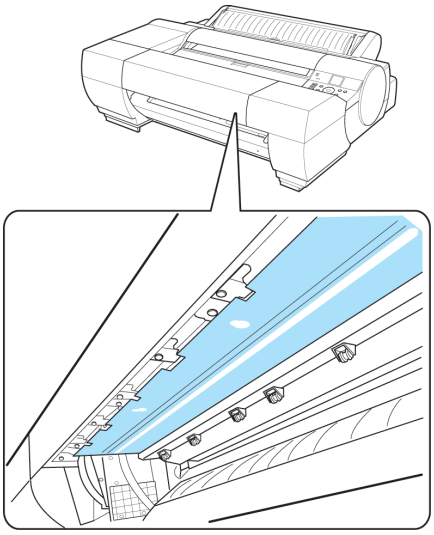
Caution
- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3 If the Up-down Unit is lowered, open the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover and lift up the central part (near the blue label) of the Up-down Unit.



Important
- Lifting up the ends of the Up-down Unit may cause damage.

4 If the Paper presser is dirty, wipe it clean with a dry cloth.
If it is particularly dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe the Paper presser clean and use a dry cloth to dry it.



Warning
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

Important
- Do not press down strongly on the Paper presser.
Doing so may deform the Paper presser.

Other Maintenance

Carrying the Printer 917
Preparing to Transfer the Printer 923
Reinstalling the Printer 927
Updating the Firmware 930
Replacing the Spectrophotometer Sensor of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) 931

Carrying the Printer

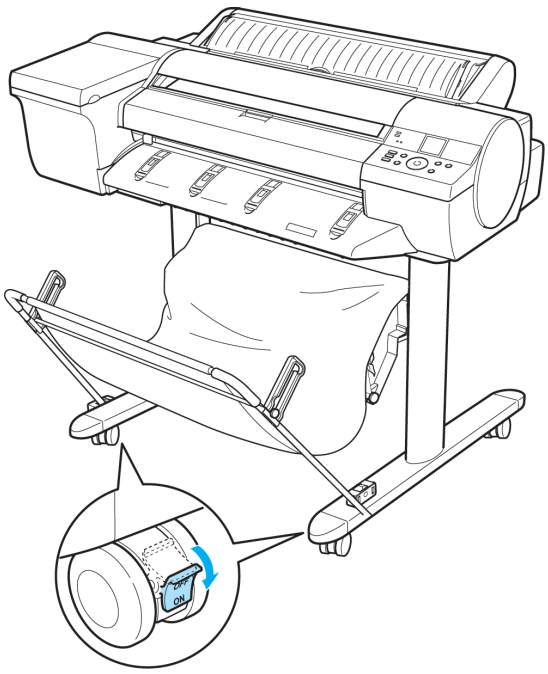
This section describes how to carry the printer or move the printer while mounted on the optional stand mainly within the same building.

Important
- When carrying the printer or moving the printer while mounted on the stand, do not tilt the printer. The ink may spill internally and stain the surroundings.

Note
- When transporting the printer, operations such as drawing out the ink are required. Execute preparations for transporting when transporting the printer.
(See "**Preparing to Transfer the Printer**.") →P.923
- For details information on the operation, see the Setup Guide included with the printer or options.

Carrying the Printer Removed From the Stand

1 Move the Locking Caster switch on the Stand to ON to lock the Stand.



2 Turn the printer off.
(See "**Turning the Printer On and Off**.") →P.21

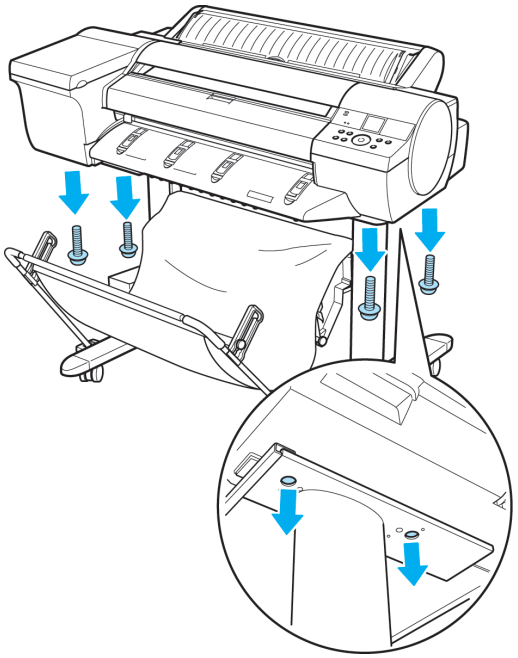
3 Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Caution
- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

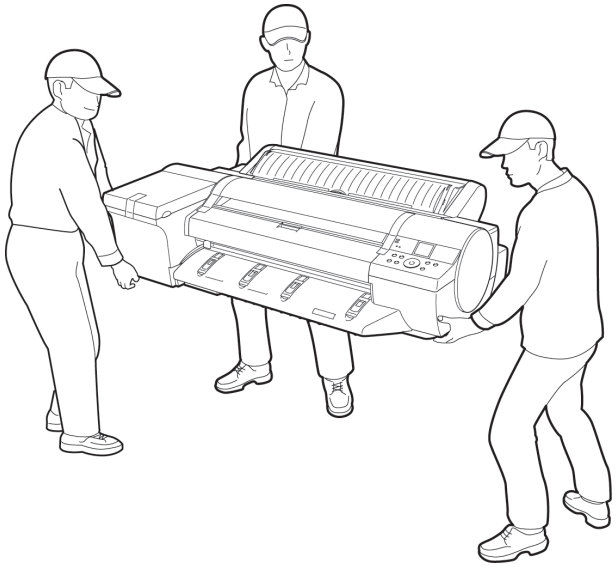
4 Disconnect the power cord and interface cable from the printer.

5 If you are using the optional Spectrophotometer Unit, remove the Spectrophotometer Unit from the printer as needed.
(See "Removing and Attaching the Spectrophotometer Unit.") ➔P.920

6 Remove the securing bolts using the Allen wrench.

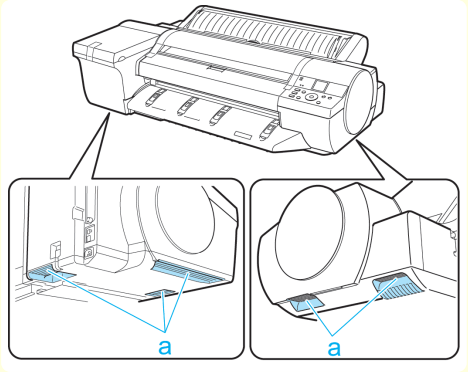


7 Remove the printer from the Stand and carry the printer.



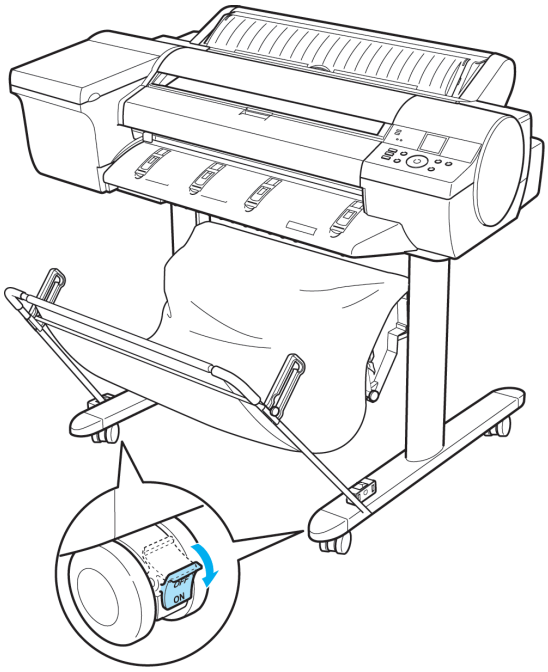
Caution

- Moving the printer requires at least three people, holding it on both sides and from behind. Be careful to avoid back strain and other injuries.
- When moving the printer, firmly grasp the Carrying Handles under each side and in back. The printer may be unsteady if you hold it at other positions, which poses a risk of injury from dropping the printer.



Move with the printer still mounted on the Stand

1. Move the Locking Caster switch on the Stand to ON to lock the Stand.



2. Turn the printer off.
(See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") ➔P.21

3. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

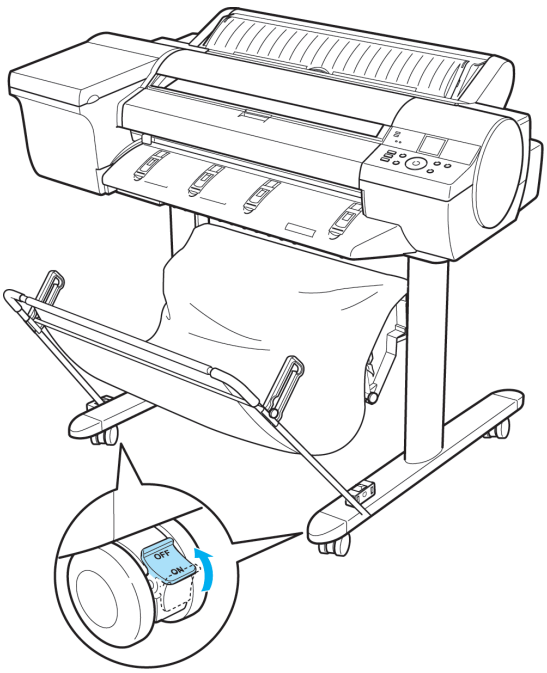
Caution

- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

4. Disconnect the power cord and interface cable from the printer.

5. If you are using the optional Spectrophotometer Unit, remove the Spectrophotometer Unit from the printer as needed.
(See "Removing and Attaching the Spectrophotometer Unit.") ➔P.920

6 Move the Locking Caster switch on the Stand to OFF to unlock and move the printer.



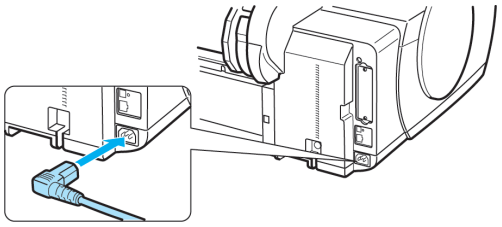
Important

- When moving the Stand, always unlock by moving the Locking Caster switch to OFF. Moving the Stand with the Locking Caster locked may scratch the floor.

7 Move the Locking Caster switch on the Stand to ON to lock the Stand.

8 If you are using the Spectrophotometer Unit, attach the Spectrophotometer Unit to the printer.
(See "Removing and Attaching the Spectrophotometer Unit.") ➔P.920

9 Connect the power cord to the Power Supply Connector on the back of the printer.



10 Connect the interface cable to the printer.

11 Plug the power cord into the outlet.

12 Connect the interface cable to the computer or network.

Removing and Attaching the Spectrophotometer Unit

- Removing the Spectrophotometer Unit From the Stand

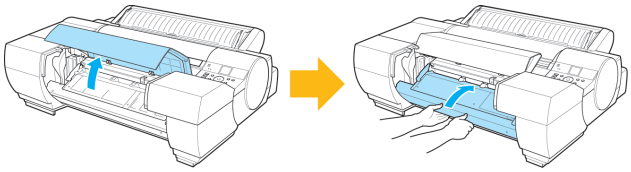
1 Turn the printer off.
(See "**Turning the Printer On and Off**.") ➔P.21

2 Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Caution
- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

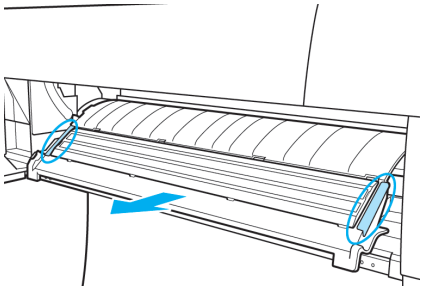
3 Disconnect the power cord and interface cable from the printer.

4 If the Up-down Unit is lowered, open the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover and lift up the central part (near the blue label) of the Up-down Unit.

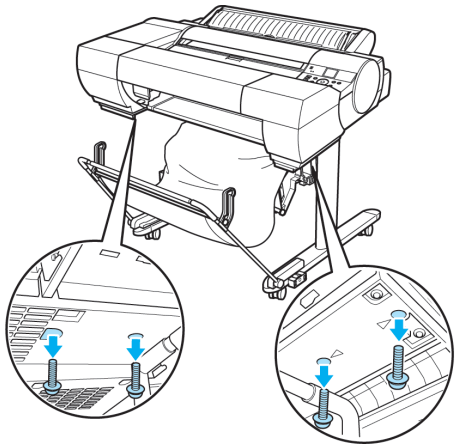


Important
- Lifting up the ends of the Up-down Unit may cause damage.

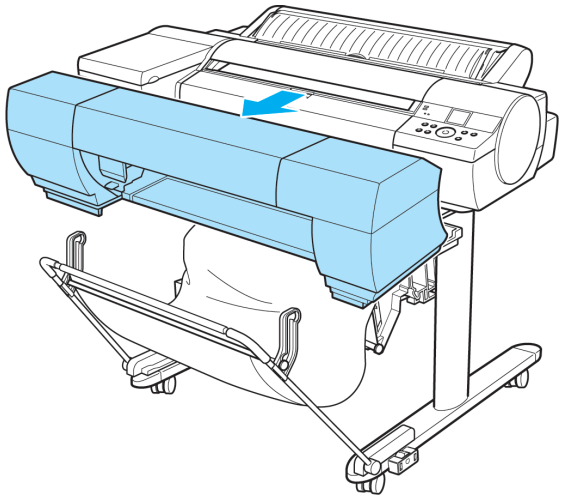
5 Grasp the blue handles on the left and right sides of the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide and remove the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide from the Spectrophotometer Unit.



6 Remove the securing bolts using the Allen wrench.

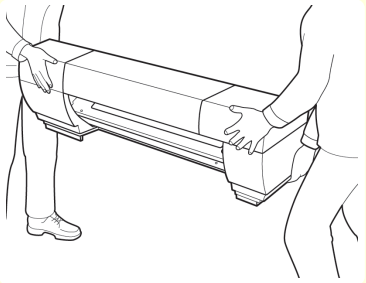


7 Remove the Spectrophotometer Unit from the Stand.



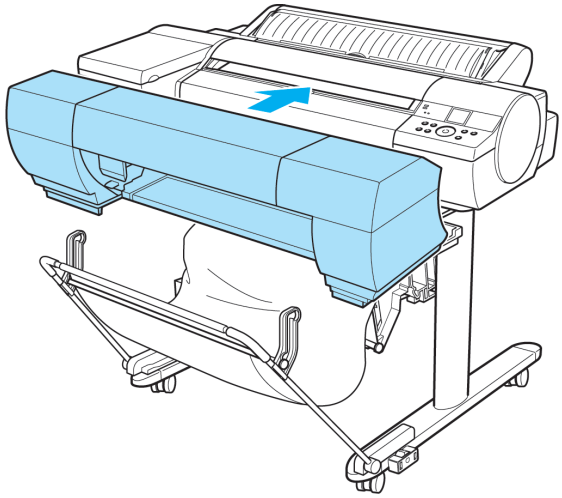
Caution

- Moving the Spectrophotometer Unit requires at least two people. Be careful to avoid back strain and other injuries.
- When carrying the Spectrophotometer Unit, firmly hold it by the carrying handle with one hand and supporting the upper part of the spectrophotometer unit with the other hand. The printer may be unsteady if you hold it in other locations, which poses a risk of injury from dropping the printer.

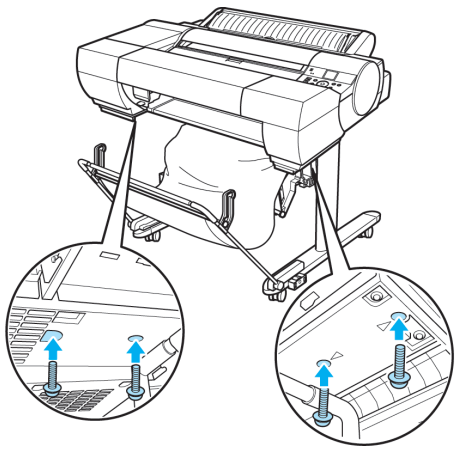


- Attaching the Spectrophotometer Unit to the Stand

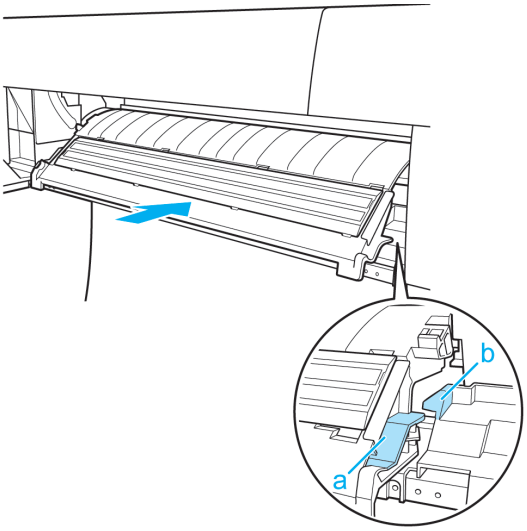
1 Attach the Spectrophotometer Unit to the Stand.



2 Affix the Spectrophotometer Unit to the stand using the securing bolts.



3 Grasp the blue handles on the left and right sides of the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide, align the protruding parts of the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide (a) with the Spectrophotometer Unit guide (b), and push it in until it clicks.



Preparing to Transfer the Printer

To protect the internal parts in transit, always follow these steps before transferring the printer to a new location.

Important
- Avoid tilting the printer excessively during transit. This may cause ink in the printer to leak and cause stains. If it is necessary to tilt the printer in transit, contact your Canon dealer.

Note
- Depending on the state of the printer, part replacement may be necessary when preparing to transfer the printer (that is, when you execute the printer menu item to prepare for transfer).
- This work is not necessary when carrying the printer or moving it while mounted on the optional stand.
  When carrying the printer, always have three or more people securely hold the Carrying Handles in the left and right sides of the base and keep the printer level.

Items to Prepare

Setup Guide	Used for reference when packing the printer
Packaging material	Used to pack the printer
New Maintenance Cartridge (2)	Used to draw in ink

Remove paper

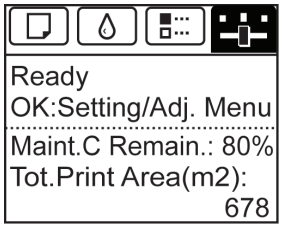
1 Remove the paper.

- Rolls (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer.**") ➔P.510
- Sheets (See "**Removing Sheets.**") ➔P.540

Access the **Prep.MovePrinter** menu

1 If the Display Screen shows a message instructing you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, replace the Maintenance Cartridge.
(See "**Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.**") ➔P.899

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

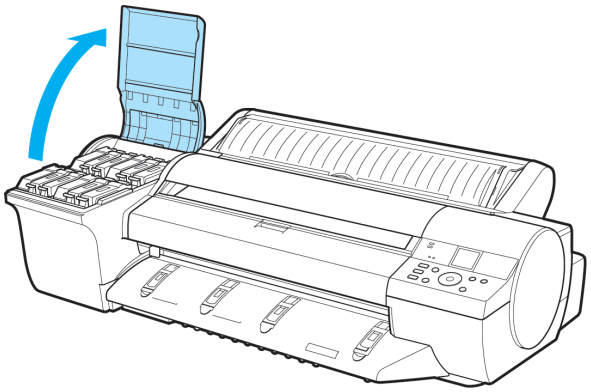
4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Prep.MovePrinter**, and then press the **OK** button to display the confirmation screen.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
Once preparations are finished, a message on the Display Screen requests you to open the Ink Tank Cover.

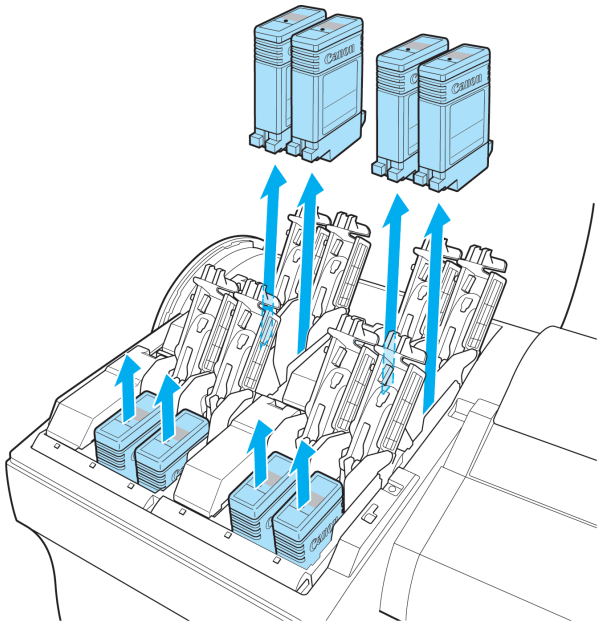
Important
- If consumables must be replaced, the message "**Consumables must be replaced. Call for service.**" is shown on the Display Screen and preparation is not possible. If this message is displayed, press the **OK** button and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Remove the Ink Tank

1 Open the Ink Tank Cover.

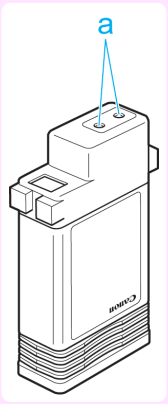


2 Lift the ink tank lock levers and remove all ink tanks.
Put the ink tanks in a plastic bag and seal it.

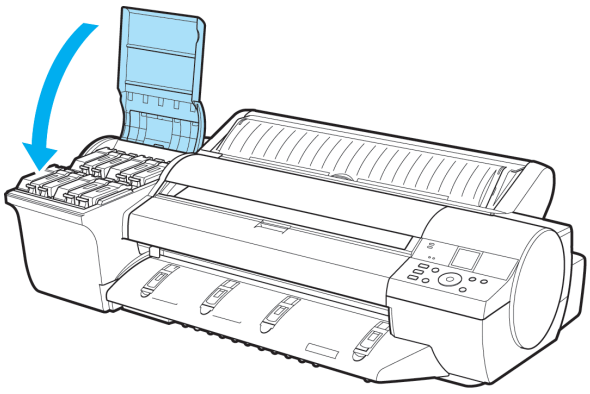


Important

- Store the ink tanks you removed with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.



3 Close all ink tank lock levers, and then close the Ink Tank Cover.
At this point, ink is drawn out from inside the tubes.



Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge unless a replacement message appears.
Removing the Maintenance Cartridge while the ink is bring drawn in may cause the ink to leak out.

4 When the process is finished, "**Completed! Turn Power Off!!**" is displayed.
Press the **Power** button and turn off the printer.

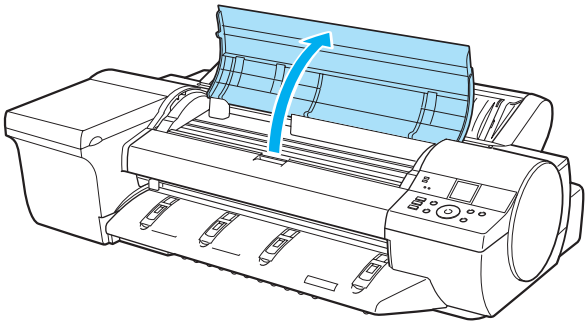
Pack the printer

Refer to the Setup Guide for details on packing the printer and installing it after transfer.

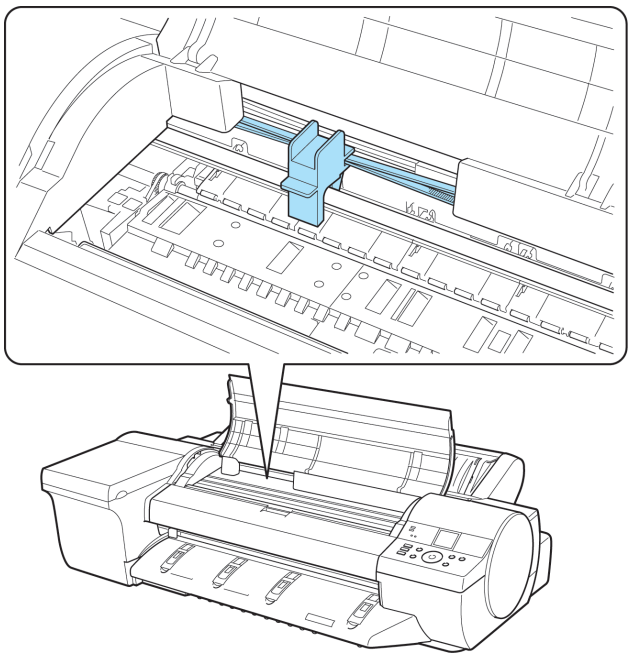
1 Disconnect the power cord and interface cable.

Important
- Unplug the power cord once the power is turned off. Unplugging the printer before it is off and moving it may cause damage. If you accidentally unplug the printer before turning it off, plug it in again, reinstall the ink tank, and perform the procedure again.

2 Open the Top Cover.

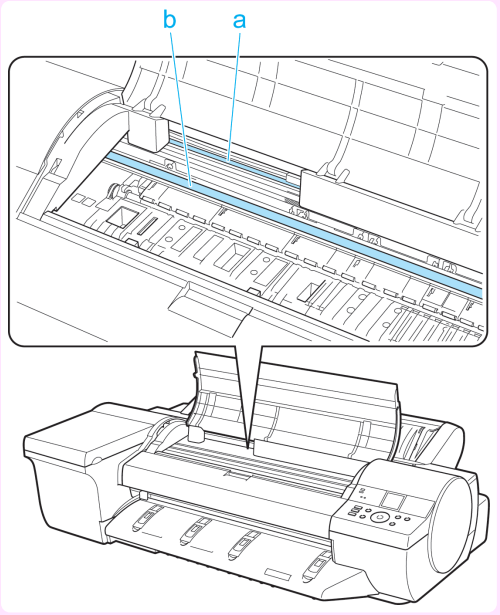


3 Pinch the Belt together, insert it between the Belt Stopper, and affix the Belt Stopper to the Carriage Shaft.



Important

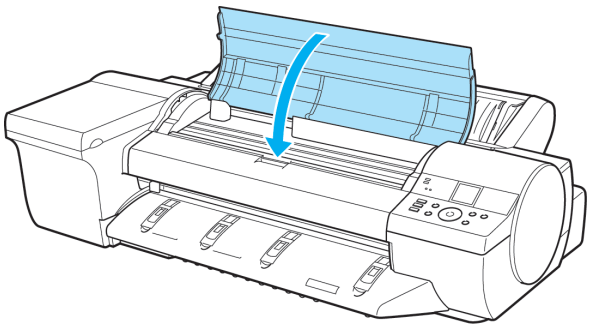
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



Note

- Here, the Belt Stopper is the one that was removed and stored after initial installation.

4 Close the Top Cover.



5 If any options are attached to the printer, remove them from the printer and pack them.

6 Tape down printer covers to secure them, in the reverse order of tape removal during installation.

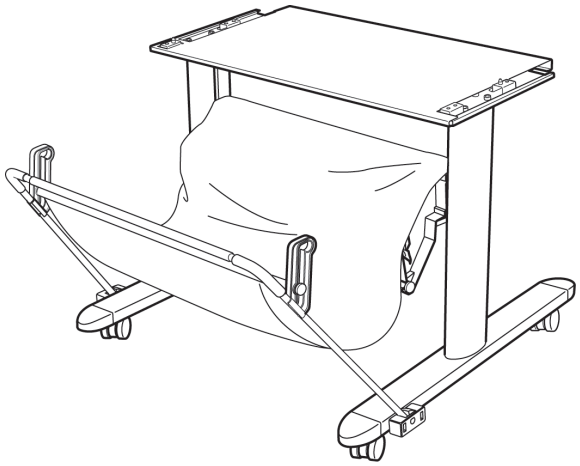
7 Repack the Roll Holder, Holder Stopper, and printer in shipping materials, and then package them in a shipping box.

Reinstalling the Printer

The basic workflow for reinstalling the printer is as follows.
For detailed instructions, see the Setup Guide.

Assemble the stand (optional)

1 If you are using the optional Stand, assemble the Stand by referring to the Printer Stand Setup Guide included with the Stand.

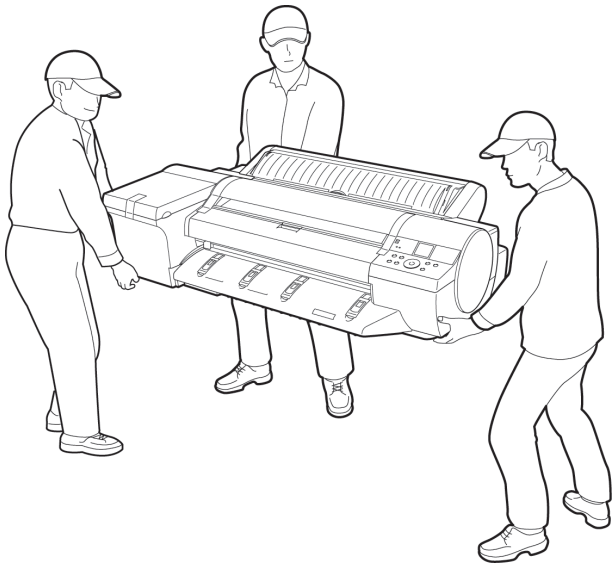


Caution

- The Stand must be assembled by at least two people on a flat surface. Attempting assembly by yourself poses a risk of injury or bending the Stand.
- When assembling the Stand, lock the casters. In addition, always unlock the casters before moving the assembled Stand. Attempting to move the stand when the casters are locked poses a risk of injury or damage to the location site.

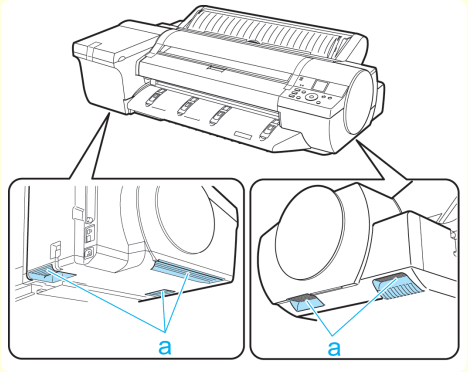
Install the printer

1 Install the printer on a table or other flat surface.
If you will use the printer on an optional Stand, assemble the Stand before mounting the printer on it, and then secure it with the Main Unit Securing Bolts.

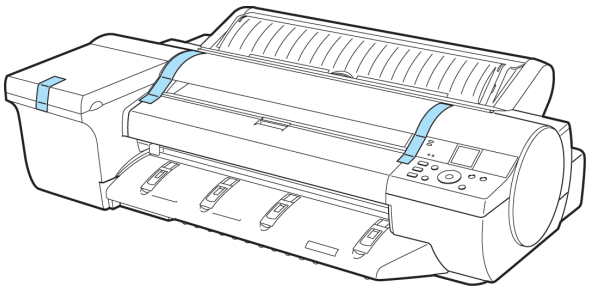


Caution

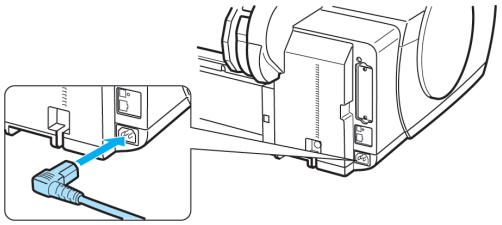
- Moving the printer requires at least three people. Be careful to avoid back strain and other injuries.
- When moving the printer, firmly grasp the Carrying Handles. The printer may be unsteady if you hold it at other positions, which poses a risk of injury from dropping the printer.



2 Remove tape and packaging material attached to the printer. Also open the Top Cover and remove stoppers and spacers inside the printer.



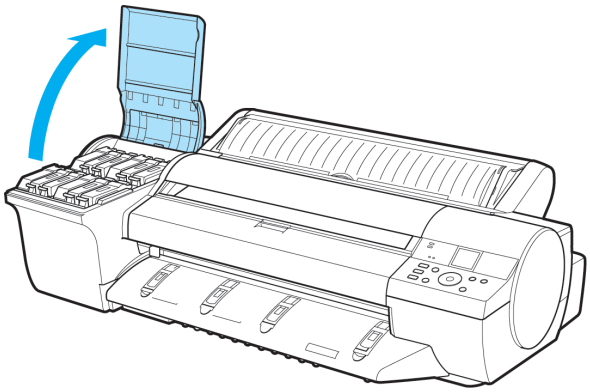
3 Connect the power cord to the Power Supply Connector on the back of the printer.



4 Plug the power cord into the outlet.

5 Press the **Power** button to turn the printer on.

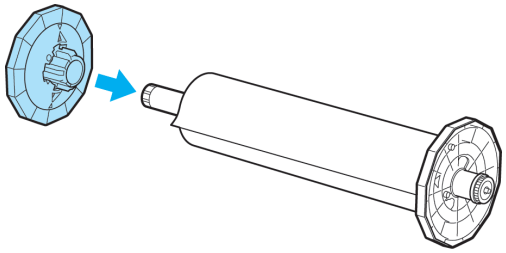
6 Open the Ink Tank Cover and install the ink tanks.



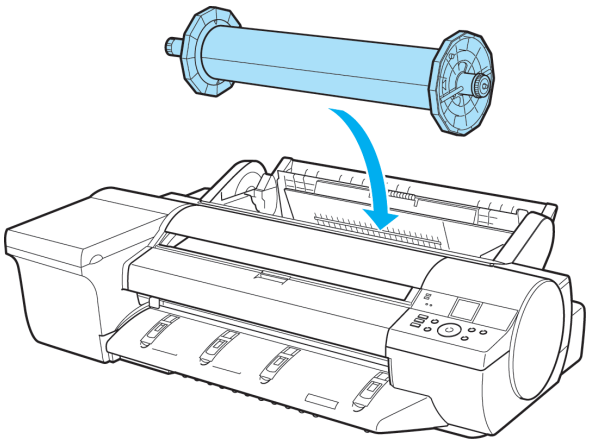
7 Install the software.
Note that the driver installation procedure varies depending on the type of connection.

Important
- When the printer is connected to a network (via TCP/IP), the printer's IP address may be changed if you reinstall the printer.
In this case, be sure to reconfigure the printer's IP address.

8 Load the Roll Media on the Roll Holder.
(See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503



9 Load the Roll Media in the printer.
(See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505

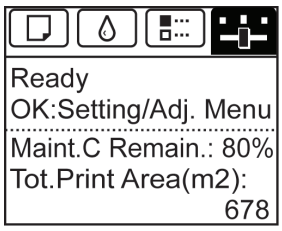


Updating the Firmware

Update the printer firmware to take advantage of new and improved printer functions.

Confirming the firmware version

1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Printer Info**, and then press the **OK** button.

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Info**, and then press the **OK** button.
The firmware version is displayed.

Updating the Firmware

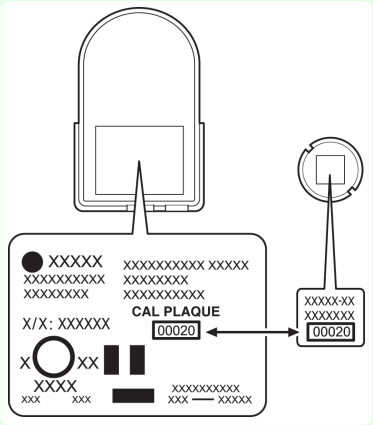
To obtain the latest firmware, visit the Canon website. If the firmware available online is newer than the installed firmware, update the printer firmware. For details on downloading and updating the firmware, visit the Canon website.

Replacing the Spectrophotometer Sensor of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)

The Spectrophotometer Sensor and White Calibration Tile of the Spectrophotometer Unit should have matching serial numbers.

Important
- Performing yearly adjustments can help restore the Spectrophotometer Sensor and White Calibration Tile to their original levels of accuracy and precision.
Contact your Canon dealer for more information on adjustment services.

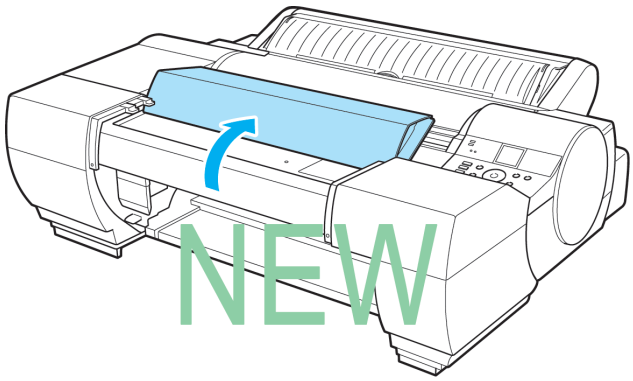
Note
- Before installing the Spectrophotometer Sensor and White Calibration Tile, check to make sure that their serial numbers match.
If the serial numbers do not match, contact your Canon dealer.



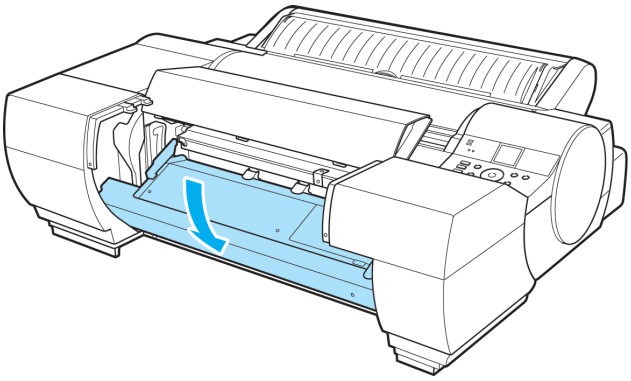
Removing the Spectrophotometer Sensor and White Calibration Tile

1 Turn the printer off.
(See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") ➔P.21

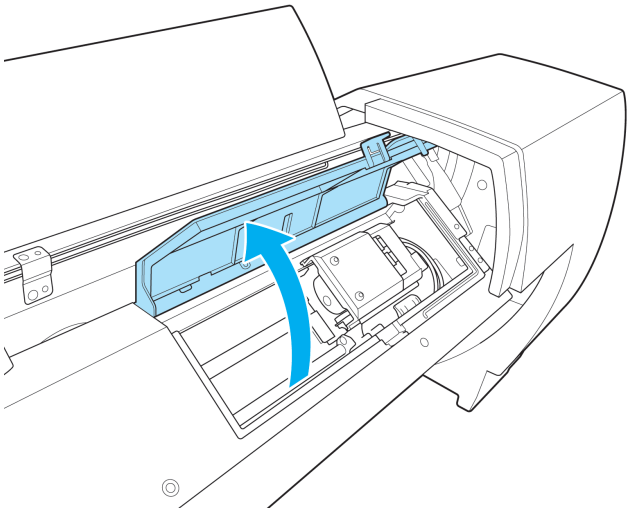
2 Open the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover.



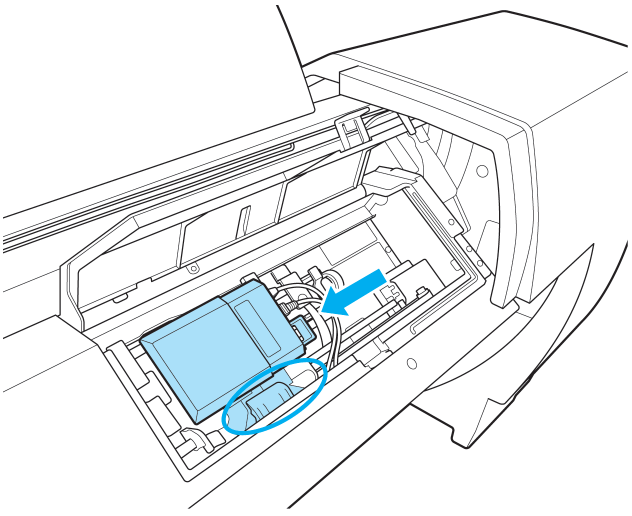
3 Press down on the center (near the blue label) of the Up-down Unit to lower the Up-down Unit.



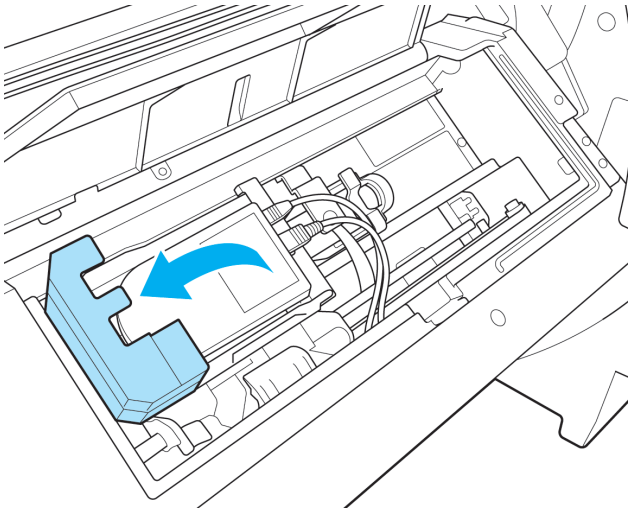
4 Open the Up-down Unit cover.



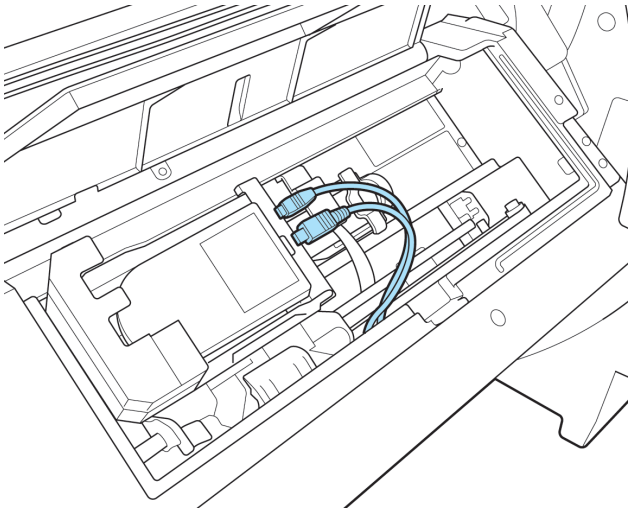
5 Grasp the part with the blue label in the central part of the Spectrophotometer Carriage and move it to the position shown in the diagram.



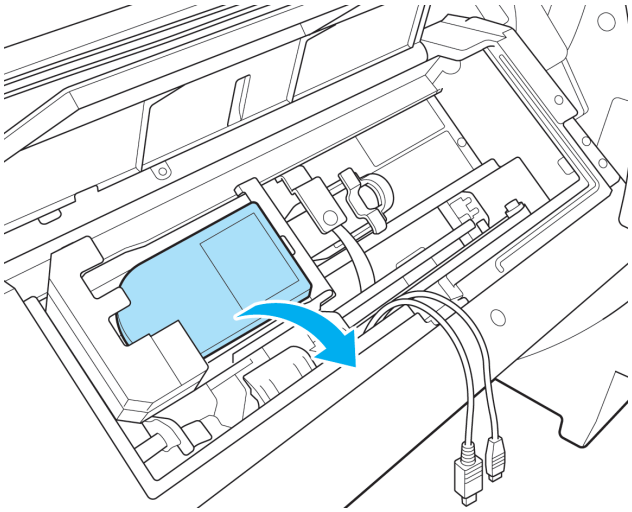
6 Open the Spectrophotometer Sensor Cover.



7 Remove the Power Supply Connector and Mini USB Connector from the Spectrophotometer Sensor.

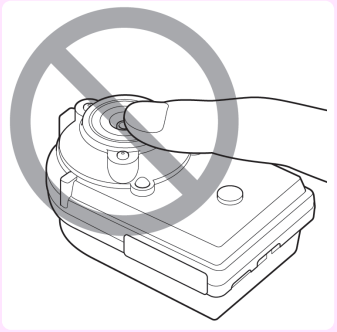


8 Remove the Spectrophotometer Sensor.

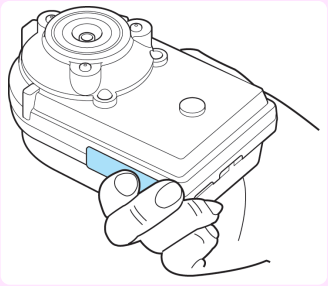


Important

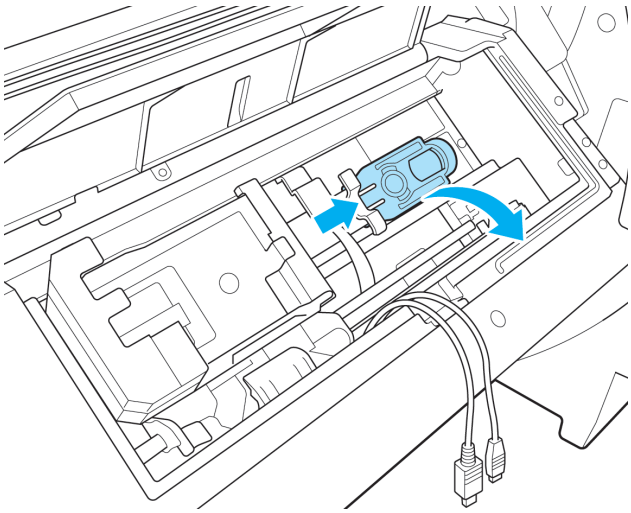
- Never touch the sensor area of the Spectrophotometer Sensor.
  If the sensor area is dirty, the printer may not be able to obtain the correct color measurement results.



When handling the Spectrophotometer Sensor, hold it by the blue part on the side.

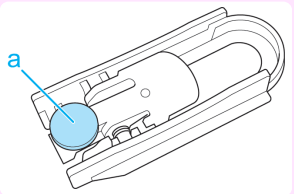


9 Move the White Calibration Tile Holder in the direction of the arrow and remove it from the Up-down Unit.

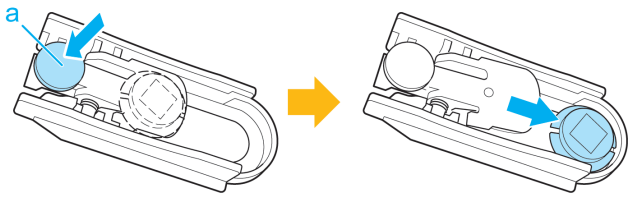


Important

- Do not touch the (a) part of the White Calibration Tile Holder except when removing the White Calibration Tile.
  Doing so may cause the White Calibration Tile to fall, which can lead to damage.

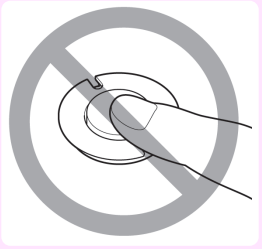


10 Push the (a) part of the White Calibration Tile Holder and remove the White Calibration Tile.



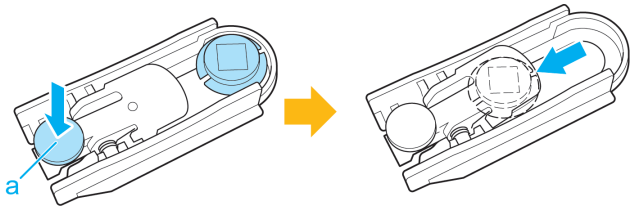
Important

- Never touch the white part of the White Calibration Tile.
  If the white part is dirty, the printer may not be able to obtain the correct color measurement results.

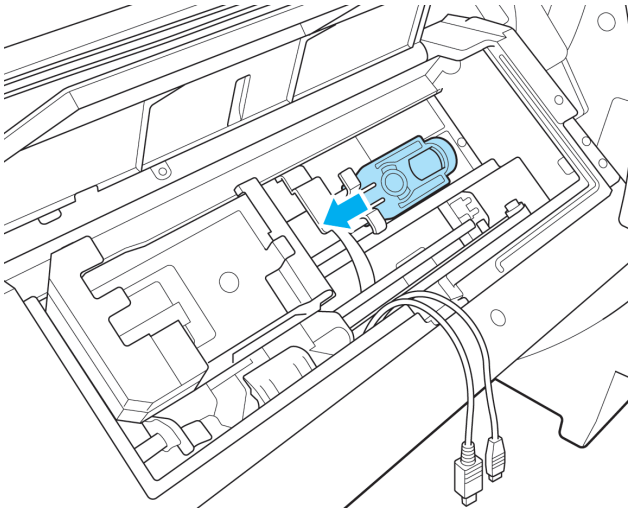


Installing the Spectrophotometer Sensor and White Calibration Tile

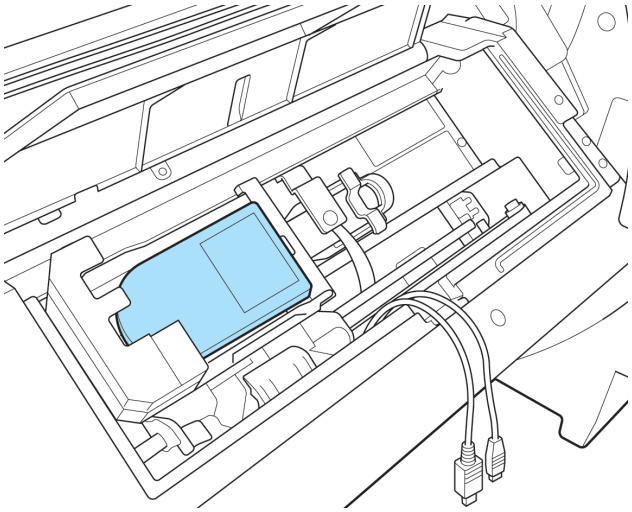
1 Place the White Calibration Tile in the White Calibration Tile Holder and mount it in the position shown in the diagram while pushing down on the (a) part.
When installing the White Calibration Tile, make sure it is facing the appropriate direction.



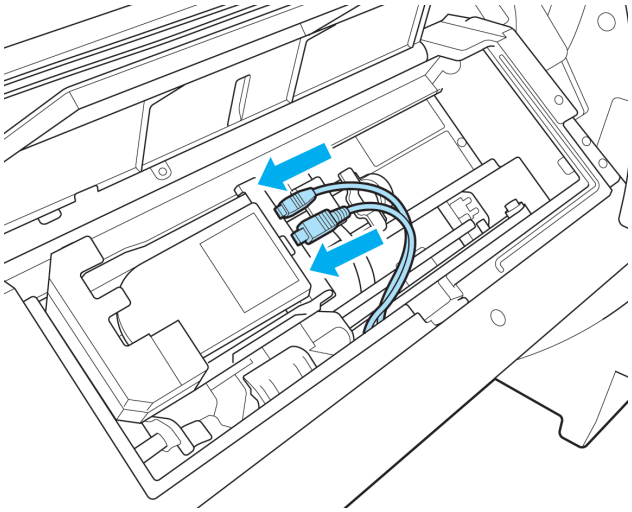
2 Install the White Calibration Tile Holder on the Up-down Unit as shown in the figure and move the holder in the direction of the arrow to fix it in place.



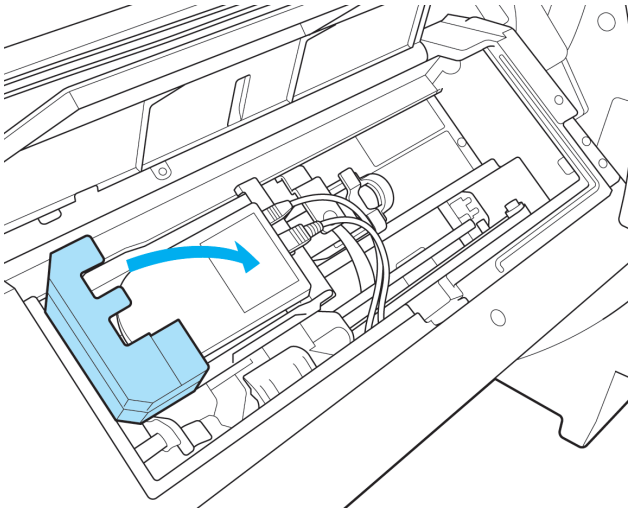
3 Place the Spectrophotometer Sensor in the position shown.



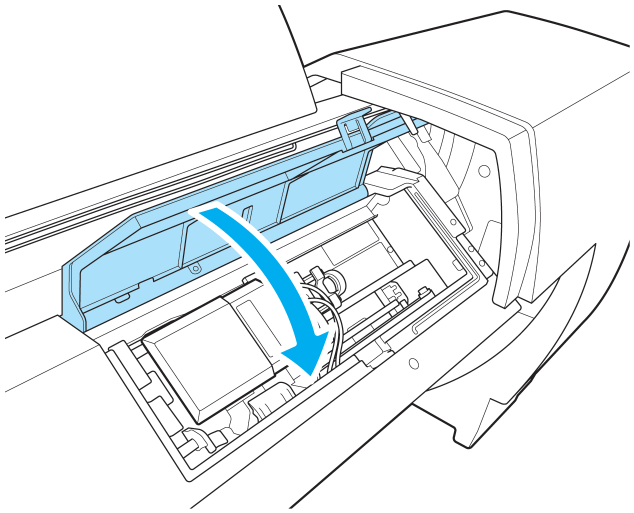
4 Connect the Power Supply Connector and Mini USB Connector to the Spectrophotometer Sensor.



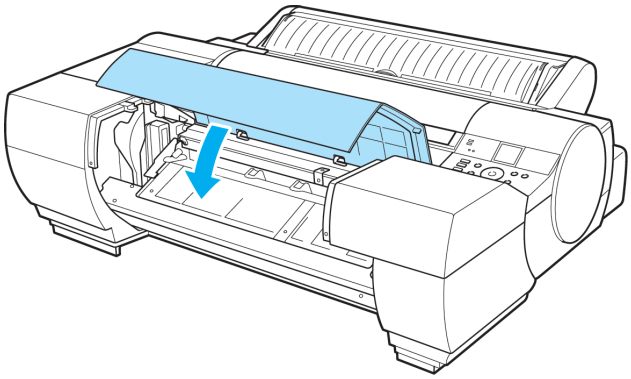
5 Close the Spectrophotometer Sensor Cover.



6 Close the Up-down Unit cover.



7 Close the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover.



Memo

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881

Troubleshooting

Frequently Asked Questions 940
Problems Regarding Paper 942
Printing does not start 952
The printer stops during a print job 953
Problems with the printing quality 954
Spectrophotometer Trouble Shooting 965
Cannot print over a network 966
Installation problems 968
Other problems 969

Error Message 973
Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

User's Guide

Frequently Asked Questions

Frequently Asked Questions

This section presents frequently asked questions and answers. To view more detailed explanations, click the hyperlinks in the answer column.

Question	Answer
I want to easily create vertical or horizontal banners.	You can print originals that are in landscape (or portrait) orientation automatically enlarged to fit the roll width. This is an easy way to create vertical or horizontal banners. (See "**Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)**.") →P.98
Does this printer support sub-ink tank system?	This printer supports sub-ink tank system. Even if an ink tank becomes empty during printing, since a certain amount of ink always is stored in a sub-ink tank, you can replace the ink tank while printing. (See "**Replacing Ink Tanks**.") →P.882
I want to know how to configure roll cutting.	You can select the cutting method by the setting of the printer driver and the setting of the printer. To cut rolls automatically after printing, set **Cutting Mode** of the printer to **Automatic** and **Automatic Cutting** of the printer driver to **Yes**. When using paper for which ink adhesion takes time or the print surface is easily scratched, we recommend that you set the **Cutting Mode** setting of the printer to **Eject**. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls**.") →P.516 (See "**Cutting Roll Paper After Printing**.") →P.153
I want to configure so that the roll is cut automatically after waiting for the ink to dry.	In the printer driver, you can set the time for waiting until the ink dries. Also, you can set likewise on the printer. (See "**Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls**.") →P.514 (See "**Menu Structure**.") →P.627
How do I print without borders?	When printing on rolls, you can perform borderless printing by configuring the printer driver. (when printing on cut sheets, you cannot perform borderless printing) (See "**Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size**.") →P.88 (See "**Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width**.") →P.92 (See "**Borderless Printing at Actual Size**.") →P.81
I want to know the paper types that can be used in this printer.	Concerning the paper that can be used in this printer, refer to the imagePROGRAF home page or the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") →P.496
The paper type that I want to print is not displayed on the Display Screen.	When using newly released paper, paper information must be registered on the printer and the printer driver. Download the new version of **Media Information File** from the imagePROGRAF website and install it. (See "**Updating paper information**.") →P.499
What type of function is color calibration?	Color calibration improves color consistency by compensating for slight differences in how color appears when printing due to individual variations or aging among the printers. There is a method of using the printer sensor and a method of using the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional). Color calibration using the Spectrophotometer Unit allows you to execute color calibration with higher precision compared to using the printer sensor. (See "**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor**.") →P.793 (See "**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") →P.799
Can I perform duplex printing?	This printer cannot perform duplex printing. If you use the **Folded Duplex** function in the Free Layout of Windows software, you can print two pages one-sided, fold them at the center and suspend them to substitute for duplex printing. (See "**Prints using Folded Duplex (Windows)**.") →P.226
I want to perform enlargement printing.	With the printer driver, you can specify the ratio matching the document with the paper size and width and perform enlargement printing or reduction printing. (See "**Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size**.") →P.65 (See "**Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width**.") →P.67 (See "**Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value**.") →P.71

Question	Answer
When using the Spectrophotometer Unit, which of white or black should be chosen in the White/Black Backing Plate?	During normal usage, there is no restriction that you must always use white or you must always use black. • The White/Black Backing Plate complies with the measurement criteria defined in ISO 13655:2009. • When executing color calibration or color check using the Spectrophotometer Unit, we recommend that you select white. (See "**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") →P.799 (See "**Color Checks Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") →P.802 • If you are using paper that light passes through easily, we recommend that you select white. • If a color is used for one paper type that is different from the color that was used the previous time, it may have an effect on the color measurement result.
If I am using the Spectrophotometer Unit, can I measure the colors of any paper?	You might not be able to execute color measurement or might not be able to obtain the correct color measurement results when using the following paper. • Colored paper • Paper where the surface is not even • Paper where the color density is low when printing

Problems Regarding Paper

Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 942
Clearing a Jammed Sheet, Fed Manually 945
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot) 948
Cut sheets cannot be pulled out from the front paper feed slot 950

Roll paper cannot be inserted into the paper feed slot 950
Cannot load sheets 950

Paper is not cut neatly 950
Paper is not cut 950

Depression on the leading edge is left 951
Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper 957

Margins are wide 951

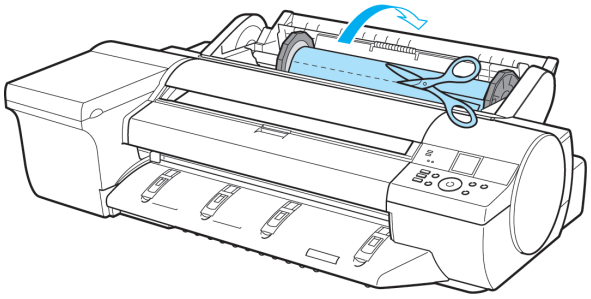
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If paper from a roll becomes jammed, "**Paper jam**" is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

Important

- For instructions on removing scraps from the paper feed slot after clearing jammed roll paper, see "**Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)**." ➔P.948

1 Open the Roll Feed Unit Cover. Use commercially available scissors or the like to cut the paper of the loaded roll.



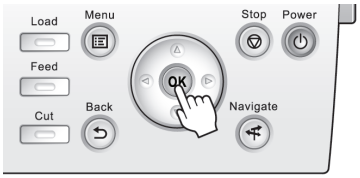
Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid injury or damage to the printer.

Note

- If it is difficult to perform operations from the front of the printer, perform operations from the back of the printer.
  If the printer has a Spectrophotometer Unit (option), lowering the Up-down Unit makes it easier to perform operations from the front of the printer. (See "**Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually.**") ➔P.527

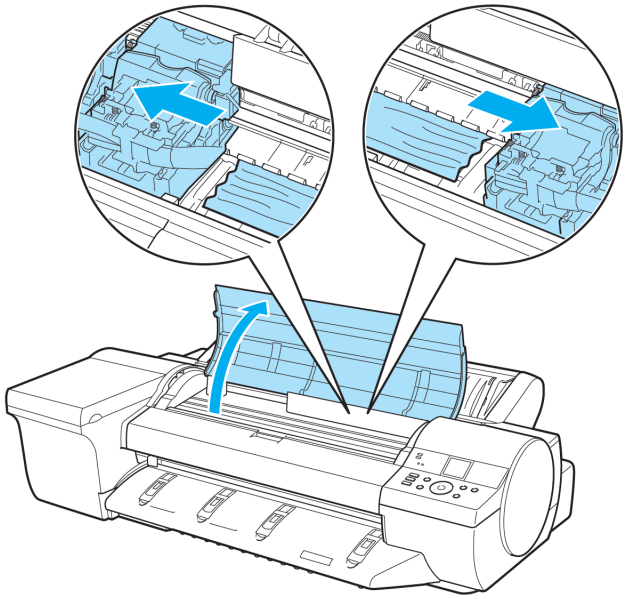
2 Press the **OK** button.



3 Remove the jammed paper.

- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage all the way to the end in the opposite direction from the jam.

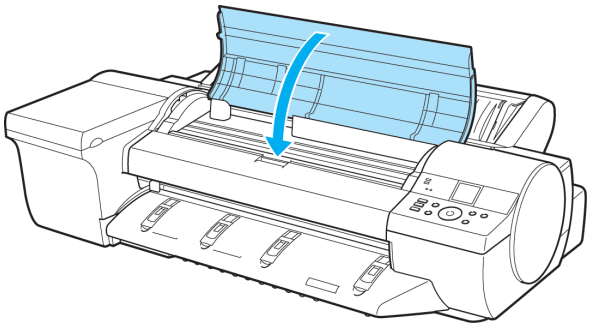


Note

- If the leading edge of the roll jams in the carriage such as when the paper curls strongly, you may be able to avoid paper jamming by setting the roll cutting method to Manual and setting the detection of paper leading edge to **Do not perform**.
  (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**") ➔P.516

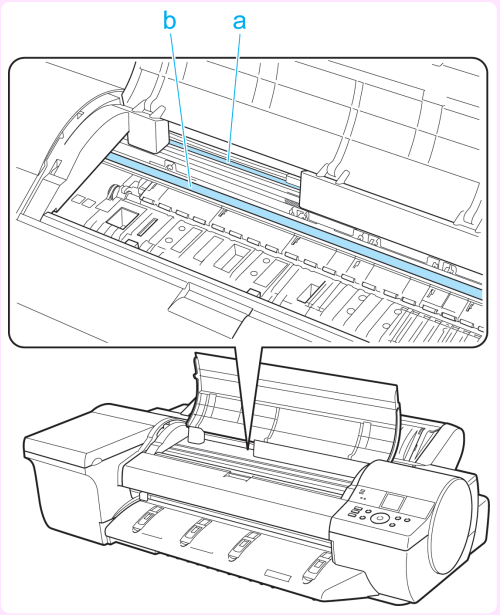
2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.



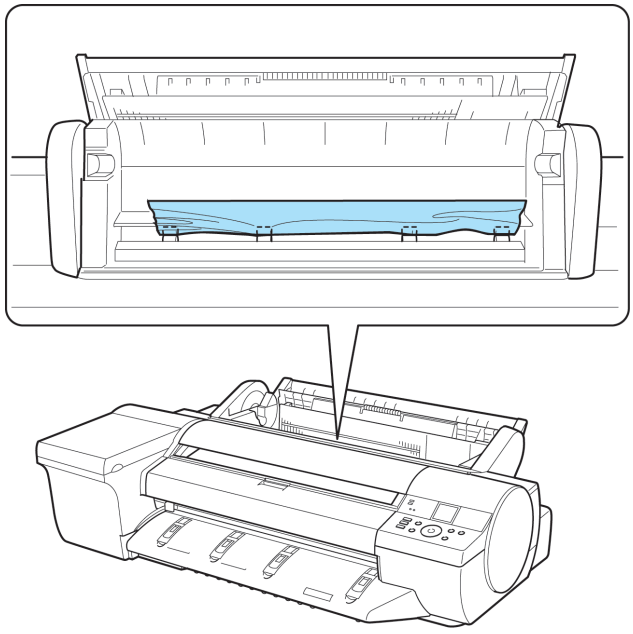
Important

- Do not move the Carriage over jammed paper. This may damage the Printhead.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



- If paper from a roll is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot

1. Open the Roll Feed Unit Cover.
2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.
   After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
   If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the roll feed unit, and then clear the paper jam. (See "**Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)**.") ➔P.948



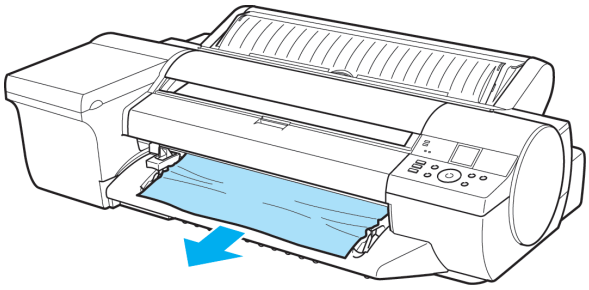
Note

- If it is difficult to perform operations from the front of the printer, perform operations from the back of the printer.
  If the printer has a Spectrophotometer Unit (option), lowering the Up-down Unit makes it easier to perform operations from the front of the printer. (See "**Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually**.") ➔P.527

- If the paper is jammed by the Ejection Guide

  Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.

  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



Note

- If the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) is lowered, lift up the Up-down Unit before removing the paper.
  When the Up-down Unit is raised, handle the central part (near the blue label). Handling the ends may cause damage.

4 Press the **OK** button.

Clearing a Jammed Sheet, Fed Manually

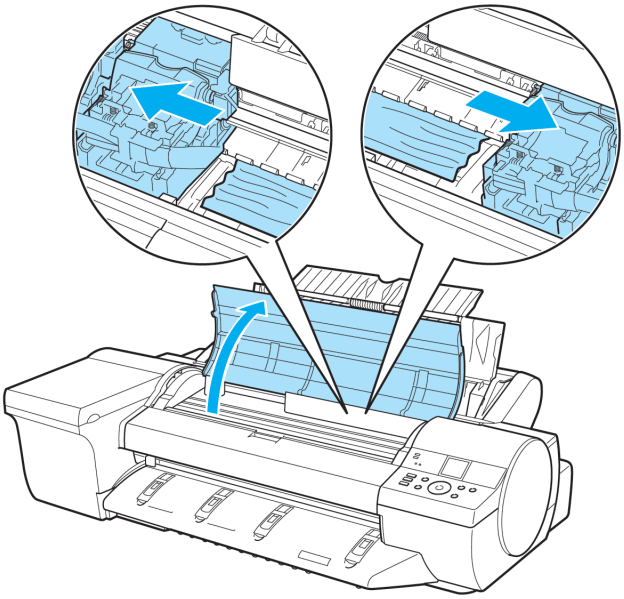
If a sheet you have fed manually becomes jammed, "**Paper jam**" is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

1 Press the **OK** button.

2 Remove the jammed paper.

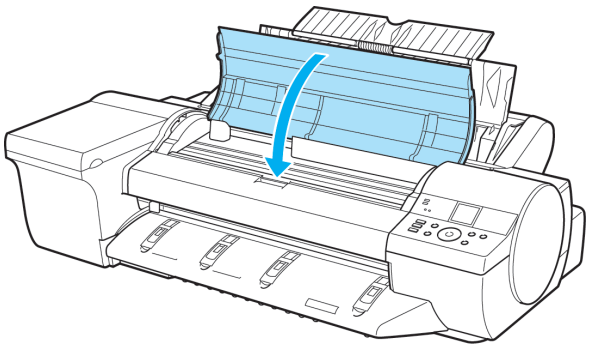
- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

1. Open the Top Cover and manually move the Carriage to the side.



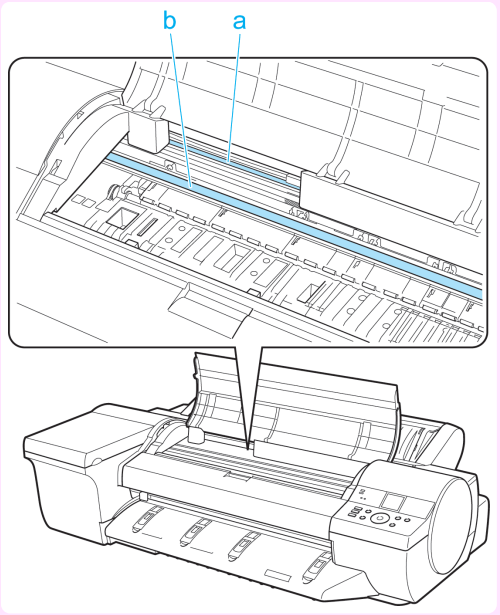
2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.



Important

- Do not move the Carriage over jammed paper. This may damage the Printhead.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.

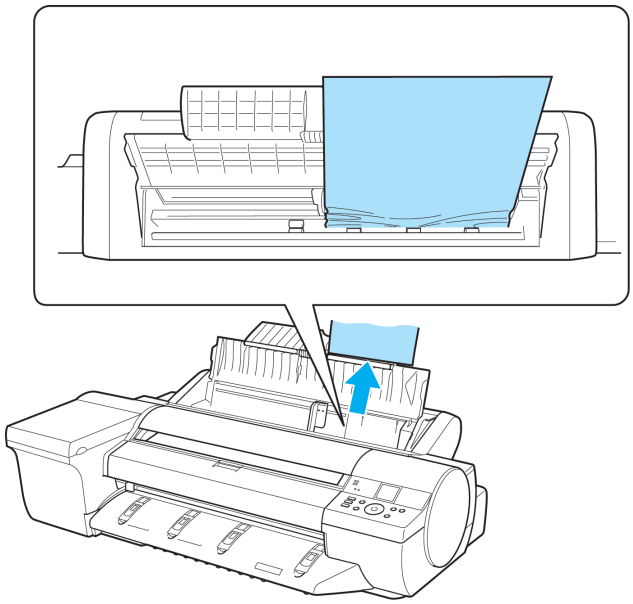


- If the paper is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot of the Top Paper Feed Slot

Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the roll feed unit, and then clear the paper jam. (See **"Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)."**) ➔P.948



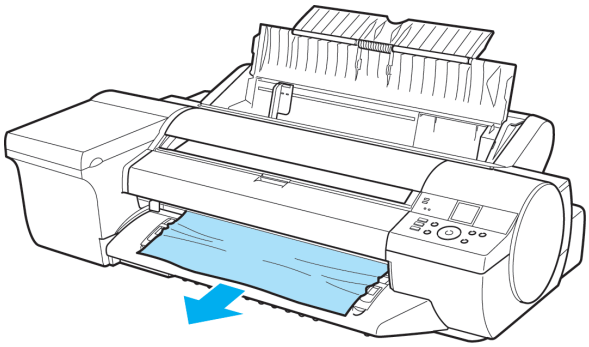
Note

- If it is difficult to perform operations from the front of the printer, perform operations from the back of the printer.
  If the printer has a Spectrophotometer Unit (option), lowering the Up-down Unit makes it easier to perform operations from the front of the printer. (See **"Lowering the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Manually."**) ➔P.527

- If the paper is jammed by the Ejection Guide

Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



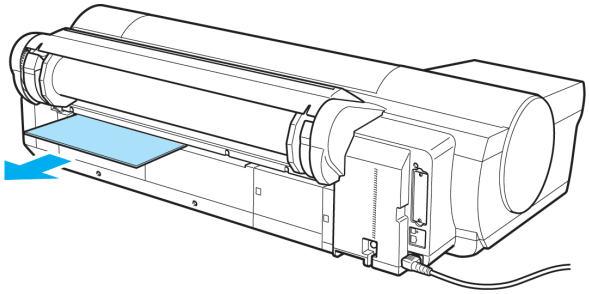
Note

- If the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) is mounted, then if the Up-down Unit of the Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) is lowered, raise the Up-down Unit before removing the paper.
When the Up-down Unit is raised, handle the central part (near the blue label). Handling the ends may cause damage.

- If paper is jammed in the back of the printer

Remove the jammed paper from the back of the printer.

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



3 Press the **OK** button.

Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)

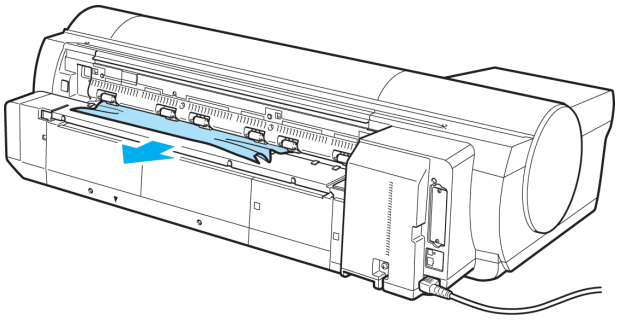
Follow these steps to Clear any jammed paper deep in the Paper Feed Slot ➔P.948 or to Remove scraps left in the Paper Feed Slot ➔P.949 .

Clear any jammed paper deep in the Paper Feed Slot

If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam as follows.

1 Turn the printer off before removing the Roll Feed Unit from the printer. (See "**Removing the Roll Feed Unit.**") ➔P.525

2 Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.



3 Attach the Roll Feed Unit to the printer. (See "**Installing the Roll Feed Unit.**") →P.526

Remove scraps left in the Paper Feed Slot

Follow these steps to remove any scraps left in the Paper Feed Slot after you clear jammed sheets or roll paper.

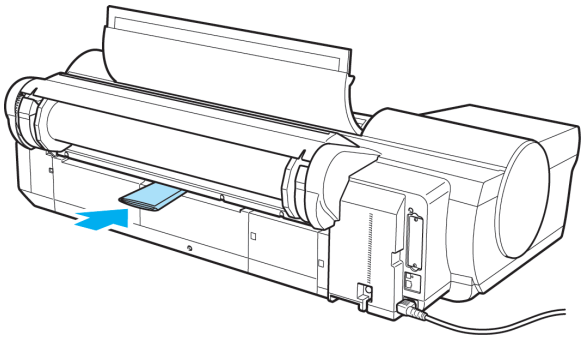
1 Press the **Load** button.

2 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.
A menu for selection of the type of paper is displayed.

3 Select **POP Board** and press the **OK** button.
Instructions for feeding **POP Board** are now displayed on the Control Panel, but follow this procedure to remove the jammed paper.

4 Open the Top Cover.

5 Fold an A4 sheet lengthwise four times and insert it through the gap of the Back Cover. Push the scrap out toward the Platen.



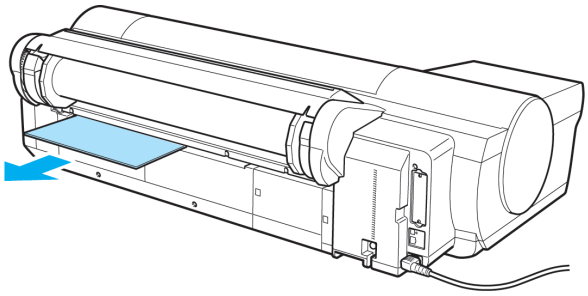
6 Remove the scrap when it is pushed out onto the Platen.

7 If any scraps remain inside the paper feed slot, repeat steps 5 and 6.

8 Close the Top Cover.

9 Turn the printer off. (See "**Turning the Printer On and Off.**") →P.21

Cut sheets cannot be pulled out from the front paper feed slot

Cause	Corrective Action
You have loaded paper other than POP board.	Push the cut sheet from the front side of the printer towards the back side. Once the edge of the cut sheet protrudes from the back side of the printer, pull it out from the back side. 

Roll paper cannot be inserted into the paper feed slot

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll paper is warped.	Straighten out curls and reload the roll.
Paper is jammed by the paper feed slot.	Remove the jammed paper. (See "**Clearing Jammed Roll Paper.**") ➔P.942 (See "**Clearing a Jammed Sheet, Fed Manually.**") ➔P.945
After a roll was advanced, the paper was manually pulled out by force, closing the Paper Feed Slot.	Remove the roll and open the paper feed slot. (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer.**") ➔P.510

Cannot load sheets

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper source selection is incorrect.	Press the **Load** button and select the paper source.

Paper is not cut neatly

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is bent or curled at the cut position.	Straighten out any curling by the edges of the paper.
Paper rises by the ends of the cut position before it is cut.	Reload the paper correctly.
You are using paper that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit.	Specify **Manual** in **Cutting Mode** in the Control Panel menu and use scissors or a cutting tool to cut the roll after printing. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**") ➔P.516
Cut Speed is not configured correctly in the Control Panel menu.	Change the **Cut Speed** setting in the Control Panel menu. (See "**Menu Structure.**") ➔P.627
During cutting, printed documents fall out at an angle.	In the Control Panel menu, set **Cutting Mode** to **Eject**. Hold documents after printing, as they are cut. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**") ➔P.516

Paper is not cut

Cause	Corrective Action
The printed document became caught on a foreign object by the Output Tray, which lifted the document. The Cutter passed under the paper.	Remove the foreign object by the Output Tray to enable the printer to eject the printed document, keeping it level.
In the printer driver, **No** or **Print Cut Guideline** is specified in **Automatic Cutting**.	Specify **Yes** in **Automatic Cutting** in the printer driver.

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, **Cutting Mode** is set to **Eject** or **Manual**.	If the **Cutting Mode** is **Eject**, press the **Cut** button to cut the paper. If the **Cutting Mode** is **Manual**, cut rolls with scissors or the like.

Depression on the leading edge is left

Cause	Corrective Action
Keeping a roll in the printer for a long time without printing on it may leave a depression on the leading edge.	When printing quality is most important, we recommend setting **TrimEdge Reload** to **On** or **Automatic** so that the paper edge is automatically cut before printing. (See "**Menu Structure**.") ➔P.627

Margins are wide

Cause	Corrective Action
Rolls are advanced a specific amount before cutting to prevent problems with cutting and paper ejection.	This operation is normal.
When **Cutting Mode** in the Control Panel menu was set to **Manual**, you selected **Do not perform** in response to the "**Perform the detection of paper leading edge?**" message.	Set **Cutting Mode** to **Manual** again, and select **Perform(recommend)** when the "**Perform the detection of paper leading edge?**" message is displayed. Note that when you select **Perform(recommend)**, if the paper is strongly curled, the Printhead may rub against the leading edge of the paper when the printing starts. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls**.") ➔P.516

Printing does not start

The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up 952
The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent 952

Ink Filling.. is displayed 952
The display screen indicates Agitating... 952

The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is not on.	Make sure the power cord is securely plugged in, all the way. Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.
The target printer was not selected when printing.	• In Windows, select the printer by clicking **Select Printer** or **Printer** in the printing dialog box and try printing again. • In Mac OS, open the dialog box of the printer driver, select the printer from the list of **Printer**, and try printing again.
The print job is paused.	• In Windows, restart the print job as follows. 1. Select the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window. 2. Clear **Pause Printing** in the **File** menu to restart the print job. • In Mac OS, restart the print job as follows. 1. Click **Print & Scan** (or **Print & Fax**). 2. Select the printer, and then **Resume Printer** (or **Start Jobs**) in the **Printers** menu to restart the print job.

The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, **Pause Print** is **On**.	Set **Pause Print** to **Off**. (See "**Pausing Printing.**") →P.33
You have selected **Save in mail box** in **Output Method** on the printer.	Print the job saved on the printer's hard disk. (See "**Printing Saved Jobs.**") →P.728
Print jobs are pending.	Manage the jobs on hold and print as needed. (See "**Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold).**") →P.726

Ink Filling.. is displayed

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer was forced off during operation.	Wait until the system has been filled with ink.

The display screen indicates Agitating...

Cause	Corrective Action
Ink agitation is in progress.	Please wait until ink agitation is finished. The time for agitation varies depending on how long the printer has been off. (Between about 30 seconds and two minutes.)

The printer stops during a print job

An error message is shown on the Display Screen 953
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper 953

An error message is shown on the Display Screen

Cause	Corrective Action
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job, and paper could not be advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll.	Remove the used roll and insert a new roll. (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer.**") ➔P.510 (See "**Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.512 (See "**Loading and Printing on Rolls.**") ➔P.22

The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper

Cause	Corrective Action
The leading edge of the roll paper was cut to straighten it.	The leading edge of rolls may be cut to straighten it if **Trim Edge First** is set to a value other than **Off** in the Control Panel menu. (See "**Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically.**") ➔P.522
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and make sure the Printhead is in good condition for printing. (See "**Checking for Nozzle Clogging.**") ➔P.890
A print job was received from an in-compatible printer driver.	Use the correct imagePROGRAF printer driver for the printer and try printing again.
The printer is damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Problems with the printing quality

Printing is faint 954
Paper rubs against the printhead 955
The edges of the paper are dirty 956
The surface of the paper is dirty 956
The back side of the paper is dirty 957
Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper 957
Immediately after borderless printing, the trailing edge margin is soiled during regular printing 957

Printed colors are inaccurate 957
Banding in different colors occurs 958
Colors in printed images are uneven 958
Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs 959
Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen 960
The contrast becomes uneven during printing 962

The length of printed images is inaccurate in the feeding direction 962
Images are printed crooked 963
Documents are printed in monochrome 963

Line thickness is not uniform 963
Lines or colors are misaligned 964

Borders appear in borderless printing 964

Printing is faint

Cause	Corrective Action
You may be printing on the wrong side of the paper.	Print on the printing surface.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (See "**Checking for Nozzle Clogging**.") ➔P.890
	To check for nozzles after printing, set **Frequency** in **Nozzle Check** in the Control Panel menu to a setting other than **Off**. Furthermore, to have a warning displayed depending on the result of the nozzle check, set **Warning** in **Nozzle Check** in the Control Panel menu to **On**. Note that when **Warning** is set to **On**, printing may stop depending on the content of the warning. (See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632
Because the printer was left without ink tanks installed for some time, ink has become clogged in the ink supply system.	After the ink tanks have been installed for 24 hours, run **Head Cleaning B** from the Control Panel. (See "**Cleaning the Printhead**.") ➔P.891
Paper is jammed inside the Top Cover.	Follow the steps below to remove the jammed piece of paper inside the Top Cover. 1. Open the Top Cover and make sure the Carriage is not over the Platen. 2. Remove any scraps of paper inside the Top Cover. (See "**Clearing Jammed Roll Paper**.") ➔P.942 (See "**Clearing a Jammed Sheet, Fed Manually**.") ➔P.945 3. Close the Top Cover.
The ink was not dry when paper was cut.	Specify a longer drying period in the Control Panel menu, in **Paper Details** > **Roll DryingTime**. (See "**Menu Settings**.") ➔P.632

Cause	Corrective Action
Printing may be faint if **Print Quality** in **Advanced Settings** in the printer driver is set to **Standard** or **Fast**.	In **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, choose **Highest quality** or **High** in **Print Quality**. Printing in **Fast** or **Standard** mode is faster and consumes less ink than in **Highest quality** or **High** modes, but the printing quality is lower. (See "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**") →P.59
You are printing on paper that tends to generate dust when cut.	In the Control Panel menu, set **CutDustReduct.** in **Paper Details** to **On**. (See "**Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls.**") →P.524

Paper rubs against the printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") →P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") →P.529
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
Paper has been loaded incorrectly, causing it to wrinkle.	Reload the paper. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") →P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") →P.529
The Printhead is set too low in the Control Panel menu.	In the Control Panel menu, set **Head Height** to **Automatic**. (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") →P.769
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on **Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper** or other paper-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Strong** or **Strongest** in the Control Panel menu. If rubbing still occurs, in the Control Panel menu, use a higher **Head Height** setting. (See "**Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.**") →P.777 (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") →P.769
	When printing on **CAD Tracing Paper** or other film-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Standard**, **Strong**, or **Strongest** in the Control Panel menu. If rubbing still occurs, in the Control Panel menu, use a higher **Head Height** setting. (See "**Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.**") →P.777 (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") →P.769
	When printing on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 in) thick or less, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Weakest** in the Control Panel menu. If rubbing still occurs, in the Control Panel menu, use a higher **Head Height** setting. (See "**Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.**") →P.777 (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") →P.769
	If edges of the paper curl and become soiled when printing on rolls of glossy photo paper, in **Paper Detailed Settings** in the printer driver, set **Near End Margin** to **20mm**.
When you have loaded paper, the paper you have loaded does not match the type selected on the Control Panel.	Be sure to select the correct type of paper in the Control Panel menu when loading paper. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") →P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") →P.529
Since the leading edge of the paper curls strongly or ripples, the leading edge of the paper rubs against the printhead.	Set **Cutting Mode** to **Manual** on the Control Panel menu, and select **Do not perform** for the paper leading edge detection setting. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**") →P.516 (See "**Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left.**") →P.514

The edges of the paper are dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (See "**Cleaning Inside the Top Cover**.") →P.907
The type of paper as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same type of paper is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (See "**Changing the Type of Paper**.") →P.508
	Make sure the same paper type is specified in the printer driver as on the printer. 1. Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
The paper is wrinkled or warped.	Straighten out the wrinkles or curls and reload the paper. Do not use paper that has been printed on previously. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer**.") →P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot**.") →P.529
A cut line is printed because **CutDustReduct.** is **On** in the Control Panel menu to reduce cutting dust.	If this function is not needed, set **CutDustReduct.** to **Off** in the Control Panel menu. (See "**Menu Settings**.") →P.632
The Printhead is set too low in the Control Panel menu.	In the Control Panel menu, set **Head Height** to **Automatic**. (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images**.") →P.769
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	For paper-based media such as Heavyweight Coated Paper, set the **VacuumStrngth** to **Strong** or **Strongest** in the Control Panel menu. If the paper still rubs against the printhead, set the **Head Height** in the Control Panel menu to a higher value than the current setting. (See "**Adjusting the Vacuum Strength**.") →P.777 (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images**.") →P.769
	For film-based media such as Tracing Paper, set the **VacuumStrngth** to **Standard**, **Strong** or **Strongest** in the Control Panel menu. If the paper still rubs against the printhead, set the **Head Height** in the Control Panel menu to a higher value than the current setting. (See "**Adjusting the Vacuum Strength**.") →P.777 (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images**.") →P.769
The Ejection Guide is soiled.	Clean the Ejection Guide. (See "**Cleaning the Printer Exterior**.") →P.907

The surface of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer. (See "**Cleaning Inside the Top Cover**.") →P.907
You are using a paper that does not dry easily.	In the Control Panel menu, set **Roll DryingTime** to at least **1 min.** (See "**Menu Settings**.") →P.632
	When paper that does not dry easily is used for printing, it may curl during printing and touch the Output Tray. In this case, in the Control Panel menu, complete the settings for **Dry time** and **Area** in **Scan Wait Time**. However, note that printing will now take longer. (See "**Menu Settings**.") →P.632
The optional Spectrophotometer Unit is dirty.	Clean the Paper presser. (See "**Cleaning the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Parts**.") →P.911

The back side of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (See "**Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.**") →P.907
The Platen suction is too strong.	In the Control Panel menu, reduce the level of **VacuumStrngth**. (See "**Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.**") →P.777
BordlessOversize is set to **Standard** in the Control Panel menu.	Set **BordlessOversize** to **Little** in the Control Panel menu. (See "**Menu Settings.**") →P.632

Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper was removed without pressing the **OK** button after printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot.	Following the instructions displayed, press the **OK** button, and after removing the paper, press the **OK** button again.
	Wipe the rollers to clean them. (See "**Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.**") →P.907 (See "**Cleaning the Paper Retainer.**") →P.910

Immediately after borderless printing, the trailing edge margin is soiled during regular printing

Cause	Corrective Action
Depending on your printing environment, after borderless printing in which the leading and trailing edge of the roll is cut automatically, any ink adhering to the cutter unit may rub off on the next printed document.	Follow these steps to change the **Between Pages** setting of **Drying Time** to a value between about 30 seconds and 3 minutes before trying borderless printing again. 1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Advanced Settings** by **Media Type**. 2. Select an ink drying time in the list for the **Between Pages** setting of **Drying Time**.

Printed colors are inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
Color adjustment has not been activated in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, access **Color Settings** in **Color Mode** to adjust colors. (See "**Main Sheet (Windows).**") →P.168 (See "**Main Pane (Mac OS).**") →P.349
Colors have not been adjusted on the computer or monitor.	Refer to the computer and monitor documentation to adjust the colors.
	Adjust the settings of the color management software, referring to the software documentation as needed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (See "**Checking for Nozzle Clogging.**") →P.890
In the Windows printer driver, **Application Color Matching Priority** is not selected.	Click **Special Settings** on the **Layout** sheet of the printer driver and select **Application Color Matching Priority** in the dialog box. (See "**Layout Sheet (Windows).**") →P.185
There may be a slight difference in how colors are printed after Printhead replacement because of individual variation among printheads.	Execute color calibration. (See "**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor.**") →P.793
Printhead characteristics gradually change through repeated use, and colors may change.	Execute color calibration. (See "**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor.**") →P.793

Cause	Corrective Action
Color may change slightly even on the same model of printer if you use a different version of the firmware or printer driver, or when you print under different settings or in a different printing environment.	Follow these steps to prepare the printing environment. 1. Use the same version of firmware or printer driver. (See "**Updating the Firmware**.") →P.930 2. Specify the same value for all settings items. 3. Execute color calibration. (See "**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor**.") →P.793

Banding in different colors occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount. (See "**Adjusting the Feed Amount**.") →P.770
	If printed sheets are affected by banding in different colors by the trailing edge (about 20–30 mm (0.8–1.2 in) from the edge), try adjusting the feed amount of the trailing edge of sheets. (See "**Adjusting Color on the Trailing Edge of Sheets**.") →P.776
Printing does not proceed smoothly because print jobs are interrupted during transmission.	Exit other applications and cancel other print jobs.
In the Control Panel menu, **Adj. Priority** is set to **Print Length**.	Setting **Adj. Priority** to **Print Quality** in the Control Panel menu and adjusting the feed amount may improve results. (See "**Adjusting the Feed Amount**.") →P.770
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors**.") →P.764
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (See "**Checking for Nozzle Clogging**.") →P.890
	To check for nozzles after printing, set **Frequency** in **Nozzle Check** in the Control Panel menu to a setting other than **Off**. Furthermore, to have a warning displayed depending on the result of the nozzle check, set **Warning** in **Nozzle Check** in the Control Panel menu to **On**. Note that when **Warning** is set to **On**, printing may stop depending on the content of the warning. (See "**Menu Settings**.") →P.632
Streaks may occur if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver and try printing again. Printing in **Fast** or **Standard** mode is faster and consumes less ink than in **Highest quality** or **High** modes, but the printing quality is lower. (See "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing**.") →P.59
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer**.") →P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot**.") →P.529
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Colors in printed images are uneven

Cause	Corrective Action
Line Drawing/Text is selected when printing images in many solid colors.	In **Print Priority** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, choose **Image**.

Cause	Corrective Action
You are printing on paper that curls easily.	Printed colors may appear uneven on the leading edge of paper that is susceptible to curling. Select a stronger level in **VacuumStrngth** in the Control Panel menu to increase suction against the paper, or specify a leading margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) or more. (See "**Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.**") ➔P.777
Printed colors may be uneven if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. Printing in **Fast** or **Standard** mode is faster and consumes less ink than in **Highest quality** or **High** modes, but the printing quality is lower. (See "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**") ➔P.59
Color may be uneven between dark and light image areas.	Select **Unidirectional Printing** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.
When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be slightly uneven at the leading edges.	Specify **No** in **Automatic Cutting** in the printer driver before printing. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, and then use scissors or a cutting tool to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. (See "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**") ➔P.59
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.**") ➔P.764
Allowing printed documents to dry on top of each other may cause uneven colors.	To avoid uneven colors, we recommend drying each sheet separately.
Density may be uneven if you use **Glossy Paper** or **Canon Coated Paper**.	In **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, choose **Highest quality** or **High** in **Print Quality**.
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") ➔P.529
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
Colors may be uneven at the trailing edge when you print on heavyweight sheets even if you execute **Adj Far Ed Feed**.	For heavyweight sheets or similar paper, execute **Adj Far Ed Feed** with the Front Tray Guides raised. Also keep the Front Tray Guides raised during printing. Lower the Front Tray Guides when printing on paper other than heavyweight sheets.
Scan Wait Time > **Area** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Leading edge**.	When **Scan Wait Time** > **Area** is set to **Leading edge**, colors may be uneven 110–140 mm from the leading edge. (The position varies depending on the **Print Quality** setting.) In this case, select **Scan Wait Time** > **Area** > **Entire area**. However, note that printing will now take longer. (See "**Menu Settings.**") ➔P.632
When you load paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot and print, colors may be uneven at the leading edge of the paper.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. Printing in **Fast** or **Standard** mode is faster and consumes less ink than in **Highest quality** or **High** modes, but the printing quality is lower. (See "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**") ➔P.59
	Straighten the paper if it is warped, and then load it straight into the printer. (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") ➔P.529

Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen suction is too strong.	In the Control Panel menu, reduce the level of **VacuumStrngth**. (See "**Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.**") ➔P.777
	Close the blue Switch on the platen so that it matches the paper size.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen suction is too strong.	(See "**Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.**") ➔P.960
Incorrect Printhead alignment value.	When printing fine lines or text at high precision on glossy or semi-glossy photo or proofing paper, set the optimal Printhead height before aligning the printhead. (See "**Enhancing Printing Quality.**") ➔P.762
	In the Control Panel menu, set **Head Height** to a lower height. (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") ➔P.769
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") ➔P.529
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen

If printed documents exhibit the following symptoms, adjust the setting of the blue Switch on the Platen.

- Image edges are blurred
- Image edges are affected by white banding

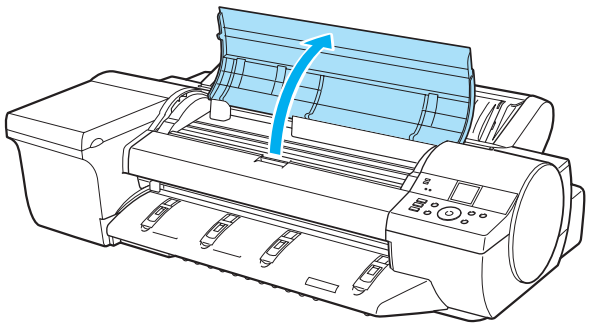
Important

- Always set all of the blue Switches on the Platen to the ● side for borderless printing. If the Switch are not set correctly, the print quality may deteriorate.

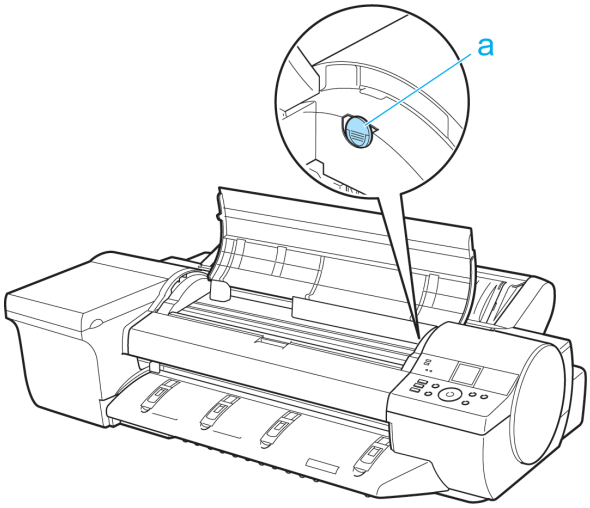
1 Remove any loaded paper that will not be used.

- Rolls (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer.**") ➔P.510
- Sheet (See "**Removing Sheets.**") ➔P.540

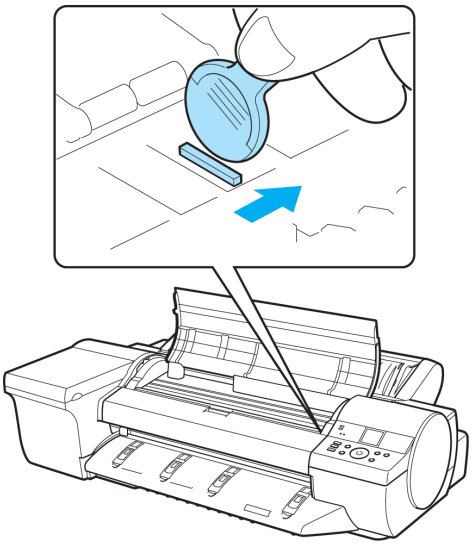
2 Open the Top Cover.



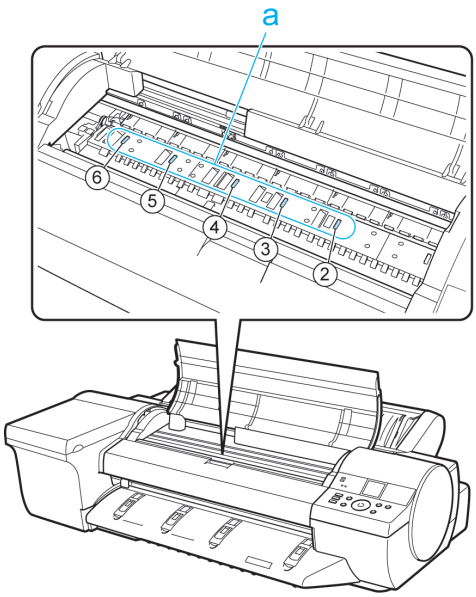
3 Remove the Cleaning Brush (a).



4 Using the back of the Cleaning Brush, move the first Switch to the side opposite ●.



5 Refer to the following table to confirm the number on the Platen (a) that corresponds to the size of paper for printing.

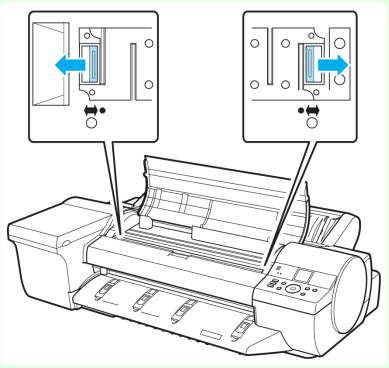


Number	Dimensions	Paper Size
2	254 mm (10 in) or 257 mm	**10"x12"**, **8"x10"**, or **JIS B4**
3	355 mm (14 in)	**14"x17"**
4	406 mm (16 in), 420 mm, or 432 mm (17 in)	**16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, **ISO A2**, **17-in. Roll (431.8mm)**, or **ANSI C**
5	515 mm (20 in)	**JIS B2** or **JIS B3**
6	610 mm (24 in)	**ISO A1**, **ISO A2**, or **20"x24"**

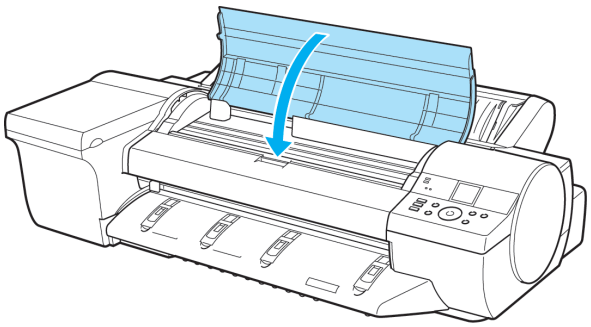
6 Using the back of the Cleaning Brush, move the Switch to the side opposite ●, corresponding to the size of the paper for printing.
In this case, note that you will move the switch in the opposite direction from the direction in step 4.

Note

- The Switch only moves number 1 and the number that matches the paper size. Set all of the switches where the number does not match the paper size in switches number 2 and higher to the ● side.



7 Close the Top Cover.



The contrast becomes uneven during printing

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount. (See "**Adjusting the Feed Amount**.") →P.770
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer**.") →P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot**.") →P.529
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

The length of printed images is inaccurate in the feeding direction

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, **Adj. Priority** is set to **Print Quality**.	Set **Adj. Priority** to **Print Length** in the Control Panel menu, and then execute **Adjust Length**.

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, **Adj. Priority** is set to **Print Quality**.	(See "**Adjusting the Feed Amount.**") →P.770
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") →P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") →P.529
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Images are printed crooked

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, **Skew Check Lv.** is set to **Loose** or **Off**.	In the Control Panel menu, set **Skew Check Lv.** to **High Accuracy** or **Standard**.
Roll paper is loaded askew.	If there is a gap between the roll paper and roll holder, reload the roll. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") →P.503 (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") →P.505

Documents are printed in monochrome

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, **Monochrome** or **Monochrome (Photo)**, is specified in **Color Mode**.	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, specify **Color** in **Color Mode** and try printing again.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the color ink nozzles and see if they are clogged. (See "**Checking for Nozzle Clogging.**") →P.890

Line thickness is not uniform

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Special Settings** dialog box of the Windows printer driver, **Fast Graphic Process** is selected.	Access the printer driver **Properties** dialog box from **Print** in the **File** menu of the source application, and follow these steps to print. 1. Clear the option **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** on the **Main** sheet. 2. Clear the option **Page Layout** on the **Layout** sheet. 3. Click the **Special Settings** button on the **Layout** sheet to display the **Special Settings** dialog box, and then clear the option **Fast Graphic Process**.
The blue Switch on the platen is set incorrectly.	Move the Switch numbered corresponding to the size of paper for printing opposite to the ● position. (See "**Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.**") →P.960
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") →P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") →P.529
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
Incorrect Printhead alignment value.	When printing fine lines or text at high precision on glossy or semi-glossy photo or proofing paper, set the optimal Printhead height before aligning the printhead. (See "**Enhancing Printing Quality.**") →P.762

Cause	Corrective Action
Incorrect Printhead alignment value.	In the Control Panel menu, use a lower **Head Height** setting. (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") →P.769
Depending on the type of paper, the thickness of printed lines may be noticeably inconsistent.	Specify **Proof** in **Print Priority** in the printer driver. (See "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**") →P.59

Lines or colors are misaligned

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead is not being aligned correctly.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.**") →P.764 (See "**Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.**") →P.766
	When printing fine lines or text at high precision on glossy or semi-glossy photo or proofing paper, set the optimal Printhead height before aligning the printhead. (See "**Enhancing Printing Quality.**") →P.762
	In the Control Panel menu, use a lower **Head Height** setting. (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") →P.769
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") →P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") →P.529
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
Depending on the type of paper, printed lines may be noticeably misaligned.	Specify **Proof** in **Print Priority** in the printer driver. (See "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**") →P.59

Borders appear in borderless printing

Cause	Corrective Action
When executing borderless printing on A1 (594 mm) or A2 (420 mm) rolls, the Spacer for Borderless Printing was not attached to the Roll Holder.	For borderless printing on A1 (594 mm) or A2 (420 mm) rolls, attach the included Spacer for Borderless Printing to the Roll Holder. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") →P.503
The paper selected for borderless printing at actual size was wider than the actual page size.	For borderless printing at actual size, use roll paper that has the same width as the actual page size. (See "**Borderless Printing at Actual Size.**") →P.81
The printing image data has margins.	Check that the printing image data does not have any objects like crop marks and transparent objects.
Margins are configured in the application software you are using.	Check that no margins are configured in the application software you are using.
BordlessOversize is set to **Little** in the Control Panel menu.	Set **BordlessOversize** to **Standard** in the Control Panel menu. (See "**Menu Settings.**") →P.632

Spectrophotometer Trouble Shooting

Acquiring color measurement data takes a long time 965
Measurement results are unusual/suspect 965
You cannot execute AutoAdjst(HiPrc) from the computer 965

Acquiring color measurement data takes a long time

Cause	Corrective Action
Roll DryingTime in the Control Panel menu is set to a value other than **Off**.	If **Roll DryingTime** is set to a value other than **Off**, change it to **Off** only while executing acquire color measurement data. When **Roll DryingTime** is set to a value other than **Off**, the paper takes longer to dry than the drying time set in the **Color Measurement Preferences** dialog box in the **Color Calibration Management Console**. (See "**Menu Structure.**") ➔P.627

Measurement results are unusual/suspect

Cause	Corrective Action
The built-in pattern was not measured correctly during the color check.	Setting the **Pattern Size** to **Large** on the Control Panel or **Color Calibration Management Console** can improve measurement results. (See "**Menu Structure.**") ➔P.627 (See "**Executing Color Check (Windows).**") ➔P.838 (See "**Executing Color Check (Mac OS).**") ➔P.872
The test pattern is damaged or dirty because the paper was transported while the ink was still wet.	Configure the paper drying settings on the **Color Calibration Management Console**. (See "**Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart (Windows).**") ➔P.831 (See "**Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart (Mac OS).**") ➔P.866
The test pattern is damaged or dirty because the Printhead is set too low on the Control Panel menu.	Set **Head Height** to a higher value on the Control Panel menu. (See "**Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.**") ➔P.769
A Spectrophotometer Unit part is dirty.	Clean the White Calibration Tile, White/Black Backing Plate, and Paper presser. (See "**Cleaning the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Parts.**") ➔P.911
The Spectrophotometer Sensor and White Calibration Tile need to be adjusted.	Performing yearly adjustments can help restore the Spectrophotometer Sensor and White Calibration Tile to their original levels of accuracy and precision. Contact your Canon dealer for more information on adjustment services. (See "**Replacing the Spectrophotometer Sensor of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option).**") ➔P.931
The color of the White/Black Backing Plate is not selected correctly.	Turn the printer off and then change the color of the White/Black Backing Plate. (See "**Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color.**") ➔P.804

You cannot execute AutoAdjst(HiPrc) from the computer

Cause	Corrective Action
Since the printer belongs to a calibration group, **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** cannot be executed from **Color Calibration Management Console**. However, if it belongs to a calibration group for a paper type where only **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** can be executed, **Auto Adjust (High Precision)** can be executed.	Execute **AutoAdjst(HiPrc)** in the Control Panel menu. (See "**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option).**") ➔P.799

Cannot print over a network

Cannot connect the printer to the network 966

Cannot print over a TCP/IP network 966
Cannot print over a NetWare network 966
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks 967

Cannot connect the printer to the network

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ethernet cable is not connected correctly to the printer's Ethernet port.	1. Make sure the printer is connected to the network with the correct Ethernet cable, and then turn the printer on. For instructions on connecting the cable, refer to the Setup Guide. 2. Make sure the Link indicator is lit. The top and bottom indicators are lit if the printer is connected via 1000Base-T. The bottom indicator is green if the printer is connected via 100BASE-TX, and the top indicator is orange if connected via 10BASE-T. If the Link indicator is not lit, check the following points. • Make sure the hub is on. • Make sure the end of the Ethernet cable is connected correctly. Insert the Ethernet cable until it clicks and locks in place. • Make sure there is no problem with the Ethernet cable. If there is any problem, replace the Ethernet cable. • Check the communication mode with the hub. Although the printer normally detects the hub communication mode and transmission rate automatically (in auto negotiation mode), sometimes the hub settings cannot be detected. In this case, configure the connection method manually, specifying the communication mode in use. (See "**Configuring the Communication Mode Manually**.") →P.693

Cannot print over a TCP/IP network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's IP address is not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. (See "**Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**.") →P.695 (See "**Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel**.") →P.673
The printer's TCP/IP network settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. (See "**Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI**.") →P.677
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. (See "**Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)**.") →P.676 (See "**Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks (Mac OS)**.") →P.689

Cannot print over a NetWare network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's NetWare settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. In particular, make sure a valid frame type is selected. (See "**Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings With RemoteUI**.") →P.686
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. (See "**Configuring NetWare Network Settings**.") →P.681
The NetWare server and services are not configured correctly.	Check the following points. 1. Make sure the NetWare file server is running.

Cause	Corrective Action
The NetWare server and services are not configured correctly.	2. Make sure there is enough free disk space on the NetWare file server. Insufficient disk space may prevent you from processing large print jobs. 3. Start NWADMIN or PCONSOLE and confirm that the print service is configured correctly and the print queue is available. 4. If data transmission to a printer on another subnet fails, deactivate NCP burst mode in that printer's network protocol settings. 5. If the printer is used in queue server mode, specify **Other/Unknown** as the printer type.
The printer was turned off and on when not disconnected from the server.	Leave the printer off for at least 30 seconds, and then restore power.

Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks

Cause	Corrective Action
The AppleTalk protocol is not enabled on the printer.	Activate AppleTalk on the printer. (See "**Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings.**") →P.691
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's AppleTalk settings are configured correctly. (See "**Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks (Mac OS).**") →P.689 (See "**Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Mac OS).**") →P.689
The computer and printer are not on the same network.	Due to the nature of Bonjour, you cannot print if the printer is on another network behind a router. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.

Installation problems

Removing Installed Printer Drivers

Follow these steps to remove installed printer drivers and utilities.

Removing printer drivers (Windows)

Remove the printer driver as follows.

Note
- The following instructions are for Windows XP. The method of removing printer drivers varies depending on the version of Windows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **All Programs** > **Canon Printer Uninstaller** > **imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Uninstaller** to display the **Delete Printer** window.
2. Select the printer in the list and click **Delete**.
3. Click **Yes** after the **Warning** message is displayed.
4. Make sure that the printer has been removed from the list, and then click **Exit**.

Removing **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** (Windows)

Remove **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** as follows.

Note
- The following instructions are for Windows XP. The method of removing printer drivers varies depending on the version of Windows.

1. Select **Control Panel** from the **start** menu.
2. Select **Add or Remove Programs**.
3. Select **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**, and then click the **Change/Remove** button.

Removing **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** (Windows)

Remove **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** as follows.

Note
- The following instructions are for Windows XP. The method of removing printer drivers varies depending on the version of Windows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **All Programs** > **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** > **Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**.

Other problems

The printer does not go on 969
The printer takes time to start up 969
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound 969
Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared 970
The printer consumes a lot of ink 970
Ink Level Detection 970

The printer does not go on

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is unplugged.	Plug the power cord into the outlet, and then turn on the printer.
The specified voltage is not supplied.	Check the voltage of the outlet and breaker. (See "**Specifications.**") →P.1000

The printer takes time to start up

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer may have shut down incorrectly last time. This may happen after power outages or if the printer is unplugged before it is turned off. In this case, the next time power is restored, the printer's hard disk is checked, and startup may take some time.	Please wait a while, because it may take several minutes to finish checking the hard disk. If an error message is displayed after the hard disk check, follow the instructions indicated to resolve the problem.

If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound

Cause	Corrective Action

The printer makes a sound during operation.	The following sounds do not indicate a problem with the printer.
	• There is a sound of suction from the Platen. To prevent paper from rising, paper is held against the Platen by suction from Vacuum holes under it.
	• Roll paper makes a fluttering sound during printing. There may be a fluttering sound when large paper is advanced.
	• You suddenly hear the sound of cleaning operations. At regular intervals, for printer maintenance, cleaning operations will begin automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode.
	• You suddenly hear the sound of ink agitation. At regular intervals, to ensure optimal printing quality, the ink is agitated automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode. The ink is also agitated automatically under the following conditions. Note that other operations are not possible while "**Agitating...**" is displayed on the control panel.
	  • After the printer is turned on
	  • After data transmission
	  • After ink tank replacement
	In other cases, contact your Canon dealer.

Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has not detected the new Maintenance Cartridge that was used to replace the old one.	Remove the new Maintenance Cartridge you have just installed and insert it again firmly. (See "**Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.**") ➔P.899

The printer consumes a lot of ink

Cause	Corrective Action
Many full-page color images are printed.	In print jobs such as photos, images are filled with color. This consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.
Head Cleaning B in the Control Panel menu is executed frequently.	**Head Cleaning B** in the Control Panel menu consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer. Unless the printer has been moved or stored for a long period or you are troubleshooting Printhead problems, we recommend not performing **Head Cleaning B**, to the extent possible.
You have just finished initial installation, when more ink is consumed to fill the system.	After initial installation or at the first-time use after transfer, ink flows into the system between the Ink Tank and Printhead. Although the amount of remaining ink may drop as a result, it does not indicate a problem.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Check for nozzle clogging. (See "**Checking for Nozzle Clogging.**") ➔P.890

Ink Level Detection

Ink level detection will be deactivated if you load ink tanks once emptied.

Ink level detection

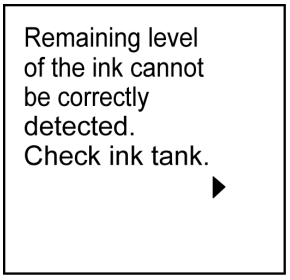
Ink tanks specified for this printer feature an ink level detection function to prevent the ink from running out during printing, which prevents printer damage. (See "**Ink Tanks.**") ➔P.882
This function will not work correctly if you use refill ink tanks. As a result, printing stops. Thus, before using refill ink tanks, you must cancel the ink level detection.
Printing with the ink level detection canceled may lead to printer damage and printing problems. Canon Inc. is not liable for any damage that may occur as a result of refilling ink.

Important

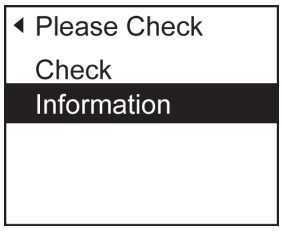
- After ink level detection has been released, this function cannot be reactivated for currently loaded Ink Tank. To use ink level detection again, replace the Ink Tank with new ones specified for use with the printer.
- Repeatedly removing and inserting an Ink Tank may damage the connection between the Ink Tank and the printer, which may cause ink leakage from the Ink Tank and damage the printer.

Releasing ink level detection

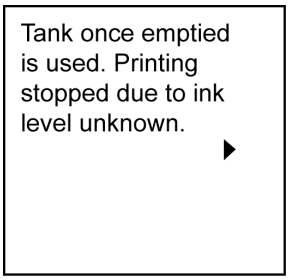
1 On the Display Screen, a message indicates that the ink level cannot be detected. After checking the message, press the ▶ button.



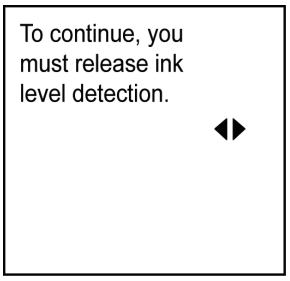
2 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press the **OK** button.



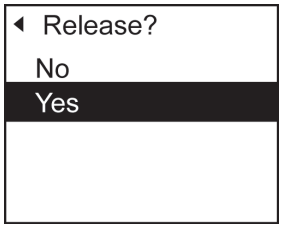
3 A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen about releasing ink level detection. After checking the message, press the ▶ button.



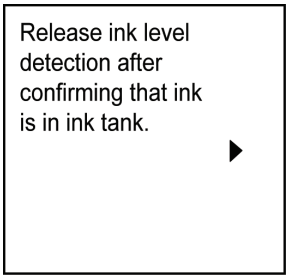
4 After checking the message, press the ▶ button.



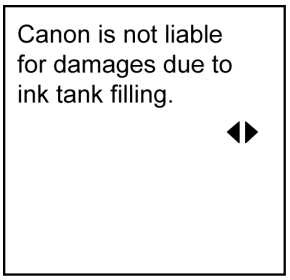
5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



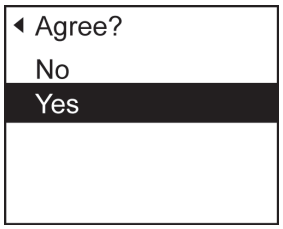
6 Check the message and press the ▶ button.



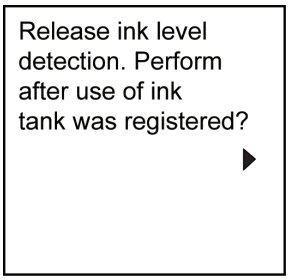
7 Check the message and press the ▶ button.



8 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

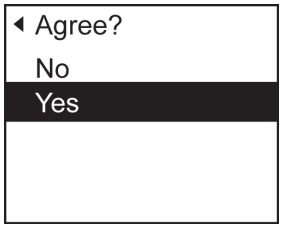


9 A confirmation message about updating ink information is shown on the Display Screen. After checking the message, press the ▶ button.



10 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Ink level detection is now released.



Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939

Error Message

Error Messages 974
Messages regarding paper 976
Messages regarding ink 985
Messages regarding printing or adjustment 987
Messages regarding printheads 992
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge 994
Messages regarding the hard disk 995
Other Messages 997

Specifications 999
Appendix 1005

User's Guide

Error Messages

Before borderless printing, move the blue platen switch. 989
Blue platen switch is dirty. 989
Borderless printng not possible. 983

Calibration There is a problem with the multi-sensor. 998
Cannot adjust paper feed. 989
Cannot adjust printhead. 992
Cannot calibrate. 988
Cannot cut paper. 982
Cannot detect ink level correctly. Close tank cover. 985
Cannot detect papr 982
Cannot execute this command. Use other paper. 987
Cannot feed paper. 982
Cannot print as specified. 987
Cannot recognize print head x. (x is L, R, or not displayed) 993
Check if ink tank is set, and its color and direction. 986
Check printed document. 990
Clean calibration white tile because it may be dirty. 991
Close Ink Tank Cover 986

Do not pull out ink tank. 986

End of paper feed. 983
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 997
Excessive temperature or humidity. 988
Execute printhead cleaning. 993

File read error. 995

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 997

Hard disk error. 995
Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 997

Ink insufficient. 985
Ink tank is empty. 986
Insufficient paper for job 978

Mail box full. Delete unwanted data 996
Mail box full. Now printing without saving data. 995
Mail box nearly full. 995
Maint. cart. The level is low 994
Maintenance cartridge full. 994
Maintenance cartridge problem. 994
Manual printing is selected, but a roll is loaded. 980
Manual printing is selected. 980
Maximum jobs stored. 995
MediaType Mismatch 976
Move the blue platen switch No.xx to the right. (xx represents a number) 989
Multi-sensor error 998

No ink left. 985
No ink tank loaded. 986
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. 994
No maintenance cartridge. 994
No Roll Unit. 980

Not much ink is left. 986

Paper jam. 981
Paper loaded askew. 981
Paper mismatch 976
Paper not aligned with right guide. 981
Paper size not detected. 978
PaprWidth Mismatch 978
Parts replacement time has passed. 998
PHeads: wrong pos. 992
Please calibrate using above paper. 989
Please commn calibrt using above paper. 988
Please execute common calibration. 988
Prepare for parts replacement. 998

Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. Check ink tank. 985
Roll feed unit error. 980
Roll paper is not securely in contact with roll holder. 984
Roll printing is selected, but manual paper is loaded. 979
Roll printing is selected. 979

Spectrophotometer read error. 991
Spectrophotometer Sensor Cover open. 991
Spectrophotometer Sensor not mounted. 990
Spectrophotometer Unit Backing plate error. 990
Spectrophotometer Unit Calibration white tile error. 990
Spectrophotometer Unit cover open. 991
Spectrophotometer Unit eject guide not mounted. 990
Spectrophotometer Unit not connected. 990

The following ink tanks cannot be recognized. 986
The mail box is full. 995
The paper is too small. 977
The paper is too small. 977
The roll is empty. 979
This paper cannot be used. 979

Unknown file. 998

Wrong maintenance cartridge. 994
Wrong paper feed slot for manual paper. 980
Wrong x printhead. (x is L, R, or not displayed) 992

x printhead error (x is L, R, or not displayed) 992

Messages regarding paper

Paper mismatch 976
MediaType Mismatch 976
The paper is too small. 977
The paper is too small. 977
PaprWidth Mismatch 978
Paper size not detected. 978
Insufficient paper for job 978
This paper cannot be used. 979
Cannot execute this command. Use other paper. 987

Roll printing is selected. 979
Roll printing is selected, but manual paper is loaded. 979
The roll is empty. 979
Roll feed unit error. 980
No Roll Unit. 980

Manual printing is selected. 980
Manual printing is selected, but a roll is loaded. 980
Wrong paper feed slot for manual paper. 980

Paper jam. 981
Paper loaded askew. 981
Paper not aligned with right guide. 981
Cannot detect papr 982
Cannot feed paper. 982
Cannot cut paper. 982
End of paper feed. 983

Borderless printng not possible. 983

Roll paper is not securely in contact with roll holder. 984

Paper mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
You tried to print a test pattern for printer adjustment on several sheets, but sheets of different types or sizes of paper were used.	When printing a test pattern for adjustment, use sheets of the same size and type of paper, in the required quantity. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, press the **OK** button, and replace the paper. (See "**Loading and Printing on Sheets.**") ➔P.25 The printer now starts printing the test pattern.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.

MediaType Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Pause**, the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button. 2. Change the paper type setting in the printer driver to the type loaded in the printer and try printing again.
	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver.

Cause	Corrective Action
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Pause**, the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. 2. Replace the loaded paper with paper of the type and size you have specified in the printer driver. (See "**Loading and Printing on Rolls**.") →P.22 (See "**Loading and Printing on Sheets**.") →P.25
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Warning**, the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	You can continue to print, but note that this error may cause paper jams or problems in the printing results.

The paper is too small.

Cause	Corrective Action
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Pause**, paper smaller than the size specified in the printer driver is loaded.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
	Adjust the paper size setting in the printer driver to match the size loaded in the printer as follows. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button. 2. Change the paper size setting in the printer driver to the size loaded in the printer and try printing again.
	Replace the loaded paper with paper of a size that matches the size setting in the printer driver as follows. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button to stop printing. 2. Replace the loaded paper to match the settings in the printer driver and try printing again. (See "**Loading and Printing on Rolls**.") →P.22 (See "**Loading and Printing on Sheets**.") →P.25
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Warning**, paper smaller than the size specified in the printer driver is loaded.	You can continue to print, but note that this error may cause problems in the printing results.

The paper is too small.

Cause	Corrective Action
A sheet has come out of the printer during printing.	1. Press the **OK** button and remove the sheet. 2. Confirm the paper size and setting. 3. Reload the paper. (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot**.") →P.529
The loaded paper is too small. (When you have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information.)	Replace the roll with a roll 10 inches in width or larger as follows. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer**.") →P.510 (See "**Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder**.") →P.512 2. Replace the roll with a roll 10 inches wide or larger. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder**.") →P.503 (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer**.") →P.505 The printer will resume printing.

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small. (When you have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information.)	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.

PaprWidth Mismatch

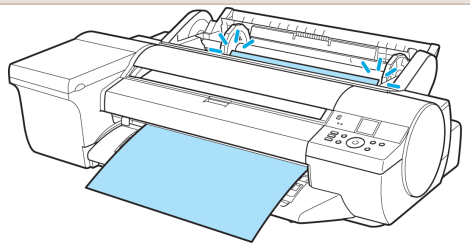
Cause	Corrective Action
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Pause** or **Hold Job**, the width of the loaded roll does not match the width specified in **Fit Roll Paper Width** in the printer driver.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.
	Follow these steps to replace the roll to match the width specified in the printer driver. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer.**") →P.510 (See "**Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder.**") →P.512 2. Replace with paper of the width configured in the printer driver. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") →P.503 (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") →P.505 The printer now starts printing the print job.
	Make sure the roll width selected in the dialog box displayed when you select **Fit Roll Paper Width** in the printer driver matches the width of the roll loaded in the printer, and then try printing again.

Paper size not detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew, or warped paper has been loaded.	Press the **OK** button and reload the paper. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") →P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") →P.529 If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is displayed on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.
	If this error recurs after you reload the roll, remove the Roll Holder from the printer, push the roll firmly in until it touches the Roll Holder flange, and reload the Roll Holder in the printer. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") →P.503

Insufficient paper for job

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job longer than the amount of roll paper left when **ManageRemainRoll** in the Control Panel menu is **On**.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing. However, the roll paper may run out during the print job and you may not be able to print all of the document.

Cause	Corrective Action
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. Change the **Paper Source** of the printer driver, or replace the roll with a roll that has enough paper for the print job, and then print. (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer.**") ➔P.510 (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505
	Press ▲ or ▼ and select **Stop Printing** or press the **Stop** button to stop printing.

This paper cannot be used.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper that is too small for the printer has been loaded.	Press the **OK** button and load paper of the correct size. (See "**Paper Sizes.**") ➔P.492
Paper has been loaded that is too small to print the test pattern for printhead adjustment or nozzle checking.	Press the **OK** button and load unused paper A4/Letter (vertical) or larger. More than one sheet may be required depending on the adjustment.

Roll printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print on a roll, but no roll is loaded.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select "**Load Roll Paper**", and then press the **OK** button. Load the roll, and then print. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503 (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505
	Press ▲ or ▼ and select **Stop Printing** or press the **Stop** button to stop printing.

Roll printing is selected, but manual paper is loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for rolls was received when a sheet is loaded.	Follow these steps to load and print on a roll. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject Paper**, press the **OK** button, and remove the sheet. (See "**Removing Sheets.**") ➔P.540 2. Load a new roll. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505 The printer now starts printing the print job.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.

The roll is empty.

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll is empty.	Follow these steps to replace the used roll with a new roll of the same type and size. 1. Press the **OK** button and remove the roll. (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer.**") ➔P.510 (See "**Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.512 2. Load the new roll. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503 (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505 3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the type of paper. (See "**Changing the Type of Paper.**") ➔P.508 4. When you have selected **ManageRemainRoll** > **On** in the control panel menu and a barcode is not printed on the roll, also specify the paper length.

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll is empty.	(See "**Specifying the Paper Length.**") ➔P.509 **5.** If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. If no message appears, printing will continue from the next page.
There is remaining roll paper, but because it could not be advanced, it could not be detected.	The unused portion of the roll is heavy, and this is placing a burden on the printer. It may be helpful to change the printing mode, which will change the paper feed timing. Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. (See "**Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.**") ➔P.59

Roll feed unit error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Roll Feed Unit is not working.	Turn off the printer, remove the Roll Feed Unit momentarily, and then reinstall it. (See "**Removing the Roll Feed Unit.**") ➔P.525 (See "**Installing the Roll Feed Unit.**") ➔P.526
	If the message is displayed again despite these measures, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

No Roll Unit.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job, but the Roll Feed Unit is not installed.	Press the **Stop** button and stop printing.
	1. Turn the printer off and install the Roll Feed Unit. **2.** Turn the printer on and resend the print job.

Manual printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print on a sheet, but no sheet is loaded.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Load Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. Load a sheet, and then print. (See "**Loading and Printing on Sheets.**") ➔P.25
	Press ▲ or ▼ and select **Stop Printing** or press the **Stop** button to stop printing.

Manual printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for printing on sheets was sent when a roll is loaded.	**1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Remove Roll Paper**, and then press the **OK** button to stop printing. **2.** After removing the roll, load and print on a sheet of the type and size of paper you have specified in the printer driver. (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer.**") ➔P.510 (See "**Loading and Printing on Sheets.**") ➔P.25
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button to stop printing.

Wrong paper feed slot for manual paper.

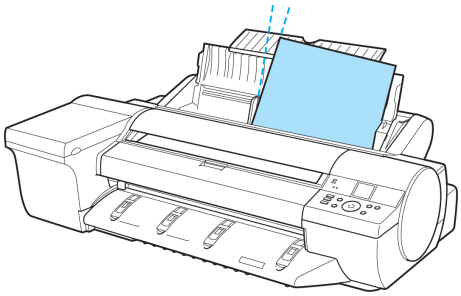
Cause	Corrective Action
Data for **Media Type** that should be loaded in Front Paper Feed Slot was sent while paper was loaded in Top Paper Feed Slot. Alternately, data for **Media Type** that should be loaded in Top Paper Feed Slot was sent while paper was loaded in Front Paper Feed Slot.	Press the ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject Paper**, and then remove the paper. Next, reload the paper using the procedure Display Screen in Control Panel. **Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot** ➔P.529

Cause	Corrective Action
Data for **Media Type** that should be loaded in Front Paper Feed Slot was sent while paper was loaded in Top Paper Feed Slot. Alternately, data for **Media Type** that should be loaded in Top Paper Feed Slot was sent while paper was loaded in Front Paper Feed Slot.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing** and cancel printing.

Paper jam.

Cause	Corrective Action
A paper jam occurred in the printer during printing.	1. For roll paper, cut the paper on the upper side of the {Paper Feed Slot. 2. Press the **OK** button. 3. Remove the jammed paper. (See "**Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)**.") ➔P.948 (See "**Clearing Jammed Roll Paper**.") ➔P.942 (See "**Clearing a Jammed Sheet, Fed Manually**.") ➔P.945 4. Load the paper. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer**.") ➔P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot**.") ➔P.529 5. If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.

Paper loaded askew.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper loaded crooked was detected when the paper was advanced. 	Press the **OK** button and reload the paper. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer**.") ➔P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot**.") ➔P.529
	If this error recurs after you reload the roll, remove the Roll Holder from the printer, push the roll firmly in until it touches the Roll Holder flange, and reload the Roll Holder in the printer. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder**.") ➔P.503

Important

- To disable this message (if it is displayed repeatedly despite reloading paper, for example), choose **Off** or **Loose** in the **Skew Check Lv.** setting of the printer menu. However, this may cause jams and printing problems because paper may be askew when printed. Also, the Platen may become soiled, which may soil the back of the next document when it is printed.

Paper not aligned with right guide.

Cause	Corrective Action
Skew Check Lv. on the Control Panel menu is set to something other than **Off** and the paper is not aligned with the guide on the right during loading.	Reload the paper as follows. 1. Press the **OK** button to clear the error. 2. Reload the paper. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer**.") ➔P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot**.") ➔P.529

Cannot detect papr

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer could not detect the paper.	Reload the paper as follows. 1. Remove the paper and press the **OK** button. 2. Reload the paper. (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") ➔P.529 (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505

Cannot feed paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper could not be advanced correctly during feeding.	1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Remove the paper. (See "**Clearing Jammed Roll Paper.**") ➔P.942 (See "**Clearing a Jammed Sheet, Fed Manually.**") ➔P.945 3. Load the paper. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505 (See "**Loading Sheets in the Feed Slot.**") ➔P.529 4. If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.
Paper could not be advanced correctly during ejection.	1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Remove the paper. (See "**Clearing Jammed Roll Paper.**") ➔P.942 (See "**Clearing a Jammed Sheet, Fed Manually.**") ➔P.945

Cannot cut paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
There are sheets left on the Ejection Guide.	1. Press the **OK** button and remove the paper. 2. Load paper. 3. If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505
There is a foreign object by the Output Tray, obstructing the Cutter Unit.	1. Lift the Top Cover and remove the foreign object. 2. If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.
You are not using the printer under the recommended environmental conditions for the paper.	Use the printer only where the recommended environmental conditions for the paper are met. Note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions, see the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496
You are using paper that is not compatible with automatic cutting.	1. Specify **Manual** as the cutting method and use scissors or a cutting tool to cut the roll. (See "**Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.**") ➔P.516 For information about paper that is compatible with automatic cutting, see the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496 2. Press the **OK** button and remove the paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
In other cases, the Cutter Unit may be damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

End of paper feed.

Cause	Corrective Action
Although an attempt was made to advance the paper manually, it reached the limit position that can be advanced.	Canceling manual advancing. (See "**Feeding Roll Paper Manually**.") ➔P.513

Borderless printng not possible.

Cause	Corrective Action
The print job received specifies a type or width of paper that is not compatible with borderless printing.	Follow these steps to change the settings of the print job to enable borderless printing. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button. 2. Make sure the correct printer driver for the printer is selected and try printing again. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print With Border**, and then press the **OK** button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.
The loaded paper is a size not compatible with borderless printing.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.
	Replace the paper with paper compatible for borderless printing as follows. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer.**") ➔P.510 (See "**Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.512 2. Replace the paper with paper compatible for borderless printing. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503 (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer.**") ➔P.505 The printer now starts printing the print job. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print With Border**, and then press the **OK** button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.
The paper is loaded askew.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper** and straighten the paper so that the edges are between the ink grooves for borderless printing. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange of the Roll Holder. For borderless printing on A1 (594 mm or 23.4 in) or A2 (420 mm or 16.5 in) rolls, attach the included Spacer for Borderless Printing to the Roll Holder. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder.**") ➔P.503
	Select **None** when you have set **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu to **Warning**. However, note that this error may affect the printing quality.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print With Border**, and then press the **OK** button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.
	Press ▲ or ▼ and select **Stop Printing** or press the **Stop** button to stop printing.

Roll paper is not securely in contact with roll holder.

Cause	Corrective Action
Skew Check Lv. on the Control Panel menu is set to something other than **Off** and the roll paper is not placed securely in the Roll Holder during loading.	Follow these steps to reload the roll. 1. Press the **OK** button and remove the roll holder from the printer. 2. Insert the roll firmly on the Roll Holder until it touches the flange. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder**.") ➔P.503 3. Load the Roll Holder in the printer.

Messages regarding ink

Ink insufficient. 985
No ink left. 985
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. Check ink tank. 985
Cannot detect ink level correctly. Close tank cover. 985

Close Ink Tank Cover 986
Ink tank is empty. 986
Not much ink is left. 986
No ink tank loaded. 986
Check if ink tank is set, and its color and direction. 986
The following ink tanks cannot be recognized. 986
Do not pull out ink tank. 986

Ink insufficient.

Cause	Corrective Action
The ink level is low, so you cannot print, clean the Printhead, or do other operations that require ink. There is not enough ink of the color with × displayed above the remaining ink indicator.	Press the **OK** button, open the Ink Tank Cover, and replace the Ink Tank for the color that does not have enough ink. (See "**Replacing Ink Tanks**.") ➔P.882

No ink left.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left. There are no ink colors with × displayed above the remaining ink indicator.	Press the **OK** button, open the Ink Tank Cover, and replace the Ink Tank for the color that is out of ink. (See "**Replacing Ink Tanks**.") ➔P.882

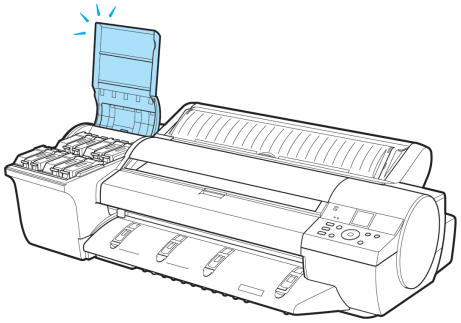
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. Check ink tank.

Cause	Corrective Action
Ink level detection cannot work correctly if you use refill ink tanks.	The refill ink tank can no longer be used. See the section **Ink level detection** and take the appropriate action. (See "**Ink Level Detection**.") ➔P.970

Cannot detect ink level correctly. Close tank cover.

Cause	Corrective Action
The remaining ink level could not be correctly detected.	Close the Ink Tank Cover. The buzzer stops sounding. Next, "**No ink left.**" is displayed and see "**No ink left.**." ➔P.985

Close Ink Tank Cover

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank Cover is open. 	Close the Ink Tank Cover.

Ink tank is empty.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left in an ink tank. There are no ink colors with × displayed above the remaining ink indicator in the Ink tab top screen. (See "**Checking Ink Tank Levels.**") ➔P.888	Open the Ink Tank Cover, and replace the Ink Tank for the color that is out of ink. (See "**Replacing Ink Tanks.**") ➔P.882

Not much ink is left.

Cause	Corrective Action
Not much ink is left.	Prepare a new Ink Tank. We recommend replacing the Ink Tank with a new Ink Tank at this point if you plan to print large-format or high-quantity jobs.

No ink tank loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no Ink Tank of the indicated color in the printer.	Load the Ink Tank. (See "**Replacing Ink Tanks.**") ➔P.882

Check if ink tank is set, and its color and direction.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no Ink Tank of the indicated color in the printer.	Load the Ink Tank. (See "**Replacing Ink Tanks.**") ➔P.882
There is a problem with the Ink Tank.	Replace it with a new Ink Tank. (See "**Replacing Ink Tanks.**") ➔P.882

The following ink tanks cannot be recognized.

Cause	Corrective Action
An Ink Tank that is incompatible with the printer is loaded.	Load an Ink Tank that is compatible with the printer. (See "**Replacing Ink Tanks.**") ➔P.882

Do not pull out ink tank.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank was removed using an incorrect procedure.	Install the Ink Tank that was removed. The buzzer stops sounding. Next, replace the Ink Tank using the procedure on the Display Screen in the Control Panel.

Messages regarding printing or adjustment

Cannot execute this command. Use other paper. 987
Cannot print as specified. 987

Cannot adjust printhead. 992

Cannot calibrate. 988
Excessive temperature or humidity. 988
Please execute common calibration. 988
Please commn calibrt using above paper. 988
Please calibrate using above paper. 989

Before borderless printing, move the blue platen switch. 989
Borderless printng not possible. 983

Blue platen switch is dirty. 989
Move the blue platen switch No.xx to the right. (xx represents a number) 989

Cannot adjust paper feed. 989
Check printed document. 990

Spectrophotometer Unit not connected. 990
Spectrophotometer Sensor not mounted. 990
Spectrophotometer Unit Calibration white tile error. 990
Spectrophotometer Unit eject guide not mounted. 990
Spectrophotometer Unit Backing plate error. 990
Spectrophotometer Sensor Cover open. 991
Spectrophotometer Unit cover open. 991
Spectrophotometer read error. 991
Clean calibration white tile because it may be dirty. 991

Cannot execute this command. Use other paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper compatible with color calibration is not loaded.	1. Press the **OK** button to clear the error. 2. Load paper that is compatible with color calibration. See the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.**") ➔P.496 Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper in the printer paper settings. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

Cannot print as specified.

"Replace paper with A4/LTR (vertical) or larger"

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small. (When you have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information.)	Replace the paper with paper of A4/Letter (vertical) size or larger as follows. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, press the **OK** button, and remove the paper. (See "**Removing Sheets.**") ➔P.540 2. Switch to paper A4/Letter (vertical) or larger. (See "**Loading and Printing on Sheets.**") ➔P.25 The printer will resume printing.

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small. (When you have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information.)	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.

"Replace with a 16-inch wide or wider roll paper."

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small. (When you have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information.)	Replace the roll with a roll 16 inches in width or larger as follows. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. (See "**Removing the Roll from the Printer**.") ➔P.510 (See "**Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder**.") ➔P.512 2. Replace the roll with a roll 16 inches wide or larger. (See "**Loading Rolls on the Roll Holder**.") ➔P.503 (See "**Loading Rolls in the Printer**.") ➔P.505 The printer will resume printing.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.

Cannot calibrate.

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper for printing a test pattern is soiled. Otherwise, you have loaded colored paper.	Press the **OK** button to clear the error. Load unused paper compatible with color calibration. See the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") ➔P.496
The test pattern was printed too faintly.	Press the **OK** button to clear the error. Take steps to remedy faint printing. (See "**Printing is faint**.") ➔P.954
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Press the **OK** button to clear the error. Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.

Excessive temperature or humidity.

Cause	Corrective Action
The temperature or humidity where the printer is installed is out of the acceptable range for operation.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop**, and then press the **OK** button to stop printing. Use the printer under suitable environmental conditions. Also note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions, see the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") ➔P.496

Please execute common calibration.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is not even one Common calibration execution result. Note that this is displayed when all of the following are satisfied. • If **Set Exec. Guide** is **On** in the Control Panel menu. • If the printer is loaded with a type of paper on which color calibration cannot be executed.	Execute Common calibration. (See "**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor**.") ➔P.793
	Set **Set Exec. Guide** to **Off** on the Control Panel menu. (See "**Menu Structure**.") ➔P.627

Please commn calibrt using above paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is now recommended that you execute Common calibration.	Execute Common calibration.

Cause	Corrective Action
Note that this is displayed when **Set Exec. Guide** in the Control Panel menu is set to **On** and any of the following is true. • If the printer is loaded with a type of paper on which color calibration cannot be executed and the predefined conditions since executing the Common calibration the last time have been reached. • Although a media type that color calibration can be executed on is loaded in the printer, there is no record or performing color calibration on that media, and the designated criteria from executing Common calibration the last time have been reached.	(See "**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor.**") ➔P.793 Set **Set Exec. Guide** to **Off** on the Control Panel menu. (See "**Menu Structure.**") ➔P.627

Please calibrate using above paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is now recommended that you execute Unique calibration. Note that this is displayed when **Set Exec. Guide** in the Control Panel menu is set to **On** and any of the following is true. • If the printer is loaded with a type of paper on which color calibration can be executed, but there is no record of having executed color calibration on that paper or a record of having executed Common calibration other any other type of paper. • If the printer is loaded with a type of paper on which color calibration can be executed, there is a record of having executed color calibration on that paper, and the predefined conditions since executing the color calibration the last time have been reached. • The Spectrophotometer Unit (optional) is installed. Although a media type that color calibration can be executed on using the Spectrophotometer Unit is loaded in the printer and the result of a color check on that media exceeded the threshold value, the color calibration has not been performed. (See "**Color Checks Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option).**") ➔P.802	Execute Unique calibration. (See "**Color Calibration Using the Printer Sensor.**") ➔P.793 (See "**Color Calibration Using the Spectrophotometer Unit (option).**") ➔P.799 Set **Set Exec. Guide** to **Off** on the Control Panel menu. (See "**Menu Structure.**") ➔P.627

Before borderless printing, move the blue platen switch.

Cause	Corrective Action
The blue Switch on the platen was set to the side opposite ● when a borderless print job was received.	Before borderless printing, set the blue Switch on the platen to the ● side. (See "**Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.**") ➔P.960

Blue platen switch is dirty.

Cause	Corrective Action
The blue Switch on the platen is dirty.	Open the Top Cover and clean the blue Switch on the platen. (See "**Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.**") ➔P.907

Move the blue platen switch No.xx to the right. (xx represents a number)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has detected that the blue Switch on the platen needed in maintenance during printing is set away from the ● mark.	Set blue platen Switch of the indicated number toward the ● side. (See "**Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.**") ➔P.960

Cannot adjust paper feed.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Execute **Adj. Quality** again, as follows. 1. Press the **OK** button to clear the error. 2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (See "**Checking for Nozzle Clogging.**") ➔P.890 3. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (See "**Cleaning the Printhead.**") ➔P.891

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	4. Execute **Adj. Quality** again. (See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment.**") →P.771
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for automatic feed amount adjustment.	Press the **OK** button to clear the error, and then adjust the feed amount manually. (See "**Manual Banding Adjustment.**") →P.772

Check printed document.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are becoming clogged.	If printing is faint, clean the Printhead. (See "**Cleaning the Printhead.**") →P.891

Spectrophotometer Unit not connected.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Spectrophotometer Unit is not installed correctly.	Turn off the power and reinstall the Spectrophotometer Unit.

Spectrophotometer Sensor not mounted.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Spectrophotometer Sensor to be loaded into the Spectrophotometer Carriage is not installed correctly.	Turn off the power, and reinstall by pushing the two connectors all the way into the Spectrophotometer Sensor. (See "**Replacing the Spectrophotometer Sensor of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option).**") →P.931

Spectrophotometer Unit Calibration white tile error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The White Calibration Tile is not installed.	Install the White Calibration Tile. (See "**Replacing the Spectrophotometer Sensor of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option).**") →P.931
The White Calibration Tile is dirty.	Remove, clean, and reinstall the White Calibration Tile. (See "**Cleaning the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Parts.**") →P.911
The performance of part of the Spectrophotometer Sensor may be impaired.	If this message is still displayed after cleaning the White Calibration Tile, we recommend adjusting the Spectrophotometer Sensor. Contact your Canon dealer for more information on adjustment services. (See "**Replacing the Spectrophotometer Sensor of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option).**") →P.931

Spectrophotometer Unit eject guide not mounted.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Spectrophotometer Eject Guide is installed incorrectly, such as being installed askew, or not pushed in all the way.	Make sure that the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide is loaded in the correct position, push it in all the way, and press the **OK** button.
There is a foreign object on the Spectrophotometer Eject Guide.	Remove the foreign object and press the **OK** button.
The performance of part of the Spectrophotometer Unit may be impaired.	Turn off the printer, wait a while, and then turn it on again. If the same message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Spectrophotometer Unit Backing plate error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The White/Black Backing Plate is not installed correctly.	Remove and correctly attach the White/Black Backing Plate, and then press the **OK** button. (See "**Switching the White/Black Backing Plate (Optional) Color.**") →P.804
The White/Black Backing Plate is soiled.	Clean the White/Black Backing Plate and then press the **OK** button. (See "**Cleaning the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Parts.**") →P.911

Spectrophotometer Sensor Cover open.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Spectrophotometer Sensor Cover of the Spectrophotometer Unit is open.	Close the Spectrophotometer Sensor Cover and press the **OK** button.

Spectrophotometer Unit cover open.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Spectrophotometer Unit Cover of the Spectrophotometer Unit is open.	Close the Spectrophotometer Unit Cover and press the **OK** button.

Spectrophotometer read error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Spectrophotometer Sensor to be loaded into the Spectrophotometer Carriage is not installed correctly.	Turn off the power, and reinstall by pushing the two connectors all the way into the Spectrophotometer Sensor. (See "**Replacing the Spectrophotometer Sensor of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") ➔P.931
The color measurement pattern was not printed correctly.	Check the color measurement pattern. If the printing is faint, clean the printhead and perform the operation again. (See "**Cleaning the Printhead**.") ➔P.891
The color measurement pattern is out of alignment.	Pulling or lifting a printed color measurement pattern may cause the pattern to come out of alignment. Perform the operation again taking care not to touch the color measurement pattern.
	Execute **Feed Priority** to improve the printing position of the pattern for color measurement. (See "**Automatic Banding Adjustment**.") ➔P.771
	If the same message is displayed again after performing the above operation, set **Pattern Size** to **Large** on the Control Panel menu and perform the operation again. (See "**Menu Structure**.") ➔P.627 Alternately, it may be resolved by selecting **Air Drying** in **Drying Method** in the **Color Measurement Preferences** dialog box in the **Color Calibration Management Console** and selecting the **Dry Separated Chart** check box if it is off. (See "**Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart (Windows)**.") ➔P.831 (See "**Acquiring Color Measurement Data For Any Color Chart (Mac OS)**.") ➔P.866
The performance of part of the Spectrophotometer Unit may be impaired.	Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then perform the operation again. If the same message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Clean calibration white tile because it may be dirty.

Cause	Corrective Action
The White Calibration Tile may be dirty.	Remove, clean, and reinstall the White Calibration Tile. (See "**Cleaning the Spectrophotometer Unit (option) Parts**.") ➔P.911 If this message is still displayed after cleaning the White Calibration Tile, we recommend adjusting the Spectrophotometer Sensor. Contact your Canon dealer for more information on adjustment services. (See "**Replacing the Spectrophotometer Sensor of the Spectrophotometer Unit (option)**.") ➔P.931

Messages regarding printheads

Cannot adjust printhead. 992

PHeads: wrong pos. 992
Wrong x printhead. (x is L, R, or not displayed) 992
x printhead error (x is L, R, or not displayed) 992
Cannot recognize print head x. (x is L, R, or not displayed) 993
Execute printhead cleaning. 993

Cannot adjust printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Execute **Head Posi. Adj.** again, as follows. 1. Press the **OK** button to clear the error. 2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (See "**Checking for Nozzle Clogging.**") →P.890 3. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (See "**Cleaning the Printhead.**") →P.891 4. Execute **Head Posi. Adj.** again. (See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.**") →P.764
The Printhead cannot be aligned; highly transparent film is loaded.	Press the **OK** button to clear the error. We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (See "**Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.**") →P.764

PHeads: wrong pos.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printheads are installed in the wrong positions.	Open the Top Cover and switch the Printhead used once in the right side to the right side. Switch the Printhead used once in the left side to the left side.

Wrong x printhead. (x is L, R, or not displayed)

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible Printhead has been installed.	Open the Top Cover. Replace the Printhead L with a new one if Printhead L is displayed and the Printhead R if Printhead R is displayed. If neither left or right is indicated, replace both Printhead L and Printhead R with new ones. (See "**Replacing the Printhead.**") →P.892

x printhead error (x is L, R, or not displayed)

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the Printhead.	Follow these steps to replace the Printhead. 1. Open the Top Cover. 2. Replace the Printhead L with a new one if Printhead L is displayed and the Printhead R if Printhead R is displayed. If neither left or right is indicated, replace both Printhead L and Printhead R with new ones. (See "**Replacing the Printhead.**") →P.892
	Follow these steps to replace the Printhead. 1. Turn off the printer, wait a while, and then turn it on again. 2. Open the Top Cover.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the Printhead.	3. Replace the Printhead L with a new one if Printhead L is displayed and the Printhead R if Printhead R is displayed. If neither left or right is indicated, replace both Printhead L and Printhead R with new ones. (See "**Replacing the Printhead**.") ➔P.892

Cannot recognize print head x. (x is L, R, or not displayed)

Cause	Corrective Action
No Printhead is installed.	Follow these steps to install the Printhead. 1. Open the Top Cover. 2. Install the Printhead L if Printhead L is displayed and the Printhead R if Printhead R is displayed. If neither left or right is indicated, install both Printhead L and Printhead R. (See "**Replacing the Printhead**.") ➔P.892
The Printhead cannot be recognized because it is not installed correctly.	Follow these steps to reinstall the Printhead. 1. Open the Top Cover. 2. Reinstall the Printhead L if Printhead L is displayed and the Printhead R if Printhead R is displayed. If neither left nor right is indicated, re-install both Printhead L and Printhead R. (See "**Replacing the Printhead**.") ➔P.892

Execute printhead cleaning.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow these steps to clean the Printhead. 1. Stop printing by pressing ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**. 2. Clean the Printhead. (See "**Cleaning the Printhead**.") ➔P.891 If the message is still displayed when printing, replace the Printhead. (See "**Replacing the Printhead**.") ➔P.892
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may affect the printing quality.

Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge

No maintenance cartridge. 994
Wrong maintenance cartridge. 994

Maint. cart. The level is low 994
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. 994
Maintenance cartridge full. 994
Maintenance cartridge problem. 994

No maintenance cartridge.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is not installed.	Install the Maintenance Cartridge. (See "**Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.**") →P.899

Wrong maintenance cartridge.

Cause	Corrective Action
A Maintenance Cartridge for a different model of printer is installed.	Replace it with the Maintenance Cartridge for your particular model. (See "**Maintenance Cartridge.**") →P.899

Maint. cart. The level is low

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is almost full.	You can continue to print, but prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge to use when the message for replacement is displayed.

No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge cannot absorb enough ink for Printhead cleaning or other operation.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (See "**Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.**") →P.899

Maintenance cartridge full.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is full.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (See "**Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.**") →P.899

Maintenance cartridge problem.

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible or used Maintenance Cartridge has been installed.	Install an unused Maintenance Cartridge specified for use with the printer. (See "**Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.**") →P.899

Messages regarding the hard disk

Hard disk error. 995
File read error. 995

The mail box is full. 995
Mail box full. Now printing without saving data. 995
Mail box nearly full. 995

Maximum jobs stored. 995
Mail box full. Delete unwanted data 996

Hard disk error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The format of the printer's hard disk is invalid.	Press the **OK** button to start reformatting the hard disk. When formatting is finished, data on the printer hard disk is erased and the printer automatically restarts.

File read error.

Cause	Corrective Action
Files on the printer's hard disk have become corrupted.	Restart the printer. Only the corrupted files will be deleted, and the printer will restart.

The mail box is full.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no more space on the printer's hard disk.	Press the **Stop** button and stop printing.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (See "**Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs)**.") →P.724
	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "**Deleting Saved Jobs**.") →P.732

Mail box full. Now printing without saving data.

Cause	Corrective Action
No more space is available on the printer's hard disk, so jobs are now printed without saving them. (Print jobs can no longer be saved on the hard disk.)	After printing, this message is cleared.
	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "**Deleting Saved Jobs**.") →P.732

Mail box nearly full.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is now less than 1 GB available for personal boxes on the printer hard disk.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in Personal Boxes. (See "**Deleting Saved Jobs**.") →P.732

Maximum jobs stored.

Cause	Corrective Action
100 jobs are stored in the personal box.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "**Deleting Saved Jobs**.") →P.732

Mail box full. Delete unwanted data

Cause	Corrective Action
100 jobs are stored in the Personal Box.	Press the **Stop** button and stop printing.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (See "**Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).**") ➔P.724
	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "**Deleting Saved Jobs.**") ➔P.732

Other Messages

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 997
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 997
Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 997

Prepare for parts replacement. 998
Parts replacement time has passed. 998

Unknown file. 998
Calibration There is a problem with the multi-sensor. 998
Multi-sensor error 998

Roll feed unit error. 980
No Roll Unit. 980

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the print job.	Try printing again, using the correct printer driver.
	It is also possible to continue printing in this state. However, you may not be able to obtain the desired printing results.

ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

Cause	Corrective Action
An error requiring service may have occurred. !ERROR Exxx-xxxx Call for service. OK: Printer Info.	Write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

Cause	Corrective Action
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job. The paper was not advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll.	Turn off the printer and remove the roll from the printer before restoring power.
Fastening tape or the Belt Stopper has not been removed inside the Top Cover.	Turn off the printer, open the Top Cover and remove the tape or the Belt Stopper before restoring power.
An error requiring service may have occurred. !Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again. OK: Printer Info.	Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is displayed again, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Prepare for parts replacement.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is almost time to replace consumables for which service is required.	If "**Parts replacement time has passed.**" is displayed, you can continue to use the printer for some time. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Parts replacement time has passed.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is past the recommended time to replace consumables for which service is required.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Unknown file.

Cause	Corrective Action
Data sent to keep the printer up to date (such as paper information) is in the wrong format.	Check the data. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then resend the data.
You have uploaded firmware for a different model.	Check the firmware version. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then resend the firmware.
	If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Calibration There is a problem with the multi-sensor.

Cause	Corrective Action
The performance of a sensor inside the printer may be impaired.	Press the **OK** button and cancel calibration. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Multi-sensor error

Cause	Corrective Action
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting. Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power.
The performance of a sensor inside the printer may be impaired.	Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973

Specifications

Printer Specifications 1000
Spectrophotometer Unit Specifications 1004

Appendix 1005

User's Guide

Printer Specifications

Specifications 1000
Print Area 1002

Specifications

Important

- The following values may vary depending on the operating environment.

Printer

Power supply		100–240 V AC (50/60 Hz)	
Power consumption	During operation	100 W max.	
	Sleep mode	5 W max.	
	Off	0.5 W max. (*1)	
Operating noise (*2)	Sound pressure level	During operation	Approx. 47 dB (A)
		Standby	35 dB (A) max.
	Audio power level (during operation)		Approx. 6.4 bels
Operating environment	Temperature	15–30°C (59–86°F)	
	Humidity	10–80%, non-condensing	
Dimensions (W × D × H)	Printer only	1,227×702×344 mm (48.3×27.6×13.5 in)	
	Printer and Stand (When the Output Stacker is not used)	1,227×751×1,001 mm (48.3×29.6×39.4 in)	
	Printer and Stand (When the Output Stacker is used)	1227×870×1001 mm (48.3×34.3×39.4 in)	
	Main unit, Stand, and Spectrophotometer Unit (When the Output Stacker is not used)	1,227×875×1,001 mm (48.3×34.4×39.4 in)	
	Main unit, Stand, and Spectrophotometer Unit (When the Output Stacker is used)	1227×970×1001 mm (48.3×38.2×39.4 in)	
Weight (Not including printheads or ink tanks)	Printer only	Approx. 54 kg (119.0 lb)	
	Printer and Stand	Approx. 70 kg (154.3 lb)	
	Printer, Stand and Spectrophotometer Unit	Approx. 91 kg (200.2 lb)	
Space for installation (W × D × H)(*3)	Printer only	1,527×1,802×644 mm (60.1×70.9×25.4 in)	
	Printer and Stand	1527×1970×1301 mm (60.1×77.6×51.2 in)	
	Printer, Stand and Spectrophotometer Unit	1527×2070×1301 mm (60.1×81.5×51.2 in)	
Related standards	International Energy Star Program, Law on Promoting Green Purchasing/GPN (Japan), Eco Mark (Japan), RoHS		

*1: The printer uses a trace amount of power even when turned off. To stop all power consumption, turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.

*2: Calculation based on ISO 7779. Operating conditions: On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, **Media Type** > **Canon Coated Paper**, **Advanced Settings** > **Print Priority** > **Image**, and **Print Quality** > **Standard**.

*3: Normally, you will need to ensure an unobstructed space of 800 mm (31.5 in) in front of the printer, 300 mm (11.8 in) behind, 150 mm (5.9 in) on both sides, and 300 mm (11.8 in) above the printer. Only when printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot, leave 1,300 mm (51.2 in) of unobstructed space in front of the printer and 700 mm (27.6 in) behind it.

Printing performance

Print method	Bubblejet
Maximum resolution	2400 dpi horizontally (*1) × 1200 dpi vertically
Printhead	PF-05 ×2
Number of nozzles	C,PC,PM,GY : 2560 nozzles X 2 BK,MBK,M,Y: 2560 nozzles X 1

*1: Prints with a minimum 1/2400 inch dot pitch between ink droplets.

Memory and hard disk

Memory	256 MB	
Hard disk capacity	250 GB	
	Personal mail boxes (Permanent storage area)	140 GB
Print job storage capacity	Common Box	100 jobs
	Personal Boxes	100 jobs

Interface

Hi-Speed USB	Format	Internal port
	Mode	Full-speed (12 Mbps), high-speed (480 Mbps), bulk transfer
	Connector	Series B (4-pin)
Gigabit Ethernet	Format	Internal port
	Specification	IEEE 802.3 10Base-T, IEEE 802.3u 100Base-TX/Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3ab 1000Base-T/Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3x Full Duplex
	Protocols	IPX/SPX (Netware 4.2, 5.1, 6.0), SNMP (Canon-MIB compatible), HTTP, TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6), AppleTalk

Ink

For information on the ink the printer supports, see "**Ink Tanks**." →P.882

Paper

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") →P.496

Paper width	For information on the paper widths the printer supports, see "**Paper Sizes**." →P.492		
Minimum paper length	Rolls		203.2 mm (8.0 in)
	Sheets	Top Paper Feed Slot	279.4 mm (11.0 in)
		Front Paper Feed Slot (When the Spectrophotometer Unit is not mounted)	350 mm (13.8 in)
		Front Paper Feed Slot (When the Spectrophotometer Unit is mounted)	420 mm (16.5 in)

Maximum printable length (*1)	Rolls		18 m (19.7 yd)
	Sheets	Top Paper Feed Slot	1,600 mm (63.0 in)
		Front Paper Feed Slot	914 mm (36.0 in)
Thickness	Rolls		0.07–0.8 mm (0.0028–0.031 in)
	Sheets	Top Paper Feed Slot	0.07–0.8 mm (0.0028–0.031 in)
		Front Paper Feed Slot	0.5–1.5 mm (0.020–0.059 in)
Roll maximum outer diameter			150 mm (6 in) or shorter
Supported paper core inner diameter			2 inches / 3 inches
Print area	For details, see "**Print Area**." ➔P.1002		

*1: Varies depending on the operating system or application.

Print Area

A margin required by the printer is added with respect to the size of paper loaded in the printer. Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to the paper size minus the space for this margin.

		Printable Area			Recommended Print Area		
		Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides
Sheets	Top Paper Feed Slot	3 mm (0.12 in)	3 or 23 mm (0.12 or 0.91 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)
	Front Paper Feed Slot	3 mm (0.12 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)			
Rolls		0 or 3 mm (0 or 0.12 in)	0 or 3 mm (0 or 0.12 in)	0 or 3 mm (0 or 0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)

Sheets

- **Printable Area**

  Printing from the Top Paper Feed Slot requires a margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on top, 3 mm (0.12 in) or 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 3 mm (0.12 in) on the left and right sides. Some types of paper require a bottom margin of 23 mm (0.91 in). For more information, see the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Types of Paper**.") ➔P.492

  Printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot requires a margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 3 mm (0.12 in) on the left and right sides.

- **Recommended Print Area**

  A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

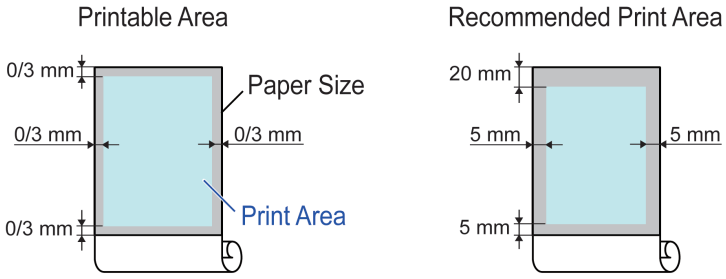
Important

- Choosing a bottom margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) may distort images by the bottom edge. In this case, select **Paper Source** > **Manual** and specify a bottom margin of 23 mm (0.91 in).

Note

- Printable area: The area that can be printed.
- Guaranteed Print Area: We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (See "**Printing on Oversize Paper**.") ➔P.77
- When printing from the Top Paper Feed Slot, you can choose a bottom margin of either 3 mm (0.12 in) or 23 mm (0.91 in).
  Specifying **Paper Source** > **Manual** in the printer driver leaves a bottom margin of 23 mm (0.91 in). On the other hand, choosing **Manual (3mm margins)** in **Paper Source** sets the bottom margin at 3 mm (0.12 in), which provides a larger area for printing.
  However, **Manual (3mm margins)** is not available with the following paper.
  - **Fine Art Photo**
  - **Fine Art Heavyweight Photo**
  - **Fine Art Textured**
- Types of paper are subject to change.
  For details on types of paper, see the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Types of Paper**.") ➔P.492

Rolls



- Printable Area

  A margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on all sides is required. During borderless printing, the margin on all sides is 0 mm. For information on paper compatible with borderless printing, see the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Types of Paper**.") ➔P.492

- Recommended Print Area

  A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 5 mm (0.20 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Note

- Printable area: The area that can be printed.
- Guaranteed Print Area: We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (See "**Printing on Oversize Paper**.") ➔P.77

Spectrophotometer Unit Specifications

Specifications

Important

- The following values may vary depending on the operating environment.

Spectrophotometer Sensor

Model name	X-Rite ILS25
Measurement geometry conditions	0°/45° ANSI/ISO 5-4
Illumination	Tungsten lamp with UV cut filter + UV-LED
Measurement aperture	Diameter 3.55 mm
Spectral Output	31 points (400nm to 700nm 10nm gap)
Observer Angle	2°/10°
Illumination Type	A, C, D50, D55, D65, D75, F2, F7, F8, F10, F11, F12
Measurement Range	0 to 150% reflection
Repetition Accuracy	Maximum dEcmc≦0.2 (White tile)
	Maximum dEcmc≦0.6 (Black tile)
Instrument Error	Average dEcmc≦0.5 (BCRA tile 12 color)
	Max dEcmc ≤ 1.0 (12-color BCRA tiles)
Recommended calibration frequency	Once per year

Basic Printing Workflow 19
Enhanced Printing Options 35
Windows Software 157
Mac OS Software 343
Handling and Use of Paper 491
Control Panel 611
Printer Parts 649
Network Setting 667
Print Job Management 699
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 761
Color Management 779
Maintenance and Consumables 881
Troubleshooting 939
Error Message 973
Specifications 999

Appendix

⚠Safety Precautions 1006
Manuals for this printer 1010
Disposal of the product 1012

User's Guide

Safety Precautions

Safety Precautions 1006
Legal Notices 1008

Safety Precautions

Follow the warnings and precautions below to use the printer safely. Do not perform any operations or procedures other than as described in this manual. Doing so may result in unexpected accidents and can cause a fire or electrical shocks.

Printer location

Warning

- Do not set up the printer in any location exposed to alcohol, thinner, or other volatile liquids. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

Caution

- Never install the printer on an unstable or vibrating surface. If it falls over, this could cause personal injury.
- Never set up the printer in a location that is exposed to high humidity or large amounts of dust, or exposed to direct sunlight, high temperature, or open flame. This could cause a fire or electrical shock. Use the printer location in an environment where temperature and humidity are within the ranges of 15 °C to 30 °C (59 °F to 86 °F) and 10 to 80% RH (with no condensation).
- Never place the printer on a heavy wool or shag carpet. The fibers may enter the printer and cause a fire.
- Keep the area around the power outlet clear of items so that you can disconnect the power cable immediately if the printer starts operating abnormally. In the event of a printer malfunction, remove the power cable from the outlet as soon as possible to prevent fire and electrical shocks.
- Do not install the printer near sources of strong electromagnetic fields, whether equipment that generates such fields or places where such fields occur. This could damage the printer or cause malfunction.

Power Supply

Warning

- Never handle the power cable with wet hands. Doing so may cause electrical shock.
- Insert the power cable securely and completely into the power source. If the power cable is not inserted completely, this could cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use any power cable other than the one provided. This could cause a fire or electrical shock. Never use the power cable with any other electrical device.
- Never cut the power cable or attempt to modify it, and never stretch it or bend it forcefully. Never place a heavy object on the power cable. Damaged sections of the power cable could cause a short circuit and may cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Never connect the power cable to a power strip or any power source shared by other electrical devices. This could cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Never knot the power cable or wrap it around itself. This could cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Periodically disconnect the power cable and use a dry cloth to wipe away dust that has collected on the plug and the area around the power outlet. Leaving the power cable plugged in and not cleaned for a long period, especially in an area subject to dust, oil, and humidity, could cause the insulation material to deteriorate and lead to a fire.

Caution

- Always grip the plug to remove the power cable from the power outlet. Pulling on the power cable could damage the cable and lead to a fire or electrical shock.
- Never use an extension cord. This could cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Never use any power source other than 100–120 / 220–240 V AC. This could cause a fire or electrical shock. The printer operating conditions are described below. Use the printer under the following conditions.
  Power supply voltage: 100–120 / 220–240 V AC
  Power supply frequency: 50/60 Hz

In an Emergency

Warning

- If the printer emits smoke or strange odors, continuing to use the printer may cause a fire or electrical shock. Switch the printer off immediately and remove the power plug from the power outlet. Contact your Canon dealer or support center.

Cleaning the Printer

Warning

- For cleaning, use a cloth dampened in water. Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

Caution

- Always disconnect the power cable from the outlet before cleaning the printer. If the printer is switched on accidentally, moving parts inside the printer may cause personal injuries.

Pacemakers

Warning

- This printer generates a low-level magnetic field. Anyone wearing a pacemaker who experiences discomfort while working around the printer should leave the area. Consult a physician before continuing to work around the printer.

Moving the Printer

Caution

- Moving the printer requires at least three people, holding it on both sides and from behind. Be careful to avoid back strain and other injuries.
- When moving the printer, firmly grasp the Carrying Handles under each side and in back. The printer may be unsteady if you hold it at other positions, which poses a risk of injury from dropping the printer.

Printhead, Ink Tanks, and Maintenance Cartridge

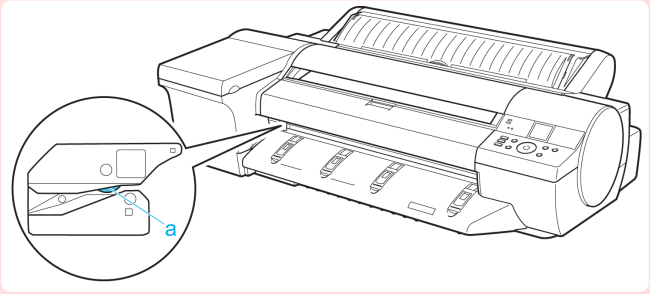
Caution

- Always store consumables in a safe location out of the reach of small children. If a child licks or ingests ink accidentally, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If ink accidentally gets in your eyes, immediately rinse with water.
  If ink gets on your skin, immediately clean it off with soap and water.
  If irritation persists in your eyes or on your skin, contact a physician immediately.
- Avoid dropping or shaking printheads, ink tanks, and maintenance cartridges. Spilled ink can stain clothing and the work area.
- Never touch the electrical contacts of the Printhead after printing. The contacts become extremely hot and can cause minor burns.

Other

Warning

- Never disassemble the printer or attempt repairs. There are high voltage parts inside the printer that can cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Never use flammable sprays around the printer. The gas of flammable sprays can cause a fire or electrical shock, if it contacts high voltage points inside the printer.
- Never touch the cutting edge of Cutter Unit (a). This could cause personal injury.



Caution

- Never insert your hand into the printer while it is printing. Moving parts inside the printer can cause injuries.
- Never place anything on the printer such as small metal objects (paper clips, staples), liquids, any type of liquid container that contains flammable liquids (alcohol, benzene, etc.). If such objects fall into the printer, this could cause a fire or electrical shock.
- To prevent a fire hazard or dangerous electric shock, if a foreign object falls into or a liquid spills into the printer, press the Power button immediately to switch the printer off, unplug the printer power cable from the outlet, and then contact your Canon dealer or support center. If you continue to use the printer, this could cause a fire or electrical shock.

Important

- Connect the interface cable correctly. To avoid damage, before connection make sure that the shape of the cable connector matches the connection point on the printer.
- During printing, turn on the ventilation system in the room.
- We recommend ensuring ample space for installation.

Legal Notices

FCC Regulations (U.S.A)

Canon Large Format Printer	iPF6400S

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.
This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Use of shielded cable is required to comply with Class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of FCC Rules.
Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in the manual.
If such changes or modifications should be made, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment.
Canon U.S.A. Inc.
One Canon Park Melville, NY 11747 , U.S.A.
Tel No. 1-800-652-2666

For CA, USA Only

Included battery contains Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply.
See http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/ for detail.

Trademarks

- Canon, the Canon logo, and imagePROGRAF are trademarks or registered trademarks of CANON INC.
- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.
- Windows is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Mac, Mac OS, Bonjour and OS X are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Adobe, Photoshop and Adobe RGB are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Other company and product names in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Copyright

- Unauthorized reproduction of this user manual in whole or part is prohibited.

Legal Notice

- It is illegal to reproduce currency, bills, negotiable securities and other documents prohibited by law. Reproduction of such items may be subject to criminal prosecution.
- It is illegal to reproduce legal certificates, licenses, travel tickets, and certain public and private documents prohibited from reproduction by law. Reproduction of such items may be subject to criminal prosecution.
- Please note that intellectual property protected by copyright may not be reproduced without the express permission of the copyright holder except for personal or household use under limited circumstances.

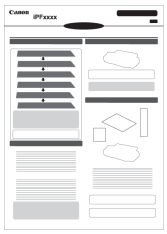
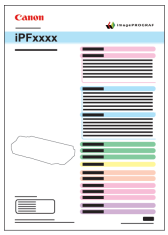
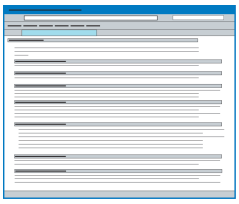
Manuals for this printer

Manuals for this printer 1010
About This User Manual 1010

Manuals for this printer

This printer has the following manuals.

Name	Contents	Medium
Setup Guide	Instructions for unpacking and setting up the printer, and for installing the software and electronic manuals.	Printed Manuals
Basic Guide	Descriptions of basic printer operations.	
User's Guide	Detailed instructions for using the printer.	Electronic manuals
Paper Reference Guide	This guide describes about the types and specifications of the available media on the printer.	

Setup Guide	Basic Guide	User's Guide	**Paper Reference Guide**
			

Note

- The Electronic manuals are not included with this product.
  To view the Electronic manuals, display the various manuals on the website from the links in the software installed on your computer.
  For this, the computer needs to be connected to the Internet.

About This User Manual

- Symbols

The following symbols are used in this user manual to indicate safety information and explanations on restrictions or precautions in use.

	Warning	Indicates warning items for which operating error poses a risk of death or serious injury. To ensure safe use, always follow these warnings.
	Caution	Indicates caution items for which operating error poses a risk of injury. To ensure safe use, always follow these cautions.
	Important	Indicates important information and restrictions that definitely are to be followed during operation. Be sure to read this information to prevent troubles, malfunctions, or damage to equipment or property by operating errors.
	Note	Indicates helpful reference information and supplemental information on particular topics.

- Button names and user interface elements

Key and button names on the control panel and user interface elements in software (such as menus and buttons) are indicated as follows in this user manual.

Control panel buttons	Example: Press the **OK** button.

Control panel messages	Example: **Head Cleaning** is displayed.
Software interface items (menus and buttons)	Example: Click **OK**.
Keyboard keys	Example: Press the Tab key.

- Cross-reference

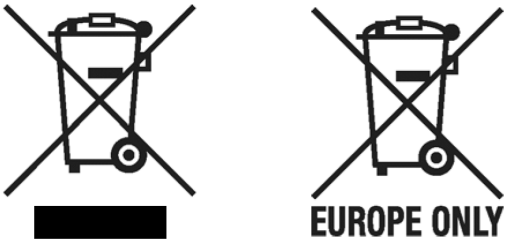
Other pages or manuals that provide related information are indicated as follows in this user manual.

Cross-reference in the same user manual	Example: see "**Menu Structure**." ➔P.627 Click the link to jump to the corresponding page.
Cross-reference in related manuals	Example: Refer to the Paper Reference Guide.
Other cross-reference	Example: See the printer driver help.

- Figures and software screens
  - Figures in this user manual may be different from the actual appearance of the printer in some cases.
  - Screens depicted in this user manual for the printer driver or other software may be different from the actual screens because of subsequent updates.
- May we request
  - The information in this user manual is subject to change without notice.
  - We strive to ensure accuracy of information in this user manual, but if you notice errors or omissions, contact support center.

Disposal of the product

WEEE Directive



European Union (and EEA) only.

These symbols indicate that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2002/96/EC), the Battery Directive (2006/66/EC) and/or your national laws implementing those Directives. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE) and batteries and accumulators. Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. Your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about the recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved scheme or your household waste disposal service or visit www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA: Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)

Uitsluitend bestemd voor de Europese Unie (en EER).

Met deze symbolen wordt aangegeven dat dit product in overeenstemming met de AEEA-richtlijn (2002/96/EC), de richtlijn 2006/66/EC betreffende batterijen en accu's en/of de plaatselijk geldende wetgeving waarin deze richtlijnen zijn geïmplementeerd, niet bij het normale huisvuil mag worden weggegooid. Dit product dient te worden ingeleverd bij een hiervoor aangewezen inzamelpunt, bijv. door dit in te leveren bij een hiertoe erkend verkooppunt bij aankoop van een gelijksoortig product, of bij een officiële inzameldienst voor de recycling van elektrische en elektronische apparatuur (EEA) en batterijen en accu's. Door de potentiële gevaarlijke stoffen die gewoonlijk gepaard gaan met EEA, kan onjuiste verwerking van dit type afval mogelijk nadelige gevolgen hebben voor het milieu en de menselijke gezondheid. Uw medewerking bij het op juiste wijze weggooien van dit product draagt bij tot effectief gebruik van natuurlijke bronnen. Voor verdere informatie over recycling van dit product kunt u contact opnemen met uw plaatselijke gemeente, afvaldienst, officiële dienst voor klein chemisch afval of afvalstortplaats, of kunt u terecht op www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EER: Noorwegen, IJsland en Liechtenstein)

Endast för EU (och EEA).

De här symbolerna anger att produkten inte får slängas i hushållssoporna enligt WEEE-direktivet (2002/96/EG), batteridirektivet (2006/66/EG) och/eller nationell lagstiftning som implementerar dessa direktiv. Produkten ska lämnas in på en där för anvisad insamlingsplats, t.ex. hos handlare som är auktoriserade att byta in varor då nya, liknande köps (en mot en) eller på en återvinningsstation auktoriserad att hantera elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning (EE-utrustning) samt batterier och ackumulatorer. Olämplig hantering av avfall av den här typen kan ha negativ inverkan på miljön och människors hälsa på grund av de potentiellt farliga ämnen som vanligen återfinns i elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning. Din medverkan till en korrekt avfallshantering av produkten bidrar till effektiv användning av naturresurserna. Om du vill ha mer information om var du kan lämna in den här produkten, kontakta ditt lokala kommunkontor, berörd myndighet eller företag för avfallshantering eller besök www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA: Norge, Island och Liechtenstein)

Pouze Evropská unie (a EHP)

Tento symbol znamená, že podle směrnice o OEEZ (2002/96/ES), směrnice o bateriích (2006/66/ES) a/nebo podle vnitrostátních právních prováděcích předpisů k těmto směrnicím nemá být tento výrobek likvidován s odpadem z domácností. Tento výrobek má být vrácen do určeného sběrného místa, např. v rámci autorizovaného systému odběru jednoho výrobku za jeden nově prodaný podobný výrobek, nebo do autorizovaného sběrného místa pro recyklaci odpadních elektrických a elektronických zařízení (OEEZ) a baterií a akumulátorů. Nevhodné nakládání s tímto druhem odpadu by mohlo mít negativní dopad na životní prostředí a lidské zdraví, protože elektrická a elektronická zařízení zpravidla obsahují potenciálně nebezpečné látky.Vaše spolupráce na správné likvidaci tohoto výrobku napomůže efektivnímu využívání přírodních zdrojů. Chcete-li získat podrobné informace týkající se recyklace tohoto výrobku, obraťte se prosím na místní úřad, orgán pro nakládání s odpady, schválený systém nakládání s odpady či společnost zajišťující likvidaci domovního odpadu nebo navštivte webové stránky www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EHP: Norsko, Island a Lichtenštejnsko)

Gjelder kun EU (og EØS).

Disse symbolene indikerer at dette produktet ikke skal kastes sammen med husholdningsavfall, i henhold til WEEE-direktivet (2002/96/EF), batteridirektivet (2006/66/EF) og/eller nasjonal lov som har implementert disse direktivene. Produktet må leveres til et dertil egnet innsamlingspunkt, det vil si på en autorisert en-til-en-basis når en kjøper et nytt lignende produkt, eller til et autorisert innsamlingssted for resirkulering av avfall fra elektrisk og elektronisk utstyr (EE-utstyr) og batterier og akkumulatorer. Feil håndtering av denne typen avfall kan være miljø- og helseskadelig på grunn av potensielt skadelige stoffer som ofte brukes i EE-utstyr. Din innsats for korrekt avhending av produktet vil bidra til effektiv bruk av naturressurser. Du kan få mer informasjon om resirkulering av dette produktet ved å kontakte lokale myndigheter, avfallsadministrasjonen, et godkjent program eller husholdningens renovasjonsselskap, eller gå til www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EØS: Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)

Len Európska únia (a EHP)

Tieto symboly označujú, že podľa smernice o odpade z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (OEEZ) 2002/96/ES, smernice o batériách (2006/66/ES) a/alebo podľa vnútroštátnych právnych predpisov zahŕňajúcich tieto smernice sa tento produkt nesmie likvidovať spolu s domácim odpadom. Tento produkt je potrebné odovzdať do určenej zberne, napr. prostredníctvom výmeny za kúpu nového podobného produktu, alebo do autorizovaného zberného miesta na recykláciu odpadu z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (EEZ) a batérií a akumulátorov. Nesprávna manipulácia s takýmto typom odpadu môže mať negatívny vplyv na životné prostredie a ľudské zdravie, pretože elektrické a elektronické zariadenia obsahujú potenciálne nebezpečné látky. Vašou spoluprácou na správnej likvidácii tohto produktu prispejete k účinnému využívaniu prírodných zdrojov. Ďalšie informácie o recyklácii tohto produktu získate od svojho miestneho úradu, úradu zodpovedného za odpad, zo schváleného plánu o OEEZ alebo od spoločnosti zaisťujúcej likvidáciu domáceho odpadu alebo na webovej stránke www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EHP: Nórsko, Írsko a Lichtenštajnsko)

Solo per l'Unione Europea e lo Spazio Economico Europeo.

Questi simboli indicano che il prodotto non può essere smaltito con i rifiuti domestici, ai sensi della Direttiva RAEE (2002/96/CE), della Direttiva sulle Batterie (2006/66/CE) e/o delle leggi nazionali che attuano tali Direttive. Il prodotto deve essere conferito a punto di raccolta designato, ad esempio il rivenditore in caso di acquisto di un nuovo prodotto simile oppure un centro di raccolta autorizzato per il riciclaggio di rifiuti di apparecchiature elettriche ed elettroniche (RAEE) nonché di batterie e accumulatori. Un trattamento improprio di questo tipo di rifiuti può avere conseguenze negative sull'ambiente e sulla salute umana a causa delle sostanze potenzialmente nocive solitamente contenute in tali rifiuti. La collaborazione dell'utente per il corretto smaltimento di questo prodotto contribuirà a un utilizzo efficace delle risorse naturali ed eviterà di incorrere in sanzioni amministrative ai sensi dell'art. 50 e successivi del Decreto Legislativo n. 22/97.Per ulteriori informazioni sul riciclaggio di questo prodotto, contattare le autorità locali, l'ente responsabile della raccolta dei rifiuti, un rivenditore autorizzato o il servizio di raccolta dei rifiuti domestici, oppure visitare il sito www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Spazio Economico Europeo: Norvegia, Islanda e Liechtenstein)

Samo za Evropsko unijo (in Evropski gospodarski prostor).

TI simboli pomenijo, da tega izdelka skladno z Direktivo OEEO (2002/96/ES), Direktivo 2006/66/ES in/ali nacionalno zakonodajo, ki uvaja ti direktivi, ne smete odlagati z nesortiranimi gospodinjskimi odpadki. Ta izdelek je treba odnesti na izbrano zbirno mesto, t. j. pooblaščeno trgovino, kjer ob nakupu novega (podobnega) izdelka vrnete starega, ali na pooblaščeno zbirno mesto za ponovno uporabo odpadne električne in elektronske opreme (EEO) ter baterij in akumulatorjev. Neustrezno ravnanje s to vrsto odpadkov lahko negativno vpliva na okolje in človeško zdravje zaradi potencialno nevarnih snovi, ki so pogosto povezane z EEO. Vaše sodelovanje pri pravilnem odlaganju tega izdelka predstavlja pomemben prispevek k smotrni izrabi naravnih virov. Za več informacij o ponovni uporabi tega izdelka se obrnite na lokalen mestni urad, pristojno službo za odpadke, predstavnika pooblaščenega programa za obdelavo odpadkov ali na lokalno komunalo. Lahko pa tudi obiščete našo spletno stran www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Evropski gospodarski prostor: Norveška, Islandija in Lihtenštajn)

Kizárólag az Európai Unió (valamint az EEA) részére.

Ezek a szimbólumok azt jelzik, hogy a termék hulladékkezelése a háztartási hulladéktól különválasztva, a WEEE - elektromos és elektronikus berendezések hulladékairól szóló (2002/96/EK) irányelvnek és, az elemekről és akkumulátorokról, valamint a hulladékelemekről és -akkumulátorokról szóló (2006/66/EK) irányelvnek megfelelően, és/vagy ezen irányelveknek megfelelő helyi előírások szerint történik. Ezen terméket az arra kijelölt gyűjtőhelyre kell juttatni, pl., hasonló termék vásárlásakor a régi becserélésére vonatkozó hivatalos program keretében, vagy az elektromos és elektronikus berendezések (EEE) hulladékainak gyűjtésére, valamint a hulladékelemek és hulladékakkumulátorok gyűjtésére kijelölt hivatalos gyűjtőhelyre. Az ilyen jellegű hulladékok nem előírásszerű kezelése az elektromos és elektronikus berendezésekhez (EEE) általánosan kapcsolható potenciálisan veszélyes anyagok révén hatással lehet a környezetre és az egészségre. Ezen termék megfelelő módon történő eltávolításával Ön is hozzájárul a természeti források hatékony használatához. A termék újrahasznosítását illetően informálódjon a helyi polgármesteri hivatalnál, a helyi közterület-fenntartó vállalatnál, a hivatalos hulladéklerakó telephelyen, vagy a háztartási hulladék begyűjtését végző szolgáltatónál, illetve látogasson el a www.canon-europe.com/environment internetes oldalra.

(EEA : Norvégia, Izland és Liechtenstein)

Apenas para a União Europeia (e AEE)

Estes símbolos indicam que este produto não deve ser eliminado juntamente com o seu lixo doméstico, segundo a Directiva REEE de 2002/96/CE, a Directiva de Baterias (2006/66/CE) e / ou a sua legislação nacional que transponha estas Directivas. Este produto deve ser entregue num ponto de recolha designado, por exemplo num local autorizado de troca quando compra um equipamento novo idêntico, ou num local de recolha autorizado para reciclar equipamento eléctrico e electrónico (EEE) em fim de vida, bem como pilhas e baterias. O tratamento inadequado deste tipo de resíduos pode ter um impacto negativo no ambiente e na saúde humana, devido a substâncias potencialmente perigosas que estão associadas com equipamentos do tipo EEE. A sua cooperação no tratamento correcto deste produto irá contribuir para a utilização mais eficaz dos recursos naturais. Para obter mais informações acerca de como reciclar este produto, por favor contacte as suas autoridades locais responsáveis pela matéria, serviço de recolha aprovado para pilhas e baterias ou serviço de recolha de resíduos sólidos domésticos da sua municipalidade, ou visite www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(AEE: Noruega, Islândia, e Liechtenstein)

Üksnes Euroopa Liit (ja Euroopa Majanduspiirkond).

Antud sümbolid viitavad sellele, et vastavalt WEEE direktiivile (2002/96/EÜ), patareide direktiivile (2006/66/EÜ) ja/või nimetatud direktiive rakendavatele riiklikele õigusaktidele ei või seda toodet visata ära koos majapidamisjäätmetega. Antud toode tuleb anda vastavasse kogumispunkti, nt üks ühe vastu, kui ostad uue sarnase toote, või vastavasse elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmete jäätmete ning patareide ja akude ümbertöötlemiseks mõeldud kogumispunkti. Antud liiki prügi vale käitlemine võib kahjustada keskkonda ja inimeste tervist elektri- ja elektroonikajäätmetes tavaliselt leiduvate potentsiaalselt ohtlike ainete tõttu. Antud toote ettenähtud nõuete kohase kõrvaldamisega aitate efektiivselt kasutada loodusvarasid. Täiendava teabe saamiseks antud toote ringlussevõtu kohta võtke ühendust kohaliku linnavalitsusega, jäätmekäitlejaga, lubatud skeemiga või majapidamisjäätmete prügilateenistusega või külastage Interneti-lehekülge www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Euroopa Majanduspiirkond: Norra, Island ja Liechtenstein)

Paredzēts tikai Eiropas Savienības valstīm (un EVA).

Šie simboli norāda, ka atbilstoši ES direktīvai par izlietotu elektrisku un elektronisku aparatūru (2002/96/EK), direktīvai par baterijām un akumulatoriem (2006/66/EK) un vietējai likumdošanai no šī produkta nedrīkst atbrīvoties, izmetot to kopā ar sadzīves atkritumiem. Šis produkts ir jānodod piemērotā savākšanas punktā, piemēram, autorizētā veikalā, kur iegādājaties līdzīgu jaunu produktu un veco atstājat vietā, vai autorizētā dienestā, kas nodarbojas ar izlietotas elektriskās un elektroniskās aparatūras (waste electrical and electronic equipment — WEEE) otrreizēju pārstrādi. Nepareizi apejoties ar šāda veida izlietotu aparatūru, var apdraudēt vidi un cilvēka veselību potenciāli bīstamu vielu dēļ, kas parasti ietilpst elektriskajā un elektroniskajā aparatūrā lietotajos sakausējumos. Turklāt pareiza atbrīvošanās no šī produkta sekmē racionālu dabas resursu izlietojumu. Lai saņemtu plašāku informāciju par vietām, kur izlietotu aparatūru var nodot otrreizējai pārstrādei, sazinieties ar vietējās pašvaldības pārstāvjiem, dienestu, kas atbild par atkritumu savākšanu, pilnvarotu WEEE struktūru vai iestādi, kas veic atbrīvošanos no sadzīves atkritumiem vai apmeklējiet tīmekļa vietni www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Eiropas Ekonomiskā zona: Norvēģija, Īslande un Lihtenšteina).

Tik Europos Sąjungai (ir Europos Ekonominei Zonai)

Šie simboliai reiškia, kad šio gaminio negalima išmesti į buitines atliekas, kaip reikalauja WEEE Direktyva (2002/96/EB) ir Baterijų Direktyva (2006/66/EB) ir (ar) jūsų šalies nacionaliniai įstatymai, kuriais šios Direktyvos yra įgyvendinamos. Šį gaminį reikia pristatyti į specialų surinkimo punktą, pavyzdžiui, mainais, kai jūs perkate naują panašų gaminį arba į specialią surinkimo vietą, kuri perdirba elektrinės ir elektroninės įrangos atliekas bei naudotas baterijas ir akumuliatorius. Dėl netinkamo šio tipo atliekų tvarkymo gali nukentėti aplinka bei iškyla grėsmė žmogaus sveikatai dėl potencialai kenksmingų medžiagų, iš esmės susijusių su elektrine ir elektronine įranga. Bendradarbiaudami teisingai utilizuojant šiuos gaminius, jūs padėsite efektyviai naudoti gamtinius išteklius. Daugiau informacijos apie gaminio perdirbimą jums gali suteikti vietinis biuras, atliekų tvarkymo bendrovė, sertifikuoti organai ar buitinių atliekų surinkimo įmonės. Be to, aplankykite interneto svetainę www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Europos Ekonominė Zona: Norvegija, Islandija ir Lichtenšteinas)

Union européenne (et Espace économique européen) uniquement.

Ces symboles indiquent que ce produit ne doit pas être mis au rebut avec les ordures ménagères, comme le spécifient la Directive européenne DEEE (2002/96/EC), la Directive européenne relative à l'élimination des piles et des accumulateurs usagés (2006/66/EC) et les lois en vigueur dans votre pays, appliquant ces directives. Ce produit doit être confié à un point de collecte désigné, par exemple, chaque fois que vous achetez un produit similaire neuf, ou à un point de collecte agréé pour le recyclage équipements électriques ou électroniques (EEE) et des piles et accumulateurs. Le traitement inapproprié de ce type de déchet risque d'avoir des répercussions sur l'environnement et la santé humaine, du fait de la présence de substances potentiellement dangereuses généralement associées aux équipements électriques ou électroniques. Votre coopération envers la mise au rebut correcte de ce produit contribuera à l'utilisation efficace des ressources naturelles. Pour de plus amples informations sur le recyclage de ce produit, veuillez contacter vos services municipaux, votre éco-organisme ou les autorités locales. Vous pouvez également vous rendre sur le site www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Espace économique européen : Norvège, Islande et Liechtenstein)

Tylko kraje Unii Europejskiej (i Europejskiego Obszaru Gospodarczego).

Te symbole oznaczają, że produkt należy wyrzucać oddzielnie od odpadów domowych, zgodnie z dyrektywą WEEE w sprawie zużytego sprzętu elektrycznego i elektronicznego (2002/96/EC) lub dyrektywą w sprawie baterii (2006/66/EC) i/lub przepisami krajowymi, wdrażającymi te dyrektywy. Zużyty sprzęt powinien zostać przekazany do punktu zbiórki sprzętu (EEE), a w przypadku zakupu nowego na zasadzie wymiany jeden do jednego przy zakupie podobnego co do rodzaju produktu. Użytkownicy baterii i akumulatorów mają obowiązek korzystać z dostępnego programu zwrotu, recyklingu i utylizacji baterii i akumulatorów. Niewłaściwe postępowanie z tego typu odpadami może mieć wpływ na środowisko i zdrowie ludzi ze względu na substancje potencjalnie niebezpieczne ogólnie związane ze zużytym sprzętem elektrycznym i elektronicznym. Państwa współpraca w zakresie właściwej utylizacji tego produktu przyczyni się do efektywnego wykorzystania zasobów naturalnych. W celu uzyskania informacji o sposobie recyklingu tego produktu prosimy o kontakt z właściwym urzędem miejskim lub zakładem gospodarki komunalnej lub zapraszamy na stronę www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Europejski Obszar Gospodarczy: Norwegia, Islandia i Liechtenstein)

Gælder kun i EU (og EØS).

Disse symboler betyder, at produktet ikke må bortskaffes sammen med husholdningsaffald i henhold til WEEE-direktivet (2002/96/EF), batteridirektivet (2006/66/EF) og/eller den lokale lovgivning, som disse direktiver er gennemført i. Produktet skal afleveres på et godkendt indsamlingssted, f.eks. i overensstemmelse med en godkendt én-for-én-procedure, når du indkøber et nyt tilsvarende produkt, eller på et godkendt indsamlingssted for genanvendeligt affald fra elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr samt for batterier og akkumulatorer. Forkert håndtering af denne type affald kan muligvis få negative konsekvenser for miljøet og menneskers helbred på grund af de potentielt sundhedsskadelige substanser, der generelt associeres med elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr. Når du foretager korrekt bortskaffelse af produktet, bidrager dette også til effektiv brug af naturressourcerne. Kontakt din kommune, den lokale affaldsmyndighed, forvalterne af en godkendt affaldsordning eller det lokale affaldsanlæg, eller besøg www.canon-europe.com/environment for at få flere oplysninger om genbrug af dette produkt.

(EØS: Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)

Ευρωπαϊκή Ένωση (και ΕΟΧ) μόνο.

Αυτά τα σύμβολα υποδεικνύουν ότι αυτό το προϊόν δεν πρέπει να απορρίπτεται μαζί με τα οικιακά απορρίμματα, σύμφωνα με την Οδηγία για τα Απόβλητα Ηλεκτρικού και Ηλεκτρονικού Εξοπλισμού (ΑΗΗΕ) (2002/96/ΕΚ), την Οδηγία για τις Ηλεκτρικές Στήλες (2006/66/ΕΚ) ή/και την εθνική νομοθεσία που εφαρμόζει τις Οδηγίες εκείνες. Αυτό το προϊόν πρέπει να παραδίδεται σε καθορισμένο σημείο συλλογής, π.χ. σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη βάση ανταλλαγής, όταν αγοράζετε ένα νέο παρόμοιο προϊόν ή σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη θέση συλλογής για την ανακύκλωση των αποβλήτων ηλεκτρικού και ηλεκτρονικού εξοπλισμού (ΗΗΕ) και ηλεκτρικών στηλών και συσσωρευτών. Ο ακατάλληλος χειρισμός αυτού του τύπου αποβλήτων θα μπορούσε να έχει πιθανό αρνητικό αντίκτυπο στο περιβάλλον και την υγεία του ανθρώπου, λόγω δυνητικώς επικίνδυνων ουσιών που γενικά συνδέονται με τον ΗΗΕ. Η συνεργασία σας για τη σωστή απόρριψη αυτού του προϊόντος θα συμβάλει στην αποτελεσματική χρήση των φυσικών πόρων. Για περισσότερες πληροφορίες σχετικά με ανακύκλωση αυτού του προϊόντος, επικοινωνήστε με το τοπικό γραφείο της πόλης σας, την υπηρεσία απορριμμάτων, το εγκεκριμένο σχήμα ή την υπηρεσία απόρριψης οικιακών αποβλήτων ή επισκεφθείτε τη διεύθυνση www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Ευρωπαϊκός Οικονομικός Χώρος: Νορβηγία, Ισλανδία και Λιχτενστάιν)

Sólo para la Unión Europea (y el Área Económica Europea).

Estos símbolos indican que este producto no debe desecharse con los residuos domésticos de acuerdo con la Directiva sobre RAEE (2002/96/CE) y la Directiva sobre Pilas y Acumuladores (2006/66/CE) y/o la legislación nacional que implemente dichas Directivas. Este producto deberá entregarse en un punto de recogida designado, por ejemplo, en un establecimiento autorizado al adquirir un producto nuevo similar o en un centro autorizado para la recogida de residuos de aparatos eléctricos y electrónicos (RAEE), baterías y acumuladores. La gestión incorrecta de este tipo de residuos puede afectar al medio ambiente y a la salud humana debido a las sustancias potencialmente nocivas que suelen contener estos aparatos. Su cooperación en la correcta eliminación de este producto contribuirá al correcto aprovechamiento de los recursos naturales. Los usuarios tienen derecho a devolver pilas, acumuladores o baterías usados sin coste alguno. El precio de venta de pilas, acumuladores y baterías incluye el coste de la gestión medioambiental de su desecho, y bajo ninguna circunstancia se indicará por separado la cuantía de dicho coste en la información y la factura suministradas a los usuarios finales. Si desea más información sobre el reciclado de este producto, póngase en contacto con el departamento municipal, el servicio o el organismo encargado de la gestión de residuos domésticos o visite www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Área Económica Europea: Noruega, Islandia y Liechtenstein)

Vain EU- ja EEA-alueelle.

Nämä tunnukset osoittavat, että sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromua koskeva direktiivi (WEEE-direktiivi, 2002/96/EY), paristoista ja akuista annettu direktiivi (2006/66/EY) sekä kansallinen lainsäädäntö kieltävät tuotteen hävittämisen talousjätteen mukana. Tuote on vietävä asianmukaiseen keräyspisteeseen, esimerkiksi kodinkoneliikkeeseen uutta vastaavaa tuotetta ostettaessa tai viralliseen sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun tai paristojen ja akkujen keräyspisteeseen. Sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun virheellinen käsittely voi vahingoittaa ympäristöä ja ihmisten terveyttä, koska laitteet saattavat sisältää ympäristölle ja terveydelle haitallisia aineita. Tuotteen asianmukainen hävittäminen säästää samalla luonnonvaroja. Jos haluat lisätietoja tämän tuotteen kierrätyksestä, ota yhteys kunnan jätehuoltoviranomaisiin tai käyttämääsi jätehuoltoyhtiöön tai käy osoitteessa www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA-maat: Norja, Islanti ja Liechtenstein)

Samo za Europsku uniju (i Europski gospodarski prostor).

Oznaka pokazuje da se baterije i akumulatori, korišteni u ovom proizvodu, odlažu odvojeno od kućnog otpada, u skladu s direktivom 2002/96/ EZ-a (“Direktiva”) i lokalnim zahtjevima koji primjenjuju te Direktive. Ovaj bi proizvod trebao biti prenesen do određene točke sakupljanja, npr. na neku dozvoljenu bazu u omjeru 1:1 kada kupite novi sličan proizvod, ili na ovlašteno mjesto za sakupljanje istrošene električne i elektronske opreme, (waste electrical and electronic equipment – EEE) baterija i akumulatora. Neodgovarajuće rukovanje ovim tipom otpada može utjecati na okoliš i ljudsko zdravlje zbog potencijalno opasnih supstanci koje se najčešće nalaze uz EEE. Vaša suradnja u pravilnom zbrinjavanju ovog proizvoda doprinijet će efikasnoj uporabi prirodnih resursa. Za više informacija o recikliranju ovog proizvoda, molimo vas da kontaktirate svoj lokalni gradski ured, lokalne vlasti, pogledate odobrenu shemu, kontaktirajte vašu komunalnu službu za uklanjanje radioaktivnog otpada ili posjetite www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Europski gospodarski prostor: Norveška, Island i Lihtenštajn)

Nur Europäische Union (und EWR)

Diese Symbole weisen darauf hin, dass dieses Produkt gemäß WEEE-Richtlinie 2002/96/EG (Richtlinie über Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräte), Batterien-Richtlinie (2006/66/EG) und/oder nationalen Gesetzen zur Umsetzung dieser Richtlinien nicht über den Hausmüll entsorgt werden darf. Dieses Produkt muss bei einer dafür vorgesehenen Sammelstelle abgegeben werden. Dies kann z. B. durch Rückgabe beim Kauf eines neuen ähnlichen Produkts oder durch Abgabe bei einer autorisierten Sammelstelle für die Wiederaufbereitung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten sowie Batterien und Akkumulatoren geschehen. Der unsachgemäße Umgang mit Altgeräten kann aufgrund potenziell gefährlicher Stoffe, die häufig in Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräte enthalten sind, negative Auswirkungen auf die Umwelt und die menschliche Gesundheit haben. Durch Ihre Mitarbeit bei der sachgemäßen Entsorgung dieses Produkts tragen Sie zu einer effektiven Nutzung natürlicher Ressourcen bei. Um weitere Informationen über die Wiederverwertung dieses Produkts zu erhalten, wenden Sie sich an Ihre Stadtverwaltung, den öffentlich-rechtlichen Entsorgungsträger, eine autorisierte Stelle für die Entsorgung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten oder Ihre Müllabfuhr oder besuchen Sie www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EWR: Norwegen, Island und Liechtenstein)

Только для Европейского Союза (Европейской экономической зоны).

Эти символы указывают, что данный продукт не должен утилизироваться вместе с хозяйственно-бытовыми отходами в соответствии с Директивой WEEE (2002/96/EC), Директивой об аккумуляторах 2006/66/EC и/или законами Вашей страны, осуществляющими данные Директивы. Данное изделие доолжно быть передано в предназначенный для этого пункт сбора, напрмер, на основе авторизованного обмена «один к одному», когда Вы покупаете подобное новое изделие, или в авторизованное место сбора отходов электрического и электронного оборудования, батарей и аккумуляторов для переработки. Неправильное обращение с отходами подобного типа может иметь влияние на окружающую среду и здоровье человека из-за потенциально опасных для здоровья веществ, которые, как правило, тесно связаны с электрическим и электронным оборудованием. Ваше сотрудничество в области правильной утилизации данного изделия вносит вклад в рациональное использование природных ресурсов. Чтобы узнать больше информации о переработке отходов батарей и аккумуляторов, пожалуйста, обратитесь в местную городскую администрацию, орган по работе с отходами или предприятие по утилизации отходов, или зайдите на www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Европейская экономическая зона: Норвегия, Исландия и Лихтенштейн)

Només per a la Unió Europea (i EEA)

Aquests símbols indican que aquest producte no s'ha de llençar amb les escombraries de la llar, d'acord amb la RAEE (2002/96/EC), la Directiva relativa a piles i acumuladors (2006/66/EC) i la legislació nacional que implementi aquestes directives. Aquest producte s'hauria de lliurar en un dels punts de recollida designats, com per exemple, intercanviant un per un en comprar un producte similar o lliurant-lo en un lloc de recollida autoritzat per al reciclatge de residus d'aparells elèctrics i electrònics (EEE) i piles i acumuladors. La manipulació inadequada d'aquest tipus de residus podria tenir un impacte negatiu en l'entorn i en la salut humana, a causa de les substàncies potencialment perilloses que normalment estan associades a l'EEE. La vostra cooperació a l'hora de rebutjar correctament aquest producte contribuirà a la utilització efectiva dels recursos naturals. Els usuaris tenen dret a retornar les bateries o els acumuladors usats sense cap càrrec. El preu de venda de les bateries i els acumuladors inclou el cost de la gestió ambiental dels residus i, sota cap circumstància, l'import d'aquest cost s'especificarà per separat en aquest fullet o en la factura que es lliuri a l'usuari final. Per a més informació sobre el reciclatge d'aquest producte, contacteu amb l'oficina municipal, les autoritats encarregades dels residus, el pla de residus homologat o el servei de recollida d'escombraries domèstiques de la vostra localitat o visiteu www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA: Noruega, Islàndia i Liechtenstein)

Doar pentru Uniunea Europeană (şi EEA).

Aceste simboluri indică faptul că acest produs nu trebuie evacuat împreună cu deşeurile menajere, în conformitate cu Directiva WEEE (2002/96/EC), Directiva referitoare la baterii (2006/66/EC) şi/sau legile dvs. naţionale ce implementează aceste Directive. Acest produs trebuie înmânat punctului de colectare adecvat, ex: printr-un schimb autorizat unu la unu atunci când cumpăraţi un produs nou similar sau la un sit de colecţie autorizat pentru reciclarea reziduurilor de echipament electric şi electronic (EEE) şi baterii şi acumulatori. Administrarea neadecvată a acestui tip de deşeuri, ar putea avea un impact asupra mediului şi asupra sănătăţii umane datorită substanţelor cu potenţial de risc care sunt în general asociate cu EEE. Cooperarea dvs. în direcţia evacuării corecte a acestui produs va contribui la o utilizare eficientă a resurelor naturale. Pentru mai multe informaţii despre reciclarea acestui produs, vă rugăm să contactaţi biroul dvs. local, autorităţile responsabile cu deşeurile, schema aprobată sau serviciul dvs. responsabil cu deşeurile menajere sau vizitaţi-ne la www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA: Norvegia, Islanda, Lichtenstein)

Yalnızca Avrupa Birliği (ve AEA).

Bu simgeler, WEEE Direktifi (2002/96/AT), Pil Direktifi (2006/66/AT) ve/veya bu Direktifleri uygulamaya koyan ulusal kanunlarınız uyarınca bu ürünün evsel atıklarınızla birlikte atılmaması gerektiğini gösterir. Bu ürün örneğin, benzer bir yeni ürün aldığınızda yetkili bir değiştirme esaslı toplama noktası veya elektrikli ve elektronik cihazlar (EEE) ile pil ve akü geri dönüşümü için yetkili bir toplama merkezi gibi belirlenmiş bir toplama noktasına götürülmelidir. Bu gibi atıkların gerektiği şekilde işlem görmemesi genel olarak EEE ile bağlantılı olan tehlikeli olabilecek maddeler nedeniyle çevre ve insan sağlığı üzerinde olumsuz etkiye yol açabilir. Bu ürünün düzgün şekilde atılması için işbirliği yapmanız doğal kaynakların verimli şekilde kullanımına katkıda bulunacaktır. Bu ürünün geri dönüşümü hakkında daha fazla bilgi için lütfen belediyeniz, atık merkeziniz, onaylı atık programı veya çöp toplama servisine başvurun ya da www.canon-europe.com/environment adresini ziyaret edin.

(AEA: Norveç, İzlanda ve Lihtenştayn)

Тільки для Європейського Союзу (та Європейської економічної зони).

Ці символи вказують, що даний продукт не повинен утилізуватися разом з господарчо-побутовими відходами згідно Директиви WEEE (2002/96/EC), Директиви про батареї 2006/66/EC та/або законів Вашої країни, що реалізують ці Директиви. Даний виріб повинно бути передано до призначенного приймального пункту, наприклад, на базі авторизованого обміну «один до одного», якщо Ви купуєте подібний новий продукт, або до авторизованого місця збору відходів електричного та електронного обладнання, батарей та акумуляторів для подальшої переробки. Невідповідне обходження з подібними відходами може завдавати впливу на оточуюче середовище і здоров'я людини через присутність потенційно небезпечних речовин, які загалом тісно пов'язані з електричним та електронним обладнанням. Ваша співпраця щодо відповідної утилізації даного виробу робить внесок у раціональне використання природніх ресурсів. Будь ласка, зверніться до місцевої адміністрації, органу по роботі з відходами або підприємства по утилізації відходів, щоб дізнатися більше про переробку даного виробу, або зверніться на www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Європейська економічни зона: Норвегія, Ісландія та Ліхтенштейн)

Само за Европейския съюз (и ЕИП).

Тези символи указват, че този продукт не може да се изхвърля заедно с боклука от вашето домакинство, според Директивата ИУЕЕО (2002/96/ЕС), Директивата за батерии (2006/66/ЕС) и/или вашите национални закони, които изпълняват тези Директиви. Този продукт трябва да бъде предаден в обозначен събирателен пункт, т.е. в одобрена база, когато купувате нов подобен продукт или в одобрен събирателен пункт за рециклиране на отпадъци от електрическо и електронно оборудване (ЕЕО), батерии и акумулаторни батерии. Неправилното третиране на този вид отпадъци може да има потенциален вреден ефект върху околната среда и човешкото здраве, поради възможните опасни вещества, с които обикновено се свързва ЕЕО. Вашето съдействие за правилното изхвърляне на този продукт ще допринесе за ефективната употреба на естествените ресурси. За повече информация относно рециклирането на този продукт, моля свържете се с вашия местен офис, с органа, който отговаря за отпадъчните продукти, одобрената програма или учреждението по изхвърляне на боклука на вашето домакинство, или посетете www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(ЕИП: Норвегия, Исландия и Лихтенщайн)

الاتحاد الأوروبي (والمنطقة الاقتصادية الأوروبية) فقط

تشير هذه الرموز إلى عدم التخلص من هذا المنتج في النفايات المنزلية العادية طبقًا لتوجيه الاتحاد الأوروبي WEEE (الخاص بنفايات المعدات الكهربائية والإلكترونية) (EC/96/2002)، والتوجيه الخاص بالبطاريات (EC/66/2006)، و/ أو القوانين المحلية التي تنطبق على تلك التوجيهات. يجب تقديم هذا المنتج إلى أحد مراكز تجميع النفايات المخصصة، على سبيل المثال، على أساس فردي عند شراء أحد المنتجات الجديدة المماثلة أو إلى موقع التجميع المعتمد الخاص بإعادة تدوير المعدات الكهربائية والإلكترونية (EEE) والبطاريات والمراكم. التعامل غير الصحيح مع هذا النوع من النفايات قد يكون له تأثيرا على البيئة وصحة الإنسان بسبب المواد الخطيرة المحتملة المرتبطة بشكل عام بتوجيه EEE (المعدات الكهربائية والإلكترونية). تعاونك في التخلص الملائم من هذا المنتج سيساهم في الاستعمال الفعال للمصادر الطبيعية. للحصول على مزيد من المعلومات حول إعادة تدوير هذا المنتج، برجاء الاتصال بمكتب المدينة المحلي الخاص بك، أو سلطة التخلص من النفايات أو البرنامج المعتمد أو مرفق خدمة التخلص من النفايات المنزلية أو التفضل بزيارة الموقع www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(المنطقة الاقتصادية الأوروبية : النرويج، وأيسلندا وليخنشتين)

Memo

Index

A

Accounting 705, 706, 709, 710, 714
Additional Settings Pane 362
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver 53
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength 777
Adobe RGB 42, 45, 275, 466
AppleTalk Network 689, 691

B

Bonjour Network 689

C

Checking Ink Tank Levels 888
Cleaning 891, 907, 910, 911
Clearing a Jammed Sheet 945
Color Adjustment 173, 178, 375, 397
Color Calibration Management Console 809, 848, 853
Color Check 802, 838, 842, 872, 876
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy 227, 228, 414, 415
Configuring NetWare Network Settings 681
Configuring the IP Address 673, 674, 695

D

Deleting Saved Jobs 732
Device Settings Sheet 192
Device Setup Utility 695
Drying Time 514

F

Favorites Sheet 189
Frame Type 681
Free Layout 204, 205, 206, 388, 389

G

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 997

H

Hardware error 997

I

Interface 645

L

Large-Format Printing 98
Layout Sheet 185
Loading and Printing on Sheets 25

M

Main Pane 349
Main Sheet 168, 249
Maintenance Cartridge 899, 905, 994
Menu Operations 623, 624
Menu Structure 627

N

Navigate 619
NetWare network 966
Nozzle 890

O

Orientation 149, 151, 321, 333
Output Method 183
Output Stacker Precautions 542
Oversize 77

P

Page Setup Pane 361
Page Setup Sheet 181, 252
Paper Feed Slot 653, 948
Personal Box 743, 746
PosterArtist 51
Power 322, 324, 326, 329, 330, 331, 333
Preparing to Transfer the Printer 923
Print Job Log 714, 715
Printer Driver Settings 158, 344
Printer Hard Disk Operations 657
Printhead 764, 767, 890, 891, 892
Printing Posters in Sections 124
Printing Saved Jobs 728
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners 98, 99, 103
Printing at Actual Size 81, 83, 85
Printing from Photoshop 42
Printing on Rolls 22

R

Removing the Roll 510, 525
Replacing Ink Tanks 882
Roll Feed Unit 526, 654
Roll Holder 503, 512, 524

S

Saving Print Jobs 721, 741
Size Options 184, 265, 455
Special Settings 188, 342
Specifications 1000, 1004
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 36, 160, 345
Spectrophotometer Unit 527, 662, 664, 665, 795, 798, 799, 802, 911, 931, 990, 991
Status Print 642
Support Sheet 191, 257

U

Using the Output Stacker 543
Utility Sheet 190

W

Watermark 146, 147
When to Replace Ink Tanks 888

Memo

ENG

© CANON INC. 2015